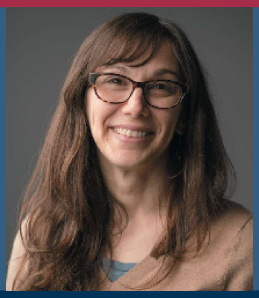
Unit 8 ECOLOGY



Meet Chelsea Rochman, a pioneer and internationally recognized researcher on the ecological effects of microplastic pollution. After receiving a B.S. in Biology from University of California (UC) San Diego, Dr. Rochman completed a joint Ph.D. program in Ecology at UC Davis and San Diego State University. An Assistant Professor in the Department of Ecology and Evolutionary Biology at University of Toronto, Canada, Dr. Rochman and her students are studying how plastic waste and other contaminants affect individual organisms, populations, communities, and ecosystems. Dr. Rochman has also worked with industry and government leaders to shape science-based policy, including the Microbead-Free Waters Act in the United States and the G7 Ocean Plastics Charter led by Canada.

AN INTERVIEW WITH

Chelsea Rochman

How did you become interested in ecology and the impact of plastic pollutants?

I began my undergraduate studies at Santa Monica College, a community college near Los Angeles. Initially, I was really interested in the performing arts and the fine arts. But then I took a marine biology class, and I absolutely loved it. I switched to a biology major and after one year, I, transferred to UC San Diego. While there, I was able to study abroad, at the University of Queensland, Australia. While taking a course in ecology, we went to an island that was basically uninhabited. Even though there were so few people, there was debris all over the beach, and there were sea turtles harmed by plastic they had eaten. It was the first time I realized that there is a lot of plastic in the ocean and it was harming wildlife. I've never looked back—I've been working on this topic ever since.

What are microplastics, and what drew you to working on them?

Microplastics are small pieces of plastic debris, up to 5 mm in size. They are either produced as microplastics, such as microbeads in face wash, or they are fragments of larger plastic items, such as a bottle or bag. In 2009, I took my first trip to the Great Pacific Garbage Patch. But it didn't look like an island of trash the way it is described in the media. Instead, it is a soup of tiny plastic particles, the size of a pea or smaller. I realized that these small particles of plastic could infiltrate every level of the food chain. And so as I began my graduate work, I was focused on the small stuff because of what I had seen.

▼ Collecting samples of plastic waste.

How do plastic pollutants affect life in the ocean?

Plastic pollution is everywhere and affects marine life at every level of biological organization. Effects of microplastics can be complex, depending on their size and the type of polymer used to make them. Some microplastics cause liver tumors, others disrupt the endocrine system, and still others affect the number of offspring produced or their chances of survival. Large pieces of plastic also cause lots of problems. An animal can die after eating a big piece of plastic or being entangled by it. Large pieces also can spread diseases or smother sections of a coral reef, harming the community of organisms that live there. In addition, animals (or their eggs) attached to large pieces of plastic can be transported long distances, bringing those animals to new locations where they may harm existing communities.

"Plastic pollution is everywhere and affects marine life at every level of biological organization."

What is the most surprising discovery you've made?

The biggest surprise came gradually over my career: Microplastic waste is literally everywhere. People would ask, are microplastics in the food we eat or the water we drink? I was skeptical. The first time someone asked me about plastic in drinking water, I said, "We're not going to find anything." To check, I filtered some tap water and put the filter under a microscope. And of course we found it. I live near the Great Lakes, and we can find more than a hundred pieces of microplastic in one fish. It's in the air, tap water, bottled water, dust, the food we eat. And recently, we've learned that microplastics are in humans—they're present in human stool (feces). Now we're trying to learn how the microplastics we eat, drink, and breathe affect human health. Currently, we just don't know.

What can people do to reduce plastic pollution?

The first step is to grapple with the fact that plastic is a valuable resource. It's made from oil. It is not something that should be used as a throwaway material. Once we realize that, there are many things we can do. As individuals, we vote with our wallet when we buy things. We can refuse to buy single-use plastics, such as plastic straws, cups, or disposable razor blades. At the government level, we need to create a materials management stream where the plastic we use truly is recycled. Right now we use a lot of plastic products, and they go right into the trash, much of which ends up contaminating the environment. To fix this, we need local, national, and international agreements where we agree to reduce the amount of plastic that contaminates the environment by a certain amount, and we provide support and incentives to make that happen.

52 An Introduction to Ecology and the Biosphere

KEY CONCEPTS

52.1 Earth's climate varies by latitude and season and is changing rapidly *p. 1167*

52.2 The distribution of terrestrial biomes is controlled by climate and disturbance *p. 1171*

52.3 Aquatic biomes are diverse and dynamic systems that cover most of Earth *p. 1177*

52.4 Interactions between organisms and the environment limit the distribution of species *p. 1178*

52.5 Ecological change and evolution affect one another over long and short periods of time *p. 1187*

Study Tip

Make a table: As you read the chapter, build a table listing factors that influence species distribution in terrestrial and aquatic environments. Add figure numbers or page numbers that give examples of these factors in each type of environment.

Type of environment	Factor affecting what species live there	Example
Lake	Amount of sunlight that reaches organisms	Photosynthetic plants and algae live at shallow edges and sunlit surface (Figs. 52.14 and 52.16)

Go to Mastering Biology

For Students (in eText and Study Area)
- Get Ready for Chapter 52
- Figure 52.4 Walkthrough: Seasonal Variation in Sunlight Intensity

For Instructors to Assign (in Item Library)
- Interpreting Data: Cholera and Sea Surface Temperature
- Scientific Thinking: Carbon Dioxide and the Growth of Forest Stands

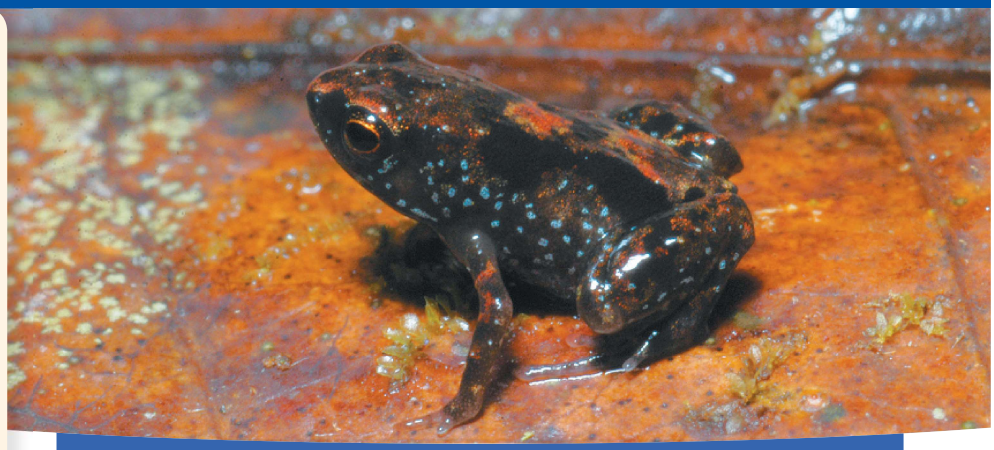
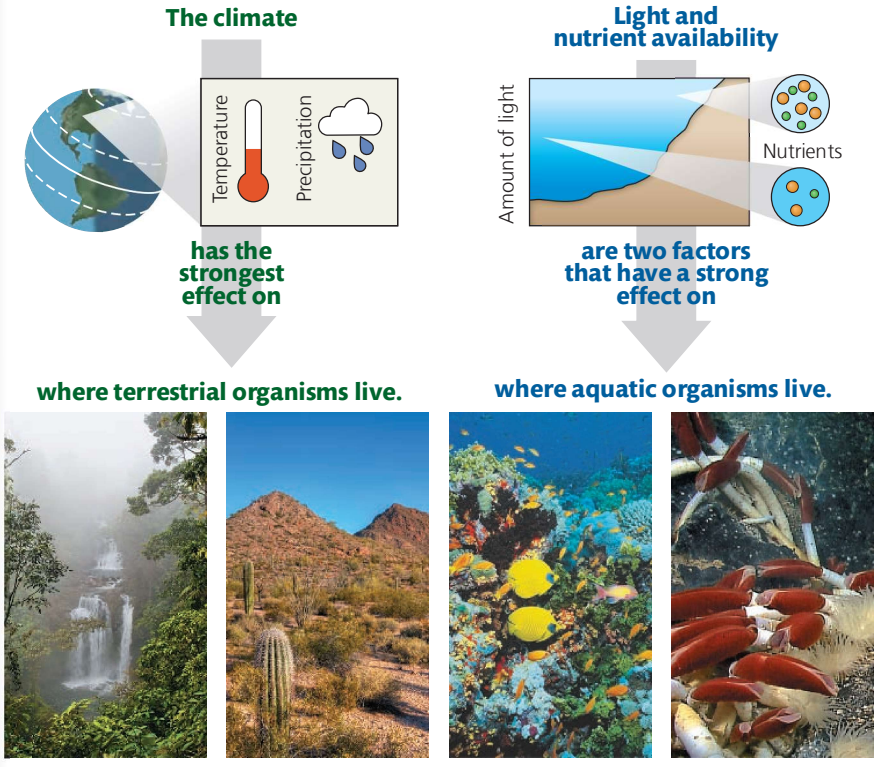


Figure 52.1 Dwarfed by a dime, this tiny frog (*Paedophryne swiftorum*) was discovered on a 2008 expedition to Papua New Guinea. The entire genus *Paedophryne* is known only from a single peninsula in the eastern part of the country. Adult frogs in this genus are about 8 mm long and are among the smallest adult vertebrates on Earth.

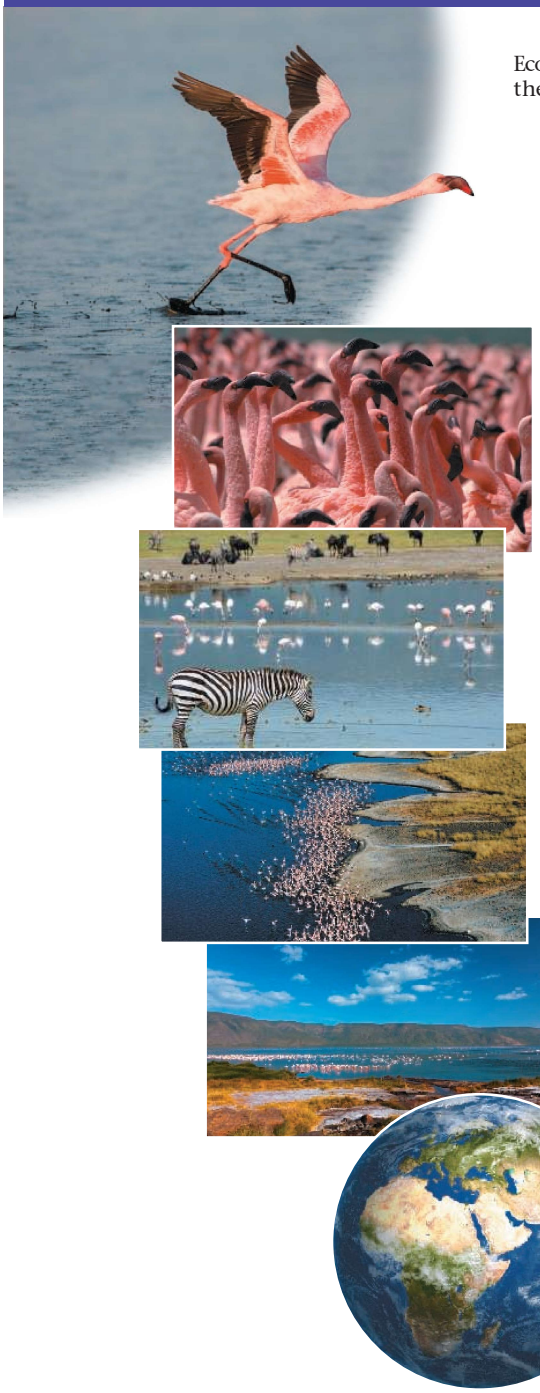


Dispersal and **interactions among organisms**, such as competition, also affect where species are found.

When studying a species in nature, scientists often begin by asking, what environmental factors limit where it is found? How do variations in an organism's food supply or interactions with other species, such as predators, affect the size of their populations?

Questions like these are the subject of **ecology**, the scientific study of the interactions between organisms and the environment. (Note that here and throughout this text, the term *environment* refers to other organisms as well as the physical aspects of an organism's surroundings.) The interactions studied by ecologists can be organized into a hierarchy that ranges in scale from single organisms to the planet **(Figure 52.2)**. We'll begin our study of ecology by considering how Earth's climate and other factors determine the location of major life zones on land and in the oceans.

▼ Figure 52.2 Exploring the Scope of Ecological Research



Ecologists work at different levels of the biological hierarchy, from individual organisms to the planet. Here we present a sample research question for each level of the hierarchy.

Organismal Ecology

Organismal ecology, which includes the subdisciplines of physiological, evolutionary, and behavioral ecology, is concerned with how an organism's structure, physiology, and behavior meet the challenges posed by its environment.

◀ How do flamingos select a mate?

Population Ecology

A **population** is a group of individuals of the same species living in an area. **Population ecology** analyzes factors that affect population size and how and why it changes through time.

◀ What environmental factors affect the reproductive rate of flamingos?

Community Ecology

A **community** is a group of populations of different species in an area. **Community ecology** examines how interactions between species, such as predation and competition, affect community structure and organization.

◀ What factors influence the diversity of species that interact at this African lake?

Ecosystem Ecology

An **ecosystem** is the community of organisms in an area and the physical factors with which those organisms interact. **Ecosystem ecology** emphasizes energy flow and chemical cycling between organisms and the environment.

◀ What factors control photosynthetic productivity in this aquatic ecosystem?

Landscape Ecology

A **landscape** (or seascape) is a mosaic of connected ecosystems. Research in **landscape ecology** focuses on the factors controlling exchanges of energy, materials, and organisms across multiple ecosystems.

◀ To what extent do nutrients from terrestrial ecosystems affect organisms in the lake?

Global Ecology

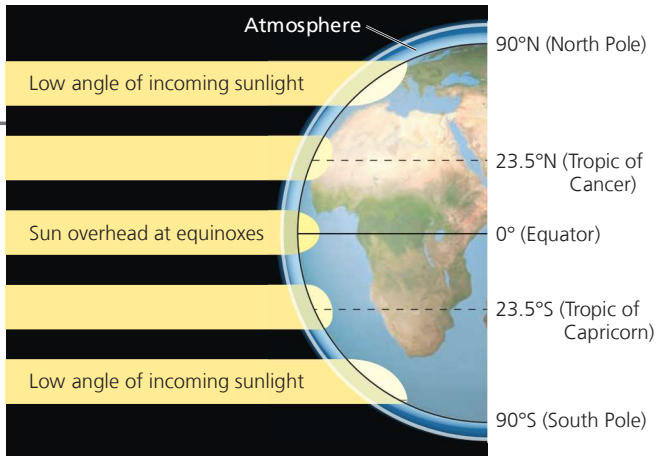
The **biosphere** is the global ecosystem—the sum of all the planet's ecosystems and landscapes. **Global ecology** examines how the regional exchange of energy and materials influences the functioning and distribution of organisms across the biosphere.

◀ How do global patterns of air circulation affect the distribution of organisms?

▼ Figure 52.3 Exploring Global Climate Patterns

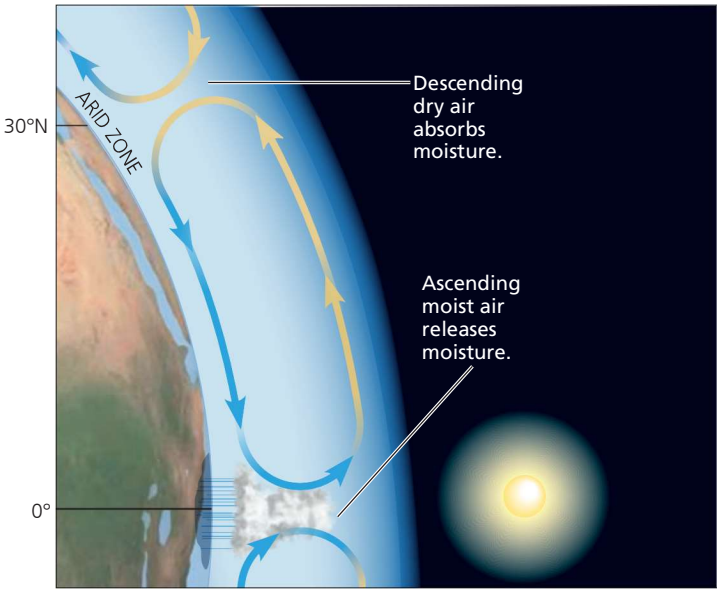
Latitudinal Variation in Sunlight Intensity

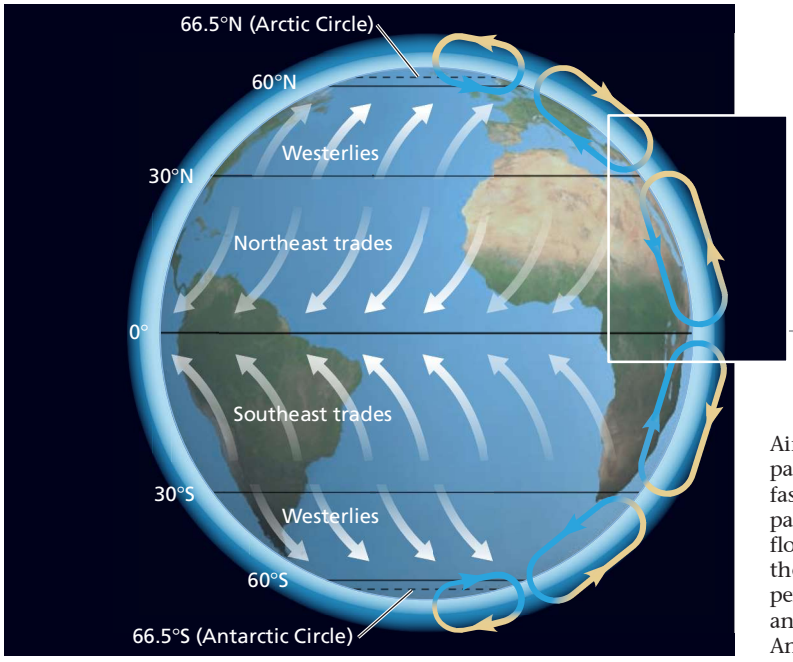
Earth's curved shape causes latitudinal variation in the intensity of sunlight. Because sunlight strikes the tropics (those regions that lie between 23.5° north latitude and 23.5° south latitude) most directly, more heat and light per unit of surface area are delivered there. At higher latitudes, sunlight strikes Earth at an oblique angle, and thus the light energy is more diffuse on Earth's surface.



Global Air Circulation and Precipitation Patterns

Intense solar radiation near the equator initiates a global pattern of air circulation and precipitation. High temperatures in the tropics evaporate water from Earth's surface and cause warm, wet air masses to rise (blue arrows) and flow toward the poles. As the rising air masses expand and cool, they release much of their water content, creating abundant precipitation in tropical regions. The high-altitude air masses, now dry, descend (tan arrows) toward Earth around 30° north and south, absorbing moisture from the land and creating an arid climate conducive to the development of the deserts that are common at those latitudes. Some of the descending air then flows toward the poles. At latitudes around 60° north and south, the air masses again rise and release abundant precipitation (though less than in the tropics). Some of the cold, dry rising air then flows to the poles, where it descends and flows back toward the equator, absorbing moisture and creating the comparatively rainless and bitterly cold climates of the polar regions.





Air flowing close to Earth's surface creates predictable global wind patterns. As Earth rotates on its axis, land near the equator moves faster than that at the poles, deflecting the winds from the vertical paths shown above and creating the more easterly and westerly flows shown at left. Cooling trade winds blow from east to west in the tropics; prevailing westerlies blow from west to east in the temperate zones, defined as the regions between the Tropic of Cancer and the Arctic Circle and between the Tropic of Capricorn and the Antarctic Circle.

CONCEPT 52.1

Earth's climate varies by latitude and season and is changing rapidly

The most significant influence on the distribution of organisms on land is **climate**, the long-term prevailing weather conditions in a given area. Four physical factors—temperature, precipitation, sunlight, and wind—are key components of climate. To set the stage for understanding how climate—and climate change—affect life on Earth, we'll begin by examining patterns in climate at the global, regional, and local levels.

Global Climate Patterns

Global climate patterns are determined largely by the input of solar energy and Earth's movement in space. The sun warms the atmosphere, land, and water. This warming establishes the temperature variations, movements of air and water, and evaporation of water that cause dramatic latitudinal variations in climate. **Figure 52.3** summarizes Earth's climate patterns and how they are formed.

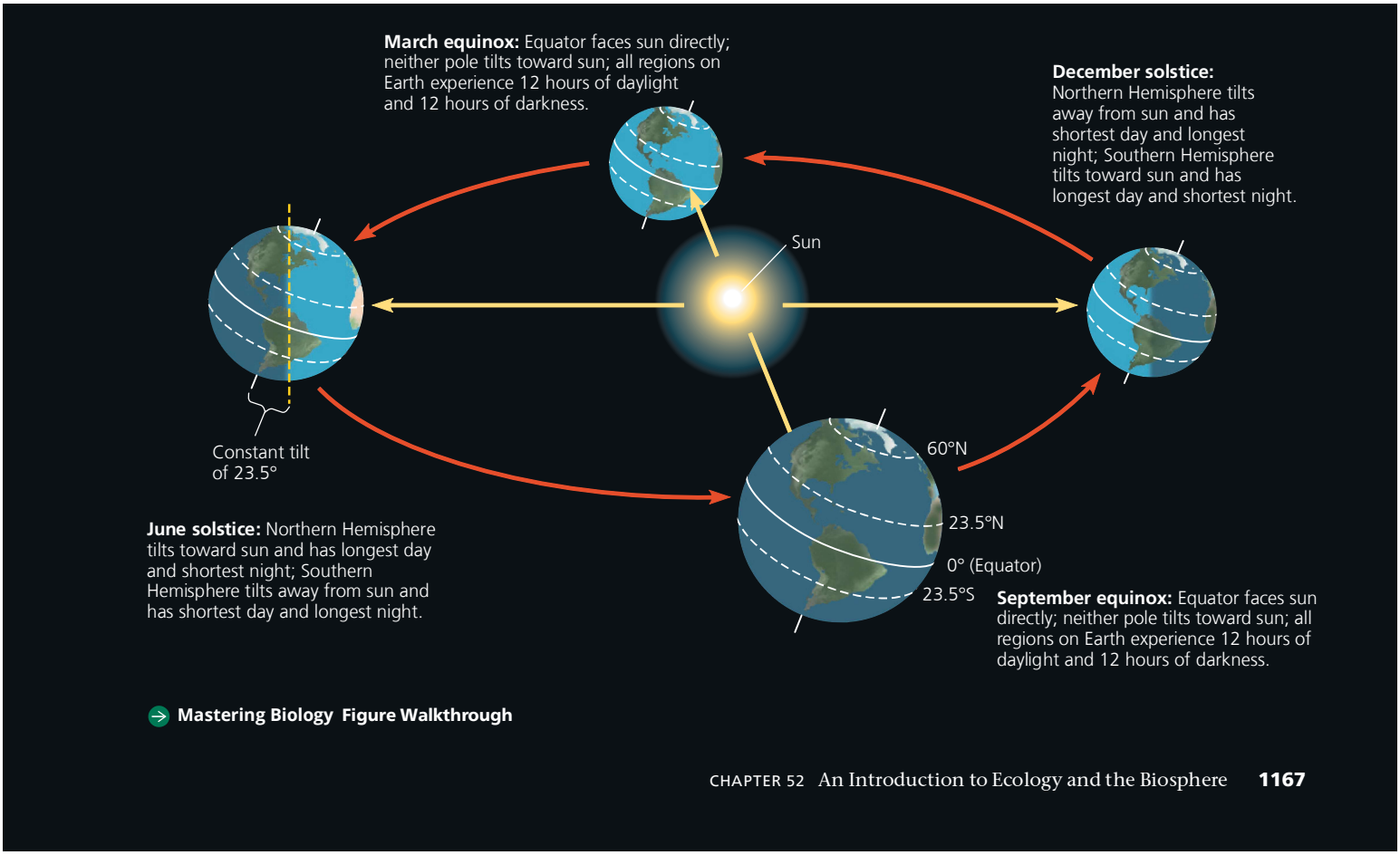
Regional and Local Effects on Climate

Climate varies seasonally and can be modified by other factors, such as large bodies of water and mountain ranges. We will examine each of these factors in more detail.

Seasonality

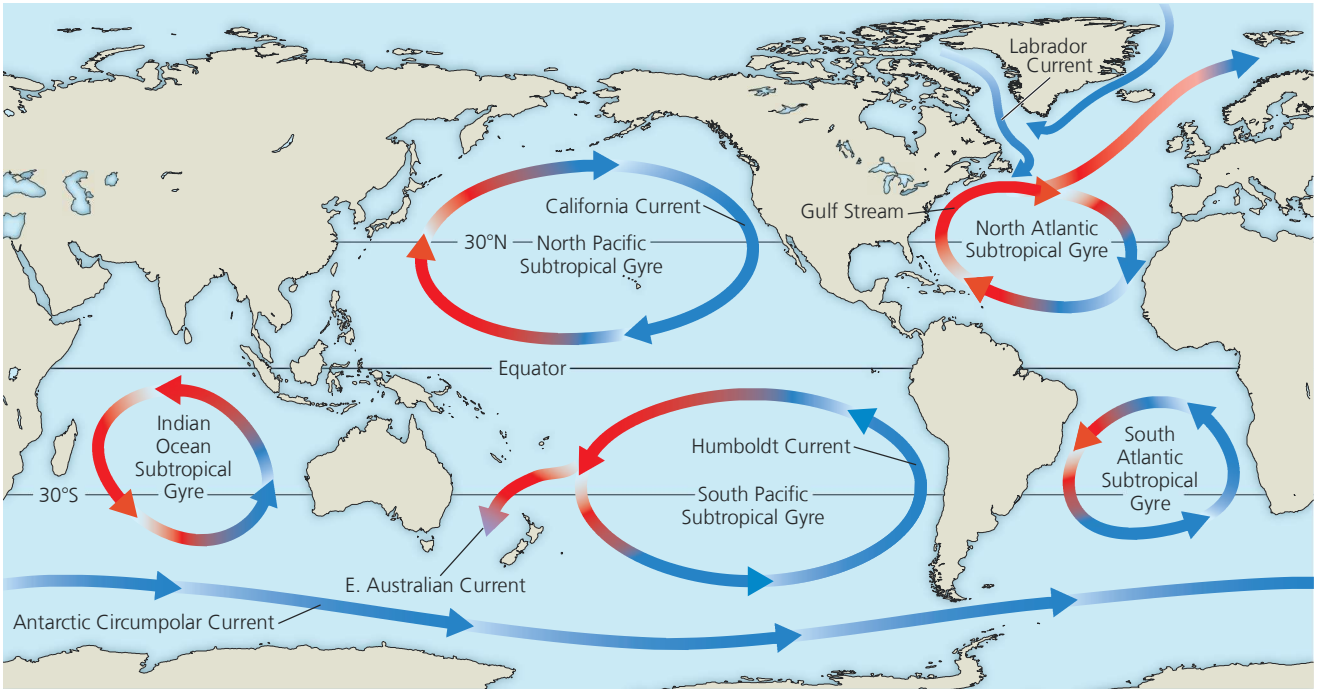
In middle to high latitudes, Earth's tilted axis of rotation and its annual passage around the sun cause strong seasonal cycles in day length, solar radiation, and temperature **(Figure 52.4)**. The changing angle of the sun over the course of the year also affects local environments. For example, the belts of wet and dry air on either side of the equator move slightly northward and southward as the sun's angle changes; this produces marked wet and dry seasons around 20° north and 20° south latitude, where many tropical deciduous forests grow. In addition, seasonal changes in wind patterns alter ocean currents, sometimes causing the upwelling of cold water from deep ocean layers. This nutrient-rich water stimulates the growth of surface-dwelling phytoplankton and the organisms that feed on them. Though these upwelling zones make up only a few percent of the ocean's area, they are the source of more than 25% of all fish caught globally.

▼ Figure 52.4 Seasonal variation in sunlight intensity. Because Earth is tilted on its axis relative to its plane of orbit around the sun, the intensity of solar radiation varies seasonally. This variation is smallest in the tropics and increases toward the poles.



Mastering Biology Figure Walkthrough

▼ **Figure 52.5 Global circulation of surface water in the oceans.** Water is warmed at the equator and flows north and south toward the poles, where it cools. Note the similarities between the direction of water circulation in the gyres and the direction of the trade winds in Figure 52.3.



Bodies of Water

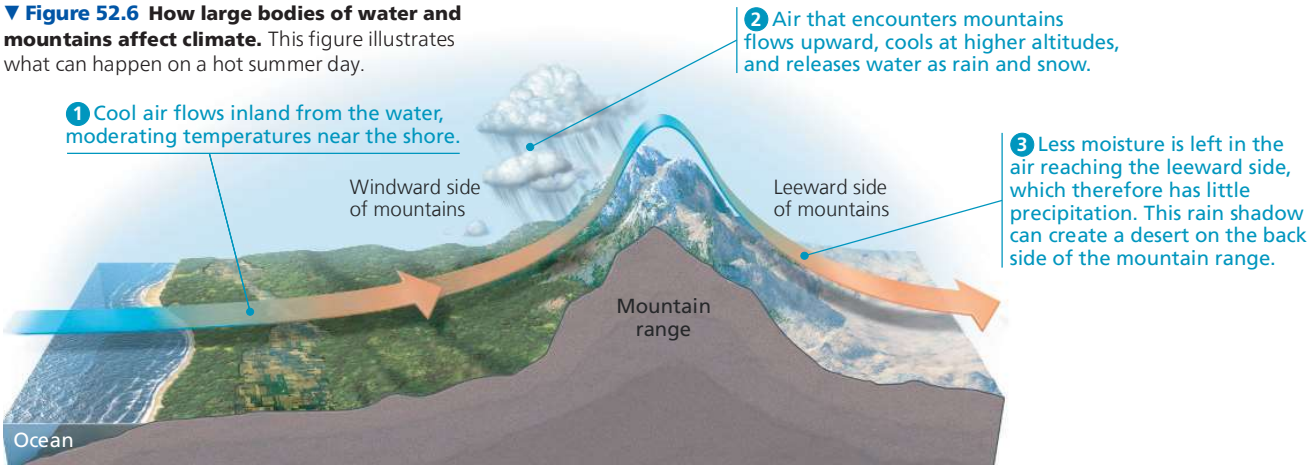
Ocean currents influence climate along the coasts of continents by heating or cooling overlying air masses that pass across the land. Coastal regions are also generally wetter than inland areas at the same latitude. The cool, misty climate produced by the cold California Current that flows southward along western North America supports a coniferous rain forest ecosystem along much of the continent's Pacific coast and large redwood groves farther south. Conversely, the west coast of northern Europe has a mild climate because the Gulf Stream carries warm water from the equator to the North Atlantic **(Figure 52.5)**. As a result, northwestern Europe is warmer during winter than southeastern Canada, which is farther south but is cooled by the Labrador Current flowing south from the coast of Greenland.

Because of the high specific heat of water (see Concept 3.2), oceans and large lakes tend to moderate the climate of nearby land. During a hot day, when land is warmer than the water, air over the land heats up and rises, drawing a cool breeze from the water across the land **(Figure 52.6)**. In contrast, because temperatures drop more quickly over land than over water at night, air over the now warmer water rises, drawing cooler air from the land back out over the water and replacing it with warmer air from offshore. This local moderation of climate can be limited to the coast itself, however. In southern California and southwestern Australia, cool, dry ocean breezes in summer are warmed when they contact the land, absorbing moisture and creating a hot, arid climate just a few kilometers inland (see Figure 3.5). This climate pattern also occurs around the Mediterranean Sea, which gives it the name *Mediterranean climate*.

Mountains

Like large bodies of water, mountains influence air flow over land. When warm, moist air approaches a mountain, the air rises and cools, releasing moisture on the windward side of the peak (see Figure 52.6). On the leeward side, cooler, dry air descends, absorbing moisture and producing a "rain shadow." Such leeward rain shadows determine where many deserts are found, including the Mojave Desert of western North America and the Gobi Desert of Asia.

Mountains also affect the amount of sunlight reaching an area and thus the local temperature and rainfall. South-facing slopes in the Northern Hemisphere receive more sunlight than north-facing slopes and are therefore warmer and drier. These physical differences influence species distributions locally. On many mountains in western North America, spruce and other conifers grow on the cooler north-facing slopes, but shrubby, drought-resistant plants inhabit the south-facing slopes. In addition, every 1,000-m increase in elevation produces an average temperature drop of 6°C, equivalent to that produced by an 880-km increase in latitude. This is one reason that high-elevation plant communities near the equator, for example, can be similar to lower-elevation plant communities that are far from the equator.



▼ Figure 52.6 How large bodies of water and mountains affect climate. This figure illustrates what can happen on a hot summer day.

Effects of Vegetation on Climate

Climate affects where terrestrial organisms can live, but organisms can also affect climate. This is especially true of forests, which can alter the climate at local and even regional scales.

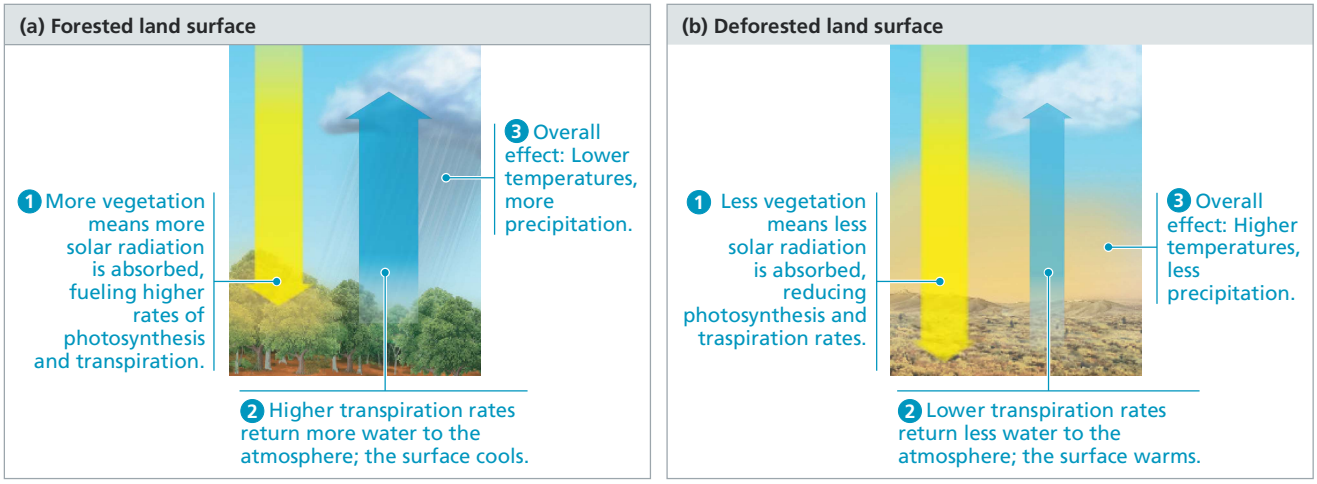
When viewed from above, a forest is darker in color than a desert or grassland. As a result, a forest absorbs more (and reflects less) solar energy than does a desert or grassland, thereby contributing to a warming of Earth's surface in forested areas. This warming effect, however, is more than offset by *transpiration*, the evaporative loss of water from a plant that cools the plant's surface—similar to how your body is cooled when you sweat. The evaporative loss of water is much greater in forests than in other ecosystems, causing forests to affect climate in two key ways: Forests reduce Earth's surface temperature and they increase precipitation rates **(Figure 52.7)**. As documented in regions around the world, the climate becomes hotter and drier in areas where humans have cut down large forests and becomes cooler and wetter where humans have restored large forests.

Microclimate

At an even smaller scale is the **microclimate**, very fine, localized patterns in climatic conditions. Many features in the environment influence microclimate by casting shade, altering evaporation from soil, or changing wind patterns. For example, forest trees often moderate the microclimate below them. Cleared areas therefore typically experience greater temperature extremes than the forest interior because of greater solar radiation and wind currents that arise from the rapid heating and cooling of open land. Within a forest, low-lying ground is usually wetter than higher ground and tends to be occupied by different tree species. A log or large stone can shelter organisms such as salamanders, worms, and insects, buffering them from the extremes of temperature and moisture.

Every environment on Earth exhibits small-scale differences in chemical and physical attributes, such as temperature, light, water, and nutrients. Later, we'll examine how these **abiotic**, or nonliving, factors influence the distribution and abundance

▼ Figure 52.7 How cutting down a forest affects regional climate.



of organisms. Similarly, all of the **biotic**, or living, factors—the other organisms that are part of an individual's environment—also influence the distribution and abundance of life on Earth.

Global Climate Change

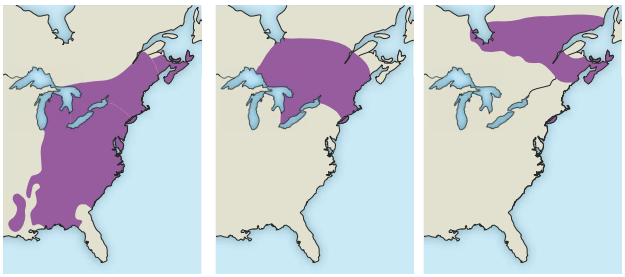
Because climatic variables affect the geographic ranges of most plants and animals, any large-scale change in Earth's climate profoundly affects the biosphere. In fact, a large-scale climate "experiment" is under way: The burning of fossil fuels and deforestation are increasing the concentrations of carbon dioxide and other greenhouse gases in the atmosphere. This has caused **climate change**, a directional change to the global climate that lasts three decades or more (as opposed to short-term changes in the weather). As we'll explore in more detail in Concept 56.4, Earth has warmed an average of 0.9°C (1.6°F) since 1900 and is projected to warm 1–6°C (2–11°F) more by the year 2100. Wind and precipitation patterns also are shifting, and extreme weather events (such as major storms and droughts) are occurring more frequently.

How will such changes affect the distribution of organisms? One way to answer this question is to look at the changes that have occurred since the last ice age ended. Until about 16,000 years ago, glaciers covered much of North America and Eurasia. As the climate warmed and the glaciers retreated, tree species distributions expanded northward. Fossil pollen shows that while some species moved northward rapidly, others moved more slowly, with their range expansion lagging several thousand years behind the shift in suitable habitat.

Will plants and other species be able to keep up with the much more rapid warming projected for this century? Consider the American beech, *Fagus grandifolia*. Ecological models predict that the northern limit of the beech's range may move 700–900 km northward in the next century, and its southern range limit will shift even more. The current and predicted geographic ranges of this species under two different climate-change scenarios are illustrated in **Figure 52.8**. If these predictions are even approximately correct, the beech's range must shift 7–9 km northward per year to keep pace with the warming climate. However, since the end of the last ice age, the beech has moved at a rate of only 0.2 km per year. Without human help in moving to new habitats, species such as the American beech may have much smaller ranges or even become extinct.

Indeed, the climate change that has *already* occurred has affected the geographic ranges of hundreds of terrestrial, marine, and freshwater organisms. For example, as the climate has warmed, 22 of 35 European butterfly species studied have shifted their ranges farther north by 35–240 km in recent decades. In western North America, nearly 200 plant species have moved to lower elevations, most likely in response to decreased rain and snow at higher elevations. Other research shows that a Pacific diatom species, *Neodenticula seminae*, recently colonized the Atlantic Ocean for the first time in 800,000 years. In these and many other

▼ Figure 52.8 Current range and predicted ranges for the American beech under two climate-change scenarios.



(a) Current range | (b) 4.5°C warming over next century | (c) 6.5°C warming over next century

? *The predicted range in each scenario is based on climate factors alone. What other factors might alter the distribution of this species?*

Mastering Biology
Interview with Margaret Davis: Using fossil pollen to track tree species migration

such cases, when climate change enables or causes a species to move into a new geographic area, other organisms living there may be harmed (see Figure 56.31).

Furthermore, as the climate changes, some species are facing a shortage of suitable habitat while others cannot migrate quickly enough. For example, a recent study found that on average, the geographic ranges of 67 bumblebee species **(Figure 52.9)** in the Northern Hemisphere were shrinking: They were retreating from the southern edges of their distributions, but failing to expand their ranges to the north. Overall, climate change is causing the populations of many species to decrease in size or even disappear (see Figure 1.12).

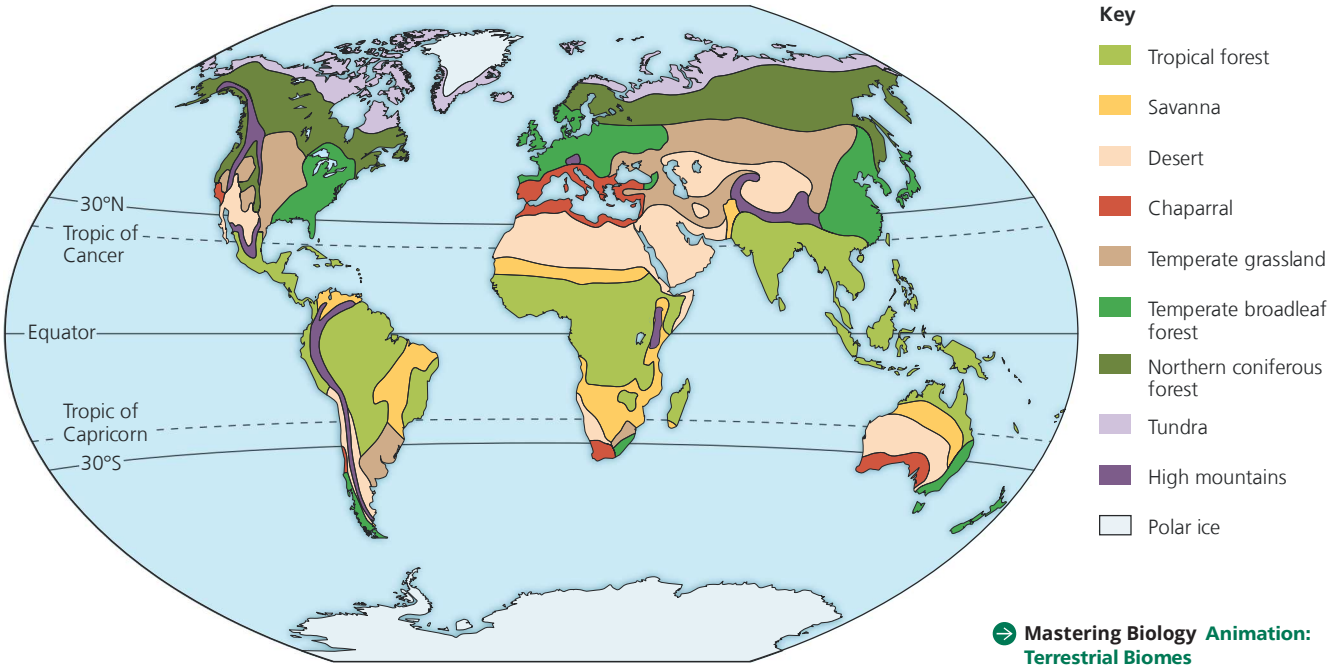
▼ Figure 52.9 The rusty-patched bumblebee (*Bombus affinis*).

CONCEPT CHECK 52.1

1. Explain how the sun's unequal heating of Earth's surface results in deserts near 30° north and south of the equator.
2. What are some of the differences in microclimate between an unplanted agricultural field and a nearby stream corridor with trees?
3. **WHAT IF?** Changes in Earth's climate at the end of the last ice age happened gradually, taking centuries to thousands of years. If the planet continues to warm at its current, rapid rate, how might this affect the evolution of long-lived trees compared with that of annual plants, which have much shorter generation times?
4. **MAKE CONNECTIONS** Focusing just on the effects of temperature, would you expect the global distribution of C_4 plants to expand or contract as Earth becomes warmer? Why? (See Concept 10.4.)

For suggested answers, see Appendix A.

▼ **Figure 52.10** **The distribution of major terrestrial biomes.**



Mastering Biology **Animation: Terrestrial Biomes**

CONCEPT 52.2

The distribution of terrestrial biomes is controlled by climate and disturbance

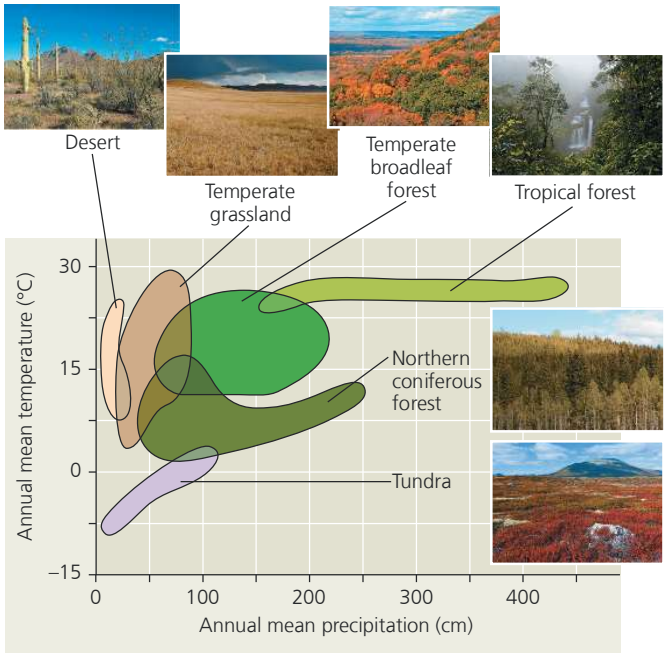
Earth's life is distributed on a grand scale in **biomes**, major life zones characterized by vegetation type in terrestrial biomes (or by the physical environment in aquatic biomes). On land, what determines where biomes are located?

Climate and Terrestrial Biomes

Because climate has a strong influence on the distribution of plant species, it is a major factor in determining the locations of terrestrial biomes **(Figure 52.10)**. The importance of climate on the distribution of biomes can be shown in a **climograph**, a plot of the annual mean temperature and precipitation in a particular region. **Figure 52.11** is a climograph for some North American biomes. Notice, for instance, that the range of precipitation in northern coniferous and temperate forests is similar but that temperate forests are generally warmer. Grasslands are typically drier than either kind of forest, and deserts are drier still.

Factors other than mean temperature and precipitation also play a role in determining where biomes exist. Some areas in North America with a particular combination of temperature and precipitation support a temperate broadleaf forest, but other areas with similar values support a coniferous forest (see the overlap in Figure 52.11). One reason for

▼ **Figure 52.11** **A climograph for some major biomes in North America.** The areas plotted here encompass the ranges of annual mean temperature and precipitation in the biomes.



INTERPRET THE DATA *Some arctic tundra ecosystems receive as little rainfall as deserts but have much more dense vegetation. What climatic factor could cause this difference? Explain.*

this variation is that climographs are based on annual *averages*, but the *pattern* of climatic variation is often as important as the average climate. For example, some areas may receive regular precipitation throughout the year, whereas other areas may have distinct wet and dry seasons.

General Features of Terrestrial Biomes

Most terrestrial biomes are named for major climatic features and for their predominant vegetation. Temperate grasslands, for instance, are generally found in middle latitudes, where the climate is moderate, and are dominated by various grass species. Each biome is also characterized by microorganisms, fungi, and animals adapted to that particular environment. Temperate grasslands are usually more likely than temperate broadleaf forests to be populated by arbuscular mycorrhizal fungi (see Figure 37.14) and by large grazing mammals. Although Figure 52.10 shows distinct boundaries between the biomes, terrestrial biomes usually grade into neighboring biomes, sometimes over large areas. The area of intergradation, called an **ecotone**, may be wide or narrow.

Vertical layering of vegetation is an important feature of terrestrial biomes. In many forests, the layers from top to bottom consist of the upper **canopy**, the low-tree layer, the shrub understory, the ground layer of herbaceous plants, the forest floor (litter layer), and the root layer. Nonforest biomes have similar, though usually less pronounced, layers. Layering of vegetation provides many different habitats for animals, which sometimes exist in well-defined feeding groups, from the insectivorous birds and bats that feed above canopies to the worms, arthropods, and small mammals that search for food in the litter and root layers below.

The species composition of each kind of biome varies from place to place. For instance, in the northern coniferous forest (taiga) of North America, red spruce is common in the east but does not occur in most other areas, where black spruce and white spruce are abundant. As **Figure 52.12** shows, cacti living in deserts of North and South America resemble plants called euphorbs found in African deserts. But since cacti and euphorbs belong to different evolutionary lineages, their similarities are due to convergent evolution rather than shared ancestry.

Disturbance and Terrestrial Biomes

Biomes are dynamic, and disturbance rather than stability tends to be the rule. In ecological terms, **disturbance** is an event such as a storm, fire, or human activity that changes a community, removing organisms from it and altering resource availability. For example, hurricanes and other storms create openings for new species in many tropical and temperate forests and can alter forest composition. After Hurricane Katrina struck the Gulf coast of the United States in 2005, mixed swamp forests in the area shifted toward a dominance of bald cypress (*Taxodium distichum*) and water tupelo (*Nyssa aquatica*) because these species are less susceptible to wind damage than other tree species found there. As a result of disturbances, biomes are often patchy, containing several different communities in a single area.

In many biomes, even the dominant plants depend on periodic disturbance. Natural wildfires are an integral component of grasslands, savannas, chaparral, and many coniferous forests. Before agricultural and urban development, much of the southeastern United States was dominated by a single conifer species, the longleaf pine. Without periodic burning, broadleaf trees tended to replace the pines. Forest managers now use fire as a tool to help maintain many coniferous forests.

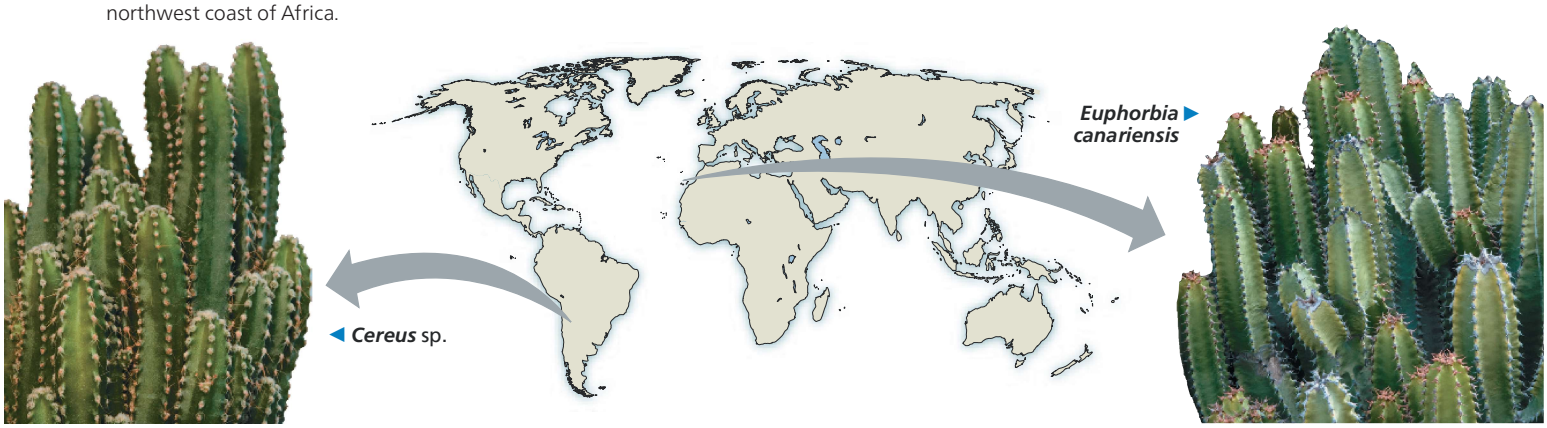
Figure 52.13 summarizes the major features of terrestrial biomes. As you read about the characteristics of each biome, remember that humans have altered much of Earth's surface, replacing natural communities with urban and agricultural ones. The central United States, for example, is classified as grassland and once contained extensive areas of tallgrass prairie. Very little of the original prairie remains today, however, having been converted to farmland.

CONCEPT CHECK 52.2

1. Based on the climograph in Figure 52.11, what mainly differentiates temperate grassland from temperate broadleaf forest?
2. Using Figure 52.13, identify the natural biome in which you live, and summarize its abiotic and biotic characteristics. Do these reflect your actual surroundings? Explain.
3. **WHAT IF?** If average temperatures on Earth increase by 4°C in this century, predict which biome would be most likely to replace tundra in some locations as a result. Explain.

For suggested answers, see Appendix A.

▼ Figure 52.12 Convergent evolution in a cactus and a euphorb. Cacti in the genus *Cereus* are found in the Americas; *Euphorbia canariensis*, a euphorb, is native to the Canary Islands, off the northwest coast of Africa.



▼ Figure 52.13 Exploring Terrestrial Biomes

Tropical Forest

Distribution Tropical forest occurs in equatorial and subequatorial regions.

Precipitation In **tropical rain forests**, rainfall is relatively constant, about 200–400 cm annually. In **tropical dry forests**, precipitation is highly seasonal, about 150–200 cm annually, with a six- to seven-month dry season.

Temperature High year-round, averaging 25–29°C with little seasonal variation.

Plants Tropical forests are vertically layered, and competition for light is intense. Layers in rain forests include trees that grow above a closed canopy, the canopy trees, one or two layers of subcanopy trees, and layers of shrubs and herbs (small, nonwoody plants). There are generally fewer layers in tropical dry forests. Broadleaf evergreen trees are dominant in tropical rain forests, whereas many tropical dry forest trees drop their leaves during the dry season. Epiphytes such as bromeliads and orchids generally cover tropical forest trees but are less abundant in dry forests. Thorny shrubs and succulent plants are common in some tropical dry forests.

A tropical rain forest in Costa Rica

Animals Earth's tropical forests are home to millions of species, including an estimated 5–30 million still undescribed species of insects, spiders, and other arthropods. In fact, animal diversity is higher in tropical forests than in any other terrestrial biome. The animals, including amphibians, birds and other reptiles, mammals, and arthropods, are adapted to the vertically layered environment and are often inconspicuous.

Human Impact Humans have long had thriving communities in tropical forests. Many tropical forests are now being cut down and converted to farmland, urban areas, and other types of land use.

Desert

Distribution **Deserts** occur in bands near 30° north and south latitude or at other latitudes in the interior of continents (for instance, the Gobi Desert of north-central Asia).

Precipitation Precipitation is low and highly variable, generally less than 30 cm per year.

Temperature Temperature is variable seasonally and daily. Maximum air temperature in hot deserts may exceed 50°C; in cold deserts air temperature may fall below –30°C.

Plants Deserts are dominated by low, widely scattered vegetation; the proportion of bare ground is high compared with other biomes. The plants include succulents such as cacti or euphorbs, deeply rooted shrubs, and herbs that grow during the infrequent moist periods. Desert plant adaptations include tolerance of heat and dessication, water storage, and reduced leaf surface area. Physical defenses, such as spines, and chemical defenses, such as toxins in the leaves of shrubs, are common. Many of the plants exhibit C_4 or CAM photosynthesis.

Animals Common desert animals include snakes and lizards, scorpions, ants, beetles, migratory and resident birds, and seed-eating rodents. Many species are nocturnal. Water conservation is a common adaptation, with some species surviving solely on water obtained from breaking down carbohydrates in seeds.

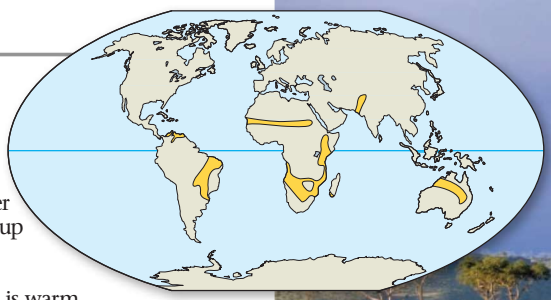
Human Impact Long-distance transport of water and deep groundwater wells have allowed humans to maintain substantial populations in deserts. Urbanization and conversion to irrigated agriculture have reduced the natural biodiversity of some deserts.

Organ Pipe Cactus National Monument, Arizona

Continued on next page

▼ Figure 52.13 Exploring Terrestrial Biomes (continued)

Savanna



Distribution Savanna occurs in equatorial and subequatorial regions.

Precipitation Seasonal rainfall averages 30–50 cm per year. The dry season can last up to eight or nine months.

Temperature The **savanna** is warm year-round, averaging 24–29°C, but with somewhat more seasonal variation than in tropical forests.

Plants The scattered trees found at different densities in the savanna often are thorny and have small leaves, an apparent adaptation to the relatively dry conditions. Fires are common in the dry season, and the dominant plant species are fire-adapted and tolerant of seasonal drought. Grasses and small nonwoody plants called forbs, which make up most of the ground cover, grow rapidly in response to seasonal rains and are tolerant of grazing by large mammals and other herbivores.

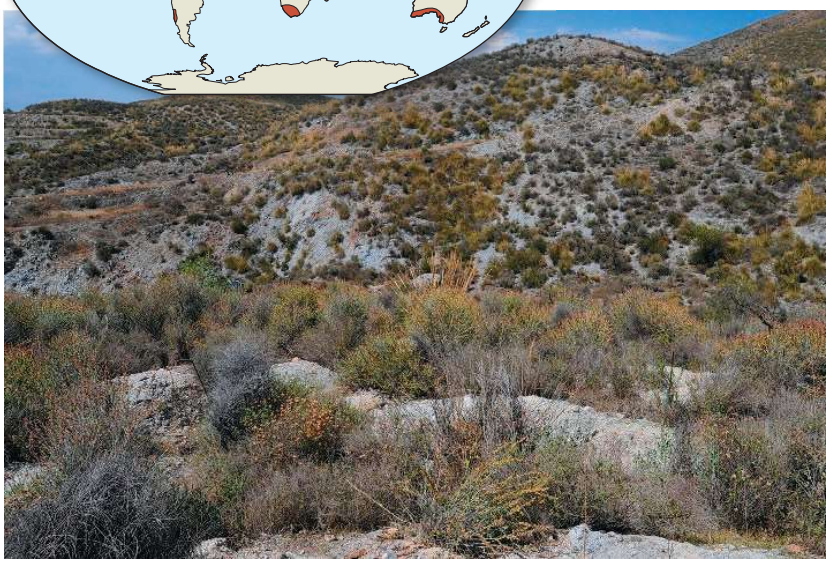
A savanna in Kenya

Animals Large plant-eating mammals, such as wildebeests and zebras, and predators, including lions and hyenas, are common inhabitants. However, the dominant herbivores are actually insects, especially termites. During seasonal droughts, grazing mammals often migrate to parts of the savanna with more forage and scattered watering holes.

Human Impact The earliest humans may have lived in savannas. Fires set by humans may help maintain this biome, though overly frequent fires reduce tree regeneration by killing the seedlings and saplings. Cattle ranching and overhunting have led to declines in large-mammal populations.

Chaparral

Distribution This biome occurs in midlatitude coastal regions on several continents, and its many names reflect its far-flung distribution: **chaparral** in North America, *matorral* in Spain and Chile, *garigue* and *maquis* in southern France, and *fynbos* in South Africa.



Precipitation Precipitation is highly seasonal, with rainy winters and dry summers. Annual precipitation generally falls within the range of 30–50 cm.

Temperature Fall, winter, and spring are cool, with average temperatures in the range of 10–12°C. Average summer temperature can reach 30°C, and daytime maximum temperature can exceed 40°C.

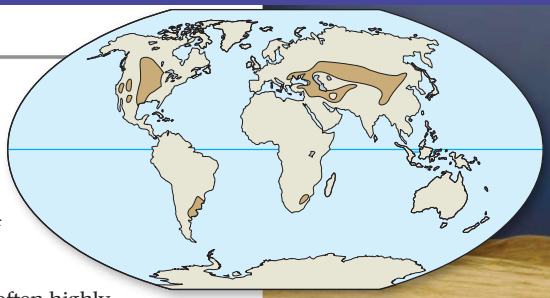
Plants Chaparral is dominated by shrubs and small trees, along with many kinds of grasses and herbs. Plant diversity is high, with many species confined to a specific, relatively small geographic area. Adaptations of the woody plants to drought include their tough evergreen leaves, which reduce water loss. Adaptations to fire are also prominent. Some of the shrubs produce seeds that will germinate only after a hot fire; food reserves stored in their fire-resistant roots enable them to resprout quickly and use nutrients released by the fire.

Animals Native mammals include browsers, such as deer and goats, that feed on twigs and buds of woody vegetation, and a high diversity of small mammals. Chaparral areas also support many species of amphibians, birds and other reptiles, and insects.

Human Impact Chaparral areas have been heavily settled and reduced through conversion to agriculture and urbanization. Humans contribute to the fires that sweep across the chaparral.

An area of chaparral in California

Temperate Grassland



Distribution The veldts of South Africa, the *puszta* of Hungary, the pampas of Argentina and Uruguay, the steppes of Russia, and the plains and prairies of central North America are examples of **temperate grasslands**.

Precipitation Precipitation is often highly seasonal, with relatively dry winters and wet summers. Annual precipitation generally averages between 30 and 100 cm. Periodic drought is common.

Temperature Winters are generally cold, with average temperatures falling below –10°C. Summers, with average temperatures often approaching 30°C, are hot.

Plants The dominant plants are grasses and forbs, which vary in height from a few centimeters to 2 m in tallgrass prairie. Many grassland plants have adaptations that help them survive periodic, protracted droughts and fire. For example, grasses can sprout quickly following fire. Grazing by large mammals helps prevent establishment of woody shrubs and trees.

A grassland in Mongolia

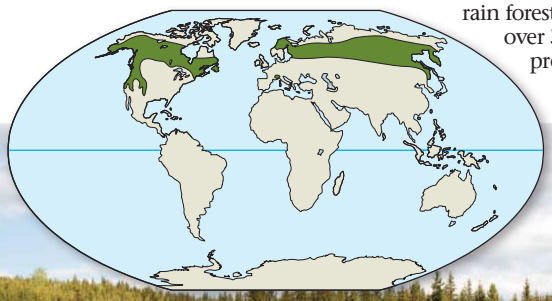
Animals Native mammals include large grazers such as bison and wild horses. Temperate grasslands are also inhabited by a wide variety of burrowing mammals, such as prairie dogs in North America.

Human Impact Deep, fertile soils make temperate grasslands ideal places for agriculture, especially for growing grains. As a consequence, most grassland in North America and much of Eurasia has been converted to farmland. In some drier grasslands, cattle and other grazers have turned parts of the biome into desert.

Northern Coniferous Forest

Distribution Extending in a broad band across northern North America and Eurasia to the edge of the arctic tundra, the **northern coniferous forest**, or *taiga*, is the largest terrestrial biome on Earth.

Precipitation Annual precipitation generally ranges from 30 to 70 cm, and periodic droughts are common. However, some coastal coniferous forests of the U.S. Pacific Northwest are temperate rain forests that may receive over 300 cm of annual precipitation.



Temperature Winters are usually cold; summers may be hot. Some areas of coniferous forest in Siberia typically range in temperature from –50°C in winter to over 20°C in summer.

Plants Northern coniferous forests are dominated by cone-bearing trees, such as pine, spruce, fir, and hemlock, some of which depend on fire to regenerate. The conical shape of many conifers prevents too much snow from accumulating and breaking their branches, and their needle- or scale-like leaves reduce water loss. The diversity of plants in the shrub and herb layers of these forests is lower than in temperate broadleaf forests.

Animals While many migratory birds nest in northern coniferous forests, other species reside there year-round. The mammals of this biome, which include moose, brown bears, and Siberian tigers, are diverse. Periodic outbreaks of insects that feed on the dominant trees can kill vast tracts of trees.

Human Impact Although they have not been heavily settled by human populations, northern coniferous forests are being logged at an alarming rate, and the old-growth stands of these trees may soon disappear.

A coniferous forest in Norway

Continued on next page

▼ Figure 52.13 Exploring Terrestrial Biomes (continued)

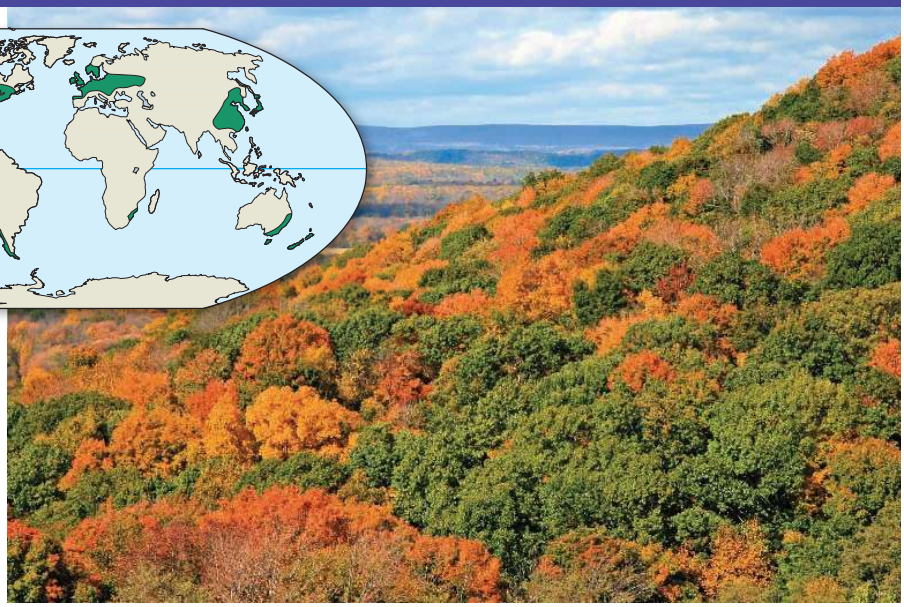
Temperate Broadleaf Forest

Distribution Temperate broadleaf forest is found mainly at midlatitudes in the Northern Hemisphere, with smaller areas in Chile, South Africa, Australia, and New Zealand.

Precipitation Precipitation can average from about 70 to over 200 cm annually. Significant amounts fall during all seasons, including summer rain and, in some forests, winter snow.

Temperature Winter temperatures average 0°C. Summers, with temperatures up to 35°C, are hot and humid.

Plants A mature **temperate broadleaf forest** has distinct vertical layers, including a closed canopy, one or two strata of understory trees, a shrub layer, and an herb layer. There are few epiphytes. The dominant plants in the Northern Hemisphere are deciduous trees, which drop their leaves before winter, when low temperatures would reduce photosynthesis and make water uptake from frozen soil difficult. In Australia, evergreen eucalyptus trees dominate these forests.



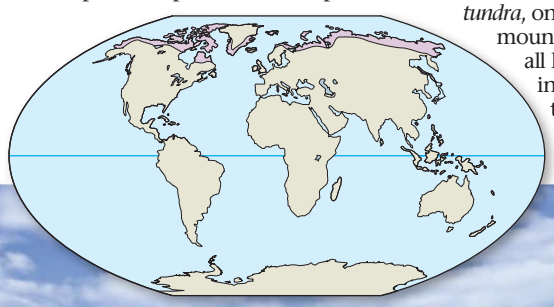
A temperate broadleaf forest in New Jersey

Animals In the Northern Hemisphere, many mammals hibernate in winter, while many bird species migrate to warmer climates. Mammals, birds, and insects make use of all the vertical layers of the forest.

Human Impact Temperate broadleaf forest has been heavily settled on all continents. Logging and land clearing for agriculture and urban development cleared virtually all the original deciduous forests in North America. However, owing to their capacity for recovery, these forests are returning over much of their former range.

Tundra

Distribution **Tundra** covers expansive areas of the Arctic, amounting to 20% of Earth's land surface. High winds and low temperatures produce similar plant communities, called *alpine tundra*, on very high mountaintops at all latitudes, including the tropics.



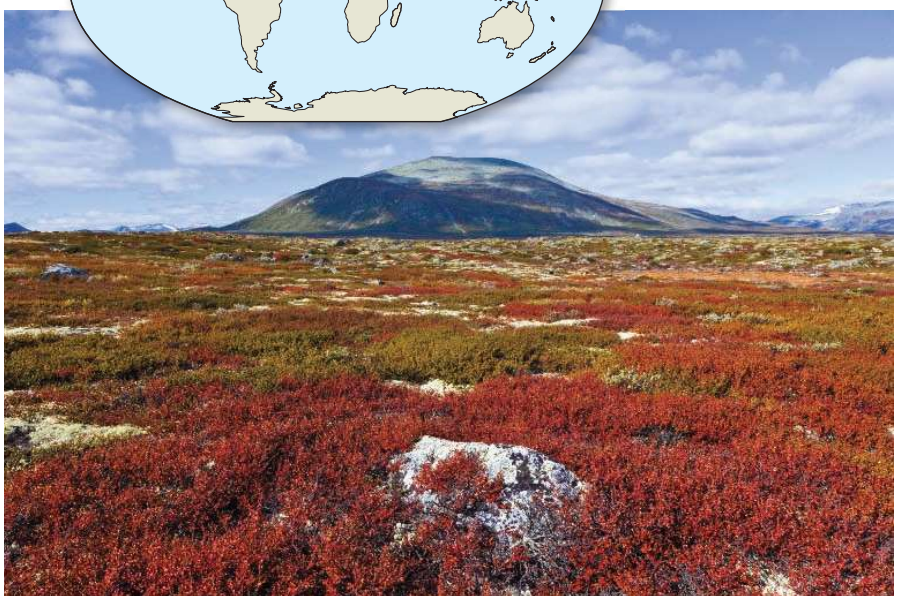
Precipitation Precipitation averages from 20 to 60 cm annually in arctic tundra but may exceed 100 cm in alpine tundra.

Temperature Winters are cold, with averages in some areas below –30°C. Summer temperatures generally average less than 10°C.

Plants The vegetation of tundra is mostly herbaceous, consisting of a mixture of mosses, grasses, and forbs, along with some dwarf shrubs and trees and lichens. A permanently frozen layer of soil called permafrost restricts the growth of plant roots.

Animals Large grazing musk oxen are resident, while caribou and reindeer are migratory. Predators include bears, wolves, and foxes. Many bird species migrate to the tundra for summer nesting.

Human Impact Tundra is sparsely settled but has become the focus of significant mineral and oil extraction in recent years.



Dovrefjell-Sunndalsfjella National Park, Norway, in autumn

CONCEPT 52.3

Aquatic biomes are diverse and dynamic systems that cover most of Earth

Unlike terrestrial biomes, aquatic biomes are characterized primarily by their physical and chemical environment. They also show far less latitudinal variation, with all types found across the globe. For example, marine biomes generally have salt concentrations that average 3%, whereas freshwater biomes are usually characterized by a salt concentration of less than 0.1%.

The oceans make up the largest marine biome, covering about 75% of Earth's surface. Because of their vast size, they greatly impact the biosphere. Water evaporated from the oceans provides most of the planet's rainfall. Marine algae and photosynthetic bacteria supply much of the world's oxygen and consume large amounts of atmospheric carbon dioxide. Ocean temperatures have a major effect on global climate and wind patterns (see Figure 52.3), and along with large lakes, oceans tend to moderate the climate of nearby land.

Freshwater biomes are closely linked to the soils and biotic components of the surrounding terrestrial biome. The particular characteristics of a freshwater biome are also influenced by the patterns and speed of water flow and the climate to which the biome is exposed.

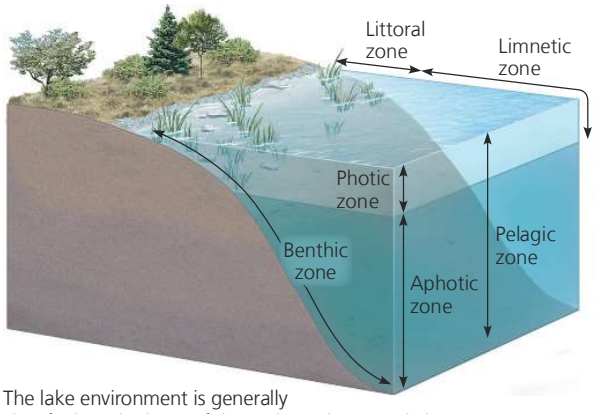
Zonation in Aquatic Biomes

Many aquatic biomes are physically and chemically stratified (layered), vertically and horizontally, as illustrated for both a lake and a marine environment in **Figure 52.14**. Light is absorbed by water and by photosynthetic organisms, so its intensity decreases rapidly with depth. The upper **photic zone** is the region where there is sufficient light for photosynthesis, while the lower **aphotic zone** is the region where little light penetrates. The photic and aphotic zones together make up the **pelagic zone**. Deep in the aphotic zone lies the **abyssal zone**, the part of the ocean 2,000–6,000 m below the surface. At the bottom of all of these aquatic zones, deep or shallow, is the **benthic zone**. Made up of sand and organic and inorganic sediments, the benthic zone is occupied by communities of organisms collectively called the **benthos**. A major source of food for many benthic species is dead organic matter called **detritus**, which "rains" down from the productive surface waters of the photic zone.

Thermal energy from sunlight warms surface waters to whatever depth the sunlight penetrates, but the deeper waters remain quite cold. In the ocean and in most lakes, a narrow layer of abrupt temperature change called a **thermocline** separates the more uniformly warm upper layer from more uniformly cold deeper waters. Lakes tend to be particularly layered with respect to temperature, especially during summer and winter, but many temperate lakes undergo a

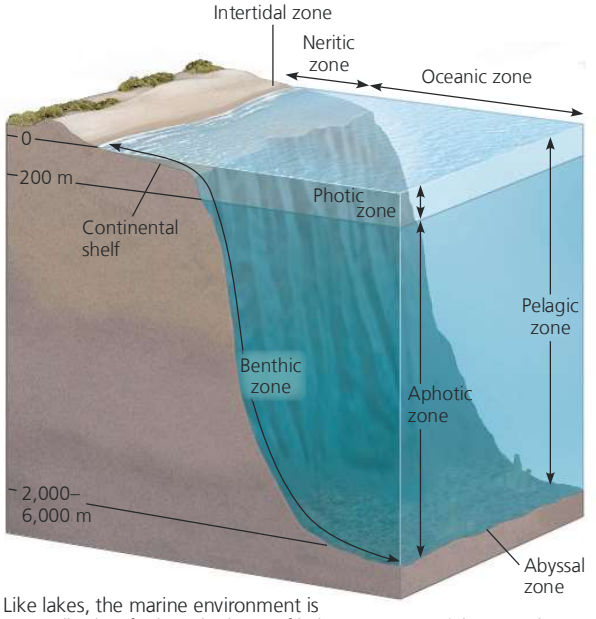
▼ **Figure 52.14** **Zonation in aquatic environments.**

(a) Zonation in a lake



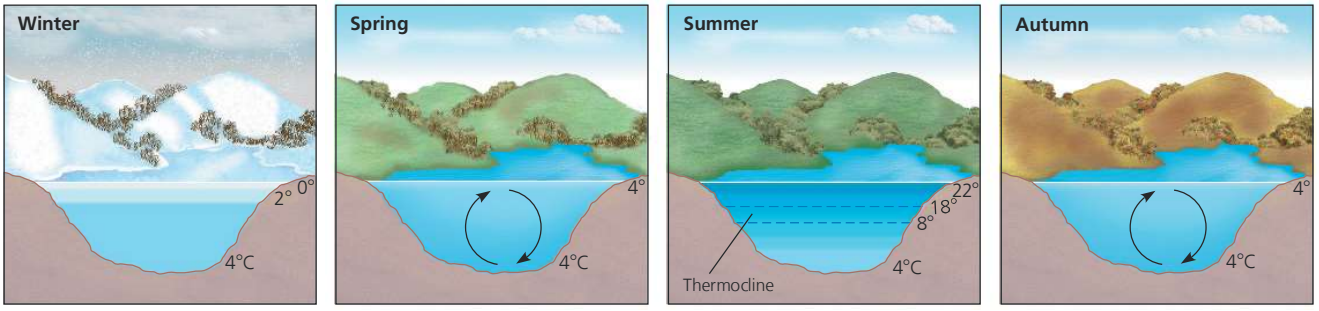
The lake environment is generally classified on the basis of three physical criteria: light penetration (photic and aphotic zones), distance from shore and water depth (littoral and limnetic zones), and whether the environment is open water (pelagic zone) or on the bottom (benthic zone).

(b) Marine zonation



Like lakes, the marine environment is generally classified on the basis of light penetration (photic and aphotic zones), distance from shore and water depth (intertidal, neritic, and oceanic zones), and whether the environment is open water (pelagic zone) or on the bottom (benthic and abyssal zones).

▼ **Figure 52.15 Seasonal turnover in lakes with winter ice cover.** Seasonal turnover causes the lake waters to be well oxygenated at all depths in spring and autumn; in winter and summer, when the lake is stratified by temperature, the oxygen concentration decreases with depth.



1. In winter, the coldest water in the lake (0°C) lies just below the surface ice; water becomes progressively warmer at deeper levels of the lake, typically 4°C at the bottom.
2. In spring, the surface water warms to 4°C and mixes with the layers below, eliminating thermal stratification. Spring winds help mix the water, bringing oxygen to the bottom and nutrients to the surface.
3. In summer, the lake regains a distinctive thermal profile, with warm surface water separated from cold bottom water by a narrow vertical zone of abrupt temperature change, called a thermocline.
4. In autumn, as surface water cools rapidly, it sinks beneath the underlying layers, remixing the water until the surface begins to freeze and the winter temperature profile is reestablished.

semiannual mixing of their waters as a result of changing temperature profiles **(Figure 52.15)**. This **turnover**, as it is called, sends oxygenated water from a lake's surface to the bottom and brings nutrient-rich water from the bottom to the surface in both spring and autumn.

In both freshwater and marine environments, communities are distributed according to water depth, degree of light penetration, distance from shore, and whether they are found in open water or near the bottom. Marine communities, in particular, illustrate the limitations on species distribution that result from these abiotic factors. Plankton and many fish species live in the relatively shallow photic zone (see Figure 52.14b). Because water absorbs light so well and the ocean is so deep, most of the ocean volume is dark (the aphotic zone) and harbors relatively little life.

Figure 52.16 explores the main characteristics of Earth's major aquatic biomes.

CONCEPT CHECK 52.3

1. Why are phytoplankton, and not benthic algae or rooted aquatic plants, the dominant photosynthetic organisms of the oceanic pelagic zone? (See Figure 52.16.)
2. **MAKE CONNECTIONS** Many organisms living in estuaries experience freshwater and saltwater conditions each day with the rising and falling of tides. Explain how these changing conditions challenge the survival of these organisms (see Concept 44.1).
3. **MAKE CONNECTIONS** As noted in Figure 52.16, the addition of nutrients to a lake can cause an algal bloom. When these algae die, complex molecules in their bodies are broken down by decomposers using aerobic respiration. Explain why this could reduce the lake's oxygen levels (see Concept 9.1).

For suggested answers, see Appendix A.

CONCEPT 52.4

Interactions between organisms and the environment limit the distribution of species

Broadly speaking, species distributions are a consequence of both ecological factors and evolutionary history. Consider kangaroos, which are found in Australia and nowhere else in the world. Fossil evidence indicates that kangaroos and their close relatives originated in Australia, roughly 5 million years ago. By that time, Australia had moved close to its present location (by continental drift; see Concept 25.4), and it was not connected to other landmasses. Thus, kangaroos occur only in Australia in part because of an accident of history: The kangaroo lineage originated there at a point in time when the continent was geographically isolated.

But ecological factors are also important. To date, kangaroos have not dispersed (on their own) to other continents; hence, they are restricted to the continent on which they originated. And within Australia, kangaroos are found in some habitats but not in others. The red kangaroo, for example, occurs in the arid grasslands of central Australia, but not in the tall, open forests of eastern Australia. Moreover, kangaroos are not unusual in this respect—all species are found in some habitats but not others. Hence, ecologists ask not only *where* species occur, but also *why* species occur where they do: What ecological factors—biotic and abiotic—determine their distribution?

In many cases, both biotic and abiotic factors affect the distribution of a species, as is true of the saguaro cactus (*Carnegiea gigantea*). Saguaros are found almost exclusively in the Sonoran Desert of the southwestern United States and

▼ Figure 52.16 Exploring Aquatic Biomes

Lakes

Physical Environment Standing bodies of water range from ponds a few square meters in area to lakes covering thousands of square kilometers. Light decreases with depth, creating stratification. Temperate lakes may have a seasonal thermocline; tropical lowland lakes have a thermocline year-round.

Chemical Environment The salinity, oxygen concentration, and nutrient content differ greatly among lakes and can vary with season. **Oligotrophic lakes** tend to be nutrient-poor and generally oxygen-rich; **eutrophic lakes** are nutrient-rich and often depleted of oxygen in the deepest zone in summer and if covered with ice in winter. The amount of decomposable organic matter in bottom sediments is low in oligotrophic lakes and high in eutrophic lakes; high rates of decomposition in deeper layers of eutrophic lakes cause periodic oxygen depletion.

Geologic Features Oligotrophic lakes tend to have less surface area relative to their depth than eutrophic lakes. Oligotrophic lakes may become more eutrophic over time as runoff adds sediments and nutrients.

Photosynthetic Organisms Rooted and floating aquatic plants in lakes live in the **littoral zone**, the shallow, well-lit waters close to shore. Farther from shore, where water is too deep to support rooted aquatic plants, the **limnetic zone** is inhabited by a variety of phytoplankton, including cyanobacteria.

An oligotrophic lake in Jasper National Park, Alberta

Heterotrophs In the limnetic zone, small drifting heterotrophs, or zooplankton, graze on the phytoplankton. The benthic zone is inhabited by assorted invertebrates whose species composition depends partly on oxygen levels. Fishes live in all zones with sufficient oxygen.

A eutrophic lake in the Okavango Delta, Botswana

Human Impact Runoff from fertilized land and dumping of wastes lead to nutrient enrichment, which can produce large numbers of algae (an algal "bloom") oxygen depletion, and fish kills.

Wetlands

Physical Environment A **wetland** is a habitat that is inundated by water at least some of the time and that supports plants adapted to water-saturated soil. Some wetlands are inundated at all times, whereas others flood infrequently.

Chemical Environment Because of high organic production by plants and decomposition by microbes and other organisms, both the water and the soils are periodically low in dissolved oxygen. Wetlands have a high capacity to filter dissolved nutrients and chemical pollutants.

Geologic Features *Basin wetlands* develop in shallow basins, ranging from upland depressions to filled-in lakes and ponds. *Riverine wetlands* develop along shallow and periodically flooded banks of rivers and streams. *Fringe wetlands* occur along the coasts of large lakes and seas, where water flows back and forth because of rising lake levels or tidal action. Thus, fringe wetlands include both freshwater and marine biomes.

Photosynthetic Organisms Wetlands are among the most productive biomes on Earth. Their water-saturated soils favor the growth of plants such as pond lilies and cattails, many sedges, bald cypress, and black spruce, which have adaptations enabling them to grow in water or in soil that is periodically anaerobic owing to the presence of unaerated water. Woody plants dominate the vegetation of swamps, while bogs are dominated by sphagnum mosses.

Heterotrophs Wetlands are home to a diverse community of invertebrates, birds, and many other organisms. Herbivores, from crustaceans and aquatic insect larvae to muskrats, consume algae, detritus, and plants. Carnivores are also varied and may include dragonflies, otters, frogs, alligators, and herons.

Human Impact Wetlands help purify water and reduce peak flooding. Draining and filling have destroyed up to 90% of wetlands in Europe.

A basin wetland in the United Kingdom

Continued on next page

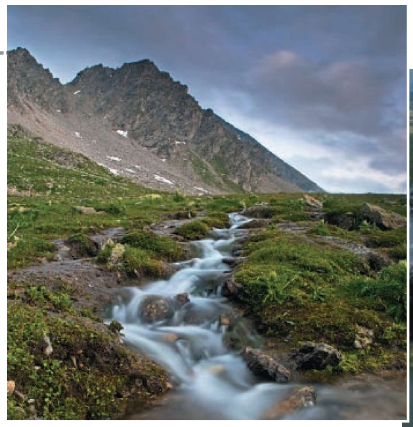
▼ Figure 52.16 Exploring Aquatic Biomes (continued)

Streams and Rivers

Physical Environment The most prominent physical characteristic of streams and rivers is the speed and volume of their flow. Headwater streams are generally cold, clear, swift, and turbulent. Farther downstream, where numerous tributaries may have joined, forming a river, the water is generally warmer and more turbid because of suspended sediment. Streams and rivers are stratified into vertical zones.

Chemical Environment The salt and nutrient content of streams and rivers increases from the headwaters to the mouth. Headwaters are generally rich in oxygen. Downstream water may also contain substantial oxygen, except where there has been organic enrichment. A large fraction of the organic matter in rivers consists of dissolved or highly fragmented material that is carried by the current from forested streams.

Geologic Features Headwater stream channels are often narrow, have a rocky bottom, and alternate between shallow sections and deeper pools. The downstream stretches of rivers are generally wide and meandering. River bottoms are often silty from sediments deposited over long periods of time.



A headwater stream in Washington

Photosynthetic Organisms Headwater streams that flow through grasslands or deserts may be rich in phytoplankton or rooted aquatic plants.

Heterotrophs A great diversity of fishes and invertebrates inhabit unpolluted rivers and streams, distributed according to, and throughout, the vertical zones. In streams flowing through temperate or tropical forests, organic matter from terrestrial vegetation is the primary source of food for aquatic consumers.

The Loire River in France, far from its headwaters

Human Impact Municipal, agricultural, and industrial pollution degrade water quality and kill aquatic organisms. Damming and flood control impair the natural functioning of stream and river ecosystems and threaten migratory species such as salmon.

Estuaries

Physical Environment An **estuary** is a transition area between river and sea. Seawater flows up the estuary channel during a rising tide and flows back down during the falling tide. Often, higher-density seawater occupies the bottom of the channel and mixes little with the lower-density river water at the surface.

Chemical Environment Salinity varies spatially within estuaries, from nearly that of fresh water to that of seawater. Salinity also varies with the rise and fall of the tides. Nutrients from the river make estuaries, like wetlands, among the most productive biomes.

Geologic Features Estuarine flow patterns combined with the sediments carried by river and tidal waters create a complex network of tidal channels, islands, natural levees, and mudflats.

Photosynthetic Organisms Saltmarsh grasses and algae, including phytoplankton, are the major producers in estuaries.

Heterotrophs Estuaries support an abundance of worms, oysters, crabs, and many fish species that humans consume. Many marine invertebrates and fishes use estuaries as a breeding ground or migrate through them to freshwater habitats upstream. Estuaries are also crucial feeding areas for waterfowl and some marine mammals.

Human Impact Filling, dredging, and pollution from upstream have disrupted estuaries worldwide.

An estuary in southern Spain

Intertidal Zones

Physical Environment An **intertidal zone** is periodically submerged and exposed by the tides, twice daily on most marine shores. Upper zones experience longer exposures to air and greater variations in temperature and salinity. Changes in physical conditions from the upper to the lower intertidal zones limit the distributions of many organisms to particular strata, as shown in the photograph.

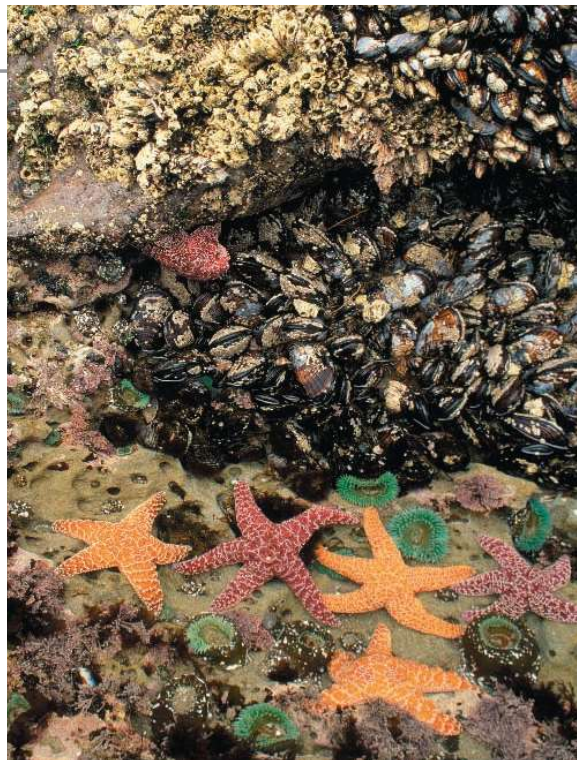
Chemical Environment Oxygen and nutrient levels are generally high and are renewed with each turn of the tides.

Geologic Features The substrates of intertidal zones, which are generally either rocky or sandy, select for particular behavior and anatomy among intertidal organisms. The configuration of bays or coastlines influences the magnitude of tides and the relative exposure of intertidal organisms to wave action.

Photosynthetic Organisms A high diversity and biomass of attached marine algae inhabit rocky intertidal zones, especially in the lower zone. Sandy intertidal zones exposed to vigorous wave action generally lack attached plants or algae, while sandy intertidal zones in protected bays or lagoons often support rich beds of seagrass and algae.

Heterotrophs Many of the animals in rocky intertidal environments have structural adaptations that enable them to attach to the hard substrate. The composition, density, and diversity of animals change markedly from the upper to the lower intertidal zones. Many of the animals in sandy or muddy intertidal zones, such as worms, clams, and predatory crustaceans, bury themselves and feed as the tides bring sources of food. Other common animals are sponges, sea anemones, echinoderms, and small fishes.

Human Impact Oil pollution has disrupted many intertidal areas. The construction of rock walls and barriers to reduce erosion from waves and storm surges has disrupted this zone in some locations.



A rocky intertidal zone on the Oregon coast

Oceanic Pelagic Zone

Physical Environment The **oceanic pelagic zone** is a vast realm of open blue water, constantly mixed by wind driven oceanic currents. Because of higher water clarity, the photic zone extends to greater depths than in coastal marine waters.

Chemical Environment Oxygen levels are generally high. Nutrient concentrations are generally lower than in coastal waters. Because they are thermally stratified year-round, some tropical areas of the oceanic pelagic zone have lower nutrient concentrations than temperate oceans. Turnover between fall and spring renews nutrients in the photic zones of temperate and high-latitude ocean areas.

Geologic Features This biome covers approximately 70% of Earth's surface and has an average depth of nearly 4,000 m. The deepest point in the ocean is more than 10,000 m beneath the surface.

Photosynthetic Organisms The dominant photosynthetic organisms are phytoplankton, including photosynthetic bacteria, that drift with the oceanic currents. Spring turnover renews nutrients in temperate oceans, producing a surge of phytoplankton growth. Because of this biome's large size, photosynthetic plankton account for about half of the photosynthetic activity on Earth.

Heterotrophs The most abundant heterotrophs in this biome are zooplankton. These protists, worms, copepods, shrimp-like krill, jellies, and small larvae of invertebrates and fishes graze on photosynthetic plankton. The oceanic pelagic zone also includes numerous free-swimming animals, such as large squids, fishes, sea turtles, and marine mammals.

Human Impact Overfishing has depleted fish stocks in all Earth's oceans; marine life has also been harmed by pollution, ocean acidification, and global warming.

Continued on next page

Open ocean near Iceland

▼ Figure 52.16 Exploring Aquatic Biomes (continued)

Coral Reefs

Physical Environment **Coral reefs** are formed largely from the calcium carbonate skeletons of corals. Shallow reef-building corals live in the photic zone of relatively stable tropical marine environments with high water clarity, primarily near islands and along the edge of some continents. They are sensitive to temperatures below about 18–20°C and above 30°C. Deep-sea coral reefs, found between 200 and 1,500 m deep, are less known than their shallow counterparts but harbor as much diversity as many shallow reefs do.

Chemical Environment Corals require high oxygen levels and are excluded by high inputs of fresh water and nutrients.

Geologic Features Corals require a solid substrate for attachment. A typical coral reef begins as a *fringing reef* on a young, high island, forming an offshore *barrier reef* later in the history of the island and becoming a *coral atoll* as the older island submerges.

Photosynthetic Organisms Unicellular algae live within the tissues of the corals, forming a mutualistic relationship that provides the corals with organic molecules. Diverse multicellular red and green algae growing on the reef also contribute substantial amounts of photosynthesis.

A coral reef in the Red Sea

Heterotrophs Corals, a diverse group of cnidarians, are themselves the predominant animals on coral reefs. However, fish and invertebrate diversity is exceptionally high. Overall animal diversity on coral reefs rivals that of tropical forests.

Human Impact Collecting of coral skeletons and overfishing have reduced populations of corals and reef fishes. Global warming and pollution may be contributing to large-scale coral death. Development of coastal mangroves for aquaculture has also reduced spawning grounds for many species of reef fishes.

Marine Benthic Zone

Physical Environment The **marine benthic zone** consists of the seafloor below the surface waters of the coastal, or **neritic**, zone and the offshore pelagic zone. Except for shallow, near-coastal areas, the marine benthic zone receives no sunlight. Water temperature declines with depth, while pressure increases. As a result, organisms in the very deep benthic, or abyssal, zone are adapted to continuous cold (about 3°C) and very high water pressure.

Chemical Environment Except in areas of organic enrichment, oxygen is usually present at sufficient concentrations to support diverse animal life.

Geologic Features Soft sediments cover most of the benthic zone. However, there are areas of rocky substrate on reefs, submarine mountains, and new oceanic crust.

Autotrophs Photosynthetic organisms, mainly algae, are limited to shallow benthic areas with sufficient light to support them. Unique assemblages of organisms live near deep-sea **hydrothermal vents** on mid-ocean ridges. In these dark, hot environments, the food producers are chemoautotrophic prokaryotes that obtain energy by oxidizing H_2S formed by a reaction of the hot water with dissolved sulfate (SO_4^{2-}).

Heterotrophs Neritic benthic communities include numerous invertebrates and fishes. Beyond the photic zone, most consumers depend entirely on organic matter raining down from above. Among the animals of the deep-sea hydrothermal vent communities are giant tube worms (pictured), some more than 1 m long. They are nourished by chemoautotrophic prokaryotes that live as symbionts within their bodies. Many other invertebrates, including arthropods and echinoderms, are also abundant around the vents.

Human Impact Overfishing has decimated important benthic fish populations, such as the cod of the Grand Banks off Newfoundland. Dumping of organic wastes has created oxygen-deprived benthic areas.

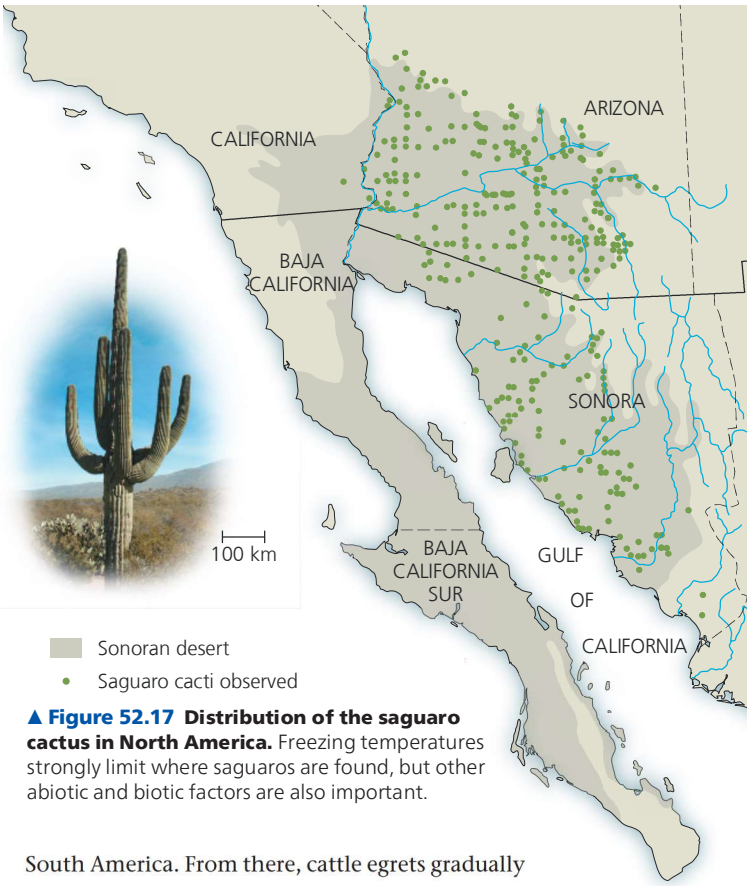
A deep-sea hydrothermal vent community

Mastering Biology **Video: Tubeworms**

northwestern Mexico **(Figure 52.17)**. To the north, their range is limited by an abiotic factor: temperature. Saguaros tolerate freezing temperatures only briefly, typically for less than a day, and generally cannot survive at temperatures below –4°C (25°F). For the same reason, saguaros are rarely found at elevations above 1,200 m (4,000 feet).

However, temperature alone does not fully explain the distribution of saguaros, including why they are missing from the western portion of the Sonoran Desert. Water availability is critical because seedling survival typically requires consecutive years of moist conditions, something that may occur only a few times each century. Biotic factors almost certainly influence their distribution as well. Mice and grazers such as goats eat the seedlings, and bats pollinate the large, white flowers that open at night. Saguaros are also vulnerable to a deadly bacterial disease. Thus, for the saguaro, as for most other species, ecologists need to consider multiple factors and alternative hypotheses when attempting to explain the distribution of a species.

To see how ecologists might arrive at such an explanation, let's examine the ecological factors highlighted by the questions in the flowchart in **Figure 52.18**.



▲ Figure 52.17 Distribution of the saguaro cactus in North America. Freezing temperatures strongly limit where saguaros are found, but other abiotic and biotic factors are also important.

Dispersal and Distribution

One factor that contributes greatly to the global distribution of organisms is **dispersal**, the movement of individuals or gametes away from their area of origin or from centers of high population density. For example, while land-bound kangaroos have not reached Africa under their own power, other organisms that disperse more readily, such as some birds, have. The dispersal of organisms is critical to understanding the role of geographic isolation in evolution (see Concept 24.2) as well as the patterns of species distribution we see today, including that of the Pacific diatom discussed earlier in this chapter.

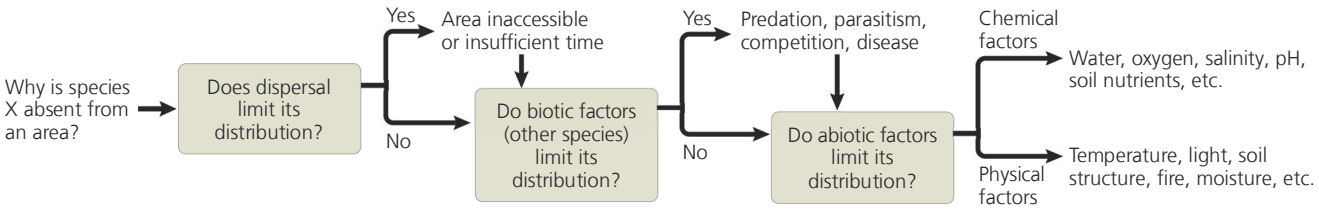
Natural Range Expansions and Adaptive Radiation

The importance of dispersal is most evident when organisms reach an area where they did not exist previously, called a *range expansion*. For instance, 200 years ago, the cattle egret (*Bubulcus ibis*) was found only in Africa and southwestern Europe. But in the late 1800s, some of these birds managed to cross the Atlantic Ocean and colonize northeastern South America. From there, cattle egrets gradually spread southward and also northward through Central America and into North America, reaching Florida by 1960 **(Figure 52.19)**. Today they have breeding populations as far west as the Pacific coast of the United States and as far north as southern Canada.

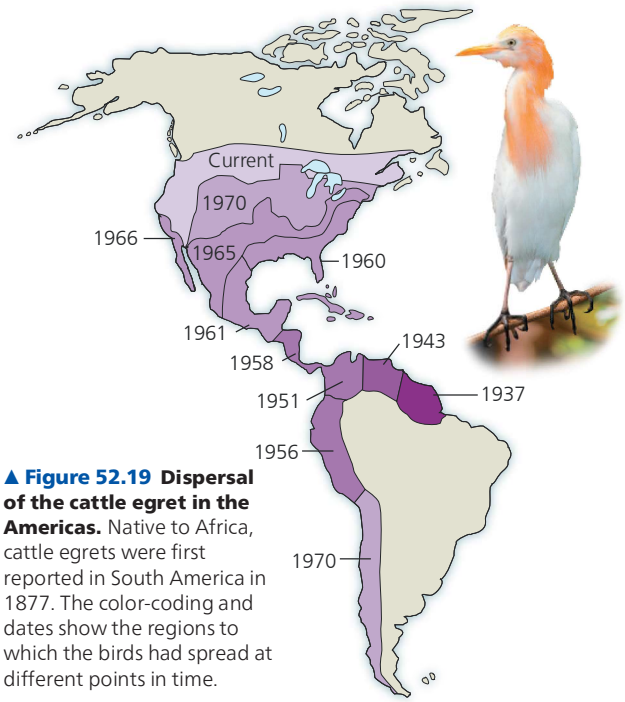
In rare cases, such long-distance dispersal can lead to adaptive radiation, the rapid evolution of an ancestral species into new species that fill many ecological niches. The diversity of Hawaiian silverswords is one example of adaptive radiation that was possible only with the long-distance dispersal of an ancestral tarweed from North America (see Figure 25.22).

Natural range expansions clearly show the influence of dispersal on distribution. However, opportunities to observe such dispersal directly are rare, so ecologists often turn to experimental methods to better understand the role of dispersal in limiting the distribution of species.

▼ Figure 52.18 Flowchart of factors limiting geographic distribution. An ecologist studying factors limiting a species' distribution might consider questions like these. As suggested by the arrows leading from the "Yes" responses, the ecologist would answer all of these questions because more than one factor can limit a species' distribution.



? *How might the importance of various abiotic factors differ for aquatic and terrestrial ecosystems?*



▲ **Figure 52.19 Dispersal of the cattle egret in the Americas.** Native to Africa, cattle egrets were first reported in South America in 1877. The color-coding and dates show the regions to which the birds had spread at different points in time.

Species Transplants

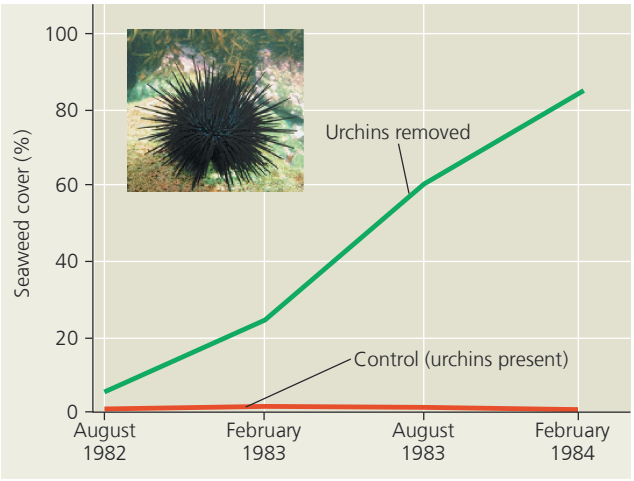
To determine if dispersal is a key factor limiting the distribution of a species, ecologists may observe the results of intentional or accidental transplants of the species to areas where it was previously absent. For a transplant to be successful, some of the organisms must not only survive in the new area but also reproduce there sustainably. If a transplant is successful, then we can conclude that the *potential* range of the species is larger than its *actual* range; in other words, the species *could* live in certain areas where it currently does not.

In some cases, species introduced to new geographic locations have disrupted the communities and ecosystems to which they have been introduced (see Concept 56.1). Consequently, ecologists rarely move species to new regions. Instead, they document the outcome when a species reaches a new region in other ways, such as when a predator is introduced to control a pest species or when a species has been moved accidentally to the area.

Biotic Factors

Our next question is whether biotic factors—other species—limit the distribution of a species. Often, the ability of a species to survive and reproduce is reduced by its interactions with other species, such as predators (organisms that kill their prey) or herbivores (organisms that eat plants or algae). **Figure 52.20** shows how an herbivore, the long-spined sea urchin (*Centrostephanus rodgersii*), has affected the distribution of a food species. In certain marine ecosystems, there is often an inverse relationship between the abundance of sea urchins and seaweeds (multicellular algae, such as kelp). Where urchins that graze on seaweeds and other algae are common, large stands of seaweeds do not become established. As shown in Figure 52.20, Australian

▼ **Figure 52.20 Effects of feeding by sea urchins on seaweed distribution.** Seaweed abundance in areas from which the long-spined sea urchin (*Centrostephanus rodgersii*) had been removed was much higher than seaweed abundance in adjacent control sites from which the urchin was not removed.



researchers tested whether *C. rodgersii* is a biotic factor limiting seaweed distribution. When this urchin was removed from experimental plots, seaweed cover increased dramatically, showing that *C. rodgersii* limited the distribution of seaweeds.

In addition to predation and herbivory, the presence or absence of pollinators, food resources, parasites, pathogens, and competing organisms can act as a biotic limitation on species distribution. Such biotic limitations are common in nature.

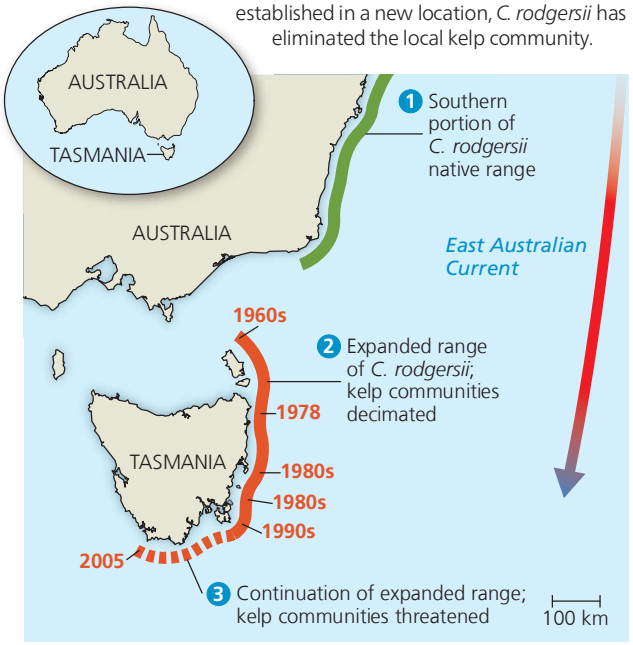
Abiotic Factors

The last question in the flowchart in Figure 52.18 considers whether abiotic factors, such as temperature, water, oxygen, salinity, sunlight, or soil, might be limiting a species' distribution. If the physical conditions at a site do not allow a species to survive and reproduce, then the species will not be found there. Throughout this discussion, keep in mind that most abiotic factors vary substantially over space and time. Daily and annual fluctuations of abiotic factors may either blur or accentuate regional distinctions. Furthermore, organisms can avoid some stressful conditions temporarily through behaviors such as dormancy or hibernation (see Concept 40.4).

Temperature

Environmental temperature is an important factor in the distribution of organisms because of its effect on biological processes. Cells may rupture if the water they contain freezes (at temperatures below 0°C), and the proteins of most organisms denature at temperatures above 45°C. Organisms typically function best within a specific range of environmental temperature. Temperatures outside that range may force some animals to expend energy regulating their internal temperature, as mammals and birds do (see Figure 40.16). Extraordinary adaptations

▼ Figure 52.21 A sea urchin's expanding range. Since the 1950s, water temperatures along the coast of Tasmania have increased, allowing the sea urchin *C. rodgersii* to expand its range to the south. The bold orange type indicates the years when *C. rodgersii* was first observed colonizing those locations. Once its population has been established in a new location, *C. rodgersii* has eliminated the local kelp community.



enable certain organisms, such as thermophilic prokaryotes, to live outside the temperature range habitable by other life.

As mentioned earlier, climate change has already caused hundreds of species to alter their geographic ranges. A shift in the range of one species can also have profound effects on the distribution of other species. Consider how rising sea temperatures have affected the geographic range of the sea urchin *C. rodgersii*. Since 1950, water temperatures along the coast of Tasmania, an island south of mainland Australia, have increased from 11.5°C to 12.5°C. This has enabled *C. rodgersii*—whose larvae fail to develop properly if temperatures drop below 12°C—to expand its range to the south **(Figure 52.21)**. The urchin is a voracious consumer of kelp and other algae. As a result, algal communities that once harbored a rich diversity of other species have been completely destroyed in regions where the urchin has become well established (denoted by a solid orange line in Figure 52.21).

Water and Oxygen

The dramatic variation in water availability among habitats is another important factor in species distribution. Species living at the seashore or in tidal wetlands can desiccate (dry out) as the tide recedes. Terrestrial organisms face a nearly constant threat of desiccation, and the distribution of terrestrial species reflects their ability to obtain and conserve water. Many amphibians, such as the tiny frog in Figure 52.1, are particularly vulnerable to drying because they use their moist, delicate skin for gas exchange. Desert organisms exhibit a variety of adaptations for acquiring and conserving water in dry environments, as described in Concept 44.4.

Water affects oxygen availability in aquatic environments and in flooded soils, where the slow diffusion of oxygen in water can limit cellular respiration and other physiological processes. Oxygen concentrations can be particularly low in deep ocean and deep lake waters, as well as in sediments where organic matter is abundant. Flooded wetland soils may also have low oxygen content. Mangroves and other trees have specialized roots that project above the water and help the root system obtain oxygen (see Figure 35.4). Unlike many flooded wetlands, the surface waters of streams and rivers tend to be well oxygenated because of rapid exchange of gases with the atmosphere.

Salinity

The salt concentration of water in the environment affects the water balance of organisms through osmosis. Most aquatic organisms are restricted to either freshwater or saltwater habitats by their limited ability to osmoregulate (see Concept 44.1). Most terrestrial organisms can excrete excess salts from specialized glands or in feces or urine. However, the salt concentrations in some habitats (such as salt flats) are so high that few species of plants or animals can survive there **(Figure 52.22)**. In the **Scientific Skills Exercise**, you can interpret data from an experiment investigating the influence of salinity on plant distributions.

Salmon that migrate between freshwater streams and the ocean use both behavioral and physiological mechanisms to osmoregulate. They balance their salt content by adjusting the amount of water they drink and by switching their gills from taking up salt in fresh water to excreting salt in the ocean.

Sunlight

Sunlight provides the energy that drives most ecosystems, and too little sunlight can limit the distribution of photosynthetic species. In forests, shading by leaves makes competition for light especially intense, particularly for seedlings growing on the forest floor. In aquatic environments, every meter of water depth absorbs about 45% of the red light and about 2% of the blue light passing through it. Thus, most photosynthesis occurs relatively near the water surface.

▼ Figure 52.22 Salar de Uyuni, in Bolivia, the largest salt flat in the world. Aside from the flamingos that breed there annually, very few animals or plants inhabit the vast expanse of crusty white salt.

Scientific Skills Exercise

Making a Bar Graph and a Line Graph to Interpret Data

How Do Salinity and Competition Affect the Distribution of Plants in an Estuary? Field observations show that *Spartina patens* (salt marsh hay) is a dominant plant in salt marshes and *Typha angustifolia* (cattail) is a dominant plant in freshwater marshes. In this exercise, you will graph and interpret data from an experiment that examined the influence of an abiotic factor, salinity, and a biotic factor, competition, on the growth of these two species.

How the Experiment Was Done Researchers planted *S. patens* and *T. angustifolia* in salt marshes and freshwater marshes with and without neighboring plants. After two growing seasons (1.5 years), they measured the biomass of each species in each treatment. The researchers also grew both species in a greenhouse at six salinity levels and measured the biomass at each level after eight weeks.

▲ *Spartina patens*

▲ *Typha angustifolia*

Data from the Field Experiment (averages of 16 replicate samples)

	Average Biomass (g/100 cm^2)			
	Spartina patens		*Typha angustifolia*	
	Salt Marshes	Freshwater Marshes	Salt Marshes	Freshwater Marshes
With neighbors	8	3	0	18
Without neighbors	10	20	0	33

Data from the Greenhouse Experiment

Salinity (parts per thousand)	0	20	40	60	80	100
% maximum biomass (*S. patens*)	77	40	29	17	9	0
% maximum biomass (*T. angustifolia*)	80	20	10	0	0	0

Data from C. M. Crain et al., Physical and biotic drivers of plant distribution across estuarine salinity gradients, *Ecology* 85:2539–2549 (2004).

INTERPRET THE DATA

1. Make a bar graph of the data from the field experiment. (For additional information about graphs, see the Scientific Skills Review in Appendix D.) What do these data indicate about the salinity tolerances of *S. patens* and *T. angustifolia*?
2. What do the data from the field experiment indicate about the effect of competition on the growth of these two species? Which species was limited more by competition?
3. Make a line graph of the data from the greenhouse experiment. Decide which values constitute the dependent and independent variables, and use these values to set up the axes of your graph.
4. **(a)** In the field, *S. patens* is typically absent from freshwater marshes. Based on the data, does this appear to be due to salinity or competition? Explain your answer. **(b)** *T. angustifolia* does not grow in salt marshes. Does this appear to be due to salinity or competition? Explain your answer.

Instructors: A version of this Scientific Skills Exercise can be assigned in **Mastering Biology**.

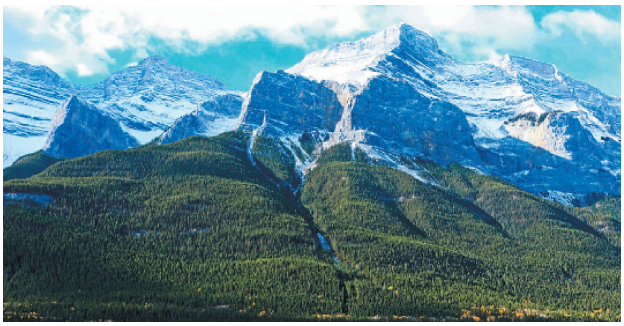
Too much light can also limit the survival of organisms. In some ecosystems, such as deserts, high light levels can increase temperature stress if animals and plants are unable to avoid the light or to cool themselves through evaporation (see Figure 40.12). At high elevations, the sun's rays are more likely to damage DNA and proteins because the atmosphere is thinner, absorbing less ultraviolet (UV) radiation. Damage from UV radiation, combined with other abiotic stresses, prevents trees from surviving above a certain elevation, resulting in the appearance of a tree line on mountain slopes **(Figure 52.23)**.

Rocks and Soil

In terrestrial environments, the pH, mineral composition, and physical structure of rocks and soil limit the distribution of plants and thus of the animals that feed on them, contributing to the patchiness of terrestrial ecosystems. The pH of soil can limit the distribution of organisms directly, through extreme acidic or basic conditions, or indirectly, by affecting the solubility of toxins and nutrients. Soil phosphorus, for instance, is relatively insoluble in basic soils and precipitates into forms unavailable to plants.

In a river, the composition of rocks and soil that make up the substrate (riverbed) can affect water chemistry, which in turn influences the resident organisms. In freshwater and marine environments, the structure of the substrate determines the organisms that can attach to it or burrow into it.

▼ Figure 52.23 Alpine tree line in Banff National Park, Canada. Organisms living at high elevations are exposed not only to high levels of ultraviolet radiation but also to freezing temperatures, moisture deficits, and strong winds. Above the tree line, the combination of such factors restricts the growth and survival of trees.



CONCEPT CHECK 52.4

1. Describe human actions that could expand a species' range by changing its (a) dispersal or (b) biotic interactions.
2. **WHAT IF?** You suspect that deer are restricting the distribution of a tree species by preferentially eating the seedlings of the tree. How might you test this hypothesis?
3. **MAKE CONNECTIONS** Hawaiian silverswords underwent a remarkable adaptive radiation after their ancestor reached Hawaii, while the islands were still young (see Figure 25.23). Would you expect the cattle egret to undergo a similar adaptive radiation in the Americas (see Figure 52.19)? Explain.

For suggested answers, see Appendix A.

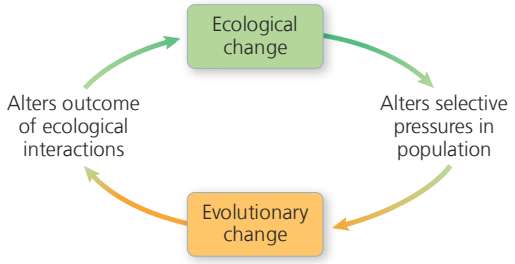
CONCEPT 52.5

Ecological change and evolution affect one another over long and short periods of time

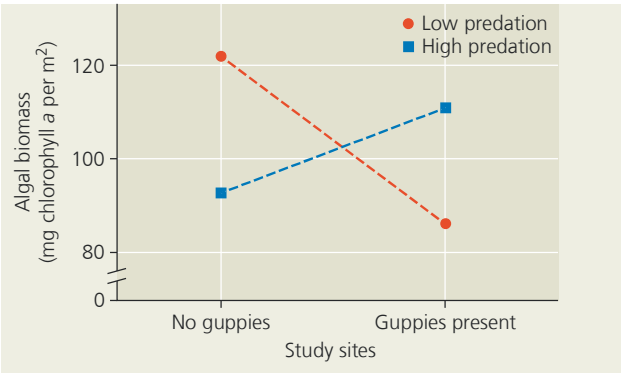
Biologists have long recognized that ecological interactions can cause evolutionary change, and vice versa **(Figure 52.24)**. The history of life includes many examples of these reciprocal effects occurring over long periods of time. Consider the origin and diversification of plants. As described in Concept 29.3, the evolutionary origin of plants altered the chemical cycling of carbon, leading to the removal of large quantities of carbon dioxide from the atmosphere. As the adaptive radiation of plants continued over time, the appearance of new plant species provided new habitats and new sources of food for insects and other animals. In turn, the availability of new habitats and new food sources stimulated bursts of speciation in animals, leading to further ecological changes. Here, as in many other such examples, ecological and evolutionary changes had ongoing and major effects upon one another.

The interplay between ecological and evolutionary change illustrated by the origin of plants occurred over millions of years. Reciprocal "eco-evolutionary" effects occurring over centuries or thousands of years are also well documented, as in the examples of the mosquitofish and the apple maggot fly discussed in Concept 24.2. But are such joint effects common over even shorter periods of time? As we've seen in previous chapters, ecological change can cause evolutionary change over the course of a few years to decades; examples include beak length evolution in soapberry bugs (see Figure 22.13) and the formation of new sunflower species (see Figure 24.18).

▼ Figure 52.24 Reciprocal effects of ecological and evolutionary change. An ecological change, such as the expansion of a predator's range, can alter the selective pressures faced by prey populations. This could cause evolutionary change, such as an increase in the frequency of a new defensive mechanism in a prey population; that change, in turn, could alter the outcome of ecological interactions.



▼ Figure 52.25 Rapid evolution leading to rapid ecological change. Dotted lines connect algal abundance at control sites (with no guppies) to algal abundance at nearby sites in the same streams inhabited by guppies that had evolved under either low or high levels of predation.



Recent studies show that the causation can run both ways: Rapid evolution can also cause rapid ecological change. For example, Trinidadian guppy (*Poecilia reticulata*) populations evolve rapidly when predators are removed: Guppy color patterns, jaw morphology, and feeding preferences all change within a few years. In 2017, researchers showed that these rapid evolutionary changes affect the stream ecosystems in which the guppies live. For instance, guppies that had evolved under different levels of predation had contrasting effects on algal abundance **(Figure 52.25)**. Guppies that had evolved under low predation fed primarily on algae (thereby reducing algal abundance), while guppies that had evolved under high predation fed primarily on invertebrates (thereby tending to increase algal abundance because some invertebrates eat algae). As producers, algae are key components of the ecosystem: Other organisms depend on them for food, either directly (by eating them) or indirectly (by eating an organism that ate algae). Overall, this and other studies show that ecological change and evolution have the potential to exert rapid feedback effects on each other.

CONCEPT CHECK 52.5

1. Describe a scenario showing how ecological change and evolution can affect one another.
2. **MAKE CONNECTIONS** Fisheries target older, larger cod fish, causing cod that reproduce at a younger age and smaller size to be favored by natural selection. Younger, smaller cod have fewer offspring than do older cod. Predict how evolution in response to fishing would affect the ability of a cod population to recover from overfishing. What other reciprocal eco-evolutionary effects might occur? (See Concept 23.3.)

For suggested answers, see Appendix A.

52 Chapter Review

Go to **Mastering Biology** for Assignments, the eText, the Study Area, and Dynamic Study Modules.

SUMMARY OF KEY CONCEPTS

To review key terms, go to the **Vocabulary Self-Quiz** in the **Mastering Biology** eText or Study Area, or go to goo.gl/zkjz9t.

CONCEPT 52.1

Earth's climate varies by latitude and season and is changing rapidly *(pp. 1167–1170)*

- Global **climate** patterns are largely determined by the input of solar energy and Earth's revolution around the sun.
- The changing angle of the sun over the year, bodies of water, and mountains exert seasonal, regional, and local effects on climate.
- Climate affects where plants can live, but these effects run both ways: Vegetation can alter local and regional climate.
- Fine-scale differences in certain **abiotic** (nonliving) factors, such as sunlight and temperature, determine **microclimate**.
- Increasing greenhouse gas concentrations in the air are warming Earth and altering the distributions of many species. Some species will not be able to shift their ranges quickly enough to reach suitable habitat in the future.

? *Suppose global air circulation suddenly reversed, with moist air ascending at 30° north and south latitude and descending at the equator. At what latitude would you most likely find deserts in this scenario?*

CONCEPT 52.2

The distribution of terrestrial biomes is controlled by climate and disturbance *(pp. 1171–1176)*

- **Climographs** show that temperature and precipitation are correlated with **biomes**. Because other factors also play roles in biome location, biomes overlap.
- Terrestrial biomes are often named for major physical or climatic factors and for their predominant vegetation. Vertical layering is an important feature of terrestrial biomes.
- **Disturbance**, both natural and human-induced, influences the type of vegetation found in biomes. Humans have altered much of Earth's surface, replacing the natural terrestrial communities described and depicted in Figure 52.13 with urban and agricultural ones.
- The pattern of climatic variation is as important as the average climate in determining where biomes occur.

? *In what ways are disturbances important for savanna ecosystems and the plants in them?*

CONCEPT 52.3

Aquatic biomes are diverse and dynamic systems that cover most of Earth *(pp. 1177–1178)*

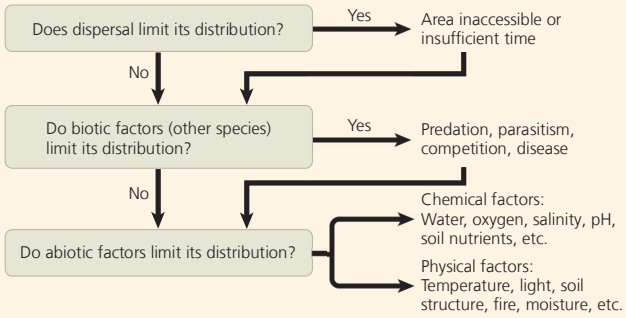
- Aquatic biomes are characterized primarily by their physical environment rather than by climate and are often layered with regard to light penetration, temperature, and community structure. Marine biomes have a higher salt concentration than freshwater biomes.
- In the ocean and in most lakes, an abrupt temperature change called a **thermocline** separates a more uniformly warm upper layer from more uniformly cold deeper waters.
- Many temperate lakes undergo a **turnover,** or mixing of water in spring and fall, that sends deep, nutrient-rich water to the surface and shallow, oxygen-rich water to deeper layers.

? *In which aquatic biomes might you find an aphotic zone?*

CONCEPT 52.4

Interactions between organisms and the environment limit the distribution of species *(pp. 1178–1187)*

Ecologists want to know not only *where* species occur but also *why* those species occur where they do.



VISUAL SKILLS *If you were an ecologist studying the chemical and physical limits to the distributions of species, how might you rearrange the flowchart preceding this question?*

CONCEPT 52.5

Ecological change and evolution affect one another over long and short periods of time *(p. 1187)*

- Ecological interactions can cause evolutionary change, as when predators cause natural selection in a prey population.
- Likewise, an evolutionary change, such as an increase in the frequency of a new defensive mechanism in a prey population, can alter the outcome of ecological interactions.

? *Suppose humans introduced a species to a new continent where it had few predators or parasites. How might this lead to eco-evolutionary feedback effects?*

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING

For more multiple-choice questions, go to the **Practice Test** in the **Mastering Biology** eText or Study Area, or go to goo.gl/GruWRg.

Levels 1-2: Remembering/Understanding

1. Which of the following areas of study focuses on the exchange of energy, organisms, and materials between ecosystems?
   (A) organismal ecology (C) ecosystem ecology
   (B) landscape ecology (D) community ecology
2. Which lake zone would be absent in a very shallow lake?
   (A) benthic zone (C) pelagic zone
   (B) aphotic zone (D) littoral zone

Levels 3-4: Applying/Analyzing

3. Which of the following is characteristic of most terrestrial biomes?
   (A) a distribution predicted almost entirely by rock and soil patterns
   (B) clear boundaries between adjacent biomes
   (C) vegetation demonstrating vertical layering
   (D) cold winter months

4. The oceans affect the biosphere by
   (A) absorbing a substantial amount of the biosphere's oxygen.
   (B) regulating the pH of freshwater biomes and terrestrial groundwater.
   (C) decreasing winter temperatures of coastal terrestrial biomes.
   (D) removing carbon dioxide from the atmosphere.

5. Which statement about dispersal is true?
   (A) Dispersal is not a component of the life cycles of most plants and animals.
   (B) Dispersal occurs only on an evolutionary time scale.
   (C) Colonization of devastated areas after floods or volcanic eruptions depends on dispersal.
   (D) The ability to disperse does not affect the geographic distribution of a species.

6. When climbing a mountain, we can observe transitions in biological communities that are analogous to the changes
   (A) in biomes at different latitudes.
   (B) in different depths in the ocean.
   (C) in a community through different seasons.
   (D) in an ecosystem as it evolves over time.

7. Suppose that the number of bird species is determined mainly by the number of vertical strata found in the environment. If so, in which of the following biomes would you find the greatest number of bird species?
   (A) tropical rain forest
   (B) savanna
   (C) desert
   (D) temperate broadleaf forest

Levels 5-6: Evaluating/Creating

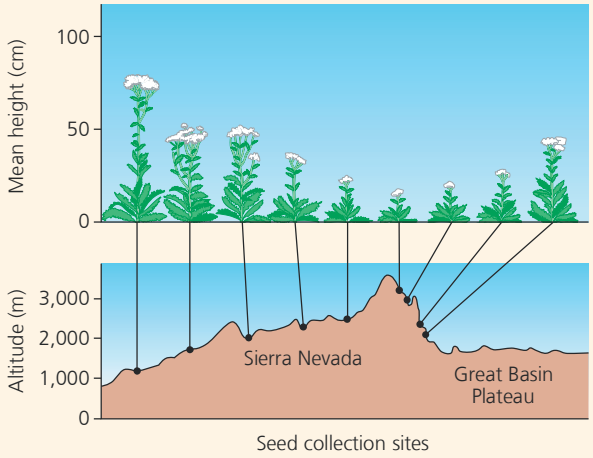
8. **WHAT IF?** If the direction of Earth's rotation reversed, the most predictable effect would be
   (A) a big change in the length of the year.
   (B) winds blowing from west to east along the equator.
   (C) a loss of seasonal variation at high latitudes.
   (D) the elimination of ocean currents.

9. **INTERPRET THE DATA** After examining Figure 52.20, you decide to study feeding relationships among sea otters, sea urchins, and kelp. You know that sea otters prey on sea urchins and that urchins eat kelp. At four coastal sites, you measure kelp abundance. Then you spend one day at each site and mark whether otters are present or absent every 5 minutes during the day. Graph kelp abundance (on the *y*-axis) versus otter density (on the *x*-axis), using the data below. Then formulate a hypothesis to explain any pattern you observe.

Site	Otter Density (# sightings per day)	Kelp Abundance (% cover)
1	98	75
2	18	15
3	85	60
4	36	25

10. **EVOLUTION CONNECTION** Discuss how the distribution of a species can be affected both by its evolutionary history and by ecological factors. Could ongoing evolutionary change also affect its distribution? Explain.

11. **SCIENTIFIC INQUIRY** Jens Clausen and colleagues, at the Carnegie Institution of Washington, studied how the size of yarrow plants (*Achillea lanulosa*) growing on the slopes of the Sierra Nevada varied with elevation. They found that plants from low elevations were generally taller than plants from high elevations, as shown in the diagram.

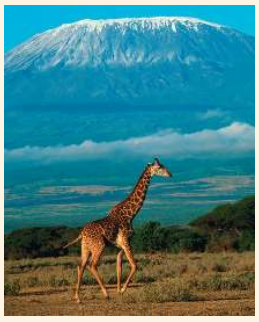


Data from J. Clausen et al., Experimental studies on the nature of species. III. Environmental responses of climatic races of *Achillea*, Carnegie Institution of Washington Publication No. 581 (1948).

Clausen and colleagues proposed two hypotheses to explain this variation within a species: (1) There are genetic differences between populations of plants found at different elevations. (2) The species has developmental flexibility and can assume tall or short growth forms, depending on local abiotic factors. If you had seeds from yarrow plants found at low and high elevations, how would you test these hypotheses?

12. **WRITE ABOUT A THEME: INTERACTIONS** Global warming is occurring rapidly in arctic marine and terrestrial ecosystems. The reflective white snow and ice cover are melting quickly and extensively, uncovering darker-colored ocean water, plants, and rocks. In a short essay (100–150 words), explain how this process might exemplify positive feedback.

13. **SYNTHESIZE YOUR KNOWLEDGE**



If you were to hike up Mount Kilimanjaro in Tanzania, you would pass through several habitats, including savanna at the base, forest on the slopes, and alpine tundra near the top. Explain how such diverse habitats can be found at one location near the equator.

For selected answers, see Appendix A.

Explore Scientific Papers with Science in the Classroom AAAS
How have Earth's forests changed over time?
Go to "Seeing the Forest for the Trees"
at www.scienceintheclassroom.org.
Instructors: Questions can be assigned in Mastering Biology.

53 Population Ecology

KEY CONCEPTS

53.1 Biotic and abiotic factors affect population density, dispersion, and demographics *p. 1191*

53.2 The exponential model describes population growth in an idealized, unlimited environment *p. 1196*

53.3 The logistic model describes how a population grows more slowly as it nears its carrying capacity *p. 1197*

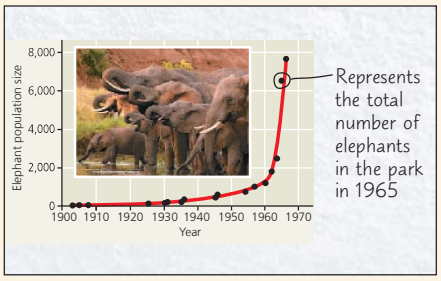
53.4 Life history traits are products of natural selection *p. 1200*

53.5 Density-dependent factors regulate population growth *p. 1202*

53.6 The human population is no longer growing exponentially but is still increasing extremely rapidly *p. 1207*

Study Tip

Annotate a graph: This chapter contains several *scatter plots*, graphs in which each measurement or observation is plotted as a single point. To make sure you understand a scatter plot, select one point and describe what it represents, as shown here for Figure 53.8. Do this for Figures 53.4, 53.8, 53.10, 53.16, and 53.18.



Go to Mastering Biology

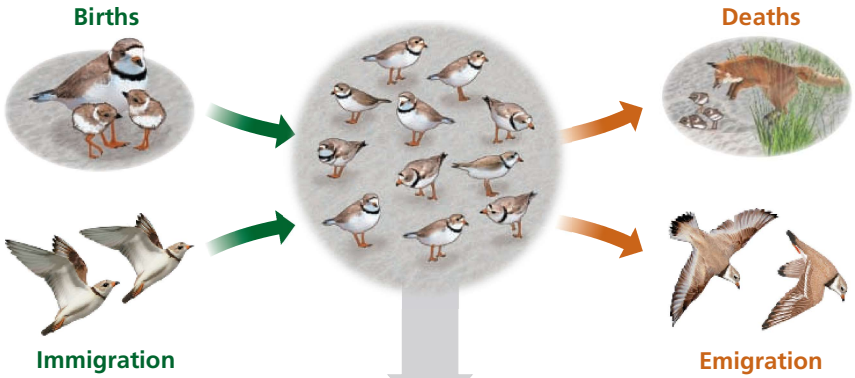
For Students (in eText and Study Area)
- Get Ready for Chapter 53
- Table 53.1 Walkthrough: Life Table for Female Belding's Ground Squirrels
- BioFlix® Animation: Population Ecology

For Instructors to Assign (in Item Library)
- Interpreting Data: Survivorship Curves
- Interpreting Data: Human Population Growth

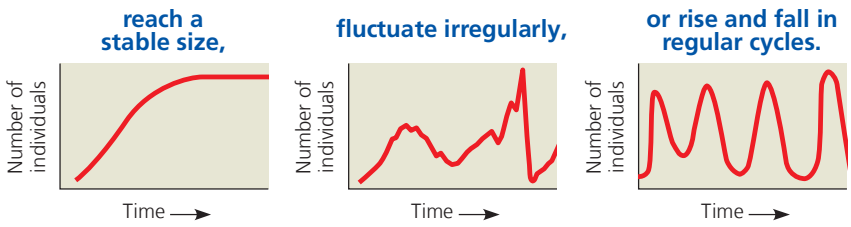
Figure 53.1 Although it was once common along the Atlantic coast, by 1985 prospects looked grim for the piping plover (*Charadrius melodus*). Since then, nesting site protection has enabled the piping plover's numbers to grow, with recent surveys finding 1,400 to 4,000 adults in recent years. Such variation is typical of natural populations, all of which vary in number (size) over time.

What affects the size of a population and how it changes over time?

Adding individuals to or **removing** individuals from a population **changes the population size:**



Over time, a population may…



CONCEPT 53.1

Biotic and abiotic factors affect population density, dispersion, and demographics

A **population** is a group of individuals of a single species living in the same general area. Members of a population rely on the same resources, are influenced by similar environmental factors, and are likely to interact and breed with one another.

Populations are often described by their boundaries and size (the number of individuals living within those boundaries). Ecologists usually begin investigating a population by defining boundaries appropriate to the organism under study and to the questions being asked. A population's boundaries may be natural ones, as in the case of an island or a lake, or they may be arbitrarily defined by an investigator—for example, a specific county in Minnesota for a study of oak trees.

In this chapter, we will explore how ecologists describe and analyze populations and the factors that can determine the abundance of organisms. We will then examine recent trends in the size and makeup of the human population.

Density and Dispersion

The **density** of a population is the number of individuals per unit area or volume: the number of oak trees per square kilometer in the Minnesota county or the number of *Escherichia coli* bacteria per milliliter in a test tube. **Dispersion** is the pattern of spacing among individuals within the boundaries of the population.

Density: A Dynamic Perspective

In some cases, population size and density can be determined by counting all individuals within the boundaries of the population. We could count all the sea stars in a tide pool, for instance. Large mammals that live in herds, such as elephants, can sometimes be counted accurately from airplanes.

In most cases, however, it is impractical or impossible to count all individuals in a population. Instead, ecologists use various sampling techniques to estimate densities and total population sizes. They might count the number of oak trees in several randomly located 100 × 100 m plots, calculate the average density in the plots, and then extend the estimate to the population size in the entire area. Such estimates are most accurate when there are many sample plots and when the habitat is fairly homogeneous. In other cases, instead of counting single organisms, ecologists estimate density from an indicator of population size, such as the number of nests, burrows, tracks, or fecal droppings. Ecologists also use the **mark-recapture method** to estimate the size of wildlife populations **(Figure 53.2)**.

▼ Figure 53.2 Research Method

Determining Population Size Using the Mark-Recapture Method

Application Ecologists cannot count all the individuals in a population if the organisms move too quickly or are hidden from view. In such cases, researchers often use the mark-recapture method to estimate population size. Andrew Gormley and his colleagues at the University of Otago applied this method to a population of endangered Hector's dolphins (*Cephalorhynchus hectori*) near Banks Peninsula, in New Zealand.

▲ Hector's dolphins

Technique Scientists typically begin by capturing a random sample of individuals in a population. They tag, or "mark," each individual and then release it. With some species, researchers can identify individuals without physically capturing them. For example, Gormley and colleagues identified 180 Hector's dolphins by photographing their distinctive dorsal fins from boats.

After waiting for the marked or otherwise identified individuals to mix back into the population, usually a few days or weeks, scientists capture or sample a second set of individuals. At Banks Peninsula, Gormley's team encountered 44 dolphins in their second sampling, 7 of which they had photographed before. The number of marked animals captured in the second sampling (x) divided by the total number of animals captured in the second sampling (n) should equal the number of individuals marked and released in the first sampling (s) divided by the estimated population size (N):

$$\frac{x}{n} = \frac{s}{N} \text{ or, solving for population size, } N = \frac{sn}{x}$$

The method assumes that marked and unmarked individuals have the same probability of being captured or sampled, that the marked organisms have mixed completely back into the population, and that no individuals are born, die, immigrate, or emigrate during the resampling interval.

Results Based on these initial data, the estimated population size of Hector's dolphins at Banks Peninsula would be 180 × 44/7 = 1,131 individuals. Repeated sampling by Gormley and colleagues suggested a true population size closer to 1,100.

Data from A. M. Gormley et al., Capture-recapture estimates of Hector's dolphin abundance at Banks Peninsula, New Zealand, *Marine Mammal Science* 21:204–216 (2005).

INTERPRET THE DATA *Suppose that none of the 44 dolphins encountered in the second sampling had been photographed before. Would you be able to solve the equation for* N*? What might you conclude about population size in this case?*

Density is not a static property but can increase or decrease over time as individuals are added to or removed from a population. As seen on the opening page of this chapter, additions occur through birth (which we define here to include all forms of reproduction) and **immigration**, the influx of new individuals from other areas. The factors that remove individuals from a population are death (mortality) and **emigration**, the movement of individuals out of a population and into other locations.

While birth and death rates influence the density of all populations, immigration and emigration can also have substantial effects. For example, studies of a population of Hector's dolphins (see Figure 53.2) in New Zealand showed that immigration accounted for about 15% of the total population size each year. Emigration was also important, typically occurring during the winter season when the dolphins move farther from shore. In general, both immigration and emigration represent key factors affecting the populations of many species. Emigration, for example, not only reduces the density of the original population, it also can result in the establishment of new populations in regions of favorable habitat, as we'll discuss later in this chapter.

Mastering Biology Animation: Techniques for Estimating Population Density and Size

Patterns of Dispersion

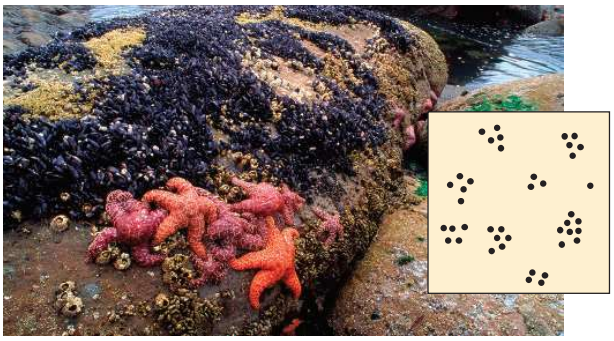
Within the boundaries of a population, the spacing among individuals may differ substantially, creating contrasting patterns of dispersion. Such differences in spacing can provide insight into the biotic and abiotic factors that affect individuals in the population.

The most common pattern of dispersion is *clumped*, in which individuals are aggregated in patches. Plants and fungi are often clumped where soil conditions and other environmental factors favor germination and growth. Mushrooms, for instance, may be clumped within and on top of a rotting log. Insects and salamanders may be clumped under the same log because of the higher humidity there. Clumping of animals may also be associated with mating behavior. Sea stars group together in tide pools, where food is readily available and where they can breed successfully **(Figure 53.3a)**. The aggregation of individuals into groups may also increase the effectiveness of predation or defense; for example, a wolf pack is more likely than a single wolf to subdue a moose, and a flock of birds is more likely than a single bird to warn of a potential attack.

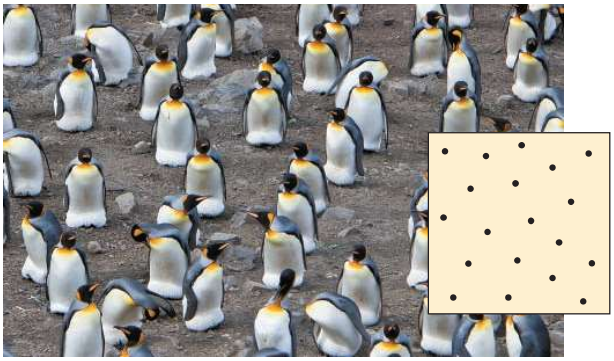
A *uniform*, or evenly spaced, pattern of dispersion may result from direct interactions between individuals in the population. Some plants secrete chemicals that inhibit the germination and growth of nearby individuals that could compete for resources. Animals often exhibit uniform dispersion as a result of antagonistic social interactions, such as **territoriality**—the defense of a bounded physical space against encroachment by other individuals **(Figure 53.3b)**.

In *random* dispersion (unpredictable spacing), the position of each individual in a population is independent of other individuals. This pattern occurs in the absence of strong

▼ Figure 53.3 Patterns of dispersion within a population's geographic range.



(a) Clumped. Sea stars group together where food is abundant.



(b) Uniform. King penguins and other birds that nest on small islands often exhibit uniform spacing, maintained by aggressive interactions between neighbors.

(c) Random. Dandelions grow from windblown seeds that land at random and later germinate.

? *Patterns of dispersion can depend on scale. How might the penguin dispersion look from an airplane flying high above the ocean?*

attractions or repulsions among individuals or where key physical or chemical factors are relatively constant across the study area. Plants established by windblown seeds, such as dandelions, may be randomly distributed in a fairly uniform habitat **(Figure 53.3c)**.

Demographics

The biotic and abiotic factors that influence population density and dispersion patterns also influence other characteristics of populations, including birth, death, and migration rates. **Demography** is the study of these key characteristics of populations and how they change over time. A useful way to summarize demographic information for a population is to make a life table.

Life Tables

A **life table** summarizes the survival and reproductive rates of individuals in specific age-groups within a population. To construct a life table, researchers often follow the fate of a **cohort**, a group of individuals of the same age, from birth until all of the individuals are dead. Building the life table requires determining the proportion of the cohort that survives from one age-group to the next. It is also necessary to keep track of the number of offspring produced by females in each age-group.

Demographers who study sexually reproducing species often ignore the males and concentrate on the females in a population because only females produce offspring. Using this approach, a population is viewed in terms of females giving rise to new females. **Table 53.1** is a life table built in this way for female Belding's ground squirrels (*Urocitellus beldingi*) from a population located in the Sierra Nevada mountains of California. Next, we'll take a closer look at some of the data presented in a life table.

Survivorship Curves

The survival rate data in a life table can be represented graphically as a **survivorship curve**, a plot of the proportion or numbers in a cohort still alive at each age. As an example, let's use the data for female Belding's ground squirrels in Table 53.1 to draw a survivorship curve. Often, a survivorship curve begins with a cohort of a convenient size—say, 1,000 individuals. To obtain the other points in the curve for the ground squirrel population, we multiply the proportion alive at the start of each year (the third column of Table 53.1) by 1,000 (the hypothetical beginning cohort). The result is the number alive at the start of each year. Plotting these numbers versus age for female Belding's ground squirrels

Table 53.1 Life Table for Female Belding's Ground Squirrels (Tioga Pass, in the Sierra Nevada Mountains of California)

Age (years)	Number Alive at Start of Year	Proportion Alive at Start of Year*	Death Rate†	Average Number of Female Offspring per Female
0–1	653	1.000	0.614	0.00
1–2	252	0.386	0.496	1.07
2–3	127	0.197	0.472	1.87
3–4	67	0.106	0.478	2.21
4–5	35	0.054	0.457	2.59
5–6	19	0.029	0.526	2.08
6–7	9	0.014	0.444	1.70
7–8	5	0.008	0.200	1.93
8–9	4	0.006	0.750	1.93
9–10	1	0.002	1.00	1.58

Data from P. W. Sherman and M. L. Morton, Demography of Belding's ground squirrel, *Ecology* 65:1617–1628 (1984).

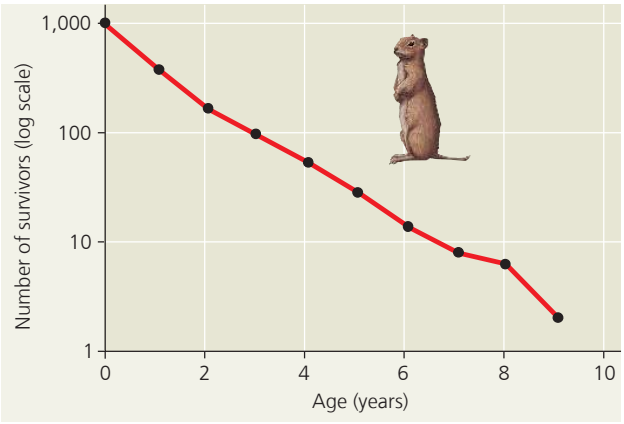
*Indicates the proportion of the original cohort of 653 individuals that are still alive at the start of a time interval.

†The death rate is the proportion of individuals alive at the start of a time interval that die during that time interval.

▲ Researchers working with a Belding's ground squirrel

Mastering Biology Table Walkthrough

▼ Figure 53.4 Survivorship curve for female Belding's ground squirrels. The logarithmic scale on the *y*-axis allows the number of survivors to be visible across the entire range (2–1,000 individuals) on the graph.

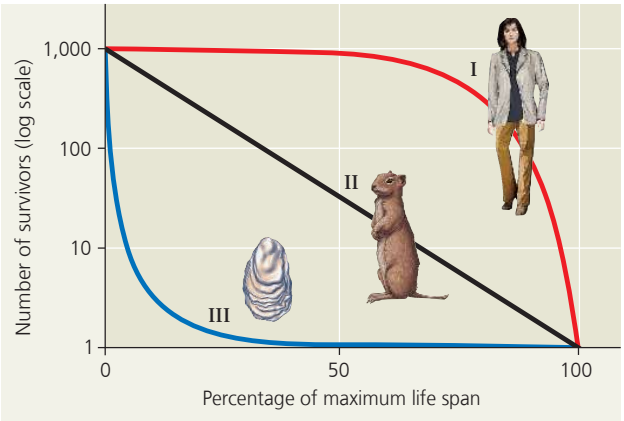


? *Based on this graph, what percentage of the female ground squirrels survive to be 3 years old?*

yields **Figure 53.4**. The approximately straight line of the plot indicates a relatively constant rate of death.

Figure 53.4 represents just one of many patterns of survivorship exhibited by natural populations. Though diverse, survivorship curves can be classified into three general types **(Figure 53.5)**. A Type I curve is flat at the start, reflecting low death rates during early and middle life, and then drops steeply as death rates increase among older age-groups. Many large mammals, including humans and elephants, that produce few offspring but provide them with good care exhibit this kind of curve.

▼ Figure 53.5 Idealized survivorship curves: Types I, II, and III. The *y*-axis is logarithmic and the *x*-axis is on a relative scale so that species with widely varying life spans can be presented together on the same graph.



Mastering Biology **Animation: Investigating the Survivorship Curve of Oysters**

In contrast, a Type III curve drops sharply at the start, reflecting very high death rates for the young, but flattens out as death rates decline for those few individuals that survive the early period of die-off. This type of curve is usually associated with organisms that produce very large numbers of offspring but provide little or no care, such as long-lived plants, many fishes, and most marine invertebrates. An oyster, for example, may release millions of eggs, but most larvae hatched from fertilized eggs die from predation or other causes. Those few offspring that survive long enough to attach to a suitable substrate and begin growing a hard shell tend to survive for a relatively long time. Type II curves are intermediate, with a constant death rate over the organism's life span. This kind of survivorship occurs in Belding's ground squirrels and some other rodents, many invertebrates, lizards, and annual plants.

Many species fall somewhere between these basic types of survivorship or show more complex patterns. In birds, mortality is often high among the youngest individuals (as in a Type III curve) but fairly constant among adults (as in a Type II curve). Some invertebrates, such as crabs, may show a "stair-stepped" curve, with brief periods of increased mortality during molts, followed by periods of lower mortality when their protective exoskeleton is hard. In addition to such variation among species, survivorship curves also can differ among the populations of a single species.

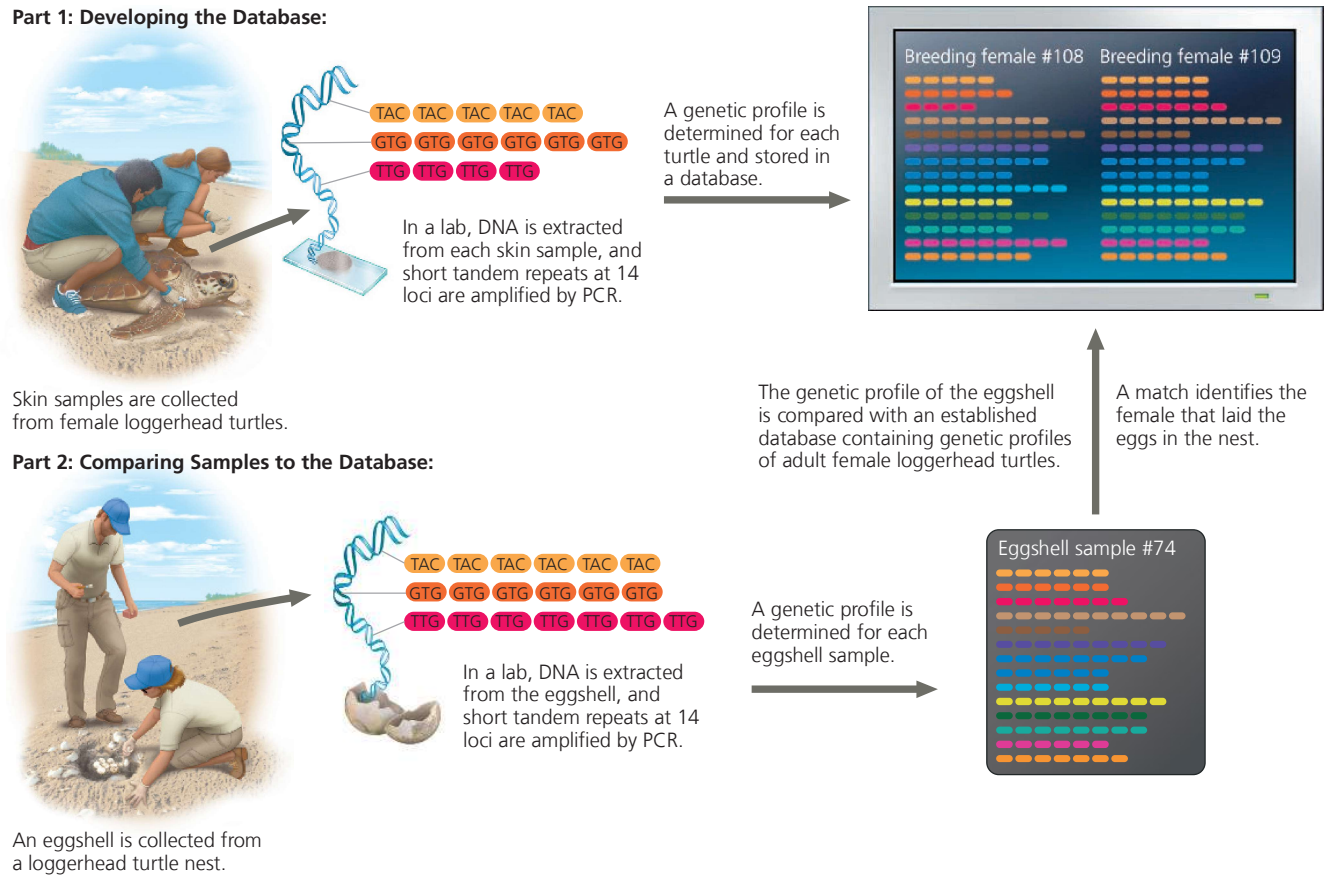
In populations experiencing low levels of immigration and emigration, survivorship is one of the two key factors determining changes in population size. The other key factor that affects how population size changes over time is reproductive rate.

Reproductive Rates

As mentioned above, demographers often ignore the males and concentrate on the females in a population because only females produce offspring. Therefore, demographers view populations in terms of females giving rise to new females. The simplest way to describe the reproductive pattern of a population is to identify how reproductive output varies with the number of breeding females and their ages.

How do ecologists estimate the number of breeding females in a population? Possible approaches include direct counts and the mark-recapture method (see Figure 53.2). Increasingly, ecologists also use molecular tools. For example, scientists working in the state of Georgia collected skin samples from 198 female loggerhead turtles between 2005 and 2009. From these samples, they amplified nuclear short tandem repeats at 14 loci using the polymerase chain reaction (PCR) and produced a genetic profile for each female **(Figure 53.6)**. They then extracted DNA from an eggshell from each turtle nest on the beaches they studied and, using their database of genetic profiles, matched the nest to a

▼ Figure 53.6 Using genetic profiles from loggerhead turtle eggshells to identify which female laid the eggs.



VISUAL SKILLS *Use the profiles displayed in the figure to determine which breeding female laid the eggs in the nest from which eggshell sample #74 was taken.*

specific female. This approach allowed them to determine how many of the 198 females were breeding—and how many offspring each female produced—without having to disturb the females during egg laying.

Reproductive output for sexual organisms such as birds and mammals is typically measured as the average number of female offspring produced by the females in a given age-group. For some organisms, the number of offspring for each female can be counted directly; alternatively, molecular methods can be used (see Figure 53.6). Researchers directly counted the offspring of the Belding's ground squirrels, which begin to reproduce at age 1 year. The squirrels' reproductive output rises to a peak at 4–5 years of age and then gradually falls off in older females (see Table 53.1).

Age-specific reproductive rates vary considerably by species. Squirrels, for example, have a litter of two to six young once a year for less than a decade, whereas oak trees drop thousands of acorns each year for tens or hundreds of years. Mussels and other invertebrates may release millions of eggs and sperm in a spawning cycle. However, a high reproductive rate will not lead to rapid population growth unless conditions are near ideal for the growth and survival of offspring, as you'll learn in the next section.

CONCEPT CHECK 53.1

1. **DRAW IT** Each female of a particular fish species produces millions of eggs per year. Draw and label the most likely survivorship curve for this species, and explain your choice.
2. **WHAT IF?** Suppose you are constructing a life table for a population of Belding's ground squirrels (see Table 53.1). If 485 individuals are alive at the start of year 0–1 and 218 are still alive at the start of year 1–2, what is the proportion alive at the start of each of these years (see column 3 in Table 53.1)?
3. **MAKE CONNECTIONS** A male stickleback fish attacks other males that invade its nesting territory (see Figure 51.2a). Predict the likely pattern of dispersion for male sticklebacks, and explain your reasoning.

For suggested answers, see Appendix A.

CONCEPT 53.2

The exponential model describes population growth in an idealized, unlimited environment

Populations of all species have the potential to expand greatly when resources are abundant. To appreciate the potential for population increase, consider a bacterium that can reproduce by fission every 20 minutes under ideal laboratory conditions. There would be two bacteria after 20 minutes, four after 40 minutes, and eight after 60 minutes. If reproduction continued at this rate for a day and a half without mortality, there would be enough bacteria to form a layer 30 cm deep over the entire globe! But unlimited growth does not occur for long in nature, where individuals typically have access to fewer resources as a population grows. Nonetheless, ecologists study population growth in ideal, unlimited environments to reveal how fast populations are capable of growing and the conditions under which rapid growth might actually occur.

Changes in Population Size

Imagine a population consisting of a few individuals living in an ideal, unlimited environment. Under these conditions, there are no external limits on the abilities of individuals to harvest energy, grow, and reproduce. The population will increase in size with every birth and with the immigration of individuals from other populations, and it will decrease in size with every death and with the emigration of individuals out of the population. We can thus define a change in population size during a fixed time interval with the following verbal equation:

$$\text{Change in population size} = \text{Births} + \text{Immigrants entering population} - \text{Deaths} - \text{Emigrants leaving population}$$

For now, we will simplify our discussion by ignoring the effects of immigration and emigration.

We can use mathematical notation to express this simplified relationship more concisely. If N represents population size and t represents time, then ΔN is the change in population size and Δt is the time interval (appropriate to the life span or generation time of the species) over which we are evaluating population growth. (The Greek letter delta, Δ, indicates change, such as change in time.) Using B for the number of births in the population during the time interval and D for the number of deaths, we can rewrite the verbal equation:

$$\frac{\Delta N}{\Delta t} = B - D$$

Population ecologists often are most interested in changes in population size—the number of individuals that are added to or subtracted from a population during a given time interval, symbolized by R. Here, R represents the *difference* between the number of births (B) and the number of deaths (D) that occur in the time interval. Thus, $R = B - D$, and we can simplify our equation by writing the following:

$$\frac{\Delta N}{\Delta t} = R$$

Next, we can convert our model to one in which changes in population size are expressed on a per individual (per capita) basis. The *per capita* change in population size ($r_{\Delta t}$) represents the contribution that an average member of the population makes to the number of individuals added to or subtracted from the population during the time interval Δt. If, for example, a population of 1,000 individuals increases by 16 individuals per year, then on a per capita basis, the annual change in population size is 16/1,000, or 0.016. If we know the annual per capita change in population size, we can use the formula $R = r_{\Delta t}N$ to calculate how many individuals will be added to (or subtracted from) a population each year. For example, if $r_{\Delta t}$ is 0.016 and the population size is 500,

$$R = r_{\Delta t}N = 0.016 \times 500 = 8 \text{ per year}$$

Since the number of individuals added to (or subtracted from) the population (R) can be expressed on a per capita basis as $R = r_{\Delta t}N$, we can revise our population growth equation to take this into account:

$$\frac{\Delta N}{\Delta t} = r_{\Delta t}N$$

Remember that our equation is for a specific time interval (often one year). However, many ecologists prefer to use differential calculus to express population growth as a rate of change *at each instant in time*:

$$\frac{dN}{dt} = rN$$

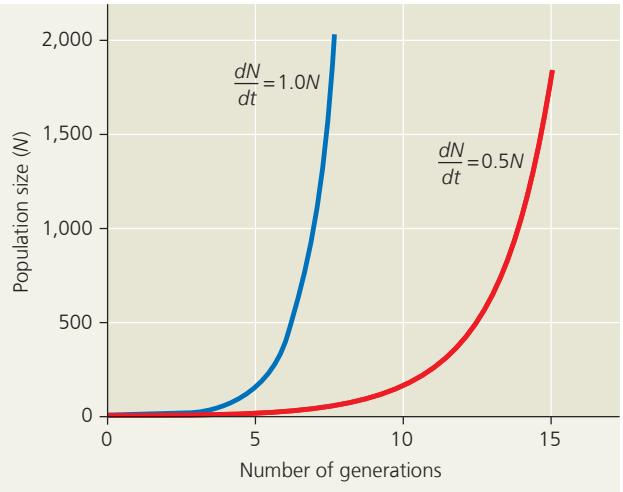
In this case, r represents the per capita change in population size that occurs at each instant in time (whereas $r_{\Delta t}$ represented the per capita change that occurred during the time interval Δt). If you have not yet studied calculus, don't be intimidated by the last equation; it is similar to the previous one, except that the time intervals Δt are very short and are expressed in the equation as dt. In fact, as Δt becomes shorter, $r_{\Delta t}$ and r become increasingly close to one another in value.

Exponential Growth

Earlier we described a population whose members all have access to abundant food and can reproduce at their physiological capacity. In some cases, a population that experiences such ideal conditions increases in size by a constant proportion at each instant in time. When this occurs, the pattern of growth that results is called **exponential population growth**. The equation for exponential growth is the one presented at the end of the previous section, namely:

$$\frac{dN}{dt} = rN$$

▼ Figure 53.7 Population growth predicted by the exponential model. This graph compares growth in a population with $r = 1.0$ (blue curve) to growth in a population with $r = 0.5$ (red curve).



How many generations does it take these populations to reach a size of 1,500 individuals?

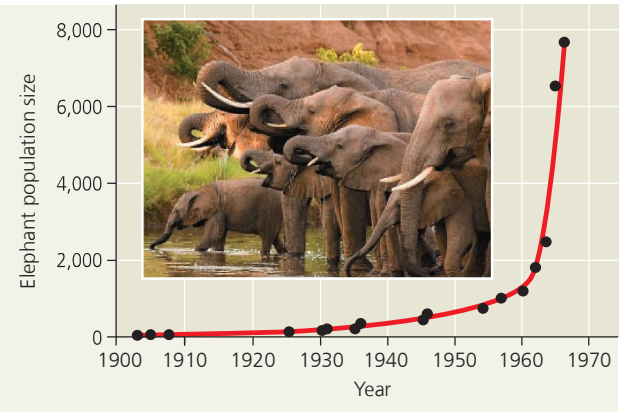
Mastering Biology **BioFlix® Animation: Exponential Growth**

In this equation, dN/dt represents the rate at which the population is increasing in size at each moment in time, akin to how a glance at the speedometer of a car reveals the speed at that instant in time. As seen in the equation, dN/dt equals the current population size, N, multiplied by a constant, r. Ecologists refer to r as the **intrinsic rate of increase**, the per capita rate at which an exponentially growing population increases in size at each instant in time.

The size of a population that is growing exponentially increases at a constant rate per individual, resulting eventually in a J-shaped growth curve when population size is plotted over time **(Figure 53.7)**. Although the per capita rate of population growth is constant (and equals r), more new individuals are added per unit of time when the population is large than when it is small; thus, the curves in Figure 53.7 get progressively steeper over time. This occurs because population growth depends on N as well as r, and hence more individuals are added to larger populations than to small ones growing at the same per capita rate. It is also clear from Figure 53.7 that a population with a higher intrinsic rate of increase ($dN/dt = 1.0N$) will grow faster than one with a lower intrinsic rate of increase ($dN/dt = 0.5N$).

The J-shaped curve of exponential growth is characteristic of some populations that are introduced into a new environment or whose numbers have been drastically reduced by a catastrophic event and are rebounding. For example, the population of elephants in Kruger National Park, South Africa, grew exponentially for approximately 60 years after they were first protected from hunting **(Figure 53.8)**. The increasingly

▼ Figure 53.8 Exponential growth in the African elephant population of Kruger National Park, South Africa.



large number of elephants eventually caused enough damage to vegetation in the park that a collapse in their food supply was likely. To protect other species and the park ecosystem before that happened, park managers began limiting the elephant population by giving birth control medication to females and by exporting elephants to other countries.

CONCEPT CHECK 53.2

1. Explain why a constant per capita rate of growth (r) for a population produces a curve that is J-shaped.
2. Where is exponential growth by a plant population more likely—in an area where a forest was destroyed by fire or in a mature, undisturbed forest? Why?
3. **WHAT IF?** In 2018, the United States had a population of 327 million people. If the (annual) per capita change in population size ($r_{\Delta t}$) was 0.005, how many people were added to the population that year (ignoring immigration and emigration)? What would you need to know to determine whether the United States is currently experiencing exponential growth?

For suggested answers, see Appendix A.

CONCEPT 53.3

The logistic model describes how a population grows more slowly as it nears its carrying capacity

The exponential growth model assumes that resources remain abundant, which is rarely the case in the real world. Instead, as the size of a population increases, each individual has access to fewer resources. Ultimately, there is a limit to the number of individuals that can occupy a habitat. Ecologists define the **carrying capacity**, symbolized by K, as the maximum population size that a particular environment can sustain. Carrying capacity varies over space and time with the abundance of limiting resources. Energy, shelter, refuge from predators, nutrient availability, water, and

suitable nesting sites can all be limiting factors. For example, the carrying capacity for bats may be high in a habitat with abundant flying insects and roosting sites but lower where there is abundant food but fewer suitable shelters.

Crowding and resource limitation can have a profound effect on population growth rate. If individuals cannot obtain sufficient resources to reproduce, then the per capita birth rate will decline. Similarly, if starvation or disease increases with density, then the per capita death rate may increase. Falling per capita birth rates or rising per capita death rates will cause the per capita rate of population growth to drop, a very different situation from the constant per capita growth rate (r) seen in a population that is growing exponentially.

The Logistic Growth Model

We can modify our mathematical model so that the per capita population growth rate decreases as N increases. In the **logistic population growth** model, the per capita rate of population growth approaches zero as the population size nears the carrying capacity (K).

To construct the logistic model, we start with the exponential population growth model and add an expression that reduces the per capita rate of population growth as N increases. If the carrying capacity is K, then $K - N$ is the number of additional individuals the environment can support, and $(K - N)/K$ is the fraction of K that is still available for population growth. By multiplying the exponential rate of population growth rN by $(K - N)/K$, we modify the change in population size as N increases:

$$\frac{dN}{dt} = rN\frac{(K - N)}{K}$$

When N is small compared to K, the term $(K - N)/K$ is close to 1. In this scenario, the per capita rate of population growth, $r[(K - N)/K]$, will be close to (but slightly less than) r, the intrinsic rate of increase seen in exponential population growth. But when N is large and resources are limiting, then $(K - N)/K$ is close to 0, and the per capita population growth rate is small. When N equals K, the population stops growing. **Table 53.2** shows calculations of population growth rate for a hypothetical population growing according to the logistic model, with $r = 1.0$ per individual per year. Notice that the overall population growth rate is highest, +375 individuals per year, when the population size is 750, or half the carrying capacity. At a population size of 750, the per capita population growth rate remains relatively high (one-half the value of r), and there are more reproducing individuals (N) in the population than at lower population sizes.

As shown in **Figure 53.9**, the logistic model of population growth produces a sigmoid (S-shaped) growth curve when N is plotted over time (the red line). New individuals are added to the population most rapidly at intermediate population sizes, when there is not only a breeding population of substantial size, but also lots of available space and other resources in the environment. The number of individuals added to the population decreases dramatically as N approaches K. As a result, the population growth rate (dN/dt) also decreases as N approaches K.

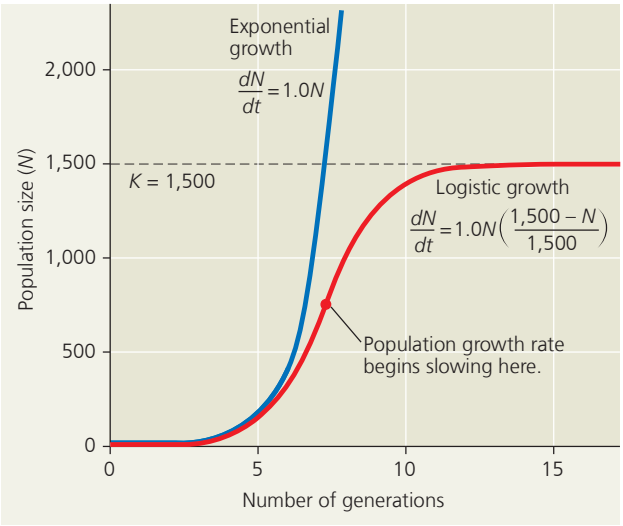
Note that we haven't said anything yet about *why* the population growth rate decreases as N approaches K. For a population's growth rate to decrease, the birth rate must decrease,

Table 53.2 Logistic Growth of a Hypothetical Population (K = 1,500)

Population Size (N)	Intrinsic Rate of Increase (r)	$\frac{K - N}{K}$	Per Capita Population Growth Rate, $r\frac{(K - N)}{K}$	Population Growth Rate,* $rN\frac{(K - N)}{K}$
25	1.0	0.983	0.983	+25
100	1.0	0.933	0.933	+93
250	1.0	0.833	0.833	+208
500	1.0	0.667	0.667	+333
750	1.0	0.500	0.500	+375
1,000	1.0	0.333	0.333	+333
1,500	1.0	0.000	0.000	0

*Rounded to the nearest whole number.

▼ Figure 53.9 Population growth predicted by the logistic model. The rate of population growth decreases as population size (N) approaches the carrying capacity (K) of the environment. The red line shows logistic growth in a population where $r = 1.0$ and $K = 1{,}500$ individuals. For comparison, the blue line illustrates a population continuing to grow exponentially with the same r.



Mastering Biology BioFlix® Animation: Logistic Growth

the death rate must increase, or both. Later in the chapter, we'll consider some of the factors affecting these rates, including the presence of disease, predation, and limited amounts of food and other resources.

The Logistic Model and Real Populations

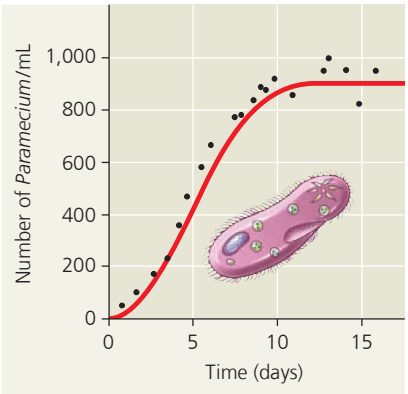
The growth of laboratory populations of some small animals, such as beetles and crustaceans, and of some microorganisms, such as bacteria, *Paramecium*, and yeasts, fits an S-shaped curve fairly well under conditions of limited resources **(Figure 53.10a)**. These populations are grown in a constant environment lacking predators and competing species that may reduce growth of the populations, conditions that rarely occur in nature.

Populations in nature rarely match the predictions of the logistic model as closely as do some laboratory populations, such as the *Paramecium* population in Figure 53.10a. This is not surprising, since some of the assumptions built into the logistic model clearly do not apply to all populations. The logistic model assumes that populations adjust instantaneously to growth and approach carrying capacity smoothly. In reality, there is often a delay before the negative effects of an increasing population are realized. If food becomes limiting for a population, for instance, reproduction will decline eventually, but females may use their energy reserves to continue reproducing for a short time. This may cause the population to overshoot its carrying capacity temporarily, as shown for the water fleas in **Figure 53.10b**. In the **Scientific Skills Exercise**, you can model what can happen to such a population when N becomes greater than K. Other populations fluctuate greatly, making it difficult even to define carrying capacity. We will examine some possible reasons for such fluctuations later in the chapter.

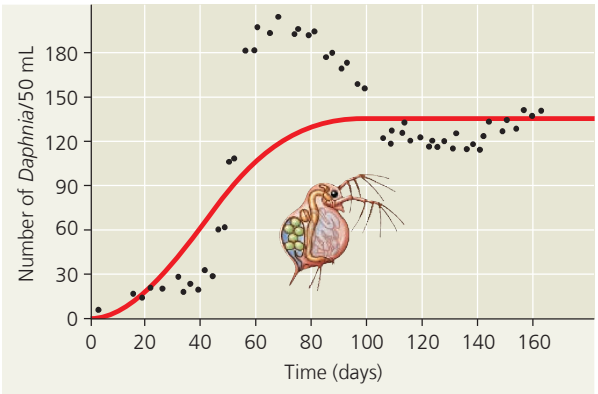
The logistic model provides a useful starting point for thinking about how populations grow and for constructing more complex models. As such, its role is similar to that played by the Hardy-Weinberg equation for thinking about the evolution of populations. The logistic model is also important in conservation biology for predicting how rapidly a particular population might increase in numbers after it has been reduced to a small size and for estimating sustainable harvest rates for wildlife populations. Conservation biologists can also use the model to estimate the critical size below which populations of certain organisms, such as the northern subspecies of the white rhinoceros (*Ceratotherium simum*), may become extinct **(Figure 53.11)**.

▼ Figure 53.11 White rhinoceros mother and calf. The two animals pictured here are members of the southern subspecies, which has a population of more than 20,000 individuals. The northern subspecies is critically endangered, with just a few known individuals.

▶ Figure 53.10 How well do these populations fit the logistic growth model? In each graph, the black dots plot the measured growth of the population, and the red curve is the growth predicted by the logistic model.



(a) A *Paramecium* population in the lab. The growth of *Paramecium aurelia* in a small culture closely approximates logistic growth if the researcher maintains a constant environment.

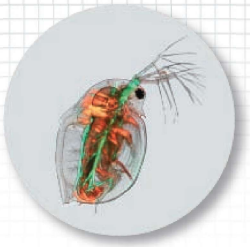


(b) A *Daphnia* population in the lab. The growth of a population of water fleas (*Daphnia*) in a small laboratory culture does not correspond well to the logistic model. This population overshoots the carrying capacity of its artificial environment before it settles down to an approximately stable population size.

Scientific Skills Exercise

Using the Logistic Equation to Model Population Growth

What Happens to the Size of a Population When It Overshoots Its Carrying Capacity? In the logistic population growth model, the per capita rate of population increase approaches zero as the population size (N) approaches the carrying capacity (K). Under some conditions, however, a population in the laboratory or the field can overshoot K, at least temporarily. If food becomes limiting to a population, for instance, there may be a delay before reproduction declines, and N may briefly exceed K. In this exercise, you will use the logistic equation to model the growth of the hypothetical population in Table 53.2 when $N > K$.



▶ *Daphnia*

INTERPRET THE DATA

1. Assuming that $r = 1.0$ and $K = 1{,}500$, calculate the population growth rate for four cases where population size (N) is greater than carrying capacity (K): $N = 1{,}510$, 1,600, 1,750 and 2,000 individuals. To do this, first write the equation for population growth rate given in Table 53.2. Plug in the values for each of the four cases, starting with $N = 1{,}510$, and solve the equation for each one. Which population size has the highest growth rate?
2. If r is doubled, predict how the population growth rates will change for the four population sizes given in question 1. Now calculate the population growth rate for the same four cases, this time assuming that $r = 2.0$ (and with K still $= 1{,}500$).
3. Now let's see how the growth of a real-world population of *Daphnia* corresponds to this model. At what times in Figure 53.10b is the *Daphnia* population changing in ways that correspond to the values you calculated? Hypothesize why the population drops below the carrying capacity briefly late in the experiment.

Instructors: A version of this Scientific Skills Exercise can be assigned in **Mastering Biology**.

CONCEPT CHECK 53.3

1. Explain why a population that fits the logistic growth model increases more rapidly at an intermediate size than at relatively small and large sizes.
2. **WHAT IF?** Given the latitudinal differences in sunlight intensity (see Figure 52.3), how might you expect the carrying capacity of plant species found at the equator to compare with that of plant species found at high latitudes?
3. **MAKE CONNECTIONS** Suppose that a sudden change in environmental conditions caused a substantial drop in a population's carrying capacity. Predict how natural selection and genetic drift might affect this population. (See Concept 23.3.)

For suggested answers, see Appendix A.

CONCEPT 53.4

Life history traits are products of natural selection

EVOLUTION Natural selection favors traits that improve an organism's chances of survival and reproductive success. In every species, there are trade-offs between survival and reproductive traits such as frequency of reproduction, number of offspring (number of seeds produced by plants; litter or clutch size for animals), or investment in parental care. The traits that affect an organism's schedule of reproduction and survival make up its **life history**. Life history traits of an organism are evolutionary outcomes reflected in its development, physiology, and behavior.

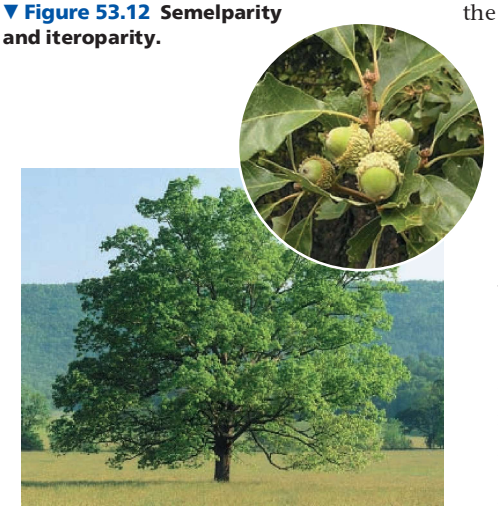
Diversity of Life Histories

We'll focus on three key components of an organism's life history: when reproduction begins (the age at first reproduction or age at maturity), how often the organism reproduces, and how many offspring are produced per reproductive episode. The fundamental idea that evolution accounts for the diversity of life is manifest in the broad range of these life history characteristics in nature. For example, the age at which reproduction begins varies considerably across species. A typical loggerhead turtle is about 30 years old when it first crawls onto a beach to lay eggs. In contrast, the coho salmon (*Oncorhynchus kisutch*) is often only three or four years old when it spawns.

Organisms also vary in how often they reproduce. The coho salmon is an example of organisms that undergo a "one-shot" pattern of big-bang reproduction, or **semelparity** (from the Latin *semel*, once, and *parere*, to beget). It hatches in the headwaters of a freshwater stream and then migrates to the Pacific Ocean, where it typically requires a few years to mature. The salmon eventually returns to the same stream to spawn, producing thousands of eggs in a single reproductive opportunity before it dies. Semelparity also occurs in some plants, such as the agave, or "century plant" **(Figure 53.12a)**. Agaves generally grow in arid climates with unpredictable rainfall and poor soils. An agave grows for years, accumulating nutrients in its tissues, until there is an unusually wet year. It then sends up a large flowering stalk, produces seeds, and dies. This life history appears to be an adaptation to the agave's harsh desert environment.

(a) Semelparity: one-time reproduction. An agave (*Agave americana*) is an example of semelparity. The leaves of the plant are visible at the base of the giant flowering stalk, which is produced only at the end of the agave's life.

▼ Figure 53.12 Semelparity and iteroparity.



(b) Iteroparity: repeat reproduction. Organisms that reproduce repeatedly, such as the bur oak (*Quercus macrocarpa*), undergo iteroparity. One oak tree can produce thousands of acorns (inset) per year over the course of many decades.

In contrast to semelparity is **iteroparity** (from the Latin *iterare*, to repeat), or repeated reproduction. As an example, a female loggerhead turtle produces four clutches totaling approximately 300 eggs in a year. It then typically waits two to three years before laying more eggs; presumably, the turtles lack sufficient resources to produce that many eggs every year. A mature turtle may lay eggs for 30 years after the first clutch. Horses and other large mammals also reproduce repeatedly, as do many fish, sea urchins, and long-lived trees, such as maples and oaks **(Figure 53.12b)**.

Finally, organisms also vary in how many offspring they produce. Some species, such as the white rhinoceros (see Figure 53.11), produce a single calf when they reproduce, while most insects and many plants produce large numbers of offspring. Such variation in offspring number has other consequences as well; as you'll read, a species that produces one or a few offspring may provision them better than does a species that produces many offspring.

"Trade-offs" and Life Histories

No organism could produce thousands of offspring yet provision each of them as well as does a white rhinoceros caring for its single calf. There is a trade-off between the number of offspring and the amount of resources a parent can devote to each offspring. Such trade-offs occur because organisms do not have access to unlimited amounts of resources. As a result, the use of resources for one function (such as reproduction) can reduce the resources available for supporting another function (such as survival). In Eurasian kestrels, for example, caring for a larger number of young lowered the survival rates of the parents **(Figure 53.13)**. In another study, in Scotland, researchers found that female red deer that reproduced in a given summer were more likely to die the next winter than were females that did not reproduce.

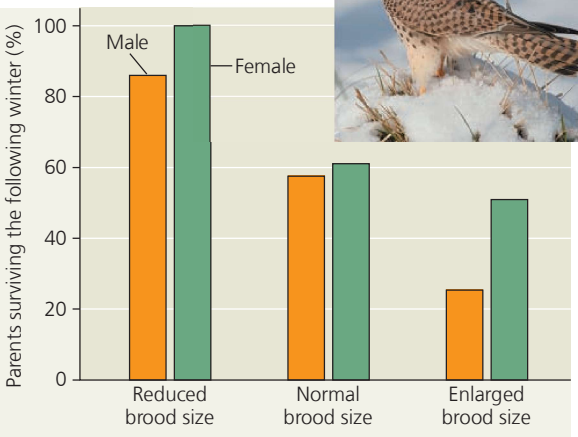
Selective pressures also influence trade-offs between the number and size of offspring. Plants and animals whose young have a low change of survival often produce many small offspring. For example, plants that colonize disturbed environments usually produce many small seeds, only a few of which may reach a suitable habitat. Small size may also increase the chance of seedling establishment by enabling the seeds to be carried longer

▼ Figure 53.13 Inquiry

How does caring for offspring affect parental survival in kestrels?

Experiment Cor Dijkstra and colleagues in the Netherlands studied the effects of parental caregiving in Eurasian kestrels over five years. The researchers transferred chicks among nests to produce reduced broods (three or four chicks), normal broods (five or six), and enlarged broods (seven or eight). They then measured the percentage of male and female parent birds that survived the following winter. (Both males and females provide care for chicks.)

Results



Conclusion The lower survival rates of kestrels with larger broods indicate that caring for more offspring negatively affects survival of the parents.

Data from C. Dijkstra et al., Brood size manipulations in the kestrel (*Falco tinnunculus*): effects on offspring and parent survival, *Journal of Animal Ecology* 59:269–285 (1990).

INTERPRET THE DATA *The males of some bird species provide no parental care. If this were true for the Eurasian kestrel, predict how the experimental results would differ from those shown here.*

▼ Figure 53.14 Variation in the number and size of seeds in plants.

(a) Dandelions grow quickly and release a large number of tiny fruits, each containing a single seed. Producing numerous seeds increases the chance that at least some will grow into plants that eventually produce seeds themselves.

(b) Some plants, such as the Brazil nut tree (right), produce a moderate number of large seeds in pods (above). Each seed's large endosperm provides nutrients for the embryo, an adaptation that helps a relatively large fraction of offspring survive.

distances to a broader range of habitats **(Figure 53.14a)**. Animals that suffer high predation rates, such as quail, sardines, and mice, also tend to produce many offspring.

In other organisms, extra investment on the part of the parent greatly increases the offspring's chances of survival. Brazil nut and walnut trees produce large seeds packed with nutrients that help the seedlings become established **(Figure 53.14b)**. Primates generally bear only one or two offspring at a time; parental care and an extended period of learning in the first several years of life are very important to offspring fitness. Such provisioning and extra care can be especially important in habitats with high population densities.

One way to categorize variation in life history traits is related to the logistic growth model discussed in Concept 53.3. Selection for traits that are advantageous at high densities is referred to as ***K*-selection**. In contrast, selection for traits that maximize reproductive success in uncrowded environments (low densities) is called ***r*-selection**. These names follow from the variables of the logistic equation. *K*-selection is said to operate in populations living at a density near the limit imposed by their resources (the carrying capacity, *K*), where competition among individuals is stronger. Mature trees growing in an old-growth forest are an example of *K*-selected organisms. In contrast, *r*-selection is said to maximize *r*, the intrinsic rate of increase, and occurs in environments in which population densities are well below carrying capacity or individuals face little competition. Such conditions are often found in disturbed habitats that are being recolonized. Weeds growing in an abandoned agricultural field are an example of *r*-selected organisms.

The concepts of *K*- and *r*-selection represent two extremes in a range of actual life histories. The framework of *K*- and *r*-selection, grounded in the idea of carrying capacity, also relates to the important question we alluded to earlier: *Why* does population growth rate decrease as population size approaches carrying capacity? Answering this question is the focus of the next section.

CONCEPT CHECK 53.4

1. Identify three key life history traits, and give examples of organisms that vary widely in each of these traits.
2. In the fish called the peacock wrasse (*Symphodus tinca*), females disperse some of their eggs widely and lay other eggs in a nest. Only the latter receive parental care. Explain the trade-offs in reproduction that this behavior illustrates.
3. **WHAT IF?** Mice that experience stress such as a food shortage will sometimes abandon their young. Explain how this behavior might have evolved in the context of reproductive trade-offs and life history.

For suggested answers, see Appendix A.

CONCEPT 53.5

Density-dependent factors regulate population growth

What environmental factors keep populations from growing indefinitely? Why are some populations fairly stable in size, while others are not?

Answers to such questions can be important in practical applications. Farmers may want to reduce the abundance of insect pests or stop the growth of a weed that is spreading rapidly. Conservation ecologists need to know what environmental factors create favorable feeding or breeding habitats for endangered species, such as the white rhinoceros and the whooping crane. Overall, whether seeking to reduce the size of an unwanted population or increase the size of one that is endangered, it is helpful to understand factors that affect population abundance.

Population Change and Population Density

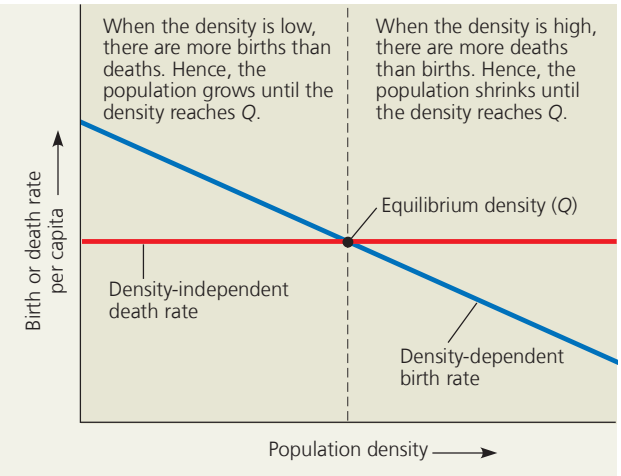
To understand why a population stops growing when it reaches a certain size, ecologists study how the rates of birth, death, immigration, and emigration change as population density rises. If immigration and emigration offset

each other, then a population grows when the birth rate exceeds the death rate and declines when the death rate exceeds the birth rate.

A birth rate or death rate that does *not* change with population density is said to be **density independent**. For example, researchers found that the mortality of dune fescue grass (*Vulpia fasciculata*) is mainly due to physical factors that kill similar proportions of a local population, regardless of its density. Drought stress that arises when the roots of the grass are uncovered by shifting sands is a density-independent factor that can kill these plants. In contrast, a death rate that increases with population density or a birth rate that falls with rising density is said to be **density dependent**. Researchers found that reproduction by dune fescue declines as population density increases, in part because water or nutrients become more scarce. Thus, the key factors affecting birth rate in this population are density dependent, while death rate is largely determined by density-independent factors. For situations in which immigration and emigration offset each other, **Figure 53.15** shows how the combination of density-dependent reproduction and density-independent mortality can stop population growth (as in species such as dune fescue).

Variation in density-independent factors such as temperature and precipitation can cause dramatic changes in population size. For example, a drought or heat wave can cause a sharp increase in mortality rates, causing the abundance of a population to plummet. Note, however, that a density-independent factor cannot consistently cause a population to decrease in size when it is large or increase in size when it is small—only a density-dependent factor can consistently cause such changes. With this in mind, a population is said to be *regulated* when one or more density-dependent factors cause its size to decrease when large (or increase when small).

▼ Figure 53.15 Determining equilibrium for population density. In this example, the birth rate changes with population density, while the death rate is constant; immigration and emigration rates are assumed to be equal. At the equilibrium density (*Q*), the birth and death rates are equal. As a result, the number of individuals added to the population equals the number removed from it, and the population stops changing in size.



DRAW IT *Redraw this figure for the case where the birth and death rates are both density dependent, as occurs for many species.*

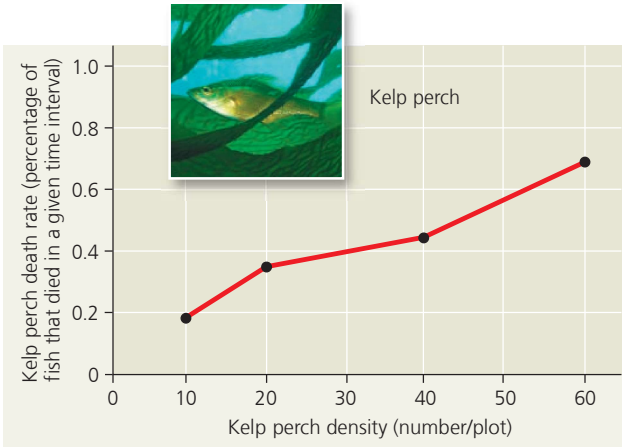
Mastering Biology BioFlix® Animation: Density Dependence

Mechanisms of Density-Dependent Population Regulation

Without some type of negative feedback between population density and the rates of birth and death, a population would never stop growing. But no population can increase in size indefinitely. Ultimately, at large population sizes, negative feedback is provided by density-dependent regulation, which halts population growth through mechanisms that reduce birth rates or increase death rates. For example, a study of kelp perch (*Brachyistius frenatus*) populations showed that the fish's death rate rose proportionally as its density increased **(Figure 53.16)**. This occurred because at high densities, the fish ran out of safe spaces in the kelp where they could hide from predators. Several other mechanisms that can cause density-dependent regulation are described in **Figure 53.17**.

These various examples of population regulation by negative feedback show how increased densities cause population growth rates to decline by affecting reproduction, growth, and survival. Although negative feedback helps explain why populations stop growing, it does not address why some populations fluctuate dramatically while others remain relatively stable.

▼ Figure 53.16 An example of density-dependent regulation. At high population densities, the death rate of kelp perch increased because they ran out of spaces to hide from predators.



▼ Figure 53.17 Exploring Mechanisms of Density-Dependent Regulation

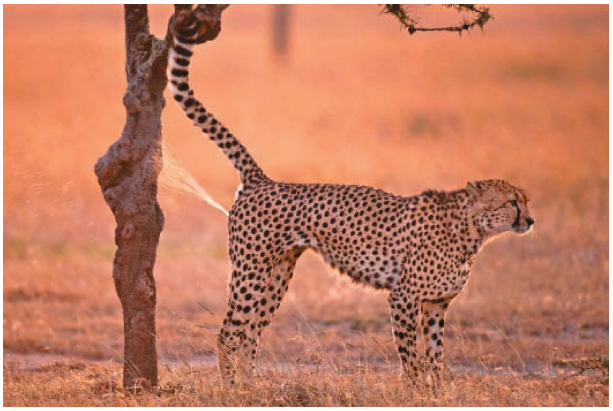
As population density increases, density-dependent mechanisms operating within a species can slow or stop population growth by decreasing birth rates or increasing death rates.

Competition for Resources

Increasing population density leads to competition among members of a population for nutrients and other resources, reducing reproductive rates. Farmers minimize the effect of competition on the growth of wheat (*Triticum aestivum*) and other crops by applying fertilizers to reduce nutrient limitations on crop yield.

Territoriality

Territoriality can limit population density when space becomes the resource for which individuals compete. Cheetahs (*Acinonyx jubatus*) use a chemical marker in urine to warn other cheetahs of their territorial boundaries. The presence of surplus, or nonbreeding, individuals is a good indication that territoriality is restricting population growth.



Disease

If the transmission rate of a disease increases as a population becomes more crowded, then the disease's impact is density dependent. In humans, the respiratory diseases influenza (flu) and tuberculosis are spread through the air when an infected person sneezes or coughs. Both diseases strike a greater percentage of people in densely populated cities than in rural areas.

Intrinsic Factors

Intrinsic physiological factors (those operating within an individual organism) sometimes regulate population size. Reproductive rates of white-footed mice (*Peromyscus leucopus*) in a field enclosure can drop even when food and shelter are abundant. This drop in reproduction at high population density is associated with aggressive interactions and hormonal changes within individual mice that delay sexual maturation and depress the immune system.

Toxic Wastes

Yeasts, such as the brewer's yeast *Saccharomyces cerevisiae*, are used to convert carbohydrates to ethanol in winemaking. The ethanol that accumulates in the wine is toxic to yeasts and contributes to density-dependent regulation of yeast population size. The alcohol content of wine is usually less than 13% because that is the maximum concentration of ethanol that most wine-producing yeast cells can tolerate.

Population Dynamics

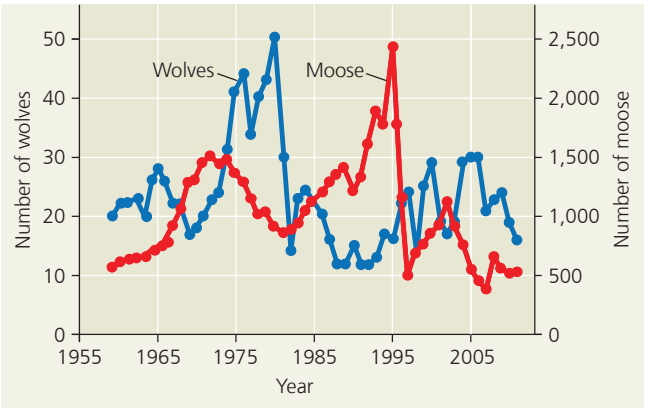
Like the piping plover (see Figure 53.1), all populations show some fluctuation in size. Such population fluctuations from year to year or place to place, called **population dynamics**, are influenced by many factors and in turn affect other species. For example, fluctuations in fish populations affect populations of seabirds that eat fish. The study of population dynamics focuses on the complex interactions between biotic and abiotic factors that cause variation in population sizes.

Stability and Fluctuation

Populations of large mammals were once thought to remain relatively stable, but long-term studies have challenged that idea. For instance, the moose population on Isle Royale in Lake Superior has fluctuated substantially since around 1900. At that time, moose from the Ontario mainland (25 km away) colonized the island, perhaps by walking across the lake when it was frozen. Wolves, which rely on moose for most of their food, reached the island around 1950 by walking across the frozen lake. The lake has not frozen over since the early 1950s, and both populations appear to have been isolated from immigration and emigration since then. Despite this isolation, the moose population experienced two major increases and collapses during the last 50 years **(Figure 53.18)**.

What factors cause the size of the moose population to change so dramatically? Harsh weather, particularly cold winters with heavy snowfall, can weaken moose and reduce food availability, decreasing the population size. When moose numbers are low and the weather is mild, food is readily available and the population grows quickly. Conversely, when moose numbers are high, factors such as predation and an increase in the density of ticks and other parasites cause the population to shrink. The effects of some of these factors can be seen in Figure 53.18. The first major collapse coincided with a peak in the numbers of wolves from 1975 to 1980. The second major collapse, around 1995, coincided with harsh winter weather, which increased the energy needs of the moose and made it harder for them to find food under the deep snow.

▼ Figure 53.18 Fluctuations in moose and wolf population sizes on Isle Royale, 1959–2011.



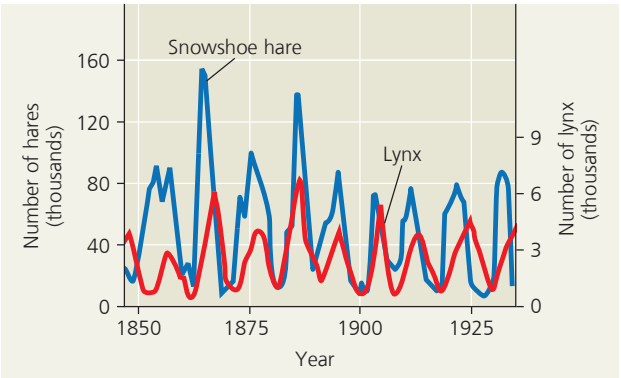
Mastering Biology **BioFlix® Animation: Predator-Prey Interactions**

Population Cycles: Scientific Inquiry

While many populations fluctuate at unpredictable intervals, others undergo regular boom-and-bust cycles. Some small herbivorous mammals, such as voles and lemmings, tend to have 3- to 4-year cycles, while some birds, such as ruffed grouse and ptarmigans, have 9- to 11-year cycles.

One striking example of population cycles is the roughly 10-year cycling of snowshoe hares (*Lepus americanus*) and lynx (*Lynx canadensis*) in the far northern forests of Canada and Alaska. Lynx are predators that feed predominantly on snowshoe hares, so lynx numbers might be expected to rise and fall with the numbers of hares **(Figure 53.19)**. But why do hare numbers rise and fall in approximately 10-year cycles? Two main hypotheses have been proposed. First, the cycles may be caused by food shortage during winter. Hares eat the

▼ Figure 53.19 Population cycles in the snowshoe hare and lynx. Population counts are based on the number of pelts sold by trappers to the Hudson Bay Company.



INTERPRET THE DATA *What do you observe about the relative timing of the peaks in lynx numbers and hare numbers? What might explain this observation?*

terminal twigs of small shrubs such as willow and birch in winter, although why this food supply might cycle in 10-year intervals is uncertain. Second, the cycles may be due to predator-prey interactions. Many predators other than lynx eat hares, and they may overexploit their prey.

Let's consider the evidence for the two hypotheses. If hare cycles are due to winter food shortage, then the cycles should stop if extra food is provided to a field population. Researchers conducted such experiments in the Yukon for 20 years—over two hare cycles. They found that hare populations in the areas with extra food increased about threefold in density but continued to cycle in the same way as the unfed control populations. Therefore, food supplies alone do not cause the hare cycles shown in Figure 53.19, so we can reject the first hypothesis.

To study the effects of predation, ecologists used radio collars to track individual hares to determine why they died. Predators, including lynx, coyotes, hawks, and owls, killed 95% of the hares in such studies. None of the hares appeared to have died of starvation. These data support the second hypothesis. When ecologists set up electric fences to exclude predators from certain areas, the collapse in survival that normally occurs in the decline phase of the cycle was nearly eliminated. Overexploitation by predators thus seems to be an essential part of snowshoe hare cycles; without predators, it is unlikely that hare populations would cycle in northern Canada.

Immigration, Emigration, and Metapopulations

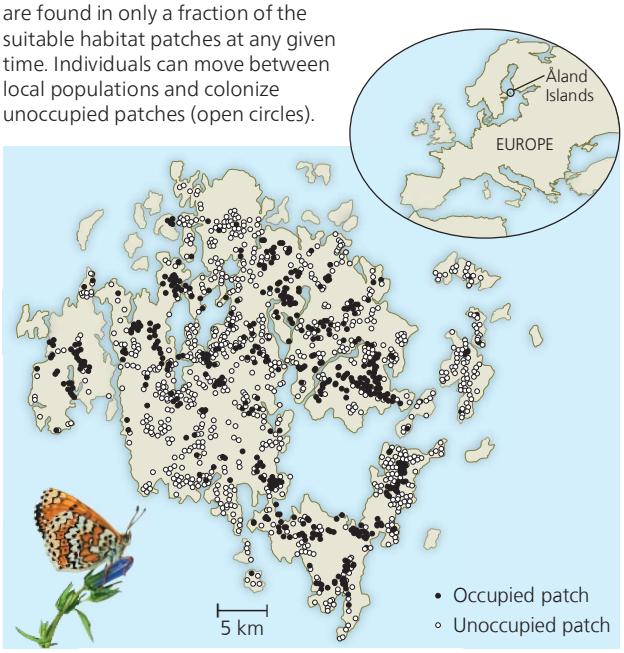
So far, our discussion of population dynamics has focused mainly on the contributions of births and deaths. However, immigration and emigration also influence populations. When a population becomes crowded and resource competition increases, emigration often increases.

Immigration and emigration are particularly important when a number of local populations are linked, forming a **metapopulation**. Local populations in a metapopulation can be thought of as occupying discrete patches of suitable habitat in a sea of otherwise unsuitable habitat. Such patches vary in size, quality, and isolation from other patches, factors that influence how many individuals move among the populations. If one population becomes extinct, the patch it occupied may be recolonized by immigrants from another population.

The Glanville fritillary (*Melitaea cinxia*) illustrates the movement of individuals between populations. On average, this butterfly is found in about 500 meadows across the Åland Islands of Finland, but its potential habitat in the islands is much larger, approximately 4,000 suitable patches. New populations of the butterfly regularly appear and existing populations become extinct, constantly shifting the locations of the 500 colonized patches **(Figure 53.20)**. The species persists in a balance of local extinctions and recolonizations.

An individual's ability to move between populations depends on a number of factors, including its genetic

▼ Figure 53.20 The Glanville fritillary: a metapopulation. On the Åland Islands, local populations of this butterfly (filled circles) are found in only a fraction of the suitable habitat patches at any given time. Individuals can move between local populations and colonize unoccupied patches (open circles).



makeup. One gene that has a strong effect on the Glanville fritillary's ability to move is *Pgi*, which codes for the enzyme phosphoglucoisomerase. This enzyme catalyzes the second step of glycolysis (see Figure 9.8), and its activity correlates with the rate of CO_2 production from respiration by the butterflies. Ecologists studied butterflies known to be heterozygous or homozygous for a single nucleotide polymorphism in *Pgi*. They tracked the movements of individual butterflies using radar and transponders attached to the butterflies that emit an identifying signal. Butterfly movements ranged widely, from 10 m to 4 km, in 2-hour periods. Heterozygous individuals flew more than twice as far in the morning and at lower ambient temperatures than did homozygous individuals. The results indicated a fitness advantage to the heterozygous genotype in low temperatures and a greater likelihood of heterozygotes colonizing new locations in the metapopulation.

▼ A Glanville fritillary (*Melitaea cinxia*) wearing a tracking transponder.

The metapopulation concept underscores the significance of immigration and emigration for the Glanville fritillary and many other species. It also helps ecologists understand population dynamics and gene

flow in patchy habitats, providing a framework for the conservation of species living in a network of habitat fragments and reserves.

CONCEPT CHECK 53.5

1. Describe three attributes of habitat patches that could affect population density and rates of immigration and emigration.
2. **DRAW IT** Circle the portion of the red curve in Figure 53.9 in which density-dependent population regulation would likely have the most pronounced effects.
3. **WHAT IF?** Suppose you were studying a species that has a population cycle of about ten years. How long would you need to study the species to determine if its population size were declining? Explain.
4. **MAKE CONNECTIONS** Negative feedback is a process that regulates biological systems (see Concept 40.2). Explain how the density-dependent birth rate of dune fescue grass exemplifies negative feedback.

For suggested answers, see Appendix A.

CONCEPT 53.6

The human population is no longer growing exponentially but is still increasing extremely rapidly

In the last few centuries, the human population has grown at an unprecedented rate, more like the elephant population in Kruger National Park (see Figure 53.8) than the fluctuating populations we considered in Concept 53.5. No population can grow indefinitely, however. In this section of the chapter, we'll apply the concepts of population dynamics to the specific case of the human population.

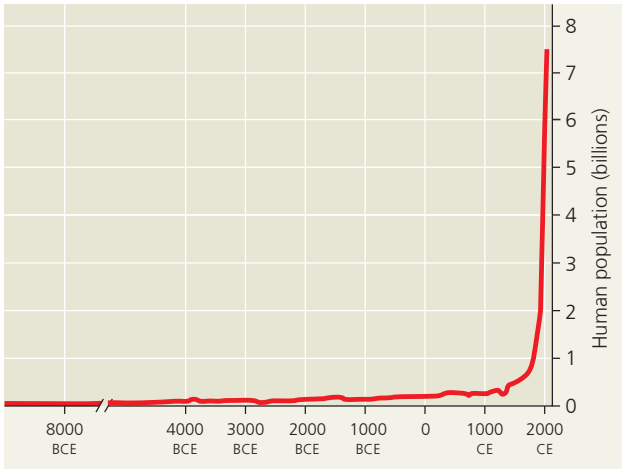
The Global Human Population

The human population has grown explosively over the last four centuries **(Figure 53.21)**. In 1650, about 500 million people inhabited Earth. Our population doubled to 1 billion within the next two centuries, doubled again to 2 billion by 1930, and doubled still again to 4 billion by 1975. Notice that the time it took our population to double in size decreased from 200 years in 1650 to just 45 years in 1930. Thus, historically our population has grown even *faster* than exponential growth, which has a constant rate of increase and hence a constant doubling time.

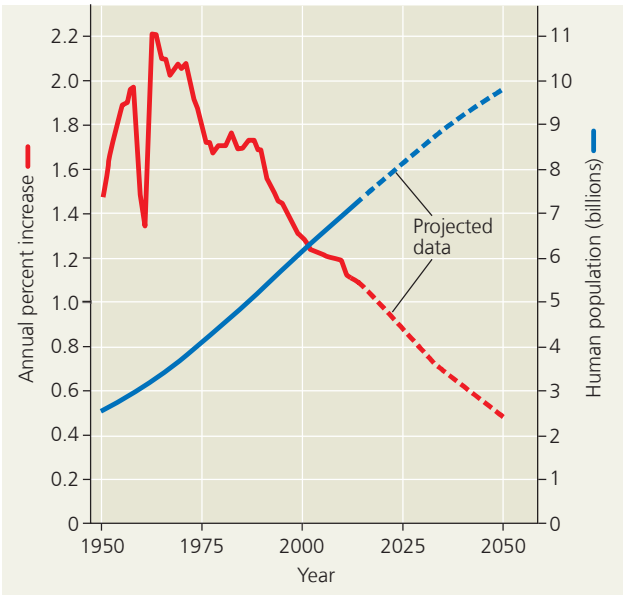
The global population is now more than 7.6 billion people and is increasing by about 80 million each year. This translates into more than 200,000 people each day, the equivalent of adding a city the size of Amarillo, Texas. At this rate, it takes only about four years to add the equivalent of another United States to the world population. Ecologists predict there will be about 9.8 billion people on Earth by the year 2050.

Though the global population is still growing, the *rate* of growth began to slow during the 1960s **(Figure 53.22)**. The annual rate of increase in the global population peaked at 2.2% in 1962 but was only 1.1% in 2018. Current models

▼ Figure 53.21 Human population growth (data as of 2018). The global human population has grown almost continuously throughout history, but it skyrocketed after the Industrial Revolution.



▼ Figure 53.22 Annual percent increase and recent human population growth. The sharp dip in the rate of increase around 1960 is due mainly to a famine in China in which about 60 million people died. (Data as of 2018.)



VISUAL SKILLS *The blue curve in this figure appears to tell a different story about human population growth than does the curve in Figure 53.21, yet both curves are accurate. Summarize what each curve conveys about recent human population growth and explain how both can be accurate.*

project a growth rate of 0.5% by 2050, which would add 49 million more people per year if the population climbs to a projected 9.8 billion. The reduction in annual growth rate observed over the past five decades shows that the human population is now growing more slowly than expected in exponential growth. This change resulted from fundamental shifts in population dynamics due to diseases, including AIDS, and to voluntary population control.

Regional Patterns of Population Change

We have described changes in the global population, but population dynamics vary widely from region to region. In a stable regional population, birth rate equals death rate (disregarding the effects of immigration and emigration). Two possible configurations for a stable population are

Zero population growth = High birth rate − High death rate

or

Zero population growth = Low birth rate − Low death rate

The movement from high birth and death rates toward low birth and death rates, which tends to accompany industrialization and improved living conditions, is called the **demographic transition**. In Sweden, this transition took about 150 years, from 1810 to 1975, when birth rates finally approached death rates. In Mexico, where the human population is still growing rapidly, the transition is projected to take until at least 2050. Demographic transition is associated with an increase in the quality of health care and sanitation as well as improved access to education, especially for women.

After 1950, death rates declined rapidly in most developing countries, but birth rates have declined more variably. Birth rates have fallen most dramatically in China. The expected number of children per woman per lifetime in China decreased from 5.9 in 1970 to 1.6 in 2011, largely due to the government's strict "one-child" policy. In some countries of Africa, the transition to lower birth rates has also been rapid, though birth rates remain high in most of sub-Saharan Africa.

How do such variable birth rates affect the growth of the world's population? In industrialized nations, populations are near equilibrium, with reproductive rates near the replacement level of 2.1 children per female (over their lifetime). In many industrialized countries—including the United States, Canada, Germany, Japan, and the United Kingdom—total reproductive rates are in fact *below* the replacement level. These populations will eventually decline if there is no immigration and if the birth rate does not change. In fact, the population is already declining in many eastern and central European countries. Most of the current global population growth occurs in less industrialized countries, where about 80% of the world's people now live.

A unique feature of human population growth is our ability to control family sizes through planning and voluntary contraception. Social change and the rising educational and career aspirations of women in many cultures encourage women to delay marriage and postpone reproduction. Delayed reproduction helps to decrease population growth rates and to move a society toward zero population growth under conditions of low birth rates and low death rates. However, there is a great deal of disagreement as to how much support should be provided for global family planning efforts.

Age Structure

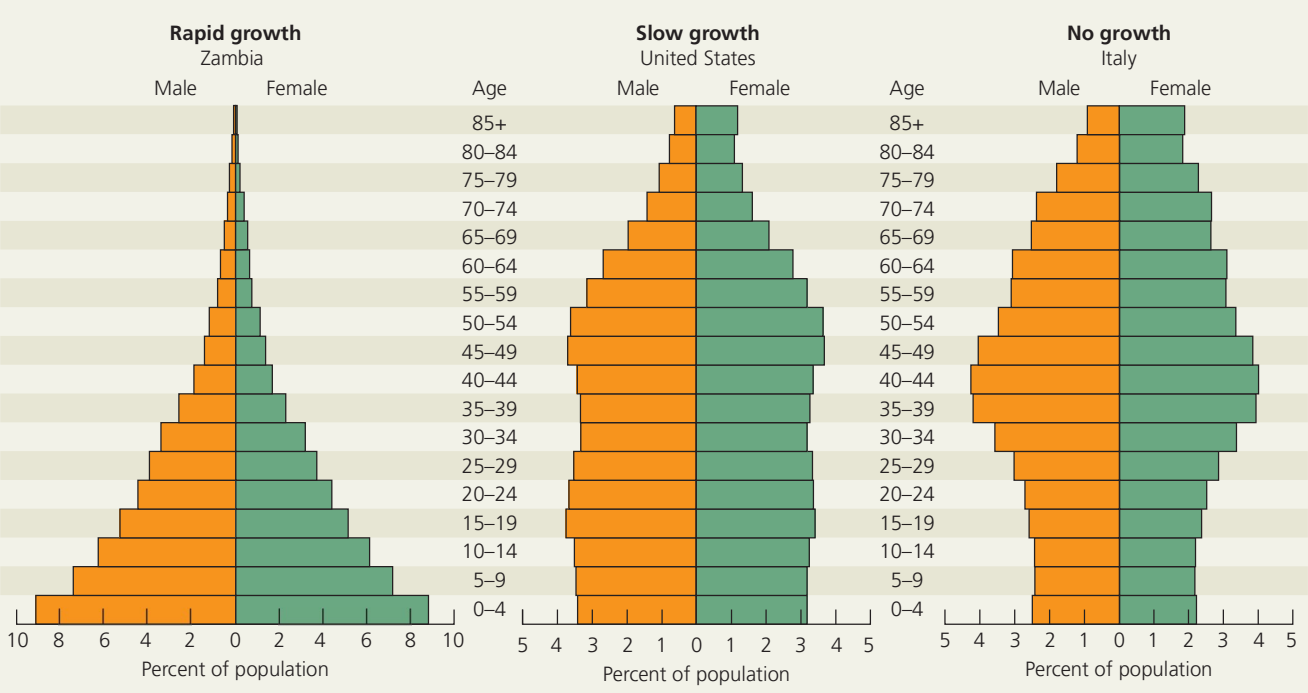
Another important factor that can affect population growth is a country's **age structure**, the relative number of individuals of each age in the population. Age structure is commonly graphed as "pyramids" like those in **Figure 53.23**. For Zambia, the pyramid is bottom heavy, skewed toward young individuals who will grow up and perhaps sustain the explosive growth with their own reproduction. The age structure for the United States is relatively even until the older, postreproductive ages. Although the current total reproductive rate in the United States is about 1.8 children per woman—below the replacement rate—the population is projected to grow slowly through 2050 as a result of immigration. For Italy, the pyramid has a small base, indicating that individuals younger than reproductive age are relatively underrepresented in the population. This situation contributes to the projection of a future population decrease in Italy.

Age-structure diagrams not only predict a population's growth trends but also can illuminate social conditions. Based on the diagrams in Figure 53.23, we can predict that employment and education opportunities will continue to be a problem for Zambia in the foreseeable future. In the United States and Italy, a decreasing proportion of younger working-age people will soon be supporting an increasing population of retired "boomers." This demographic feature has made the future of Social Security and Medicare a major political issue in the United States. Understanding age structures is necessary to plan for the future.

Infant Mortality and Life Expectancy

Infant mortality, the number of infant deaths per 1,000 live births, and *life expectancy at birth*, the predicted average length of life at birth, vary widely in different countries. In 2015, for example, the infant mortality rate was 71 (7.1%) in Angola but only 2 (0.2%) in Japan. Life expectancy at birth was 59 years in Angola but 85 years in Japan. These differences reflect the quality of life faced by children at birth and influence the reproductive choices parents make. If infant

▼ Figure 53.23 Age-structure pyramids for the human population of three countries. The annual growth rate was approximately 2.8% in Zambia, 1.0% in the United States, and 0.0% in Italy. Note that Zambia's pyramid has a different scale for its *x*-axis from that of the other two pyramids. (Data as of 2010.)



Mastering Biology **Animation: Analyzing Age-Structure Pyramids**

mortality is high, then parents may choose to have more children to ensure that some reach adulthood.

Although global life expectancy has been increasing since about 1950, it has recently dropped in a number of regions, including countries of the former Soviet Union and in sub-Saharan Africa. In these regions, social upheaval, decaying infrastructure, and infectious diseases such as AIDS and tuberculosis are reducing life expectancy.

Global Carrying Capacity

No ecological question is more important than the future size of the human population. As noted earlier, population ecologists project a global population of about 9.8 billion people in 2050. That means that over 2 billion people will be added to the population in the next four decades because of the momentum of population growth. But just how many humans can the biosphere support? Will the world be overpopulated in 2050? Is it *already* overpopulated?

Estimates of Carrying Capacity

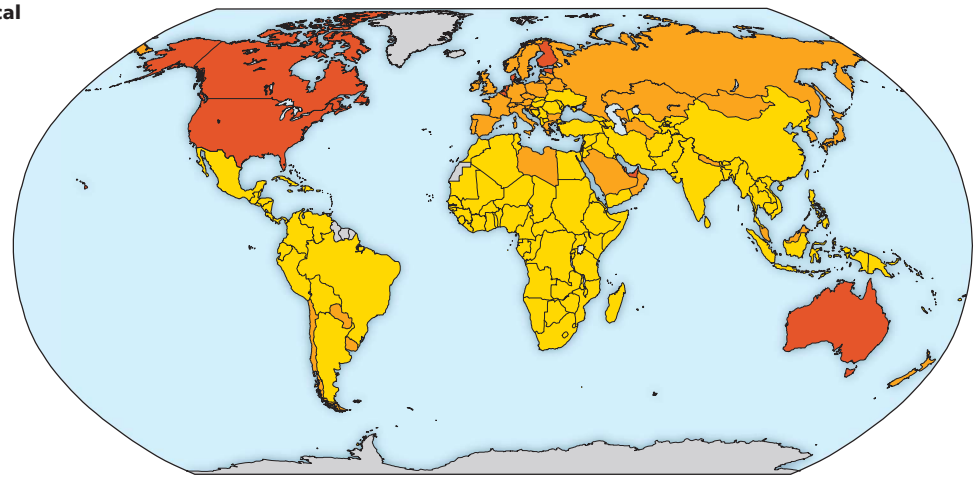
For over three centuries, scientists have attempted to estimate the human carrying capacity of Earth. The first known estimate, 13.4 billion people, was made in 1679 by Anton van Leeuwenhoek (a Dutch scientist who also discovered protists). Since then, estimates have varied from less than 1 billion to more than 1,000 billion (1 trillion).

Carrying capacity is difficult to estimate, and scientists use different methods to produce their estimates. Some researchers use curves like that produced by the logistic equation (see Figure 53.9) to predict the future maximum of the human population. Others generalize from existing "maximum" population density and multiply this number by the area of habitable land. Still others base their estimates on a single limiting factor, such as food, and consider variables such as the amount of farmland, the average yield of crops, the prevalent diet—vegetarian or meat based—and the number of calories needed per person per day.

Limits on Human Population Size

A more comprehensive approach to estimating the carrying capacity of Earth is to recognize that humans have multiple constraints: We need food, water, fuel, building materials, and other resources, such as clothing and transportation. The **ecological footprint** concept summarizes the aggregate land and water area required by each person, city, or nation

▶ Figure 53.24 Per capita ecological footprint by country.



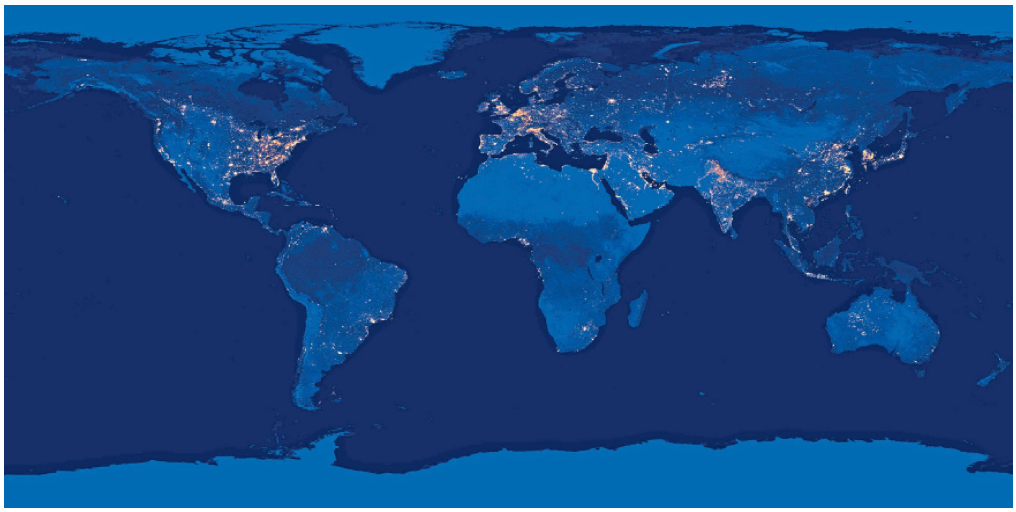
? *Earth has a total of 11.9 billion gha of productive land. How many people could Earth support sustainably if the average ecological footprint were 8 gha per person (as in the United States)?*

to produce all the resources it consumes and to absorb all the waste it generates.

What is a sustainable ecological footprint for the entire human population? One way to estimate this footprint is to add up all the ecologically productive land on the planet and divide by the size of the human population. Typically, this estimate is made using *global hectares*, where a global hectare (gha) represents a hectare of land or water with a productivity equal to the average of all biologically productive areas on Earth (1 hectare = 2.47 acres). This calculation yields an allotment of 1.7 gha per person—the benchmark for comparing actual ecological footprints. Anyone who consumes resources that require more than 1.7 gha to produce is using an unsustainable share of Earth's resources, as is the case for the citizens of many countries **(Figure 53.24)**. For example, a typical ecological footprint for a person in the United States is 8 gha. Globally, the average footprint is 2.7 gha per person, more than a 50% overshoot of the sustainable use (1.7 gha per person) of Earth's resources.

Our impact on the planet can also be assessed using currencies other than area, such as energy use. Average energy use differs greatly across different regions of the world **(Figure 53.25)**. A typical person in the United States, Canada, or Norway consumes roughly 30 times the energy that a person in central Africa does. Moreover, fossil fuels, such as oil, coal, and natural gas, are the source of 80% or more of the energy used in most developed nations. As Concept 56.4

▶ Figure 53.25 The uneven electrification of the planet. This composite image taken from space of Earth's surface at night illustrates the varied density of electric lights worldwide, one aspect of energy use by humans.



discusses in more detail, this unsustainable reliance on fossil fuels is changing Earth's climate and increasing the amount of waste that humans produce. Ultimately, the combination of resource use per person and population density determines our global ecological footprint.

What factors will eventually limit the growth of the human population? Perhaps food will be the main limiting factor. Malnutrition and famine are common in some regions, but they result mainly from the unequal distribution of food rather than from inadequate production. So far, technological improvements in agriculture have allowed food supplies to keep up with global population growth. In contrast, the demands of many populations have already far exceeded the local and even regional supplies of one renewable resource—fresh water. More than 1 billion people do not have access to sufficient water to meet their basic sanitation needs. The human population may also be limited by the capacity of the environment to absorb its wastes. If so, then Earth's current human occupants could lower the planet's long-term carrying capacity for future generations.

Technology has substantially increased Earth's carrying capacity, but no population can grow indefinitely. After reading this chapter, you should realize that there is no single carrying capacity. How many people our planet can sustain depends on the quality of life each of us has and the distribution of wealth across people and nations, topics of great concern and political debate. We can decide whether zero population growth will be attained through social changes based on human choices or, instead, through increased mortality due to resource limitation, plagues, war, and environmental degradation.

CONCEPT CHECK 53.6

1. How does a human population's age structure affect its growth rate?
2. How have the rate and number of people added to the human population each year changed in recent decades?
3. **WHAT IF?** Type "personal ecological footprint calculator" into a search engine and use one of the resulting calculators to estimate your footprint. Is your current lifestyle sustainable? If not, what choices can you make to influence your own ecological footprint?

For suggested answers, see Appendix A.

53 Chapter Review

Go to **Mastering Biology** for Assignments, the eText, the Study Area, and Dynamic Study Modules.

SUMMARY OF KEY CONCEPTS

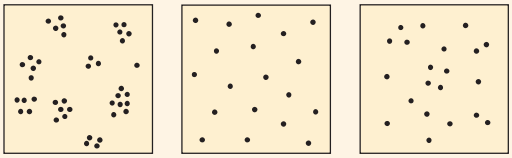
To review key terms, go to the **Vocabulary Self-Quiz** in the **Mastering Biology** eText or Study Area, or go to goo.gl/zkjz9t.

CONCEPT 53.1

Biotic and abiotic factors affect population density, dispersion, and demographics *(pp. 1191–1195)*

- Population **density**—the number of individuals per unit area or volume—reflects the interplay of births, deaths, immigration, and emigration. Environmental and social factors influence the **dispersion** of individuals.

Patterns of dispersion



Clumped Uniform Random

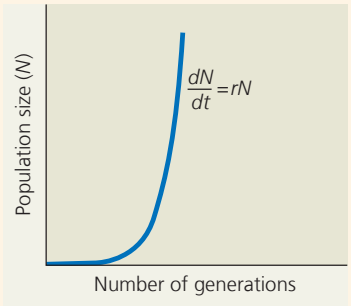
- Populations increase from births and **immigration** and decrease from deaths and **emigration. Life tables** and **survivorship curves** summarize specific trends in **demography**.

*Gray whales (*Eschrichtius robustus*) gather each winter near Baja California to give birth. How might such behavior make it easier for ecologists to estimate birth and death rates for the species?*

CONCEPT 53.2

The exponential model describes population growth in an idealized, unlimited environment *(pp. 1196–1197)*

- If immigration and emigration are ignored, a population's per capita growth rate equals its birth rate minus its death rate.
- The **exponential growth** equation $dN/dt = rN$ represents a population's growth when resources are relatively abundant, where r is the **intrinsic rate of increase** and N is the number of individuals in the population.

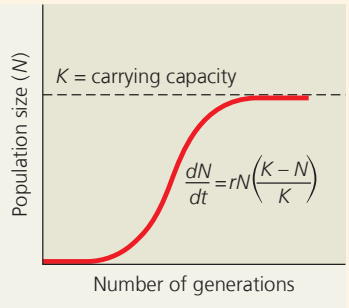


Suppose one population has an r that is twice as large as the r of another population. What is the maximum size that both populations will reach over time, based on the exponential model?

CONCEPT 53.3

The logistic model describes how a population grows more slowly as it nears its carrying capacity *(pp. 1197–1200)*

- Exponential growth cannot be sustained in any population. A more realistic population model limits growth by incorporating **carrying capacity** (K), the maximum population size the environment can support.
- According to the **logistic growth** equation $dN/dt = rN(K - N)/K$, growth levels off as population size approaches the carrying capacity.



- The logistic model fits few real populations perfectly, but it is useful for estimating possible growth.

? *As an ecologist who manages a wildlife preserve, you want to increase the preserve's carrying capacity for a particular endangered species. How might you go about accomplishing this?*

CONCEPT 53.4

Life history traits are products of natural selection *(pp. 1200–1202)*

- **Life history** traits are evolutionary outcomes reflected in the development, physiology, and behavior of organisms.
- Big-bang, or **semelparous**, organisms reproduce once and die. **Iteroparous** organisms produce offspring repeatedly.
- Life history traits such as brood size, age at maturity, and parental caregiving represent trade-offs between conflicting demands for time, energy, and nutrients. Two hypothetical life history patterns are ***K*-selection** and ***r*-selection**.

? *Explain why ecological trade-offs are common.*

CONCEPT 53.5

Density-dependent factors regulate population growth *(pp. 1202–1207)*

- In **density-dependent** population regulation, death rates rise and birth rates fall with increasing density. A birth or death rate that does not vary with density is said to be **density independent**.
- Density-dependent changes in birth and death rates curb population increase through negative feedback and can eventually stabilize a population near its carrying capacity. Density-dependent limiting factors include intraspecific competition for limited food or space, increased predation, disease, and intrinsic physiological factors.
- Because changing environmental conditions periodically disrupt them, all populations exhibit some size fluctuations. Many populations undergo regular boom-and-bust cycles that are influenced by complex interactions between biotic and abiotic factors. A **metapopulation** is a group of populations linked by immigration and emigration.

? *Give an example of one biotic and one abiotic factor that contribute to yearly fluctuations in the size of the human population.*

CONCEPT 53.6

The human population is no longer growing exponentially but is still increasing extremely rapidly *(pp. 1207–1211)*

- Since about 1650, the global human population has grown exponentially, but within the last 50 years, the rate of growth has fallen by half. Differences in **age structure** show that while some nations' populations are growing rapidly, those of others are stable or declining in size. Infant mortality rates and life expectancy at birth vary widely in different countries.
- **Ecological footprint** is the aggregate land and water area needed to produce all the resources a person or group of people consume and to absorb all of their waste. It is one measure of how close we are to the carrying capacity of Earth, which is uncertain. With a world population of more than 7.6 billion people, we are already using many resources in an unsustainable manner.

? *How do humans differ from other species in the ability to "choose" a carrying capacity for their environment?*

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING

For more multiple-choice questions, go to the **Practice Test** in the **Mastering Biology** eText or Study Area, or go to goo.gl/GruWRg.

Levels 1-2: Remembering/Understanding

1. Population ecologists follow the fate of same-age cohorts to
   (A) determine a population's carrying capacity.
   (B) determine the birth rate and death rate of each group in a population.
   (C) determine if a population is regulated by density-dependent processes.
   (D) determine the factors that affect the size of a population.
2. A population's carrying capacity
   (A) may change as environmental conditions change.
   (B) can be accurately calculated using the logistic growth model.
   (C) increases as the per capita population growth rate decreases.
   (D) can never be exceeded.
3. Scientific study of the population cycles of the snowshoe hare and its predator, the lynx, has revealed that
   (A) predation is the dominant factor affecting prey population cycling.
   (B) hares and lynx are so mutually dependent that each species cannot survive without the other.
   (C) both hare and lynx population sizes are affected mainly by abiotic factors.
   (D) the hare population is *r*-selected and the lynx population is *K*-selected.

4. Analyzing ecological footprints reveals that
   (A) Earth's carrying capacity would increase if per capita meat consumption increased.
   (B) current demand by industrialized countries for resources is much smaller than the ecological footprint of those countries.
   (C) it is not possible for technological improvements to increase Earth's carrying capacity for humans.
   (D) the ecological footprint of the United States is large because per capita resource use is high.

5. Based on current growth rates, Earth's human population in 2019 will be closest to
   (A) 2.5 million.
   (B) 4.5 billion.
   (C) 7.8 billion.
   (D) 10.5 billion.

Levels 3-4: Applying/Analyzing

6. The observation that members of a population are uniformly distributed suggests that
   (A) resources are distributed unevenly.
   (B) the members of the population are competing for access to a resource.
   (C) the members of the population are neither attracted to nor repelled by one another.
   (D) the density of the population is low.

7. According to the logistic growth equation
$$\frac{dN}{dt} = rN\frac{(K - N)}{K}$$
   (A) the number of individuals added per unit time is greatest when N is close to zero.
   (B) the per capita population growth rate increases as N approaches K.
   (C) population growth is zero when N equals K.
   (D) the population grows exponentially when K is small.

8. During exponential growth, a population always
   (A) has a constant per capita population growth rate.
   (B) quickly reaches its carrying capacity.
   (C) cycles through time.
   (D) loses some individuals to emigration.

9. Which of the following statements about human populations in industrialized countries is correct?
   (A) Birth rates and death rates are high.
   (B) Average family size is relatively large.
   (C) The population has undergone the demographic transition.
   (D) The survivorship curve is Type II.

Levels 5-6: Evaluating/Creating

10. **INTERPRET THE DATA** To estimate which age cohort in a population of females produces the most female offspring, you need information about the number of offspring produced per capita within that cohort and the number of individuals alive in the cohort. Make this estimate for Belding's ground squirrels by multiplying the number of females alive at the start of the year (column 2 in Table 53.1) by the average number of female offspring produced per female (column 5 in Table 53.1). Draw a bar graph with female age in years on the x-axis (0–1, 1–2, and so on) and total number of female offspring produced for each age cohort on the y-axis. Which cohort of female Belding's ground squirrels produces the most female young?

11. **EVOLUTION CONNECTION** Contrast the selective pressures operating in high-density populations (those near the carrying capacity, K) versus low-density populations.

12. **SCIENTIFIC INQUIRY** You are testing the hypothesis that increased population density of a particular plant species increases the rate at which a pathogenic fungus infects the plant. Because the fungus causes visible scars on the leaves, you can easily determine whether a plant is infected. Design an experiment to test your hypothesis. Describe your experimental and control groups, how you would collect data, and what results you would see if your hypothesis is correct.

13. **SCIENCE, TECHNOLOGY, AND SOCIETY** Some people regard the rapid population growth of less industrialized countries as our most serious environmental problem. Others think that the population growth in industrialized countries, though smaller, is actually a greater environmental threat. What problems result from population growth in (a) less industrialized countries and (b) industrialized nations? Which do you think is a greater threat, and why?

14. **WRITE ABOUT A THEME: INTERACTIONS** In a short essay (100–150 words), identify the factor or factors in Figure 53.17 that you think may ultimately be most important for density-dependent population regulation in humans, and explain your reasoning.

15. **SYNTHESIZE YOUR KNOWLEDGE**

Locusts (grasshoppers in the family Acrididae) undergo cyclic population outbreaks, leading to massive swarms such as this one in the Canary Islands, off the west coast of Africa. Of the mechanisms of density-dependent regulation shown in Figure 53.17, choose the two that you think most apply to locust swarms, and explain why.

For selected answers, see Appendix A.

54 Community Ecology

KEY CONCEPTS

54.1 **Interactions between species can help, harm, or have no effect on the individuals involved** *p. 1215*

54.2 **Diversity and trophic structure characterize biological communities** *p. 1222*

54.3 **Disturbance influences species diversity and composition** *p. 1228*

54.4 **Biogeographic factors affect community diversity** *p. 1231*

54.5 **Pathogens alter community structure locally and globally** *p. 1234*

Study Tip

Make a table: As you read the chapter, build a table listing factors that can affect community structure. Add in figure numbers or page numbers that give examples of these factors.

Factor affecting community structure	What aspect of community structure is affected?	Example
Competition	Locations where a species can live in a community	Competition between two barnacle species (Figure 54.3)

Go to Mastering Biology

For Students (in eText and Study Area)
- Get Ready for Chapter 54
- Figure 54.17 Walkthrough: An Antarctic Marine Food Web
- HHMI Videos: Moth Mimicry: Using Ultrasound to Avoid Bats; Some Animals Are More Equal Than Others: Keystone Species and Trophic Cascades; Trophic Cascades in Salt Marsh Ecosystems; Riverine Food Webs: How Flow Rates Affect Biomass

For Instructors to Assign (in Item Library)
- Tutorial: Make Connections: Character Displacement and Modes of Selection
- Interpreting Data: Bird Populations During Old-Field Succession

Figure 54.1 Although this moray eel could easily eat the cleaner wrasse in its mouth, the eel remains still, allowing the wrasse to eat parasites living in the eel's mouth. The wrasse and the eel—and the parasites in the eel's mouth—live together in a **community**, a group of populations of different species living in close enough proximity to interact.

What are some factors that influence the structure of a community?

Foundation species

Species that are large or abundant, such as the corals that form this reef, may affect community structure by providing habitat and food for other organisms, like the parrotfish below.

Interactions between species

Predation and other interactions affect the number of species in a community and the particular species that are present. Interactions can be classified in three categories:

- **Competition**: negatively affects both organisms involved
- **Exploitation**: benefits one organism while harming the other
- **Positive interactions**: benefit one or both organisms without harming either

Disturbances

Marine heat waves (resulting in coral bleaching, above), storms, human activities, and other disturbances can affect a community by removing organisms or altering resource availability.

In the interaction shown in **Figure 54.1**, both organisms benefit: The cleaner wrasse gains access to a supply of food, and the moray eel is freed of parasites that might weaken it or spread disease. However, other interactions between members of different species can harm one of the participants, and still others can reduce the reproduction and survival of both participants. We'll begin this chapter by examining ecological interactions between the members of different species that live together in a community. We'll then turn to factors that affect **community structure**—the number of species found in a community, the particular species that are present, and the relative abundance of these species.

CONCEPT 54.1

Interactions between species can help, harm, or have no effect on the individuals involved

Some key relationships in the life of an organism are its interactions with individuals of other species in the community. These **interspecific interactions** include competition, predation, herbivory, parasitism, mutualism, and commensalism. In this section, we'll define and describe each of these interactions, grouping them according to whether they have positive (+) or negative (−) effects on the survival and reproduction of individuals engaged in the interaction.

For example, predation is a +/− interaction, with a positive effect on the survival and reproduction of members of the predator population and a negative effect on members of the prey population. Mutualism is a +/+ interaction in which the survival and reproduction of individuals of each species is increased in the presence of the other. A zero (0) indicates that the members of a species are not affected by the interaction.

We'll consider three broad categories of ecological interactions: competition (−/−), exploitation (+/−), and positive interactions (+/+ or +/0). As you study examples of these interactions, bear in mind that their effects can change over time. For example, an interaction that typically benefits individuals of both species may at times continue to benefit one of them, while harming or having no effect on the other.

Competition

Competition is a −/− interaction that occurs when individuals of different species each use a resource that limits the survival and reproduction of both individuals. (As described in Figure 53.18, competition for resources can also occur between members of the same species; this case is sometimes distinguished as *intraspecific competition*.) Weeds growing in a garden compete with garden plants for soil nutrients and water. Lynx and foxes in the northern forests of Alaska and Canada compete for prey such as snowshoe hares. In contrast, some resources, such as oxygen, are rarely in short supply on land; most terrestrial species use this resource but do not usually compete for it.

Competitive Exclusion

What happens in a community when individuals of two species compete for limited resources? In 1934, Russian ecologist G. F. Gause studied this question using laboratory experiments with two closely related ciliate species, *Paramecium aurelia* and *Paramecium caudatum* (see Figure 28.19a). He cultured the species under stable conditions, adding a constant amount of food each day. When Gause grew the two species separately, each population increased rapidly in number and then leveled off at the apparent carrying capacity of the culture (see Figure 53.10a for an illustration of the logistic growth of a *Paramecium* population). But when Gause grew the two species together, *P. caudatum* became extinct in the culture. Gause inferred that *P. aurelia* had a competitive edge in obtaining food. More generally, his results led him to conclude that two species whose members compete for the same limiting resources cannot coexist permanently in the same place. In the absence of disturbance, one species will use the resources more efficiently and reproduce more rapidly than the other. Even a slight reproductive advantage will eventually lead to local elimination of the inferior competitor, an outcome called **competitive exclusion**.

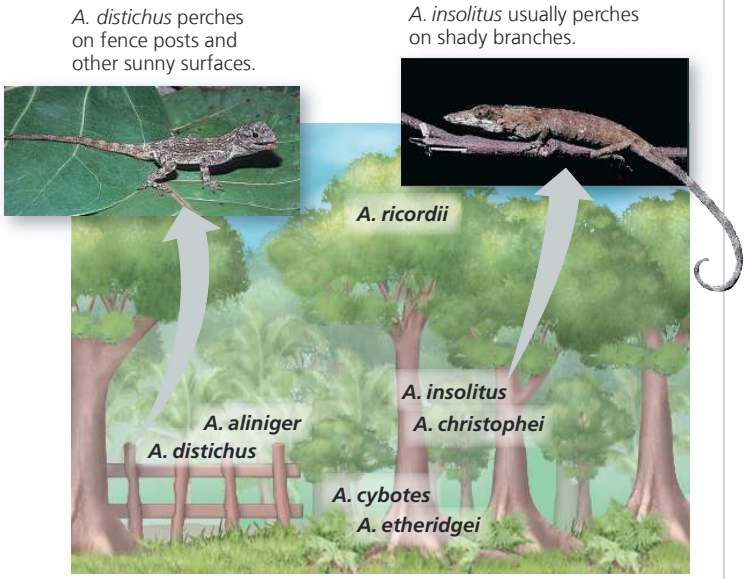
Ecological Niches and Natural Selection

EVOLUTION Competition for limited resources can cause evolutionary change in populations. One way to examine how this occurs is to focus on an organism's **ecological niche**, the specific set of biotic and abiotic resources that an organism uses in its environment. The niche of a tropical tree lizard, for instance, includes the temperature range it tolerates, the size of branches on which it perches, the time of day when it is active, and the sizes and kinds of insects it eats. Such factors define the lizard's niche, or ecological role—how it fits into an ecosystem.

We can use the niche concept to restate the principle of competitive exclusion: Two species cannot coexist permanently in a community if their niches are identical. However, ecologically similar species *can* coexist in a community if one or more significant differences in their niches arise through time. Evolution by natural selection can result in one of the species using a different set of resources or similar resources at different times of the day or year. The differentiation of niches that enables similar species to coexist in a community is called **resource partitioning** **(Figure 54.2)**.

As a result of competition, a species' *fundamental niche*, which is the niche potentially occupied by that species, is often different from its *realized niche*, the portion of its fundamental niche that it actually occupies. Ecologists can identify the fundamental niche of a species by testing the range of conditions in which it grows and reproduces in the absence of competitors. They can also test whether a potential

▼ Figure 54.2 Resource partitioning among Dominican Republic lizards. Seven species of *Anolis* lizards live in close proximity, and all feed on insects and other small arthropods. However, competition for food is reduced because each lizard species has a different preferred perch, thus occupying a distinct niche.



competitor limits a species' realized niche by removing the competitor and seeing if the first species expands into the newly available space. The classic experiment depicted in **Figure 54.3** clearly showed that competition between individuals of two barnacle species kept one species from occupying part of its fundamental niche.

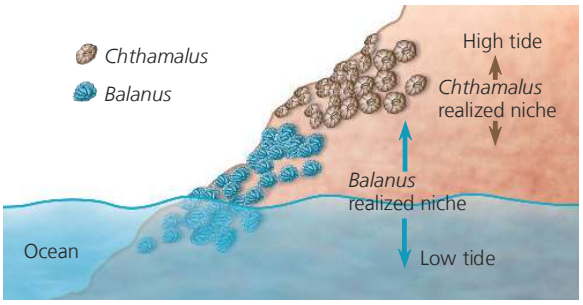
Species can partition their niches not just in space, as lizards and barnacles do, but in time as well. The common spiny mouse (*Acomys cahirinus*) and the golden spiny mouse (*A. russatus*; **Figure 54.4**) live in rocky habitats of the Middle East and Africa, using similar microhabitats and food sources. Where they coexist, *A. cahirinus* is nocturnal (active at night), while *A. russatus* is diurnal (active during the day). Surprisingly, laboratory research showed that *A. russatus* is naturally nocturnal. To be active during the day, it must override its biological clock in the presence of *A. cahirinus*. When researchers in Israel removed all *A. cahirinus* individuals from a site in the species' natural habitat, *A. russatus* individuals at that site became nocturnal, consistent with the laboratory results. This change in behavior suggests that these individuals were competing for resources and that partitioning of their active time helps them coexist.

◀ Figure 54.4 The golden spiny mouse (*Acomys russatus*).

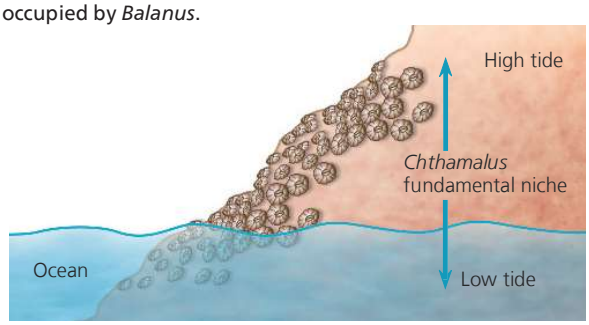
▼ Figure 54.3 Inquiry

Can a species' niche be influenced by competition?

Experiment Ecologist Joseph Connell studied two barnacle species—*Chthamalus stellatus* and *Balanus balanoides*—that have a stratified distribution on rocks along the coast of Scotland. *Chthamalus* is usually found higher on the rocks than *Balanus*. To determine whether the distribution of *Chthamalus* is the result of competition with *Balanus*, Connell removed *Balanus* from the rocks at several sites.



Results *Chthamalus* spread into the region formerly occupied by *Balanus*.



Conclusion Competition makes the realized niche of *Chthamalus* much smaller than its fundamental niche.

Data from J. H. Connell, The influence of interspecific competition and other factors on the distribution of the barnacle *Chthamalus stellatus*, *Ecology* 42:710–723 (1961).

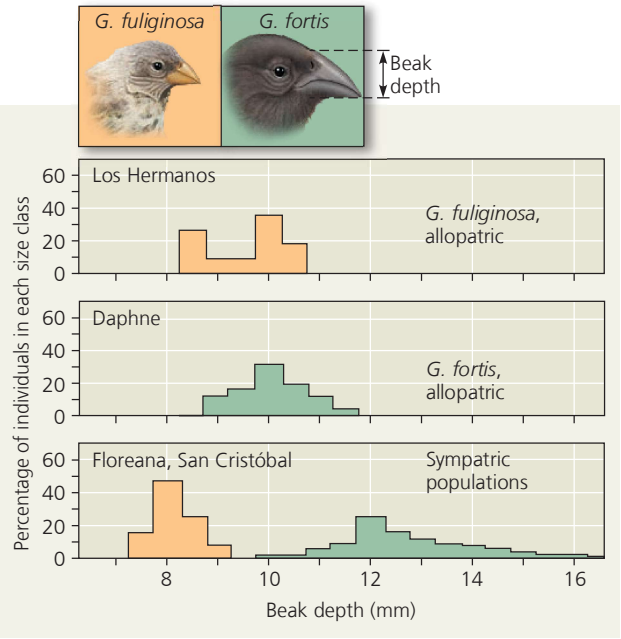
Instructors: A related Experimental Inquiry Tutorial can be assigned in **Mastering Biology**.

WHAT IF? *Other observations showed that Balanus cannot survive high on the rocks because it dries out during low tides. How would Balanus's realized niche compare with its fundamental niche?*

Character Displacement

Closely related species whose populations are sometimes allopatric (geographically separate; see Concept 24.2) and sometimes sympatric (geographically overlapping) provide additional evidence of how competition affects communities. In some cases, the allopatric populations of such species are morphologically similar and use similar resources. By contrast, sympatric populations, which would potentially compete for resources, show differences in body structures and in the resources they use. This tendency for characteristics to diverge more in sympatric than in allopatric populations of two species is called **character displacement**. An example of character

▼ Figure 54.5 Character displacement: indirect evidence of past competition. Allopatric populations of *Geospiza fuliginosa* and *Geospiza fortis* on Los Hermanos and Daphne Islands have similar beak morphologies (top two graphs) and presumably eat similarly sized seeds. However, where the two species are sympatric on Floreana and San Cristóbal, *G. fuliginosa* has a shallower, smaller beak and *G. fortis* a deeper, larger one (bottom graph), adaptations that favor eating different-sized seeds.



WHAT IF? *If* G. fuliginosa *became extinct on Floreana, predict how beak depth would change over time in Floreana's* G. fortis *population. Explain your reasoning.*

displacement can be seen in two species of Galápagos finches, *Geospiza fuliginosa* and *Geospiza fortis*: Beak depths in these species are similar in allopatric populations but have diverged considerably in sympatric populations **(Figure 54.5)**.

Exploitation

All nonphotosynthetic organisms must eat, and all organisms are at risk of being eaten. As a result, much of the drama in nature involves **exploitation**, a term for any type of +/− interaction in which individuals of one species benefit by feeding on (and thereby harming) individuals of the other species. Exploitative interactions include predation, herbivory, and parasitism.

Predation

Predation is a +/− interaction in which an individual of one species, the predator, kills and eats an individual of the other species, the prey. Though the term *predation* generally elicits such images as a lion attacking and eating an antelope, it applies to a wide range of interactions. A rotifer (a tiny aquatic animal that is smaller than many unicellular protists) that kills a protist by eating it can also be considered a predator. Because eating and avoiding being eaten are prerequisites to reproductive success, the adaptations of both predators and prey tend to be refined through natural selection. In the **Scientific Skills Exercise**,

Scientific Skills Exercise

Making a Bar Graph and a Scatter Plot

Can a Native Predator Species Adapt Rapidly to an Introduced Prey Species? Cane toads (*Bufo marinus*) were introduced to Australia in 1935 in a failed attempt to control an insect pest. Since then, the toads have spread across northeastern Australia, with a population of over 200 million today. Cane toads have glands that produce a toxin that is poisonous to snakes and other potential predators. In this exercise, you will graph and interpret data from a two-part experiment conducted to determine whether native Australian predators have developed resistance to the cane toad toxin.

How the Experiment Was Done In part 1, researchers collected 12 red-bellied black snakes (*Pseudechis porphyriacus*) from areas where cane toads had existed for 40–60 years and another 12 from areas free of cane toads. They recorded the percentage of snakes from each area that ate either a freshly killed native frog (*Limnodynastes peronii*, a species the snakes commonly eat) or a freshly killed cane toad from which the toxin gland had been removed (making the toad nonpoisonous). In part 2, researchers collected snakes from areas where cane toads had been present for 5–60 years. To assess how cane toad toxin affected the physiological activity of these snakes, they injected small amounts of the toxin into the snakes' stomachs and measured the snakes' swimming speed in a small pool.

Data from the Experiment, Part 1

Type of Prey Offered	% of Snakes from Each Area That Ate Each Type of Prey	
	Area with Cane Toads Present for 40–60 Years	Area with No Cane Toads
Native frog	100	100
Cane toad	0	50

Data from the Experiment, Part 2

Number of Years Cane Toads Had Been Present in the Area	5	10	10	20	50	60	60	60	60	60
% Reduction in Snake Swimming Speed	52	19	30	30	5	5	9	11	12	22

Data from B. L. Phillips and R. Shine, An invasive species induces rapid adaptive change in a native predator: cane toads and black snakes in Australia, *Proceedings of the Royal Society B* 273:1545–1550 (2006).

INTERPRET THE DATA

1. Make a bar graph of the data in part 1. (For additional information about graphs, see the Scientific Skills Review in Appendix D.)
2. What do the data represented in the graph suggest about the effects of cane toads on the predatory behavior of red-bellied black snakes in areas where the toads are and are not currently found?
3. Suppose a novel enzyme that deactivates the cane toad toxin evolved in a snake population exposed to cane toads. If the researchers repeated part 1 of this study, predict how the results would change.
4. Identify the dependent and independent variables in part 2 and make a scatter plot. What conclusion would you draw about whether exposure to cane toads is having a selective effect on the snakes? Explain.
5. Explain why a bar graph is appropriate for presenting the data in part 1 and a scatter plot is appropriate for the data in part 2.

Instructors: A version of this Scientific Skills Exercise can be assigned in **Mastering Biology**.

you can interpret data on the impact of natural selection for a specific predator-prey interaction.

Many important feeding adaptations of predators are obvious and familiar. Most predators have acute senses that enable them to find and identify potential prey. Rattlesnakes and other pit vipers, for example, find their prey with a pair of heat-sensing organs located between their eyes and nostrils (see Figure 50.7b). Owls have characteristically large eyes that help them see prey at night. Many predators also have adaptations such as claws, fangs, or poison that help them catch and subdue their food. Predators that pursue their prey are generally fast and agile, whereas those that lie in ambush are often disguised in their environments.

Just as predators possess adaptations for capturing prey, potential prey have adaptations that help them avoid being eaten. In animals, these adaptations include behavioral defenses such as hiding, fleeing, and forming herds or schools. Active self-defense is less common, though some large grazing mammals vigorously defend their young from predators.

Animals also display a variety of morphological and physiological defensive adaptations. Mechanical or chemical defenses protect species such as porcupines and skunks **(Figure 54.6a** and **b)**. Some animals, such as the European fire salamander, can synthesize toxins; others accumulate toxins passively from the plants they eat. Animals with effective chemical defenses often exhibit bright

▼ Figure 54.6 Examples of defensive adaptations in animals.

(a) Mechanical defense

▶ Porcupine

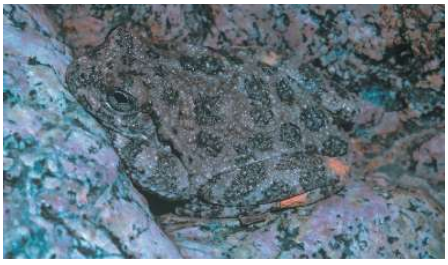
(b) Chemical defense

▶ Skunk

(c) Aposematic coloration: warning coloration

▶ Poison dart frog

(d) Cryptic coloration: camouflage



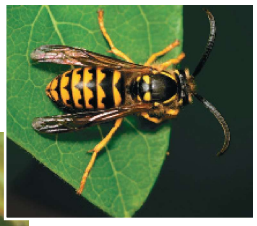
▶ Canyon tree frog

(e) Batesian mimicry: A harmless species mimics a harmful one.

▲ Venomous green parrot snake

◀ Nonvenomous hawkmoth larva

(f) Müllerian mimicry: Two unpalatable species mimic each other.



▲ Yellow jacket

◀ Cuckoo bee

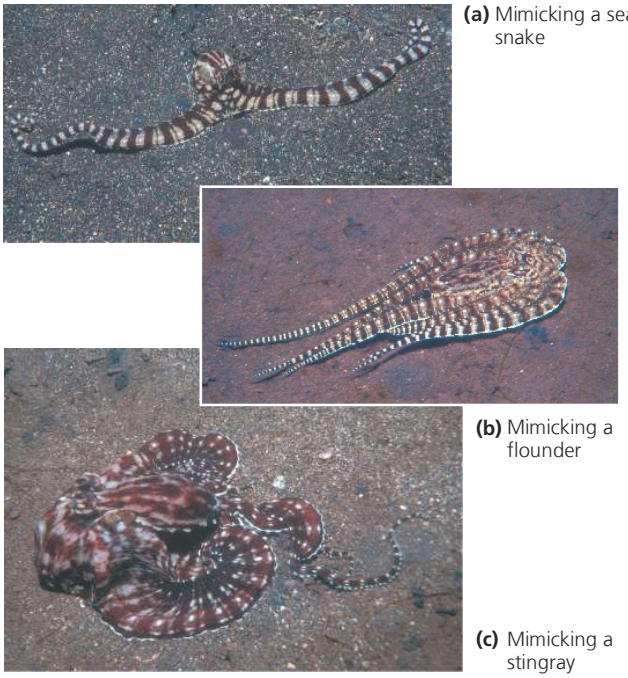
MAKE CONNECTIONS *Explain how natural selection could increase the resemblance of a harmless species to a distantly related harmful species. In addition to selection, what else could account for a harmless species resembling a closely related harmful species? (See Concept 22.2.)*

Mastering Biology HHMI Video: Moth Mimicry: Using Ultrasound to Avoid Bats

aposematic coloration, or warning coloration, such as that of poison dart frogs **(Figure 54.6c)**. Such coloration seems to be adaptive because predators often avoid brightly colored prey. **Cryptic coloration**, or camouflage, makes prey difficult to see **(Figure 54.6d)**.

Some prey species are protected by their resemblance to other species. For example, in **Batesian mimicry**, a palatable or harmless species mimics an unpalatable or harmful species to which it is not closely related. The larva of the hawkmoth *Hemeroplanes ornatus* puffs up its head and thorax when disturbed, looking like the head of a small venomous snake **(Figure 54.6e)**. In this case, the mimicry even involves behavior; the larva weaves its head back and forth and hisses like a snake. Such cases of Batesian mimicry are thought to result from natural selection, as individuals in the harmless species that happen to more closely resemble the harmful one are avoided by predators who have learned not to eat the harmful ones. Over time, closer and closer resemblance to the harmful species evolves. In **Müllerian mimicry**, two or more unpalatable species, such as the cuckoo bee and yellow jacket, resemble each other **(Figure 54.6f)**. Presumably, the more unpalatable prey there are, the faster predators learn to avoid prey with that particular appearance. Mimicry has also evolved in many predators. The mimic octopus *Thaumoctopus mimicus* **(Figure 54.7)** can take on the appearance and movement of more than a dozen marine animals, including crabs, sea stars, sea snakes, fish, and stingrays. This octopus's ability to mimic other animals enables it to approach prey—for example, imitating a crab to approach another crab and eat it. The octopus also can defend itself from predators through mimicry. When attacked by a damselfish, the octopus quickly mimics a banded sea snake, a known predator of the damselfish.

▼ Figure 54.7 The mimic octopus. (a) After hiding six of its tentacles in a hole in the seafloor, the octopus waves its other two tentacles to mimic a sea snake. **(b)** Flattening its body and arranging its arms to trail behind, the octopus mimics a flounder (a flat fish). **(c)** It can mimic a stingray by flattening most of its tentacles alongside its body while allowing one tentacle to extend behind it.



(a) Mimicking a sea snake

(b) Mimicking a flounder

(c) Mimicking a stingray

Mastering Biology **Interview with Tracy Langkilde: Studying the evolution of novel defensive adaptations in lizards**

Herbivory

Herbivory is an exploitative (+/−) interaction in which an organism—an herbivore—eats parts of a plant or alga, thereby harming it but usually not killing it. While large mammalian herbivores such as cattle, sheep, and water buffalo may be most familiar, most herbivores are actually invertebrates, such as grasshoppers, caterpillars, and beetles. In the ocean, herbivores include sea urchins, some tropical fishes, and certain mammals **(Figure 54.8)**.

Like predators, herbivores have many specialized adaptations. Many herbivorous insects have chemical sensors on their feet that enable them to distinguish between plants based on their toxicity or nutritional value. Some mammalian herbivores, such as goats, use their sense of smell to examine plants, rejecting some and eating others. They may also eat just a specific part of a plant, such as the flowers. Many herbivores also have specialized teeth or digestive systems adapted for processing vegetation (see Concept 41.4).

Unlike animals, plants cannot run away to avoid being eaten. Instead, a plant's arsenal against herbivores may feature chemical toxins or structures such as spines and thorns.

▼ Figure 54.8 An herbivorous marine mammal. This West Indian manatee (*Trichechus manatus*) in Florida is grazing on *Hydrilla*, an introduced plant species.

Among the plant compounds that serve as chemical defenses are the poison strychnine, produced by the tropical vine *Strychnos toxifera*; nicotine, from the tobacco plant; and tannins, from a variety of plant species. Compounds that are not toxic to humans but may be distasteful to many herbivores are responsible for the familiar flavors of cinnamon, cloves, and peppermint. Certain plants produce chemicals that cause abnormal development in some insects that eat them. For more examples of how plants defend themselves, see Make Connections Figure 39.27, "Levels of Plant Defenses Against Herbivores."

Parasitism

Parasitism is a +/− exploitative interaction in which one organism, the **parasite**, derives its nourishment from another organism, its **host**, which is harmed in the process. Parasites that live within the body of their host, such as tapeworms, are called **endoparasites**; parasites that feed on the external surface of a host, such as ticks and lice, are called **ectoparasites**. Some ecologists have estimated that at least one-third of all species on Earth are parasites. In one particular type of parasitism, parasitoid insects—usually small wasps—lay eggs on or in living hosts. The larvae then feed on the body of the host, eventually killing it.

Many parasites have complex life cycles involving multiple hosts. The blood fluke, which currently infects approximately 200 million people around the world, requires two hosts at different times in its development: humans and freshwater snails (see Figure 33.10). Some parasites change the behavior of their current host in ways that increase the likelihood that the parasite will reach its next host. For instance, crustaceans that are parasitized by acanthocephalan (spiny-headed) worms leave protective cover and move into the open, where they are more likely to be eaten by the birds that are the second host in the worm's life cycle.

Parasites can significantly affect the survival, reproduction, and density of their host population, either directly or indirectly. For example, ticks that feed as ectoparasites on moose can weaken their hosts by withdrawing blood and causing hair breakage and loss. In their weakened condition, the moose have a greater chance of dying from cold stress or predation by wolves.

Positive Interactions

While nature abounds with dramatic and gory examples of exploitative interactions, ecological communities are also heavily influenced by **positive interactions**, a term that refers to a +/+ or +/0 interaction between members of two species in which at least one individual benefits and neither is harmed. Positive interactions include mutualism and commensalism. As we'll see, positive interactions can affect the diversity of species found in an ecological community.

Mutualism

Mutualism is a +/+ interaction that benefits individuals of both of the interacting species. Mutualisms are common in nature, as illustrated by examples seen in previous chapters, including cellulose digestion by microorganisms in the digestive systems of termites and ruminant mammals, animals that pollinate flowers or disperse seeds, nutrient exchange between fungi and plant roots in mycorrhizae, and photosynthesis by unicellular algae in corals. In some mutualisms, such as the acacia-ant example shown in **Figure 54.9**, each of the interacting individuals depends on the other for their survival and reproduction. In other mutualisms, however, both individuals can survive on their own.

Typically, both partners in a mutualism incur costs as well as benefits. In mycorrhizae, for example, the plant often

▼ Figure 54.9 Mutualism between acacia trees and ants.

(a) Certain species of acacia trees (genus *Acacia*) in Central and South America have hollow thorns (not shown) that are home to stinging ants of the genus *Pseudomyrmex*. The ants feed on nectar produced by the tree and on protein-rich swellings (yellow in the photograph) at the tips of leaflets.

(b) The acacia benefits because the pugnacious ants, which attack anything that touches the tree, remove fungal spores, small herbivores, and debris. They also clip vegetation that grows close to the acacia.

transfers carbohydrates to the fungus, while the fungus transfers limiting nutrients, such as phosphorus, to the plant. Each partner benefits, but each partner also experiences a cost: It transfers materials that it could have used to support its own growth and metabolism. For an interaction to be considered a mutualism, the benefits to each partner must exceed the costs. When this is not the case, the mutualism may break down, at least temporarily. In some mycorrhizae, for example, the plant may cease to supply carbohydrates to its fungal partner when soil nutrients are plentiful—a change that occurs because the cost of supporting the fungus has become greater than the benefits the fungus can provide.

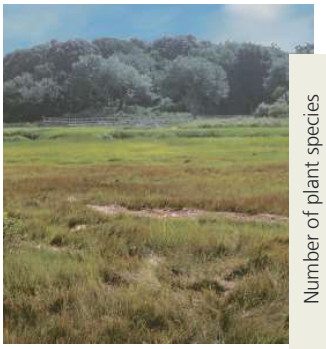
Commensalism

An interaction that benefits the individuals of one of the interacting species but neither harms nor helps the individuals of the other species is called **commensalism** (+/0). Like mutualism, commensalisms are common in nature. For instance, many wildflowers that grow best in low light levels are found only in shaded, forest floor environments. Such shade-tolerant "specialists" depend entirely on the trees that tower above them—the trees provide their dim habitat. Yet the survival and reproduction of the trees are not affected by these wildflowers. Thus, these species are involved in a +/0 interaction in which the wildflowers benefit and the trees are not affected.

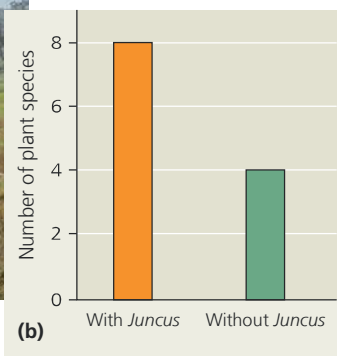
In another example of a commensalism, cattle egrets feed on insects flushed out of the grass by grazing bison, cattle, horses, and other herbivores **(Figure 54.10)**. Because the birds increase their feeding rates when following the herbivores, they clearly benefit from the association. Much of the time, the herbivores are not affected by the birds. At times, however, the herbivores too may derive some benefit;

▼ Figure 54.10 Commensalism between cattle egrets and African buffalo.

▼ Figure 54.11 Positive interactions in New England salt marshes. When black rush (*Juncus gerardii*) is present, soil salt concentrations drop and soil oxygen levels rise, increasing the number of plant species that can live in the marsh.



(a) Salt marsh with *Juncus* (foreground)



(b)

for example, the birds may remove and eat ticks and other ectoparasites from the herbivores' skin, or they may warn the herbivores of a predator's approach. This example provides another illustration of a key point about ecological interactions: Their effects can change over time. In this case, an interaction whose effects are typically +/0 (commensalism) may at times become +/+ (mutualism).

Positive interactions can have major effects on ecological communities. For instance, the black rush *Juncus gerardii* alters soil conditions in ways that benefit other plant species in New England salt marshes **(Figure 54.11a)**. *Juncus* shades the soil surface, which reduces evaporation and thus lowers the concentration of salt in the soil. The presence of *Juncus* also increases soil oxygen levels; this occurs because some oxygen leaks into the soil as *Juncus* transports oxygen to its belowground tissues. In one study, when *Juncus* was removed from areas of the marsh, those areas supported 50% fewer plant species **(Figure 54.11b)**.

Like positive interactions, competition and exploitation (predation, herbivory, and parasitism) also can strongly affect ecological communities, as examples throughout the rest of this chapter will show.

CONCEPT CHECK 54.1

1. Explain how competition, predation, and mutualism differ in their effects on members of the two interacting species.
2. According to the principle of competitive exclusion, what outcome is expected when two species with identical niches compete for a resource? Why?
3. **MAKE CONNECTIONS** Figure 24.14 illustrates how a hybrid zone can change over time. Imagine that two finch species colonize a new island and are capable of hybridizing (mating and producing viable offspring). The island contains two plant species, one with large seeds and one with small seeds, growing in isolated habitats. If the two finch species specialize in eating different plant species, would reproductive barriers be reinforced, weakened, or unchanged in this hybrid zone? Explain.

For suggested answers, see Appendix A.

CONCEPT 54.2

Diversity and trophic structure characterize biological communities

Ecological communities can be characterized by certain general attributes, including how diverse they are and the feeding relationships of their species. In some cases, as you'll read, a few species exert strong control on a community's *structure*—the number, identity, and relative abundance of its species.

Species Diversity

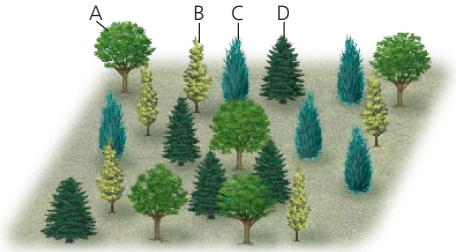
The **species diversity** of a community—the variety of different kinds of organisms that make up the community—has two components. One is **species richness**, the number of different species in the community. The other is the **relative abundance** of the different species, the proportion each species represents of all individuals in the community.

Imagine two small forest communities, each with 100 individuals distributed among four tree species (A, B, C, and D) as follows:

Community 1: 25A, 25B, 25C, 25D
Community 2: 80A, 5B, 5C, 10D

The species richness is the same for both communities because they both contain four species of trees, but the relative abundance is very different **(Figure 54.12)**. You would easily notice the four types of trees in community 1, but unless you looked carefully, you might see only the abundant species A in the second forest. Most observers would intuitively describe community 1 as the more diverse of the two communities.

▼ Figure 54.12 Which forest is more diverse? Ecologists would say that community 1 has greater species diversity, a measure that includes both species richness and relative abundance.



Community 1
A: 25% B: 25% C: 25% D: 25%

Community 2
A: 80% B: 5% C: 5% D: 10%

Ecologists use many tools to compare the diversity of communities. They often calculate indexes of diversity based on species richness and relative abundance. One widely used index is the **Shannon diversity index** (H):

$$H = -(p_A \ln p_A + p_B \ln p_B + p_C \ln p_C + \dots)$$

where A, B, C … are the species in the community, p is the relative abundance of each species, and ln is the natural logarithm; the ln of each value of p can be determined using the "ln" key on a scientific calculator. A higher value of H indicates a more diverse community. Let's use this equation to calculate the Shannon diversity index of the two communities in Figure 54.12. For community 1, $p = 0.25$ for each species, so

$$H = -4(0.25 \ln 0.25) = 1.39.$$

For community 2,

$$H = -[0.8 \ln 0.8 + 2(0.05 \ln 0.05) + 0.1 \ln 0.1] = 0.71.$$

These calculations confirm our intuitive description of community 1 as more diverse.

Determining the number and relative abundance of species in a community can be challenging. Because most species in a community are relatively rare, it may be hard to obtain a sample size large enough to be representative. It can also be difficult to identify some of the species in the community. If an unknown organism cannot be identified on the basis of morphology alone, it is useful to compare all or part of its genome to a reference database of DNA sequences from known organisms. For example, although the two samples of red algae shown in **Figure 54.13** might appear to be two different species, comparing their sequences of a short standardized section of DNA—a *DNA "barcode"*—to a reference database shows that they belong to the same species. Researchers are increasingly using DNA sequencing for species identification as it becomes cheaper and as DNA sequences from more organisms are added to comparative databases.

▼ Figure 54.13 Two samples of one species, the red alga *Chondracanthus harveyanus*.

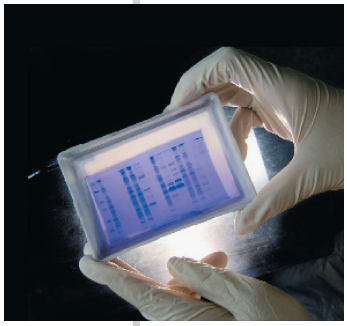
It can also be difficult to census the highly mobile or less visible members of communities, such as microorganisms, deep-sea creatures, and nocturnal species. The small size of microorganisms makes them particularly difficult to sample, so ecologists now commonly use molecular tools to help determine microbial diversity **(Figure 54.14)**.

▼ Figure 54.14 Research Method

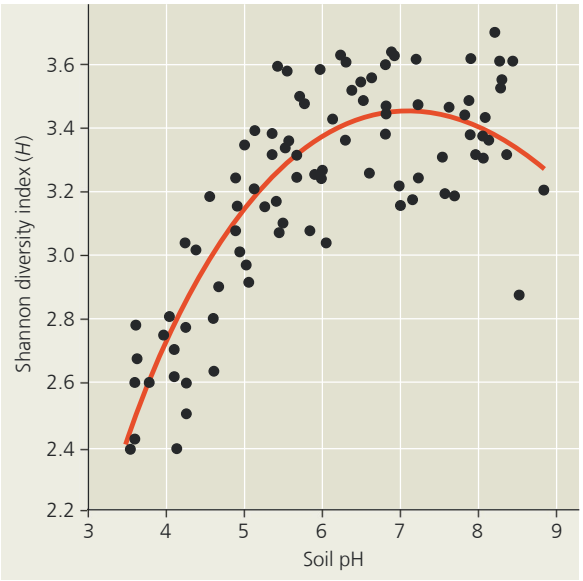
Determining Microbial Diversity Using Molecular Tools

Application Ecologists are increasingly using molecular techniques to determine microbial diversity and richness in environmental samples. One such technique produces a DNA profile for microbial taxa based on sequence variations in the DNA that encodes the small subunit of ribosomal RNA. Researchers used this method to compare the diversity of soil bacteria in 98 habitats across North and South America to help identify environmental variables associated with high bacterial diversity.

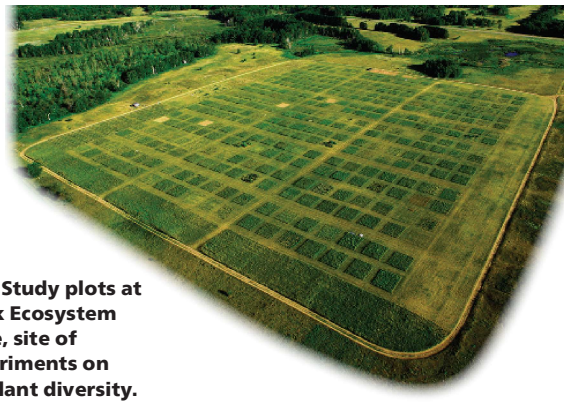
Technique Researchers first extracted and purified DNA from the microbial community in each sample. They used the polymerase chain reaction (PCR; see Figure 20.7) to amplify the ribosomal DNA and labeled it with a fluorescent dye. Restriction enzymes then cut the amplified, labeled DNA into fragments of different lengths, which are separated by gel electrophoresis. (A gel is shown here; see also Figure 20.6.) The number and abundance of these fragments characterize the sample's DNA profile, which was then used to calculate the Shannon diversity index (*H*) of each sample. Researchers then looked for a correlation between *H* and several environmental variables, including vegetation type, mean annual temperature and rainfall, and soil acidity.



Results The diversity of bacterial communities was related to soil pH, with the Shannon diversity index being highest in neutral soils (pH 7) and lowest in very acidic soils ($pH < 5$). Amazonian rain forests, which have extremely high plant and animal diversity, had the most acidic soils and the lowest bacterial diversity of the samples tested.



Data from N. Fierer and R. B. Jackson, The diversity and biogeography of soil bacterial communities, *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences USA* 103:626–631 (2006).



▶ Figure 54.15 Study plots at the Cedar Creek Ecosystem Science Reserve, site of long-term experiments on manipulating plant diversity.

Diversity and Community Stability

In addition to measuring species diversity, ecologists manipulate diversity in experimental communities in nature and in the laboratory. Many experiments examine the potential benefits of diversity, including increased productivity and stability of biological communities.

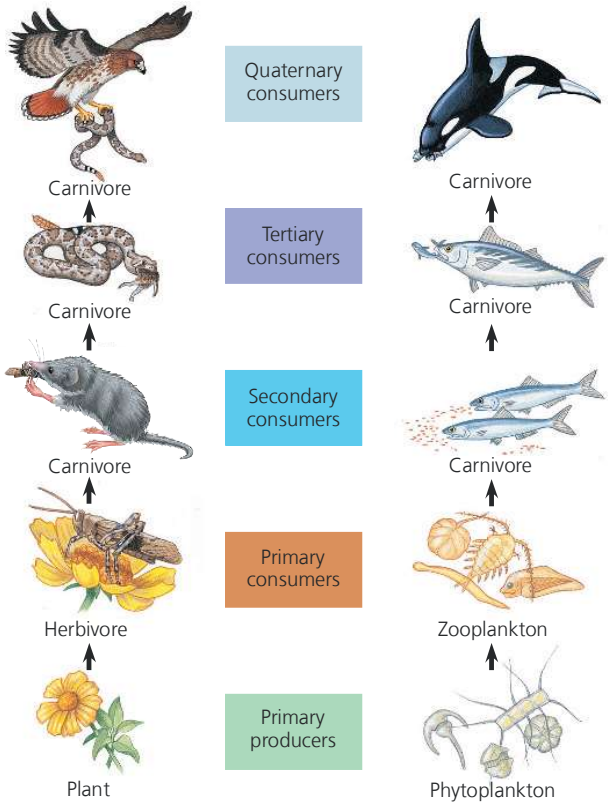
Researchers at the Cedar Creek Ecosystem Science Reserve, in Minnesota, have been manipulating plant diversity in experimental communities for more than three decades **(Figure 54.15)**. Higher-diversity communities generally are more productive and are better able to withstand and recover from environmental stresses, such as droughts. More diverse communities are also more stable year to year in their productivity. In one decade-long experiment, for instance, researchers at Cedar Creek created 168 plots, each containing 1, 2, 4, 8, or 16 perennial grassland species. The most diverse plots consistently produced more **biomass** (the total mass of all organisms in a habitat) each year than did the single-species plots.

Higher-diversity communities are often more resistant to *introduced species*, which are organisms that humans have moved to regions outside of the species' native range. In research conducted off the coast of Connecticut, scientists created communities of different levels of diversity consisting of sessile marine invertebrates, including tunicates (see Figure 34.5). They then examined how vulnerable these experimental communities were to an introduced tunicate. They found that the introduced tunicate was four times more likely to survive in lower-diversity communities than in higher-diversity ones. The researchers concluded that relatively diverse communities captured more of the resources available in the system, leaving fewer resources for the introduced species and thus decreasing its survival.

Trophic Structure

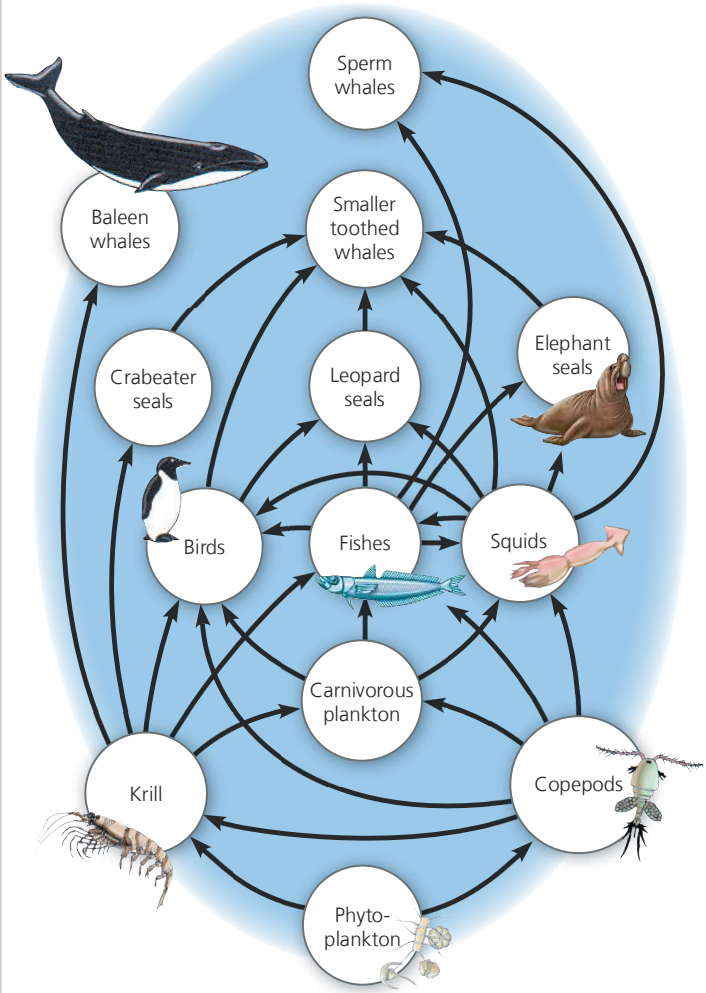
In addition to species diversity, the structure and dynamics of a community also depend on the feeding relationships between organisms—the **trophic structure** of the community. The transfer of chemical energy from its source in plants and other autotrophs (primary producers) through herbivores (primary consumers) to carnivores (secondary, tertiary, and

▼ Figure 54.16 Examples of terrestrial and marine food chains. The arrows trace the transfer of the chemical energy in food through the trophic levels of a community when organisms feed on one another. Decomposers, which consume the remains of organisms from all trophic levels, are not shown here.



VISUAL SKILLS *Suppose the abundance of carnivores that eat zooplankton increased greatly. Use this diagram to infer how that might affect phytoplankton abundance.*

▼ Figure 54.17 An Antarctic marine food web. Arrows follow the transfer of the chemical energy in food from the producers (phytoplankton) up through the trophic levels. For simplicity, this diagram omits decomposers. At various times over the last two centuries, humans have also played a role in the Antarctic food web as consumers of fish, krill, and whales.



VISUAL SKILLS *For each organism in this food web, indicate the number of other kinds of organisms that it eats. Which two organisms are both predator and prey for each other?*

Mastering Biology Figure Walkthrough

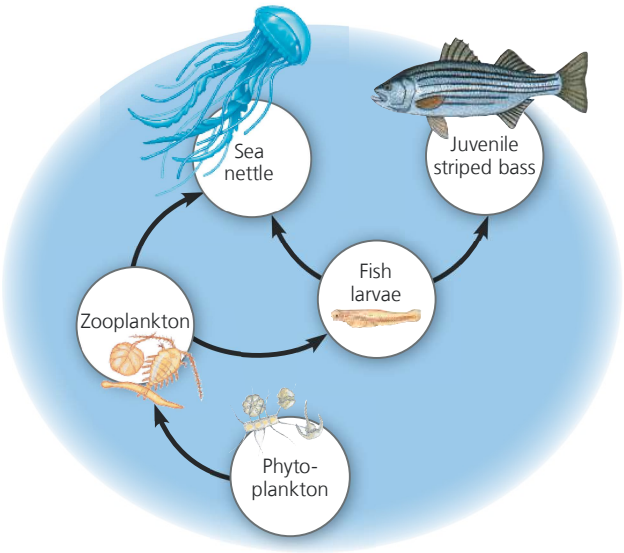
quaternary consumers) and eventually to decomposers is referred to as a **food chain** (Figure 54.16). The position an organism occupies in a food chain is called its **trophic level**.

Food Webs

A food chain is not an isolated unit, separate from other feeding relationships in a community. Instead, a group of food chains are linked together to form a **food web**. Ecologists diagram the trophic relationships of a community using arrows that link species according to who eats whom. In an Antarctic pelagic community, for example, the primary producers are phytoplankton, which serve as food for the dominant grazing zooplankton, especially krill and copepods, both of which are crustaceans (Figure 54.17). These zooplankton species are in turn eaten by various carnivores, including other plankton, penguins, seals, fishes, and baleen whales. Squids, which are carnivores that feed on fishes and zooplankton, are another important link in these food webs, as they are in turn eaten by seals and toothed whales.

How are food chains linked into food webs? A given species may weave into the web at more than one trophic level. In the food web shown in Figure 54.17, krill feed on phytoplankton as well as on other grazing zooplankton, such as copepods. Such "nonexclusive" consumers are also found in terrestrial communities. For instance, foxes are omnivores whose diet includes berries and other plant materials, herbivores such as mice, and other predators, such as weasels. Humans are among the most versatile of omnivores.

▼ Figure 54.18 Partial food web for Chesapeake Bay estuary. The sea nettle (*Chrysaora quinquecirrha*) and the juvenile striped bass (*Morone saxatilis*) are the main predators of fish larvae.



VISUAL SKILLS *Based on this food web, identify organisms that function as primary, secondary, or tertiary consumers.*

Complicated food webs can be simplified in two ways for easier study. First, species with similar trophic relationships in a given community can be grouped into broad functional groups. In Figure 54.17, more than 100 phytoplankton species are grouped as the primary producers in the food web. A second way to simplify a food web is to isolate a portion of the web that interacts very little with the rest of the community. **Figure 54.18** illustrates a partial food web for sea nettles (a type of cnidarian) and juvenile striped bass in the Chesapeake Bay estuary on the Atlantic coast of the United States.

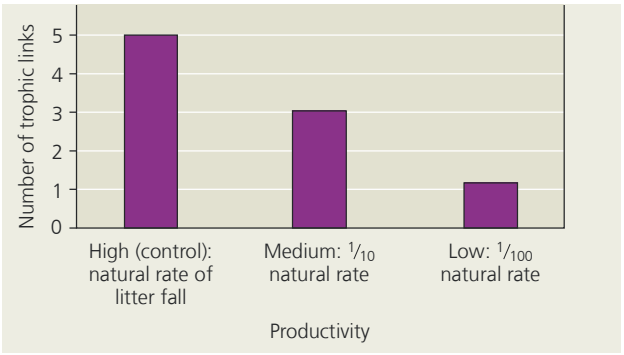
Mastering Biology **HHMI Video: Riverine Food Webs: How Flow Rates Affect Biomass**

Limits on Food Chain Length

Each food chain within a food web is usually only a few links long. In the Antarctic web of Figure 54.17, there are rarely more than seven links from the producers to any top-level predator, and most chains in this web have fewer links. In fact, most food webs studied to date have chains consisting of five or fewer links.

Why do food chains tend to be relatively short? The most common explanation, known as the **energetic hypothesis**, suggests that the length of a food chain is limited by the inefficiency of energy transfer along the chain. On average, only about 10% of the energy stored in the organic matter of each trophic level is converted to organic matter at the next trophic level (see Concept 55.3). Thus, a producer level consisting of 100 kg of plant material can support about 10 kg of herbivore biomass and 1 kg of carnivore biomass. The energetic hypothesis predicts that food chains should be relatively longer in habitats characterized by higher photosynthetic production, since the amount of energy stored in primary producers is greater than in habitats with lower photosynthetic production.

▼ Figure 54.19 Test of the energetic hypothesis for the restriction of food chain length. Researchers manipulated the productivity of experimental tree-hole communities in Queensland, Australia, by providing leaf litter input at three levels. Reducing energy input reduced food chain length, a result consistent with the energetic hypothesis.



Ecologists tested the energetic hypothesis in experiments that mimicked the "tree-hole" communities found in tropical forests. Many trees have small branch scars that rot, forming holes in the tree trunk. These tree holes hold water and provide a habitat for tiny communities consisting of microorganisms and insects that feed on leaf litter, as well as predatory insects. **Figure 54.19** shows the results of experiments in which researchers manipulated productivity by varying the amount of leaf litter in an experiment using artificial tree holes (water-filled pots placed around the trees); previous studies had shown that the communities that colonized these pots were similar to those in natural tree holes. As predicted by the energetic hypothesis, the pots with the most leaf litter, and hence the greatest total food supply at the producer level, supported the longest food chains.

Another factor that may limit food chain length is that carnivores tend to be larger at higher trophic levels. The size of a carnivore puts an upper limit on the size of food it can take into its mouth. And except in a few cases, large carnivores cannot live on very small food items because they cannot obtain enough food in a given time to meet their metabolic needs. Among the exceptions are baleen whales, huge filter feeders with adaptations that enable them to consume enormous quantities of krill and other small organisms (see Figure 41.5).

Species with a Large Impact

Certain species have an especially large impact on the structure of entire communities because they are highly abundant or play a pivotal role in community dynamics. The impact of these species occurs through trophic interactions and their influence on the physical environment.

Foundation species have strong effects on their communities as a result of their large size or high abundance. Examples of foundation species include trees, desert shrubs such as creosote, and certain marine algae, such as kelp. Such species often have community-wide effects because they provide habitat or food. Foundation species may also be competitively dominant—superior in exploiting key resources such as space, water, nutrients, or light.

The impact of a foundation species can be discovered when it is removed from the community. For example, the American chestnut was a competitively dominant tree in deciduous forests of eastern North America before 1910, making up more than 40% of mature trees. Then humans accidentally introduced the fungal disease chestnut blight to New York City via nursery stock imported from Asia. Between 1910 and 1950, this fungus killed almost all of the chestnut trees in eastern North America. In this case, removing the foundation species had a relatively small impact on some species but large effects on others. Oaks, hickories, beeches, and red maples that were already present in the forest increased in abundance and replaced the chestnuts. No mammals or birds seemed to have been harmed by the loss of the chestnut, but seven species of moths and butterflies that fed on the tree became extinct.

In contrast to foundation species, **keystone species** are not usually abundant in a community. They exert strong control on community structure not by numerical might but by their pivotal ecological roles. **Figure 54.20** highlights the importance of a keystone species, a sea star, in maintaining the diversity of an intertidal community. In this case, the sea star affects its community by feeding on and there by limiting the abundance of a competitively dominant species, a mussel.

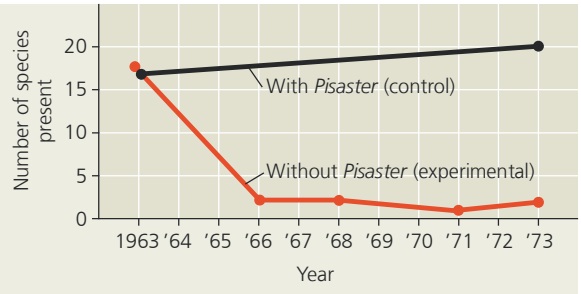
Still other organisms exert their influence on a community not through trophic interactions but by changing the physical environment. Species that create or dramatically alter their environment are called **ecosystem engineers**. A familiar ecosystem engineer is the beaver **(Figure 54.21)**. The effects of ecosystem engineers on other species can be positive or negative, depending on the needs of the other species. Some foundation species, such as trees, can also be considered ecosystem engineers because their presence modifies the physical environment in ways that create habitats on which other species depend.

▼ Figure 54.20 Inquiry

Is *Pisaster ochraceus* a keystone species?

Experiment In rocky intertidal communities of western North America, the relatively uncommon sea star *Pisaster ochraceus* preys on mussels such as *Mytilus californianus*, a dominant competitor for space. Robert Paine, of the University of Washington, removed *Pisaster* from an area in the intertidal zone and examined the effect on species richness.

Results In the absence of *Pisaster*, species richness declined as mussels monopolized the rock face and eliminated most other invertebrates and algae. In a control area where *Pisaster* was not removed, species richness changed very little.



Conclusion *Pisaster* acts as a keystone species, exerting an influence on the community that is not reflected in its abundance.

Data from R. T. Paine, Food web complexity and species diversity, *American Naturalist* 100:65–75 (1966).

WHAT IF? *Suppose that an invasive fungus killed most individuals of* Mytilus *at these sites. Predict how species richness would be affected if* Pisaster *were then removed.*

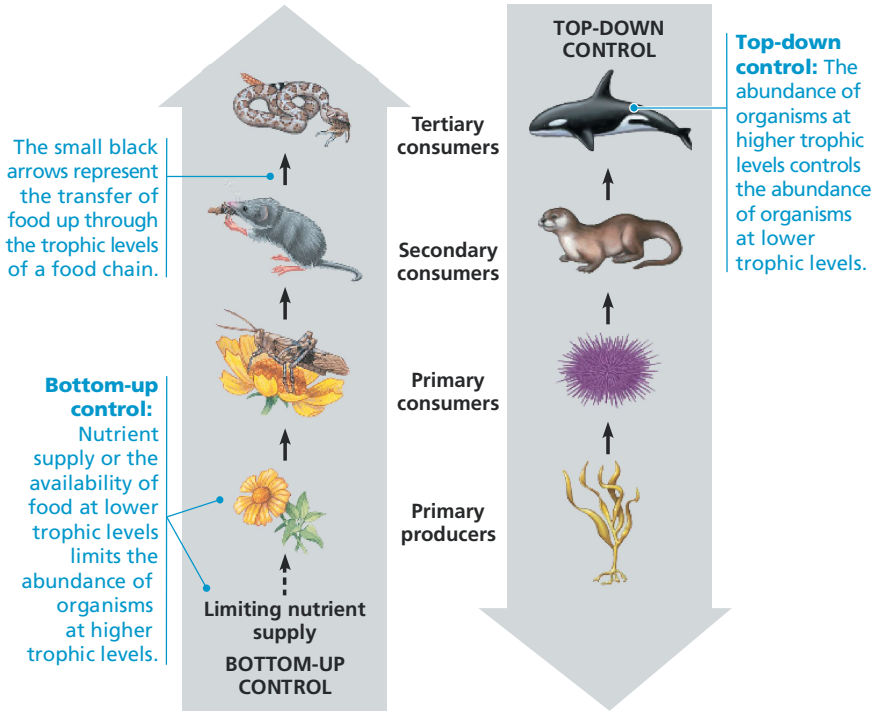
▼ Figure 54.21 Beavers as ecosystem engineers. By felling trees, building dams, and creating ponds, beavers can transform large areas of forest into flooded wetlands.

Bottom-Up and Top-Down Controls

The ways in which adjacent trophic levels affect one another can be useful for describing community organization. These effects occur in two general ways: organisms can be controlled by what they eat ("bottom-up" control) or by what eats them ("top-down" control).

In **bottom-up control**, the abundance of organisms at each trophic level is limited by nutrient supply or the

▼ Figure 54.22 Bottom-up and top-down control. The abundance of organisms at each trophic level can be can be controlled from the bottom up (by the availability of food or nutrients) or from the top down (by rates of consumption at higher trophic levels). Large gray arrows indicate the direction of control. Small black arrows show the transfer of food through a food chain.



availability of food at lower trophic levels. In this case, the supply of nutrients controls plant numbers, which control herbivore numbers, which in turn control predator numbers (**Figure 54.22**, left side). To change the structure of a bottom-up community, you would need to alter the biomass or abundance of organisms at lower trophic levels, allowing those changes to propagate up through the food web. For example, if you add nutrients to stimulate plant growth, then each of the higher trophic levels should also increase in biomass. If you change predator abundance, however, the effect should not extend down to the lower trophic levels.

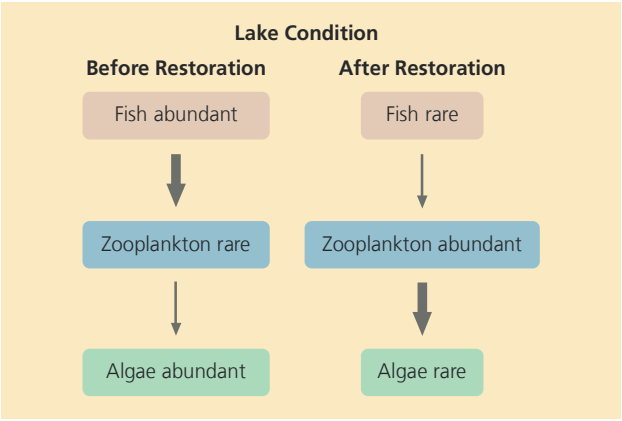
In **top-down control**, the abundance of organisms at each trophic level is controlled by the abundance of consumers at higher trophic levels. Thus, in top-down control, predators limit herbivores, and herbivores limit plants (Figure 54.22, right side). In a lake community with four trophic levels, removing the top carnivores should increase the abundance of primary carnivores, decrease the number of herbivores, and increase phytoplankton abundance. The effects thus move down the trophic structure as alternating +/− effects.

Ecologists have applied top-down control to improve water quality in lakes with a high abundance of algae. For example, in lakes with three trophic levels, removing fish should improve water quality by increasing zooplankton density, thereby decreasing algal populations **(Figure 54.23)**. In lakes with four trophic levels, adding top predators should have the same effect.

Ecologists in Finland used this approach to help purify Lake Vesijärvi, a large lake that was polluted with city sewage and industrial waste until 1976. After pollution controls reduced these inputs, the lake's water quality began to improve. In 1986, however, massive blooms of cyanobacteria began occurring. These blooms coincided with an increase in the population of roach, a fish species that eats zooplankton, which otherwise keep cyanobacteria in check. To reverse these changes, ecologists removed nearly a million kilograms of fish from the lake between 1989 and 1993, reducing roach abundance by about 80%. At the same time, they added a fourth trophic level by stocking the lake with pike perch, a predatory fish that eats roach. The water cleared up, and the last cyanobacterial bloom was in 1989. Ecologists continue to monitor the lake for cyanobacterial blooms and low oxygen availability, but the lake has remained clear, even though roach removal ended in 1993.

Mastering Biology **HHMI Videos: Some Animals Are More Equal Than Others: Keystone Species and Trophic Cascades • Trophic Cascades in Salt Marsh Ecosystems**

▼ Figure 54.23 Restoring water quality in a lake with top-down control. Decreasing the abundance of fish that ate zooplankton results in a decrease in the biomass of algae, improving water quality. Arrow thickness indicates the relative strength of each top-down control.



CONCEPT CHECK 54.2

1. What two components contribute to species diversity? Explain how two communities with the same number of species can differ in species diversity.
2. How is a food chain different from a food web?
3. **WHAT IF?** Consider a grassland with five trophic levels: grasses, mice, snakes, raccoons, and bobcats. If you released additional bobcats into the grassland, how would grass biomass change if bottom-up control applied? If top-down control applied?
4. **MAKE CONNECTIONS** Rising atmospheric CO_2 levels lead to ocean acidification (see Figure 3.12) and higher ocean temperatures, both of which can reduce krill abundance. Predict how a drop in krill abundance might affect other organisms in the food web shown in Figure 54.17. Which organisms are particularly at risk? Explain.

For suggested answers, see Appendix A.

CONCEPT 54.3

Disturbance influences species diversity and composition

Decades ago, most ecologists thought that biological communities are at equilibrium, a more or less stable balance, unless seriously disturbed by human activities. This "balance of nature" view focused on competition as a key factor determining the composition and stability of communities. *Stability* in this context refers to a community's tendency to reach and maintain a relatively constant composition of species.

Proponents of this view thought that the community of plants at a site had only one stable equilibrium, a *climax community* controlled solely by climate. They also argued that biotic interactions caused the species in the community to function as an integrated unit—in effect, as a superorganism. This argument was based on the observation that certain species of plants are often found together, such as the oaks, maples, birches, and beeches in deciduous forests of the northeastern United States.

Other ecologists questioned whether most communities were at equilibrium and challenged the concept of a single climax community. They thought that differences in soils, topography, and other factors created many potential communities that were stable within a region. Rather than functioning as an integrated unit, communities could be viewed as chance assemblages of species found together because they have similar abiotic requirements, such as for temperature, rainfall, and soil type. Moreover, evidence shows that disturbance keeps many communities from reaching a state of equilibrium in species diversity or composition. A **disturbance** is an event, such as a storm, fire, flood, drought, or human activity, that changes a community by removing organisms from it or altering resource availability.

This emphasis on change in communities led to the formulation of the **nonequilibrium model**, which describes most communities as constantly changing after disturbance. Even relatively stable communities can be rapidly transformed into nonequilibrium communities. Let's examine some of the ways that disturbances influence community structure.

Characterizing Disturbance

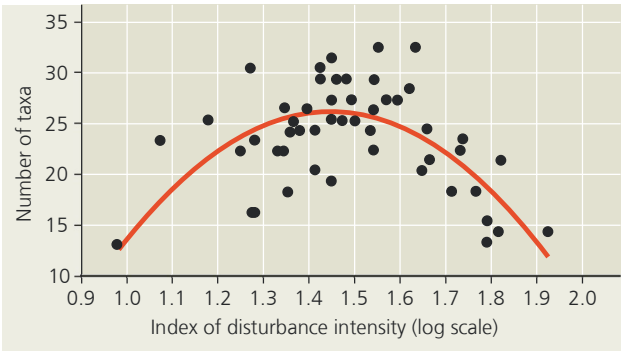
The types of disturbances and their frequency and severity vary among communities. Storms disturb almost all communities, even those in the oceans through the action of waves. Fire is a significant disturbance; in fact, chaparral and some grassland biomes require regular burning to maintain their structure and species composition. Many streams and ponds are disturbed by seasonal flooding and drying. A high level of disturbance is generally the result of frequent *and* intense disturbance, while low disturbance levels can result from either a low frequency or low intensity of disturbance.

The **intermediate disturbance hypothesis** states that moderate levels of disturbance foster greater species diversity than do high or low levels of disturbance. High levels of disturbance reduce diversity by creating environmental stresses that exceed the tolerances of many species or by disturbing the community so often that slow-growing or slow-colonizing species are excluded. At the other extreme, low levels of disturbance can reduce species diversity by allowing competitively dominant species to exclude less competitive ones. Meanwhile, intermediate levels of disturbance can foster greater species diversity by opening up habitats for occupation by less competitive species. Such intermediate disturbance levels rarely create conditions so severe that they exceed the environmental tolerances or recovery rates of potential community members.

The intermediate disturbance hypothesis is supported by many terrestrial and aquatic studies. In one study, ecologists in New Zealand compared the richness of invertebrates living in the beds of streams exposed to different frequencies and intensities of flooding **(Figure 54.24)**. When floods occurred either very frequently or rarely, invertebrate richness was low. Frequent floods made it difficult for some species to become established in the streambed, while rare floods resulted in species being displaced by superior competitors. Invertebrate richness peaked in streams that had an intermediate frequency or intensity of flooding, as predicted by the hypothesis.

Although moderate levels of disturbance appear to maximize species diversity in some cases, small and large disturbances also can have important effects on community structure. Small-scale disturbances can create patches of different habitats across a landscape, which help maintain diversity in a community. Large-scale disturbances are also a natural part of many communities. Much of Yellowstone National Park, for example, is dominated by lodgepole pine, a tree species that requires the rejuvenating influence

▼ Figure 54.24 Testing the intermediate disturbance hypothesis. Researchers identified the taxa (species or genera) of invertebrates at two locations in each of 27 New Zealand streams. They assessed the intensity of flooding at each location using an index of streambed disturbance. The number of invertebrate taxa peaked where the intensity of flooding was at intermediate levels.



of periodic fires. Lodgepole pine cones remain closed until exposed to intense heat. When a forest fire burns the trees, the cones open and the seeds are released. The new generation of lodgepole pines can then thrive on nutrients released from the burned trees and in the sunlight that is no longer blocked by taller trees.

In the summer of 1988, extensive areas of Yellowstone burned during a severe drought **(Figure 54.25a)**. By 1989, many burned areas in the park were largely covered with new vegetation, suggesting that the species in this community are adapted to rapid recovery after fire **(Figure 54.25b)**. In fact, large-scale fires have periodically swept through the lodgepole pine forests of Yellowstone and other northern areas for thousands of years. In contrast, more southerly pine forests were historically affected by frequent but low-intensity fires. In these forests, a century of human intervention to suppress small fires has allowed an unnatural buildup of fuels in some places and elevated the risk of large, severe fires to which the species are not adapted.

Studies of the Yellowstone forest community and many others indicate that they are nonequilibrium communities, changing continually because of natural disturbances and the internal processes of growth and reproduction. Mounting evidence suggests that nonequilibrium conditions are in fact the norm for most communities.

Ecological Succession

Changes in the composition of terrestrial communities are most apparent after a severe disturbance, such as a volcanic eruption or a glacier, strips away all the existing vegetation. The disturbed area may be colonized by a variety of species, which are gradually replaced by other species, which are in turn replaced by still other species—a process called **ecological succession**. When this process begins in a virtually lifeless area, such as on a new volcanic island or on

▼ Figure 54.25 Recovery following a large-scale disturbance. The 1988 Yellowstone National Park fires burned large areas of forests dominated by lodgepole pines.

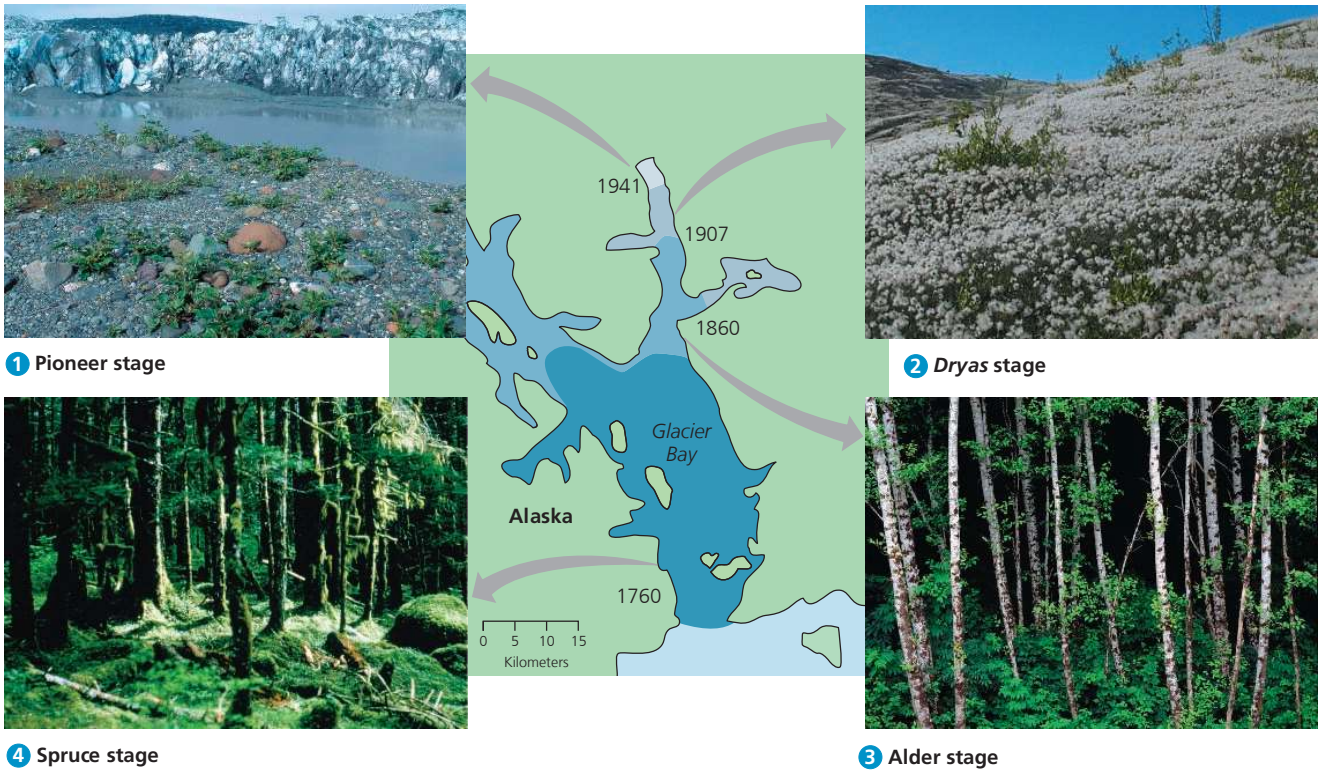
(a) Soon after fire. While all trees in the foreground of this photograph were killed by the fire, unburned trees can be seen in other locations.

(b) One year after fire. The community has begun to recover. Herbaceous plants, different from those in the former forest, cover the ground.

Mastering Biology Interview with Monica Turner: Studying the consequences of fire and other disturbances on ecosystems

the rubble (moraine) left by a retreating glacier, it is called **primary succession**.

During primary succession, the only life-forms initially present are often prokaryotes and protists. Lichens and mosses, which grow from windblown spores, are commonly the first macroscopic photosynthesizers to colonize such areas. Soil develops gradually as rocks weather and organic matter accumulates from the decomposed remains of the early colonizers. Once soil is present, the lichens and mosses are usually overgrown by grasses, shrubs, and trees that sprout from seeds blown in from nearby areas or carried in by animals. Eventually, an area is colonized by plants that become the community's dominant form of vegetation.



▲ Figure 54.26 Glacial retreat and primary succession near the shores of Glacier Bay, Alaska. The different shades of blue on the map are based on historical information of how the area covered by Glacier Bay has increased over time due to retreat of the glaciers since 1760.

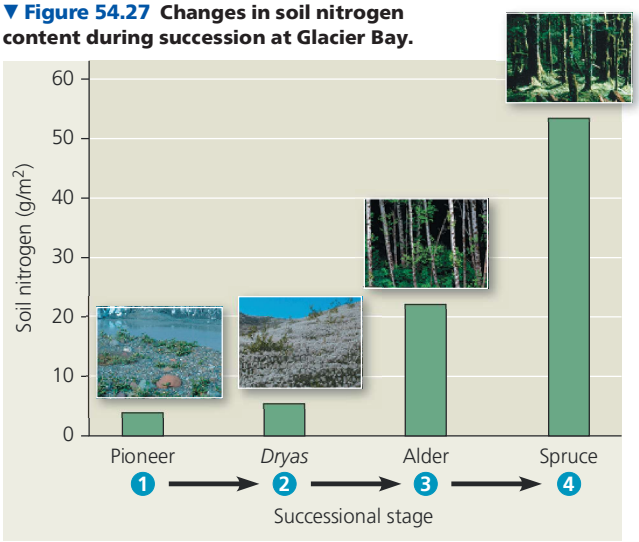
Producing such a community through primary succession may take hundreds or thousands of years.

Early-arriving species and later-arriving ones may be linked by one of three key processes. The early arrivals may *facilitate* the appearance of the later species by making the environment more favorable—for example, by increasing the fertility of the soil. Alternatively, the early species may *inhibit* establishment of the later species, so that successful colonization by later species occurs in spite of, rather than because of, the activities of the early species. Finally, the early species may be completely independent of the later species, which *tolerate* conditions created early in succession but are neither helped nor hindered by early species.

Ecologists have conducted some of the most extensive research on primary succession at Glacier Bay in southeastern Alaska, where glaciers have retreated more than 100 km since 1760 **(Figure 54.26)**. By studying the communities at different distances from the mouth of the bay—with the oldest exposed areas being closest to the mouth and the more recently exposed areas being farthest—ecologists can examine different stages in succession. As the glaciers have retreated, the following sequence of events occurred on areas above the waterline of the bay: 1 The exposed glacial moraine is colonized first by pioneering species that include liverworts, mosses, fireweed, scattered *Dryas* (a mat-forming shrub), and willows. 2 After about three decades, *Dryas* dominates the plant community. 3 A few decades later, the area is invaded by alder, which forms dense thickets up to 9 m tall. 4 In the next two centuries, these alder stands are overgrown first by Sitka spruce and later by western hemlock and mountain hemlock. In areas of poor drainage, the forest floor of this spruce-hemlock forest is invaded by sphagnum moss, which holds water and acidifies the soil, eventually killing the trees. Thus, by about 300 years after glacial retreat, the vegetation consists of sphagnum bogs on the poorly drained flat areas and spruce-hemlock forest on the well-drained slopes.

Succession on glacial moraines is related to changes in soil nutrients and other environmental factors caused by transitions in the vegetation. Because the bare soil after glacial retreat is low in nitrogen content, almost all the pioneer plant species begin succession with poor growth and yellow leaves due to limited nitrogen supply. The exceptions are *Dryas* and alder, whose roots host symbiotic bacteria that fix atmospheric nitrogen (see Figure 37.12). Soil nitrogen content increases quickly during the alder stage of succession and keeps increasing during the spruce stage **(Figure 54.27)**. By altering soil properties, pioneer plant

▼ Figure 54.27 Changes in soil nitrogen content during succession at Glacier Bay.



MAKE CONNECTIONS *Figure 37.11 illustrates two types of atmospheric nitrogen fixation by prokaryotes. At the earliest stages of primary succession, before any plants are present at a site, which type of nitrogen fixation would occur, and why?*

species can facilitate colonization by new plant species during succession.

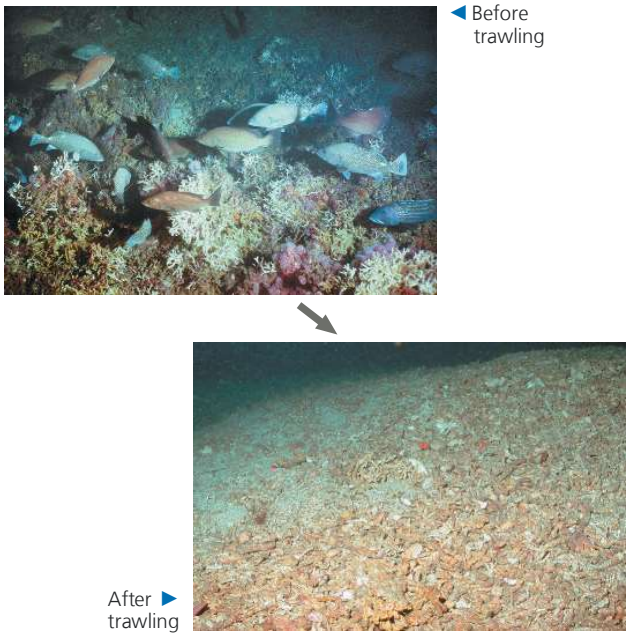
In contrast to primary succession, **secondary succession** involves the recolonization of an area after a major disturbance has removed most but not all of the organisms in a community, as in Yellowstone following the 1988 fires (see Figure 54.25). Following the disturbance, the area may return to something like its original state. For instance, in a forested area that has been cleared for farming and later abandoned, the earliest plants to recolonize are often herbaceous species that grow from windblown or animal-borne seeds. If the area has not been burned or heavily grazed, woody shrubs may in time replace most of the herbaceous species, and forest trees may eventually replace most of the shrubs.

Human Disturbance

Ecological succession is a response to disturbance of the environment, and some of the strongest disturbances result from human activities. Agricultural development has disrupted what were once the vast grasslands of the North American prairie. Tropical rain forests are quickly disappearing as a result of clear-cutting for lumber, cattle grazing, and farmland. Centuries of overgrazing and agricultural disturbance have contributed to famine in parts of Africa by turning seasonal grasslands into vast barren areas.

Human actions have disturbed marine ecosystems as well as terrestrial ones. The effects of ocean trawling, in which boats drag weighted nets across the seafloor, are similar to those of clear-cutting a forest or plowing a field. The trawls scrape and scour corals and other life on the seafloor **(Figure 54.28)**. In a typical

▼ Figure 54.28 Disturbance of the ocean floor by trawling. These photos show the seafloor off northwestern Australia before and after deep-sea trawlers have passed through.



year, ships trawl an area about the size of South America, 150 times larger than the area of forests that are clear-cut annually.

Because disturbance by human activities is often severe, it reduces species diversity in many communities. In Chapter 56, we'll take a closer look at how human-caused disturbance is affecting the diversity of life.

CONCEPT CHECK 54.3

1. Why do high and low levels of disturbance usually reduce species diversity? Why does an intermediate level of disturbance promote species diversity?
2. During succession, how might the early species facilitate the arrival of other species?
3. **WHAT IF?** Most prairies experience regular fires, typically every few years. If these disturbances were relatively modest, how would the species diversity of a prairie likely be affected if no burning occurred for 100 years? Explain.

For suggested answers, see Appendix A.

CONCEPT 54.4

Biogeographic factors affect community diversity

So far, we have examined relatively small-scale or local factors that influence the diversity of communities, including the effects of species interactions, foundation species, and many types of disturbances. Large-scale biogeographic factors also contribute to the tremendous range of diversity observed in biological communities.

Two biogeographic factors in particular—the latitude of a community and the area it occupies—have been investigated for more than a century.

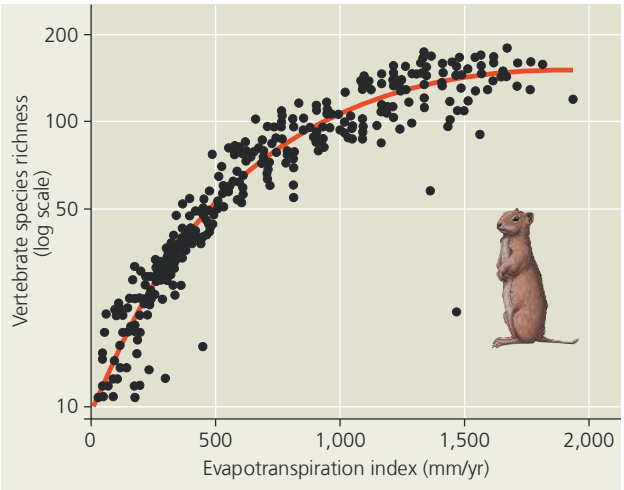
Latitudinal Gradients

In the 1850s, both Charles Darwin and Alfred Wallace pointed out that plant and animal life was generally more abundant and diverse in the tropics than in other parts of the globe. Since that time, many researchers have confirmed this observation. One study found that a 6.6-hectare (1 ha = 10,000 m^2) plot in tropical Malaysia contained 711 tree species, while a 2-ha plot of deciduous forest in Michigan typically contained just 10 to 15 tree species. Many groups of animals show similar latitudinal gradients. For instance, there are more than 200 species of ants in Brazil but only 7 in Alaska.

Two key factors that can affect latitudinal gradients of species richness are evolutionary history and climate. Over the course of evolution, a series of speciation events may lead to increased species richness in a community (see Concept 24.2). Tropical communities are generally older than temperate or polar communities, which have repeatedly "started over" after major disturbances such as glaciations. As a result, species diversity may be highest in the tropics simply because there has been more time for speciation to occur in tropical communities than in temperate or polar communities.

Climate is another key factor thought to affect latitudinal gradients of richness and diversity. In terrestrial communities, the two main climatic factors correlated with diversity are sunlight and precipitation, both of which occur at high levels in the tropics. These factors can be considered together by measuring a community's rate of **evapotranspiration**, the evaporation of water from soil and plants. Evapotranspiration, a function of solar radiation, temperature, and water availability, is much higher in hot areas with abundant rainfall than in areas with low temperatures or low precipitation. The species richness of plants and animals correlates with measures of evapotranspiration, as shown for vertebrates in **Figure 54.29**.

▼ Figure 54.29 Energy, water, and species richness. Vertebrate species richness in North America increases with an index of evapotranspiration, expressed as rainfall equivalents (mm/yr).

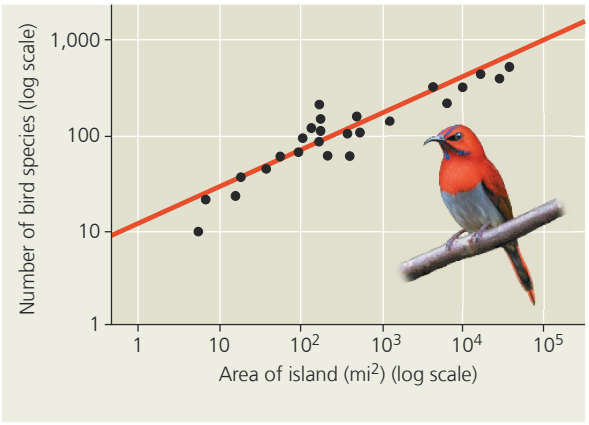


Area Effects

In 1807, naturalist and explorer Alexander von Humboldt described one of the first patterns of species richness to be recognized, the **species-area curve**: All other factors being equal, the larger the geographic area of a community, the more species it has. One explanation for this relationship is that larger areas offer a greater diversity of habitats and microhabitats.

Predictions of the species-area relationship have been tested by examining the number of animals and plants in many different regions. As one example, in the Sunda Islands of Malaysia, the number of bird species increased with island size **(Figure 54.30)**. Different species-area curves vary in how rapidly species richness increases with area. Even so, the basic concept of diversity increasing with increasing area applies in many situations, from surveys of ant diversity in New Guinea to studies of plant species richness on islands of different sizes.

▼ Figure 54.30 Species richness and island area. The number of bird species on the Sunda Islands of Malaysia increases with island size.



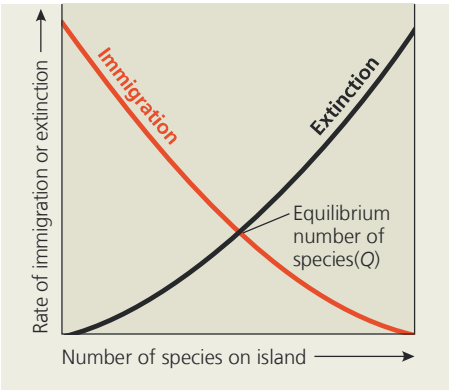
Island Equilibrium Model

Because of their isolation and limited size, islands provide excellent opportunities for studying how area and other factors affect the species diversity of communities. By "islands," we mean not only oceanic islands, but also habitat islands on land, such as lakes, mountain peaks, or habitat fragments—any patch surrounded by an environment not suitable for the "island" species.

Recognizing the opportunities that studying islands provides, Robert MacArthur and E. O. Wilson developed a method for predicting the species diversity of islands **(Figure 54.31)**. In their approach, the number of species on an island represents a balance between the immigration of new species to the island and the extinction of species already there.

In Figure 54.31, note that the immigration rate *decreases* as the number of species on the island gets larger, while the

▼ Figure 54.31 MacArthur and Wilson's island equilibrium model. The equilibrium number of species on an island represents a balance between the immigration of new species (red curve) and the extinction of species already there (black curve). The point at which these curves intersect shows the predicted equilibrium number of species (Q).



WHAT IF? *Suppose rising sea levels substantially decreased the size of the island. How would that affect (a) the population sizes of species already on the island, (b) the extinction curve shown above, and (c) the predicted equilibrium number of species?*

extinction rate *increases*. To see why this is so, consider a newly formed oceanic island that receives colonizing species from a distant mainland. At any given time, an island's immigration and extinction rates are affected by the number of species currently present. As the number of species already on the island increases, the immigration rate of new species decreases, because any individual reaching the island is less likely to represent a species that is not already present. Moreover, as more species inhabit an island, extinction rates on the island increase because of the greater likelihood of competitive exclusion.

An island's size and its distance from the mainland are also important. Small islands generally have lower immigration rates because potential colonizers are less likely to reach a small island than a large one. Small islands also have higher extinction rates because they generally contain fewer resources, have less diverse habitats, and have smaller population sizes. With respect to distance, an island that is closer to the mainland generally has a higher immigration rate and a lower extinction rate than one farther away. Arriving colonists increase the abundance of a species on a near island, thereby reducing the species' chance of extinction.

MacArthur and Wilson's model is called the *island equilibrium model* because an equilibrium will eventually be reached where the rate of species immigration equals the rate of species extinction. The number of species at this equilibrium point is correlated with the island's size and distance from the mainland. Although the number of species ultimately should stabilize at a constant level, immigration and extinction continue and hence the exact species composition on the island may change over time.

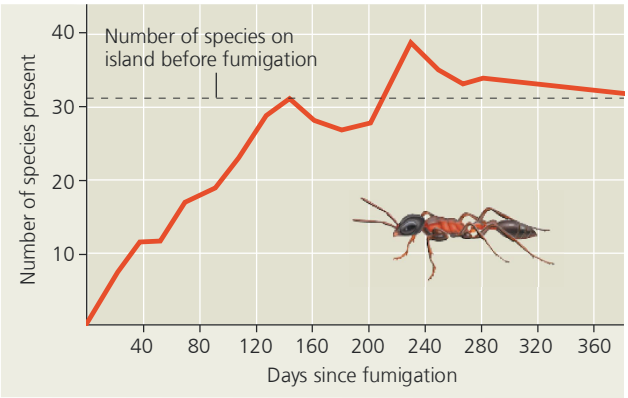
Researchers tested the island equilibrium model in an experiment on six small mangrove islands in the Florida Keys

▶ Figure 54.32 Mangrove island. The islands that researchers studied were small, each consisting of one or a few mangrove trees.

(Figure 54.32). To do this, they first painstakingly identified and counted all of the arthropod species on each island. As predicted by the model, they found more species on islands that were larger and closer to the mainland. They then fumigated four of the islands with methyl bromide to kill all of the arthropods. As also predicted by the model, the number of arthropod species on the islands increased over time to near their pre-fumigation values **(Figure 54.33)**. The island closest to the mainland recovered first, while the island farthest from the mainland was the slowest to recover. The number of arthropod species on the remaining two islands—which were not fumigated and hence served as controls—remained approximately constant during the study.

Mastering Biology **Animation: Exploring Island Biogeography**

▼ Figure 54.33 Testing the island equilibrium model. The graph shows results for one of the islands studied. The number of arthropod species increased over time; by 140 days, it had reached levels similar to those found on the island prior to the start of the experiment.



CONCEPT CHECK 54.4

1. Describe two hypotheses as to why species diversity is greater in the tropics than in temperate and polar regions.
2. Describe how an island's size and distance from the mainland affect the island's species richness.
3. **WHAT IF?** Based on MacArthur and Wilson's island equilibrium model, predict how the richness of birds on an island would compare with that of snakes and lizards there.

For suggested answers, see Appendix A.

CONCEPT 54.5

Pathogens alter community structure locally and globally

Now that we have examined several important factors that structure biological communities, we'll finish the chapter by examining community interactions involving **pathogens**, disease-causing microorganisms, viruses, viroids, or prions. (Viroids and prions are infectious RNA molecules and proteins, respectively; see Concept 19.3.) As you'll see, pathogens have strong effects on ecological communities.

Pathogens produce especially clear effects when they are introduced into new habitats, as in the case of the fungus that causes chestnut blight (see Concept 54.2). A pathogen can be particularly virulent in a new habitat because new host populations have not had a chance to become resistant to the pathogen through natural selection. The invasive chestnut blight fungus had far stronger effects on the American chestnut, for instance, than it had on Asian chestnut species in the fungus's native habitat.

Effects on Community Structure

The ecological importance of disease can be highlighted by how pathogens have affected coral reef communities. White-band disease, caused by an unknown pathogen, has resulted in dramatic changes in Caribbean reefs. The disease kills corals by causing their tissue to slough off in a band from the base to the tip of the branches. Because of the disease, staghorn coral (*Acropora cervicornis*) has virtually disappeared from the Caribbean. Populations of elkhorn coral (*Acropora palmata*) have also been decimated. Such corals provide key habitat for lobsters as well as snappers and other fish species. When the corals die, they become overgrown by algae. Surgeonfish and other herbivores that feed on algae come to dominate the fish community. Eventually, the corals topple because of damage from storms and other disturbances. The complex, three-dimensional structure of the reef disappears, and diversity plummets.

Pathogens also influence community structure in terrestrial ecosystems. Consider sudden oak death (SOD), a recently discovered disease that is caused by the protist *Phytophthora ramorum* (see Concept 28.6). SOD was first described in California in 1995, when hikers noticed trees dying around San Francisco Bay. By 2014, it had spread more than 1,000 km, from the central California coast to southern Oregon, and it had killed more than a million oaks and other trees. The loss of the oaks has led to the decreased abundance of at least five bird species, including the acorn woodpecker and the oak titmouse, that rely on oaks for food and habitat. Although there is currently no cure for SOD, scientists recently sequenced the genome of *P. ramorum* in hopes of finding a way to fight the pathogen.

Human activities are transporting pathogens around the world at unprecedented rates. Genetic analyses using DNA sequencing suggest that *P. ramorum* likely came to North America from Europe through the horticulture trade. Similarly, the pathogens that cause human diseases are spread by our global economy. H1N1, the virus that causes "swine flu" in humans, was first detected in Veracruz, Mexico, in early 2009. It quickly spread around the world when infected individuals traveled on airplanes. By the end of the outbreak in 2011, this flu had a confirmed death toll of more than 18,000 people. The actual number may have been far higher since many people with flu-like symptoms who died were not tested for H1N1.

Community Ecology and Zoonotic Diseases

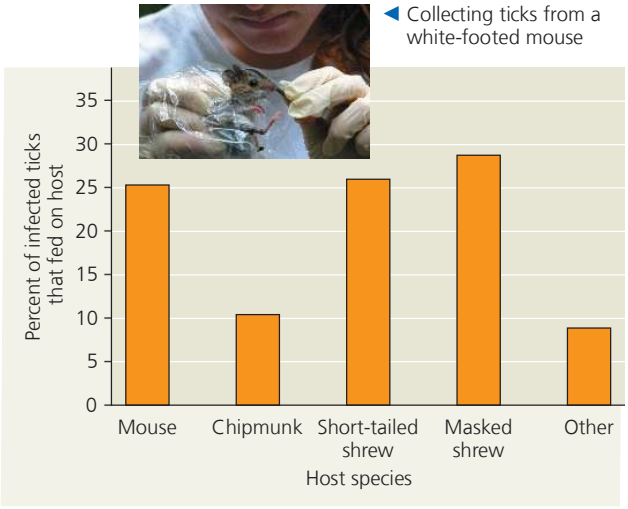
Three-quarters of emerging human diseases and many of the most devastating established diseases are caused by **zoonotic pathogens**—those that are transferred to humans from other animals, either through direct contact with an infected animal or via an intermediate species, called a **vector**. The vectors that spread zoonotic diseases are often parasites, including ticks, lice, and mosquitoes.

Identifying the community of hosts and vectors for a pathogen can help prevent illnesses such as Lyme disease, which is spread by ticks. For years, scientists thought that the primary host for the Lyme pathogen was the white-footed mouse because mice are heavily parasitized by young ticks. When researchers vaccinated mice against Lyme disease and released them into the wild, however, the number of infected ticks hardly changed. Further investigation in New York revealed that two inconspicuous shrew species were the source for more than half the infected ticks collected in the field **(Figure 54.34)**. Identifying the most important hosts for a pathogen provides information that may be used to control the hosts most responsible for spreading diseases.

Ecologists also use their knowledge of community interactions to track the spread of zoonotic diseases. One example, avian flu, is caused by highly contagious viruses transmitted through the saliva and feces of birds (see Concept 19.3). Most of these viruses affect wild birds mildly, but they often cause stronger symptoms in domesticated birds, the most common source of human infections. Since 2003, one particular viral strain, called H5N1, has killed hundreds of millions of poultry and more than 400 people.

Control programs that quarantine domestic birds or monitor their transport may be ineffective if avian flu spreads naturally through the movements of wild birds. From 2003 to 2006, the H5N1 strain spread rapidly from southeast Asia into Europe and Africa. The most likely place for infected wild birds to enter the Americas is Alaska, the entry point for ducks, geese, and shorebirds that migrate across the Bering Sea from Asia every year. Ecologists are studying the spread of

▼ Figure 54.34 Unexpected hosts of the Lyme disease pathogen. A combination of ecological data and genetic analyses enabled scientists to show that more than half of ticks carrying the Lyme pathogen became infected by feeding on the northern short-tailed shrew (*Blarina brevicauda*) or the masked shrew (*Sorex cinereus*).



MAKE CONNECTIONS *Concept 23.1 discusses the significance of genetic variation between populations. How might genetic variation between shrew populations in different locations affect the number of infected ticks?*

▶ Figure 54.35 Tracking avian flu. A graduate student bands a young gyrfalcon as part of a project to monitor the spread of avian flu.

the virus by trapping and testing migrating and resident birds in Alaska **(Figure 54.35)**.

While our emphasis here has been on community ecology, pathogens are also greatly influenced by changes in the physical environment. To control pathogens and the diseases they cause, scientists need an ecosystem perspective—an intimate knowledge of how the pathogens interact with other species and with all aspects of their environment. Ecosystems are the subject of Chapter 55.

CONCEPT CHECK 54.5

1. What are pathogens?
2. **WHAT IF?** Rabies, a viral disease in mammals, is not currently found in the British Isles. If you were in charge of disease control there, what practical approaches might you employ to keep the rabies virus from reaching these islands?

For suggested answers, see Appendix A.

54 Chapter Review

Go to **Mastering Biology** for Assignments, the eText, the Study Area, and Dynamic Study Modules.

SUMMARY OF KEY CONCEPTS

To review key terms, go to the **Vocabulary Self-Quiz** in the **Mastering Biology** eText or Study Area, or go to goo.gl/zkjz9t.

CONCEPT 54.1

Interactions between species can help, harm, or have no effect on the individuals involved *(pp. 1215–1221)*

- **Interspecific interactions** affect the survival and reproduction of the individuals that engage in them. As shown in the table, these interactions can be grouped into three broad categories: competition, exploitation, and positive interactions.
- **Competitive exclusion** states that two species whose members compete for the same resource cannot coexist permanently in the same place. **Resource partitioning** is the differentiation of **ecological niches** that enables species to coexist in a **community**.

? *For each interaction listed in the table, give an example of a pair of species that exhibit the interaction.*

Interaction	Description
Competition (−/−)	Individuals of different species each use a limited resource, reducing the survival or reproduction of both individuals.
Exploitation (+/−)	Members of one species benefit by feeding upon (and thereby harming) members of the other species. Exploitation includes the following:
Predation	An individual of one species, the predator, kills and eats an individual of the other, the prey.
Herbivory	An herbivore eats part of a plant or alga.
Parasitism	The parasite derives its nourishment from a second organism, its host.
Positive interactions (+/+ or 0/+)	Members of one species benefit, while members of the other benefit or are not harmed. Positive interactions include the following:
Mutualism (+/+)	Members of both species benefit from the interaction.
Commensalism (+/0)	Members of one species benefit, while members of the other are not affected.

CONCEPT 54.2

Diversity and trophic structure characterize biological communities *(pp. 1222–1228)*

- **Species diversity** is affected by both the number of species in a community—its **species richness**—and their **relative abundance**.
- More diverse communities typically produce more **biomass** and show less year-to-year variation in growth than less diverse communities and are more resistant to introduced species.
- **Trophic structure** is a key factor in community dynamics. **Food chains** link the trophic levels from producers to top carnivores. Branching food chains and complex trophic interactions form **food webs**.
- **Foundation species** are large or abundant members of a community that provide food or habitat. **Keystone species** are usually less abundant species that exert a disproportionate influence on community structure. **Ecosystem engineers** influence community structure through their effects on the physical environment.
- In **bottom-up control**, the abundance of organisms at each trophic level is limited by nutrient supply or food availability. In **top-down control**, each trophic level is controlled by the abundance of consumers at higher trophic levels.

? *Based on indexes such as the Shannon diversity index, is a community of higher species richness always more diverse than a community of lower species richness? Explain.*

CONCEPT 54.3

Disturbance influences species diversity and composition *(pp. 1228–1231)*

- Increasing evidence suggests that **disturbance** and lack of equilibrium, rather than stability and equilibrium, are the norm for most communities. According to the **intermediate disturbance hypothesis**, moderate levels of disturbance can foster higher species diversity than can low or high levels of disturbance.
- **Ecological succession** is the sequence of community and ecosystem changes after a disturbance. **Primary succession** occurs in an area that is virtually lifeless, while **secondary succession** occurs after a disturbance has removed most but not all of the organisms in a community.

? *Is the disturbance pictured in Figure 54.28 more likely to initiate primary or secondary succession? Explain.*

CONCEPT 54.4

Biogeographic factors affect community diversity *(pp. 1231–1233)*

- Species richness generally declines along a latitudinal gradient from the tropics to the poles. Climate influences the diversity gradient through energy (heat and light) and water. The greater age of tropical environments also may contribute to their greater species richness.
- Species richness is directly related to a community's geographic size, a principle formalized in the **species-area curve**.
- Species richness on islands depends on island size and distance from the mainland. The island equilibrium model maintains that species richness on an ecological island reaches an equilibrium where new immigrations are balanced by extinctions.

? *How have periods of glaciation influenced latitudinal patterns of diversity?*

CONCEPT 54.5

Pathogens alter community structure locally and globally *(pp. 1234–1235)*

- **Pathogens** play a key in structuring terrestrial and marine communities.
- **Zoonotic pathogens** are transferred from other animals to humans and cause most emerging human diseases. Community ecology provides the framework for identifying key species interactions associated with such pathogens and for helping us track and control their spread.

? *Suppose a pathogen attacks a keystone species. Explain how this could alter the structure of a community.*

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING

For more multiple-choice questions, go to the **Practice Test** in the **Mastering Biology** eText or Study Area, or go to goo.gl/GruWRg.

Levels 1-2: Remembering/Understanding

1. The feeding relationships among the species in a community determine the community's
   (A) secondary succession.
   (B) ecological niche.
   (C) species richness.
   (D) trophic structure.
2. The principle of competitive exclusion states that
   (A) two species cannot coexist in the same habitat.
   (B) competition between two species always causes extinction or emigration of one species.
   (C) two species that have exactly the same niche cannot coexist in a community.
   (D) two species will stop reproducing until one species leaves the habitat.
3. Based on the intermediate disturbance hypothesis, a community's species diversity is increased by
   (A) frequent massive disturbance.
   (B) stable conditions with no disturbance.
   (C) moderate levels of disturbance.
   (D) human intervention to eliminate disturbance.
4. According to the island equilibrium model, species richness would be greatest on an island that is
   (A) large and remote.
   (B) small and remote.
   (C) large and close to a mainland.
   (D) small and close to a mainland.

Levels 3-4: Applying/Analyzing

5. Predators that are keystone species can maintain species diversity in a community if they
   (A) competitively exclude other predators.
   (B) prey on the community's dominant competitors.
   (C) reduce the number of disruptions in the community.
   (D) prey on the least abundant species in the community.
6. Food chains tend to be short because
   (A) only a single species of herbivore feeds on each plant species.
   (B) local extinction of a species causes extinction of the other species in its food chain.
   (C) most of the energy in a trophic level is lost as energy passes to the next higher level.
   (D) most producers are inedible.

7. Which of the following could qualify as a top-down control on a grassland community?
   (A) limitation of plant biomass by rainfall amount
   (B) influence of temperature on competition among plants
   (C) influence of soil nutrients on the abundance of grasses versus wildflowers
   (D) effect of grazing by bison on plant species diversity

8. The most plausible hypothesis to explain why species richness is higher in tropical than in temperate regions is that
   (A) tropical communities are younger.
   (B) tropical regions generally have more available water and higher levels of solar radiation.
   (C) higher temperatures cause more rapid speciation.
   (D) diversity increases as evapotranspiration decreases.

9. Community 1 contains 100 individuals distributed among four species: 5A, 5B, 85C, and 5D. Community 2 contains 100 individuals distributed among three species: 30A, 40B, and 30C. Calculate the Shannon diversity index (H) for each community. Which community is more diverse?

Levels 5-6: Evaluating/Creating

10. **DRAW IT** In the Chesapeake Bay estuary, the blue crab is an omnivore that eats eelgrass and other primary producers as well as clams. It is also a cannibal. In turn, the crabs are eaten by humans and by the endangered Kemp's Ridley sea turtle. Based on this information, draw a food web that includes the blue crab. Assuming that top-down control occurs in this system, describe what would happen to the abundance of eelgrass if humans stopped eating blue crabs.

11. **EVOLUTION CONNECTION** Explain why adaptations of particular organisms to competition may not necessarily represent instances of character displacement. What would a researcher have to demonstrate about two competing species to make a convincing case for character displacement?

12. **SCIENTIFIC INQUIRY** An ecologist studying desert plants performed the following experiment. She staked out two identical plots, containing sagebrush plants and small annual wildflowers. She found the same five wildflower species in roughly equal numbers on both plots. She then enclosed one plot with a fence to keep out kangaroo rats, the most common grain-eaters of the area. After two years, four of the wildflower species were no longer present in the fenced plot, but one species had become much more abundant. The control plot had not changed in species diversity. Using the principles of community ecology, propose a hypothesis to explain her results. What additional evidence would support your hypothesis?

13. **WRITE ABOUT A THEME: INTERACTIONS** In Batesian mimicry, a palatable species gains protection by mimicking an unpalatable one. Imagine that individuals of a palatable, brightly colored fly species are blown to three remote islands. The first island has no predators of that species; the second has predators but no similarly colored, unpalatable species; and the third has both predators and a similarly colored, unpalatable species. In a short essay (100–150 words), predict what might happen to the coloration of the palatable species on each island through time if coloration is a genetically controlled trait. Explain your predictions.

14. **SYNTHESIZE YOUR KNOWLEDGE**

Describe two types of ecological interactions that appear to be occurring between the three species shown in this photo. (Look closely to see the three species: a flower, a bee, and a spider!) What morphological adaptation can be seen in the species that is at the highest trophic level in this scene?

For selected answers, see Appendix A.

Explore Scientific Papers with Science in the Classroom AAAS
How do native species evolve in response to introduced species?
Go to "There's a New Kid in Town" at
www.scienceintheclassroom.org.
Instructors: Questions can be assigned in Mastering Biology.

55 Ecosystems and Restoration Ecology

KEY CONCEPTS

55.1 Physical laws govern energy flow and chemical cycling in ecosystems *p. 1239*

55.2 Energy and other limiting factors control primary production in ecosystems *p. 1241*

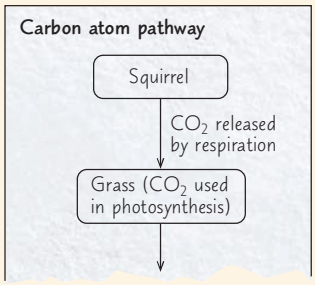
55.3 Energy transfer between trophic levels is typically only 10% efficient *p. 1246*

55.4 Biological and geochemical processes cycle nutrients and water in ecosystems *p. 1248*

55.5 Restoration ecologists return degraded ecosystems to a more natural state *p. 1253*

Study Tip

Make a flowchart: To connect the processes shown in Figures 55.4 and 55.14 to actual events in an ecosystem, make a flowchart like the one begun here. It should show how a carbon atom exhaled as CO_2 by a squirrel could eventually enter another squirrel after passing through decomposers, a small bird, grass, a hawk, an oak tree, and a grasshopper (not in that order).



Go to Mastering Biology

For Students (in eText and Study Area)
- Get Ready for Chapter 55
- Figure 55.4 Walkthrough: Overview of Energy and Nutrient Dynamics
- BioFlix® Animation: The Carbon Cycle

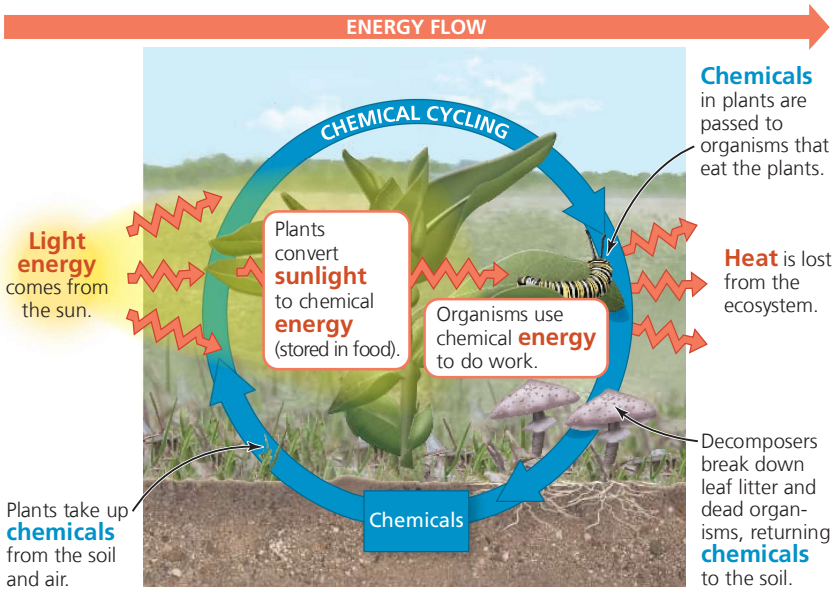
For Instructors to Assign (in Item Library)
- Scientific Thinking: Restoring Native Oysters in the Chesapeake Bay
- Interpreting Data: Net Primary Production

Ready-to-Go Teaching Module (in Instructor Resources)
- Trophic Relationships (Concept 55.3)

Figure 55.1 This arctic fox (*Vulpes lagopus*) will obtain chemical nutrients and energy when it eats the seabird it has killed. Before its death, the seabird ate fish from the sea and excreted waste that provided key nutrients for the plants on this Alaskan island. These interactions illustrate a few of the many ways that chemicals and energy move through ecosystems.

What are the dynamics of energy and chemical nutrients in an ecosystem?

There is a one-way flow of **energy** through an ecosystem, whereas **chemicals** cycle within the ecosystem.



CONCEPT 55.1

Physical laws govern energy flow and chemical cycling in ecosystems

The "fox island" in Figure 55.1 and its community of organisms are an example of an **ecosystem**, the sum of all the organisms living in a given area and the abiotic factors with which they interact. An ecosystem can encompass a large area, such as a lake, forest, or island, or a microcosm, such as the space under a fallen log or a small desert spring **(Figure 55.2)**. As with populations and communities, the boundaries of ecosystems are not always discrete. Many ecologists view the entire biosphere as a global ecosystem, a composite of all the local ecosystems on Earth.

Energy Flow and Chemical Cycling

An ecosystem, regardless of its size, has two key emergent properties: energy flow and chemical cycling (see Figure 55.1). Energy enters most ecosystems as sunlight. This light energy is converted to chemical energy by autotrophs, passed to heterotrophs in the organic compounds of food, and dissipated as heat.

As for chemical cycling, elements such as carbon and nitrogen are passed between the biotic and abiotic components of the ecosystem. Photosynthetic and chemosynthetic organisms take up these elements in inorganic form from the air, soil, and water and incorporate them into organic compounds, some of which are consumed by animals. The elements are returned in inorganic form to the environment by the metabolism of organisms and by the breakdown of organic wastes and dead organisms by decomposers.

Both energy and chemicals are transformed in ecosystems through photosynthesis and feeding relationships. But unlike chemicals, energy cannot be recycled. An ecosystem requires a continuous influx of energy from an external source—in most cases, the sun. As we'll see, energy has a one-way flow through ecosystems, whereas chemicals cycle within them.

▼ **Figure 55.2 A desert spring ecosystem.**

Conservation of Energy

Cells transform energy and matter, subject to the laws of thermodynamics (see Concept 8.1). Cell biologists study these transformations within organelles and cells, and measure the amounts of energy and chemical compounds that cross the cells' boundaries. Ecosystem ecologists do the same thing, except in their case the "cell" is an entire ecosystem. By studying feeding relationships among organisms and how organisms interact with their physical environment, ecologists can follow the transformations of energy in an ecosystem and map the movements of chemical elements.

To study energy flow and chemical cycling, ecosystem ecologists use approaches based on laws of physics and chemistry. The first law of thermodynamics states that energy cannot be created or destroyed but only transferred or transformed (see Concept 8.1). Plants and other photosynthetic organisms convert solar energy to chemical energy, but the total amount of energy does not change: The amount of energy stored in organic molecules must equal the total solar energy intercepted by the plant minus the amounts reflected and dissipated as heat. Ecosystem ecologists measure energy transfers within and across ecosystems, in part to understand how many organisms a habitat can support and the amount of food humans can harvest from a site.

The second law of thermodynamics states that every exchange of energy increases the entropy of the universe. One implication of this law is that energy conversions are inefficient. Some energy is always lost as heat. As a result, each unit of energy that enters an ecosystem eventually exits as heat. Thus, energy flows through ecosystems—it does not cycle within them for long periods of time. Because energy flowing through ecosystems is ultimately lost as heat, most ecosystems would vanish if the sun were not continuously providing energy to Earth.

Conservation of Mass

Matter, like energy, cannot be created or destroyed. This **law of conservation of mass** is as important for ecosystems as are the laws of thermodynamics. Because mass is conserved, we can determine how much of a chemical element cycles within an ecosystem or is gained or lost by that ecosystem over time.

Unlike energy, chemical elements are continually recycled within ecosystems. For example, a carbon atom in CO_2 might be released from the soil by a decomposer, taken up by a blade of grass through photosynthesis, consumed by a grazing animal, and returned to the soil in the animal's waste.

In addition to cycling within ecosystems, elements can also be gained or lost by an ecosystem. For example, a forest gains mineral nutrients—the essential elements that plants obtain from soil—that enter as dust or as solutes dissolved in rainwater or leached from rocks in the ground. Nitrogen is also supplied through the biological process of nitrogen fixation (see Figure 37.11). In terms of losses, some elements return to the atmosphere as gases, while others are carried out of the ecosystem by moving water or by wind. Like

organisms, ecosystems are open systems, absorbing energy and mass and releasing heat and waste products.

Most gains and losses to ecosystems are small compared to the amounts that cycle within them. Even so, the balance between inputs and outputs is important because it determines whether an ecosystem stores or loses a given element. In particular, if a nutrient's outputs exceed its inputs, that nutrient will eventually limit production in that ecosystem. Human activities often change the balance of inputs and outputs considerably, as we'll see later in this chapter and in Concept 56.4.

Energy, Mass, and Trophic Levels

Ecologists group species in an ecosystem into trophic levels based on feeding relationships (see Concept 54.2). The trophic level that ultimately supports all others consists of autotrophs, also called the **primary producers** of the ecosystem. Most autotrophs are photosynthetic organisms that use light energy to synthesize sugars and other organic compounds, which they use as fuel for cellular respiration and as building material for growth. The most common autotrophs are plants, algae, and photosynthetic prokaryotes. However, chemosynthetic prokaryotes are the primary producers in some ecosystems, such as deep-sea hydrothermal vents (see Figure 52.16) and places deep under the ground or ice.

Organisms in trophic levels above the primary producers are heterotrophs (consumers), which depend directly or indirectly on the outputs of primary producers for their source of energy. Herbivores, which eat plants and other primary producers, are **primary consumers**. Carnivores that eat herbivores are **secondary consumers**, and carnivores that eat other carnivores are **tertiary consumers**.

Another group of heterotrophs is the **decomposers**, consumers that get their energy from detritus. **Detritus** is nonliving organic material, such as the remains of dead organisms, feces, and fallen leaves. Although some animals (such as earthworms) feed on detritus, the main decomposers are prokaryotes and fungi **(Figure 55.3)**. These organisms secrete enzymes that digest organic material; they then absorb the breakdown products. Many decomposers are in turn eaten by secondary and tertiary consumers. In a forest, for instance, birds eat earthworms that have been feeding on leaf litter and its associated prokaryotes and fungi. As a result, chemicals originally synthesized by plants pass from the plants to leaf litter to decomposers to birds.

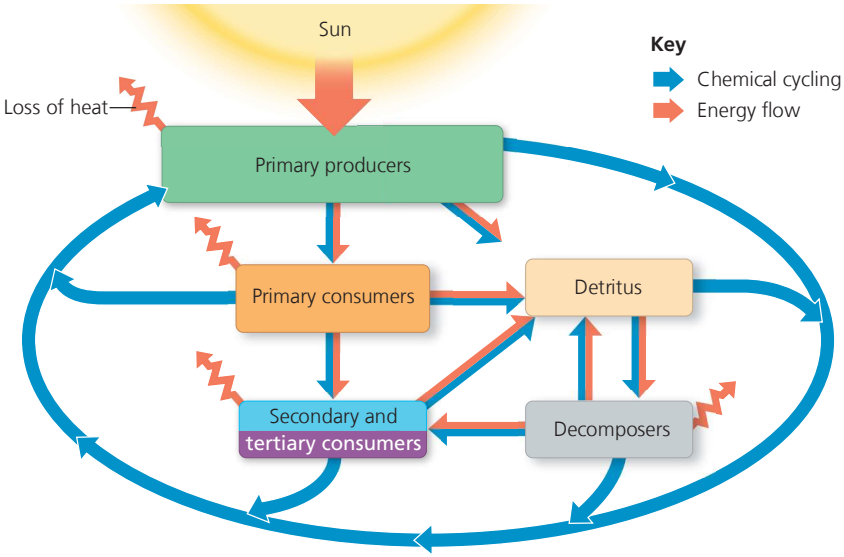
By recycling chemical elements to producers, decomposers also play a key role in the trophic relationships of an ecosystem **(Figure 55.4)**. Decomposers convert organic matter from all trophic levels to inorganic compounds usable by primary producers. When the decomposers excrete waste products or die, those inorganic compounds are returned to the soil. Producers can then absorb these elements and use them to synthesize

▼ Figure 55.3 Decomposers.

▲ Rod-shaped and spherical bacteria in compost (colorized SEM)

▼ Fungi decomposing a dead tree

▶ Figure 55.4 An overview of energy and nutrient dynamics in an ecosystem. Energy enters, flows through, and exits an ecosystem, whereas chemical nutrients cycle within it. Energy (dark orange arrows) entering from the sun as radiation is transferred as chemical energy through the food web; each of these units of energy ultimately exits as heat radiated into space. Most transfers of nutrients (blue arrows) through the food web lead eventually to detritus; the nutrients then cycle back to the primary producers.



VISUAL SKILLS *In this diagram, one blue arrow leads to the box labeled "Primary consumers," and three blue arrows come out of it. For each of these arrows, describe an example of nutrient transfer that the arrow could represent, using specific organisms and other components of an ecosystem in your answer.*

Mastering Biology Figure Walkthrough

organic compounds. If decomposition stopped, life as we know it would cease as detritus piled up and the supply of ingredients needed to synthesize organic matter was exhausted.

Mastering Biology **Animation: Energy Flow and Chemical Cycling**

CONCEPT CHECK 55.1

1. Why is the transfer of energy in an ecosystem referred to as energy flow, not energy cycling?
2. **WHAT IF?** You are studying nitrogen cycling on the Serengeti Plain in Africa. During your experiment, a herd of migrating wildebeests grazes through your study plot. What would you need to know to measure their effect on nitrogen balance in the plot?
3. **MAKE CONNECTIONS** Use the second law of thermodynamics to explain why an ecosystem's energy supply must be continually replenished (see Concept 8.1).

For suggested answers, see Appendix A.

CONCEPT 55.2

Energy and other limiting factors control primary production in ecosystems

The theme of energy transfer underlies all biological interactions (see Concept 1.1). In most ecosystems, the amount of light energy converted to chemical energy—in the form of organic compounds—by autotrophs during a given time period is the ecosystem's **primary production**. In ecosystems where the primary producers are chemoautotrophs, the initial energy input is chemical, and the initial products are the organic compounds synthesized by the microorganisms.

Ecosystem Energy Budgets

In most ecosystems, primary producers use light energy to synthesize energy-rich organic molecules, and consumers acquire their organic fuels secondhand (or even third- or fourth-hand) through food webs (see Figure 54.17). Therefore, the total amount of photosynthetic production sets the "spending limit" for the entire ecosystem's energy budget.

The Global Energy Budget

Each day, Earth's atmosphere is bombarded by approximately 10^{22} joules of solar radiation ($1\,J = 0.239\,cal$). This is enough energy to supply the demands of the entire human population for 19 years at 2013 energy consumption levels. The intensity of the solar energy striking Earth varies with latitude, with the tropics receiving the greatest input (see Figure 52.3). About 50% of incoming solar radiation is absorbed, scattered, or reflected by clouds and dust in the atmosphere. The amount of solar radiation that ultimately reaches Earth's surface limits the possible photosynthetic output of ecosystems.

However, only a small fraction of the sunlight that reaches Earth's surface is actually used in photosynthesis. Much of the radiation strikes materials that don't photosynthesize, such as ice and soil. Of the radiation that does reach photosynthetic organisms, only certain wavelengths are absorbed by photosynthetic pigments (see Figure 10.9); the rest is transmitted, reflected, or lost as heat. As a result, only about 1% of the visible light that strikes photosynthetic organisms is converted to chemical energy. Nevertheless, Earth's primary producers create about 150 billion metric tons (1.50×10^{14} kg) of organic material each year.

Gross and Net Production

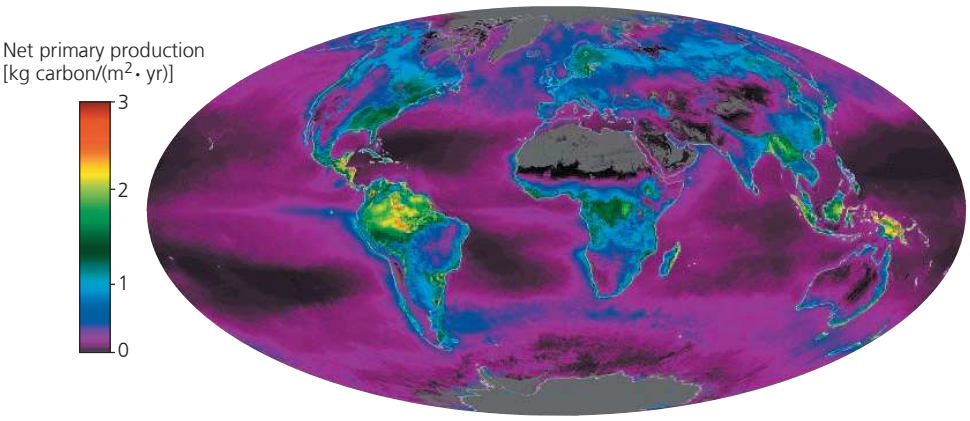
Total primary production in an ecosystem is known as that ecosystem's **gross primary production (GPP)**—the amount of energy from light (or chemicals, in chemoautotrophic systems) converted to the chemical energy of organic molecules per unit time. Not all of this production is stored as organic material in the primary producers because they use some of the molecules as fuel for their own cellular respiration. **Net primary production (NPP)** is equal to gross primary production minus the energy used by the primary producers (autotrophs) for their cellular respiration (R_a, where "a" stands for autotrophs):

$$NPP = GPP - R_a$$

On average, NPP is about one-half of GPP. To ecologists, NPP is the key measurement because it represents the storage of chemical energy that will be available to consumers in the ecosystem. Using the analogy of a paycheck, you can think of net primary production (NPP) as the take-home pay, which equals gross primary production (GPP), the gross pay, minus respiration (R_a), the taxes.

Net primary production can be expressed as energy per unit area per unit time [$J/(m^2 \cdot yr)$] or as biomass (mass of vegetation) added per unit area per unit time [$g/(m^2 \cdot yr)$]. (Note that biomass is usually expressed in terms of the dry mass of organic material.) An ecosystem's NPP should not be confused with the total biomass of photosynthetic autotrophs present. The net primary production is the amount of *new* biomass added in a given period of time. Although the total biomass of a forest is large, its NPP may actually be less than that of some grasslands; grasslands do not accumulate as much biomass as forests because animals consume the plants rapidly and because grasses and herbs decompose more quickly than trees do.

Satellites provide a powerful tool for studying global patterns of primary production. Images produced from satellite data show that different ecosystems vary considerably in their NPP. For example, tropical rain forests are among the most productive terrestrial ecosystems and contribute a large portion of the planet's



▶ **Figure 55.5 Global net primary production.** The map is based on satellite-collected data, such as amount of sunlight absorbed by vegetation. Note that tropical land areas have the highest rates of production (yellow to red).

VISUAL SKILLS *Does this map accurately reflect the significance of wetlands, coral reefs, and coastal zones, all highly productive habitats? Explain.*

NPP **(Figure 55.5)**. Estuaries and coral reefs also have very high NPP, but their contribution to the global total is smaller because these ecosystems cover only about one-tenth the area covered by tropical rain forests. In contrast, while the open oceans are relatively unproductive, their vast size means that together they contribute as much global NPP as terrestrial systems do.

Whereas NPP can be expressed as the amount of new biomass added by producers in a given period of time, **net ecosystem production (NEP)** is a measure of the biomass accumulation by producers *and* consumers during that time. NEP is defined as gross primary production minus the total respiration of all organisms in the system (R_T)—not just primary producers, as for the calculation of NPP, but decomposers and other heterotrophs as well:

$$NEP = GPP - R_T$$

NEP is useful to ecologists because its value determines whether an ecosystem is gaining or losing carbon over time. A forest may have a positive NPP but still lose carbon if heterotrophs release it as CO_2 more quickly than primary producers incorporate it into organic compounds.

The most common way to estimate NEP is to measure the net flux (flow) of CO_2 or O_2 entering or leaving the ecosystem. If more CO_2 enters than leaves, the system is storing carbon. Because O_2 release is directly coupled to photosynthesis and respiration (see Figure 9.1), a system that is giving off O_2 is also storing carbon. On land, ecologists typically measure only the net flux of CO_2 from ecosystems because detecting small changes in O_2 flux in a large atmospheric O_2 pool is difficult.

Next, we'll examine factors that limit production in ecosystems, focusing first on aquatic ecosystems.

Primary Production in Aquatic Ecosystems

In aquatic (marine and freshwater) ecosystems, both light and nutrients are important in controlling primary production.

Light Limitation

Because solar radiation drives photosynthesis, you would expect light to be a key variable in controlling primary production in oceans. Indeed, the depth of light penetration affects primary production throughout the photic zone of an ocean or lake (see Figure 52.14). About half of the solar radiation is absorbed in the first 15 m of water. Even in "clear" water, only 5–10% of the radiation may reach a depth of 75 m.

If light were the main variable limiting primary production in the ocean, you would expect production to increase along a gradient from the poles toward the equator, which receives the greatest intensity of light. However, you can see in Figure 55.5 that there is no such gradient. What other factor strongly influences primary production in the ocean?

Nutrient Limitation

More than light, nutrients limit primary production in most oceans and lakes. A **limiting nutrient** is the element that must be added for production to increase. The nutrients that most often limit marine production are nitrogen and phosphorus. Concentrations of these nutrients are typically low in the photic zone because they are rapidly taken up by phytoplankton and because detritus tends to sink.

In one study, detailed in **Figure 55.6**, nutrient enrichment experiments found that nitrogen was limiting phytoplankton growth off the south shore of Long Island, New York. Moreover, as also seen in Figure 55.6, primary production can increase dramatically when the nutrient status of an ecosystem changes from nutrient-poor to nutrient-rich, a process known as **eutrophication** (from the Greek *eutrophos*, well nourished). One practical application of this work is in preventing algal blooms caused by excess nitrogen runoff that fertilizes the phytoplankton. Preventing such blooms is critical because their occurrence can lead to the formation of large marine "dead zones," regions in which oxygen concentrations drop to levels that are fatal to many organisms (see Figure 56.24).

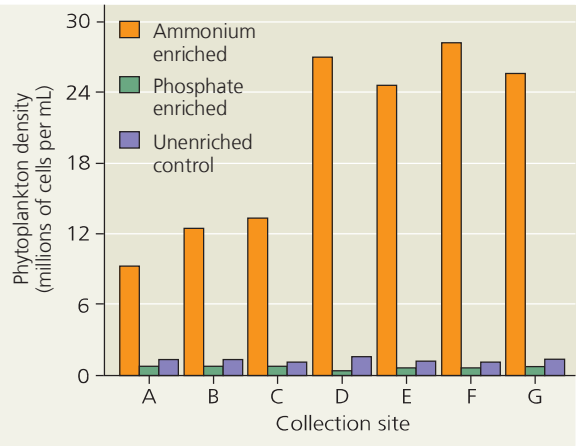
The macronutrients nitrogen and phosphorus are not the only nutrients that limit aquatic production. Several large areas of the ocean have low phytoplankton densities despite relatively high nitrogen concentrations. The Sargasso Sea, a subtropical region of the Atlantic Ocean, has some of the clearest water in the world because of its low phytoplankton density. Nutrient enrichment experiments have revealed that the availability of the micronutrient iron limits primary production there **(Table 55.1)**. Windblown dust from land supplies most of the iron to the oceans but is relatively scarce in the Sargasso Sea and certain other regions compared to the oceans as a whole.

▼ Figure 55.6 Inquiry

Which nutrient limits phytoplankton production along the coast of Long Island?

Experiment Pollution from duck farms concentrated near Moriches Bay adds both nitrogen and phosphorus to the coastal water off Long Island, New York. To determine which nutrient limits phytoplankton growth in this area, John Ryther and William Dunstan, of the Woods Hole Oceanographic Institution, cultured the phytoplankton *Nannochloris atomus* with water collected from several sites, identified as A through G. They added either ammonium (NH_4^+) or phosphate (PO_4^{3-}) to some of the cultures.

Results The addition of ammonium caused heavy phytoplankton growth in the cultures, but the addition of phosphate did not.



Conclusion Nitrogen is the nutrient that limits phytoplankton growth in this ecosystem because adding phosphorus did not increase *Nannochloris* growth, whereas adding nitrogen increased phytoplankton density dramatically.

Data from J. H. Ryther and W. M. Dunstan, Nitrogen, phosphorus, and eutrophication in the coastal marine environment, *Science* 171:1008–1013 (1971).

WHAT IF? *Predict how the results would change if water samples were drawn from areas where new duck farms had greatly increased the amount of pollution in the water. Explain.*

On the flip side, areas of *upwelling*, where deep, nutrient-rich waters circulate to the ocean surface, have exceptionally high primary production. This fact supports the hypothesis that nutrient availability determines marine primary production. Because upwelling stimulates growth of the phytoplankton that form the base of marine food webs, upwelling areas typically host highly productive, diverse ecosystems and are prime fishing locations. The largest areas of upwelling occur in the Southern Ocean (also called the Antarctic Ocean), along the equator, and in the coastal waters off Peru, California, and parts of western Africa.

Nutrient limitation is also common in freshwater lakes. During the 1970s, scientists showed that the sewage and fertilizer runoff from farms and lawns adds considerable nutrients to lakes, promoting the growth of primary producers.

Table 55.1 Nutrient Enrichment Experiment for Sargasso Sea

Nutrients Added to Experimental Culture	Relative Uptake of ^{14}C by Cultures*
None (controls)	1.00
Nitrogen (N) + phosphorus (P) only	1.10
N + P + metals, excluding iron (Fe)	1.08
N + P + metals, including Fe	12.90
N + P + Fe	12.00

*^{14}C uptake by cultures measures primary production.

Data from D. W. Menzel and J. H. Ryther, Nutrients limiting the production of phytoplankton in the Sargasso Sea, with special reference to iron, *Deep Sea Research* 7:276–281 (1961).

INTERPRET THE DATA *The element molybdenum (Mo) is another micronutrient that can limit primary production in the oceans. If the researchers found the following results for additions of Mo, what would you conclude about its relative importance for growth?*

N + P + Mo: 6.0 *N + P + Fe + Mo*: 72.0

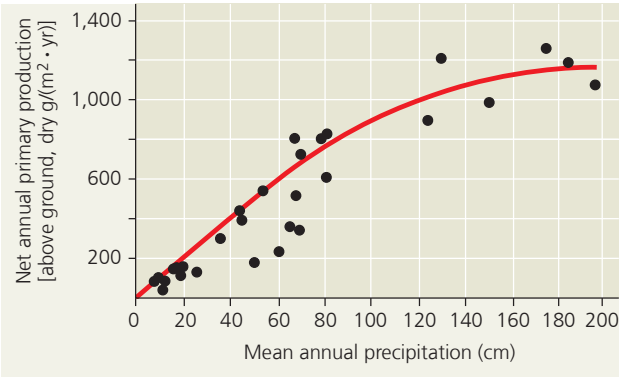
When the primary producers die, their bodies are broken down by aerobic decomposers. This depletes the water of much or all of its oxygen, killing large numbers of fish and causing the loss of many fish species from the lakes.

To prevent such fish kills, scientists need to know which nutrient is responsible. While nitrogen rarely limits primary production in lakes, many whole-lake experiments showed that phosphorus availability limited cyanobacterial growth. This and other ecological research led to the use of phosphate-free detergents and other water quality reforms.

Primary Production in Terrestrial Ecosystems

At regional and global scales, temperature and moisture are the main factors controlling primary production in terrestrial ecosystems. Primary production is greater in wetter ecosystems, as shown for the plot of NPP and annual precipitation in **Figure 55.7**. NPP also increases with temperature and the

▼ Figure 55.7 A global relationship between NPP and mean annual precipitation for terrestrial ecosystems.



amount of solar energy available to drive evaporation and transpiration. As a result, tropical rain forests, with their warm, wet conditions that promote plant growth, are the most productive terrestrial ecosystems. In contrast, low-productivity systems are generally hot and dry, like many deserts, or cold and dry, like arctic tundra. Between these extremes lie the temperate forest and grassland ecosystems, with moderate climates and intermediate productivity.

Nutrients can also affect NPP in terrestrial ecosystems. A dramatic example occurred after the arctic fox (see Figure 55.1) was introduced onto islands near Alaska. The presence of foxes had the surprising effect of converting grasslands to tundra, thereby lowering NPP. The foxes fed voraciously on the islands' seabirds, decreasing their density almost 100-fold. Fewer seabirds meant less bird guano (waste), a primary source of essential nutrients for plants on the islands. Researchers suspected that the scarcity of nutrients reduced the growth of nutrient-hungry grasses, favoring instead the slower-growing plants typical of tundra. To test this explanation, they added fertilizer to plots of tundra on one of the fox-infested islands. Three years later, the fertilized plots had reverted back to grassland.

Nutrient Limitations and Adaptations That Reduce Them

EVOLUTION As in aquatic systems, nitrogen and phosphorus are the nutrients that most commonly limit terrestrial production. Globally, nitrogen limits plant growth most. Phosphorus limitations are common in older soils where phosphate molecules have been leached away by water, such as in many tropical ecosystems. Note that adding a nonlimiting nutrient, even one that is scarce, will not stimulate production. Conversely, adding more of the limiting nutrient will increase production until some other nutrient becomes limiting.

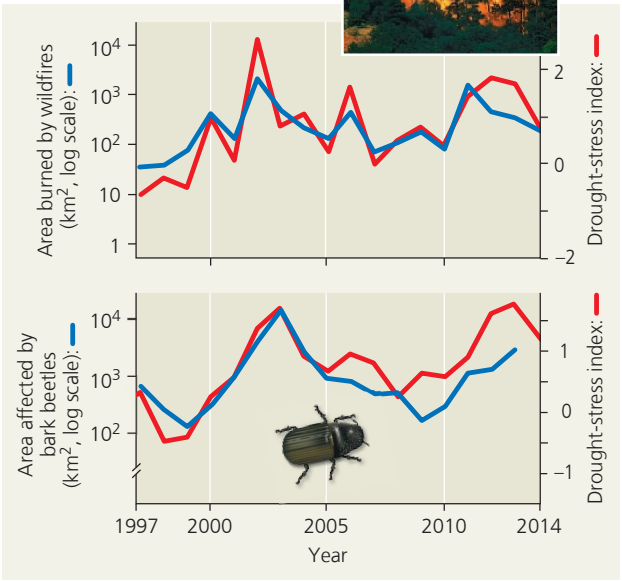
Various adaptations have evolved in plants that can increase their uptake of limiting nutrients. One important adaptation is the mutualism between plant roots and nitrogen-fixing bacteria. Another is the mycorrhizal association between plant roots and fungi that supply phosphorus and other limiting elements to plants (see Figure 37.14). Plant roots also have hairs and other anatomical features that increase the area of soil in contact with the roots (see Figures 33.8 and 35.3). Many plants release enzymes and other substances into the soil that increase the availability of limiting nutrients; such substances include phosphatases, which cleave a phosphate group from larger molecules, and certain molecules (called chelating agents) that make micronutrients such as iron more soluble in the soil.

Effects of Climate Change on Production

As we've seen, climatic factors such as temperature and precipitation affect terrestrial NPP. Thus, we might expect that climate change could affect production in terrestrial ecosystems—and it does. For example, satellite data showed that from 1982 to 1999, NPP increased by 6% in terrestrial ecosystems. Nearly half of this increase occurred in the tropical forests of the Amazon, where changing climate patterns had caused cloud cover to decrease, thereby increasing the amount of solar energy available to primary producers. Since 2000, however, these gains in NPP have been erased. This reversal was affected by another aspect of climate change: a series of major droughts in the Southern Hemisphere.

Effects of climate change on NPP can also be seen in the impact of "hotter droughts" on wildfires and insect outbreaks. Consider forests in the American Southwest. In recent decades, the forests of this region have experienced droughts driven by climate warming and changing patterns of precipitation. These ongoing droughts, in turn, have led to increases in the area burned by wildfires and the area affected by outbreaks of bark beetles such as the mountain pine beetle *Dendroctonus ponderosae* **(Figure 55.8)**. As a result, tree mortality has increased and NPP has decreased in these forests.

▼ Figure 55.8 Climate change, wildfires, and insect outbreaks. Forests in the American southwest are experiencing hotter droughts caused by rising temperatures in the summer and reduced snowfall in the winter. The drought-stress index indicates how greatly trees are stressed by these conditions; rising values of this index correspond to increasing drought. Higher drought stress correlates with increasing area burned by wildfires (top) and affected by bark beetles (bottom), which target drought-stressed trees with weakened defenses.



PROBLEM-SOLVING EXERCISE

Can an insect outbreak threaten a forest's ability to absorb CO_2 from the atmosphere?

One way to combat climate change is to plant trees, since trees absorb large amounts of CO_2 from the atmosphere, converting it to biomass through photosynthesis. But what happens to the carbon stored as biomass in trees when an insect population explodes in number? Such insect outbreaks have become more frequent with climate change.

A tree with dozens of "pitch tubes," indications of a damaging outbreak of mountain pine beetles (inset).

In this exercise, you will test whether an outbreak of the mountain pine beetle (*Dendroctonus ponderosae*) alters the amount of CO_2 that a forest ecosystem absorbs from and releases to the atmosphere.

Your Approach The principle guiding your investigation is that every ecosystem both absorbs and releases CO_2. Net ecosystem production (NEP) indicates whether an ecosystem is a carbon sink (absorbing more CO_2 from the atmosphere than it releases; this occurs when NEP > 0) or a carbon source (releasing more CO_2 than it absorbs; NEP < 0). To find out if the mountain pine beetle affects NEP, you will determine a forest's NEP before and after a recent outbreak of this insect.

Your Data From 2000 to 2006, an outbreak of the mountain pine beetle killed millions of trees in British Columbia, Canada. The impact of such outbreaks on whether forests gain carbon (NEP > 0) or lose carbon (NEP < 0) was poorly understood. To find out, ecologists estimated net primary production (NPP) and cellular respiration by decomposers and other heterotrophs (R_h), before and after the outbreak. These data allow forest NEP to be calculated from the equation $NEP = NPP - R_h$.

	NPP [g/(m² · yr)]	R_h [g/(m² · yr)]	NEP [g/(m² · yr)]
Before outbreak	440	408	
After outbreak	400	424	

Your Analysis

1. Complete the table by calculating the values of NEP before and after the outbreak. Before the outbreak, was the forest a carbon sink or a carbon source? After the outbreak?
2. NEP is often defined as $NEP = GPP - R_T$, where GPP is gross primary production and R_T equals cellular respiration by autotrophs (R_a) *plus* cellular respiration by heterotrophs (R_h). Use the relation $NPP = GPP - R_a$ to show that the two equations for NEP introduced in this exercise are equivalent.
3. Based on your results in question 1, predict whether the mountain pine beetle outbreak could have feedback effects on the global climate. Explain.

Instructors: A version of this Problem-Solving Exercise can be assigned in **Mastering Biology**.

Climate change can also affect whether an ecosystem stores or loses carbon over time. As discussed earlier, net ecosystem production, or NEP, reflects the total biomass accumulation that occurs during a given period of time. When NEP > 0, the ecosystem gains more carbon than it loses; such ecosystems store carbon and are said to be a carbon *sink*. In contrast, when NEP < 0, the ecosystem loses more carbon than it gains; such ecosystems are a carbon *source*.

Recent research shows that climate change can cause an ecosystem to switch from a carbon sink to a carbon source. For example, in some arctic ecosystems, climate warming has increased the metabolic activities of soil microorganisms, causing an uptick in the amount of CO_2 produced in cellular respiration. In these ecosystems, the total amount of CO_2 produced in cellular respiration now exceeds what is absorbed in photosynthesis. As a result, these ecosystems—which once were carbon sinks—are now carbon sources. When this happens, an ecosystem may contribute to climate change by releasing more CO_2 than it absorbs. Indeed, a 2017 study found that with climate warming, large regions of tundra in Alaska now release more CO_2 than they absorb—and for the years 2013 and 2014, the entire state of Alaska released more CO_2 than it absorbed. In the **Problem-Solving Exercise**, you can examine how outbreaks of an insect population may affect the NEP of forest ecosystems.

CONCEPT CHECK 55.2

1. Why is only a small portion of the solar energy that strikes Earth's atmosphere stored by primary producers?
2. How can ecologists experimentally determine the factor that limits primary production in an ecosystem?
3. **WHAT IF?** Suppose a forest was heavily burned by a wildfire. Predict how NEP of this forest would change over time.
4. **MAKE CONNECTIONS** Explain how nitrogen and phosphorus, the nutrients that most often limit primary production, are necessary for the Calvin cycle to function in photosynthesis (see Concept 10.3).

For suggested answers, see Appendix A.

CONCEPT 55.3

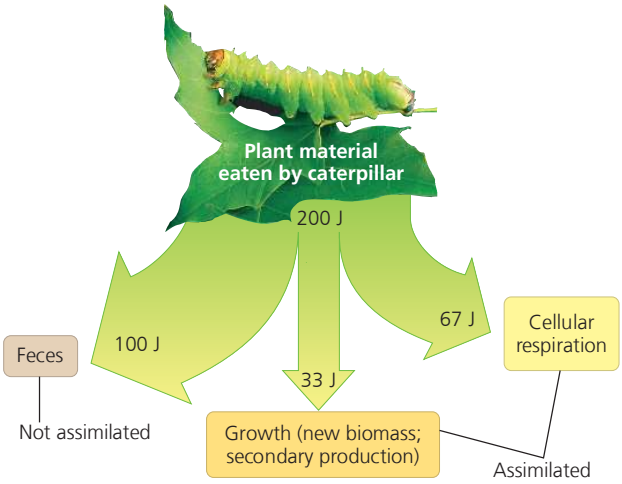
Energy transfer between trophic levels is typically only 10% efficient

The amount of chemical energy in consumers' food that is converted to their own new biomass during a given period is called the **secondary production** of the ecosystem. Consider the transfer of organic matter from primary producers to herbivores, the primary consumers. In most ecosystems, herbivores eat only a small fraction of plant material produced; globally, they consume only about one-sixth of total plant production. Moreover, they cannot digest all the plant material that they *do* eat, as anyone who has walked through a field where cattle have been grazing will attest. Most of an ecosystem's production is eventually consumed by decomposers. Let's analyze the process of energy transfer more closely.

Production Efficiency

We'll begin by examining secondary production in one organism—a caterpillar. When a caterpillar feeds on a leaf, only about 33 J out of 200 J, or one-sixth of the potential energy in the leaf, is used for secondary production, or growth **(Figure 55.9)**. The caterpillar stores some of the remaining energy in organic compounds that will be used for cellular respiration and passes the rest in its feces. The energy in the feces remains in the ecosystem temporarily, but most of it is lost as heat after the feces are consumed by decomposers. The energy used for the caterpillar's respiration is also eventually lost from the ecosystem as heat. Only the chemical energy stored by herbivores as biomass, through growth or the production of offspring, is available as food to secondary consumers.

▼ Figure 55.9 Energy partitioning within a link of the food chain.



INTERPRET THE DATA *What percentage of the energy in the caterpillar's food is actually used for secondary production (growth)?*

We can measure the efficiency of animals as energy transformers using the following equation:

$$\text{Production efficiency} = \frac{\text{Net secondary production}}{\text{Assimilation of primary production}} \times 100\%$$

Net secondary production is the amount of energy an organism has consumed and used for growth and reproduction. Assimilation consists of the total amount of energy an organism has consumed and used for growth, reproduction, and respiration. **Production efficiency**, therefore, is the percentage of energy stored in assimilated food that is used for growth and reproduction, *not* respiration. For the caterpillar in Figure 55.9, production efficiency is 33%; 67 J of the 100 J of assimilated energy is used for respiration. (The 100 J of energy lost as undigested material in feces does not count toward assimilation.) Birds and mammals typically have low production efficiencies, in the range of 1–3%, because they use so much energy in maintaining a constant, high body temperature. Fishes, which are mainly ectothermic (see Concept 40.3), have production efficiencies around 10%. Insects and microorganisms are even more efficient, with production efficiencies averaging 40% or more.

Trophic Efficiency and Ecological Pyramids

Let's scale up now from the production efficiencies of individual consumers to the flow of energy through trophic levels.

Trophic efficiency is the percentage of production transferred from one trophic level to the next. Trophic efficiencies must always be less than production efficiencies because they take into account not only the energy lost through respiration and contained in feces, but also the energy in organic material in a lower trophic level that is not consumed by the next trophic level. Trophic efficiencies range from roughly 5% to 20% in different ecosystems, but on average are only about 10%. In other words, 90% of the energy available at one trophic level typically is *not* transferred to the next. This loss is multiplied over the length of a food chain. If 10% of available energy is transferred from primary producers to primary consumers, such as caterpillars, and 10% of that energy is transferred to secondary consumers (carnivores), then only 1% of net primary production is available to secondary consumers (10% of 10%). In the **Scientific Skills Exercise**, you can calculate trophic efficiency and other measures of energy flow in a salt marsh ecosystem.

The loss of energy along a food chain limits the abundance of top-level carnivores that an ecosystem can support. Only about 0.1% of the chemical energy fixed by photosynthesis can flow through a food web to a tertiary consumer, such as a snake or a shark. This helps explain why most food webs include only about four or five trophic levels (see Figure 54.17).

The loss of energy with each transfer in a food chain can be represented by an *energy pyramid*, in which the net productions of different trophic levels are arranged in tiers **(Figure 55.10)**. The width of each tier is proportional to the net production,

Scientific Skills Exercise

Interpreting Quantitative Data

How Efficient Is Energy Transfer in a Salt Marsh Ecosystem? In a classic experiment, John Teal studied the flow of energy through the producers, consumers, and decomposers in a salt marsh. In this exercise, you will use the data from this study to calculate some measures of energy transfer between trophic levels in this ecosystem.

How the Study Was Done Teal measured the amount of solar radiation entering a salt marsh in Georgia over a year. He also measured the aboveground biomass of the dominant primary producers, which were grasses, as well as the biomass of the dominant consumers, including insects, spiders, and crabs, and of the detritus that flowed out of the marsh to the surrounding coastal waters. To determine the amount of energy in each unit of biomass, he dried the biomass, burned it in a calorimeter, and measured the amount of heat produced.

Data from the Study

Form of Energy	Amount [kcal/(m^2 · yr)]
Solar radiation	600,000
Gross grass production	34,580
Net grass production	6,585
Gross insect production	305
Net insect production	81
Detritus leaving marsh	3,671

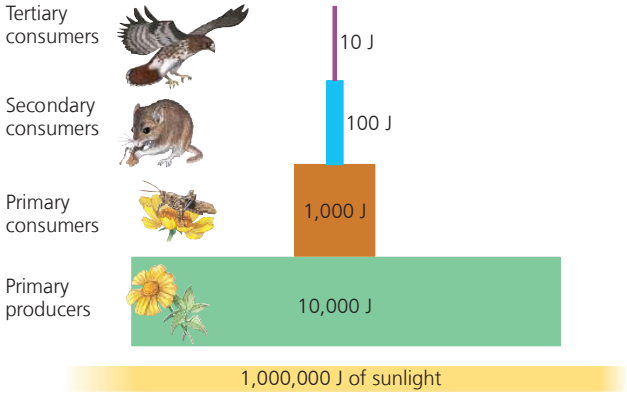
Data from J. M. Teal, Energy flow in the salt marsh ecosystem of Georgia, *Ecology* 43:614–624 (1962).

INTERPRET THE DATA

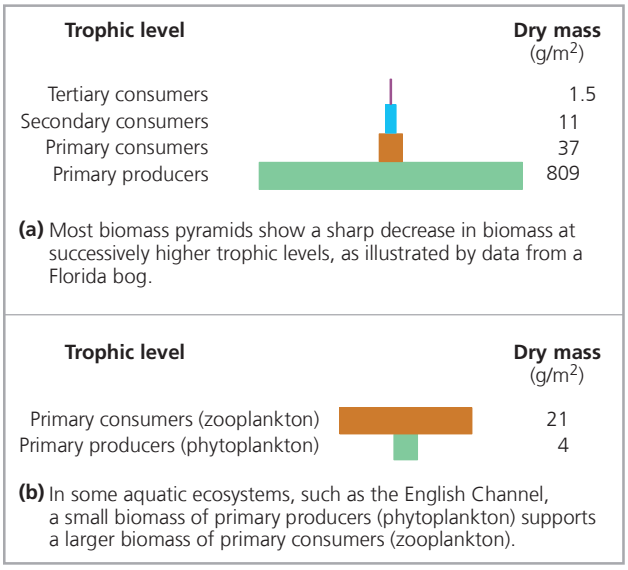
1. What percentage of solar energy is incorporated into the marsh as gross primary production? As net primary production?
2. How much energy is lost by primary producers as respiration in this ecosystem? How much is lost as respiration by the insect population?
3. If all of the detritus leaving the marsh is plant material, what percentage of all net primary production leaves the marsh as detritus each year?

Instructors: A version of this Scientific Skills Exercise can be assigned in **Mastering Biology.**

▼ Figure 55.10 An idealized pyramid of energy. This example assumes a trophic efficiency of 10% for each link in the food chain. Notice that primary producers convert only about 1% of the energy available to them to net primary production.



▼ Figure 55.11 Pyramids of biomass. Numbers denote the dry mass of all organisms at each trophic level.



expressed in joules, of each trophic level. The highest level, which represents top-level predators, contains relatively few individuals. The small population size typical of top predators is one reason they tend to be vulnerable to extinction (and to the evolutionary consequences of small population size; see Concept 23.3).

One ecological consequence of low trophic efficiencies is represented in a *biomass pyramid*, in which each tier represents the total dry mass of all organisms in one trophic level. Most biomass pyramids narrow sharply from primary producers at the base to top-level carnivores at the apex because energy transfers between trophic levels are so inefficient **(Figure 55.11a)**. Certain aquatic ecosystems, however, have inverted biomass pyramids, in which primary consumers outweigh the producers **(Figure 55.11b)**.

Such inverted biomass pyramids occur because the producers—phytoplankton—grow, reproduce, and are consumed so quickly by the zooplankton that their total biomass remains at comparatively low levels. However, because the phytoplankton continually replace their biomass at such a rapid rate, they can support a biomass of zooplankton bigger than their own biomass. Likewise, because phytoplankton

reproduce so quickly and have much higher production than zooplankton, the pyramid of *energy* for this ecosystem is still bottom-heavy, like the one in Figure 55.10.

The dynamics of energy flow through ecosystems have implications for human consumers. For example, eating meat is a relatively inefficient way of tapping photosynthetic production. The same pound of soybeans that a person could eat for protein produces only a fifth of a pound of beef or less when fed to a cow. Agriculture worldwide could, in fact, feed many more people and require less land if we all fed more efficiently—as primary consumers, eating plant material.

CONCEPT CHECK 55.3

1. If an insect that eats plant seeds containing 100 J of energy uses 30 J of that energy for respiration and excretes 50 J in its feces, what is the insect's net secondary production? What is its production efficiency?
2. Tobacco leaves contain nicotine, a poisonous compound that is energetically expensive for the plant to make. What advantage might the plant gain by using some of its resources to produce nicotine?
3. **WHAT IF?** Decomposers are consumers that obtain their energy from detritus. How many joules of energy are potentially available to decomposers in the ecosystem represented in Figure 55.10?

For suggested answers, see Appendix A.

CONCEPT 55.4

Biological and geochemical processes cycle nutrients and water in ecosystems

Although most ecosystems receive abundant solar energy, chemical elements are available only in limited amounts. Life therefore depends on the recycling of essential chemical elements. Much of an organism's chemical stock is replaced continuously as nutrients are assimilated and waste products are released. When the organism dies, the atoms in its body are returned to the atmosphere, water, or soil by decomposers. By liberating nutrients from organic matter, decomposition replenishes the pools of inorganic nutrients that plants and other autotrophs use to build new organic matter.

Decomposition and Nutrient Cycling Rates

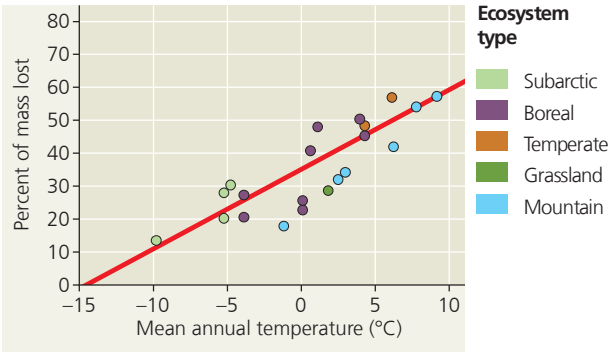
Decomposers are heterotrophs that get their energy from detritus. Their growth is controlled by the same factors that limit primary production in ecosystems, including temperature, moisture, and nutrient availability. Decomposers usually grow faster and decompose material more quickly in warmer ecosystems **(Figure 55.12)**. In tropical rain forests, most organic material decomposes in a few months to a few years, whereas in temperate forests, decomposition takes four to six years, on average. The difference is largely the result of the higher temperatures and more abundant precipitation in tropical rain forests.

▼ Figure 55.12 Inquiry

How does temperature affect litter decomposition in an ecosystem?

Experiment Researchers with the Canadian Forest Service placed identical samples of organic material—litter—on the ground in 21 sites across Canada. Three years later, they returned to see how much of each sample had decomposed.

Results The mass of litter in the warmest ecosystem decreased four times faster than in the coldest ecosystem.



Conclusion Decomposition rate increases with temperature across much of Canada.

Data from J. A. Trofymow and the CIDET Working Group, *The Canadian Intersite Decomposition Experiment: Project and Site Establishment Report* (Information Report BC-X-378), Natural Resources Canada, Canadian Forest Service, Pacific Forestry Centre (1998) and T. R. Moore et al., Litter decomposition rates in Canadian forests, *Global Change Biology* 5:75–82 (1999).

WHAT IF? *What factors other than temperature might also have varied across these 21 sites? How might this variation have affected the interpretation of the results?*

Because decomposition in a tropical rain forest is rapid, relatively little organic material accumulates as leaf litter on the forest floor; about 75% of the ecosystem's nutrients is present in the woody trunks of trees, and only about 10% is contained in the soil. Thus, the relatively low concentrations of some nutrients in the soil of tropical rain forests result from a short cycling time, not from a lack of these elements in the ecosystem. In temperate forests, where decomposition is much slower, the soil may contain as much as 50% of all the organic material in the ecosystem. The nutrients that are present in temperate forest detritus and soil may remain there for years before plants assimilate them.

Decomposition on land is also slower when conditions are either too dry for decomposers to thrive or too wet to supply them with enough oxygen. Decomposers grow especially poorly in ecosystems that are both cold and wet, such as peatlands. As a result, net primary production greatly exceeds the rate of decomposition in such ecosystems, causing them to store large amounts of organic matter.

In aquatic ecosystems, decomposition in anaerobic muds can take 50 years or longer. Bottom sediments are comparable to the detritus layer in terrestrial ecosystems, but algae and

aquatic plants usually assimilate nutrients directly from the water. Thus, the sediments often constitute a nutrient sink, and aquatic ecosystems are very productive only when there is exchange between the bottom layers of water and surface waters (as occurs in the upwelling regions described earlier).

Biogeochemical Cycles

Because nutrient cycles involve both biotic and abiotic components, they are called **biogeochemical cycles**. We can recognize two general scales of biogeochemical cycles: global and local. Gaseous forms of carbon, oxygen, sulfur, and nitrogen occur in the atmosphere, and these elements' cycles are essentially global. For example, some of the carbon atoms a plant acquires from the air as CO_2 may have been released into the atmosphere by the respiration of an organism in a distant locale. Other elements—including phosphorus, potassium, and calcium—are too heavy to occur as gases at Earth's surface, although they are transported in dust. In terrestrial ecosystems, these elements cycle more locally, absorbed from the soil by plant roots and eventually returned to the soil by decomposers. In aquatic systems, however, they cycle more broadly as dissolved forms carried in currents.

Let's first look at a general model of nutrient cycling that includes reservoirs where elements exist and processes that transfer elements between them **(Figure 55.13)**. The nutrients in living organisms and detritus (reservoir A) are available to other organisms when consumers feed and when decomposers consume nonliving organic matter. The low pH and low oxygen levels found in the waterlogged sediments of swamps can inhibit decomposition, leading to the formation of peat. When this occurs, organic materials from dead organisms can be transferred from reservoir A to reservoir B; eventually, peat may be converted to fossil fuels such as coal or oil. Inorganic materials that are dissolved in water or present in soil or air (reservoir C) are available for use. Although most organisms cannot directly tap into the inorganic elements tied up in rocks (reservoir D), these nutrients may slowly become available through weathering and erosion.

Figure 55.14 provides a detailed look at the cycling of water, carbon, nitrogen, and phosphorus. When you study each cycle, consider which steps are driven primarily by biological

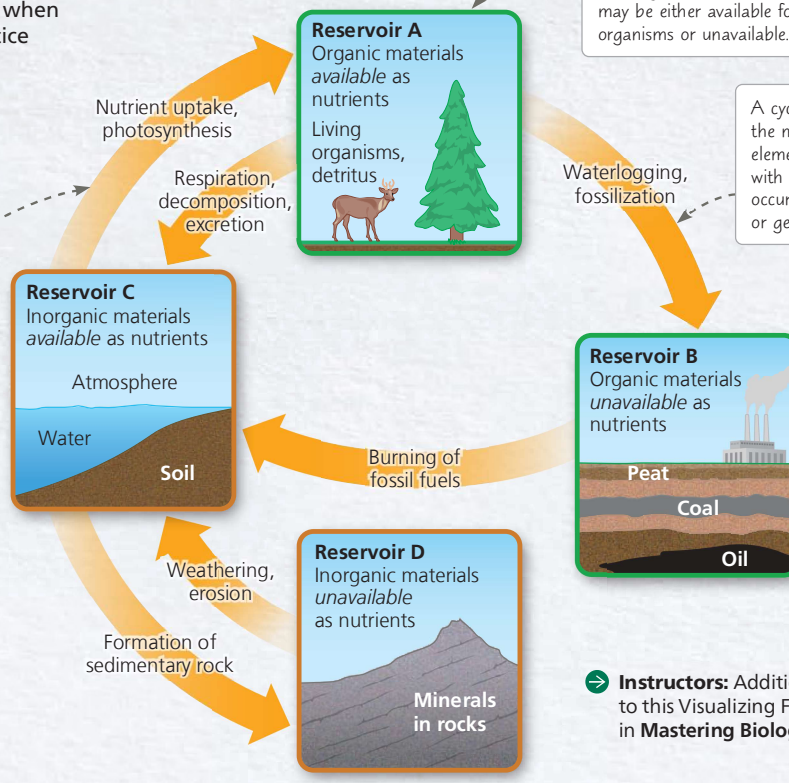
▼ Figure 55.13 VISUALIZING BIOGEOCHEMICAL CYCLES

A biogeochemical cycle diagram summarizes the movements of a chemical element between living and nonliving components of the biosphere. This figure uses a generic model of nutrient cycling to show what types of information may be represented. Then, when you study Figure 55.14, notice how this information is depicted in the specific nutrient cycles.

Cycle diagrams include a representation of the **reservoirs** in which the chemical element is found. A reservoir can consist of either organic or inorganic materials, and those materials may be either available for direct use by organisms or unavailable.

Nutrient cycle diagrams often do not represent the time scale of the different processes. Thus, it's important to keep in mind that some processes, such as photosynthesis, occur on a short time scale within an individual's life span, while others, such as rock formation, occur on a long geologic time scale.

A cycle diagram also represents the movements of the chemical element between reservoirs, usually with arrows. These movements occur through biological, chemical, or geologic processes.



2. ***Compare and contrast the time scales at which materials move into and out of reservoirs A and B.***

1. ***Suppose decomposition rates slowed greatly. Use the diagram to hypothesize how that might affect the transfer of materials from reservoir A to reservoirs B and C.***

Instructors: Additional questions related to this Visualizing Figure can be assigned in **Mastering Biology**.

▼ Figure 55.14 Exploring Water and Nutrient Cycling

Examine each cycle closely, considering the major reservoirs of water, carbon, nitrogen, and phosphorus and the processes that drive each cycle. The widths of the arrows in the diagrams approximately reflect the relative contribution of each process to the movement of water or a nutrient in the biosphere.

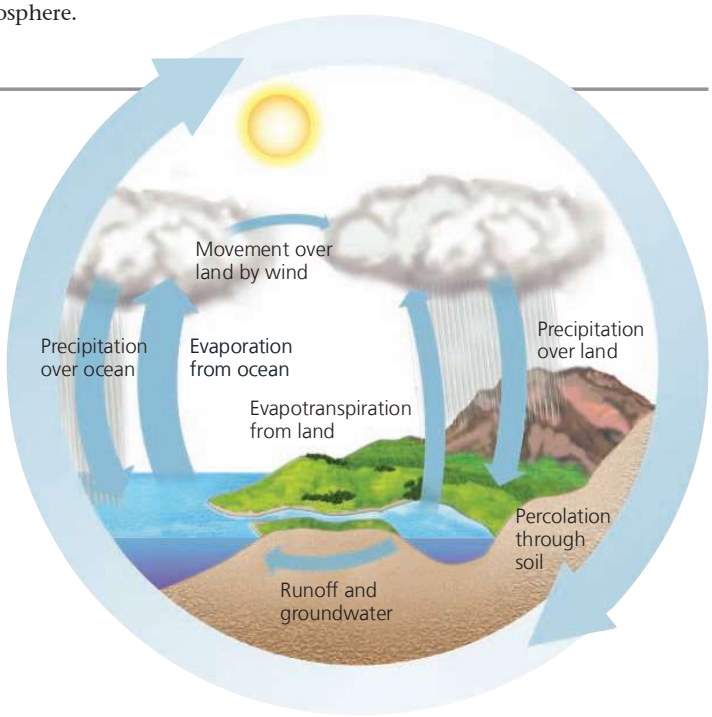
The Water Cycle

Biological importance Water is essential to all organisms, and its availability influences the rates of ecosystem processes, particularly primary production and decomposition in terrestrial ecosystems.

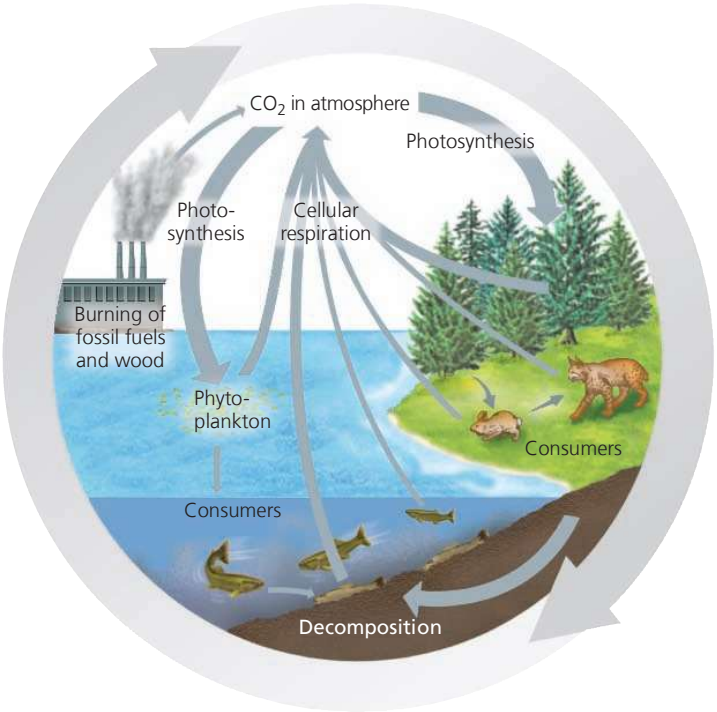
Forms available to life All organisms are capable of exchanging water directly with their environment. Liquid water is the primary physical phase in which water is used, though some organisms can harvest water vapor. Freezing of soil water can limit water availability to terrestrial plants.

Reservoirs The oceans contain 97% of the water in the biosphere. Approximately 2% is bound in glaciers and polar ice caps, and the remaining 1% is in lakes, rivers, and groundwater, with a negligible amount in the atmosphere.

Key processes The main processes driving the water cycle are evaporation of liquid water by solar energy, condensation of water vapor into clouds, and precipitation. Transpiration by terrestrial plants also moves large volumes of water into the atmosphere. Surface and groundwater flow can return water to the oceans, completing the water cycle.



The Carbon Cycle



Biological importance Carbon forms the framework of the organic molecules essential to all organisms.

Forms available to life Photosynthetic organisms utilize CO_2 during photosynthesis and convert the carbon to organic forms that are used by consumers, including animals, fungi, and heterotrophic protists and prokaryotes.

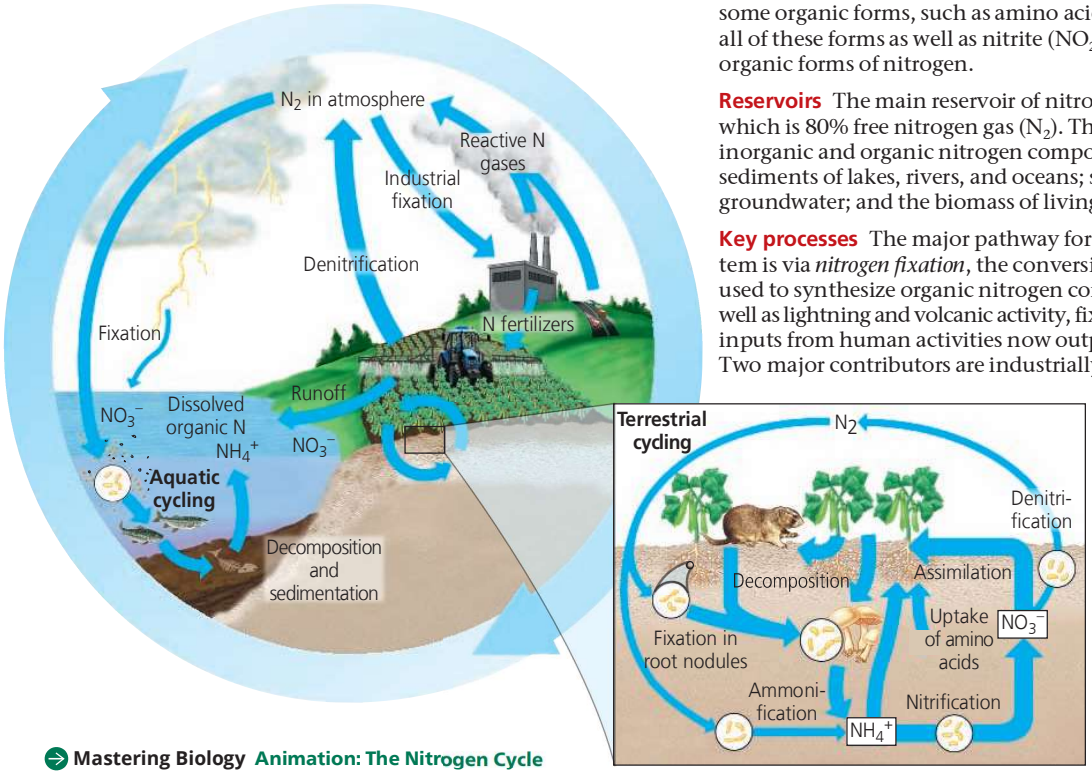
Reservoirs The major reservoirs of carbon include fossil fuels, soils, the sediments of aquatic ecosystems, the oceans (dissolved carbon compounds), plant and animal biomass, and the atmosphere (CO_2). The largest reservoir is sedimentary rocks such as limestone; however, carbon remains in this pool for long periods of time. All organisms are capable of returning carbon directly to their environment in its original form (CO_2) through respiration.

Key processes Photosynthesis by plants and phytoplankton removes substantial amounts of atmospheric CO_2 each year. This quantity is approximately equal to the CO_2 added to the atmosphere through cellular respiration by producers and consumers. The burning of fossil fuels and wood is adding significant amounts of additional CO_2 to the atmosphere. Over geologic time, volcanoes are also a substantial source of CO_2.

Mastering Biology BioFlix® Animation: The Carbon Cycle

The Nitrogen Cycle

Biological importance Nitrogen is part of amino acids, proteins, and nucleic acids and is often a limiting plant nutrient.



Mastering Biology **Animation: The Nitrogen Cycle**

Forms available to life Plants can assimilate (use) two inorganic forms of nitrogen—ammonium (NH_4^+) and nitrate (NO_3^-)—and some organic forms, such as amino acids. Various bacteria can use all of these forms as well as nitrite (NO_2^-). Animals can use only organic forms of nitrogen.

Reservoirs The main reservoir of nitrogen is the atmosphere, which is 80% free nitrogen gas (N_2). The other reservoirs of inorganic and organic nitrogen compounds are soils and the sediments of lakes, rivers, and oceans; surface water and groundwater; and the biomass of living organisms.

Key processes The major pathway for nitrogen to enter an ecosystem is via *nitrogen fixation*, the conversion of N_2 to forms that can be used to synthesize organic nitrogen compounds. Certain bacteria, as well as lightning and volcanic activity, fix nitrogen naturally. Nitrogen inputs from human activities now outpace natural inputs on land. Two major contributors are industrially produced fertilizers and legume crops that fix nitrogen via bacteria in their root nodules. Other bacteria in soil convert nitrogen to different forms. Examples include nitrifying bacteria, which convert ammonium to nitrate, and denitrifying bacteria, which convert nitrate to nitrogen gas. Human activities also release large quantities of reactive nitrogen gases, such as nitrogen oxides, to the atmosphere.

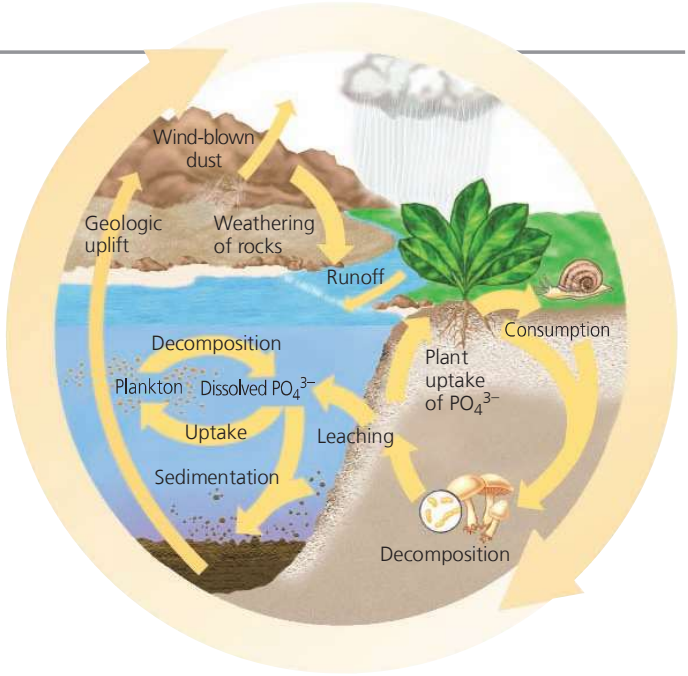
The Phosphorus Cycle

Biological importance Organisms require phosphorus as a major constituent of nucleic acids, phospholipids, and ATP and other energy-storing molecules and as a mineral constituent of bones and teeth.

Forms available to life The most biologically important inorganic form of phosphorus is phosphate (PO_4^{3-}), which plants absorb and use in the synthesis of organic compounds.

Reservoirs The largest accumulations of phosphorus are in sedimentary rocks of marine origin. There are also large quantities of phosphorus in soil, in the oceans (in dissolved form), and in organisms. Because soil particles bind PO_4^{3-}, the recycling of phosphorus tends to be quite localized in ecosystems.

Key processes Weathering of rocks gradually adds PO_4^{3-} to soil; some leaches into groundwater and surface water and may eventually reach the sea. Phosphate taken up by producers and incorporated into biological molecules may be eaten by consumers. Phosphate is returned to soil or water by either decomposition of biomass or excretion by consumers. Because there are no significant phosphorus-containing gases, only relatively small amounts of phosphorus move through the atmosphere, usually in the forms of dust and sea spray.



processes. For the carbon cycle, for instance, plants, animals, and other organisms control most of the key steps, including photosynthesis and decomposition. For the water cycle, however, purely physical processes control many key steps, such as evaporation from the oceans. Note also that human actions, such as the burning of fossil fuels and the production of fertilizers, have had major effects on the global cycling of carbon and nitrogen.

Case Study: Nutrient Cycling in the Hubbard Brook Experimental Forest

Since 1963, ecologist Gene Likens and colleagues have been studying nutrient cycling at the Hubbard Brook Experimental Forest in the White Mountains of New Hampshire. Their research site is a deciduous forest that grows in six small valleys, each drained by a single creek. Impermeable bedrock underlies the soil of the forest.

The research team first determined the mineral budget for each of six valleys by measuring the input and outflow of several key nutrients. They collected rainfall at several sites to measure the amount of water and dissolved minerals added to the ecosystem. To monitor the loss of water and minerals, they constructed a small concrete dam with a V-shaped spillway across the creek at the bottom of each valley **(Figure 55.15a)**. They found that about 60% of the water added to the ecosystem as rainfall and snow exits through the stream, and the remaining 40% is lost by evapotranspiration.

Preliminary studies confirmed that internal cycling conserved most of the mineral nutrients in the system. For example, only about 0.3% more calcium (Ca^{2+}) leaves a valley via its creek than is added by rainwater, and this small net loss is probably replaced by chemical decomposition of the bedrock. During most years, the forest even registers small net gains of a few mineral nutrients, including nitrogen.

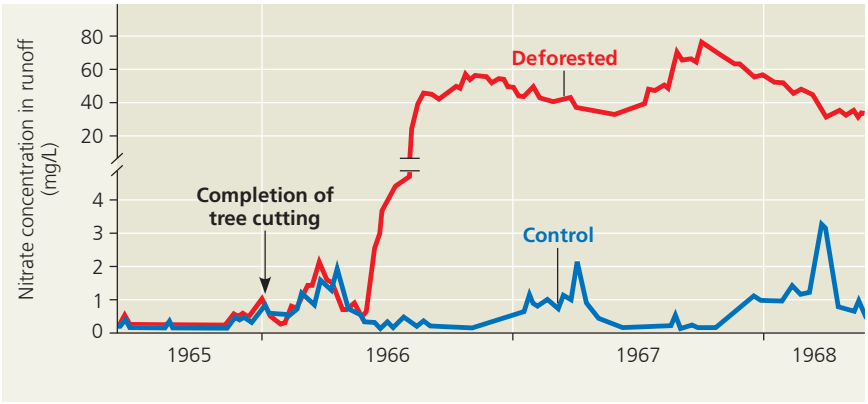
Experimental deforestation of a watershed dramatically increased the flow of water and minerals leaving the watershed **(Figure 55.15b).** Over three years, water runoff from the newly deforested watershed was 30–40% greater than in a control watershed, apparently because there were no plants to absorb and transpire water from the soil. Most remarkable was the loss of nitrate, whose concentration in the creek increased 60-fold, reaching levels considered unsafe for drinking water **(Figure 55.15c)**. The Hubbard Brook deforestation study showed that the amount of nutrients leaving an intact forest ecosystem is controlled mainly by the plants. Retaining nutrients in an ecosystem helps to maintain the productivity of the system as well as to avoid problems elsewhere, such as algal blooms caused by excess nutrient runoff that enters a downstream ecosystem.

Mastering Biology **Interview with Eugene Likens: Co-founder of the Hubbard Brook Forest Study**

▼ Figure 55.15 Nutrient cycling in the Hubbard Brook Experimental Forest.

(a) Concrete dams and weirs built across streams at the bottom of watersheds enabled researchers to monitor the outflow of water and nutrients from the ecosystem.

(b) One watershed was clear-cut to study the effects of the loss of vegetation on drainage and nutrient cycling. All of the original plant material was left in place to decompose.



(c) The concentration of nitrate in runoff from the deforested watershed was 60 times greater than in a control (unlogged) watershed.

VISUAL SKILLS *If this graph were redrawn so that the y-axis had a consistent scale, what information would be emphasized compared to the above graph? What information might be lost or harder to see? Explain.*

Instructors: A related Experimental Inquiry Tutorial can be assigned in **Mastering Biology.**

CONCEPT CHECK 55.4

1. **DRAW IT** For each of the four biogeochemical cycles in Figure 55.14, draw a simple diagram that shows one possible path for an atom of that chemical from abiotic to biotic reservoirs and back.
2. Why does deforestation of a watershed increase the concentration of nitrates in streams draining the watershed?
3. **WHAT IF?** Why is nutrient availability in a tropical rain forest particularly vulnerable to logging?

For suggested answers, see Appendix A.

CONCEPT 55.5

Restoration ecologists return degraded ecosystems to a more natural state

Ecosystems can recover naturally from many disturbances (including the experimental deforestation at Hubbard Brook) through the stages of ecological succession (see Concept 54.3). Sometimes, however, that recovery takes centuries, particularly when humans have degraded the environment. Tropical areas that are cleared for farming may quickly become unproductive because of nutrient losses. Mining activities may last for several decades, and the lands are often abandoned in a degraded state. Ecosystems can also be damaged by salts that build up in soils from irrigation and by toxic chemicals or oil spills. Biologists increasingly are called on to help restore and repair damaged ecosystems.

Restoration ecologists seek to initiate or speed up the recovery of degraded ecosystems. One of the basic assumptions is that environmental damage is at least partly reversible. This optimistic view must be balanced by a second assumption—that ecosystems are not infinitely resilient. Restoration ecologists therefore work to identify and manipulate the processes that most limit recovery of ecosystems from disturbances. Where disturbance is so severe that restoring all of a habitat is impractical, ecologists try to reclaim as much of a habitat or ecological process as possible, within the limits of the time and money available to them.

In extreme cases, the physical structure of an ecosystem may need to be restored before biological restoration can occur. If a stream was straightened to channel water quickly through a suburb, ecologists may reconstruct a meandering channel to slow down the flow of water eroding the stream bank. To restore an open-pit mine, engineers may grade the site with heavy equipment to reestablish a gentle slope, spreading topsoil when the slope is in place **(Figure 55.16)**.

After any physical reconstruction of the ecosystem is complete, the next step is biological restoration. The long-term objective of restoration is to return an ecosystem as closely as possible to its predisturbance state. **Figure 55.17** explores four ambitious and successful restoration projects. These and the many other such projects throughout the world often employ two key strategies: bioremediation and biological augmentation.

Mastering Biology **HHMI Video: Response of Corals to Ocean Warming and Efforts to Restore Damaged Reefs**

Bioremediation

Using organisms—usually prokaryotes, fungi, or plants—to detoxify polluted ecosystems is known as **bioremediation**. Some plants and lichens adapted to soils containing heavy metals can accumulate high concentrations of toxic metals such as lead and cadmium in their tissues. Restoration ecologists can introduce such species to sites polluted by mining and other human activities and then harvest these organisms to remove the metals from the ecosystem. For instance, researchers in the United Kingdom have discovered a lichen species that grows

▼ Figure 55.16 A gravel and clay mine site in New Jersey before and after restoration.

(a) In 1991, before restoration

(b) In 2010, several years after restoration

▼ Figure 55.17 Exploring Restoration Ecology Worldwide

The examples highlighted on this page are just a few of the many restoration ecology projects taking place around the world.

Kissimmee River, Florida

In the 1960s, the Kissimmee River was converted from a meandering river to a 90-km canal to control flooding. This channelization diverted water from the floodplain, causing the wetlands to dry up, threatening many fish and wetland bird populations. Kissimmee River restoration has filled 12 km of drainage canal and reestablished 24 km of the original 167 km of natural river channel. Pictured here is a section of the Kissimmee canal that has been plugged (wide, light strip on the right side of the photo), diverting flow into remnant river channels (center of the photo). The project will also restore natural flow patterns, which will foster self-sustaining populations of wetland birds and fishes.

Succulent Karoo, South Africa

In the Succulent Karoo desert region of southern Africa, as in many arid regions, overgrazing by livestock has damaged vast areas. Private landowners and government agencies in South Africa are restoring large areas of this unique region, revegetating the land and employing more sustainable resource management. The photo shows a small sample of the exceptional plant diversity of the Succulent Karoo; its 5,000 plant species include the highest diversity of succulent plants in the world.

Maungatautari, New Zealand

Weasels, rats, pigs, and other introduced species pose a serious threat to New Zealand's native plants and animals, including kiwis, a group of flightless, ground-dwelling bird species. The goal of the Maungatautari restoration project is to exclude all exotic mammals from a 3,400-ha reserve located on a forested volcanic cone. A specialized fence around the reserve eliminates the need to continue setting traps and using poisons that can harm native wildlife. In 2006, a pair of critically endangered takahe (a species of flightless rail) were released into the reserve with the hope of reestablishing a breeding population of this colorful bird on New Zealand's North Island.

Coastal Indonesia

Seaweed and seagrass beds are important nursery grounds for a wide variety of fishes and shellfish. Once extensive but now reduced by development, these beds are being restored in the coastal areas of Indonesia. Techniques include constructing suitable seafloor habitat, hand seeding, and transplanting seaweeds and seagrasses from natural beds (shown in this photograph).

on soil polluted with uranium dust left over from mining. The lichen concentrates uranium in a dark pigment, making it useful as a biological monitor and potentially as a remediator.

Ecologists already utilize many prokaryotes to carry out bioremediation of soils and water. Scientists have sequenced the genomes of at least ten prokaryotic species specifically for their bioremediation potential. One of the species, the bacterium *Shewanella oneidensis*, appears particularly promising. It can metabolize a dozen or more elements under aerobic and anaerobic conditions. In doing so, it converts soluble forms of uranium, chromium, and nitrogen to insoluble forms that are less likely to leach into streams or groundwater. Researchers at Oak Ridge National Laboratory, in Tennessee, stimulated the growth of *Shewanella* and other uranium-reducing bacteria by adding ethanol to groundwater contaminated with uranium; the bacteria can use ethanol as an energy source. In just five months, the concentration of soluble uranium in the ecosystem dropped by 80% **(Figure 55.18)**.

Biological Augmentation

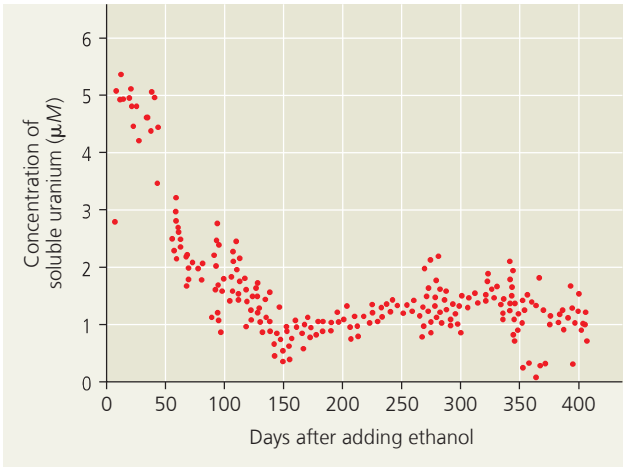
In contrast to bioremediation, which is a strategy for removing harmful substances from an ecosystem, **biological augmentation** uses organisms to *add* essential materials to a degraded ecosystem. To augment ecosystem processes, restoration ecologists need to determine which factors, such as chemical nutrients, have been lost from a system and are limiting its recovery.

Encouraging the growth of plants that thrive in nutrient-poor soils often speeds up succession and ecosystem recovery. In alpine ecosystems of the western United States, nitrogen-fixing plants such as lupines are often planted to raise nitrogen concentrations in soils disturbed by mining and other activities. Once these nitrogen-fixing plants become established, other native species are better able to obtain enough soil nitrogen to survive. In other systems where the soil has been severely disturbed or where topsoil is missing entirely, plant roots may lack the mycorrhizal symbionts that help them meet their nutritional needs (see Concept 31.1). Ecologists restoring a tallgrass prairie in Minnesota recognized this limitation and enhanced the recovery of native species by adding mycorrhizal symbionts to the soil they seeded.

Restoring the physical structure and plant community of an ecosystem does not always ensure that animal species will recolonize a site and persist there. Because animals provide critical ecosystem services, including pollination and seed dispersal, restoration ecologists sometimes help wildlife to reach and use restored ecosystems. They might release animals at a site or establish habitat corridors that connect a restored site to places where the animals are found. They may build perches for birds to use. These and other efforts can increase the biodiversity of restored ecosystems and help the community persist.

▼ Figure 55.18 Bioremediation of groundwater contaminated with uranium at Oak Ridge National Laboratory, Tennessee.

(a) Wastes containing uranium were dumped in these four unlined pits for more than 30 years, contaminating soils and groundwater.



(b) After ethanol was added, microbial activity decreased the concentration of soluble uranium in groundwater near the pits.

Ecosystems: *A Review*

Figure 55.19 illustrates energy transfer, nutrient cycling, and other key processes for an arctic tundra ecosystem. Note the conceptual similarities between this figure and Make Connections Figure 10.22, "The Working Cell." The scale of the two figures is different, but the physical laws and biological rules that govern life apply equally to both systems.

CONCEPT CHECK 55.5

1. Identify the main goal of restoration ecology.
2. How do bioremediation and biological augmentation differ?
3. **WHAT IF?** In what way is the Kissimmee River project a more complete ecological restoration than the Maungatautari project (see Figure 55.17)?

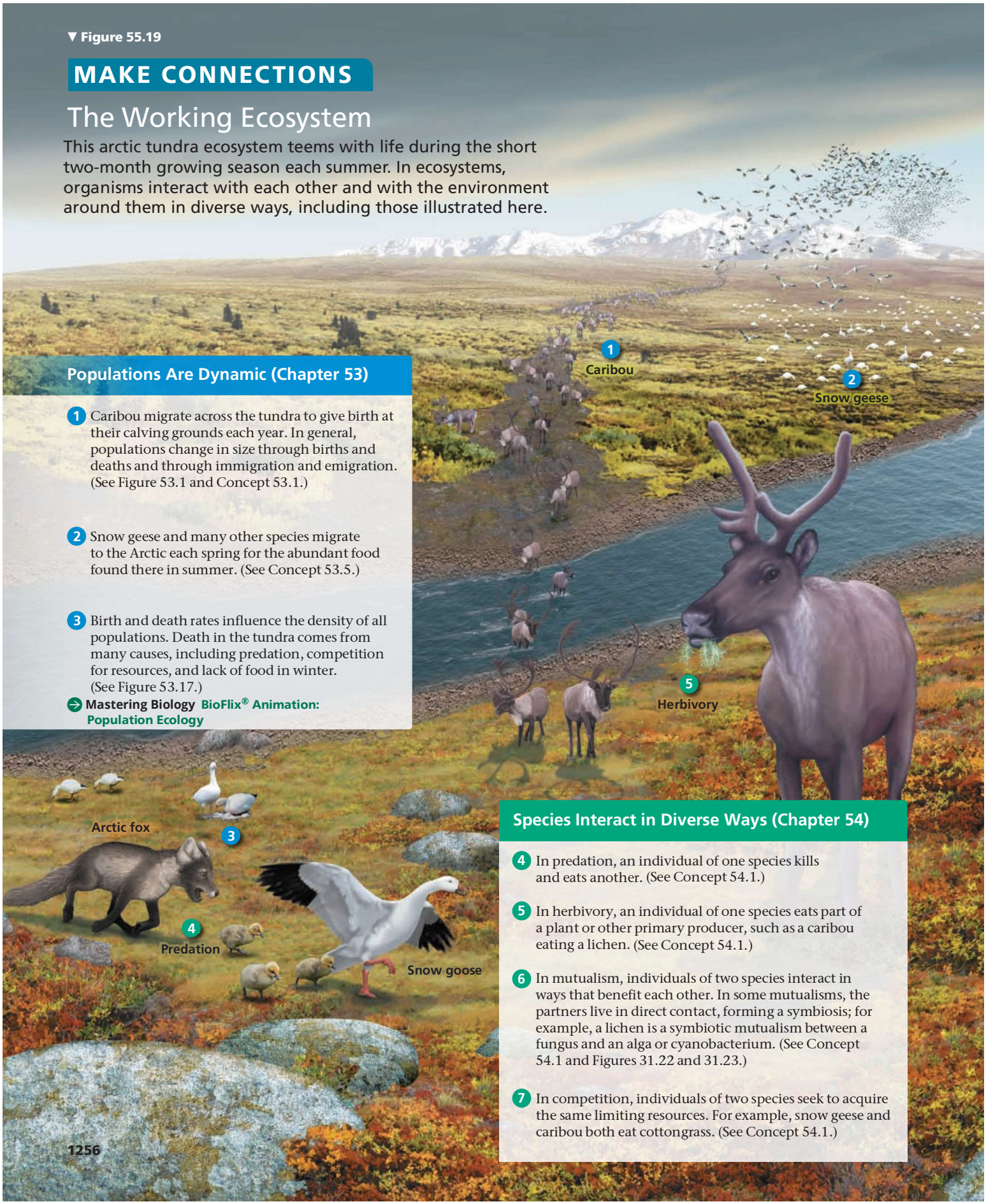
For suggested answers, see Appendix A.

▼ Figure 55.19

MAKE CONNECTIONS

The Working Ecosystem

This arctic tundra ecosystem teems with life during the short two-month growing season each summer. In ecosystems, organisms interact with each other and with the environment around them in diverse ways, including those illustrated here.



Populations Are Dynamic (Chapter 53)

1. Caribou migrate across the tundra to give birth at their calving grounds each year. In general, populations change in size through births and deaths and through immigration and emigration. (See Figure 53.1 and Concept 53.1.)

2. Snow geese and many other species migrate to the Arctic each spring for the abundant food found there in summer. (See Concept 53.5.)

3. Birth and death rates influence the density of all populations. Death in the tundra comes from many causes, including predation, competition for resources, and lack of food in winter. (See Figure 53.17.)

Mastering Biology BioFlix® Animation: Population Ecology

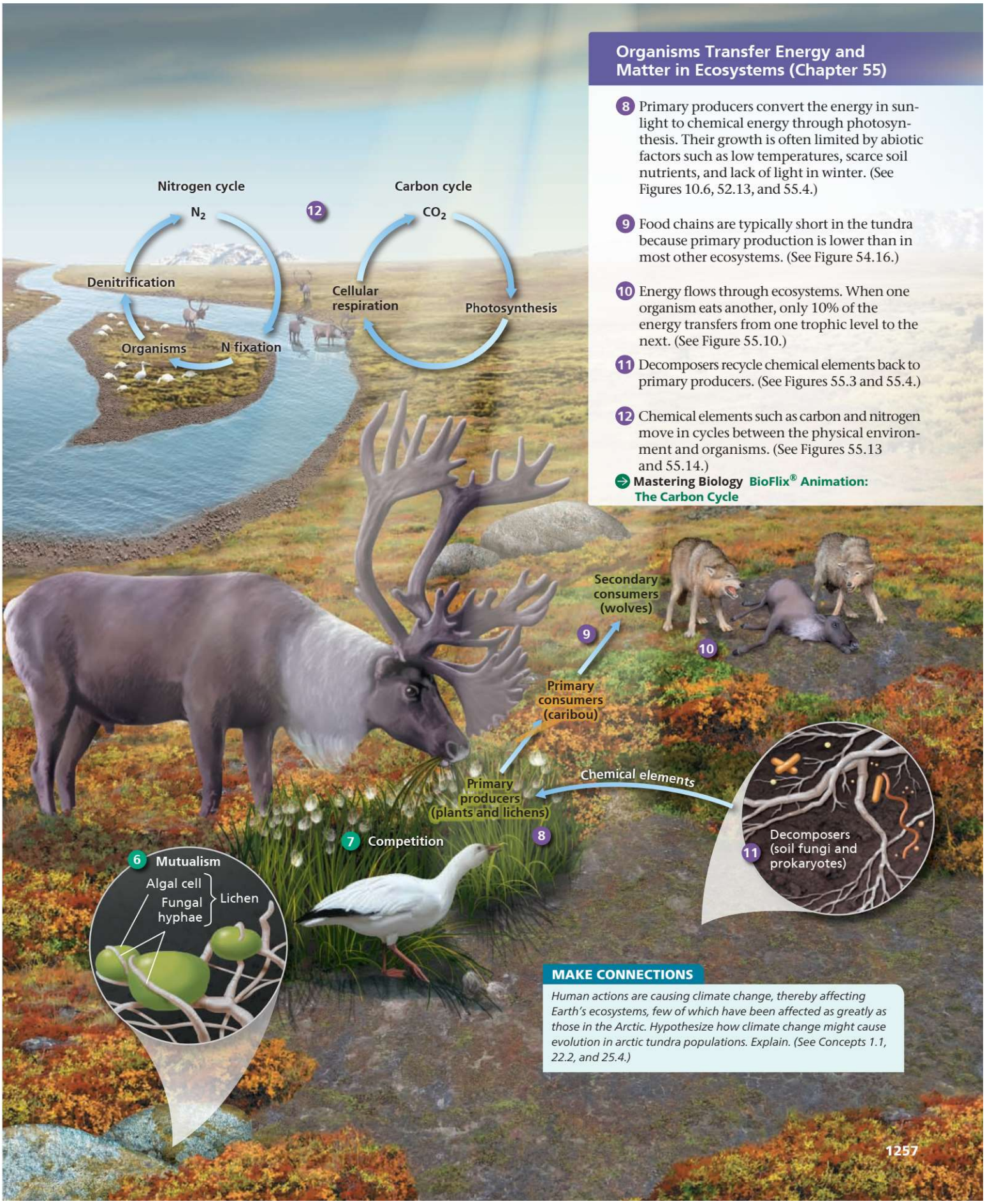
Species Interact in Diverse Ways (Chapter 54)

4. In predation, an individual of one species kills and eats another. (See Concept 54.1.)

5. In herbivory, an individual of one species eats part of a plant or other primary producer, such as a caribou eating a lichen. (See Concept 54.1.)

6. In mutualism, individuals of two species interact in ways that benefit each other. In some mutualisms, the partners live in direct contact, forming a symbiosis; for example, a lichen is a symbiotic mutualism between a fungus and an alga or cyanobacterium. (See Concept 54.1 and Figures 31.22 and 31.23.)

7. In competition, individuals of two species seek to acquire the same limiting resources. For example, snow geese and caribou both eat cottongrass. (See Concept 54.1.)



Organisms Transfer Energy and Matter in Ecosystems (Chapter 55)

8 Primary producers convert the energy in sunlight to chemical energy through photosynthesis. Their growth is often limited by abiotic factors such as low temperatures, scarce soil nutrients, and lack of light in winter. (See Figures 10.6, 52.13, and 55.4.)

9 Food chains are typically short in the tundra because primary production is lower than in most other ecosystems. (See Figure 54.16.)

10 Energy flows through ecosystems. When one organism eats another, only 10% of the energy transfers from one trophic level to the next. (See Figure 55.10.)

11 Decomposers recycle chemical elements back to primary producers. (See Figures 55.3 and 55.4.)

12 Chemical elements such as carbon and nitrogen move in cycles between the physical environment and organisms. (See Figures 55.13 and 55.14.)

Mastering Biology BioFlix® Animation: The Carbon Cycle

MAKE CONNECTIONS

Human actions are causing climate change, thereby affecting Earth's ecosystems, few of which have been affected as greatly as those in the Arctic. Hypothesize how climate change might cause evolution in arctic tundra populations. Explain. (See Concepts 1.1, 22.2, and 25.4.)

55 Chapter Review

Go to **Mastering Biology** for Assignments, the eText, the Study Area, and Dynamic Study Modules.

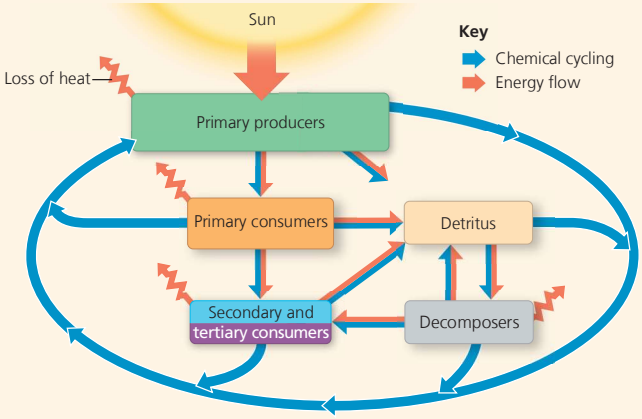
SUMMARY OF KEY CONCEPTS

To review key terms, go to the **Vocabulary Self-Quiz** in the **Mastering Biology** eText or Study Area, or go to goo.gl/zkjz9t.

CONCEPT 55.1

Physical laws govern energy flow and chemical cycling in ecosystems *(pp. 1239–1241)*

- An **ecosystem** consists of all the organisms in a community and all the abiotic factors with which they interact. Energy is conserved but released as heat during ecosystem processes. As a result, energy flows through ecosystems (rather than being recycled).
- Chemical elements enter and leave an ecosystem and cycle within it, subject to the **law of conservation of mass**. Inputs and outputs are generally small compared to recycled amounts, but their balance determines whether the ecosystem gains or loses an element over time.



Considering the second law of thermodynamics, would you expect the typical biomass of primary producers in an ecosystem to be greater than or less than the biomass of consumers in the system? Explain your reasoning.

CONCEPT 55.2

Energy and other limiting factors control primary production in ecosystems *(pp. 1241–1245)*

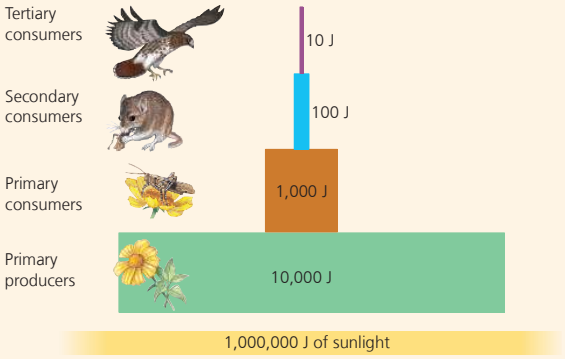
- **Primary production** sets the spending limit for the global energy budget. **Gross primary production** is the total energy assimilated by an ecosystem in a given period. **Net primary production**, the energy accumulated in autotroph biomass, equals gross primary production minus the energy used by the primary producers for respiration. **Net ecosystem production** is the total biomass accumulation of an ecosystem, defined as the difference between gross primary production and total ecosystem respiration.
- In aquatic ecosystems, light and nutrients limit primary production. In terrestrial ecosystems, climatic factors such as temperature and moisture affect primary production at large scales, but a soil nutrient is often the limiting factor locally.

If you know NPP for an ecosystem, what additional variable do you need to know to estimate NEP? Why might measuring this variable be difficult, for instance, in a sample of ocean water?

CONCEPT 55.3

Energy transfer between trophic levels is typically only 10% efficient *(pp. 1246–1248)*

- The amount of energy available to each trophic level is determined by the net primary production and the **production efficiency**, the efficiency with which chemical energy (stored in food) is converted to biomass at each link in the food chain.
- The percentage of energy transferred from one trophic level to the next, called **trophic efficiency**, is typically 10%. Pyramids of energy and biomass reflect low trophic efficiency.



Why would runners have a lower production efficiency when running a long-distance race than when they are sedentary?

CONCEPT 55.4

Biological and geochemical processes cycle nutrients and water in ecosystems *(pp. 1248–1253)*

- Water moves in a global cycle driven by solar energy. The carbon cycle primarily reflects the reciprocal processes of photosynthesis and cellular respiration. Nitrogen enters ecosystems through atmospheric deposition and nitrogen fixation by prokaryotes.
- The proportion of a nutrient in a particular form varies among ecosystems, largely because of differences in the rate of decomposition.
- Nutrient cycling is strongly regulated by vegetation. The Hubbard Brook case study showed that logging increases water runoff and can cause large losses of minerals.

If decomposers usually grow faster and decompose material more quickly in warmer ecosystems, why is decomposition in hot deserts relatively slow?

CONCEPT 55.5

Restoration ecologists return degraded ecosystems to a more natural state *(pp. 1253–1257)*

- Restoration ecologists harness organisms to detoxify polluted ecosystems through the process of **bioremediation**.
- In **biological augmentation**, ecologists use organisms to add essential materials to ecosystems.

In preparing a site for surface mining and later restoration, why would engineers separate the topsoil from the deeper soil, rather than removing all soil at once and mixing it in a single pile?

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING

For more multiple-choice questions, go to the **Practice Test** in the **Mastering Biology** eText or Study Area, or go to goo.gl/GruWRg.

Levels 1-2: Remembering/Understanding

1. Which of the following organisms is correctly paired with a trophic level?
   (A) cyanobacterium—secondary consumer
   (B) grasshopper—primary consumer
   (C) zooplankton—primary producer
   (D) grass—decomposer
2. Which of these ecosystems has the *lowest* net primary production per square meter?
   (A) a salt marsh
   (B) an open ocean
   (C) a coral reef
   (D) a tropical rain forest
3. The discipline that applies ecological principles to returning degraded ecosystems to a more natural state is known as
   (A) restoration ecology.
   (B) thermodynamics.
   (C) eutrophication.
   (D) biogeochemistry.

Levels 3-4: Applying/Analyzing

4. Nitrifying bacteria participate in the nitrogen cycle mainly by
   (A) converting nitrogen gas to ammonia.
   (B) releasing ammonium from organic compounds, thus returning it to the soil.
   (C) converting ammonium to nitrate, which plants absorb.
   (D) incorporating nitrogen into amino acids and organic compounds.
5. Which of the following has the greatest effect on the rate of chemical cycling in an ecosystem?
   (A) the rate of decomposition in the ecosystem
   (B) the production efficiency of the ecosystem's consumers
   (C) the trophic efficiency of the ecosystem
   (D) the location of the nutrient reservoirs in the ecosystem
6. Which of the following was a result of the Hubbard Brook watershed deforestation experiment?
   (A) Most minerals were not recycled within the intact forest ecosystem.
   (B) Calcium levels remained high in the soil of deforested areas.
   (C) Deforestation decreased water runoff.
   (D) The nitrate concentration in waters draining the deforested area became dangerously high.
7. Which of the following is an example of bioremediation?
   (A) adding nitrogen-fixing microorganisms to a degraded ecosystem to increase nitrogen availability
   (B) using a bulldozer to regrade a strip mine
   (C) reconfiguring the channel of a river
   (D) adding seeds of a chromium-accumulating plant to soil contaminated by chromium
8. If you applied a fungicide to a cornfield, what would you expect to happen to the rate of decomposition and net ecosystem production (NEP)?
   (A) Both decomposition rate and NEP would decrease.
   (B) Neither would change.
   (C) Decomposition rate would increase and NEP would decrease.
   (D) Decomposition rate would decrease and NEP would increase.

Levels 5-6: Evaluating/Creating

9. **DRAW IT** (a) Draw a simplified global water cycle showing ocean, land, atmosphere, and runoff from the land to the ocean. Label your drawing with these annual water fluxes:
   - ocean evaporation, 425 km^3
   - ocean evaporation that returns to the ocean as precipitation, 385 km^3
   - ocean evaporation that falls as precipitation on land, 40 km^3
   - evapotranspiration from plants and soil that falls as precipitation on land, 70 km^3
   - runoff to the oceans, 40 km^3

   (b) What is the ratio of ocean evaporation that falls as precipitation on land compared with runoff from land to the oceans? (c) How would this ratio change during an ice age, and why?
10. **EVOLUTION CONECTION** Some biologists have suggested that ecosystems are emergent, "living" systems capable of evolving. One manifestation of this idea is environmentalist James Lovelock's Gaia hypothesis, which views Earth itself as a living, homeostatic entity—a kind of superorganism. Are ecosystems capable of evolving? If so, would this be a form of Darwinian evolution? Why or why not? Explain.
11. **SCIENTIFIC INQUIRY** Using two neighboring ponds in a forest as your study site, design a controlled experiment to measure the effect of falling leaves on net primary production in a pond.
12. **WRITE ABOUT A THEME: ENERGY AND MATTER** Decomposition typically occurs quickly in moist tropical forests. However, waterlogging in the soil of some moist tropical forests results over time in a buildup of organic matter called "peat." In a short essay (100–150 words), discuss the relationship of net primary production, net ecosystem production, and decomposition for such an ecosystem. Are NPP and NEP likely to be positive? What do you think would happen to NEP if a landowner drained the water from a tropical peatland, exposing the organic matter to air?
13. **SYNTHESIZE YOUR KNOWLEDGE**

This dung beetle (genus *Scarabaeus*) is burying a ball of dung it has collected from a large mammalian herbivore in Kenya. Explain why this process is important for the cycling of nutrients and for primary production.

For selected answers, see Appendix A.

56 Conservation Biology and Global Change

KEY CONCEPTS

56.1 Human activities threaten Earth's biodiversity *p. 1261*

56.2 Population conservation focuses on population size, genetic diversity, and critical habitat *p. 1266*

56.3 Landscape and regional conservation help sustain biodiversity *p. 1270*

56.4 Earth is changing rapidly as a result of human actions *p. 1274*

56.5 Sustainable development can improve human lives while conserving biodiversity *p. 1284*

Study Tip

Make a table: As you read the chapter, fill in a table like the one shown to organize what you learn about human activities that have major effects on the environment. Describe the activity; summarize its impact; and list actions at personal and government levels that could reduce harmful effects of the activity.

Activity	Harmful effects	Personal choice/ governmental action
Cutting down tropical forests (often for cattle ranches)	Destroys habitat for tropical species; contributes to rising CO_2 levels	Eat less beef to reduce demand/ establish conservation areas

Go to Mastering Biology

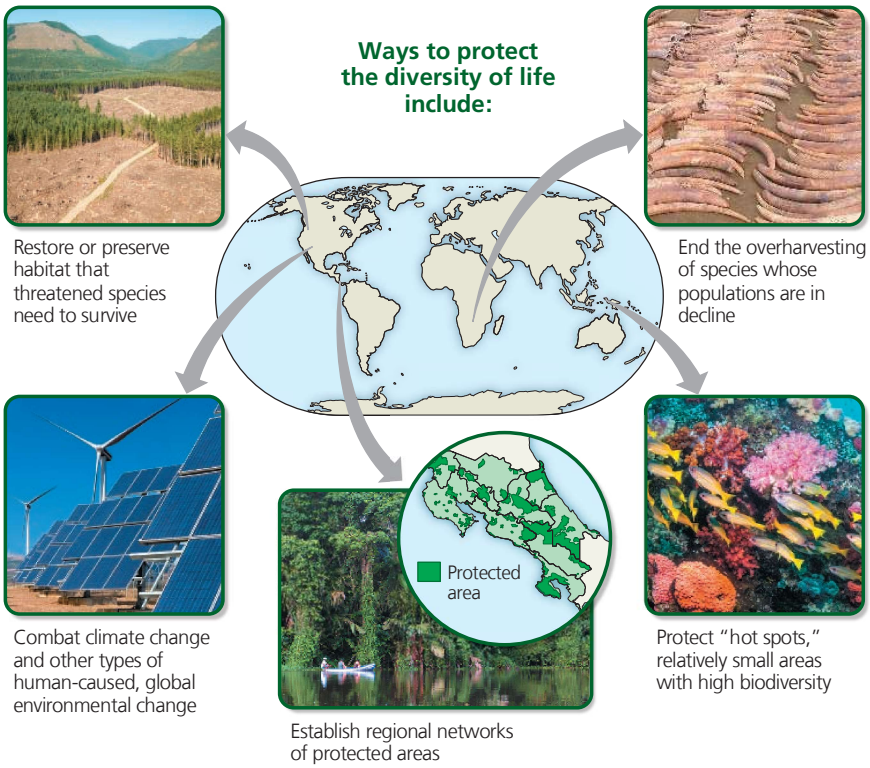
For Students (in eText and Study Area)
- Get Ready for Chapter 56
- Animation: The Global Carbon Cycle and the Greenhouse Effect

For Instructors to Assign (in Item Library)
- Interpreting Data: Recent Global Temperature Changes
- Scientific Thinking: Using Forensics to Uncover Illegal Whaling

Ready-to-Go Teaching Module (in Instructor Resources)
- Interpreting Data on Introduced Species

Figure 56.1 Researchers discovered this colorful lizard, the psychedelic rock gecko (*Cnemaspis psychedelica*), during an expedition to the Greater Mekong region of Southeast Asia. In fact, between 2000 and 2010, more than 1,000 new species were discovered in this region alone. Unfortunately, the psychedelic rock gecko and many other newly discovered species' survival is threatened by deforestation and other human activities.

How can we protect the many species threatened by human activities?



CONCEPT 56.1

Human activities threaten earth's biodiversity

Throughout the biosphere, human activities are altering natural disturbances, trophic structures, energy flow, and chemical cycling—ecosystem processes on which we and all other species depend. We have physically altered nearly half of Earth's land surface, and we use over half of all accessible surface fresh water. In the oceans, stocks of most major fisheries are shrinking because of overharvesting. By some estimates, we may be pushing more species toward extinction than did the asteroid that triggered the Cretaceous mass extinction 66 million years ago (see Figure 25.18).

In this chapter, we'll examine changes happening across Earth, focusing on **conservation biology**, a discipline that integrates ecology, physiology, molecular biology, genetics, and evolutionary biology to conserve the diversity of life on Earth. Efforts to sustain ecosystem processes and stem the extinction of species also connect the life sciences with the social sciences, economics, and humanities.

Extinction is a natural phenomenon that has been occurring since life first evolved; it is the high *rate* of extinction that is of concern. More than 1,000 species have become extinct in the last 400 years, a rate that is 100 to 1,000 times the "background," or typical, extinction rate seen in the fossil record (see Concept 25.4). This comparison indicates that the extinction rate today is high and that human activities threaten Earth's biological diversity at all levels.

Three Levels of Biodiversity

Biodiversity—short for biological diversity—can be considered at three main levels: genetic diversity, species diversity, and ecosystem diversity **(Figure 56.2)**.

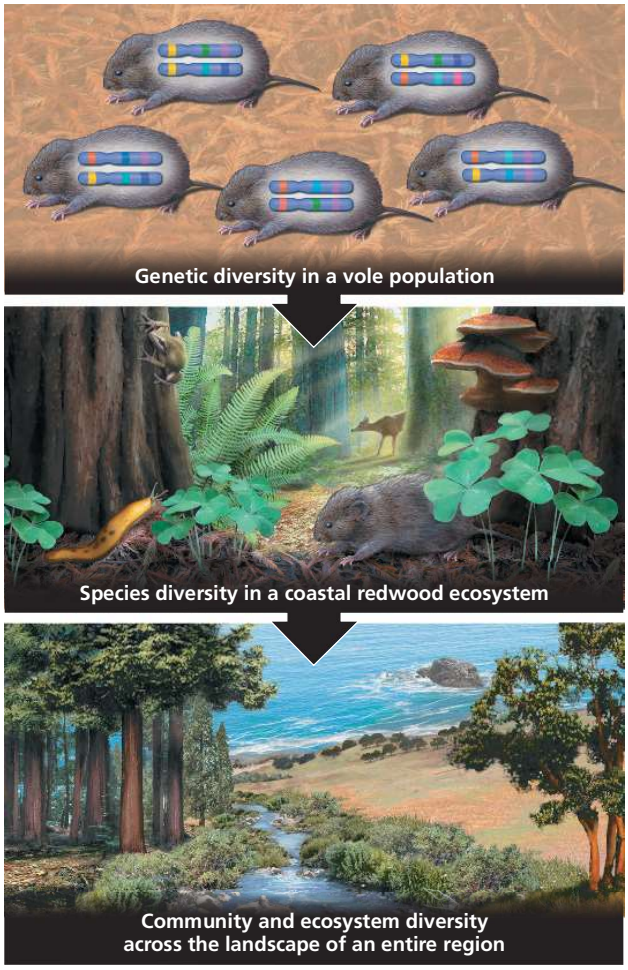
Genetic Diversity

Genetic diversity comprises not only the individual genetic variation *within* a population, but also genetic differences *between* populations—differences that often are associated with adaptations to local conditions. If one population becomes extinct, then a species may have lost some of the genetic diversity that makes microevolution possible. This erosion of genetic diversity in turn reduces the adaptive potential of the species.

Species Diversity

Public awareness of the biodiversity crisis centers on species diversity—the number of species in an ecosystem or across the biosphere. To date, scientists have described and formally named about 1.8 million species of organisms. In addition to these named species, many others remain to be discovered:

▼ Figure 56.2 Three levels of biodiversity. The oversized chromosomes in the top diagram symbolize the genetic variation within the population.



Estimates for the number of species that currently exist range from 5 million to 100 million.

Of particular concern are species that are endangered or threatened. An **endangered species** is one that is in danger of extinction throughout all or much of its range **(Figure 56.3)**, while a **threatened species** is considered likely to become endangered in the near future. The following are just a few statistics that illustrate the problem of species loss:

- According to the International Union for Conservation of Nature and Natural Resources (IUCN), 13% of the 10,000 known species of birds and 22% of the 5,500 known species of mammals are threatened.
- A survey by the Center for Plant Conservation showed that of the nearly 20,000 known plant species in the United States, 200 have become extinct since such records have been kept, and 730 are endangered or threatened.

▼ Figure 56.3 A hundred heartbeats from extinction. These are two members of what Harvard biologist E. O. Wilson calls the Hundred Heartbeat Club, species with fewer than 100 individuals remaining on Earth. The Yangtze River dolphin may be extinct, but a few individuals were reportedly sighted in 2007.

? *To document that a species has actually become extinct, what factors would you need to consider?*

- In North America, at least 123 freshwater animal species have become extinct since 1900, and hundreds more species are threatened. The extinction rate for North American freshwater fauna is about five times as high as that for terrestrial animals.

The local populations of a species can also be driven to extinction; for example, populations of a species may be lost in one river system but survive in an adjacent one. Global extinction of a species means that it is lost from *all* the ecosystems in which it lived, leaving them permanently impoverished.

Mastering Biology HHMI Video: Surveying Gorongosa's Biodiversity

Ecosystem Diversity

The variety of ecosystems on Earth is a third level of biological diversity. Because of the many interactions between members of different species in an ecosystem, the extinction of populations of one species can have a negative impact on other species in the ecosystem (see Figure 54.20). For instance, bats called "flying foxes" are important pollinators and seed dispersers in the Pacific Islands, where they are increasingly hunted as a luxury food **(Figure 56.4)**. Conservation biologists fear that the extinction of flying foxes would also harm the native plants of the Samoan Islands, where four-fifths of the tree species depend on flying foxes for pollination or seed dispersal.

▼ Figure 56.4 The endangered Marianas "flying fox" bat (*Pteropus mariannus*), an important pollinator.

Some ecosystems have already been heavily affected by humans, and others are being altered at a rapid pace. Since European colonization, more than half of the wetlands in the contiguous United States have been drained and converted to agricultural and other uses. In California, Arizona, and New Mexico, roughly 90% of native riparian (streamside) communities have been affected by overgrazing, flood control, water diversions, lowering of water tables, and invasion by non-native plants.

Biodiversity and Human Welfare

Why should we care about the loss of biodiversity? One basic reason concerns our human sense of connection to nature and all forms of life, termed *biophilia*. Moreover, the belief that other species are entitled to life is a pervasive theme of many religions and the basis of a moral argument that we should protect biodiversity. There is also a concern for future human generations. Paraphrasing an old proverb, G. H. Brundtland, a former prime minister of Norway, said, "We must consider our planet to be on loan from our children, rather than being a gift from our ancestors." In addition to such philosophical and moral justifications, species and genetic diversity bring us many practical benefits.

Benefits of Species and Genetic Diversity

Many threatened species could potentially provide medicines, food, and fibers for human use, making biodiversity a crucial natural resource. Products from aspirin to antibiotics were derived originally from natural sources. If we lose wild populations of plants closely related to agricultural species, we lose genetic resources that could be used to improve crop qualities, such as disease resistance. For instance, in the 1970s, plant breeders responded to devastating outbreaks of the grassy stunt virus in rice (*Oryza sativa*) by screening

7,000 populations of this species and its close relatives for resistance to the virus. One population of a single relative, Indian rice (*Oryza nivara*), was found to be resistant to the virus, and scientists succeeded in breeding the resistance trait into commercial rice varieties. Today, the original disease-resistant population has apparently become extinct in the wild.

In the United States, about 25% of the prescriptions dispensed from pharmacies contain substances originally derived from plants. For example, researchers discovered that the rosy periwinkle, which grows in Madagascar, contains alkaloids that inhibit cancer cell growth **(Figure 56.5)**. This discovery led to treatments for two deadly forms of cancer, Hodgkin's lymphoma and childhood leukemia, resulting in remission in most cases. Madagascar is also home to five other species of periwinkles, one of which is approaching extinction. Losing these species would mean the loss of any possible medicinal benefits they might offer.

▼ Figure 56.5 The rosy periwinkle (*Catharanthus roseus*), a plant that saves lives.

Each species lost means the loss of unique genes, some of which may code for enormously useful proteins. The enzyme Taq polymerase was first extracted from a bacterium, *Thermus aquaticus*, found in hot springs at Yellowstone National Park. This enzyme is essential for the polymerase chain reaction (PCR) because it is stable at the high temperatures required for automated PCR (see Figure 20.8). DNA from many other species of prokaryotes, living in a variety of environments, is used in the mass production of proteins for new medicines, foods, petroleum substitutes, industrial chemicals, and other products. However, because many species of prokaryotes and other organisms may become extinct before we discover them, we stand to lose the valuable genetic potential held in their unique libraries of genes.

Ecosystem Services

The benefits that individual species provide to humans are substantial, but saving individual species is only part of the reason for preserving ecosystems. Humans evolved in Earth's ecosystems, and we rely on these systems and their inhabitants for our survival. **Ecosystem services** encompass all the processes through which natural ecosystems help sustain human life. Ecosystems purify our air and water. They detoxify and decompose our wastes and reduce the impacts of extreme weather and flooding. The organisms in ecosystems pollinate our crops, control pests, and create and preserve our soils. Moreover, these diverse services are provided for free.

If we had to pay for them, how much would the services of natural ecosystems be worth? In 1997, scientists estimated the value of Earth's ecosystem services at $33 trillion per year, nearly twice the gross national product of all the countries on Earth at the time ($18 trillion). It may be more realistic to do the accounting on a smaller scale. For example, New York City invested $1.5 billion to buy land and restore habitat in the Catskill Mountains, the source of much of the city's fresh water. This investment was spurred by increasing pollution of the water by sewage, pesticides, and fertilizers. By harnessing ecosystem services to purify its water naturally, the city avoided spending $2 billion to build new water treatment plants and $300 million a year to run those plants.

There is growing evidence that the functioning of ecosystems, and hence their capacity to perform services, is linked to biodiversity. As human activities reduce biodiversity, we are reducing the capacity of the planet's ecosystems to perform processes critical to our own survival.

Mastering Biology
Interview with E. O. Wilson: Advocate for protecting biodiversity

Threats to Biodiversity

Many different human activities threaten biodiversity on local, regional, and global scales. The threats posed by these activities include four major types: habitat loss, introduced species, overharvesting, and global change.

Habitat Loss

Human alteration of habitat is the single greatest threat to biodiversity throughout the biosphere. Habitat loss has been brought about by factors such as agriculture, urban development, forestry, mining, and pollution. As discussed in more detail later in this chapter, global climate change is also altering habitats today and will have an even larger effect later this century. When no alternative habitat is available or a species is unable to move, habitat loss may mean extinction. The IUCN implicates destruction of habitat as a contributing cause for 73% of the species that have become extinct, endangered, vulnerable, or rare in the last few hundred years.

Habitat loss and fragmentation may occur over immense regions. Approximately 98% of the tropical dry forests of Central America and Mexico have been cut down. The clearing of tropical rain forest in the state of Veracruz, Mexico, mostly for cattle ranching, has resulted in the loss of more than 90% of the original forest, leaving relatively small,

▼ Figure 56.6 Habitat fragmentation in the foothills of Los Angeles. Development in the valleys may confine the organisms that inhabit the narrow strips of hillside.

isolated patches of forest. Many other natural habitats have also been fragmented by human activities **(Figure 56.6)**.

Habitat fragmentation often reduces the number of species in a region because the smaller populations in habitat fragments have a higher probability of extinction. Prairie covered about 800,000 hectares of southern Wisconsin when Europeans first arrived in North America but occupies only 800 hectares today; most of the original prairie in this area is now used to grow crops. Plant diversity surveys of 54 Wisconsin prairie remnants conducted in 1948–1954 and 1987–1988 showed that the remnants lost 8–60% of their plant species in the time between the two surveys.

Habitat loss is also a major threat to aquatic biodiversity. About 70% of coral reefs, among Earth's most species-rich aquatic communities, have been damaged by human activities. At the current rate of destruction, 40–50% of the reefs, home to one-third of marine fish species, could disappear in the next 30 to 40 years. Freshwater habitats are also being lost, often as a result of the dams, reservoirs, channel modification, and flow regulation now affecting most of the world's rivers. For example, the more than 30 dams and locks built along the Mobile River basin in the southeastern United States changed river depth and flow. While providing the benefits of hydroelectric power and increased ship traffic, these dams and locks also helped drive more than 40 species of mussels and snails to extinction.

Introduced Species

Introduced species—sometimes called invasive, nonnative, or exotic species—are those that humans move intentionally or accidentally from the species' native locations to new geographic regions. Human travel by ship and airplane has accelerated the transplant of species. Free from the predators, herbivores, pathogens, or competitors that limit their populations in their native habitats, such transplanted species may spread rapidly through a new region.

▼ Figure 56.7 Kudzu, an introduced species, thriving in the southeastern United States.

Some introduced species disrupt their new community, often by preying on native organisms or outcompeting native organisms for resources. For example, the brown tree snake was accidentally introduced to the island of Guam from other parts of the South Pacific after World War II, as a "stowaway" in military cargo. Since then, 12 species of birds and 6 species of lizards that the snakes ate have become extinct on Guam. In 1988, the devastating zebra mussel, a suspension-feeding mollusc, was discovered in the Great Lakes of North America, most likely introduced in the ballast water of ships arriving from Europe. Zebra mussels form dense colonies and have disrupted freshwater ecosystems, threatening native aquatic species. They have also clogged water intake structures, causing billions of dollars in damage to domestic and industrial water supplies.

Humans have deliberately introduced many species with good intentions but disastrous effects. An Asian plant called kudzu, which the U.S. Department of Agriculture once introduced in the southern United States to help control erosion, has taken over large areas of the landscape there **(Figure 56.7)**. The European starling was brought intentionally into New York's Central Park in 1890 by a citizens' group intent on introducing all the plants and animals mentioned in Shakespeare's plays. It quickly spread across North America, where its population now exceeds 100 million, displacing many native songbirds.

Introduced species are a worldwide problem, contributing to approximately 40% of the extinctions recorded since 1750 and costing billions of dollars each year in damage and control efforts. There are more than 50,000 introduced species in the United States alone.

Overharvesting

The term *overharvesting* refers generally to the harvesting of wild organisms at rates exceeding the ability of their populations to rebound. Species with restricted habitats, such as those that inhabit small islands, are particularly vulnerable to overharvesting. One such species was the great auk, a large, flightless seabird found on islands in the North Atlantic. By

the 1840s, humans had hunted the great auk to extinction to satisfy demand for its feathers, eggs, and meat.

Also susceptible to overharvesting are large organisms with low reproductive rates, such as elephants, whales, and rhinoceroses. The decline of Earth's largest terrestrial animals, the African elephants, is a classic example of the impact of overhunting. Largely because of the trade in ivory, elephant populations have been declining in most of Africa for the last 50 years. An international ban on the sale of new ivory resulted in increased poaching (illegal hunting), so the ban had little effect in much of central and eastern Africa. From 2006 to 2015, the number of elephants dropped by 110,000, a 22% decline (from 525,000 to 415,000). Only in South Africa, where once-decimated herds have been well protected for nearly a century, have elephant populations been stable or increasing (see Figure 53.8). If such protections are not extended to other regions, elephants could become extinct in the wild across most of Africa.

Conservation biologists are increasingly using the tools of molecular genetics to track the origins of tissues harvested from endangered species. For example, researchers have used DNA isolated from samples of elephant dung to construct a DNA reference map for the African elephant (*Loxodonta africana*). By comparing this reference map with DNA isolated from ivory harvested legally or by poachers, they can determine to within a few hundred kilometers where the elephants were killed **(Figure 56.8)**. Such work in Zambia suggested that poaching rates were 30 times higher than previously estimated, a finding that has stimulated improved anti-poaching efforts by the Zambian government. Similarly, biologists using phylogenetic analyses of mitochondrial DNA (mtDNA) showed that some whale meat sold in Japanese fish markets came from illegally harvested species, including fin and humpback whales, which are endangered (see Figure 26.6).

▼ Figure 56.8 Ecological forensics and elephant poaching. These severed tusks were part of an illegal shipment of ivory intercepted on its way from Africa to Singapore in 2002. DNA-based evidence showed that the thousands of elephants killed for the tusks came from a relatively narrow east-west band centered in Zambia rather than from across Africa.

MAKE CONNECTIONS *Figure 26.6 describes a similar example in which conservation biologists used DNA analyses to compare harvested samples of whale meat with a reference DNA database. How are these examples similar, and how are they different? What limitations might there be to using such forensic methods in other suspected cases of poaching?*

▼ Figure 56.9 Overharvesting. Atlantic bluefin tuna are auctioned in a Japanese fish market.

Many commercially important fish populations, once thought to be inexhaustible, have been decimated by overfishing. Demands from an increasing human population for protein-rich food, coupled with new harvesting technologies, such as long-line fishing and modern trawlers, have reduced these fish populations to levels that cannot sustain further exploitation. Until the past few decades, the Atlantic bluefin tuna was considered a sport fish of little commercial value—just a few cents per pound for use in cat food. In the 1980s, however, wholesalers began flying fresh, iced bluefin to Japan for sushi and sashimi. In that market, the fish can now bring over $500 per pound **(Figure 56.9)**. With increased harvesting spurred by such high prices, it took just ten years to reduce the western Atlantic bluefin population to less than 20% of its 1980 size.

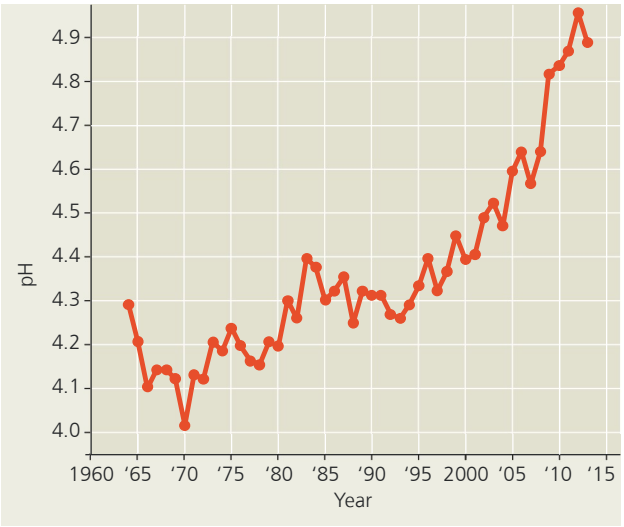
Global Change

The fourth threat to biodiversity, global change, alters the fabric of Earth's ecosystems at regional to global scales. Global change includes alterations in climate, atmospheric chemistry, and broad ecological systems that reduce the capacity of Earth to sustain life.

One of the first types of global change to cause concern was *acid precipitation*, which is rain, snow, or fog with a pH less than 5.2. The burning of wood and fossil fuels releases oxides of sulfur and nitrogen that react with water in air, forming sulfuric and nitric acids. The acids eventually fall to Earth's surface, where they cause chemical reactions that decrease nutrient supplies and increase concentrations of toxic metals. These changes to the soil and water harm some terrestrial and aquatic organisms.

In the 1960s, ecologists determined that lake-dwelling organisms in eastern Canada were dying because of acid precipitation caused by air pollution from factories in the Midwestern United States. Newly hatched lake trout, for instance, die when the pH drops below 5.4. Similarly, lakes and streams in southern Norway and Sweden were losing fish

▼ Figure 56.10 Changes in the pH of precipitation at the Hubbard Brook Experimental Forest, New Hampshire.



MAKE CONNECTIONS *Describe the relationship between pH and acidity. (See Concept 3.3.) Overall, is the precipitation in this forest becoming more acidic or less acidic?*

because of pollution generated in Great Britain and central Europe. By 1980, the pH of precipitation in large areas of North America and Europe averaged 4.0–4.5 and sometimes dropped as low as 3.0. (To review pH, see Concept 3.3.)

Environmental regulations and new technologies have enabled many countries to reduce sulfur dioxide emissions in recent decades. In the United States, sulfur dioxide emissions decreased more than 75% between 1990 and 2013, gradually reducing the acidity of precipitation **(Figure 56.10)**. However, ecologists estimate that it will take decades for aquatic ecosystems to recover. Meanwhile, emissions of nitrogen oxides are increasing in the United States, and emissions of sulfur dioxide and acid precipitation continue to damage forests in central and eastern Europe.

We'll explore the importance of global change for Earth's biodiversity in more detail in Concept 56.4, where we examine such factors as climate change and ozone depletion.

Can Extinct Species Be Resurrected?

To the best of our knowledge, extinction has always been forever. Some scientists are nevertheless trying to use cloning techniques (see Concept 20.3) to resurrect species that have become extinct. For example, researchers used this approach in an attempt to reverse the extinction of the Pyrenean ibex, *Capra pyrenaica pyrenaic*a. In 1999, researchers removed a skin sample from the last living individual, a female, and froze it. When that individual died a year later, scientists used the frozen cells to try to produce more ibex. Eventually, one ibex was born in 2009. Sadly, it lived for only 7 minutes before succumbing to lung defects similar to those observed in other cloned animals.

More recently, researchers completed an early step toward the possible use of cloning to prevent the extinction of the northern white rhinoceros (*Ceratotherium simum cottoni*). The last *C. simum cottoni* male died in 2018—dooming the northern white rhinoceros to eventual extinction. That same year, researchers successfully created hybrid embryos using sperm from northern white rhinoceroses and eggs from closely related southern white rhinoceroses, *C. simum simum* (the few living females from the northern subspecies all had severe reproductive issues).

Many steps remain before the northern white rhinoceros could be considered resurrected from extinction. Moreover, even if scientists eventually can resurrect one or a few species, that approach will not solve the extinction crisis we face today. To do that, we must take steps to clean up the environment and protect natural habitat for the thousands of species currently threatened by extinction.

CONCEPT CHECK 56.1

1. Explain why it is too narrow to define the biodiversity crisis as simply a loss of species.
2. Identify the four main threats to biodiversity and explain how each damages diversity.
3. **WHAT IF?** Imagine two populations of a fish species, one in the Mediterranean Sea and one in the Caribbean Sea. Now imagine two scenarios: (1) The populations breed separately, and (2) adults of both populations migrate yearly to the North Atlantic to interbreed. Which scenario would result in a greater loss of genetic diversity if the Mediterranean population were harvested to extinction? Explain your answer.

For suggested answers, see Appendix A.

CONCEPT 56.2

Population conservation focuses on population size, genetic diversity, and critical habitat

Biologists who work on conservation at the population and species levels use two main approaches. One approach focuses on populations that are small and hence often vulnerable, while the other emphasizes critical habitat.

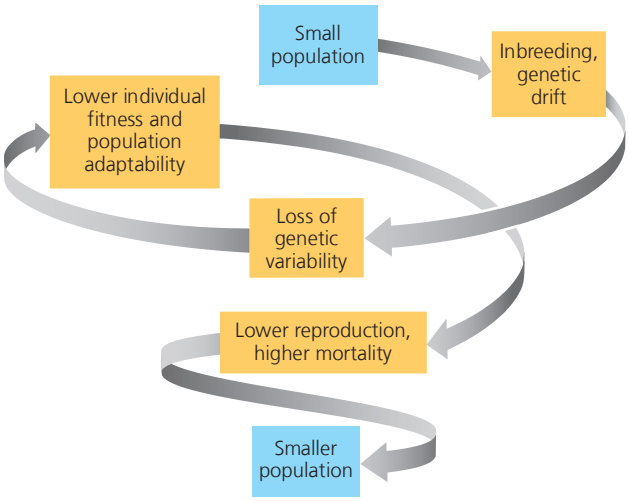
Extinction Risks in Small Populations

Small populations are particularly vulnerable to overharvesting, habitat loss, and the other threats to biodiversity that you read about in Concept 56.1. After such factors have reduced a population's size to a small number of individuals, the small size itself can push the population to extinction.

The Extinction Vortex: Evolutionary Implications of Small Population Size

EVOLUTION A small population is vulnerable to inbreeding and genetic drift, which can draw the population down an **extinction vortex** toward smaller and smaller population

▼ **Figure 56.11** **Processes driving an extinction vortex.**



size until no individuals survive **(Figure 56.11)**. A key factor driving the extinction vortex is the loss of genetic variation that can enable evolutionary responses to environmental change, such as the appearance of new strains of pathogens. Both inbreeding and genetic drift can cause a loss of genetic variation (see Concept 23.3), and their effects become more harmful as a population shrinks. Inbreeding often reduces fitness because offspring are more likely to be homozygous for harmful recessive traits.

Not all small populations are doomed by low genetic diversity, and low genetic variability does not automatically lead to permanently small populations. For instance, overhunting of northern elephant seals in the 1890s reduced the species to only 20 individuals—clearly a bottleneck with reduced genetic variation. Since that time, however, the northern elephant seal populations have rebounded to about 150,000 individuals today, though their genetic variation remains relatively low.

Case Study: *The Greater Prairie Chicken and the Extinction Vortex*

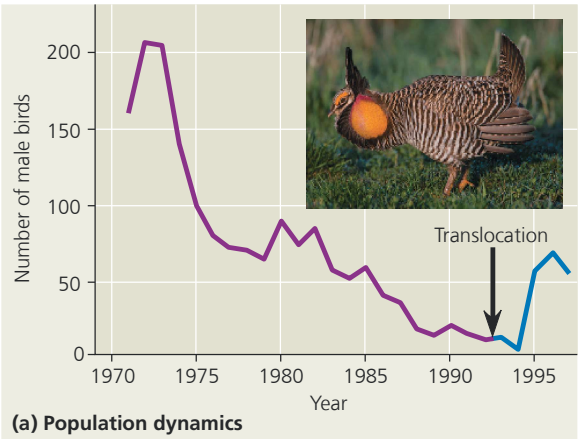
When Europeans arrived in North America, the greater prairie chicken (*Tympanuchus cupido*) was common from New England to Virginia and across the western prairies of the continent. Land cultivation for agriculture fragmented the populations of this species, and its abundance decreased rapidly (see Figure 23.11). Illinois had millions of greater prairie chickens in the 19th century but fewer than 50 by 1993. Researchers found that the decline in the Illinois population was associated with reduced genetic variation and a decrease in fertility. As a test of the extinction vortex hypothesis, scientists increased genetic variation by importing 271 birds from larger populations elsewhere **(Figure 56.12)**. The Illinois population rebounded, indicating that it had been on its way to extinction until rescued by the transfusion of genetic variation.

▼ **Figure 56.12** **Inquiry**

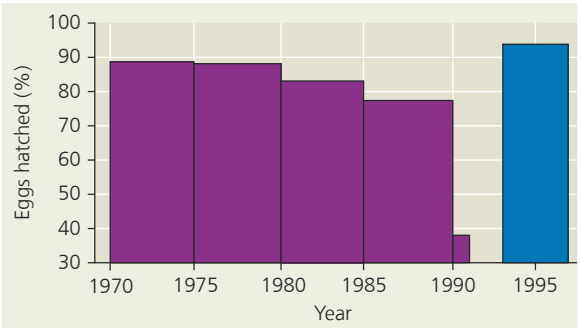
What caused the drastic decline of the Illinois greater prairie chicken population?

Experiment Researchers had observed that the population collapse of the greater prairie chicken was mirrored in a reduction in fertility, as measured by the hatching rate of eggs. Comparison of DNA samples from the Jasper County, Illinois, population with DNA from feathers in museum specimens showed that genetic variation had declined in the study population (see Figure 23.11). In 1992, researchers began translocating prairie chickens from neighboring states in an attempt to increase genetic variation.

Results After translocation (black arrow), the viability of eggs rapidly increased, and the population rebounded.



(a) Population dynamics



(b) Hatching rate. Bar height represents the average rate for the years spanned by the bar.

Conclusion Reduced genetic variation had started the Jasper County population of prairie chickens down the extinction vortex.

Data from R. L. Westemeier et al., Tracking the long-term decline and recovery of an isolated population, *Science* 282:1695–1698 (1998). © 1998 by AAAS. Reprinted with permission.

INQUIRY IN ACTION Read and analyze the original paper in *Inquiry in Action: Interpreting Scientific Papers.*

WHAT IF? *Given the success of using transplanted birds as a tool for increasing the percentage of hatched eggs in Illinois, would you support transplanting additional birds to Illinois? Why or why not?*

Minimum Viable Population Size

How small does a population have to be before it starts down an extinction vortex? The answer depends on the type of organism and other factors. Large predators that feed high on the food chain usually require extensive individual ranges, resulting in low population densities. Such species may be rare yet of little concern to conservation biologists. All populations, however, require some minimum size to remain viable.

The minimal population size at which a species is able to sustain its numbers is known as the **minimum viable population (MVP)**. MVP is usually estimated for a given species using computer models that integrate many factors. The calculation may include, for instance, an estimate of how many individuals in a small population are likely to be killed by a natural catastrophe such as a storm. Once in the extinction vortex, two or three consecutive years of bad weather could finish off a population that is already below its MVP.

Effective Population Size

Genetic variation can be of considerable importance in small populations. The *total* size of a population may be misleading because only certain members of the population breed successfully and pass their alleles on to offspring. Therefore, a meaningful estimate of MVP requires the researcher to determine the **effective population size**, which is based on the breeding potential of the population.

The following formula illustrates one way to estimate the effective population size, abbreviated N_e:

$$N_e = \frac{4N_f N_m}{N_f + N_m}$$

where N_f and N_m are, respectively, the number of females and the number of males that successfully breed. If we apply this formula to an idealized population whose total size is 1,000 individuals, N_e will also be 1,000 if every individual breeds and the sex ratio is 500 females to 500 males. In this case, $N_e = (4 \times 500 \times 500)/(500 + 500) = 1{,}000$. Any deviation from these conditions (not all individuals breed or there is not a 1:1 sex ratio) reduces N_e. For instance, if the total population size is 1,000 but only 400 females and 400 males breed, then $N_e = (4 \times 400 \times 400)/(400 + 400) = 800$, or 80% of the total population size. Numerous factors can influence N_e. As a result, alternative formulas for estimating N_e have been developed to account for factors such as age at maturation, genetic relatedness among population members, the effects of gene flow, and population fluctuations.

In actual study populations, N_e is always some fraction of the total population. Thus, simply determining the total number of individuals in a small population does not necessarily provide a good measure of whether the population is large enough to avoid extinction. Whenever possible, conservation programs attempt to sustain total population sizes that include at least the minimum viable number of *reproductively active* individuals. The conservation goal of sustaining effective population size (N_e) above MVP stems from the concern that populations retain enough genetic diversity to adapt as their environment changes.

The MVP of a population is often used in population viability analysis. The objective of this analysis is to predict a population's chances for survival, usually expressed as a specific probability of survival, such as a 95% chance, over a particular time interval, perhaps 100 years. Such modeling approaches allow conservation biologists to explore the potential consequences of alternative management plans.

Case Study: *Analysis of Grizzly Bear Populations*

One of the first population viability analyses was conducted in 1978 by Mark Shaffer as part of a long-term study of grizzly bears in Yellowstone National Park and its surrounding areas **(Figure 56.13)**. A threatened species in the United States, the grizzly bear (*Ursus arctos horribilis*) is currently found in only 4 of the 48 contiguous states. Its populations in those states have been drastically reduced and fragmented. In 1800, an estimated 100,000 grizzlies ranged over about 500 million hectares of habitat, while today only 1,000 individuals in six relatively isolated populations range over less than 5 million hectares.

Shaffer attempted to determine viable sizes for the Yellowstone grizzly population. Using life history data obtained for individual Yellowstone bears over a 12-year period, he simulated the effects of environmental factors on survival and reproduction. His models predicted that, given a suitable habitat, a Yellowstone grizzly bear population of 70–90 individuals would have about a 95% chance of surviving for 100 years. A slightly larger population of only 100 bears would have a 95% chance of surviving for twice as long, about 200 years.

How does the actual size of the Yellowstone grizzly population compare with Shaffer's predicted MVP? A current estimate puts the total grizzly bear population in the greater Yellowstone

▼ Figure 56.13 Monitoring a grizzly bear population. A scientist measures a tranquilized bear that has been fitted with a radio collar so that the bear's movements can be compared with those of other grizzlies in Yellowstone National Park.

ecosystem at about 700 individuals. The relationship of this estimate to the effective population size (N_e) depends on several factors. Usually, only a few dominant males breed, and it may be difficult for them to locate females, since individuals inhabit such large areas. Moreover, females may reproduce only when there is abundant food. As a result, N_e is only about 25% of the total population size, or about 175 bears.

Because small populations tend to lose genetic variation over time, researchers have used proteins, mitochondrial DNA, and short tandem repeats (see Concept 21.4) to assess genetic variability in the Yellowstone grizzly bear population. All results to date indicate that the Yellowstone population has less genetic variability than other grizzly bear populations in North America.

How might conservation biologists increase the effective size and genetic variation of the Yellowstone grizzly bear population? Migration between isolated populations of grizzlies could increase both effective and total population sizes. Computer models predict that introducing only two unrelated bears each decade into a population of 100 individuals would reduce the loss of genetic variation by about half. For the grizzly bear, and probably for many other species with small populations, finding ways to promote dispersal among populations may be one of the most urgent conservation needs.

This case study and that of the greater prairie chicken show how an understanding of the ecological and evolutionary consequences of small populations can have practical applications in conservation. Next, we look at an alternative approach to understanding the biology of extinction.

Critical Habitat

A loss of critical habitat can cause threatened and endangered populations to show a downward trend, even if the population is far above its minimum viable population size. A focus on the importance of critical habitat emphasizes the environmental factors that can cause a population decline in the first place. If, for instance, an area is deforested, then species that depend on trees will decline in abundance, whether or not they retain genetic variation. The following case study illustrates how a critical-habitat approach has been applied to the conservation of an endangered species.

Case Study: *Decline of the Red-Cockaded Woodpecker*

The red-cockaded woodpecker (*Picoides borealis*) is found only in the southeastern United States. It requires mature pine forests, preferably ones dominated by the longleaf pine, for its habitat. A critical-habitat factor for the red-cockaded woodpecker is that the undergrowth of plants around the pine trunks must be low **(Figure 56.14a)**. Breeding birds tend to abandon nests when vegetation among the pines is thick and higher than about 4.5 m **(Figure 56.14b)**; the birds appear to need a clear flight path between their home trees and the neighboring feeding grounds. Periodic fires have historically swept through longleaf pine forests, keeping the undergrowth low.

▼ Figure 56.14 A habitat requirement of the red-cockaded woodpecker.

(a) Forests that can sustain red-cockaded woodpeckers have low undergrowth.

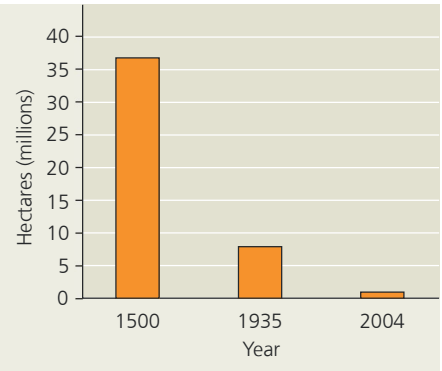
(b) Forests that cannot sustain red-cockaded woodpeckers have high, dense undergrowth that interferes with the woodpeckers' access to feeding grounds.

? *How is habitat disturbance absolutely necessary for the long-term survival of the woodpecker?*

In addition, although most woodpeckers nest in dead trees, the red-cockaded woodpecker drills its nest holes in mature, living pine trees. It also drills small holes around the entrance to its nest cavity, which causes resin from the tree to ooze down the trunk. The resin seems to repel predators, such as corn snakes, that eat bird eggs and nestlings.

One factor leading to decline of the red-cockaded woodpecker has been the destruction or fragmentation of suitable habitats by logging and agriculture **(Figure 56.15)**. By recognizing key habitat factors, protecting some longleaf

▼ Figure 56.15 Decline of longleaf pine forests. Fire suppression, logging, urban development, and other human activities have reduced longleaf pine forests to 3% of their original area; the covered area has not increased since 2004.



pine forests, and using controlled fires to reduce forest undergrowth, conservation managers have helped restore habitat that can support viable populations.

Sometimes conservation managers also help species colonize restored habitats. Because red-cockaded woodpeckers take months to excavate nesting cavities, researchers performed an experiment to see whether providing cavities for the birds would make them more likely to use a site. The researchers constructed cavities in pine trees at 20 sites. The results were dramatic. Cavities in 18 of the 20 sites were colonized by red-cockaded woodpeckers, and new breeding groups formed only in those sites. Based on this experiment, conservationists initiated a habitat maintenance program that included controlled burning and excavation of new nesting cavities, enabling this endangered species to begin to recover.

Weighing Conflicting Demands

Determining population numbers and habitat needs is only part of a strategy to save species. Scientists also need to weigh a species' needs against other conflicting demands. Conservation biology often highlights the relationship between science, technology, and society. For example, an ongoing, sometimes bitter debate in the western United States pits habitat preservation for wolf, grizzly bear, and bull trout populations against job opportunities in the grazing and resource extraction industries. Programs that restocked wolves in Yellowstone National Park remain controversial for people concerned about human safety and for many ranchers concerned with potential loss of livestock outside the park.

Large, high-profile vertebrates are not always the focal point in such conflicts, but habitat use is almost always the issue. Should work proceed on a new highway bridge that benefits the local economy but destroys the only remaining habitat of a species of freshwater mussel? If you were the owner of a coffee plantation growing varieties that thrive in bright sunlight, would you be willing to change to shade-tolerant varieties that produce less coffee per hectare but can grow beneath trees that support large numbers of songbirds? Successful conservation efforts often strive for a "win-win" outcome: to protect both endangered species *and* jobs or other aspects of a region's economy.

Another important consideration is the ecological role of a species. Because we cannot save every endangered species, we must determine which species are most important for conserving biodiversity as a whole. Identifying keystone species and finding ways to sustain their populations can be central to maintaining communities and ecosystems. In most situations, conservation biologists must also look beyond single species and consider the whole community and ecosystem as an important unit of biodiversity.

CONCEPT CHECK 56.2

1. How does the reduced genetic diversity of small populations make them more vulnerable to extinction?
2. If there were 100 greater prairie chickens in a population, and 30 females and 10 males bred, what would be the effective population size (N_e)?
3. **WHAT IF?** In 2005, at least ten grizzly bears in the greater Yellowstone ecosystem were killed through contact with people. Most of these deaths resulted from three things: collisions with automobiles, hunters (of other animals) shooting when charged by a female grizzly bear with cubs nearby, and conservation managers killing bears that attacked livestock repeatedly. If you were a conservation manager, what steps might you take to minimize such encounters in Yellowstone?

For suggested answers, see Appendix A.

CONCEPT 56.3

Landscape and regional conservation help sustain biodiversity

Although conservation efforts have historically focused on saving individual species, efforts today often seek to sustain the biodiversity of entire communities, ecosystems, and landscapes. Such a broad view requires applying not just ecological principles, but aspects of human population dynamics and economics as well.

Landscape Structure and Biodiversity

The biodiversity of a given landscape is heavily influenced by its physical features, or *structure*. Understanding landscape structure is critically important in conservation because many species use more than one kind of ecosystem, and many live on the borders between ecosystems.

Fragmentation and Edges

The boundaries, or *edges*, between ecosystems—such as between a lake and the surrounding forest or between cropland and suburban housing tracts—are defining features of

▼ **Figure 56.16** **Natural edges between ecosystems in Siberia.**

VISUAL SKILLS *What edges between ecosystems do you observe in this photo?*

landscapes **(Figure 56.16)**. An edge has its own set of physical conditions, which differ from those on either side of it. The soil surface of an edge between a forest patch and a burned area receives more sunlight and is usually hotter and drier than the forest interior, but it is cooler and wetter than the soil surface in the burned area.

Some organisms thrive in edge communities because they gain resources from both adjacent areas. The ruffed grouse (*Bonasa umbellus*) is a bird that needs forest habitat for nesting, winter food, and shelter, but it also needs forest openings with dense shrubs and herbs for summer food.

Ecosystems in which edges arise from human alterations often have reduced biodiversity and a preponderance of edge-adapted species. For example, white-tailed deer (*Odocoileus virginianus*) thrive in edge habitats, where they can browse on woody shrubs; deer populations often expand when forests are logged and more edges are generated. The brown-headed cowbird (*Molothrus ater*) is an edge-adapted species that lays its eggs in the nests of other birds, often migratory songbirds. Cowbirds need forests, where they can parasitize the nests of other birds, and open fields, where they forage on seeds and insects. Consequently, their populations are growing where forests are being cut and fragmented, creating more edge habitat and open land. Increasing cowbird parasitism and habitat loss are correlated with declining populations of several of the cowbird's host species.

The influence of fragmentation on the structure of communities has been explored since 1979 in the long-term Biological Dynamics of Forest Fragments Project. Located in the heart of the Amazon River basin, the study area consists of isolated fragments of tropical rain forest separated from surrounding continuous forest by distances of 80–1,000 m **(Figure 56.17)**. Numerous researchers working on this project have clearly documented the effects of this fragmentation on organisms ranging from bryophytes to beetles to birds. They have consistently found that species adapted to forest interiors show the greatest declines when patches are the smallest, suggesting that landscapes dominated by small fragments will support fewer species.

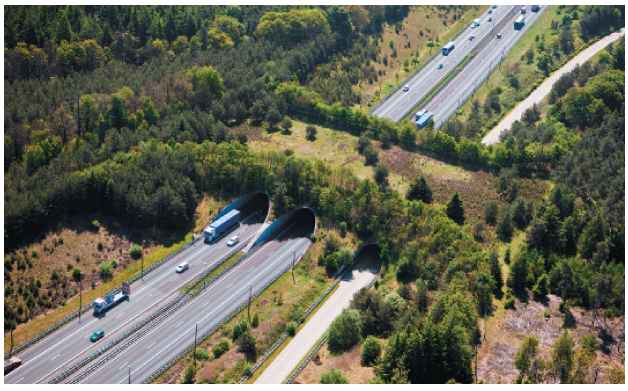
▼ **Figure 56.17** **Amazon rain forest fragments created as part of the Biological Dynamics of Forest Fragments Project.**

Corridors That Connect Habitat Fragments

In fragmented habitats, the presence of a **movement corridor**, a narrow strip or series of small clumps of habitat connecting otherwise isolated patches, can be important for conserving biodiversity. Riparian habitats often serve as corridors, and in some nations, government policy prohibits altering these habitats. In areas of heavy human use, artificial corridors are sometimes constructed. Bridges or tunnels, for instance, can reduce the number of animals killed trying to cross highways **(Figure 56.18)**.

Movement corridors can also promote dispersal and reduce inbreeding in declining populations. Corridors have been shown to increase the exchange of individuals among populations of many organisms, including butterflies, voles, and aquatic plants. Corridors are especially important to species

▼ **Figure 56.18** **An artificial corridor.** This highway overpass in the Netherlands helps animals cross a human-created barrier.



that migrate between different habitats seasonally. But corridors can also be harmful—for example, by allowing the spread of disease. In a 2003 study, a scientist at the University of Zaragoza, Spain, showed that habitat corridors facilitate the movement of disease-carrying ticks among forest patches in northern Spain. All the effects of corridors are not yet understood, and their impact is an area of active research.

Mastering Biology **HHMI Video: Seed Dispersal and Forest Fragmentation**

Establishing Protected Areas

Currently, governments have set aside about 7% of the world's land in various forms of reserves. Choosing where to place nature reserves and how to design them poses many challenges. Should the reserve be managed to minimize the risks of fire and predation to a threatened species? Or should the reserve be left as natural as possible, with such processes as fires ignited by lightning allowed to play out on their own? This is just one of the debates that arise among people who share an interest in the health of national parks and other protected areas.

Preserving Biodiversity Hot Spots

In deciding which areas are of highest conservation priority, biologists often focus on hot spots of biodiversity. A **biodiversity hot spot** is a relatively small area with numerous endemic species (species found nowhere else in the world) and a large number of endangered and threatened species **(Figure 56.19)**. Nearly 30% of all bird species can be found in hot spots that make up only about 2% of Earth's land area. Together, the "hottest" of the terrestrial biodiversity hot spots total less than 1.5% of Earth's land but are home to more than a third of all species of plants, amphibians, reptiles (including birds), and mammals. Aquatic ecosystems also have hot spots, such as coral reefs and certain river systems.

Biodiversity hot spots are good choices for nature reserves, but identifying them is not always simple. One problem is that a hot spot for one taxonomic group, such as butterflies, may not be a hot spot for some other taxonomic group, such as birds. Designating an area as a biodiversity hot spot is often biased toward saving vertebrates and plants, with less attention paid to invertebrates and microorganisms. Some biologists are also concerned that the hot-spot strategy places too much emphasis on such a small fraction of Earth's surface.

Climate change makes the task of preserving hot spots even more challenging because the conditions that favor a particular community may not occur there in the future. The biodiversity hot spot in the southwest corner of Australia (see Figure 56.19) holds thousands of species of endemic (unique to that area) plants and many endemic vertebrates. Researchers recently concluded that between 5% and 25% of the plant species they examined may become extinct by 2080 because the plants will be unable to tolerate the increased dryness predicted for this region.

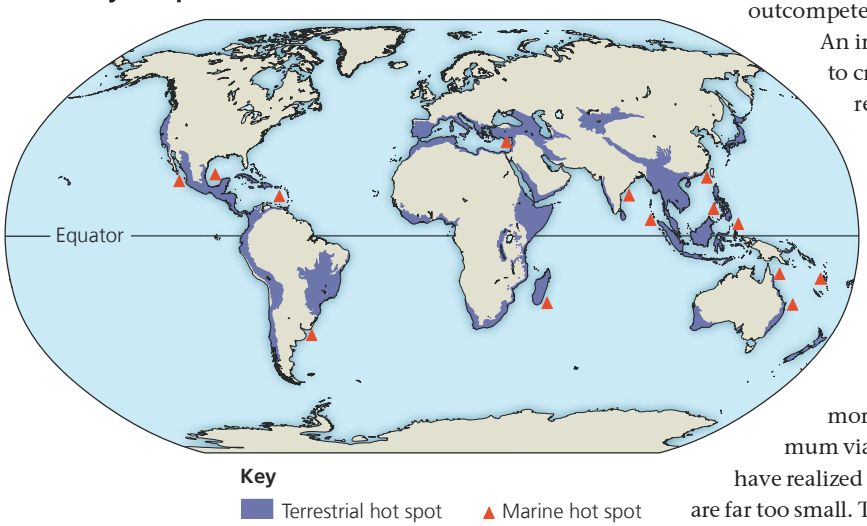
Philosophy of Nature Reserves

Nature reserves are protected "islands" of biodiversity in a sea of habitat altered or degraded by human activity. An earlier policy—that protected areas should be set aside to remain unchanged forever—was based on the concept that ecosystems are balanced, self-regulating units. However, disturbance is common in all ecosystems (see Concept 54.3). Management policies that ignore disturbances or attempt to prevent them have generally failed. For instance, setting aside an area of a fire-dependent community, such as a portion of a tallgrass prairie, chaparral, or dry pine forest, with the intention of saving it is unrealistic if periodic burning is excluded. Without the dominant disturbance, the fire-adapted species are usually outcompeted and biodiversity is reduced.

An important conservation question is whether to create numerous small reserves or fewer large reserves. Small, unconnected reserves may slow the spread of disease between populations. One argument for large reserves is that large, far-ranging animals with low-density populations, such as the grizzly bear, require extensive habitats. Large reserves also have proportionately smaller perimeters than small reserves and are therefore less affected by edges.

As conservation biologists have learned more about the requirements for achieving minimum viable populations for endangered species, they have realized that most national parks and other reserves are far too small. The area needed for the long-term survival of

▼ Figure 56.19 **Earth's terrestrial (■) and marine (▲) biodiversity hot spots.**



the Yellowstone grizzly bear population, for instance, is more than 11 times the area of Yellowstone National Park. Areas of private and public land surrounding reserves will likely have to contribute to biodiversity conservation.

Zoned Reserves

Several nations have adopted a zoned reserve approach to landscape management. A **zoned reserve** is an extensive region that includes areas relatively undisturbed by humans surrounded by areas that have been changed by human activity and are used for economic gain. The key challenge of the zoned reserve approach is to develop a social and economic climate in the surrounding lands that is compatible with the long-term viability of the protected core. These surrounding areas continue to support human activities, but regulations prevent the types of extensive alterations likely to harm the protected area. As a result, the surrounding habitats serve as buffer zones against further intrusion into the undisturbed area.

The Central American nation of Costa Rica has become a world leader in establishing zoned reserves. An agreement initiated in 1987 reduced Costa Rica's international debt in return for land preservation there. The country is now divided into 11 Conservation Areas, which include national parks and other protected areas, both on land and in the ocean **(Figure 56.20)**. Costa Rica is making progress toward managing its zoned reserves, and the buffer zones provide a steady, lasting supply of forest products, water, and hydroelectric power while also supporting sustainable agriculture and tourism, both of which employ local people.

Costa Rica relies on its zoned reserve system to maintain at least 80% of its native species, but the system is not without problems. A 2003 analysis of land cover change between 1960 and 1997 showed negligible deforestation within Costa Rica's national parks and a gain in forest cover in the 1-km buffer around the parks. However, significant losses in forest cover were discovered in the 10-km buffer zones around all national parks, threatening to turn the parks into isolated habitat islands.

▼ Figure 56.20 Protected areas in Costa Rica. The boundaries of the 11 Conservation Areas are indicated by black outlines.

▼ Figure 56.21 A diver measuring coral in the Florida Keys National Marine Sanctuary.

Although marine ecosystems have also been heavily affected by human exploitation, reserves in the ocean are far less common than reserves on land. Many fish populations around the world have collapsed as increasingly sophisticated equipment puts nearly all potential fishing grounds within human reach. In response, scientists have proposed establishing marine reserves around the world that would be off-limits to fishing. They present strong evidence that a patchwork of marine reserves can serve as a means of both increasing fish populations within the reserves and improving fishing success in nearby areas. Their proposed system is a modern application of a centuries-old practice in the Fiji Islands in which some areas have historically remained closed to fishing—a traditional example of the zoned reserve concept.

The United States adopted such a system in creating a set of 13 national marine sanctuaries, including the Florida Keys National Marine Sanctuary, which was established in 1990 **(Figure 56.21)**. Populations of marine organisms, including fishes and lobsters, recovered quickly after harvests were banned in the 9,500-km^2 reserve. Larger and more abundant fish now produce larvae that help repopulate reefs and improve fishing outside the sanctuary. The increased marine life within the sanctuary also makes it a favorite for recreational divers, increasing the economic value of this zoned reserve.

Urban Ecology

The zoned reserves that you just read about combine habitats that are relatively undisturbed by human activity with

those that are used extensively by people for economic gain. Increasingly, ecologists are looking at species preservation even in the context of cities. The field of **urban ecology** examines organisms and their environment in urban settings.

For the first time in history, more than half of the people on Earth live in cities. By the year 2030, 5 billion people are expected to be living in urban environments. As cities expand in number and size, protected areas that were once outside city boundaries become incorporated into urban landscapes. Ecologists are now studying cities as ecological laboratories, seeking to balance species preservation and other ecological needs with the needs of people.

One critical area of research centers on urban streams, including the quality and flow of their water and the organisms living in them. Urban streams tend to rise and fall more quickly after rain than natural streams. This rapid change in water level occurs because of the concrete and other impervious surfaces in cities as well as the drainage systems that route water out of cities as quickly as possible to avoid flooding. Urban streams also tend to have higher concentrations of nutrients and contaminants and are often straightened or even channeled underground.

Near Vancouver, Canada, ecologists and volunteers have worked to restore a degraded urban stream, Guichon Creek. They stabilized its banks, removed introduced plants, and planted native trees and shrubs along the creek **(Figure 56.22)**. Their efforts returned the water flow and the communities of invertebrates and fish in the stream much closer to what they had been 50 years before the stream became degraded. A few years ago, ecologists successfully reestablished cutthroat trout in the stream. The trout are now thriving.

As cities continue to expand into the landscapes around them, understanding the ecological effects of this expansion will only increase in importance. Research on and conservation of urban habitats will continue to grow.

▼ Figure 56.22 Volunteers working to remove invasive species along the urban Guichon Creek.

CONCEPT CHECK 56.3

1. What is a biodiversity hot spot?
2. How do zoned reserves provide economic incentives for long-term conservation of protected areas?
3. **WHAT IF?** Suppose a developer proposes to clear-cut a forest that serves as a corridor between two parks. To compensate, the developer also proposes to add the same area of forest to one of the parks. As a professional ecologist, how might you argue for retaining the corridor?

For suggested answers, see Appendix A.

CONCEPT 56.4

Earth is changing rapidly as a result of human actions

As we've discussed, landscape and regional conservation help protect habitats and preserve species. However, environmental changes that result from human activities are creating new challenges. As a consequence of human-caused climate change, for example, the place where a vulnerable species is found today may not be the same place that is needed for its preservation in the future. What would happen if *many* habitats on Earth changed so quickly that the locations of preserves today were unsuitable for their species in 10, 50, or 100 years? Such a scenario is increasingly possible.

The rest of this section describes four types of environmental change that humans are bringing about: nutrient enrichment, toxin accumulation, climate change, and ozone depletion. The impacts of these and other changes are evident not just in human-dominated ecosystems, such as cities and farms, but also in the most remote ecosystems on Earth.

Nutrient Enrichment

Human activity often removes nutrients from one part of the biosphere and adds them to another. Someone eating broccoli in Washington, DC, consumes nutrients that only days before were in the soil in California; a short time later, some of these nutrients will be in the Potomac River, having passed through the person's digestive system and a local sewage treatment facility. Likewise, nutrients in farm soil may run off into streams and lakes, depleting nutrients in one area, increasing them in another, and altering chemical cycles in both.

Farming illustrates how human activities can lead to nutrient enrichment. After vegetation is cleared from an area, the existing reserve of nutrients in the soil is depleted over time because many of these nutrients are exported from the area in crop biomass. How long this takes varies greatly. When some of the early North American prairie lands were first tilled, good crops could be produced for decades because the large store of organic materials in the soil continued to decompose and provide nutrients. By contrast, some cleared land in the tropics can be farmed for only one or two years because so little of the ecosystems'

nutrient load is contained in the soil. Despite such variations, the natural store of nutrients eventually becomes exhausted.

Consider nitrogen, the main nutrient lost through agriculture (see Figure 55.14). Plowing mixes the soil and speeds up decomposition of organic matter, releasing nitrogen that is then removed when crops are harvested. Fertilizers containing nitrates and other forms of nitrogen that plants can absorb are used to replace the nitrogen that is lost. However, after crops are harvested, few plants remain to take up nitrates from the soil. As shown in Figure 55.15, without plants to absorb them, nitrates are often leached from the ecosystem.

Recent studies indicate that human activities have more than doubled Earth's supply of fixed nitrogen available to primary producers. Industrial fertilizers provide the largest additional nitrogen source. Fossil fuel combustion also releases nitrogen oxides, which enter the atmosphere and dissolve in rainwater; the nitrogen ultimately enters ecosystems as nitrate. Increased cultivation of legumes, with their nitrogen-fixing symbionts, is a third way in which humans increase the amount of fixed nitrogen in the soil.

A problem arises when the nutrient level in an ecosystem exceeds the **critical load**, the amount of added nutrient, usually nitrogen or phosphorus, that can be absorbed by plants without damaging ecosystem integrity. For example, nitrogenous minerals in the soil that exceed the critical load eventually leach into groundwater or run off into freshwater and marine ecosystems, contaminating water supplies and causing eutrophication in aquatic ecosystems (see Concept 55.2). Nitrate concentrations in groundwater are increasing in most agricultural regions, sometimes reaching levels that are unsafe for drinking.

Many rivers contaminated with nitrates and ammonium from agricultural runoff and sewage drain into the Atlantic Ocean, with the highest inputs coming from northern Europe and the central United States. The Mississippi River carries nitrogen pollution to the Gulf of Mexico, fueling a phytoplankton bloom each summer. When the phytoplankton die, their decomposition by oxygen-using organisms results in an extensive "dead zone" of low oxygen levels along the coast **(Figure 56.23)**. When this occurs, fish and other marine animals disappear from some of the most economically important waters in the United States. To reduce the size of the dead zone, farmers have begun using fertilizers more efficiently, and managers are restoring wetlands in the Mississippi watershed.

Nutrient runoff can also lead to the eutrophication of lakes. The bloom and subsequent die-off of algae and cyanobacteria and the ensuing depletion of oxygen are similar to what occurs in a marine dead zone. Such conditions threaten the survival of many organisms. For example, eutrophication of Lake Erie coupled with overfishing wiped out commercially important fishes such as blue pike, whitefish, and lake trout by the 1960s. Since then, tighter regulations on the dumping of sewage into the lake have enabled some fish populations to rebound, but many native species of fish and invertebrates have not recovered.

Mastering Biology **Animation: Water Pollution from Nitrates**

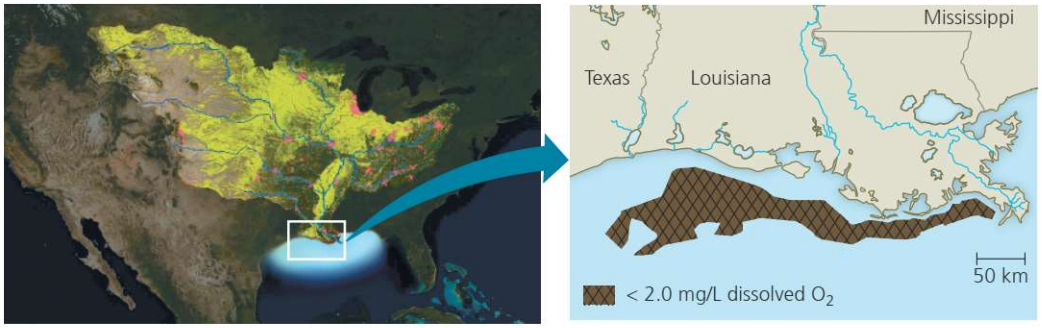
Toxins in the Environment

Humans release an immense variety of toxic chemicals, including thousands of synthetic compounds previously unknown in nature, with little regard for the ecological consequences. Organisms acquire toxic substances from the environment along with nutrients and water. Some of the poisons are metabolized or excreted, but others accumulate in specific tissues, often fat. One of the reasons accumulated toxins are particularly harmful is that they become more concentrated in successive trophic levels of a food web. This phenomenon, called **biological magnification**, occurs because the biomass at any given trophic level is produced from a much larger biomass ingested from the level below (see Concept 55.3). Thus, top-level carnivores tend to be most severely affected by toxic compounds in the environment. We'll discuss three types of environmental toxins: industrial compounds and pesticides, pharmaceuticals, and plastic waste.

Industrial Compounds and Pesticides

Chlorinated hydrocarbons are a class of industrially synthesized compounds that have demonstrated biological magnification. Chlorinated hydrocarbons include the

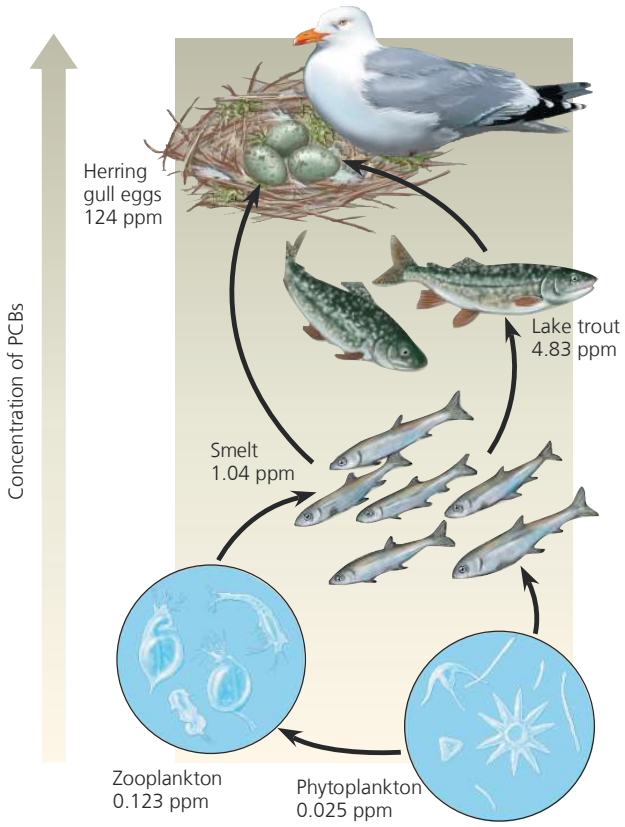
▶ Figure 56.23 A dead zone arising from nitrogen pollution in the Mississippi basin. Each year, a large dead zone (a region where dissolved O_2 levels are less than 2.0 mg/L) forms in the Gulf of Mexico.



(a) Nutrients drain from agricultural land (green) and cities (red) through the vast Mississippi watershed to the Gulf of Mexico.

(b) The 2017 dead zone, represented here, was the largest yet measured. It occupied 22,730 km^2 (8,776 mi^2), an area slightly larger than New Jersey.

▼ Figure 56.24 Biological magnification of PCBs in a Great Lakes food web. (ppm = parts per million)

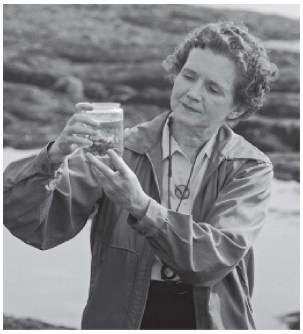


? *Calculate how much the PCB concentration increased at each step in the food web.*

industrial chemicals called PCBs (polychlorinated biphenyls) and many pesticides, such as DDT. Current research implicates many of these compounds in endocrine system disruption in numerous animal species, including humans. Biological magnification of PCBs has been found in the food web of the Great Lakes, where the concentration of PCBs in herring gull eggs, at the top of the food web, is nearly 5,000 times that in phytoplankton, at the base **(Figure 56.24)**.

An infamous case of biological magnification that harmed top-level carnivores involved DDT, a chemical used to control insects such as mosquitoes and agricultural pests. In the decade after World War II, the use of DDT grew rapidly. By the 1950s, scientists were learning that DDT persists in the environment and is transported by water to areas far from where it is applied. One of the first signs that DDT was a serious environmental problem was a decline in the populations of pelicans, ospreys, and eagles, birds that feed at the top of food webs. The accumulation of DDT (and DDE, a product of its breakdown) in the tissues of these birds interfered with the deposition of calcium in their eggshells. When the birds tried to incubate their eggs, the weight of the parents broke the shells of affected eggs, resulting in catastrophic declines

► Figure 56.25 Rachel Carson. Biologist and author Rachel Carson helped promote a new environmental ethic through her writing and her testimony before the U.S. Congress. Her efforts led to a ban on DDT use in the United States and stronger controls on the use of other chemicals.



in the birds' reproduction rates. Rachel Carson's book *Silent Spring* helped bring the problem to public attention in the 1960s **(Figure 56.25)**, and DDT was banned in the United States in 1971. A dramatic recovery in populations of the affected bird species followed.

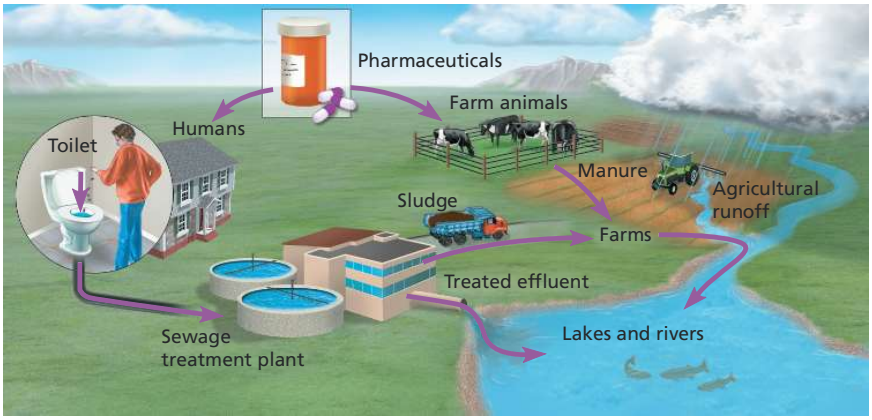
In much of the tropics, DDT is still used to control the mosquitoes that spread malaria and other diseases. Societies there face a trade-off between saving human lives and protecting other species. Moreover, resistance to DDT has evolved in many insect species, further complicating its use (for a specific example, see Chapter Review question 7 in Chapter 22). Overall, the best approach seems to be to apply DDT sparingly and to couple its use with mosquito netting and other low-technology solutions.

Pharmaceuticals

Pharmaceuticals make up another group of toxins in the environment, one that is a growing concern among ecologists. The use of over-the-counter and prescription drugs has risen in recent years, particularly in industrialized nations. People who consume such products excrete residual chemicals in their waste and may also dispose of unused drugs improperly, such as in their toilets or sinks. Drugs that are not broken down in sewage treatment plants may then enter rivers and lakes with the material discharged from these plants. Growth-promoting drugs given to farm animals can also enter rivers and lakes with agricultural runoff. As a consequence, many pharmaceuticals are spreading in low concentrations across the world's freshwater ecosystems **(Figure 56.26)**.

Among the pharmaceuticals that ecologists are studying are the sex steroids, including forms of estrogen used for birth control. Some fish species are so sensitive to certain estrogens that concentrations of a few parts per trillion in their water can alter sexual differentiation and shift the female-to-male sex ratio toward females. Researchers in Ontario, Canada, conducted a seven-year experiment in which they applied the synthetic estrogen used in contraceptives to a lake in very low concentrations (5–6 ng/L). They found that chronic exposure of the fathead minnow (*Pimephales promelas*) to the estrogen led to feminization of males and a near extinction of the population of this species from the lake.

▼ **Figure 56.26** **Sources and movements of pharmaceuticals in the environment.**



Plastic Waste

Plastics are synthetic compounds that typically are made from petroleum products, such as oil or natural gas. An estimated 4.8 to 12.7 million metric tons (11 to 28 billion pounds) of plastic waste enters the ocean each year, making plastics the most common type of marine debris.

Over time, larger pieces of plastic waste are broken into successively smaller pieces by the actions of waves and by UV light, which breaks the bonds that hold plastic compounds together. As a result, the oceans are contaminated by large pieces of plastic and by **microplastics**, plastic particles less than 5 mm in size. Data suggest that plastic waste can persist in the environment for hundreds to thousands of years.

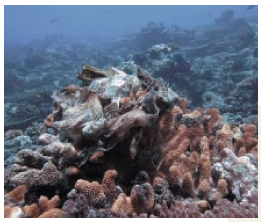
The enormous quantities of plastic waste in the oceans have wide-ranging effects. For example, birds, marine mammals, turtles, and fish can die after mistaking plastic debris for food **(Figure 56.27)**. A 2018 study documented another effect: Coral reefs contaminated by plastic waste had much higher rates of disease than did reefs without plastic waste **(Figure 56.28)**. What causes this dramatic rise in disease levels? Bacterial pathogens can "hitchhike" on plastic waste—so pieces of plastic waste may introduce new pathogens to a reef or increase the abundance of pathogens already present. In addition, plastic waste that becomes entangled on a reef can damage corals or deprive them of light and oxygen, making them more susceptible to pathogens.

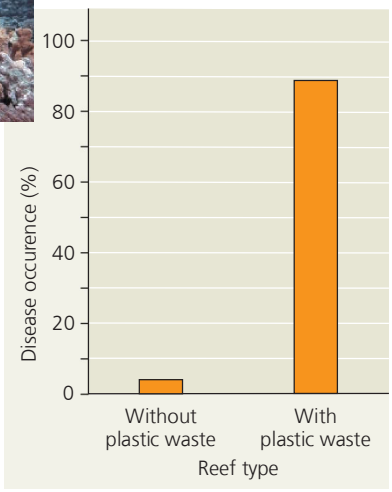
As for microplastics, these small particles now contaminate all of the world's oceans. Microplastics have been found in organisms from every type of marine food chain, and harmful effects of microplastics have been documented in some fish and invertebrates. Microplastics also may pose a threat to human health. Recent studies have found that 25% of supermarket fish in Indonesia and the United States contained microplastics in their guts. Shellfish sold in supermarkets also contained microplastics. While less is known about the extent to which microplastics contaminate terrestrial and freshwater ecosystems, current evidence indicates they are widespread there as well—they have been found in lakes, streams, soils, invertebrates, birds, and freshwater fish. Some evidence indicates that microplastics can be transported in the atmosphere, enabling them to be deposited in remote locations.

Research into the extent and effects of plastic waste is still in the early stages. Even so, it is clear that plastic waste is a major and growing environmental problem—one that will require new and innovative ways to reduce both the amount of plastic waste we generate and how much of that waste is mismanaged, thereby contaminating natural ecosystems.

Mastering Biology **Interview with Chelsea Rochman: Studying the ecological effects of plastic waste (see the interview before Chapter 52)**

▶ **Figure 56.27**
A victim of plastic waste. Found in a wildlife refuge in Hawaii, this Laysan albatross (*Phoebastria immutabilis*) chick died after consuming large amounts of plastic debris.





▶ **Figure 56.28**
Plastic waste and disease in corals. A 2018 study found that the percentage of diseased corals increases 20-fold in reefs contaminated by plastic waste. The photo shows plastic waste on coral at one of the study sites.

Greenhouse Gases and Climate Change

Human activities release a variety of gaseous waste products. People once thought that the vast atmosphere could absorb these materials indefinitely, but we now know that our actions can lead to **climate change**, a directional change to the global climate that lasts for three decades or more (as opposed to short-term changes in the weather).

Rising Atmospheric CO_2 Levels

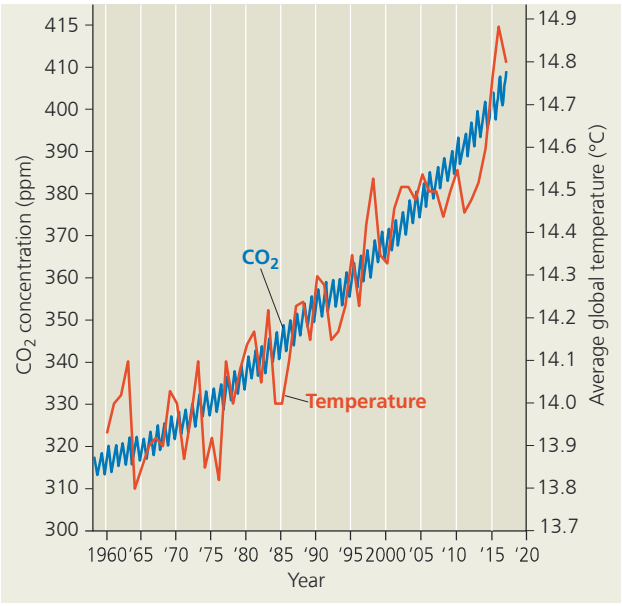
To see how human actions can cause climate change, consider atmospheric CO_2 levels. Over the past 170 years, the concentration of CO_2 in the atmosphere has been increasing as a result of the burning of fossil fuels and deforestation. Scientists estimate that the average CO_2 concentration in the atmosphere before 1850 was about 274 ppm. In 1958, a monitoring station began taking accurate measurements on Hawaii's Mauna Loa peak, a location far from cities and high enough for the atmosphere to be well mixed. At that time, the average CO_2 concentration was 315 ppm **(Figure 56.29)**. By 2018, the CO_2 level exceeded 410 ppm, an increase of more than 50% since the mid-19th century. In the **Scientific Skills Exercise**, you can graph and interpret changes in CO_2 concentration that occur over three ten-year periods of time.

The increase in the concentration of atmospheric CO_2 over the last 170 years concerns scientists because of its link to increased global temperature. Much of the solar radiation that strikes the planet is emitted toward space as infrared radiation (known informally as "heat radiation"). Although CO_2, methane, water vapor, and other greenhouse gases in the atmosphere are transparent to visible light, they intercept and absorb much of the infrared radiation that Earth emits, radiating most of it back toward Earth. This process, called the **greenhouse effect**, retains some of the solar heat **(Figure 56.30)**. If it were not for this greenhouse effect, the average air temperature at Earth's surface would be a frigid −18°C (−0.4°F), and most life as we know it could not exist.

As the concentrations of CO_2 and other greenhouse gases rise, more solar heat is retained, thereby increasing the temperature of our planet. So far, Earth has warmed by an average of 0.9°C (1.6°F) since 1900. Much of this warming has occurred recently: 18 of the 19 warmest years on record have occurred since 2001, with 2016 being the warmest year ever (see Figure 56.29).

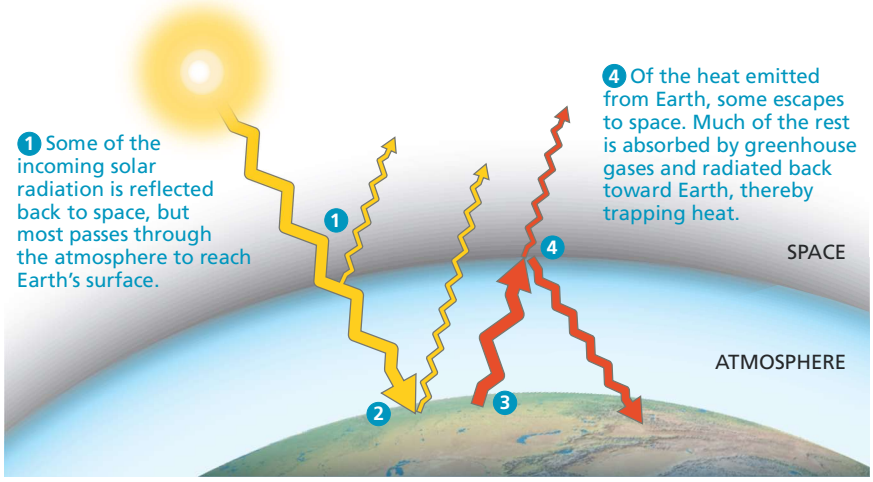
As our planet warms, the climate is changing in other ways as well: Wind and precipitation patterns are shifting,

▼ Figure 56.29 Increase in atmospheric carbon dioxide concentration at Mauna Loa, Hawaii, and average global temperatures. Aside from normal seasonal fluctuations, the CO_2 concentration (blue curve) increased steadily since 1958. Though average global temperatures (red curve) fluctuated a great deal over time, there is a clear warming trend.



Mastering Biology **MP3 Tutor: Global Warming**

▼ Figure 56.30 The greenhouse effect. Carbon dioxide and other greenhouse gases in the atmosphere absorb heat emitted from Earth's surface and then radiate much of that heat back to Earth.



2 Of the radiation that reaches Earth's surface, some is reflected back to space. Much of the rest is absorbed, warming Earth's surface.

3 Some of the energy that warms the surface is then emitted from Earth as heat.

Mastering Biology **HHMI Animation: Greenhouse Effect**
Animation: The Global Carbon Cycle and the Greenhouse Effect

hhmi BioInteractive

Scientific Skills Exercise

Graphing Data and Evaluating Evidence

How Has the Rise in Atmospheric CO_2 Concentration Changed over Time? The blue curve in Figure 56.29 shows how the concentration of CO_2 in Earth's atmosphere has changed over a span of more than 50 years. For each year in that span, scientists collected daily CO_2 concentration data and used those data to calculate the average CO_2 level for that year. In this exercise, you'll graph average CO_2 concentrations for three ten-year periods and analyze how those concentrations have changed over time.

▶ A researcher sampling the air at the Mauna Loa monitoring station, Hawaii.

Data from the Study The data in the table below are average CO_2 concentrations (in parts per million, or ppm) at the Mauna Loa monitoring station for each of the indicated years.

1969	324.6	1989	353.1	2009	387.4
1970	325.7	1990	354.4	2010	389.9
1971	326.3	1991	355.6	2011	391.7
1972	327.5	1992	356.5	2012	393.9
1973	329.7	1993	357.1	2013	396.5
1974	330.2	1994	358.8	2014	398.7
1975	331.1	1995	360.8	2015	400.8
1976	332.0	1996	362.6	2016	404.2
1977	333.8	1997	363.7	2017	406.6
1978	335.4	1998	366.7	2018	408.5

Data from National Oceanic & Atmospheric Administration, Earth System Research Laboratory, Global Monitoring Division.

INTERPRET THE DATA

1. Plot the data for each ten-year period on one graph, where the *x*-axis runs from year 1 to year 10 (producing three curves); this approach can help you to compare and contrast how the CO_2 level has changed during the three decades. Select a type of graph that is appropriate for these data, and choose a vertical axis scale that allows you to clearly see how the CO_2 concentration has changed, both from year to year and from one ten-year period to the next. (For additional information about graphs, see the Scientific Skills Review in Appendix D.)
2. For each ten-year period, what is the pattern of change in CO_2 concentration? Do the curves you have drawn suggest that the pattern has changed from decade to decade?
3. Calculate the annual rate at which the CO_2 concentration increased during each ten-year period. Perform these calculations as shown here for data from 1959 to 1968 (not in the table): in 1959 the CO_2 concentration was 316 ppm, while in 1968 it was 323. Thus, from 1959 to 1968, the CO_2 concentration increased at an average annual rate of

$$\frac{323 - 316}{9}$$

or 0.8 ppm per year (we divide by 9 because during a 10-year period of time, there are 9 year-to-year changes in CO_2 concentration).

4. **(a)** If the annual increase in CO_2 concentration were to remain at the level observed for 2009–2018, predict the CO_2 concentration in 2100. **(b)** Use your results to evaluate the effectiveness of efforts to reduce CO_2 emissions.

Instructors: A version of this Scientific Skills Exercise can be assigned in **Mastering Biology**.

and extreme weather events (such as droughts, heat waves, and hurricanes) are occurring more often. How are such changes to the global climate affecting life on Earth?

Biological Effects of Climate Change

Many organisms, especially those such as plants that cannot disperse rapidly over long distances, may not be able to survive the rapid warming and changing precipitation patterns projected to occur over the next century. Furthermore, many habitats today are more fragmented than ever, further limiting the ability of many organisms to migrate. Indeed, the climate change that has occurred to date has *already* altered the geographic ranges of hundreds of species, in some cases leading to declining population sizes and shrinking geographic ranges (see Concept 52.1). For example, a 2015 study of 67 species of bumblebees found that on average, the geographic ranges of these important pollinators have decreased in size as the climate has warmed since 1900. Several other observed effects of climate change are discussed in **Figure 56.31**.

The ecosystems where the climate has changed the most include those in the far north, particularly northern coniferous forests and tundra. As snow and ice melt and uncover darker, more absorptive surfaces, these systems reflect less radiation back to the atmosphere and warm further (see Figure 56.30). Satellite data show that the area covered by Arctic sea ice in the summer has been declining since 1979 (the first year the data were available). At current rates of decline, there may be no summer ice there within a few decades, decreasing habitat for polar bears, seals, and seabirds. In addition, as discussed in Concept 55.2, rising temperatures have caused some Arctic regions to switch from being a CO_2 *sink* (absorbing more CO_2 from the atmosphere than they release to the atmosphere) to a CO_2 *source* (releasing more CO_2 than they absorb)—a worrisome change that could contribute to further climate warming.

Coniferous forests in western North America have also been hard hit, in this case by a combination of higher temperatures,

▼ **Figure 56.31**

MAKE CONNECTIONS

Climate Change Has Effects at All Levels of Biological Organization

The burning of fossil fuels by humans has caused atmospheric concentrations of carbon dioxide and other greenhouse gases to rise dramatically (see Figure 56.29). This, in turn, is changing Earth's climate: The planet's average temperature has increased by about 1°C since 1900, and extreme weather events are occurring more often in some regions of the globe. How are these changes affecting life on Earth today?

Effects on Cells

Temperature affects the rates of enzymatic reactions (see Figure 8.17), and as a result, the rates of DNA replication, cell division, and other key processes in cells are affected by rising temperatures.

Global warming and other aspects of climate change have also impaired some organisms' defense responses at the cellular level. For example, in the vast coniferous forests of western North America, climate change has reduced the ability of pine trees to defend themselves against attack by the mountain pine beetle (*Dendroctonus ponderosae*).

◀ Pine defenses include specialized resin cells that secrete a sticky substance (resin) that can entrap and kill mountain pine beetles. Resin cells produce less resin in trees that are stressed by rising temperatures and drought conditions.

◀ When beetles overwhelm a tree's cellular defenses, they produce large numbers of offspring that tunnel through the wood, causing extensive damage. Rising temperatures have shortened how long it takes beetles to mature and reproduce, resulting in even more beetles. The beetles can also infect the tree with a harmful fungus, which appears as blue stains on the wood.

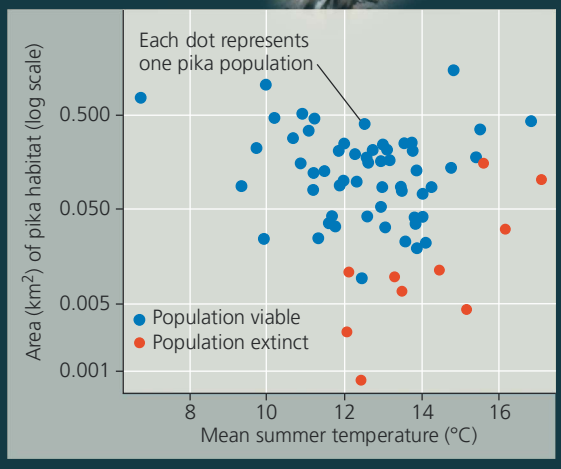
◀ This aerial view shows the scope of destruction in one North American forest due to mountain pine beetles; dead trees appear orange and red.

Effects on Individual Organisms

Organisms must maintain relatively constant internal conditions (see Concept 40.3); for example, an individual will die if its body temperature becomes too high. Global warming has increased the risk of overheating in some species, leading to reduced food intake and reproductive failure.

For instance, an American pika (*Ochotona princeps*) will die if its body temperature rises just 3°C above its resting temperature—and this can happen quickly in regions where climate change has already caused significant warming.

◀ As summer temperatures have risen, American pikas are spending more time in their burrows to escape the heat. Thus, they have less time to forage for food. Lack of food has caused mortality rates to increase and birth rates to drop. Pika populations have dwindled, some to the point of extinction. (See Figure 1.11 for another example.)



▲ This graph represents conditions in 2015 at 67 sites that previously supported a pika population; the populations at 10 of these sites had become extinct. Most extinctions occurred at sites with high summer temperatures and a small area of pika habitat. As temperatures continue to increase, more extinctions are expected.

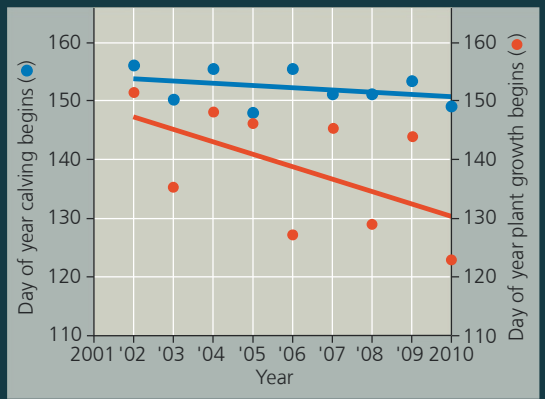
Effects on Populations

Climate change has caused some populations to increase in size, while others have declined (see Concept 1.1 and Concept 46.1). In particular, as the climate has changed, some species have adjusted when they grow, reproduce, or migrate—but others have not, causing their populations to face food shortages and reduced survival or reproductive success.

In one example, researchers have documented a link between rising temperatures and declining populations of caribou (*Rangifer tarandus*) in the Arctic.

▲ Caribou populations migrate north in the spring to give birth and to eat sprouting plants.

▶ Alpine chickweed is an early-flowering plant on which caribou depend.

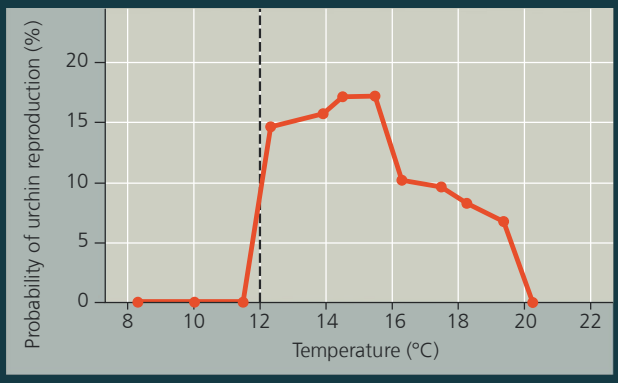


▲ As the climate has warmed, the plants on which caribou depend have emerged earlier in the spring. Caribou have not made similar changes in the timing of when they migrate and give birth. As a result, there is a shortage of food, and caribou offspring production has dropped fourfold.

Effects on Communities and Ecosystems

Climate affects where species live (see Figure 52.8). Climate change has caused hundreds of species to move to new locations, in some cases leading to dramatic changes in ecological communities. Climate change has also altered primary production (see Figure 28.25) and nutrient cycling in ecosystems.

In the example we discuss here, rising temperatures have enabled a sea urchin to invade southern regions along the coast of Australia, causing catastrophic changes to marine communities there.



▲ The sea urchin *Centrostephanus rodgersii* requires water temperatures above 12°C to reproduce successfully, as shown in this graph. As ocean waters rise above this critical temperature, the urchin has been able to expand its range to the south, destroying kelp beds as it moves into new regions.

▲ As the urchin has expanded its range to the south, it has destroyed high-diversity kelp communities, leaving bare regions called "urchin barrens" in its wake.

MAKE CONNECTIONS

In addition to contributing to climate change, rising concentrations of CO_2 also contribute to ocean acidification (see Figure 3.12). Explain how ocean acidification can affect individual organisms, and how that, in turn, can cause dramatic changes in ecological communities.

decreased winter snowfall, and a lengthening of the summer dry period. Since the latter half of the 20th century, otherwise healthy forests have experienced a steady increase in the percentage of trees that die each year. Higher temperatures and more frequent droughts also increase the likelihood of fires (see Figure 55.8). In boreal forests of western North America and Russia, for example, fires have burned twice the usual area in recent decades, again leading to widespread tree mortality. As the climate continues to warm, other changes in the geographic distribution of precipitation are likely, such as agricultural areas of the central United States becoming much drier.

Climate change has already affected many other ecosystems as well. In Europe and Asia, for example, plants are producing leaves earlier in the spring, while in tropical regions, the growth and survival of some species of coral have declined as water temperatures have risen. Recently, Australia's Great Barrier Reef had a catastrophic decline: The combined effects of two consecutive marine heat waves (one in 2016, another in 2017) killed so many corals that two-thirds of the reef was severely degraded—so degraded that some scientists worry it may never recover. A key take-home message from these examples is that a given effect of climate change may, in turn, cause a series of other biological changes. The exact nature of such cascading biological effects can be hard to predict, but it is clear that the more our planet warms, the more severely its ecosystems will be affected.

Modeling Climate Change

At the current rates that human activities are adding CO_2 and other greenhouse gases to the atmosphere, global models predict that Earth's temperature will rise by an additional 3°C (5°F) by the end of the 21st century. What data are used to construct such models, and are their predictions accurate?

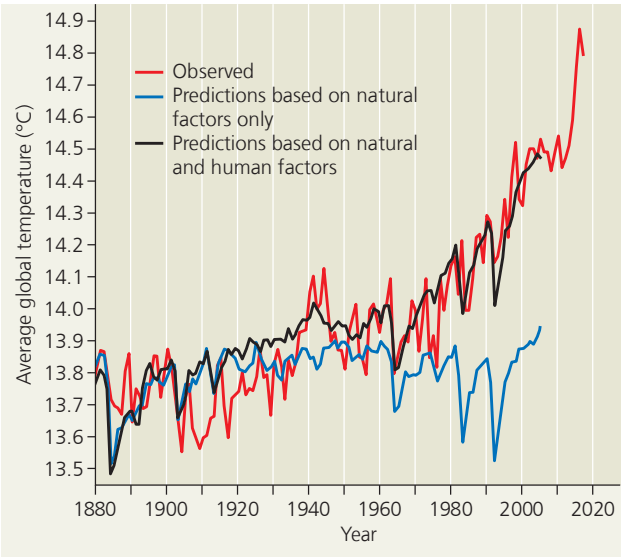
Global models are constructed using data on factors that affect the absorption of solar radiation at Earth's surface. These data are crucial because global temperatures rise when more solar radiation is absorbed by Earth's surface, and they fall when less solar radiation is absorbed by the surface. Natural factors that affect the absorption of solar radiation include an 11-year solar cycle and volcanic explosions. During each round of the solar cycle, the amount of energy emitted by the sun increases and decreases in a regular way, thereby contributing to a well-understood rise or fall in global temperatures at different points in time. Volcanic explosions emit gases and tiny particles that block incoming solar radiation, thereby contributing to a temporary drop in global temperatures. (Changes in the shape of Earth's orbit around the sun also contribute to increases or decreases in global temperatures, but those changes occur gradually over tens of thousands of years and hence are not a cause of recent climate change.)

Scientists also have collected vast amounts of data on how human activities affect absorption of solar radiation. When we burn fossil fuels for electricity, heat, and transportation, we cause CO_2 and other greenhouse gases to be released to the atmosphere. As shown in Figure 56.30, adding CO_2 and other greenhouse gases to the atmosphere increases the absorption of solar radiation, leading to global warming. Other human activities decrease the absorption of solar radiation, thereby tending to reduce global temperatures. For example, dust released by plowing fields and the emission of gases such as sulfur dioxide (SO_2) both decrease the absorption of solar energy, thus reducing global temperatures.

Each of these and other types of data provides a single, well-understood piece of a grand puzzle—how Earth's temperature is affected by a combination of natural and human factors. Scientists use computer models to put the pieces of this puzzle together. Each year, large amounts of data on natural and human factors that affect the absorption of solar radiation are entered into the model, which then sums their effects to predict Earth's temperature. Over time, predictions from these models have become increasingly accurate: Global climate models can now reproduce observed changes such as the increase in global warming that has occurred since the 1950s **(Figure 56.32)** and the global cooling that results from volcanic eruptions.

But why go to all this trouble developing models when Earth's temperature can be measured each year? The reason is that we have only one Earth and hence cannot perform

▼ Figure 56.32 Factors contributing to rising global temperatures. Scientists have measured the temperature of our planet since 1880. These observed temperatures (red) can be compared to results from climate models that incorporate only natural factors that affect global temperatures (blue) and from models that incorporate both natural and human factors (black).



VISUAL SKILLS *Describe how well the results shown in the blue and black curves match observed temperature changes over time. Use those results to evaluate whether human activities such as burning fossil fuels have contributed to observed temperature changes over time.*

experiments to determine how emitting different amounts of CO_2 affects the temperature of our planet. Instead, because we know that global climate models yield accurate predictions, we can use the models to perform "if-then" thought experiments: *If* we add a certain amount of CO_2 to the atmosphere, *then* global temperatures will rise by a certain number of degrees.

The predictions are sobering. If we continue with "business as usual," where emissions of CO_2 continue at current levels, by 2100 Earth's temperature will likely be 4°C higher than it was in 1900—an increase that would have dire effects for all of Earth's species, including our own. Moreover, even if all CO_2 emissions were to stop immediately, the temperature of our planet would continue to rise by an additional 0.6°C, making it 1.5°C higher in 2100 than it was in 1900. Earth will continue to warm long after emissions stop because it takes decades for the CO_2 already emitted to warm the oceans, and thus that long for the full effect of past emissions to be realized.

Finding Solutions to Address Climate Change

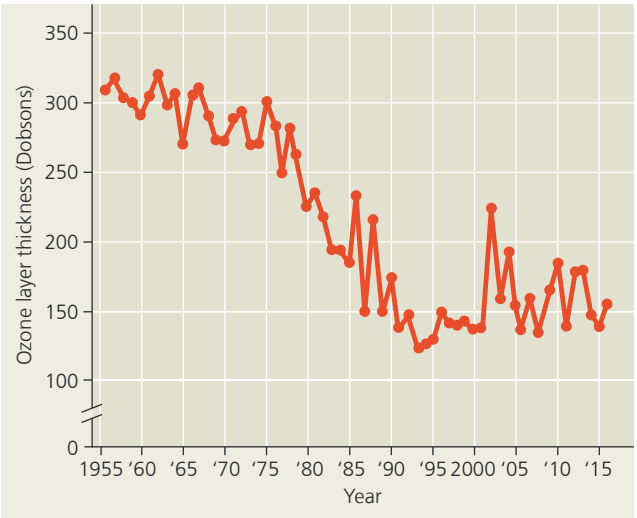
We will need many approaches to slow global warming and other aspects of climate change. Quick progress can be made by using energy more efficiently and by replacing fossil fuels with renewable solar and wind power and, more controversially, with nuclear power. Today, coal, gasoline, wood, and other organic fuels remain central to industrialized societies and cannot be burned without releasing CO_2. Stabilizing CO_2 emissions will require concerted international effort and changes in both personal lifestyles and industrial processes.

Progress toward finding solutions to address climate change was made in 2015 when all nations agreed—for the first time—to take steps to reduce CO_2 emissions and limit the extent to which global temperatures ultimately rise. This international effort, known as the Paris Agreement, has been ratified by 169 nations, including China, the United States, and all other nations that emit substantial quantities of CO_2 and other greenhouse gases. The effectiveness of the agreement was recently called into question, however, when the United States announced its intention to withdraw from the agreement by 2020. This setback highlights a potential difference between what we know and what we choose to do. An overwhelming amount of evidence indicates that climate change is real, that the rise in global temperatures since the 1950s was caused primarily by human actions, and that there will be negative consequences for human societies and all life on Earth unless we act now. What we choose to do with this information is up to us.

Depletion of Atmospheric Ozone

Like carbon dioxide and other greenhouse gases, atmospheric ozone (O_3) has also changed in concentration because of human activities. Life on Earth is protected from the damaging effects of ultraviolet (UV) radiation by a layer of ozone located in the stratosphere 17–25 km above Earth's surface. However, satellite studies of the atmosphere show that the springtime ozone

▼ Figure 56.33 Thickness of the October ozone layer over Antarctica, in units called Dobsons.

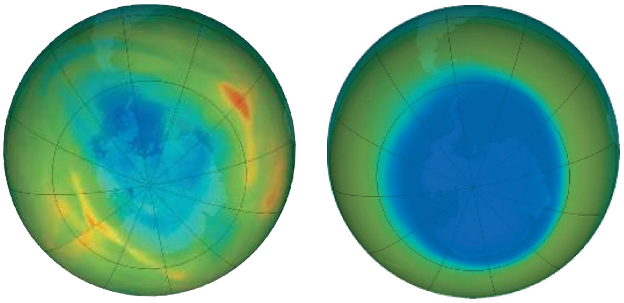


layer over Antarctica has thinned substantially since the mid-1970s **(Figure 56.33)**. The destruction of atmospheric ozone results primarily from the accumulation of chlorofluorocarbons (CFCs), chemicals once widely used in refrigeration and manufacturing. In the stratosphere, chlorine atoms released from CFCs react with ozone, reducing it to molecular O_2. Subsequent chemical reactions liberate the chlorine, allowing it to react with other ozone molecules in a catalytic chain reaction.

The thinning of the ozone layer is most apparent over Antarctica in spring, where cold, stable air allows the chain reaction to continue **(Figure 56.34)**. The magnitude of ozone depletion and the size of the ozone hole have been slightly smaller in recent years than the average for the last 20 years, but the hole still sometimes extends as far as the southernmost portions of Australia, New Zealand, and South America. At the more heavily populated middle latitudes, ozone levels have decreased 2–10% during the past 20 years.

Decreased ozone levels in the stratosphere increase the intensity of UV rays reaching Earth's surface. The consequences

▼ Figure 56.34 Erosion of Earth's ozone shield. The ozone hole over Antarctica is visible as the dark blue patch in these images based on atmospheric data.



September 1979 September 2018

of ozone depletion may be severe for plants, animals, and microorganisms. Some scientists expect increases in skin cancer and cataracts in humans, as well as unpredictable effects on crops and natural communities, especially the phytoplankton that are responsible for much of Earth's primary production. Such effects have been documented in field experiments. For example, scientists have shown that the growth of phytoplankton decreases and damage to their DNA increases when the ozone hole opens over the Southern Ocean (Antarctic Ocean) each year.

The good news about the ozone hole is how quickly many countries have responded to it. Since 1987, at least 197 nations, including the United States, have signed the Montreal Protocol, a treaty that regulates the use of ozone-depleting chemicals. Most nations have ended the production of CFCs. As a consequence, chlorine concentrations in the stratosphere have stabilized and ozone depletion is slowing. But even though CFC emissions today are close to zero, chlorine molecules already in the atmosphere will continue to influence stratospheric ozone levels for at least 50 years.

The partial destruction of Earth's ozone shield is one more example of how greatly humans can disrupt the dynamics of ecosystems and the biosphere. It also highlights our ability to solve environmental problems when we set our minds to it. However, in 2018 researchers detected an unexpected rise in atmospheric CFC levels, suggesting that unreported new production of these compounds may be occurring. Thus, once environmental regulations are in place, we cannot take them for granted—ongoing monitoring and enforcement are needed.

CONCEPT CHECK 56.4

1. How can the addition of excess mineral nutrients to a lake threaten its fish population?
2. **MAKE CONNECTIONS** There are vast stores of carbon-containing organic matter in the soils of northern coniferous forests and tundra around the world. Suggest why scientists who study global warming are closely monitoring these carbon reservoirs (see Figure 55.14).
3. **MAKE CONNECTIONS** Mutagens are chemical and physical agents that induce mutations in DNA (see Concept 17.5). How does reduced ozone concentration in the atmosphere increase the likelihood of mutations in various organisms?

For suggested answers, see Appendix A.

CONCEPT 56.5

Sustainable development can improve human lives while conserving biodiversity

With the increasing loss and fragmentation of habitats, changes in Earth's physical environment and climate, and increasing human population (see Concept 53.6), we face difficult trade-offs in managing the world's resources. Preserving all habitat patches isn't feasible, so biologists must help societies set conservation priorities by identifying which habitat patches are most crucial, while likewise improving the quality of life for local people. Ecologists use the concept of *sustainability* as a tool to establish long-term conservation priorities.

Sustainable Development

We need to understand the interconnections of the biosphere to protect species from extinction and improve the quality of human life. To this end, many nations, scientific societies, and other groups have embraced the concept of **sustainable development**, economic development that meets the needs of people today without limiting the ability of future generations to meet their needs.

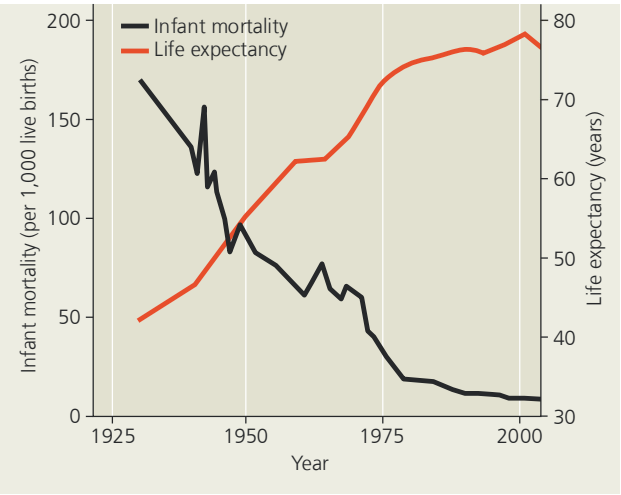
Achieving sustainable development is an ambitious goal. To sustain ecosystem processes and stem the loss of biodiversity, we must connect life science with the social sciences, economics, and the humanities. We must also reassess our personal values. Those of us living in wealthier nations have a larger ecological footprint than do people living in developing nations (see Concept 53.6). By including the long-term costs of consumption in our decision-making processes, we can learn to value the ecosystem services that sustain us.

Case Study: *Sustainable Development in Costa Rica*

The success of conservation in Costa Rica discussed earlier has required a partnership between the government, nongovernment organizations (NGOs), and private citizens. Many nature reserves established by individuals have been recognized as national wildlife reserves and given significant tax benefits. However, conservation and restoration are only one facet of sustainable development; the other is improving the human condition.

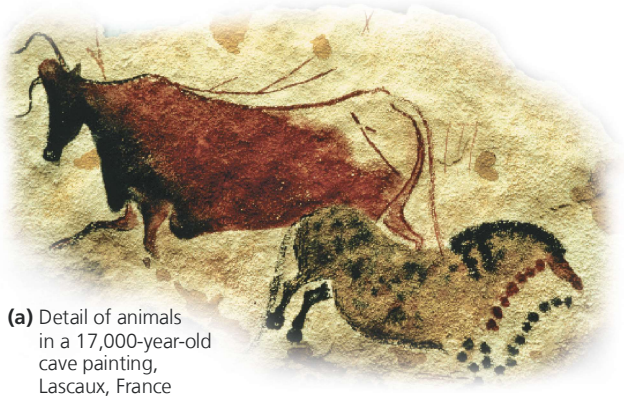
How have the living conditions of the Costa Rican people changed as the country has pursued its conservation goals? As represented in **Figure 56.35**, two fundamental indicators

▼ Figure 56.35 Infant mortality and life expectancy at birth in Costa Rica.



of living conditions are infant mortality rate and life expectancy (see Concept 53.6). From 1930 to 2010, the infant mortality rate in Costa Rica declined from 170 to 9 per 1,000 live births; over the same period, life expectancy increased from about 43 years to 79 years. Another indicator of living conditions is the literacy rate. The 2011 literacy rate in Costa Rica was 96%, compared to an average of 82% in the other six Central American countries. Such statistics show that living conditions in Costa Rica have improved greatly in the time in which the country has dedicated itself to conservation and restoration. While this does not prove that conservation *causes* an improvement in human welfare, we can say with certainty that development in Costa Rica has attended to both nature *and* people.

▼ Figure 56.36 Biophilia, past and present.



(a) Detail of animals in a 17,000-year-old cave painting, Lascaux, France

(b) A 30,000-year-old ivory carving of a water bird, found in Germany

(c) Nature lovers on a wildlife-watching expedition

The Future of the Biosphere

Our modern lives are very different from those of early humans, who hunted and gathered to survive. Their reverence for nature is evident in the early cave paintings of wildlife **(Figure 56.36a)** and in the visions of life they sculpted from bone and ivory **(Figure 56.36b)**.

Our lives reflect remnants of our ancestral attachment to nature and the diversity of life—the concept of *biophilia* introduced early in this chapter. We evolved in natural environments rich in biodiversity, and we still have an affinity for such settings **(Figure 56.36c** and **d)**. Indeed, our biophilia may be innate, an evolutionary product of natural selection acting on a brainy species whose survival depended on a close connection to the environment and a practical appreciation of plants and animals.

Our appreciation of life guides the field of biology today. We celebrate life by deciphering the genetic code that makes each species unique. We embrace life by using fossils and DNA to chronicle evolution through time. We preserve life through our efforts to classify and protect the millions of species on Earth. We respect life by using nature responsibly and reverently to improve human welfare.

Biology is the scientific expression of our desire to know nature. We are most likely to protect what we appreciate and are most likely to appreciate what we understand. By learning about the processes and diversity of life, we become more aware of our place in the biosphere. We hope this text has served you well in this lifelong adventure.

CONCEPT CHECK 56.5

1. What is meant by the term *sustainable development*?
2. How might biophilia influence us to conserve species and restore ecosystems?
3. **WHAT IF?** Suppose a new fishery is discovered, and you are put in charge of developing it sustainably. What ecological data might you want on the fish population? What criteria would you apply for the fishery's development?

For suggested answers, see Appendix A.

(d) A young biologist holding a songbird

56 Chapter Review

Go to **Mastering Biology** for Assignments, the eText, the Study Area, and Dynamic Study Modules.

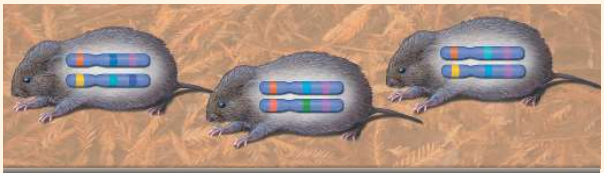
SUMMARY OF KEY CONCEPTS

To review key terms, go to the **Vocabulary Self-Quiz** in the **Mastering Biology** eText or Study Area, or go to goo.gl/zkjz9t.

CONCEPT 56.1

Human activities threaten earth's biodiversity *(pp. 1261–1266)*

- Biodiversity can be considered at three main levels:



Genetic diversity: enables adaptation to environmental change

Species diversity: maintains communities and food webs

Ecosystem diversity: provides life-sustaining services

- Our biophilia enables us to recognize the value of biodiversity for its own sake. Other species also provide humans with food, fiber, medicines, and **ecosystem services**.
- Four major threats to biodiversity are habitat loss, **introduced species**, overharvesting, and global change.

? *Give at least three examples of key ecosystem services that nature provides for people.*

CONCEPT 56.2

Population conservation focuses on population size, genetic diversity, and critical habitat *(pp. 1266–1270)*

- When a population drops below a **minimum viable population (MVP)** size, its loss of genetic variation due to inbreeding and genetic drift can trap it in an **extinction vortex**.
- A loss of critical habitat can cause threatened populations to show a downward trend, even if the population is far above its minimum viable population size.
- Conserving species often requires resolving conflicts between the habitat needs of **endangered species** and human demands.

? *Why is the minimum viable population size smaller for a genetically diverse population than for a less genetically diverse population?*

CONCEPT 56.3

Landscape and regional conservation help sustain biodiversity *(pp. 1270–1274)*

- The structure of a landscape can strongly influence biodiversity. As habitat fragmentation increases and edges become more extensive, biodiversity tends to decrease. **Movement corridors** can promote dispersal and help sustain populations.
- **Biodiversity hot spots** are also hot spots of extinction and thus prime candidates for protection. Sustaining biodiversity in parks and reserves requires management to ensure that human activities in the surrounding landscape do not harm the protected habitats. The **zoned reserve** model recognizes that conservation efforts often involve working in landscapes that are greatly affected by human activity.
- **Urban ecology** is the study of organisms and their environment in primarily urban settings.

? *Give two examples that show how habitat fragmentation can harm species in the long term.*

CONCEPT 56.4

Earth is changing rapidly as a result of human actions *(pp. 1274–1284)*

- Agriculture removes plant nutrients from ecosystems, so large supplements are usually required. The nutrients in fertilizer can pollute groundwater and surface-water aquatic ecosystems (eutrophication), where they can stimulate excess algal growth.
- The release of industrial compounds, pesticides, pharmaceuticals, and plastic waste has polluted the environment with harmful substances that often persist for long periods and become increasingly concentrated in successively higher trophic levels of food webs (**biological magnification**).
- Because of the burning of fossil fuels and other human activities, the atmospheric concentration of CO_2 and other greenhouse gases has been steadily increasing. These increases have caused **climate change**, including significant global warming and changing patterns of precipitation. Climate change has already affected many ecosystems.
- The ozone layer reduces the penetration of UV radiation through the atmosphere. Human activities, notably the release of chlorine-containing pollutants, have eroded the ozone layer, but government policies are helping to solve the problem.

? *Thinking about biological magnification of toxins, is it healthier to feed at a lower or higher trophic level? Explain.*

CONCEPT 56.5

Sustainable development can improve human lives while conserving biodiversity *(pp. 1284–1285)*

- **Sustainable development** refers to economic development that meets the needs of people today without limiting the ability of future generations to meet their needs.
- Costa Rica's success in conserving tropical biodiversity has involved a partnership among the government, other organizations, and private citizens. Human living conditions in Costa Rica have improved along with ecological conservation.

? *Why is sustainability such an important goal for conservation biologists?*

TEST YOUR UNDERSTANDING

For more multiple-choice questions, go to the **Practice Test** in the **Mastering Biology** eText or Study Area, or go to goo.gl/GruWRg.

Levels 1-2: Remembering/Understanding

1. One characteristic that distinguishes a population in an extinction vortex from most other populations is that
   (A) its members are rare, top-level predators.
   (B) its effective population size is lower than its total population size.
   (C) its genetic diversity is very low.
   (D) it is not well adapted to edge conditions.
2. The main cause of the increase in the amount of CO_2 in Earth's atmosphere over the past 170 years is
   (A) increased worldwide primary production.
   (B) increased worldwide fertilizer production.
   (C) increased infrared radiation absorption by the atmosphere.
   (D) the burning of fossil fuels and deforestation.
3. What is the single greatest threat to biodiversity?
   (A) overharvesting of commercially important species
   (B) habitat alteration, fragmentation, and destruction
   (C) introduced species that compete with native species
   (D) novel pathogens

Levels 3-4: Applying/Analyzing

4. Which of these is a consequence of biological magnification?
   (A) Toxic chemicals in the environment pose greater risk to top-level predators than to primary consumers.
   (B) Populations of top-level predators are generally smaller than populations of primary consumers.
   (C) The biomass of producers in an ecosystem is generally higher than the biomass of primary consumers.
   (D) Only a small portion of the energy captured by producers is transferred to consumers.
5. Which of the following strategies would most rapidly increase the genetic diversity of a population in an extinction vortex?
   (A) Establish a reserve that protects the population's habitat.
   (B) Introduce new individuals transported from other populations of the same species.
   (C) Sterilize the least fit individuals in the population.
   (D) Control populations of the endangered population's predators and competitors.
6. Which of the following statements about protected areas established to preserve biodiversity is true?
   (A) About 25% of Earth's land area is now protected.
   (B) National parks are the only type of protected area.
   (C) Management of a protected area does not need to be coordinated with management of the surrounding area.
   (D) It is especially important to protect biodiversity hot spots.

Levels 5-6: Evaluating/Creating

7. **DRAW IT** Suppose you are managing a forest reserve, and one of your goals is to protect local populations of woodland birds from parasitism by the brown-headed cowbird. You know that female cowbirds don't venture more than about 100 m into a forest and that nest parasitism is reduced when woodland birds nest away from forest edges. The reserve extends about 6,000 m from east to west and 3,000 m from north to south. It is surrounded by a deforested pasture on the west, an agricultural field for 500 m in the southwest corner, and intact forest everywhere else. You must build a road, 10 m by 3,000 m, from the north to the south side of the reserve and construct a maintenance building that will take up 100 m^2. Draw a map of the reserve and explain where you would put the road and building to minimize cowbird intrusion along edges.
8. **EVOLUTION CONNECTION** The fossil record indicates that there have been five mass extinction events in the past 500 million years (see Concept 25.4). Many ecologists think we are on the verge of another. Briefly discuss the history of mass extinctions and the length of time it typically takes for species diversity to recover through evolution. Explain why this should motivate us to slow the loss of biodiversity today.
9. **WRITE ABOUT A THEME: INTERACTIONS** One factor favoring rapid population growth by an introduced species is the absence of the predators, parasites, and pathogens that controlled its population in the region where it evolved. In a short essay (100–150 words), explain how evolution by natural selection would influence the rate at which native predators, parasites, and pathogens attack an introduced species.
10. **SYNTHESIZE YOUR KNOWLEDGE**

Big cats, such as the Siberian tiger (*Panthera tigris altaica*), are one of the most endangered groups of mammals in the world. Based on what you've learned in this chapter, discuss some approaches you would use to help preserve them.

For selected answers, see Appendix A.

Explore Scientific Papers with Science in the Classroom AAAS
How can genetic analyses help in the fight against poaching?
Go to "CSI Africa: Tracking Ivory Poachers" at
www.scienceintheclassroom.org.
Instructors: Questions can be assigned in Mastering Biology.

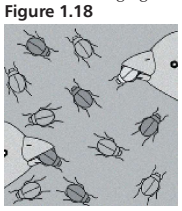
APPENDIX A Answers

Chapter 1

Figure Questions

Figure 1.4 Dividing the length of the prokaryotic cell by the length of the scale bar, the length of the prokaryotic cell is about 1.4 scale bars. Each scale bar represents 1 μm, so the prokaryotic cell is about 1.4 μm long. Dividing the diameter of the eukaryotic cell by the length of the scale bar, the diameter of the eukaryotic cell is about 8.2 scale bars, which is 8.2 μm. **Figure 1.10** The response to insulin is glucose uptake by cells and glucose storage in liver cells. The initial stimulus is a high glucose level, which is reduced when glucose is taken up by cells.

Figure 1.18



5 Environmental change resulting in survival of organisms with different traits

As the soil gradually becomes lighter gray, beetles that match the color of the soil will not be seen by birds and therefore will not be eaten. For example, when the soil is medium-colored, it will be easiest for birds to see and eat the darkest and lightest of the beetles in a population. (Most or all of the lighter beetles will have been eaten earlier, but new light beetles will arise due to variation in new generations of the population.) Thus, over time, the population will become lighter as the soil becomes lighter.

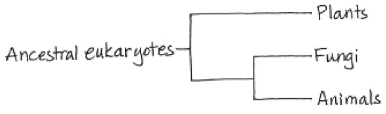
Concept Check 1.1

1. Examples: A molecule consists of *atoms* bonded together. Each organelle has an orderly arrangement of *molecules*. Photosynthetic plant cells contain *organelles* called chloroplasts. A tissue consists of a group of similar *cells*. Organs such as the heart are constructed from several *tissues*. A complex multicellular organism, such as a plant, has several types of *organs*, such as leaves and roots. A population is a set of *organisms* of the same species. A community consists of *populations* of the various species inhabiting a specific area. An ecosystem consists of a biological *community* along with the nonliving factors important to life, such as air, soil, and water. The biosphere is made up of all of Earth's *ecosystems*. **2.** (a) New properties emerge at successive levels of biological organization: Structure and function are correlated. (b) Life's processes involve the expression and transmission of genetic information. (c) Life requires the transfer and transformation of energy and matter. **3.** Sample answers: *Organization (Emergent properties)*: The ability of a human heart to pump blood requires an intact heart; it is not a capability of any of the heart's tissues or cells working alone. *Organization (Structure and function)*: The strong, sharp teeth of a wolf are well suited to grasping and dismembering its prey. *Information*: Human eye color is determined by the combination of genes inherited from the two parents. *Energy and Matter*: A plant, such as a grass, absorbs energy from the sun and transforms it into molecules that act as stored fuel. Animals can eat parts of the plant and use the food for energy to carry out their activities. *Interactions (Molecules)*: When your stomach is full, it signals your brain to decrease your appetite. *Interactions (Ecosystems)*: A mouse eats food, such as nuts or grasses, and deposits some of [APPENDIX A Answers] nd urine). Construction of a nest rearranges th[illegible]asten degradation of some of its components. The mouse may also act as food for a predator.

Concept Check 1.2

1. The naturally occurring heritable variation in a population is "edited" by natural selection because individuals with traits better suited to the environment survive and reproduce more successfully than others, and these traits are passed on to the next generation more often. Over time, better-suited individuals persist and their percentage in the population increases, while less well-suited individuals become less prevalent—a type of population editing. **2.** Here is one possible explanation: The ancestor species of the green warbler finch lived on an island where insects were a plentiful food source. Among individuals in the ancestor population, there was likely variation in beak shape and size. Individuals with slender, sharp beaks were likely more successful at picking up insects for food. Being well-nourished, they gave rise to more offspring than birds with thick, short beaks. Their many offspring inherited slender, sharp beaks (because of genetic information being passed from generation to generation, although Darwin didn't know this). In each generation, the offspring birds with the beaks of a shape best at picking up insects would eat more and have more offspring. Therefore, the green warbler finch of today has a slender beak that is very well matched (adapted) to its food source, insects.

3.



Concept Check 1.3

1. Mouse coat color matches the environment for both beach and inland populations. **2.** Inductive reasoning derives generalizations from specific cases; deductive reasoning predicts specific outcomes from general premises. **3.** Compared to a hypothesis, a scientific theory is usually more general and substantiated by a much greater amount of evidence. Natural selection is an explanatory idea that applies to all kinds of organisms and is supported by vast amounts of evidence of various kinds. **4.** Based on the mouse coloration in Figure 1.25, you might expect that the mice that live on the sandy soil would be lighter in color and those that live on the lava rock would be much darker. And in fact, that is what researchers have found. You would predict that each color of mouse would be less preyed upon in its native habitat than it would be in the other habitat. (Research results also support this prediction.) You could repeat the Hoekstra experiment with colored models, painted to resemble these two types of mouse. Or you could try transplanting some of each population to its non-native habitat and counting how many you can recapture over the next few days, then comparing the four samples as was done in Hoekstra's experiment. (The painted models are easier to recapture, of course!) In the live mouse transplantation experiment, you would have to do controls to eliminate the variable represented by the transplanted mice being in a new, unknown territory. You could control for the transplantation process by transplanting some dark mice from one area of lava rock to one far distant, and some light mice from one area of sandy soil to a distant area.

Concept Check 1.4

1. Science aims to understand natural phenomena and the underlying mechanisms that affect them, while technology involves application of scientific discoveries for a particular purpose or to solve a specific problem. **2.** Natural selection could be operating. Malaria is present in sub-Saharan Africa, so there might be an advantage to people with the sickle-cell disease form of the gene that makes them more able to survive and pass on their genes to offspring. Among those of African descent living in the United States, where malaria is absent, there would be no advantage, so they would be selected against more strongly, resulting in fewer individuals with the sickle-cell disease form of the gene.

Summary of Key Concepts Questions

1.1 Finger movements rely on the coordination of the many structural components of the hand (muscles, nerves, bones, etc.), each of which is composed of elements from lower levels of biological *organization* (cells, molecules). The development of the hand relies on the genetic *information* encoded in chromosomes found in cells throughout the body. To power the finger movements that result in a text message, muscle and nerve cells require chemical *energy* that they transform in powering muscle contraction or in propagating nerve impulses. Texting is in essence communication, an *interaction* that conveys information between organisms, in this case of the same species. **1.2** Ancestors of the beach mouse may have exhibited variations in their coat color. Because of the prevalence of visual predators, the better-camouflaged (lighter) mice in the beach habitat may have survived longer and been able to produce more offspring. Over time, a higher and higher proportion of individuals in the population would have had the adaptation of lighter fur that acted to camouflage the mouse in the beach habitat. **1.3** Gathering and interpreting data are core activities in the scientific process, and they are affected by, and affect in turn, three other arenas of the scientific process: exploration and discovery, community analysis and feedback, and societal benefits and outcomes. **1.4** Different approaches taken by scientists studying natural phenomena at different levels complement each other, so more is learned about each problem being studied. A diversity of backgrounds among scientists may lead to fruitful ideas in the same way that important innovations have often arisen where a mix of cultures coexist, due to multiple different viewpoints.

Test Your Understanding

1. B **2.** C **3.** C **4.** B **5.** C **6.** A **7.** D **8.** Your figure should show the following: (1) for the biosphere, the Earth with an arrow coming out of a tropical ocean; (2) for the ecosystem, a distant view of a coral reef; (3) for the community, a collection of reef animals and algae, with corals, fishes, some seaweed, and any other organisms you can think of; (4) for the population, a group of fish of the same species; (5) for the organism, one fish from your population; (6) for the organ, the fish's stomach; (7) for a tissue, a group of similar cells from the stomach; (8) for a cell, one cell from the tissue, showing its nucleus and a few other organelles; (9) for an organelle, the nucleus, where most of the cell's DNA is located; and (10) for a molecule, a DNA double helix. Your sketches can be very rough!

Chapter 2

Figure Questions

Figure 2.7 Atomic number = 12; 12 protons, 12 electrons; three electron shells; 2 valence electrons

Figure 2.14 One possible answer:

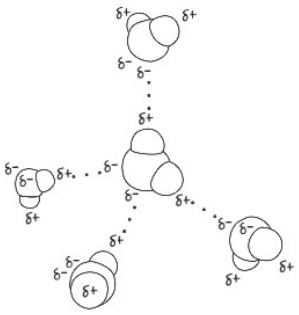
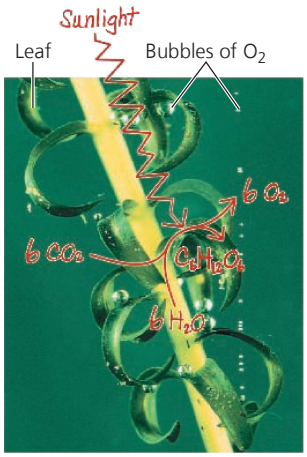


Figure 2.17



Concept Check 2.1

1. Table salt (sodium chloride) is made up of sodium and chlorine. We are able to eat the compound, showing that it has different properties from those of a metal (sodium) and a poisonous gas (chlorine). **2.** Yes. An organism requires trace elements, though only in small amounts. **3.** A person with an iron deficiency will probably show fatigue and other effects of a low oxygen level in the blood. (The condition is called anemia and can also result from too few red blood cells or abnormal hemoglobin.) **4.** Variant ancestral plants that could tolerate elevated levels of the elements in serpentine soils could grow and reproduce there. (Plants that were well adapted to nonserpentine soils would not be expected to survive in serpentine areas.) The offspring of the variants would also vary, with those most capable of thriving under serpentine conditions growing best and reproducing most. Over many generations, this probably led to the serpentine-adapted species we see today.

Concept Check 2.2

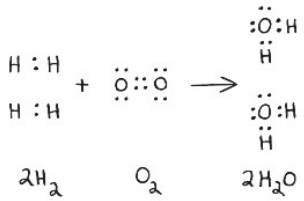
1. 7 **2.** $^{15}_{7}N$ **3.** 9 electrons; two electron shells; 1*s*, 2*s*, 2*p* (three orbitals); 1 electron is needed to fill the valence shell. **4.** The elements in a row all have the same number of electron shells. All the elements in a column have the same number of electrons in their valence shells.

Concept Check 2.3

1. In this structure, each carbon atom has only three covalent bonds instead of the required four. **2.** The attraction between oppositely charged ions, forming ionic bonds **3.** If you could synthesize molecules that mimic these shapes, you might be able to treat diseases or conditions caused by the inability of affected individuals to synthesize such molecules—or to block the function of such molecules if overproduction is the cause of the disorder.

Concept Check 2.4

1.

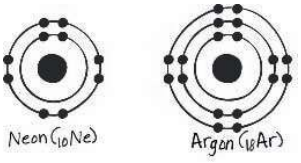


2. At equilibrium, the forward and reverse reactions occur at the same rate. **3.** $C_6H_{12}O_6 + 6\ O_2 \rightarrow 6\ CO_2 + 6\ H_2O$ + Energy. Glucose and oxygen react to form carbon dioxide and water, releasing energy. We breathe in oxygen because we need it for this reaction to occur, and we breathe out carbon dioxide because it is a by-product of this reaction. (This reaction is called cellular respiration, and you will learn more about it in Chapter 9.)

Summary of Key Concepts Questions

2.1 A compound is made up of two or more elements combined in a fixed ratio, while an element is a substance that cannot be broken down to other substances.

2.2

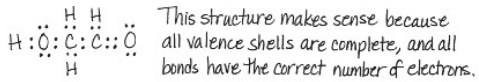


Both neon and argon have completed valence shells, containing 8 electrons. They do not have unpaired electrons that could participate in chemical bonds. **2.3** Electrons are shared equally between the two atoms in a nonpolar covalent bond. In a polar covalent bond, the electrons are drawn closer to the more electronegative atom. In the formation of ions, an electron is completely transferred from one atom to a much more electronegative atom. **2.4** The concentration of products would increase as the added reactants were converted to products. Eventually, an equilibrium would again be reached in which the forward and reverse reactions were proceeding at the same rate and the relative concentrations of reactants and products returned to where they were before the addition of more reactants.

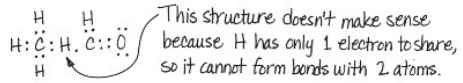
Test Your Understanding

1. D **2.** A **3.** B **4.** A **5.** D **6.** B **7.** C **8.** D

9. a.



b.



Chapter 3

Figure Questions

Figure 3.2 One possible answer:

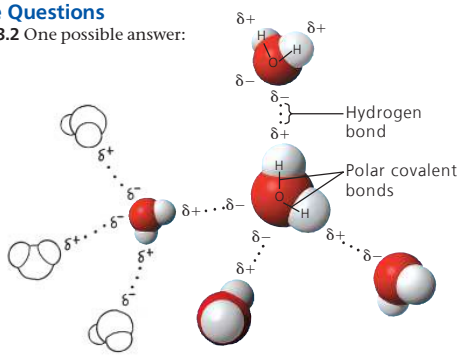


Figure 3.8 Heating the solution would cause the water to evaporate faster than it is evaporating at room temperature. At a certain point, there wouldn't be enough water molecules to dissolve the salt ions. The salt would start coming out of solution and re-forming crystals. Eventually, all the water would evaporate, leaving behind a pile of salt like the original pile. **Figure 3.12** Adding excess CO_2 to the oceans ultimately reduces the rate at which calcification (by organisms) can occur.

Concept Check 3.1

1. Electronegativity is the attraction of an atom for the electrons of a covalent bond. Because oxygen is more electronegative than hydrogen, the oxygen atom in H_2O pulls electrons toward itself, resulting in two partial negative charges on the oxygen atom and a partial positive charge on each hydrogen atom. Atoms in neighboring water molecules with opposite partial charges are attracted to each other, forming a hydrogen bond. **2.** Due to its two polar covalent bonds, a water molecule has regions of partial negative charge on the O atom that allow it to form hydrogen bonds with hydrogen atoms on neighboring water molecules, and regions of partial positive charge on the H atoms that allow them to form hydrogen bonds with oxygen atoms on neighboring water molecules. **3.** The hydrogen atoms of one molecule, with their partial positive charges, would repel the hydrogen atoms of the adjacent molecule. **4.** The covalent bonds of water molecules would not be polar, so no regions of the molecule would carry partial charges and water molecules would not form hydrogen bonds with each other.

Concept Check 3.2

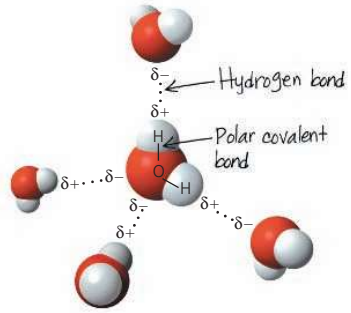
1. Hydrogen bonds hold neighboring water molecules together. This cohesion helps chains of water molecules move upward against gravity in water-conducting cells as water evaporates from the leaves. Adhesion between water molecules and the walls of the water-conducting cells also helps counter gravity. **2.** High humidity hampers cooling by suppressing the evaporation of sweat. **3.** As water freezes, it expands because water molecules move farther apart in forming ice crystals. When there is water in a crevice of a boulder, expansion due to freezing may crack the boulder. **4.** The hydrophobic substance repels water, perhaps helping to keep the ends of the legs from becoming coated with water and breaking through the surface. If the legs were coated with a hydrophilic substance, water would be drawn up them, possibly making it more difficult for the water strider to walk on water.

Concept Check 3.3

1. 10^5, or 100,000 **2.** $[H^+] = 0.01\ M = 10^{-2}\ M$, so pH = 2. **3.** $CH_3COOH \rightarrow CH_3COO^- + H^+$. CH_3COOH is the acid (the H^+ donor), and CH_3COO^- is the base (the H^+ acceptor). **4.** The pH of the water should decrease from 7 to about 2 (as mentioned in the text); the pH of the acetic acid solution will decrease only a small amount, because as a weak acid, it acts (like carbonic acid) as a buffer. The reaction shown for question 3 will shift to the left, with CH_3COO^- accepting the influx of H^+ and becoming CH_3COOH molecules.

Summary of Key Concepts Questions

3.1

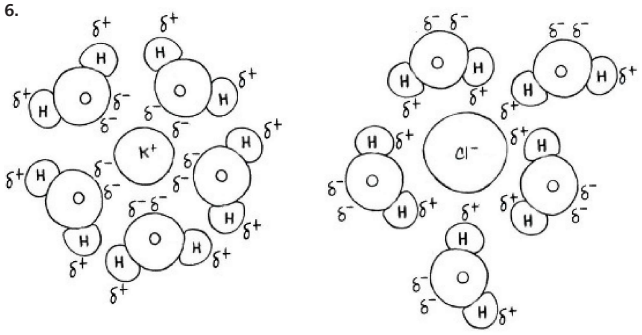


No. A covalent bond is a strong bond in which electrons are shared between two atoms. A hydrogen bond is a weak bond, which does not involve electron sharing, but is simply an attraction between two partial charges on neighboring atoms. **3.2** Ions dissolve in water when polar water molecules form a hydration shell around them, with partially charged regions of water molecules being attracted to ions of the opposite charge. Polar molecules dissolve as water molecules form hydrogen bonds with them and surround them. Solutions are homogeneous mixtures of solute and solvent. **3.3** The concentration of hydrogen ions (H^+) would be 10^{-11}, and the pH of the solution would be 11.

Test Your Understanding

1. C **2.** D **3.** C **4.** A **5.** D

6.



7. Due to intermolecular hydrogen bonds, water has a high specific heat (the amount of heat required to increase the temperature of water by 1°C). When water is heated, much of the heat is absorbed in breaking hydrogen bonds before the water molecules increase their motion and the temperature increases. Conversely, when water is cooled, many H bonds are formed, which releases a significant amount of heat. This release of heat can provide some protection against freezing of the plants' leaves, thus protecting the cells from damage.
8. Both global warming and ocean acidification are caused by increasing levels of carbon dioxide in the atmosphere, the result of burning fossil fuels.

Chapter 4

Figure Questions

Figure 4.2 Because the concentration of the reactants influences the equilibrium (as discussed in Concept 2.4), there might have been more HCN relative to CH_2O since there would have been a higher concentration of the reactant gas containing nitrogen.

Figure 4.4

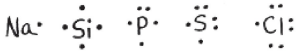
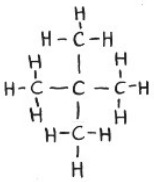


Figure 4.6 The tails of fats contain only carbon-hydrogen bonds, which are relatively nonpolar. Because the tails occupy the bulk of a fat molecule, they make the molecule as a whole nonpolar and therefore incapable of forming hydrogen bonds with water.

Figure 4.7

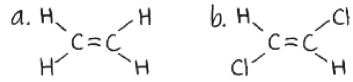


Concept Check 4.1

1. The sparks provided energy needed for the inorganic molecules in the atmosphere to react with each other. (You'll learn more about energy and chemical reactions in Chapter 8.)

Concept Check 4.2

1.

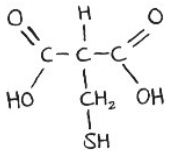


2. The forms of C_4H_{10} in (b) are structural isomers, as are the butenes (forms of C_4H_8) in (c). **3.** Both consist largely of hydrocarbon chains, which provide fuel—gasoline for engines and fats for plant embryos and animals. Reactions of both types of molecules release energy. **4.** No. There is not enough diversity in propane's atoms. It can't form structural isomers because there is only one way for three carbons to attach to each other (in a line). There are no double bonds, so *cis-trans* isomers are not possible. Each carbon has at least two hydrogens attached to it, so the molecule is symmetrical and cannot have enantiomers.

Concept Check 4.3

1. An amino acid has both an amino group (—NH_2), which makes it an amine, and a carboxyl group (—COOH), which makes it a carboxylic acid. **2.** The ATP molecule loses a phosphate, becoming ADP.

3.



A chemical group that can act as a base has been replaced with a group that can act as an acid, increasing the acidic properties of the molecule. The shape of the molecule would also change, likely changing the molecules with which it can interact. The original cysteine molecule has an asymmetric carbon in the center. After replacement of the amino group with a carboxyl group, this carbon is no longer asymmetric.

Summary of Key Concepts Questions

4.1 Miller showed that organic molecules could form under the physical and chemical conditions estimated to have been present on early Earth. This abiotic synthesis of organic molecules would have been a first step in the origin of life.
4.2 Acetone and propanal are structural isomers. Acetic acid and glycine have no asymmetric carbons, whereas glycerol phosphate has one. Therefore, glycerol phosphate can exist as forms that are enantiomers, but acetic acid and glycine cannot. **4.3** The methyl group is nonpolar and not reactive. The other six groups are called functional groups because they can participate in chemical reactions. Also, all except the sulfhydryl group are hydrophilic, increasing the solubility of organic compounds in water.

Test Your Understanding

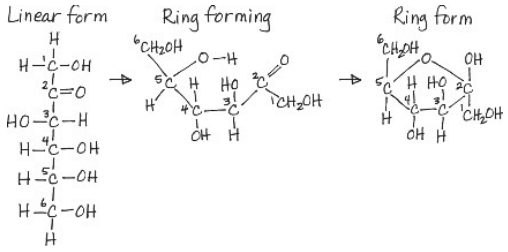
1. B **2.** B **3.** C **4.** C **5.** A **6.** B **7.** A
8. The molecule on the right; the middle carbon is asymmetric.
9. Silicon has 4 valence electrons, the same number as carbon. Therefore, silicon would be able to form long chains, including branches, that could act as skeletons for large molecules. It would clearly do this much better than neon (with no valence electrons) or aluminum (with 3 valence electrons).

Chapter 5

Figure Questions

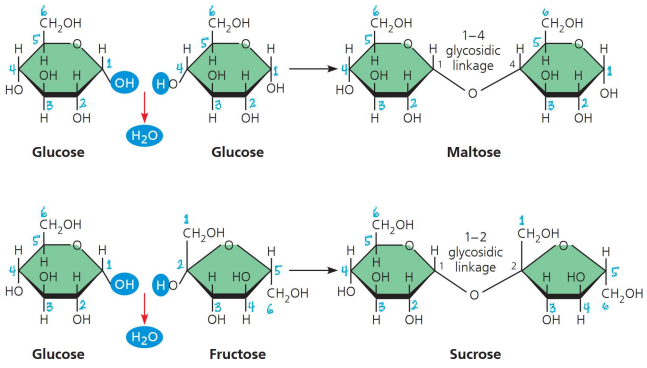
Figure 5.3 Glucose and fructose are structural isomers.

Figure 5.4



Four carbons are in the fructose ring, and two are not. (The latter two carbons are attached to carbons 2 and 5, which are in the ring.) The fructose ring differs from the glucose ring, which has five carbons in the ring and one that is not. (Note that the orientation of this fructose molecule is flipped horizontally relative to that of the one in Figure 5.5b; also, note that the oxygen on carbon 5 lost its proton and that the oxygen on carbon 2, which used to be the carbonyl oxygen, gained a proton.

Figure 5.5



(a) In maltose, the linkage is called a 1–4 glycosidic linkage because the number 1 carbon in the left monosaccharide (glucose) is linked to the number 4 carbon in the right monosaccharide (also glucose). (b) In sucrose, the linkage is called a 1–2 glycosidic linkage because the number 1 carbon in the left monosaccharide (glucose) is linked to the number 2 carbon in the right monosaccharide (fructose). (Note that the fructose molecule is oriented differently from glucose in Figures 5.4 and 5.5b, where carbon 2 is on the right. In fructose in Figure 5.5b and here, carbon 2 of fructose is on the left.)

Figure 5.11

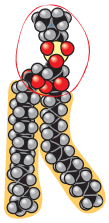


Figure 5.12

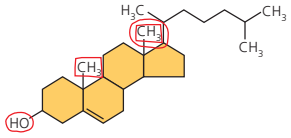


Figure 5.15

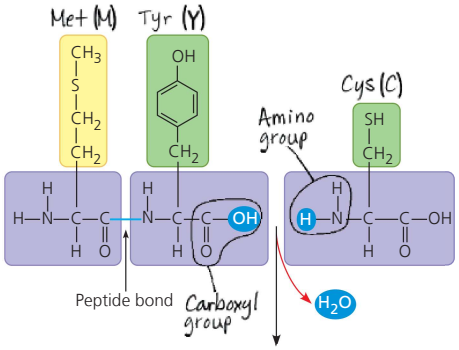
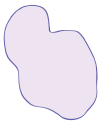


Figure 5.16 (1) The polypeptide backbone is most easily followed in the ribbon model.

(2)



(3) The point of this diagram is to show that a pancreas cell secretes insulin proteins, so the shape is not important to the process being illustrated. **Figure 5.17** We can see that their complementary shapes allow the two proteins to fit together quite precisely. **Figure 5.19** The R group on glutamic acid is acidic and hydrophilic, whereas that on valine is nonpolar and hydrophobic. Therefore, it is unlikely that valine and glutamic acid participate in the same intramolecular interactions. A change in these interactions could (and does) cause a disruption of molecular structure. **Figure 5.26** Using a genomics approach allows us to use gene sequences to identify species and to learn about evolutionary relationships among any two species. This is because all species are related by their evolutionary history, and the evidence is in the DNA sequences. Proteomics—looking at proteins that are expressed—allows us to learn about how organisms or cells are functioning at a given time or in an association with another species.

Concept Check 5.1

1. The four main classes are proteins, carbohydrates, lipids, and nucleic acids. Lipids are not polymers. **2.** Nine, with one water molecule required to hydrolyze each connection between adjacent monomers **3.** The amino acids in the fish protein must be released in hydrolysis reactions and incorporated into other proteins in dehydration reactions.

Concept Check 5.2

1. $C_3H_6O_3$ **2.** $C_{12}H_{22}O_{11}$ **3.** The antibiotic treatment is likely to have killed the cellulose-digesting prokaryotes in the cow's gut. The absence of these prokaryotes would hamper the cow's ability to obtain energy from food and could lead to weight loss and possibly death. Thus, prokaryotic species are reintroduced, in appropriate combinations, in the gut culture given to treated cows.

Concept Check 5.3

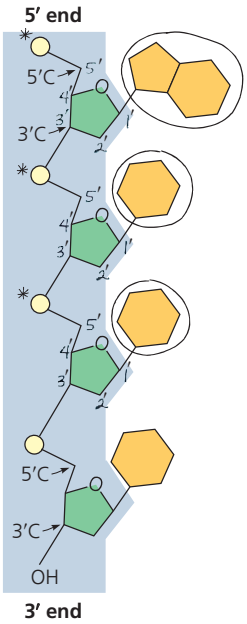
1. Both have a glycerol molecule attached to fatty acids. The glycerol of a fat has three fatty acids attached, whereas the glycerol of a phospholipid is attached to two fatty acids and one phosphate group. **2.** Human sex hormones are steroids, a type of compound that is hydrophobic and thus classified as a lipid. **3.** The oil droplet membrane could consist of a single layer of phospholipids rather than a bilayer, because an arrangement in which the hydrophobic tails of the membrane phospholipids were in contact with the hydrocarbon regions of the oil molecules would be more stable.

Concept Check 5.4

1. Secondary structure involves hydrogen bonds between atoms of the polypeptide backbone. Tertiary structure involves interactions between atoms of the side chains of the amino acid subunits. **2.** The two ring forms of glucose are called α and β, depending on how the glycosidic bond dictates the position of a hydroxyl group. Proteins have α helices and β pleated sheets, two types of repeating structures found in polypeptides due to interactions between the repeating constituents of the chain (not the side chains). The hemoglobin molecule is made up of two types of polypeptides: It contains two molecules each of α-globin and β-globin. **3.** During formation of a polypeptide by polymerization of amino acids, the amino group of one amino acid reacts with the carboxyl group of the next, forming a peptide bond. Therefore, in a polypeptide, there is only one amino group on the N-terminus and one carboxyl group on the C-terminus, along with any carboxyl groups or amino groups located in the amino acid side chains (R groups). **4.** These are all nonpolar, hydrophobic amino acids, so you would expect this region to be located in the interior of the folded polypeptide, where it would not contact the aqueous environment inside the cell.

Concept Check 5.5

1.



2.

5′–T A G G C C T–3′
3′–A T C C G G A–5′

Concept Check 5.6

1. The DNA of an organism encodes all of its proteins, and proteins are the molecules that carry out the work of cells, whether an organism is unicellular or multicellular. By knowing the DNA sequence of an organism, scientists would be able to catalog the protein sequences as well. **2.** Ultimately, the DNA sequence carries the information necessary to make the proteins that determine the traits of a particular species. Because the traits of the two species are similar, you would expect the proteins to be similar as well, and therefore the gene sequences should also have a high degree of similarity.

Summary of Key Concepts Questions

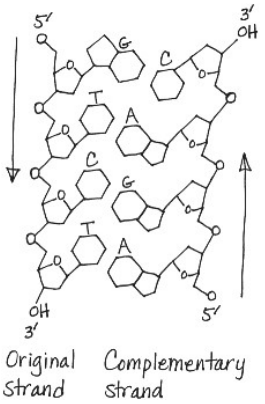
5.1 The polymers of large carbohydrates (polysaccharides), proteins, and nucleic acids are built from three different types of monomers (monosaccharides, amino acids, and nucleotides, respectively). **5.2** Both starch and cellulose are polymers of glucose, but the glucose monomers are in the α configuration in starch and the β configuration in cellulose. The glycosidic linkages thus have different geometries, giving the polymers different shapes and thus different properties. Starch is an energy-storage compound in plants; cellulose is a structural component of plant cell walls. Humans can hydrolyze starch to provide energy but cannot hydrolyze cellulose. Cellulose aids in the passage of food through the digestive tract. **5.3** Lipids are not polymers because they do not exist as a chain of linked monomers. They are not considered macromolecules because they do not reach the giant size of many polysaccharides, proteins, and nucleic acids. **5.4** A polypeptide, which may consist of hundreds of amino acids in a specific sequence (primary structure), has regions of coils and pleats (secondary structure), which are then folded into irregular contortions (tertiary structure) and may be noncovalently associated with other polypeptides (quaternary structure). The linear order of amino acids, with the varying properties of their side chains (R groups), determines what secondary and tertiary structures will form to produce a protein. The resulting unique three-dimensional shapes of proteins are key to their specific and diverse functions. **5.5** The complementary base pairing of the two strands of DNA makes possible the precise replication of DNA every time a cell divides, ensuring that genetic information is faithfully transmitted. In some types of RNA, complementary base pairing enables RNA molecules to assume specific three-dimensional shapes that facilitate diverse functions. **5.6** You would expect the human gene sequence to be most similar to that of the mouse (another mammal), then to that of the fish (another vertebrate), and least similar to that of the fruit fly (an invertebrate).

Test Your Understanding

1. D **2.** A **3.** B **4.** A **5.** B **6.** B **7.** C
8.

	Monomers or Components	Polymer or larger molecule	Type of linkage
Carbohydrates	Monosaccharides	Polysaccharides	Glycosidic linkages
Fats	Fatty acids	Triacylglycerols	Ester linkages
Proteins	Amino acids	Polypeptides	Peptide bonds
Nucleic acids	Nucleotides	Polynucleotides	Phosphodiester linkages

9.



Chapter 6

Figure Questions

Figure 6.3 The cilia in the lower portion of the TEM were oriented lengthwise in the plane of the slice, while those in the upper portion of the TEM were oriented perpendicular to the plane of the slice. Therefore, the cilia in the lower portion were cut in longitudinal section, and the cilia in the upper portion were cut in cross section. **Figure 6.4** You would use the pellet from the final fraction, which is rich in ribosomes. These are the sites of protein translation.
Figure 6.6 The dark bands in the TEM correspond to the hydrophilic heads of the phospholipids, while the light band corresponds to the hydrophobic fatty acid tails of the phospholipids. **Figure 6.9** The DNA in a chromosome dictates synthesis of a messenger RNA (mRNA) molecule, which then moves out to the cytoplasm. There, the information is used for the production, on ribosomes, of proteins that carry out cellular functions. **Figure 6.10** Any of the bound ribosomes (attached to the endoplasmic reticulum) could be circled, because any could be making a protein that will be secreted. **Table 6.1** Three dimers

Figure 6.22 Each centriole has nine sets of 3 microtubules, so the entire centrosome (two centrioles) has 54 microtubules. Each microtubule consists of a helical array of tubulin dimers (as shown in Table 6.1).

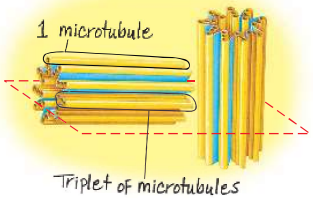


Figure 6.24 The two central microtubules terminate above the basal body, so they aren't present at the level of the cross section through the basal body, indicated by the lower red rectangle shown in the EM on the left.

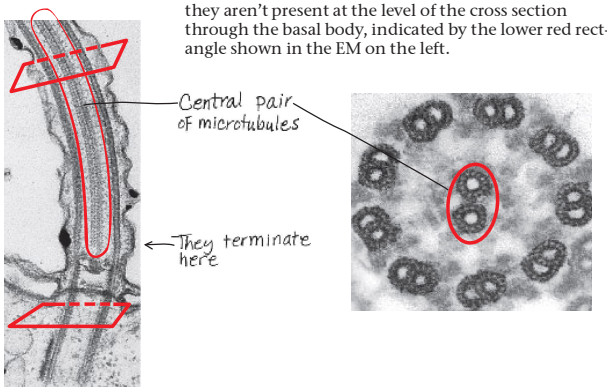


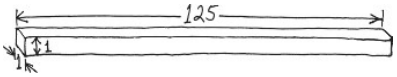
Figure 6.32 (1) nuclear pore, ribosome, proton pump, cyt *c*. (2) As shown in the figure, the enzyme RNA polymerase moves along the DNA, transcribing the genetic information into an mRNA molecule. Given that RNA polymerase is somewhat larger than a nucleosome, the enzyme would not be able to fit between the histone proteins of the nucleosome and the DNA itself. Thus, the group of histone proteins must be separated from or moved along the DNA somehow in order for the RNA polymerase enzyme to access the DNA. (3) A mitochondrion.

Concept Check 6.1

1. Stains used for light microscopy are colored molecules that bind to cell components, affecting the light passing through, while stains used for electron microscopy involve heavy metals that affect the beams of electrons.
2. (a) Light microscope, (b) scanning electron microscope.

Concept Check 6.2

1. See Figure 6.8.
2.



This cell would have the same volume as the cells in columns 2 and 3 in Figure 6.7 but proportionally more surface area than that in column 2 and less than that in column 3. Thus, the surface-to-volume ratio should be greater than 1.2 but less than 6. To obtain the surface area, you would add the area of the six sides (the top, bottom, sides, and ends): 125 + 125 + 125 + 125 + 1 + 1 = 502. The surface-to-volume ratio equals 502 divided by a volume of 125, or roughly 4.0.

Concept Check 6.3

1. Ribosomes in the cytoplasm translate the genetic message, carried from the DNA in the nucleus by mRNA, into a polypeptide chain. **2.** Nucleoli consist of DNA and the ribosomal RNAs (rRNAs) made according to its genes in the DNA, as well as proteins imported from the cytoplasm. Together, the rRNAs and proteins are assembled into large and small ribosomal subunits. (These are exported through nuclear pores to the cytoplasm, where they will participate in polypeptide synthesis.) **3.** Each chromosome consists of one long DNA molecule attached to numerous protein molecules, a combination called chromatin. As a cell begins division, each chromosome becomes "condensed" as its diffuse mass of chromatin coils up.

Concept Check 6.4

1. The primary distinction between rough and smooth ER is the presence of bound ribosomes on the rough ER. Both types of ER make phospholipids, but membrane proteins and secretory proteins are all produced by the ribosomes on the rough ER. The smooth ER also functions in detoxification, carbohydrate metabolism, and storage of calcium ions. **2.** Transport vesicles move membranes and the substances they enclose between other components of the

endomembrane system. **3.** The mRNA is synthesized in the nucleus and then passes out through a nuclear pore to the cytoplasm, where it is translated on a bound ribosome, attached to the rough ER. The protein is synthesized into the lumen of the ER and may be modified there. A transport vesicle carries the protein to the Golgi apparatus. After further modification in the Golgi, another transport vesicle carries it back to the ER, where it will perform its cellular function.

Concept Check 6.5

1. Both organelles are involved in energy transformation, mitochondria in cellular respiration and chloroplasts in photosynthesis. They both have multiple membranes that separate their interiors into compartments. In both organelles, the innermost membranes—cristae, or infoldings of the inner membrane, in mitochondria and the thylakoid membranes in chloroplasts—have large surface areas with embedded enzymes that carry out their main functions. **2.** Yes. Plant cells are able to make their own sugar by photosynthesis, but mitochondria in plant cells (which are, of course, eukaryotic) are the organelles that are able to generate ATP molecules to be used for energy generation from sugars, a function required in all cells. **3.** Mitochondria and chloroplasts are not derived from the ER, nor are they connected physically or via transport vesicles to organelles of the endomembrane system. Mitochondria and chloroplasts are structurally quite different from vesicles derived from the ER, which are bounded by a single membrane.

Concept Check 6.6

1. Dynein arms, powered by ATP, move neighboring doublets of microtubules relative to each other. Because they are anchored within the flagellum or cilium and with respect to one another, the doublets bend instead of sliding past each other. Synchronized bending of the nine microtubule doublets brings about bending of both cilia and flagella. **2.** Such individuals have defects in the microtubule-based movement of cilia and flagella. Thus, the sperm can't move because of malfunctioning or nonexistent flagella, and the airways are compromised because cilia that line the trachea malfunction or don't exist, and so mucus cannot be cleared from the lungs.

Concept Check 6.7

1. The most obvious difference is the presence of direct cytoplasmic connections between cells of plants (plasmodesmata) and animals (gap junctions). These connections result in the cytoplasm being continuous between adjacent cells. **2.** The cell would not be able to function properly and would probably soon die, as the cell wall or ECM must be permeable to allow the exchange of matter between the cell and its external environment. Molecules involved in energy production and use must be allowed entry, as well as those that provide information about the cell's environment. Other molecules, such as products synthesized by the cell for export and the by-products of cellular respiration, must be allowed to exit. **3.** The parts of the protein that face aqueous regions would be expected to have polar or charged (hydrophilic) amino acids, while the parts that go through the membrane would be expected to have nonpolar (hydrophobic) amino acids. You would predict polar or charged amino acids at each end (tail), in the region of the cytoplasmic loop, and in the regions of the two extracellular loops. You would predict nonpolar amino acids in the four regions that go through the membrane between the tails and loops.

Concept Check 6.8

1. *Colpidium colpoda* moves around in freshwater using cilia, projections from the plasma membrane that enclose microtubules in a "9 + 2" arrangement. The interactions between motor proteins and microtubules cause the cilia to bend synchronously, propelling the cell through the water. This is powered by ATP, obtained via breaking down sugars from food in a process that occurs in mitochondria. *C. colpoda* obtains bacteria as their food source, maybe via the same process (involving filopodia) the macrophage uses in Figure 6.31. This process uses actin filaments and other elements of the cytoskeleton to ingest the bacteria. Once ingested, the bacteria are broken down by enzymes in lysosomes. The proteins involved in all of these processes are encoded by genes on DNA in the nucleus of the *C. colpoda*.

Summary of Key Concepts Questions

6.1 Both light and electron microscopy allow cells to be studied visually, thus helping us understand internal cellular structure and the arrangement of cell components. Cell fractionation techniques separate out different groups of cell components, which can then be analyzed biochemically to determine their function. Performing microscopy on the same cell fraction helps to correlate the biochemical function of the cell with the cell component responsible. **6.2** The separation of different functions in different organelles has several advantages. Reactants and enzymes can be concentrated in one area instead of spread throughout the cell. Reactions that require specific conditions, such as a lower pH, can be compartmentalized. And enzymes for specific reactions are often embedded in the membranes that enclose or partition an organelle. **6.3** The nucleus contains the genetic material of the cell in the form of DNA, which specifies messenger RNA, which in turn provides instructions for the synthesis of proteins (including the proteins that make up part of the ribosomes). DNA also codes for ribosomal RNAs, which are combined with proteins in the nucleolus into the subunits of ribosomes. Within the cytoplasm, ribosomes join with mRNA to build polypeptides, using the genetic information in the mRNA. **6.4** Transport vesicles move proteins and membranes synthesized by the rough ER to the Golgi for further processing and then to the plasma membrane, lysosomes, or other locations in the cell, including back to the ER. **6.5** According to the endosymbiont theory, mitochondria originated from an oxygen-using prokaryotic cell that was engulfed by a cell that was ancestral to eukaryotic cells. Over time, the host and endosymbiont evolved into a single unicellular organism containing a mitochondrion. Chloroplasts originated when at least one of these eukaryotic cells containing mitochondria engulfed and then retained a photosynthetic prokaryote, which eventually evolved into a chloroplast. **6.6** Inside the cell, motor proteins interact with components of the cytoskeleton to move cellular parts. Motor proteins "walk" vesicles along microtubules. The movement of cytoplasm within a cell involves interactions of the motor protein myosin and microfilaments (actin filaments). Whole cells can be moved by the rapid bending of flagella or cilia, which is caused by the motor protein–powered sliding of microtubules within these structures. Cell movement can also occur when pseudopodia form at one end of a cell (caused by actin polymerization into a filamentous network), followed by contraction of the cell toward that end; this amoeboid movement is powered by interactions of microfilaments with myosin. Interactions of motor proteins and microfilaments in muscle cells causes muscle contraction that can propel whole organisms (for example, by walking or swimming). **6.7** A plant cell wall is primarily composed of microfibrils of cellulose embedded in other polysaccharides and proteins. The ECM of animal cells is primarily composed of collagen and other protein fibers, such as fibronectin and other glycoproteins. These fibers are embedded in a network of carbohydrate-rich proteoglycans. A plant cell wall provides structural support for the cell and, collectively, for the plant body. In addition to giving support, the ECM of an animal cell allows for communication of environmental changes into the cell. **6.8** The nucleus houses the chromosomes; each is made up of proteins and a single DNA molecule. The genes that exist along the DNA carry the genetic information necessary to make the proteins involved in ingesting a bacterial cell, such as the actin of microfilaments that form pseudopodia (filopodia), the proteins in the mitochondria responsible for providing the necessary ATP, and the enzymes present in the lysosomes that will digest the bacterial cell.

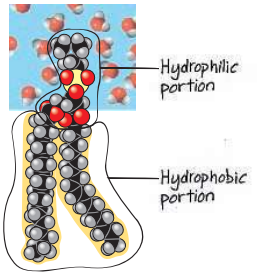
Test Your Understanding

1. B **2.** C **3.** B **4.** A **5.** D **6.** See Figure 6.8.

Chapter 7

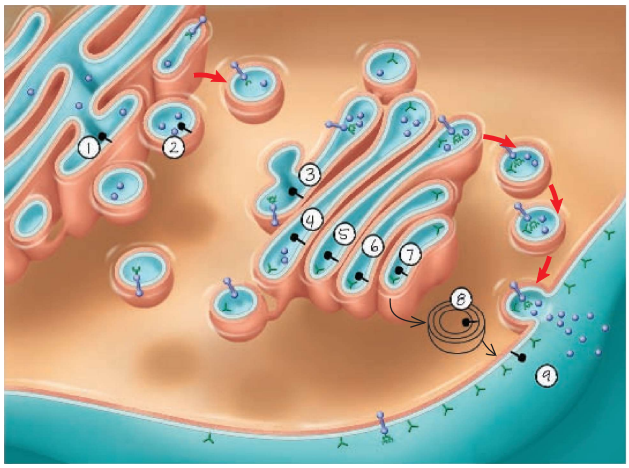
Figure Questions

Figure 7.2



The hydrophilic portion is in contact with an aqueous environment (cytosol or extracellular fluid), and the hydrophobic portion is in contact with the hydrophobic portions of other phospholipids in the interior of the bilayer. **Figure 7.4** You couldn't rule out movement of proteins within membranes of the same species. You might propose that the membrane lipids and proteins from one species weren't able to mingle with those from the other species because of some incompatibility. **Figure 7.7** A transmembrane protein like the dimer in (f) might change its shape upon binding to a particular extracellular matrix (ECM) molecule. The new shape might enable the interior portion of the protein to bind to a second, cytoplasmic protein that would relay the message to the inside of the cell, as shown in (c). **Figure 7.8** The shape of a protein on the HIV surface is likely to be complementary to the shape of the receptor (CD4) and also to that of the co-receptor (CCR5). A molecule with a shape similar to that of the HIV surface protein could bind CCR5, blocking HIV binding. (Another answer would be a molecule that bound to CCR5 and changed the shape of CCR5 so it could no longer bind HIV; in fact, this is how maraviroc works.)

Figure 7.9



The protein would contact the extracellular fluid. (Because one end of the protein is in the ER membrane, no part of the protein extends into the cytoplasm.) The part of the protein not in the membrane extends into the ER lumen. Once the vesicle fuses with the plasma membrane, the "inside" of the ER membrane, facing the lumen, will become the "outside" of the plasma membrane, facing the extracellular fluid. **Figure 7.12** The orange dye would be evenly distributed throughout the solution on both sides of the membrane. The solution levels would not be affected because the orange dye can diffuse through the membrane and equalize its concentration. Thus, no additional osmosis would take place in either direction. In this experiment, the membrane is meant to represent the plasma membrane of a cell. **Figure 7.13** The cells take up water and become turgid, causing the stalk to lose its limpness and become crisp. **Figure 7.16** The sodium ion concentration ($[Na^+]$) is low inside the cell and high outside, while potassium ion concentration ($[K^+]$) is low outside the cell and high inside. Three Na^+ ions are moved out of the cell and two K^+ ions into the cell for each cycle. **Figure 7.17** The diamond solutes are moving into the cell (downward), and the round solutes are moving out of the cell (upward); each is moving against its concentration gradient. **Figure 7.21** (a) In the micrograph of the algal cell, the diameter of the algal cell is about 2.3 times longer than the scale bar, which represents 5 μm, so the diameter of the algal cell is about 11.5 μm. (b) In the micrograph of the coated vesicle, the diameter of the coated vesicle is about 1.2 times longer than the scale bar, which represents 0.25 μm, so the diameter of the coated vesicle is about 0.3 μm. (c) Therefore, the food vacuole around the algal cell will be about 40 × larger than the coated vesicle.

Concept Check 7.1

1. They are on the inside of the transport vesicle membrane. **2.** The grasses living in the cooler region would be expected to have more unsaturated fatty acids in their membranes because those fatty acids remain fluid at lower temperatures. The grasses living immediately adjacent to the hot springs would be expected to have more saturated fatty acids, which would allow the fatty acids to "stack" more closely, making the membranes less fluid and therefore helping them to stay intact at higher temperatures. (In plants, cholesterol is generally not used to moderate the effects of temperature on membrane fluidity because it is found at vastly lower levels in membranes of plant cells than in those of animal cells.)

Concept Check 7.2

1. O_2 and CO_2 are both small, nonpolar molecules that can easily pass through the hydrophobic interior of a membrane. **2.** Water is a polar molecule, so it cannot pass very rapidly through the hydrophobic region in the middle of a phospholipid bilayer. **3.** The hydronium ion is charged, while glycerol is not. Charge is probably more significant than size as a basis for exclusion by the aquaporin channel.

Concept Check 7.3

1. CO_2 is a nonpolar molecule that can diffuse through the plasma membrane. As long as it diffuses away so that the concentration remains low outside the cell, it will continue to exit the cell in this way. (This is the opposite of the case for O_2, described in this section of the text.) **2.** *Paramecium*'s contractile vacuole will become less active. The vacuole pumps out excess water that accumulates in the cell; this accumulation occurs only in a hypotonic environment.

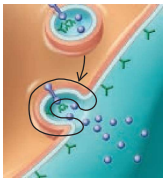
Concept Check 7.4

1. These pumps use ATP. To establish a voltage, ions have to be pumped against their gradients, which requires energy. **2.** Each ion is being transported against its electrochemical gradient. If either ion were transported down its electrochemical gradient, this *would* be considered cotransport. **3.** The internal environment of a lysosome is acidic, so it has a higher concentration of H^+ than does the cytoplasm. Therefore, you might expect the membrane of the lysosome to have a proton pump such as that shown in Figure 7.18 to pump H^+ into the lysosome.

Concept Check 7.5

1. Exocytosis. When a transport vesicle fuses with the plasma membrane, the vesicle membrane becomes part of the plasma membrane.

2.



3. The glycoprotein is synthesized in the ER lumen, moves through the Golgi apparatus, and then travels in a vesicle to the plasma membrane, where it undergoes exocytosis and becomes part of the ECM.

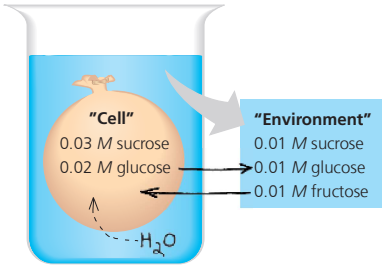
Summary of Key Concepts Questions

7.1 Plasma membranes define the cell by separating the cellular components from the external environment. This allows conditions inside cells to be controlled by membrane proteins, which regulate entry and exit of molecules and even cell function (see Figure 7.7). The processes of life can be carried out inside the controlled environment of the cell, so membranes are crucial. In eukaryotes, membranes also function to subdivide the cytoplasm into different compartments where distinct processes can occur, even under differing conditions such as low or high pH. **7.2** Aquaporins are channel proteins that greatly increase the permeability of a membrane to water molecules, which are polar and therefore do not readily diffuse through the hydrophobic interior of the membrane. **7.3** There will be a net diffusion of water out of a cell into a hypertonic solution. The free water concentration is higher inside the cell than in the solution (where not as many water molecules are free, because many are clustered around the numerous solute particles). **7.4** One of the solutes moved by the cotransporter is actively transported against its concentration gradient. The energy for this transport comes from the concentration gradient of the other solute, which was established by an electrogenic pump that used energy to transport the other solute across the membrane. Because energy is required overall to drive this process (because ATP is used to establish the concentration gradient), it is considered active transport. **7.5** In receptor-mediated endocytosis, specific molecules bind to receptors on the plasma membrane in a region where a coated pit develops. The cell can acquire bulk quantities of those specific molecules when the coated pit forms a vesicle and carries the bound molecules into the cell.

Test Your Understanding

1. B **2.** C **3.** A **4.** C **5.** B

6. (a)



(b) The solution outside is hypotonic. It has less sucrose, which is a nonpenetrating solute. (c) See answer for (a). (d) The artificial cell will become more turgid. (e) Eventually, the two solutions will have the same solute concentrations. Even though sucrose can't move through the membrane, water flow (osmosis) will lead to isotonic conditions.

Chapter 8

Figure Questions

Figure 8.5 With a proton pump (Figure 7.18), the energy stored in ATP is used to pump protons across the membrane and build up a higher (nonrandom) concentration outside of the cell, so this process results in higher free energy. When solute molecules (analogous to hydrogen ions) are uniformly distributed, similar to the random distribution in the bottom of (b), the system has less free energy than it does in the top of (b). The system in the bottom can do no work. Because the concentration gradient created by a proton pump (Figure 7.18) represents higher free energy, this system has the potential to do work once there is a higher concentration of protons on one side of the membrane (as you will see in Figure 9.15). **Figure 8.10** Glutamic acid (Glu) has a carboxyl group at the end of its R group. Glutamine (Gln) has exactly the same structure as glutamic acid, except that there is an amino group in place of the $—O^-$ on the R group. (This O atom on the R group leaves during the synthesis reaction.) Thus, in this figure, Gln is drawn as a Glu with an attached NH_2.

Figure 8.13

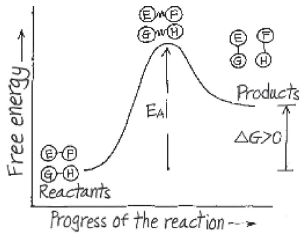
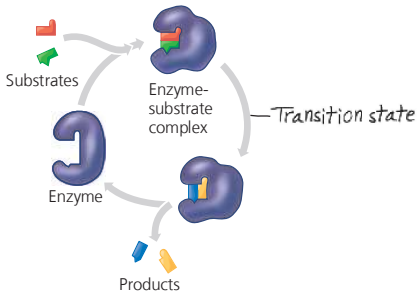


Figure 8.16



Concept Check 8.1

1. The second law is the trend toward randomization, or increasing entropy. When the concentrations of a substance on both sides of a membrane are equal, the distribution is more random than when they are unequal. Diffusion of a substance to a region where it is initially less concentrated increases entropy,

making it an energetically favorable (spontaneous) process as described by the second law. This explains the process seen in Figure 7.11. **2.** The apple has potential energy in its position hanging on the tree, and the sugars and other nutrients it contains have chemical energy. The apple has kinetic energy as it falls from the tree to the ground. Finally, when the apple is digested and its molecules broken down, some of the chemical energy is used to do work, and the rest is lost as thermal energy. **3.** The sugar crystals become less ordered (entropy increases) as they dissolve and become randomly spread out in the water. Over time, the water evaporates, and the crystals form again because the water volume is insufficient to keep them in solution. While the reappearance of sugar crystals may represent a "spontaneous" increase in order (decrease in entropy), it is balanced by the decrease in order (increase in entropy) of the water molecules, which changed from a relatively compact arrangement as liquid water to a much more dispersed and disordered form as water vapor.

Concept Check 8.2

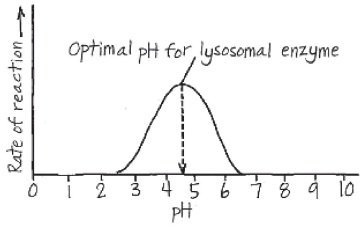
1. Cellular respiration is a spontaneous and exergonic process. The energy released from glucose is used to do work in the cell or is lost as heat. **2.** Catabolism breaks down organic molecules, releasing their chemical energy and resulting in smaller products with more entropy, as when moving from the top to the bottom of Figure 8.5c. Anabolism consumes energy to synthesize larger molecules from simpler ones, as when moving from the bottom to the top of part (c). **3.** The reaction is exergonic because it releases energy—in this case, in the form of light. (This is a nonbiological version of the bioluminescence seen in Figure 8.1.)

Concept Check 8.3

1. ATP usually transfers energy to an endergonic process by phosphorylating (adding a phosphate group to) another molecule. (Exergonic processes, in turn, phosphorylate ADP to regenerate ATP.) **2.** A set of coupled reactions can transform the first combination into the second. Since this is an exergonic process overall, ΔG is negative and the first combination must have more free energy (see Figure 8.10). **3.** Active transport: The solute is being transported against its concentration gradient, which requires energy, provided by ATP hydrolysis.

Concept Check 8.4

1. A spontaneous reaction is a reaction that is exergonic. However, if it has a high activation energy that is rarely attained, the rate of the reaction may be low. **2.** O_2 is required as a substrate to react with the gas. There is O_2 in the lab air, which is why the Bunsen burner has a flame above the gas delivery opening, but there is no O_2 in the rubber tubing or the gas supply. **3.** In the presence of malonate, increase the concentration of the normal substrate (succinate) and see whether the rate of reaction increases. If it does, malonate is a competitive inhibitor.
4.



Concept Check 8.5

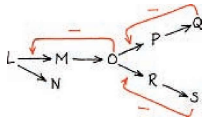
1. The activator binds in such a way that it stabilizes the active form of an enzyme, whereas the inhibitor stabilizes the inactive form. **2.** A catabolic pathway breaks down organic molecules, generating energy that is stored in ATP molecules. In feedback inhibition of such a pathway, ATP (one product) would act as an allosteric inhibitor of an enzyme catalyzing an early step in the catabolic process. When ATP is plentiful, the pathway would be turned off and no more would be made.

Summary of Key Concepts Questions

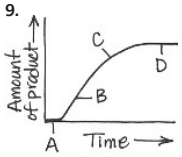
8.1 The process of "ordering" a cell's structure is accompanied by an increase in the entropy (disorder) of the universe. For example, an animal cell takes in highly ordered organic molecules as the source of matter and energy used to build and maintain its structures. In the same process, however, the cell releases heat and the simple molecules of CO_2 and H_2O to the surroundings. The increase in entropy of the latter process offsets the entropy decrease in the former. **8.2** A spontaneous reaction has a negative ΔG and is exergonic. For a chemical reaction to proceed with a net release of free energy ($-\Delta G$), the enthalpy or total energy of the system must decrease ($-\Delta H$), and/or the entropy or disorder must increase (yielding a more negative term, $-T\Delta S$). Spontaneous reactions supply the energy to perform cellular work. **8.3** The free energy released from the hydrolysis of ATP may drive endergonic reactions through the transfer of a phosphate group to a reactant molecule, forming a more reactive phosphorylated intermediate. ATP hydrolysis also powers the mechanical and transport work of a cell, often by powering shape changes in the relevant motor proteins. Cellular respiration, the catabolic breakdown of glucose, provides the energy for the endergonic regeneration of ATP from ADP and $\textcircled{P}_i$.
8.4 Activation energy barriers prevent the complex molecules of the cell, which are rich in free energy, from spontaneously breaking down to less ordered, more stable molecules. Enzymes permit a regulated metabolism by binding to specific substrates and forming enzyme-substrate complexes that selectively lower the E_A for the chemical reactions in a cell. **8.5** A cell tightly regulates its metabolic pathways in response to fluctuating needs for energy and materials. The binding of activators or inhibitors to regulatory sites on allosteric enzymes stabilizes either the active or the inactive form of the subunits. For example, the binding of ATP to a catabolic enzyme in a cell with excess ATP would inhibit that pathway. Such types of feedback inhibition preserve chemical resources within a cell. If ATP supplies are depleted, binding of ADP to the regulatory site of catabolic enzymes would activate that pathway, generating more ATP.

Test Your Understanding

1. B **2.** C **3.** B **4.** A **5.** C **6.** D **7.** C



9.



A. The substrate molecules are entering the pancreatic cells, so no product is made yet.
B. There is sufficient substrate, so the reaction is proceeding at a maximum rate.
C. As the substrate is used up, the rate decreases (the slope is less steep).
D. The line is flat because no new substrate remains and thus no new product appears.

Chapter 9

Figure Questions

Figure 9.2 The C atom is oxidized. The electrons that used to be equally shared with H atoms in methane are now much closer to the O atoms in CO_2 than they are to the C. **Figure 9.3** The reduced form has an extra hydrogen, along with 2 electrons, bound to the carbon shown at the top of the nicotinamide (opposite the N). There are different numbers and positions of double bonds in the two forms: The oxidized form has three double bonds in the ring, while the reduced form has only two. (In organic chemistry you may have learned, or will learn, that three double bonds in a ring are able to "resonate," or act as a ring of electrons. Having three resonant double bonds is more "oxidized" than having only two double bonds in the ring.) In the oxidized form there is a + charge on the N (because it is sharing 4 electron pairs), whereas in the reduced form it is only sharing 3 electron pairs (having a pair of electrons to itself). **Figure 9.6** Because there is no external source of energy for the reaction, it must be exergonic, and the reactants must be at a higher energy level than the products. **Figure 9.8** The removal would probably stop glycolysis, or at least slow it down, since it would push the equilibrium for step 5 toward DHAP (toward the bottom in this figure). If less (or no) glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate were available, step 6 would slow down (or be unable to occur). **Figure 9.12** The electrons in NADH are in a C—H bond (right side of Figure 9.3). In H_2O, the electrons are in an O—H bond. Because the electronegativities of C and H are similar, the electrons are equally shared in NADH. The electronegativity of O is much higher than that of C or H, so the electrons are much closer to O in H_2O and have "fallen" in potential energy. **Figure 9.14** At first, some ATP could be made, since electron transport could proceed as far as complex III, and a small H^+ gradient could be built up. Soon, however, no more electrons could be passed to complex III because it could not be reoxidized by passing its electrons to complex IV. **Figure 9.15** First, there are 2 NADH from the oxidation of pyruvate plus 6 NADH from the citric acid cycle (CAC); $8\,\text{NADH} \times 2.5\,\text{ATP/NADH} = 20\,\text{ATP}$. Second, there are 2 $FADH_2$ from the CAC; $2\,FADH_2 \times 1.5\,\text{ATP/}FADH_2 = 3\,\text{ATP}$. Third, the 2 NADH from glycolysis enter the mitochondrion through one of two types of shuttle. They pass their electrons either to 2 FAD, which become $FADH_2$ and result in 3 ATP, or to 2 NAD^+, which become NADH and result in 5 ATP. Thus, $20 + 3 + 3 = 26$ ATP, or $20 + 3 + 5 = 28$ ATP from all NADH and $FADH_2$.

Concept Check 9.1

1. Both processes include glycolysis, the citric acid cycle, and oxidative phosphorylation. In aerobic respiration, the final electron acceptor is molecular oxygen (O_2); in anaerobic respiration, the final electron acceptor is a different substance. **2.** $C_4H_6O_5$ would be oxidized and NAD^+ would be reduced.

Concept Check 9.2

1. NAD^+ acts as the oxidizing agent in step 6, accepting electrons from glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate (G3P), which thus acts as the reducing agent.

Concept Check 9.3

1. NADH and $FADH_2$; one ATP is produced during substrate-level phosphorylation in step 5. **2.** The CO_2 that we exhale is produced by pyruvate oxidation and the citric acid cycle. **3.** In both cases, the precursor molecule loses a CO_2 molecule and then donates electrons to an electron carrier in an oxidation step. Also, the product has been activated due to the attachment of a CoA group by its S atom.

Concept Check 9.4

1. Oxidative phosphorylation would eventually stop entirely, resulting in no ATP production by this process. Without oxygen to "pull" electrons down the electron transport chain, H^+ would not be pumped into the mitochondrion's intermembrane space and chemiosmosis would not occur. **2.** Decreasing the pH means addition of H^+. This would establish a proton gradient even without the function of the electron transport chain, and we would expect ATP synthase to function and synthesize ATP. (In fact, it was experiments like this that

provided support for chemiosmosis as an energy-coupling mechanism.)
3. One of the components of the electron transport chain, ubiquinone (Q), must be able to diffuse within the membrane. It could not do so if the membrane components were locked rigidly into place.

Concept Check 9.5

1. A derivative of pyruvate, such as acetaldehyde during alcohol fermentation, or pyruvate itself during lactic acid fermentation; O_2; another electron acceptor at the end of an electron transport chain, such as sulfate (SO_4^{2-}) **2.** The cell would need to consume glucose at a rate about 16 times the consumption rate in the aerobic environment (2 ATP are generated by fermentation versus up to 32 ATP by cellular respiration).

Concept Check 9.6

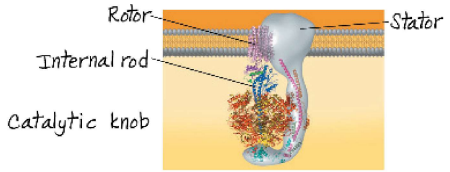
1. The fat is much more reduced; it has many $-CH_2-$ units, and in all these bonds the electrons are equally shared. The electrons present in a carbohydrate molecule are already somewhat oxidized (shared unequally in bonds; there are more C—O and O—H bonds), as quite a few of them are bound to oxygen. Electrons that are equally shared, as in fat, have a higher energy level than electrons that are unequally shared, as in carbohydrates. Thus, fat is a much better fuel than carbohydrate. **2.** When you consume more food than necessary for metabolic processes, your body synthesizes fat as a way of storing energy for later use. **3.** AMP will accumulate, stimulating phosphofructokinase, and thus increasing the rate of glycolysis. Since oxygen is not present, the cell will convert more pyruvate to lactate, providing a supply of ATP. **4.** When O_2 is present, the fatty acid chains containing most of the energy of a fat are oxidized and fed into the citric acid cycle and the electron transport chain. During intense exercise, however, O_2 is scarce in muscle cells, so ATP must be generated by glycolysis alone. A very small part of the fat molecule, the glycerol backbone, can be oxidized via glycolysis, but the amount of energy released by this portion is insignificant compared to that released by the fatty acid chains. (This is why moderate exercise, staying below 70% maximum heart rate, is better for burning fat—because enough O_2 remains available to the muscles.)

Summary of Key Concepts Questions

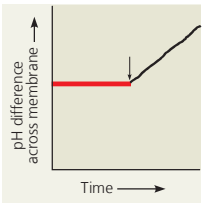
9.1 Most of the ATP produced in cellular respiration comes from oxidative phosphorylation, in which the energy released from redox reactions in an electron transport chain is used to produce ATP. In substrate-level phosphorylation, an enzyme directly transfers a phosphate group to ADP from an intermediate substrate. All ATP production in glycolysis occurs by substrate-level phosphorylation; this form of ATP production also occurs at one step in the citric acid cycle. **9.2** The oxidation of the three-carbon sugar, glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate, yields energy. In this oxidation, electrons and H^+ are transferred to NAD^+, forming NADH, and a phosphate group is attached to the oxidized substrate. ATP is then formed by substrate-level phosphorylation when this phosphate group is transferred to ADP. **9.3** The release of six molecules of CO_2 represents the complete oxidation of glucose. During the processing of two pyruvates to acetyl CoA, the fully oxidized carboxyl groups ($-COO^-$) are given off as 2 CO_2. The remaining four carbons are released as CO_2 in the citric acid cycle as citrate is oxidized back to oxaloacetate. **9.4** The flow of H^+ through the ATP synthase complex causes the rotor and attached rod to rotate, exposing catalytic sites in the knob portion that produce ATP from ADP and $\textcircled{P}_i$. ATP synthases are found in the inner mitochondrial membrane, the plasma membrane of prokaryotes, and membranes within chloroplasts. **9.5** Anaerobic respiration yields more ATP. The 2 ATP produced by substrate-level phosphorylation in glycolysis represent the total energy yield of fermentation. NADH passes its "high-energy" electrons to pyruvate or a derivative of pyruvate, recycling NAD^+ and allowing glycolysis to continue. In anaerobic respiration, the NADH produced during glycolysis, as well as additional molecules of NADH produced when pyruvate is oxidized, are used to generate ATP molecules. An electron transport chain captures the energy of the electrons in NADH via a series of redox reactions; ultimately, the electrons are transferred to an electronegative atom in a molecule other than oxygen. **9.6** The ATP produced by catabolic pathways is used to drive anabolic pathways. Also, many of the intermediates of glycolysis and the citric acid cycle are used in the biosynthesis of a cell's molecules.

Test Your Understanding

1. C **2.** C **3.** A **4.** B **5.** D **6.** A **7.** B
8. Since the overall process of glycolysis results in net production of ATP, it would make sense for the process to slow down when ATP levels have increased substantially. Thus, we would expect ATP to allosterically inhibit phosphofructokinase. **9.** The proton pump in Figures 7.18 and 7.19 is carrying out active transport, using ATP hydrolysis to pump protons against their concentration gradient. Because ATP is required, this is active transport of protons. The ATP synthase in Figure 9.13 is using the flow of protons down their concentration gradient to power ATP synthesis. Because the protons are moving down their concentration gradient, no energy is required, and this is passive transport.
10.



12.



H^+ would continue to be pumped across the membrane into the intermembrane space, increasing the difference between the matrix pH and the intermembrane space pH. H^+ would not be able to flow back through ATP synthase, since the enzyme is inhibited by the poison, so rather than maintaining a constant difference across the membrane, the difference would continue to increase. (Over a longer period of time, the H^+ concentration in the intermembrane space would be so high that no more H^+ would be able to be pumped against the gradient. This wasn't asked for in the question, but if your graph levels off at the right end and this is your reasoning, your answer is correct.)

Chapter 10

Figure Questions

Figure 10.11 In the leaf, most of the chlorophyll electrons excited by photon absorption are used to power the reactions of photosynthesis. **Figure 10.15** The person at the top of the photosystem I tower would not turn to his left and throw his electron into the NADPH bucket. Instead, he would throw it onto the top of the ramp at his right, next to the photosystem II tower. The electron would then roll down the ramp, get energized by a photon, and return to him. This cycle would continue as long as light was available. (This is why it's called cyclic electron flow.) **Figure 10.16** You would (a) decrease the pH outside the mitochondrion (thus increasing the H^+ concentration) and (b) increase the pH in the chloroplast stroma (thus decreasing the H^+ concentration). In both cases, this would generate an H^+ gradient across the membrane that would cause ATP synthase to synthesize ATP. **Figure 10.17** Steps that increase $[H^+]$ in the thylakoid space or decrease $[H^+]$ in the stroma contribute to the $[H^+]$ concentration gradient across the thylakoid membrane. In step 2, water is split in the thylakoid space, releasing 2 H^+ and increasing $[H^+]$. In step 3, as electrons travel down the electron transport chain, 4 H^+ are pumped into the thylakoid space, increasing $[H^+]$. In step 5, NADPH formation uses an H^+ from the stroma, decreasing $[H^+]$ in the stroma. **Figure 10.22** The gene encoding hexokinase is part of the DNA of a chromosome in the nucleus. There, the gene is transcribed into mRNA, which is transported to the cytoplasm where it is translated on a free ribosome into a polypeptide. The polypeptide folds into a functional protein with secondary and tertiary structure. Once functional, it carries out the first reaction of glycolysis in the cytoplasm.

Concept Check 10.1

1. Because heterotrophs cannot photosynthesize, they cannot capture the energy of sunlight and produce energy-rich compounds like sugars, as autotrophs can. Sugars are oxidized by cellular respiration, providing energy (in the form of ATP) for cellular processes. Without this ability, heterotrophs depend on autotrophs to provide sugars as the food molecules that fuel their vital processes. **2.** The main product of fossil fuel combustion (for example, by cars) is CO_2. Placing containers of algae near sources of CO_2 emission makes sense because the algae need CO_2 to carry out photosynthesis. The higher the CO_2 concentration, the higher will be the rate of algal photosynthesis. (At the same time, algae would be reducing the CO_2 concentration in those areas, which would otherwise contribute to climate change; see Concept 1.1.)

Concept Check 10.2

1. CO_2 enters the leaves via stomata, and, being a nonpolar molecule, can cross the leaf cell membrane and the chloroplast membranes to reach the stroma of the chloroplast. **2.** Using ^{18}O, a heavy isotope of oxygen, as a label, researchers were able to confirm van Niel's hypothesis that the oxygen atoms in O_2 produced during photosynthesis comes from H_2O, not from CO_2. **3.** The light reactions could *not* keep producing NADPH and ATP without the $NADP^+$, ADP, and $\textcircled{P}_i$ that the Calvin cycle generates. The two cycles are interdependent.

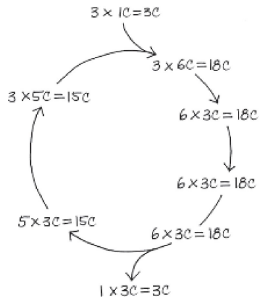
Concept Check 10.3

1. Green, because green light is mostly transmitted and reflected—not absorbed—by photosynthetic pigments **2.** Water (H_2O) is the initial electron donor; $NADP^+$ accepts electrons at the end of the electron transport chain, becoming reduced to NADPH. **3.** In this experiment, the rate of ATP synthesis would slow and eventually stop. Because the added compound would not allow a proton gradient to build up across the membrane, ATP synthase could not catalyze ATP production.

Concept Check 10.4

1. 6, 18, 12 **2.** The more potential energy and reducing power a molecule stores, the more energy and reducing power are required for the formation of that molecule. Glucose is a valuable energy source because it is highly reduced (has lots of C—H bonds), storing lots of potential energy in its electrons. To reduce CO_2 to glucose, a large amount of energy and a lot of reducing power are required in the form of large numbers of ATP and NADPH molecules, respectively. **3.** Yes, it would inhibit the dark reactions. The light reactions require ADP and $NADP^+$, which would not be formed in sufficient quantities from ATP and NADPH if the Calvin cycle stopped.

4.



For every three turns of the Calvin cycle, the total number of carbon atoms remains constant because three carbons enter as part of CO_2 molecules, replacing the three that left as part of a G3P molecule. **5.** In glycolysis, G3P acts as an intermediate. The six-carbon sugar fructose 1,6-bisphosphate is cleaved into two three-carbon sugars, one of which is G3P. The other is an isomer called dihydroxyacetone phosphate (DHAP), which can be converted to G3P by an isomerase. Because G3P is the substrate for the next enzyme, it is constantly removed, and the reaction equilibrium is pulled in the direction of conversion of DHAP to more G3P. In the Calvin cycle, G3P acts as both an intermediate and a product. For every three CO_2 molecules that enter the cycle, six G3P molecules are formed, five of which must remain in the cycle and become rearranged to regenerate three five-carbon RuBP molecules. The one remaining G3P is a product, which can be thought of as the result of "reducing" the three CO_2 molecules that entered the cycle into a three-carbon sugar that can later be used to generate energy.

Concept Check 10.5

1. Photorespiration decreases photosynthetic output by adding O_2, instead of CO_2, to the Calvin cycle. As a result, no sugar is generated (no carbon is fixed), and O_2 is used rather than generated. **2.** Without PS II, no O_2 is generated in bundle-sheath cells. This avoids the problem of O_2 competing with CO_2 for binding to rubisco in these cells. **3.** Both problems are caused by a drastic change in Earth's atmosphere due to burning of fossil fuels. The increase in CO_2 concentration affects ocean chemistry by decreasing pH, thus affecting calcification by marine organisms. On land, CO_2 concentration and air temperature are conditions that plants have become adapted to, and changes in these characteristics have a strong effect on photosynthesis by plants. Thus, alteration of these two fundamental factors could have critical effects on organisms all around the planet, in all different habitats. **4.** You would expect that C_4 and CAM species would replace many of the C_3 species.

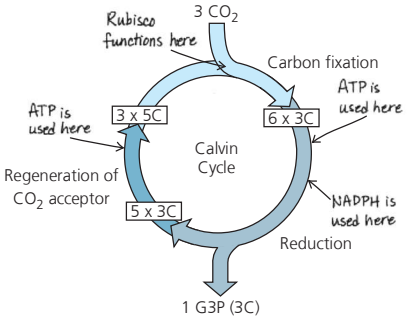
Concept Check 10.6

1. Plants can break down the sugar they make (in the form of glucose) by cellular respiration, producing ATPs for various cellular processes such as endergonic chemical reactions, transport of substances across membranes, and movement of molecules in the cell. ATPs are also used for the movement of chloroplasts during cellular streaming in some plant cells (see Figure 6.26).

Summary of Key Concepts Questions

10.1 Photosynthesizing autotrophs are called producers because they use sunlight as energy to make their own organic molecules (including sugars) from CO_2 and H_2O. Heterotrophs are called consumers because they cannot make their own food and therefore must feed on other organisms, either autotrophs or other heterotrophs. Heterotrophs that consume the remains of dead organisms are called decomposers. Photosynthesis enables almost all organisms to survive because it makes food for photosynthesizing autotrophs, which in turn are food for most heterotrophs. **10.2** CO_2 and H_2O are the products of cellular respiration; they are the reactants in photosynthesis. In respiration, glucose is oxidized to CO_2 and electrons are passed through an electron transfer chain from glucose to O_2, producing H_2O. In photosynthesis, H_2O is the source of electrons, which are energized by light, temporarily stored in NADPH, and used to reduce CO_2 to carbohydrate. **10.3** The action spectrum of photosynthesis shows that some wavelengths of light that are not absorbed by chlorophyll *a* are still effective at promoting photosynthesis. The light-harvesting complexes of photosystems contain accessory pigments such as chlorophyll *b* and carotenoids, which absorb different wavelengths and pass the energy to chlorophyll *a*, broadening the spectrum of light usable for photosynthesis.

10.4



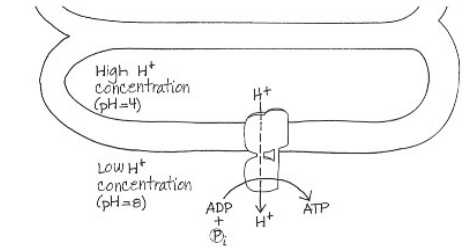
In the reduction phase of the Calvin cycle, ATP phosphorylates a three-carbon compound, and NADPH then reduces this compound to G3P. ATP is also used in the regeneration phase, when five molecules of G3P are converted to three molecules of the five-carbon compound RuBP. Rubisco catalyzes the first step of carbon fixation—the addition of CO_2 to RuBP.

10.5 Both C_4 photosynthesis and CAM photosynthesis involve initial fixation of CO_2 to produce a four-carbon compound (in mesophyll cells in C_4 plants and at night in CAM plants). These compounds are then broken down to release CO_2 (in the bundle-sheath cells in C_4 plants and during the day in CAM plants). ATP is required for recycling the molecule that is used initially to combine with CO_2. These pathways avoid the photorespiration that consumes ATP and reduces the photosynthetic output of C_3 plants when they close stomata on hot, dry, bright days. Thus, hot, arid climates would favor C_4 and CAM plants. **10.6** Sucrose made in the leaves of plants is transported through veins to nonphotosynthetic parts of the plant, where some of it is oxidized by cellular respiration, producing ATP for cellular processes. Other sugar molecules enter anabolic pathways, where they are used for synthesis of proteins, lipids, and polysaccharides such as cellulose, the main component of cell walls. Excess sugar is stockpiled as glucose subunits of the polysaccharide starch.

Test Your Understanding

1. D **2.** B **3.** C **4.** A **5.** A **6.** B **7.** C

10.



The ATP would end up outside the thylakoid. The thylakoids were able to make ATP in the dark because the researchers set up an artificial proton concentration gradient across the thylakoid membrane; thus, the light reactions were not necessary to establish the H^+ gradient required for ATP synthesis by ATP synthase.

Chapter 11

Figure Questions

Figure 11.6 Epinephrine is a signaling molecule outside the cell; presumably, it binds to a cell-surface receptor protein and thus is part of the signal reception step. **Figure 11.8** This is an example of passive transport. The ion is moving down its concentration gradient, and no energy is required. **Figure 11.9** The aldosterone molecule, a steroid, doesn't need a receptor protein—it is hydrophobic and can therefore pass directly through the hydrophobic lipid bilayer of the plasma membrane into the cell. (Hydrophilic molecules cannot do this.) **Figure 11.10** The entire phosphorylation cascade wouldn't operate. Regardless of whether or not the signaling molecule was bound, protein kinase 2 would always be inactive and would not be able to activate the purple-colored protein leading to the cellular response. **Figure 11.11** The signaling molecule (cAMP) would remain in its active form and would continue to signal; the pathway would remain active even in the absence of ligand because the cAMP would persist.

Figure 11.12

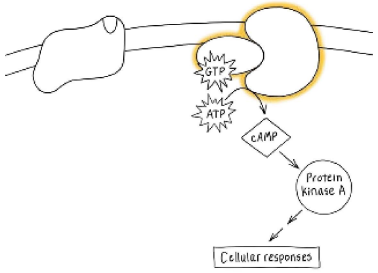


Figure 11.14 The Ca^{2+} pump shown in Figure 11.13 is carrying out active transport of Ca^{2+} ions against their concentration gradient, using ATP for energy. These pumps help maintain a significantly lower $[Ca^{2+}]$ in the cytoplasm than outside the cell and inside the ER. The Ca^{2+} channel proteins seen in Figure 11.14 are facilitating diffusion of Ca^{2+} down its concentration gradient; here, the Ca^{2+} is moving from inside the ER, where it is more concentrated, to the cytoplasm. Because the ion is moving down its concentration gradient, no energy is required. **Figure 11.16** 100,000,000 (one hundred million, or 10^8) glucose molecules are released just from one epinephrine binding to the receptor. The first step results in 100× amplification (one epinephrine activates 100 G proteins); the next step does not amplify the response; the next step is a 100× amplification (10^2 active adenylyl cyclase molecules to 10^4 cyclic AMPs); the next step does not amplify; the next two steps are each 10× amplifications, and the final step is a 100× amplification. **Figure 11.17** The signaling pathway shown in Figure 11.14 leads to the splitting of PIP_2 into the second messengers DAG and IP_3, which produce different responses. (The response elicited by DAG is mentioned but not shown.) The pathway shown for cell B is similar in that it branches and leads to two responses.

Concept Check 11.1

1. The two cells of opposite mating type (**a** and **α**) each secrete a unique signaling molecule, which can only be bound by receptors carried on cells of the opposite mating type. Thus, the **a** mating factor cannot bind to another **a** cell and cause it to grow toward the first **a** cell. Only an **α** cell can "receive" the signaling molecule and respond by directed growth. **2.** Glycogen phosphorylase acts in the third stage, the cellular response to epinephrine signaling. **3.** Glucose 1-phosphate would not be generated because the activation of the

enzyme requires an intact cell, with an intact receptor in the membrane and an intact signal transduction pathway. The enzyme cannot be activated directly by interaction with the signaling molecule in the cell-free mixture.

Concept Check 11.2

1. NGF is water-soluble (hydrophilic), so it cannot pass through the lipid membrane to reach intracellular receptors, as steroid hormones can. Therefore, you'd expect the NGF receptor to be in the plasma membrane—which is, in fact, the case. **2.** The cell with the faulty receptor would not be able to respond appropriately to the signaling molecule when it was present. This would most likely have dire consequences for the cell since regulation of the cell's activities by this receptor would not occur appropriately. **3.** Binding of a ligand to a receptor changes the shape of the receptor, altering the ability of the receptor to transmit a signal. Binding of an allosteric regulator to an enzyme changes the shape of the enzyme, either promoting or inhibiting enzyme activity.

Concept Check 11.3

1. A protein kinase is an enzyme that transfers a phosphate group from ATP to a protein, usually activating that protein (often a second type of protein kinase). Many signal transduction pathways include a series of such interactions, in which each phosphorylated protein kinase in turn phosphorylates the next protein kinase in the series. Such phosphorylation cascades carry a signal from outside the cell to the cellular protein(s) that will carry out the response. **2.** Protein phosphatases reverse the effects of the kinases by dephosphorylation, and unless the signaling molecule is at a high enough concentration that it is continuously rebinding the receptor, the kinase molecules will all be returned to their inactive states by phosphatases. **3.** The signal that is being transduced is the *information* that a signaling molecule is bound to the cell-surface receptor. Information is transduced by way of sequential protein-protein interactions that change protein shapes, causing them to function in a way that passes the signal (the information) along.
4. The IP_3-gated channel would open, allowing calcium ions to flow out of the ER and into the cytoplasm, which would raise the cytosolic Ca^{2+} concentration.

Concept Check 11.4

1. At each step in a cascade of sequential activations, one molecule or ion may activate numerous molecules functioning in the next step. This causes the response to be amplified at each such step and overall results in a large amplification of the original signal. **2.** Scaffolding proteins hold molecular components of signaling pathways in a complex with each other. Different scaffolding proteins would assemble different collections of proteins, facilitating different molecular interactions and leading to different cellular responses in the two cells.
3. A malfunctioning protein phosphatase would not be able to dephosphorylate a particular receptor or relay protein. As a result, the signaling pathway, once activated, would not be able to be terminated. (In fact, one study found altered protein phosphatases in cells from 25% of colorectal tumors.) **4.** The proteins in the two cells are different, so the cellular response is different. In heart muscle cells, the pathway shown in Figure 11.16 allows glucose to fuel faster muscle contractions and heart rate. In respiratory muscles, the relay proteins must be different, so that the effect is to block muscle contraction. (In fact, the steps are the same through protein kinase A (PKA), but in respiratory muscle cells, PKA phosphorylates a protein that is required for muscle contraction—and in this case, phosphorylation *inactivates* that protein. So muscle contraction cannot occur.)

Concept Check 11.5

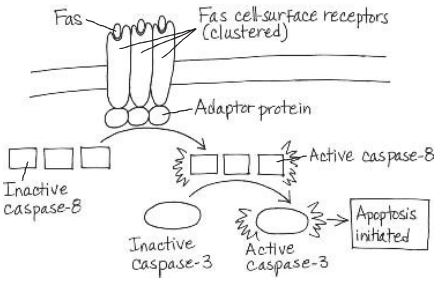
1. In formation of the hand or paw in mammals, cells in the regions between the digits are programmed to undergo apoptosis. This serves to shape the digits of the hand or paw so that they are not webbed. (A lack of apoptosis in these regions in water birds results in webbed feet.) **2.** If a receptor protein for a death-signaling molecule were defective such that it was activated even in the absence of the death signal, this would lead to apoptosis when it wouldn't normally occur. Similar defects in any of the proteins in the signaling pathway would have the same effect if the defective proteins activated relay or response proteins in the absence of interaction with the previous protein or second messenger in the pathway. Conversely, if any protein in the pathway were defective in its ability to respond to an interaction with an early protein or other molecule or ion, apoptosis would not occur when it normally should. For example, a receptor protein for a death-signaling ligand might not be able to be activated, even when ligand was bound. This would stop the signal from being transduced into the cell.

Summary of Key Concepts Questions

11.1 A cell is able to respond to a hormone only if it has a receptor protein on the cell surface or inside the cell that can bind to the hormone. The response to a hormone depends on the specific signal transduction pathway within the cell, which will lead to the specific cellular response. The response can vary for different types of cells. **11.2** Both GPCRs and RTKs have an extracellular binding site for a signaling molecule (ligand) and one or more α-helical regions of the polypeptide that spans the membrane. A GPCR functions singly, while RTKs tend to dimerize or form larger groups of RTKs. GPCRs usually trigger a single transduction pathway, whereas the multiple activated tyrosines on an RTK dimer may trigger several different transduction pathways at the same time. **11.3** A protein kinase is an enzyme that adds a phosphate group to another protein. Protein kinases are often part of a phosphorylation cascade that transduces a signal.
A second messenger is a small, nonprotein molecule or ion that rapidly diffuses and relays a signal throughout a cell. Both protein kinases and second messengers can operate in the same pathway. For example, the second messenger cAMP often activates protein kinase A, which then phosphorylates other proteins. **11.4** In G protein-coupled pathways, the GTPase portion of a G protein converts GTP to GDP, inactivating the G protein. Protein phosphatases remove phosphate groups from activated proteins, thus stopping a phosphorylation cascade of protein kinases. Phosphodiesterase converts cAMP to AMP, thus reducing the effect of cAMP in a signal transduction pathway. **11.5** The basic mechanism of controlled cell suicide evolved early in eukaryotic evolution, and the genetic basis for these pathways has been conserved during animal evolution. Such a mechanism is essential to the development and maintenance of all animals.

Test Your Understanding

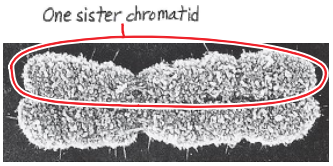
1. D **2.** A **3.** B **4.** A **5.** C **6.** C **7.** C **8.** This is one possible drawing of the pathway. (Similar drawings would also be correct.)



Chapter 12

Figure Questions

Figure 12.4



Circling the other chromatid instead would also be correct. **Figure 12.5** The chromosome has four arms. The single (duplicated) chromosome in 2 becomes two (unduplicated) chromosomes in 3. The duplicated chromosome in step 2 is considered one single chromosome.
Figure 12.7 12; 2; 2; 1
Figure 12.8

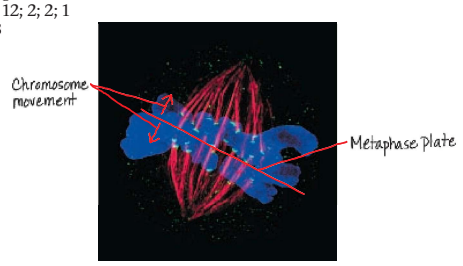


Figure 12.9 The mark would have moved toward the pole closer to it. The lengths of fluorescent microtubules between that pole and the mark would have decreased, while the lengths between the chromosomes and the mark would have remained the same. **Figure 12.14** In both cases, the G_1 nucleus would have remained in G_1 until the time it normally would have entered the S phase. Chromosome condensation and spindle formation would not have occurred until the S and G_2 phases had been completed. **Figure 12.16** Passing the G_2 checkpoint in the diagram corresponds to the beginning of the "Time" axis of the graph, and entry into the mitotic phase (yellow background on the diagram) corresponds to the peaks of MPF activity and cyclin concentration on the graph (see the yellow M banner over the peaks). During G_1 and S phase in the diagram, Cdk is present without cyclin, so on the graph both cyclin concentration and MPF activity are low. The curved purple gradient arrow in the diagram shows increasing cyclin concentration, seen on the graph during the end of S phase and throughout G_2 phase. Then the cell cycle begins again. **Figure 12.17** The cell would divide under conditions where it was inappropriate to do so. If the daughter cells and their descendants also ignored either of the checkpoints and divided, there would soon be an abnormal mass of cells. (This type of inappropriate cell division can contribute to the development of cancer.) **Figure 12.18** The cells in the vessel with PDGF would not be able to respond to the growth factor signal and thus would not divide. The culture would resemble that without the added PDGF.

Concept Check 12.1

1. 1; 1; 2 **2.** 39; 39; 78

Concept Check 12.2

1. 6 chromosomes; they are duplicated; 12 chromatids **2.** Following mitosis, cytokinesis results in two genetically identical daughter cells in both plant cells and animal cells. However, the mechanism of dividing the cytoplasm is different in animals and plants. In an animal cell, cytokinesis occurs by cleavage, which divides the parent cell in two with a contractile ring of actin filaments. In a plant cell, a cell plate forms in the middle of the cell and grows until its membrane fuses with the plasma membrane of the parent cell. A new cell wall grows inside the cell plate, thus eventually between the two new cells. **3.** From the end of S phase in interphase through the end of metaphase in mitosis **4.** During eukaryotic cell division, tubulin is involved in spindle formation and chromosome movement, while actin functions during cytokinesis. In bacterial binary fission, it's the opposite: Actin-like molecules are thought to move the daughter bacterial chromosomes to opposite ends of the cell, and tubulin-like molecules are thought to act in daughter cell separation. **5.** A kinetochore connects the spindle (a motor; note that it has motor proteins) to a chromosome (the cargo it will move). **6.** Microtubules made up of tubulin in the cell provide "rails" along which vesicles and other organelles can travel, based on interactions of motor proteins with tubulin in the microtubules. In muscle cells, actin in microfilaments interacts with myosin filaments to cause muscle contraction.

Concept Check 12.3

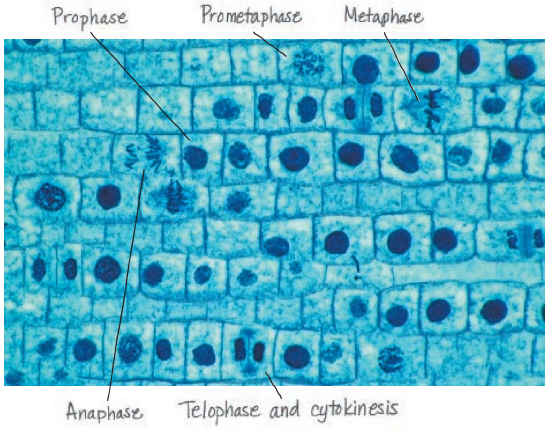
1. The nucleus on the right was originally in the G_1 phase; therefore, it had not yet duplicated its chromosomes. The nucleus on the left was in the M phase, so it had already duplicated its chromosomes. **2.** A sufficient amount of MPF has to exist for a cell to pass the G_2 checkpoint; this occurs through the accumulation of cyclin proteins, which combine with Cdk to form (active) MPF. MPF then phosphorylates other proteins, initiating mitosis. **3.** The intracellular receptor (for example, an estrogen receptor), once activated, would be able to act as a transcription factor in the nucleus, turning on genes that may cause the cell to pass a checkpoint and divide. The RTK receptor, when activated by a ligand, would form a dimer, and each subunit of the dimer would phosphorylate the other. This would lead to a series of signal transduction steps, ultimately turning on genes in the nucleus. As in the case of the estrogen receptor, the genes would code for proteins necessary to cause the cell to pass a checkpoint and divide.

Summary of Key Concepts Questions

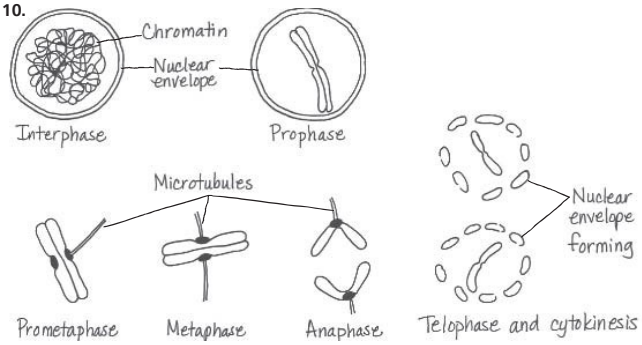
12.1 The DNA of a eukaryotic cell is packaged into structures called *chromosomes*. Each chromosome is a long molecule of DNA, which carries hundreds to thousands of genes, with associated proteins that maintain chromosome structure and help control gene activity. This DNA-protein complex is called *chromatin*. The chromatin of each chromosome is long and thin when the cell is not dividing. Prior to cell division, each chromosome is duplicated, and the resulting sister *chromatids* are attached to each other by proteins at the centromeres and, for many species, all along their lengths (a phenomenon called sister chromatid cohesion). **12.2** A chromosome exists as a single DNA molecule in G_1 of interphase and in anaphase and telophase of mitosis. During S phase, DNA replication produces two sister chromatids per chromosome, which persist during G_2 of interphase and through prophase, prometaphase, and metaphase of mitosis.
12.3 Checkpoints allow cellular surveillance mechanisms to determine whether the cell is prepared to go to the next stage. Internal and external signals move a cell past these checkpoints. The G_1 checkpoint determines whether a cell will proceed forward in the cell cycle or switch into the G_0 phase. The signals to pass this checkpoint often are external, such as growth factors. Passing the G_2 checkpoint requires sufficient numbers of active MPF complexes, which in turn orchestrate several mitotic events. MPF also initiates degradation of its cyclin component, terminating the M phase. The M phase will not begin again until sufficient cyclin is produced during the next S and G_2 phases. The signal to pass the M phase checkpoint is not activated until all chromosomes are attached to kinetochore fibers and are aligned at the metaphase plate. Only then will sister chromatid separation occur.

Test Your Understanding

1. B **2.** A **3.** C **4.** C **5.** A **6.** B **7.** A **8.** D **9.** See Figure 12.7 for a description of major events. Only one cell is indicated for each stage, but other correct answers are also present in this micrograph.



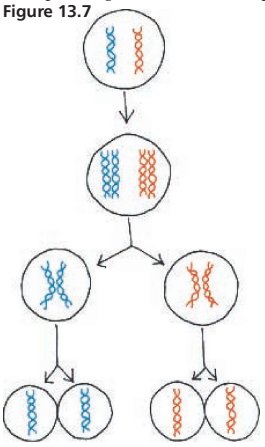
10.



Chapter 13

Figure Questions

Figure 13.3 The chromosomes in a karyotype are photographed at their most condensed, at metaphase, which occurs during M phase of the cell cycle. At this point, the chromosomes have already been duplicated during S phase, so each chromosome exists as two sister chromatids. **Figure 13.4** Two sets of chromosomes are present. Three pairs of homologous chromosomes are present. One long chromosome would be red (maternal), and one would be blue (paternal); one medium chromosome would be red, and one would be blue; one short chromosome would be red, and one would be blue. **Figure 13.6** In (a), haploid cells do not undergo mitosis. In (b), haploid spores undergo mitosis to form the gametophyte, and haploid cells of the gametophyte undergo mitosis to form gametes. In (c), haploid cells undergo mitosis to form either a multicellular haploid organism or a new unicellular haploid organism, and these haploid cells undergo mitosis to form gametes.
Figure 13.7



(A short strand of DNA is shown here for simplicity, but each chromosome or chromatid contains a very long coiled and folded DNA molecule.) **Figure 13.8** If a cell with six chromosomes undergoes two rounds of mitosis, each of the four resulting cells will have six chromosomes, while the four cells resulting from meiosis in Figure 13.8 each have three chromosomes. In mitosis, DNA replication (and thus chromosome duplication) precedes each prophase, ensuring that daughter cells have the same number of chromosomes as the parent cell. In contrast, in meiosis, DNA replication occurs only before prophase I (not before prophase II). Thus, in two rounds of mitosis, the chromosomes duplicate twice and divide twice, while in meiosis, the chromosomes duplicate once and divide twice.

Figure 13.9

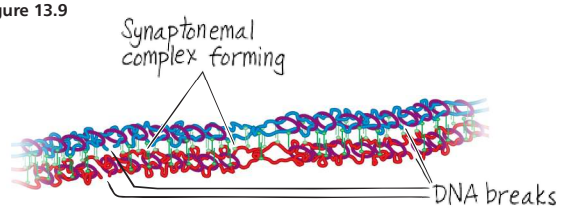


Figure 13.10 Yes. Each of the six chromosomes (three per cell) shown in telophase I has one nonrecombinant chromatid and one recombinant chromatid. Therefore, eight (2 possibilities for the first chromosome × 2 for the second × 2 for the third) possible sets of chromosomes can be generated for the cell on the left and eight for the cell on the right.

Concept Check 13.1

1. Parents pass genes to their offspring; by dictating the production of messenger RNAs (mRNAs), the genes program cells to make specific enzymes and other proteins, whose cumulative action produces an individual's inherited traits.
2. Such organisms reproduce by mitosis, which generates offspring whose genomes are exact copies of the parent's genome (in the absence of mutation). **3.** She should clone (generate a clone of) it. Crossbreeding it with another plant would generate offspring that have additional variation, which she no longer desires now that she has obtained her ideal orchid.

Concept Check 13.2

1. Each of the six chromosomes is duplicated, so each contains two DNA molecules (double helices), so there are 12 DNA molecules in the cell. The haploid

number, *n*, is 3. One set is always haploid. **2.** There are 23 pairs of chromosomes and two sets. **3.** A human diploid cell would have 23 "pairs of shoes." A haploid cell would have 23 "shoes," one of each pair. **4.** This organism has the life cycle shown in Figure 13.6c, since the zygote doesn't undergo mitosis but immediately undergoes meiosis. Therefore, it must be a fungus or a protist, perhaps an alga.

Concept Check 13.3

1. The chromosomes are similar in that each is composed of two sister chromatids, and the individual chromosomes are positioned similarly at the metaphase plate. The chromosomes differ in that in a mitotically dividing cell, sister chromatids of each chromosome are genetically identical, but in a meiotically dividing cell, sister chromatids are genetically distinct because of crossing over in meiosis I. Moreover, the chromosomes in metaphase of mitosis can be a diploid set or a haploid set, but the chromosomes in metaphase of meiosis II always consist of a haploid set. **2.** If crossing over did not occur, the two homologs would not be associated in any way. This is because each sister chromatid would be either all maternal or all paternal DNA, and the single DNA molecule would therefore not have been joined to the DNA of a nonsister chromatid, holding the complex together. The lack of association of homologs could easily result in the incorrect arrangement of homologs during metaphase I (both might go toward the same pole, for instance) and ultimately in formation of gametes with an abnormal number of chromosomes.

Concept Check 13.4

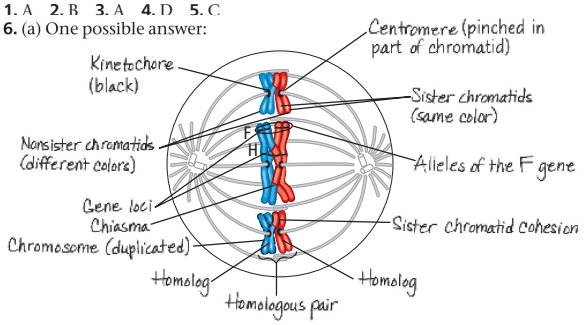
1. Mutations in a gene lead to the different versions (alleles) of that gene.
2. Without crossing over, independent assortment of chromosomes during meiosis I theoretically can generate 2^n possible haploid gametes, and random fertilization can produce $2^n \times 2^n$ possible diploid zygotes. Because the haploid number (*n*) of grasshoppers is 23 and that of fruit flies is 4, two grasshoppers would be expected to produce a greater variety of zygotes than would two fruit flies. **3.** If the segments of the maternal and paternal chromatids that undergo crossing over are genetically identical and thus have the same two alleles for every gene, then the recombinant chromosomes will be genetically equivalent to the parental chromosomes. Crossing over contributes to genetic variation only when it involves the rearrangement of different alleles.

Summary of Key Concepts Questions

13.1 Genes program specific traits, and offspring inherit their genes from each parent, accounting for similarities in their appearance to one or the other parent. Humans reproduce sexually, which ensures new combinations of genes (and thus traits) in the offspring. Consequently, the offspring are not clones of their parents (which would be the case if humans reproduced asexually). **13.2** Animals and plants both reproduce sexually, alternating meiosis with fertilization. Both have haploid gametes that unite to form a diploid zygote, which then goes on to divide mitotically, forming a diploid multicellular organism. In animals, haploid cells become gametes and don't undergo mitosis, while in plants, the haploid cells resulting from meiosis undergo mitosis to form a haploid multicellular organism, the gametophyte. This organism then goes on to generate haploid gametes. (In plants such as trees, the gametophyte is quite reduced in size and not obvious to the casual observer.) **13.3** At the end of meiosis I, the two members of a homologous pair end up in different cells, so they cannot pair up and undergo crossing over during prophase II. **13.4** First, during independent assortment in metaphase I, each pair of homologous chromosomes lines up independently of each other pair at the metaphase plate, so a daughter cell of meiosis I randomly inherits either a maternal or a paternal chromosome of each pair. Second, due to crossing over, each chromosome is not exclusively maternal or paternal, but includes regions at the ends of the chromatid from a nonsister chromatid (a chromatid of the other homolog). (The nonsister segment can also be in an internal region of the chromatid if a second crossover occurs beyond the first one before the end of the chromatid.) This provides much additional diversity in the form of new combinations of alleles. Third, random fertilization ensures even more variation since any sperm of a large number containing many possible genetic combinations can fertilize any egg of a similarly large number of possible combinations.

Test Your Understanding

1. A **2.** B **3.** A **4.** D **5.** C
6. (a) One possible answer:

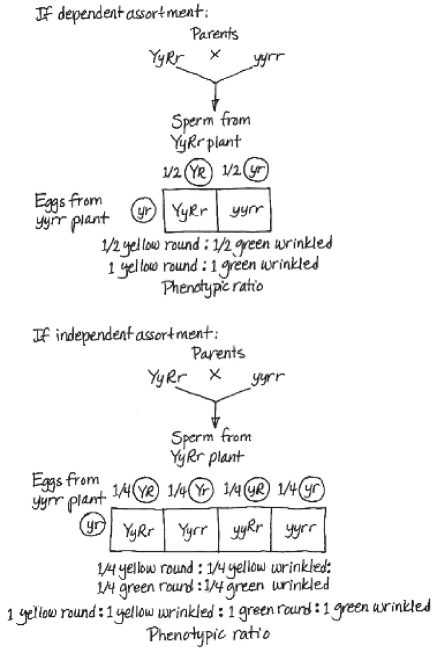


(b) A haploid set is made up of one long, one medium, and one short chromosome, no matter what combination of colors. For example, one red long, one blue medium, and one red short chromosome make up a haploid set. (In cases where crossovers have occurred, a haploid set of one color may include segments of chromatids of the other color.) All red and blue chromosomes together make up a diploid set. (c) Metaphase I **7.** This cell must be undergoing meiosis because the two homologs of a homologous pair are associated with each other at the metaphase plate; this does not occur in mitosis. Also, chiasmata are clearly present, meaning that crossing over has occurred, another process unique to meiosis.

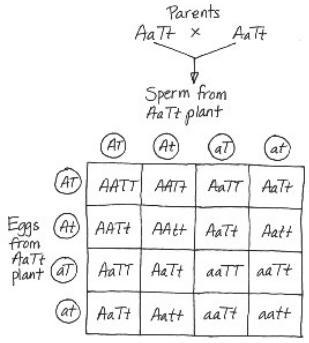
Chapter 14

Figure Questions

Figure 14.3 All offspring would have purple flowers. (The ratio of purple to white flowers would be 1 purple: 0 white.) The P generation plants are true-breeding, so mating two purple-flowered plants produces the same result as self-pollination: All the offspring have the same trait. If Mendel had stopped after the F_1 generation, he could have concluded that the white factor had disappeared entirely and would not ever reappear.
Figure 14.8



Yes, this cross would also have allowed Mendel to make different predictions for the two hypotheses, thereby allowing him to distinguish the correct one.
Figure 14.10 Your classmate would probably point out that the F_1 generation hybrids show an intermediate phenotype between those of the homozygous parents, which supports the blending hypothesis. You could respond that crossing the F_1 hybrids results in the reappearance of the white phenotype, rather than identical pink offspring, which fails to support the idea of traits blending during inheritance. The blending hypothesis predicts that the white trait would have been lost after the F_1 generation. **Figure 14.11** Both the I^A and I^B alleles are dominant to the *i* allele because the *i* allele results in no attached carbohydrate. The I^A and I^B alleles are codominant; both are expressed in the phenotype of I^AI^B heterozygotes, who have type AB blood. **Figure 14.12** In this cross, the final "3" and "1" of a standard cross are lumped together as a single phenotype. This occurs because in dogs that are *ee*, no pigment is deposited, thus the three dogs that have a *B* in their genotype (normally black) can no longer be distinguished from the dog that is *bb* (normally brown). **Figure 14.16** In the Punnett square, two of the three individuals with normal coloration are carriers, so the probability is $\frac{2}{3}$. (Note that you must take into account everything you know when you calculate probability: You know she is not *aa*, so there are only three possible genotypes to consider.)



Concept Check 14.1

1. According to the law of independent assortment, 25 plants ($\frac{1}{16}$ of the offspring) are predicted to be *aatt*, or recessive for both characters. The actual result is likely to differ slightly from

this value. **2.** The plant could make eight different gametes (*YRI, YRi, YrI, Yri, yRI, yRi, yrI,* and *yri*). To fit all the possible gametes in a self-pollination, a Punnett square would need 8 rows and 8 columns. It would have spaces for the 64 possible unions of gametes in the offspring. **3.** Self-pollination is sexual reproduction because meiosis is involved in forming gametes, which unite during fertilization. As a result, the offspring in self-pollination are genetically different from the parent. (As mentioned in the footnote near the beginning of Concept 14.1, we have simplified the explanation in referring to the single pea plant as a parent. Technically, the gametophytes in the flower are the two "parents.")

Concept Check 14.2

1. ½ homozygous dominant (*AA*), 0 homozygous recessive (*aa*), and ½ heterozygous (*Aa*) **2.** ¼ *BBDD*; ¼ *BbDD*; ¼ *BBDd*; ¼ *BbDd* **3.** The genotypes that fulfill this condition are *ppyyII, ppyyIi, ppYYii, ppYyii, Ppyyii,* and *ppyyii*. Use the multiplication rule to find the probability of getting each genotype, and then use the addition rule to find the overall probability of meeting the conditions of this problem:

ppyyII ½ (probability of pp) × ¼ (yy) × ¼ (II) = 1/32
ppyyIi ½ (pp) × ¼ (yy) × ½ (Ii) = 1/16 = 2/32
ppYYii ½ (pp) × ¼ (YY) × ¼ (ii) = 1/32
ppYyii ½ (pp) × ½ (Yy) × ¼ (ii) = 1/16 = 2/32
Ppyyii ½ (Pp) × ¼ (yy) × ¼ (ii) = 1/32
ppyyii ½ (pp) × ¼ (yy) × ¼ (ii) = 1/32

Fraction predicted to be homozygous recessive for at least two of the three characters: 8/32 = ¼

Concept Check 14.3

1. Incomplete dominance describes the relationship between two alleles of a single gene, whereas epistasis relates to the genetic relationship between two genes (and the respective alleles of each). **2.** Half of the children would be expected to have type A blood and half type B blood. **3.** The black and white alleles are incompletely dominant, with heterozygotes being gray in color. A cross between a gray rooster and a black hen should yield approximately equal numbers of gray and black offspring.

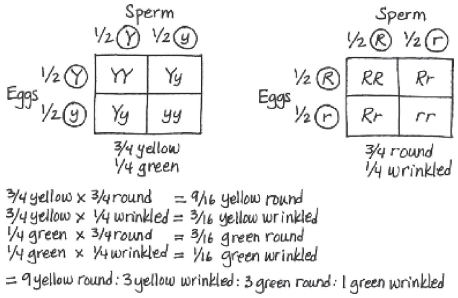
Concept Check 14.4

1. 1/9 (Since cystic fibrosis is caused by a recessive allele, Lucia and Jared's siblings who have CF must be homozygous recessive. Therefore, each parent must be a carrier of the recessive allele. Since neither Lucia nor Jared has CF and are thus not *cc* (using *C*/*c* as the alleles for the CF gene), this means they each have a ⅔ chance of being a carrier. If they are both carriers, there is a ¼ chance that they will have a child with CF; ⅔ × ⅔ × ¼ = 1/9); virtually 0 (Both Lucia and Jared would have to be carriers to produce a child with the disease, unless a very rare mutation (change) occurred in the DNA of cells making eggs or sperm in a noncarrier that resulted in the CF allele.) **2.** In normal hemoglobin, the sixth amino acid is glutamic acid (Glu), which is acidic (has a negative charge on its side chain). In sickle-cell hemoglobin, Glu is replaced by valine (Val), which is a nonpolar amino acid, very different from Glu. The primary structure of a protein (its amino acid sequence) ultimately determines the shape of the protein and thus its function. The substitution of Val for Glu enables the hemoglobin molecules to interact with each other and form long fibers, leading to the protein's deficient function and the deformation of the red blood cell. **3.** Juanita's genotype is *Dd*. Because the allele for polydactyly (*D*) is dominant to the allele for five digits per appendage (*d*), the trait is expressed in people with either the *DD* or *Dd* genotype. But because Juanita's father does not have polydactyly, his genotype must be *dd*, which means that Juanita inherited a *d* allele from him. Therefore, Juanita, who does have the trait, must be heterozygous. **4.** In the monohybrid cross involving flower color, the ratio is 3.15 purple : 1 white, while in the human family in the pedigree, the ratio in the third generation is 1 taster of PTC: 1 nontaster of PTC. The difference is due to the small sample size (two offspring) in the human family. If the second-generation couple in this pedigree were able to have 929 offspring as in the pea plant cross, the ratio would likely be closer to 3:1. (Note that none of the pea plant crosses in Table 14.1 yielded *exactly* a 3:1 ratio.)

Summary of Key Concepts Questions

14.1 Alternative versions of genes, called alleles, are passed from parent to offspring during sexual reproduction. In a cross between purple- and white-flowered homozygous parents, the F_1 offspring are all heterozygous, each inheriting a purple allele from one parent and a white allele from the other. Because the purple allele is dominant, it determines the phenotype of the F_1 offspring to be purple, and the expression of the recessive white allele is masked. Only in the F_2 generation is it possible for some of the offspring to be homozygous recessive, which causes the white trait to be expressed.

14.2



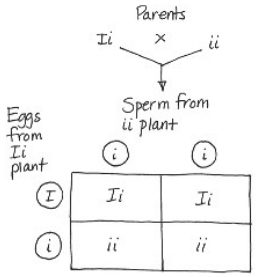
¾ yellow × ¾ round = 9/16 yellow round
¾ yellow × ¼ wrinkled = 3/16 yellow wrinkled
¼ green × ¾ round = 3/16 green round
¼ green × ¼ wrinkled = 1/16 green wrinkled
= 9 yellow round : 3 yellow wrinkled : 3 green round : 1 green wrinkled

14.3 The ABO blood group is an example of multiple alleles because this single gene has more than two alleles (I^A, I^B, and i). Two of the alleles, I^A and I^B, exhibit codominance since both carbohydrates (A and B) are present when these two alleles exist together in a genotype. I^A and I^B each exhibit complete dominance over the *i* allele. This situation is not an example of incomplete dominance because each allele affects the phenotype in a distinguishable way, so the result is not intermediate between the two phenotypes. Because this situation involves a single gene, it is not an example of epistasis or polygenic inheritance. **14.4** The chance of the fourth child having cystic fibrosis is ¼, as it was for each of the other children, because each birth is an independent event. We already know both parents are carriers, so whether their first three children are carriers or not has no bearing on the probability that their next child will have the disease. The parents' genotypes provide the only relevant information.

Test Your Understanding

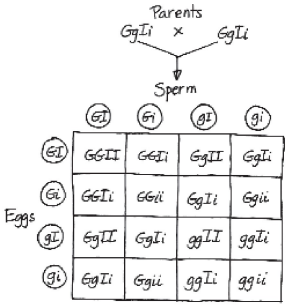
1. A cross of *Ii* × *ii* would yield offspring with a genotypic ratio of 1 *Ii*: 1 *ii* (2:2 is an equivalent answer) and a phenotypic ratio of 1 inflated: 1 constricted (2:2 is equivalent).

2. Man I^Ai; woman I^Bi; child *ii*. Genotypes for future children are predicted to be ¼ I^AI^B, ¼ I^Ai, ¼ I^Bi, ¼ *ii*. **3.** ½



Genotypic ratio 1 Ii : 1 ii (2:2 is equivalent)
Phenotypic ratio 1 inflated : 1 constricted (2:2 is equivalent)

4. The green pod trait is dominant, so the green pod allele is *G* and the yellow pod allele is *g*; the inflated pod trait is dominant, so the inflated pod allele is *I* and the constricted pod allele is *i*. The cross described is *GgIi* × *GgIi*.



9 green inflated : 3 green constricted : 3 yellow inflated : 1 yellow constricted

5. (a) 1/64; (b) 1/64; (c) 1/8; (d) 1/32 **6.** (a) ¾ × ¾ × ¾ = 27/64; (b) 1 − 27/64 = 37/64; (c) ¼ × ¼ × ¼ = 1/64; (d) 1 − 1/64 = 63/64 **7.** (a) 1/256; (b) 1/16; (c) 1/256; (d) 1/64; (e) 1/128 **8.** (a) 1; (b) 1/32; (c) 1/8; (d) ½ **9.** 1/9

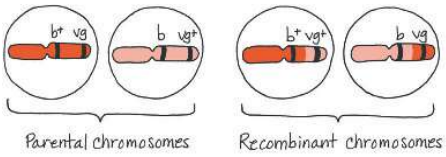
10. Matings of the original mutant cat with true-breeding noncurl cats will produce both curl and noncurl F_1 offspring if the curl allele is dominant, but only noncurl offspring if the curl allele is recessive. Whether the curl trait is dominant or recessive, you would obtain some true-breeding offspring homozygous for the curl allele from matings between the F_1 cats resulting from the original curl × noncurl crosses. If dominant, you wouldn't be able to tell true-breeding, homozygous offspring from heterozygotes without further crosses. You know that cats are true-breeding when curl × curl matings produce only curl offspring. As it turns out, the allele that causes curled ears is dominant. **11.** 25%, or ¼, will be cross-eyed; all (100%) of the cross-eyed offspring will also be white. **12.** The dominant allele *I* is epistatic to the *P*/*p* locus, and thus the genotypic ratio for the F_1 generation will be 9 *I–P–* (colorless) : 3 *I–pp* (colorless) : 3 *iiP–* (purple) : 1 *iipp* (red). Overall, the phenotypic ratio is 12 colorless : 3 purple : 1 red. **13.** Recessive.

All individuals with alkaptonuria (Ariana, Benito, Elena, and Carlota) are homozygous recessive *aa*. Jorge is *Aa*, since some of his children with Ariana have alkaptonuria. Diego, Carmen, Hector, and Julio are each *Aa*, since they are all unaffected children with one affected parent. Miguel also is *Aa*, since he has an affected child (Carlota) with his heterozygous wife Carmen. Mariposa, Paloma, and Roberto can each have either the *AA* or *Aa* genotype. **14.** $1/6$

Chapter 15

Figure Questions

Figure 15.3 About $3/4$ of the F_2 offspring would have red eyes and about $1/4$ would have white eyes. Since the sex chromosomes are not involved in determining eye color in this hypothetical cross, about half of the white-eyed flies would be female and half would be male; similarly, about half of the red-eyed flies would be female and half would be male. (Note that the autosomes with the eye color alleles would be the same shape in the Punnett square—unlike the X and Y chromosomes—and each offspring would inherit two alleles. The sex of the flies would be determined separately by inheritance of the sex chromosomes. Thus your F_2 Punnett square would have four possible combinations in sperm and two in eggs; it would have eight squares altogether.) **Figure 15.4** The ratio would be 1 yellow round : 1 green round : 1 yellow wrinkled : 1 green wrinkled. (This is similar to a test cross.) **Figure 15.7** All the males would be color-blind, and all the females would be carriers. (Another way to say this is that ½ the offspring would be color-blind males, and ½ the offspring would be carrier females.) **Figure 15.9** The two largest classes would still be the offspring with the phenotypes of the true-breeding P generation flies, but now they would be gray vestigial and black normal, which is now the "parental type" because those were the specific allele combinations in the P generation (the linked alleles on their chromosomes). **Figure 15.10** The two chromosomes on the left side of the sketch below are like the two chromosomes inherited by the F_1 female, one from each P generation fly. They are passed by the F_1 female intact to the offspring and thus could be called "parental" chromosomes. The other two chromosomes result from crossing over during meiosis in the F_1 female. Because they have combinations of alleles not seen in either of the F_1 female's chromosomes, they can be called "recombinant" chromosomes. (Note that in this example, the allele combinations on the recombinant chromosomes, $b^+ vg^+$ and $b\ vg$, are the allele combinations that were on the parental chromosomes in the cross shown in Figures 15.9 and 15.10. The basis for calling them parental chromosomes is that they have the combination of alleles that was present on the P generation chromosomes.)



Concept Check 15.1

1. To show the mutant phenotype, a male needs to possess only one mutant allele. If this gene had been on a pair of autosomes, an individual would show the recessive phenotype only if both alleles were mutant, a much less probable situation. **2.** The law of segregation describes the inheritance of alleles for a single character. The law of independent assortment of alleles describes the inheritance of alleles for two characters. **3.** The physical basis for the law of segregation is the separation of homologs in anaphase I. The physical basis for the law of independent assortment is the alternative arrangements of all the different homologous chromosome pairs in metaphase I.

Concept Check 15.2

1. Because the gene for this eye color character is located on the X chromosome, all female offspring will be red-eyed and heterozygous ($X^{w+}X^{w}$); all male offspring will inherit a Y chromosome from the father and be white-eyed ($X^{w}Y$). (Another way to say this is that ½ the offspring will be red-eyed heterozygous [carrier] females, and ½ will be white-eyed males.) **2.** $1/4$ ($1/2$ chance that the child will inherit a Y chromosome from the father and be male $\times$ $1/2$ chance that he will inherit the X carrying the disease allele from his mother). If the child is a boy, there is a ½ chance he will have the disease; a female would have zero chance (but ½ chance of being a carrier). **3.** In a disorder caused by a dominant allele, there is no such thing as a "carrier," since those with the allele have the disorder. Because the allele is dominant, the females lose any "advantage" in having two X chromosomes, since one disorder-associated allele is sufficient to result in the disorder. All fathers who have the dominant allele will pass it along to *all* their daughters, who will also have the disorder. A mother who has the allele (and thus the disorder) will pass it to half of her sons and half of her daughters.

Concept Check 15.3

1. Crossing over during meiosis I in the heterozygous parent produces some gametes with recombinant genotypes for the two genes. Offspring with a recombinant phenotype arise from fertilization of the recombinant gametes by homozygous recessive gametes from the double-mutant parent. **2.** In each case, the alleles contributed by the female parent (in the egg) determine the phenotype of the offspring because the male in this cross contributes only recessive alleles. Thus, identifying the phenotype of the offspring tells you what alleles were in the mother's (the dihybrid female's) egg. **3.** No. The order could be *A-C-B* or *C-A-B*. To determine which possibility is correct, you need to know the recombination frequency between *B* and *C*.

Concept Check 15.4

1. In meiosis, a combined 14-21 chromosome will behave as one chromosome. If a gamete receives the combined 14-21 chromosome and a normal copy of chromosome 21, trisomy 21 will result when this gamete combines with a normal gamete (with its own chromosome 21) during fertilization. **2.** No. The child can be either I^AI^Ai or I^Aii. A sperm of genotype I^AI^A could result from nondisjunction in the father during meiosis II, while an egg with the genotype *ii* could result from nondisjunction in the mother during either meiosis I or meiosis II. **3.** Activation of this gene could lead to the production of too much of this kinase. If the kinase is involved in a signaling pathway that triggers cell division, too much of it could trigger unrestricted cell division, which in turn could contribute to the development of a cancer (in this case, a cancer of one type of white blood cell).

Concept Check 15.5

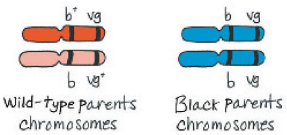
1. Inactivation of an X chromosome in females and genomic imprinting. Because of X inactivation, the effective dose of genes on the X chromosome is the same in males and females. As a result of genomic imprinting, only one allele of certain genes is phenotypically expressed. **2.** The genes for leaf coloration are located in plastids within the cytoplasm. Normally, only the maternal parent transmits plastid genes to offspring. Since variegated offspring are produced only when the female parent is of the B variety, we can conclude that variety B contains both the wild-type and mutant alleles of pigment genes, producing variegated leaves. (Variety A must contain only the wild-type allele of pigment genes.) **3.** Each cell contains numerous mitochondria, and in affected individuals, most cells contain a variable mixture of normal and mutant mitochondria. The normal mitochondria carry out enough cellular respiration for survival. (The situation is similar for chloroplasts.)

Summary of Key Concepts Questions

15.1 Because the sex chromosomes are different from each other and because they determine the sex of the offspring, Morgan could use the sex of the offspring as a phenotypic character to follow the parental chromosomes. (He could also have followed them under a microscope, as the X and Y chromosomes look different.) At the same time, he could record eye color to follow the eye color alleles. **15.2** Males have only one X chromosome, along with a Y chromosome, while females have two X chromosomes. The Y chromosome has very few genes on it, while the X has about 1,000. When a recessive X-linked allele that causes a disorder is inherited by a male on the X from his mother, there isn't a second allele present on the Y (males are hemizygous), so the male has the disorder. Because females have two X chromosomes, they must inherit two recessive alleles in order to have the disorder, a rarer occurrence. **15.3** Crossing over results in new combinations of alleles. Crossing over is a random occurrence, and the more distance there is between two genes, the more chances there are for crossing over to occur, leading to new allele combinations. **15.4** In inversions and reciprocal translocations, the same genetic material is present in the same relative amount but just organized differently. In aneuploidy, duplications, deletions, and nonreciprocal translocations, the balance of genetic material is upset, as large segments are either missing or present in more than one copy. Apparently, this type of imbalance is very damaging to the organism. (Although it isn't lethal in the developing embryo, the reciprocal translocation that produces the Philadelphia chromosome can lead to a serious condition, cancer, by altering the expression of important genes.) **15.5** In these cases, the sex of the parent contributing an allele affects the inheritance pattern. For imprinted genes, either the paternal or the maternal allele is expressed, depending on the imprint. For mitochondrial and chloroplast genes, only the maternal contribution will affect offspring phenotype because the offspring inherit these organelles from the mother, via the egg cytoplasm.

Test Your Understanding

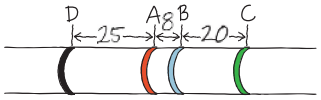
1. 0; $1/2$; $1/16$ **2.** Recessive; if the disorder were dominant, it would affect at least one parent of a child born with the disorder. The disorder's inheritance is sex-linked because it is seen only in boys. For a girl to have the disorder, she would have to inherit recessive alleles from *both* parents. This would be very rare, since males with the recessive allele on their X chromosome die in their early teens. **3.** 17%; yes, it is consistent. In Figure 15.9, the recombination frequency was also 17%. (You'd expect this to be the case since these are the very same two genes, and their distance from each other wouldn't change from one experiment to another.)



4. Between *T* and *A*, 12%; between *A* and *S*, 5% **5.** Between *T* and *S*, 16%; sequence of genes is *T-A-S* **6.** 6%; wild-type heterozygous for normal wings and red eyes $\times$ recessive homozygous for vestigial wings and purple eyes **7.** Fifty percent of the offspring will show phenotypes resulting from crossovers. These results would be the same as those from a cross where *A* and *B* were *not* on the same chromosome, and you would interpret the results to mean that the genes are unlinked. (Further crosses involving other genes between *A* and *B* on the same chromosome would reveal the genetic linkage and map distances.) **8.** 450 each of blue/oval and white/round (parentals) and 50 each of blue/round and white/oval (recombinants) **9.** About one-third of the distance along the

chromosome from the vestigial wing locus toward the brown eye locus **10.** Because bananas are triploid, homologous pairs cannot line up during meiosis. Therefore, it is not possible to generate gametes that can fuse to produce a zygote with the triploid number of chromosomes. **12.** (a) For each pair of genes, you had to generate an F_1 dihybrid fly; let's use the *A* and *B* genes as an example. You obtained homozygous parental flies, either the first with dominant alleles of the two genes (*AABB*) and the second with recessive alleles (*aabb*), or the first with dominant alleles of gene *A* and recessive alleles of gene *B* (*AAbb*) and the second with recessive alleles of gene *A* and dominant alleles of gene *B* (*aaBB*). Breeding either of these pairs of P generation flies gave you an F_1 dihybrid, which you then testcrossed with a doubly homozygous recessive fly (*aabb*). You classed the offspring as parental or recombinant, based on the genotypes of the P generation parents (either of the two pairs described above). You added up the number of recombinant types and then divided by the total number of offspring. This gave you the recombination percentage (in this case, 8%), which you can translate into map units (8 map units) to construct your map.

(b)



Chapter 16

Figure Questions

Figure 16.2 The living S cells found in the blood sample were able to reproduce to yield more S cells, indicating that the S trait is a permanent, heritable change, rather than just a one-time use of the dead S cells' capsules. **Figure 16.4** The radioactivity would have been found in the pellet when proteins were labeled (batch 1) because proteins would have had to enter the bacterial cells to program them with genetic instructions. It's hard for us to imagine now, but the DNA might have played a structural role that allowed some of the proteins to be injected while it remained outside the bacterial cell (thus no radioactivity would be found in the pellet in batch 2). **Figure 16.7** (1) The nucleotides in a single DNA strand are held together by covalent bonds between an oxygen on the 3′ carbon of one nucleotide and the phosphate group on the 5′ carbon of the next nucleotide in the chain. Instead of covalent bonds, the bonds that hold the two strands together are hydrogen bonds between a nitrogenous base on one strand and the complementary nitrogenous base on the other strand. (Hydrogen bonds are weaker than covalent bonds, but there are so many hydrogen bonds in a DNA double helix that, together, they are enough to hold the two strands together.) (2) One end, the 5′ end, has a phosphate group, which is attached to the 5′ carbon of the sugar, the one that is not in the ring. The other end, the 3′ end, has an —OH group attached to the 3′ carbon of the sugar; this carbon is in the ring. (3) The left diagram shows the most detail. It shows that each sugar-phosphate backbone is made up of sugars (blue pentagons) and phosphates (yellow circles) joined by covalent bonds (black lines). The middle diagram doesn't show any detail in the backbone. Both the left and middle diagrams label the bases and represent their complementarity by the complementary shapes at the ends of the bases (curves/indents for G/C or V's/notches for T/A). The diagram on the right is the least detailed, implying that the base pairs pair up, but showing all bases as the same shape so not including the information about specificity and complementarity visible in the other two diagrams. The left and right diagrams show that the strand on the left was synthesized most recently, as indicated by the light blue color. All three diagrams show the 5′ and 3′ ends of the strands. **Figure 16.12** The tube from the first replication would look the same, with a middle band of hybrid ^{15}N–^{14}N DNA, but the second tube would not have the upper band of DNA molecules made up of two light blue strands. Instead, it would have a bottom band of DNA made up of two dark blue strands, like the bottom band in the result predicted after one replication in the conservative model. **Figure 16.13** In the bubble at the top of the micrograph in (b), arrows should be drawn pointing left and right to indicate the two replication forks. **Figure 16.15**

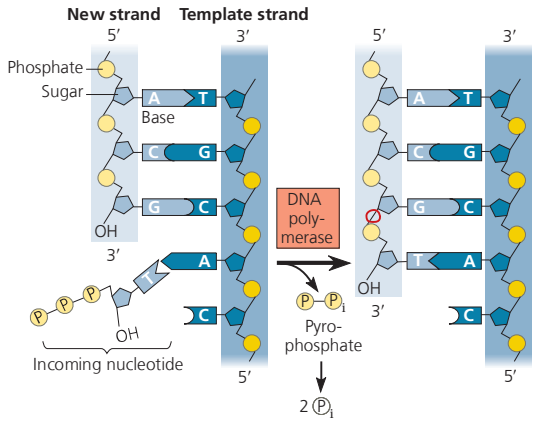


Figure 16.18

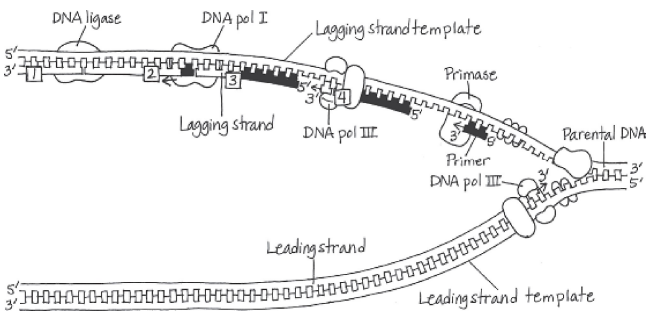


Figure 16.19

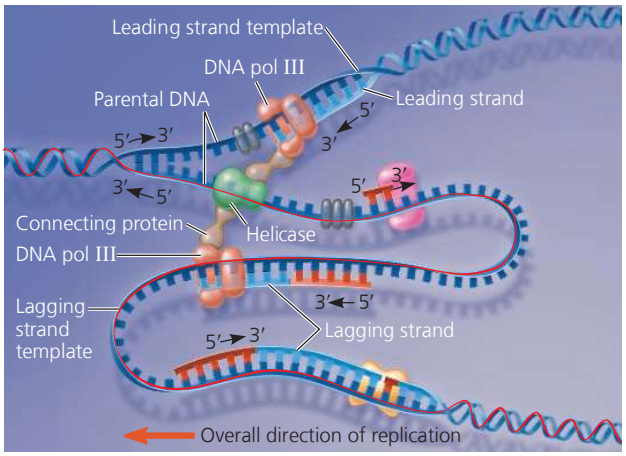


Figure 16.24 The two members of a homologous pair (which would be the same color) would be associated tightly together at the metaphase plate during metaphase I of meiosis I. In metaphase of mitosis, however, each chromosome would be lined up individually, so the two chromosomes of the same color would be in different places at the metaphase plate.

Concept Check 16.1

1. In order to tell which end is the 5′ end, you need to know which end has a phosphate group on the 5′ carbon (the 5′ end) and/or which end has an —OH group on the 3′ carbon (the 3′ end). **2.** Griffith expected that the mouse injected with the mixture of heat-killed S cells and living R cells would survive, since neither type of cell alone would kill the mouse.

Concept Check 16.2

1. Complementary base pairing ensures that the two daughter molecules are exact copies of the parental molecule. When the two strands of the parental molecule separate, each serves as a template on which nucleotides are arranged by the base-pairing rules; they will then be polymerized by enzymes into new complementary strands. **2.** DNA pol III covalently adds nucleotides to new DNA strands and proofreads each added nucleotide for correct base pairing. **3.** In the cell cycle, DNA synthesis occurs during the S phase, between the G_1 and G_2 phases of interphase. DNA replication is therefore complete before the mitotic phase begins. **4.** Synthesis of the leading strand is initiated by an RNA primer, which must be removed and replaced with DNA, a task that could not be performed if the cell's DNA pol I were nonfunctional. In the overview box in Figure 16.18, just to the left of the top origin of replication, a functional DNA pol I would replace the RNA primer of the leading strand (shown in red) with DNA nucleotides (blue). The nucleotides would be added on to the 3′ end of the first Okazaki fragment of the upper lagging strand (the right half of the replication bubble).

Concept Check 16.3

1. A nucleosome is made up of eight histone proteins, two each of four different types, around which DNA is wound. Linker DNA runs from one nucleosome to the next. **2.** The 10-nm fiber of euchromatin is less compacted during interphase than in mitosis and is accessible to the cellular proteins responsible for gene expression. In contrast, the 10-nm fiber of heterochromatin is relatively compacted (densely arranged) during interphase, and genes in heterochromatin are largely inaccessible to proteins necessary for gene expression. **3.** The nuclear lamina is a netlike array of protein filaments that provides mechanical support just inside the nuclear envelope and thus maintains the shape of the nucleus. Considerable evidence also supports the existence of a nuclear matrix, a framework of protein fibers extending throughout the nuclear interior.

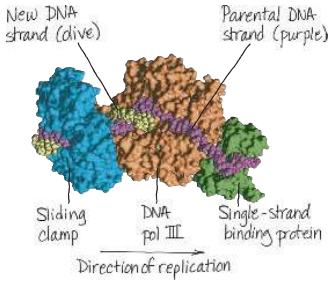
Summary of Key Concepts Questions

16.1 Each strand in the double helix has polarity; the end with a phosphate group on the 5′ carbon of the sugar is called the 5′ end, and the end with an —OH group on the 3′ carbon of the sugar is called the 3′ end. The two strands run in opposite directions, one running 5′ → 3′ and the other alongside it running 3′ → 5′. Thus, each end of the molecule has both a 5′ and a 3′ end, one on each strand of the double helix. This arrangement is called antiparallel. If the strands were parallel, they would both run 5′ → 3′ in the same direction, so an end of the molecule would have either two 5′ ends or two 3′ ends. **16.2** On both the leading and lagging strands, DNA polymerase adds onto the 3′ end of an RNA primer synthesized by primase, synthesizing DNA in the 5′ → 3′ direction. Because the parental strands are antiparallel, however, only on the leading strand does synthesis proceed continuously into the replication fork. The lagging strand is synthesized bit by bit in the direction away from the fork as a series of shorter Okazaki fragments, which are later joined together by DNA ligase. Each fragment is initiated by synthesis of an RNA primer by primase as soon as a given stretch of single-stranded template strand is opened up. Although both strands are synthesized at the same rate, synthesis of the lagging strand is delayed because initiation of each fragment begins only when sufficient template strand is available. **16.3** The chromatin in an interphase nucleus is present as the 10-nm fiber, either fairly loosely arranged in euchromatin or more densely arranged in heterochromatin (such as at the centromeres and telomeres). The euchromatin is also subdivided into larger compartments and smaller looped domains. This organization may reflect differences in gene expression occurring in these regions.

Test Your Understanding

1. C **2.** C **3.** B **4.** D **5.** A **6.** D **7.** B **8.** A **9.** Like histones, the *E. coli* proteins would be expected to contain many basic (positively charged) amino acids, such as lysine and arginine, which can form weak bonds with the negatively charged phosphate groups on the sugar-phosphate backbone of the DNA molecule.

11.



Chapter 17

Figure Questions

Figure 17.3 The previously presumed pathway would have been wrong. The new results would support this pathway: precursor → citrulline → ornithine → arginine. They would also indicate that class I mutants have a defect in the second step and class II mutants have a defect in the first step. **Figure 17.5** The mRNA sequence (5′-UGGUUUGGCUCA-3′) is the same as the nontemplate DNA strand sequence (5′-TGGTTTGGCTCA-3′), except there is a U in the mRNA wherever there is a T in the DNA. The nontemplate strand is probably used to represent a DNA sequence because it so closely resembles the mRNA sequence, containing codons. (This is why it's called the coding strand.) **Figure 17.6** Arg (or R)–Glu (or E)–Pro (or P)–Arg (or R) **Figure 17.8** The processes are similar in that polymerases form polynucleotides complementary to an antiparallel DNA template strand. In replication, however, both strands act as templates, whereas in transcription, only one DNA strand acts as a template. This reflects, of course, the fact that replication results in a double-stranded product (DNA) while transcription results in a single-stranded product (an RNA). **Figure 17.9** The RNA polymerase would bind directly to the promoter, rather than being dependent on the previous binding of transcription factors.

Figure 17.12

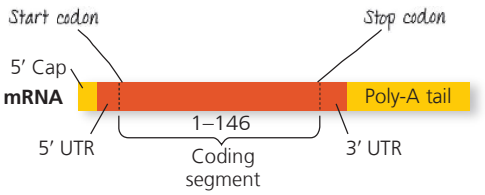


Figure 17.16 The anticodon on the tRNA is 3′-AAG-5′, so it would bind to the mRNA codon 5′-UUC-3′. This codon codes for phenylalanine (Phe, or F), which is the amino acid this tRNA would carry. **Figure 17.22** It would be packaged in a vesicle, transported to the Golgi apparatus for further processing, and then transported via a vesicle to the plasma membrane. The vesicle would fuse with the membrane, releasing the protein outside the cell. **Figure 17.24** The mRNA farthest to the right (the longest one) started transcription first. The ribosome at the top, closest to the DNA, started translating first and thus has the longest polypeptide.

Concept Check 17.1

1. Recessive **2.** A polypeptide made up of 10 Gly (glycine) amino acids

3.

Nontemplate sequence (from template sequence given in problem), written 3′ -> 5′: 3′-ACGACTGAA-5′

If above used as template, mRNA sequence: 5′-UGCUGACUU-3′

Translated: Cys-STOP

If the nontemplate sequence could have been used as a template for transcribing the mRNA, the protein translated from the mRNA would have a completely different amino acid sequence, so it would not be able to function as the original protein (translated from an mRNA transcribed from the template strand). It would also be shorter because of the UGA stop signal shown in the mRNA sequence above—and possibly others earlier in the mRNA sequence.

Concept Check 17.2

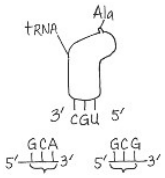
1. A promoter is the region of DNA to which RNA polymerase binds to begin transcription. It is at the upstream end of the gene (transcription unit). **2.** In a bacterial cell, part of the RNA polymerase recognizes the gene's promoter and binds to it. In a eukaryotic cell, transcription factors must bind to the promoter first, then the RNA polymerase binds to them. In both cases, sequences in the promoter determine the precise binding of RNA polymerase so the enzyme is in the right location and orientation. **3.** The transcription factor that recognizes the TATA sequence would be unable to bind, so RNA polymerase could not bind and transcription of that gene most likely would not occur.

Concept Check 17.3

1. Due to alternative splicing of exons, each gene can result in multiple different mRNAs and can thus direct synthesis of multiple different proteins. **2.** In watching a pre-recorded show, you watch segments of the show itself (exons) and fast-forward through the commercials, which are thus like introns. However, unlike introns, commercials remain in the recording, while the introns are cut out of the RNA transcript during RNA processing. **3.** Once the mRNA has exited the nucleus, the cap prevents it from being degraded by hydrolytic enzymes and facilitates its attachment to ribosomes. If the cap were removed from all mRNAs, the cell would no longer be able to synthesize any proteins and would probably die.

Concept Check 17.4

1. First, each aminoacyl-tRNA synthetase specifically recognizes a single amino acid and attaches it only to an appropriate tRNA. Second, a tRNA charged with its specific amino acid binds only to an mRNA codon for that amino acid. **2.** A signal peptide on the leading end (amino end, or N-terminus) of the polypeptide being synthesized is recognized by a signal-recognition particle that brings the ribosome to the ER membrane. There, the ribosome attaches and continues to synthesize the polypeptide, depositing it in the ER lumen.



3. Because of wobble, the tRNA could bind to either 5′-GCA-3′ or 5′-GCG-3′, both of which code for alanine (Ala, or A). Alanine would be attached to the tRNA (see diagram, upper right). **4.** When one ribosome terminates translation and dissociates, the two subunits would be very close to the cap. This could facilitate their rebinding and initiating synthesis of a new polypeptide, thus increasing the efficiency of translation.

Concept Check 17.5

1. In the mRNA, the reading frame downstream from the deletion is shifted, leading to a long string of incorrect amino acids in the polypeptide, and in most cases, a stop codon will occur, leading to premature termination. The polypeptide will most likely be nonfunctional. **2.** Heterozygous individuals, said to have sickle-cell trait, have a copy each of the wild-type allele and the sickle-cell allele. Both alleles will be expressed, so these individuals will have both normal and sickle-cell hemoglobin molecules. Apparently, having a mix of the two forms of β-globin has no effect under most conditions, but during prolonged periods of low blood oxygen (such as at higher altitudes), these individuals can show some signs of sickle-cell disease.

3.

Normal DNA sequence (template strand is on top): 3′-TACTTGTCCGATATC-5′ / 5′-ATGAACAGGCTATAG-3′

mRNA sequence: 5′-AUGAACAGGCUAUAG-3′

Amino acid sequence: Met-Asn-Arg-Leu-STOP

Mutated DNA sequence (template strand is on top): 3′-TACTTGTCCAATATC-5′ / 5′-ATGAACAGGTTATAG-3′

mRNA sequence: 5′-AUGAACAGGUUAUAG-3′

Amino acid sequence: Met-Asn-Arg-Leu-STOP

No effect: The amino acid sequence is Met-Asn-Arg-Leu both before and after the mutation because the mRNA codons 5′-CUA-3′ and 5′-UUA-3′ both code for Leu. (The fifth codon is a stop codon.) **4.** A Cas9–guide RNA could be synthesized complementary to the mutated sequence, and the Cas9–guide RNA complex injected into a cell with the mutation. A region of double-stranded DNA with the correct sequence would also be provided. Cas9 would cut the mutated sequence, and the DNA repair system in the cell would repair the DNA, using the correct sequence as a template. Based on the answer to question 3, however, this would not be worthwhile because there is no amino acid change in the encoded protein, so the function of the protein encoded by the mutated gene is normal.

Summary of Key Concepts Questions

17.1 A gene contains genetic information in the form of a nucleotide sequence. The gene is first transcribed into an RNA molecule, and a messenger RNA molecule is ultimately translated into a polypeptide. The polypeptide makes up part or all of a protein, which performs a function in the cell and contributes to the phenotype of the organism. **17.2** Both bacterial and eukaryotic genes have promoters, regions where RNA polymerase ultimately binds and begins transcription. In bacteria, RNA polymerase binds directly to the promoter; in eukaryotes, transcription factors bind first to the promoter, and then RNA polymerase binds to the transcription factors and promoter together.
17.3 Both the 5′ cap and the 3′ poly-A tail help the mRNA exit from the nucleus and then, in the cytoplasm, help ensure mRNA stability and allow it to bind to ribosomes. **17.4** In the context of the ribosome, tRNAs function as translators between the nucleotide-based language of mRNA and the amino-acid-based language of polypeptides. A tRNA carries a specific amino acid, and the anticodon on the tRNA is complementary to the codon on the mRNA that codes for that amino acid. In the ribosome, the tRNA binds to the A site. Then the polypeptide being synthesized (currently on the tRNA in the P site) is joined to the new amino acid, which becomes the new (C-terminal) end of the polypeptide. Next, the tRNA in the A site moves to the P site. After the polypeptide is transferred to the new tRNA, thus adding the new amino acid, the now empty tRNA moves from the P site to the E site, where it exits the ribosome. **17.5** When a nucleotide base is altered chemically, its base-pairing characteristics may be changed. When that happens, an incorrect nucleotide is likely to be incorporated into the complementary strand during the next replication of the DNA, and successive rounds of replication will perpetuate the mutation. Once the gene is transcribed, the mutated codon may code for a different amino acid that inhibits or changes the function of a protein. If, however, the chemical change in the base is detected and repaired by the DNA repair system before the next replication, no mutation will result.

Test Your Understanding

1. B **2.** C **3.** A **4.** B **5.** B **6.** C **7.** D **8.** No. Transcription and translation are separated in space and time in a eukaryotic cell, as a result of the eukaryotic cell's nuclear membrane
9.

Type of RNA	Functions
Messenger RNA (mRNA)	Carries information specifying amino acid sequences of polypeptides from DNA to ribosomes
Transfer RNA (tRNA)	Serves as translator molecule in protein synthesis; translates mRNA codons into amino acids
Ribosomal RNA (rRNA)	In a ribosome, plays a structural role; as a ribozyme, plays a catalytic role (catalyzes peptide bond formation)
Primary transcript	Is a precursor to mRNA, rRNA, or tRNA, before being processed; some intron RNA acts as a ribozyme, catalyzing its own splicing
Small RNAs in spliceosome	Play structural and catalytic roles in spliceosomes, the complexes of protein and RNA that splice pre-mRNA

Chapter 18

Figure Questions

Figure 18.3 As the concentration of tryptophan in the cell falls, eventually there will be none bound to *trp* repressor molecules. These will then change into their inactive shapes and dissociate from the operator, allowing transcription of the operon to resume. The enzymes for tryptophan synthesis will be made, and they will again synthesize tryptophan in the cell.
Figure 18.10 Each of the two polypeptides has two regions—one that makes up part of MyoD's DNA-binding domain and one that makes up part of MyoD's activation domain. Each functional domain in the complete MyoD protein is made up of parts of both polypeptides. **Figure 18.12** In both types of cell, the albumin gene enhancer has the three control elements colored yellow, gray, and red. The sequences in the liver and lens cells would be identical, since the cells are in the same organism. **Figure 18.18** Even if the mutant MyoD protein couldn't activate the *myoD* gene, it could still turn on genes for the other proteins in the pathway (other transcription factors, which would turn on the genes for muscle-specific proteins, for example). Therefore, some differentiation would occur. But unless there were other activators that could compensate for the loss of the MyoD protein's activation of the *myoD* gene, the cell would not be able to maintain its differentiated state. **Figure 18.22** Normal Bicoid protein would be made in the anterior end and compensate for the presence of mutant *bicoid* mRNA put into the egg by the mother. Development should be normal, with a head present. (This is what was observed.) **Figure 18.25** The mutation is likely to be recessive because it is more likely to have an effect if both copies of the gene are mutated and code for nonfunctional proteins. If one normal copy of the gene is present, its product could inhibit the cell cycle. (However, there are also known cases of dominant *p53* mutations, and the HNPCC gene, discussed later, is a dominant mutation in a tumor-suppressor pathway.) **Figure 18.27** Cancer is a disease in which cell division occurs without its usual regulation. Cell division can be stimulated by growth factors (see Figure 12.18), which bind to cell-surface receptors (see Figure 11.8). Cancer cells evade these normal controls and can often divide in the absence of growth factors (see Figure 12.19). This suggests that the receptor proteins or some other components in a signaling pathway are abnormal in some way (see, for example, the mutant Ras protein in Figure 18.24) or are expressed at abnormal levels, as seen for the receptors in this figure. Under some circumstances in the mammalian body, steroid hormones such as estrogen and progesterone can also promote cell division. These molecules also use cell-signaling pathways, as described in Concept 11.2 (see Figure 11.9). Because signaling receptors are involved in triggering cells to undergo cell division, it is not surprising that altered genes encoding these proteins might play a significant role in the development of cancer. Genes might be altered through either a mutation that changes the function of the protein product or a mutation that causes the gene to be expressed at abnormal levels that disrupt the overall regulation of the signaling pathway.

Concept Check 18.1

1. Binding by the *trp* corepressor (tryptophan) activates the *trp* repressor, which binds to the *trp* operator, shutting off transcription of the *trp* operon. Binding by the *lac* inducer (allolactose) inactivates the *lac* repressor, so that it can no longer bind to the *lac* operator, leading to transcription of the *lac* operon. **2.** When glucose is scarce, cAMP is bound to CRP and CRP is bound to the *lac* promoter, favoring the binding of RNA polymerase. However, in the absence of lactose, the *lac* repressor is bound to the *lac* operator, blocking RNA polymerase from transcribing the *lac* operon genes. **3.** The cell would continuously produce β-galactosidase and the two other enzymes for using lactose, even in the absence of lactose, thus wasting cell resources.

Concept Check 18.2

1. Histone acetylation is generally associated with gene expression, while DNA methylation is generally associated with lack of expression. **2.** The same enzyme could not methylate both a histone and a DNA base. Enzymes are very specific in structure, and an enzyme that could methylate an amino acid of a protein would not be able to fit the base of a DNA nucleotide into the same active site. **3.** General transcription factors function in assembling the transcription initiation complex at the promoters for all genes. Specific transcription factors bind to control elements associated with a particular gene and, once bound, either increase (activators) or decrease (repressors) transcription of that gene. **4.** Regulation of translation initiation, degradation of the mRNA, activation of the protein (by chemical modification, for example), and protein degradation **5.** The three genes should have some similar or identical sequences in the control elements of their enhancers. Because of this similarity, the same specific transcription factors that are present in muscle cells could bind to the enhancers of all three genes and stimulate their expression coordinately.

Concept Check 18.3

1. Both miRNAs and siRNAs are small, single-stranded RNAs that associate with a complex of proteins and then can base-pair with mRNAs that have a complementary sequence. This base pairing leads to either degradation of the mRNA or blockage of its translation. In some yeasts, siRNAs associated with proteins in a different complex can bind back to centromeric chromatin, recruiting enzymes that cause condensation of that chromatin into heterochromatin. Both miRNAs and siRNAs are processed from double-stranded RNA precursors but have subtle variations in the structure of those precursors. **2.** The mRNA would persist and be translated into the cell division–promoting protein, and the cell would probably divide. If the intact miRNA is necessary for inhibition of cell division, then division of this cell might be inappropriate. Uncontrolled cell division could lead to formation of a mass of cells (tumor) that prevents proper functioning of the organism and could contribute to the development of cancer. **3.** The *XIST* RNA is transcribed from the *XIST* gene on the X chromosome that will be inactivated. It then binds to that chromosome and induces heterochromatin formation. A likely model is that *XIST* RNA somehow recruits chromatin modification enzymes that lead to formation of heterochromatin.

Concept Check 18.4

1. Cells undergo differentiation during embryonic development, becoming different from each other. Therefore, the adult organism is made up of many highly specialized cell types that are different from each other. **2.** By binding to a receptor on the receiving cell's surface and triggering a signal transduction pathway, involving intracellular molecules such as second messengers and transcription factors that affect gene expression **3.** The products of maternal effect genes, made and deposited into the egg by the mother, determine the head and tail ends, as well as the back and belly, of the egg and embryo (and eventually the adult fly). **4.** The lower cell is synthesizing signaling molecules because the gene encoding them is activated, meaning that the appropriate specific transcription factors are binding to the gene's enhancer. The genes encoding these specific transcription factors are also being expressed in this cell because the transcription factor activators that can turn them on were expressed in the precursor to this cell. A similar explanation also applies to the cells expressing the

receptor proteins. This scenario began with specific cytoplasmic determinants localized in specific regions of the egg. These cytoplasmic determinants were distributed unevenly to daughter cells, resulting in cells going down different developmental pathways.

Concept Check 18.5

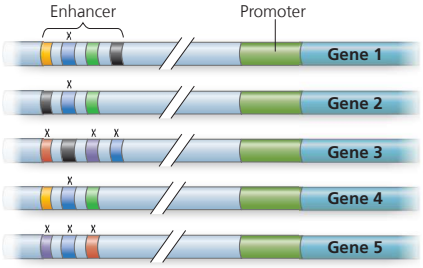
1. A cancer-causing mutation in a proto-oncogene usually makes the gene product overactive, whereas a cancer-causing mutation in a tumor-suppressor gene usually makes the gene product nonfunctional. **2.** When an individual has inherited an oncogene or a mutant allele of a tumor-suppressor gene **3.** Apoptosis is signaled by the p53 protein when a cell has extensive DNA damage, so apoptosis plays a protective role in eliminating a cell that might contribute to cancer. If mutations in the genes in the apoptotic pathway blocked apoptosis, a cell with such damage could continue to divide and might lead to tumor formation.

Summary of Key Concepts Questions

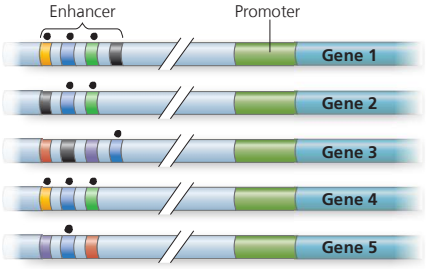
18.1 A corepressor and an inducer are both small molecules that bind to the repressor protein in an operon, causing the repressor to change shape. In the case of a corepressor (like tryptophan), this shape change allows the repressor to bind to the operator, blocking transcription. In contrast, an inducer causes the repressor to dissociate from the operator, allowing transcription to begin.
18.2 In that specific type of cell, the chromatin must not be tightly condensed because it must be accessible to transcription factors. The appropriate specific transcription factors (activators), which are made in that type of cell, must bind to the control elements in the enhancer of the gene, while repressors must not be bound. The DNA must be bent by a bending protein so the activators can contact the mediator proteins and form a complex with general transcription factors at the promoter. Then RNA polymerase must bind and begin transcription.
18.3 miRNAs do not "code" for the amino acids of a protein—they are never translated. Each miRNA associates with a group of proteins to form a complex. Binding of the complex to an mRNA with a complementary sequence causes that mRNA to be degraded or blocks its translation. This is considered gene regulation because it controls the amount of a particular mRNA that can be translated into a functional protein. **18.4** The first process involves cytoplasmic determinants, including mRNAs and proteins, placed into specific locations in the egg by maternal cells. The embryonic cells that are formed from different regions of the egg during early cell divisions will have different proteins in them, which will direct different programs of gene expression. The second process involves the cell in question responding to signaling molecules secreted by neighboring cells (induction). The signaling pathway in the responding cell also leads to a different pattern of gene expression. The coordination of these two processes results in each cell following a unique pathway in the developing embryo.
18.5 The protein product of a proto-oncogene is usually involved in a pathway that stimulates cell division. The protein product of a tumor-suppressor gene is usually involved in a pathway that inhibits cell division.

Test Your Understanding

1. C **2.** A **3.** B **4.** C **5.** C **6.** D **7.** A **8.** C **9.** B **10.** D
11. (a)



The purple, blue, and red activator proteins would be present.
(b)



Only gene 4 would be transcribed.
(c) In nerve cells, the yellow, blue, green, and black activators would have to be present, thus activating transcription of genes 1, 2, and 4. In skin cells, the red, black, purple, and blue activators would have to be present, thus activating genes 3 and 5.

Chapter 19

Figure Questions

Figure 19.2 Beijerinck might have concluded that the agent was a toxin produced by the plant that was able to pass through a filter but that became more and more dilute. In this case, he would have concluded that the infectious agent could not replicate.

Figure 19.4

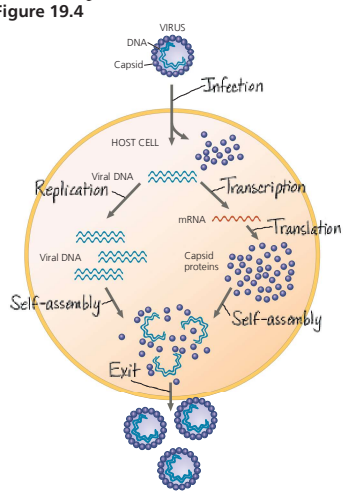


Figure 19.9 The main protein on the cell surface that HIV binds to is called CD4. However, HIV also requires a "co-receptor," which in many cases is a protein called CCR5. HIV binds to both of these proteins together and then is taken into the cell. Researchers discovered this requirement by studying individuals who seemed to be resistant to HIV infection despite multiple exposures. These individuals turned out to have mutations in the gene that encodes CCR5 such that the protein apparently cannot act as a co-receptor, and so HIV can't enter and infect cells.

Concept Check 19.1

1. Both viruses consist of RNA as the genetic material, associated with proteins. However, TMV consists of one molecule of RNA surrounded by a helical array of proteins, while the influenza virus has eight molecules of RNA, each associated with proteins and wound into a double helix. Another difference between the viruses is that the influenza virus has an outer envelope and TMV does not. **2.** The T2 phages were an excellent choice for use in the Hershey-Chase experiment because they consist of only DNA surrounded by a protein coat, and DNA and protein were the two candidates for macromolecules that carried genetic information. Hershey and Chase were able to radioactively label each type of molecule alone and follow it during separate infections of *E. coli* cells with T2. Only the DNA entered the bacterial cell during infection, and only labeled DNA showed up in some of the progeny phage. Hershey and Chase concluded that the DNA must carry the genetic information necessary for the phage to reprogram the cell and produce progeny phages.

Concept Check 19.2

1. Lytic phages can only carry out lysis of the host cell, whereas lysogenic phages may either lyse the host cell or integrate into the host chromosome. In the latter case, the viral DNA (prophage) is simply replicated along with the host chromosome. Under certain conditions, a prophage may exit the host chromosome and initiate a lytic cycle. **2.** Both the CRISPR-Cas system and miRNAs involve RNA molecules bound in a protein complex and acting as "homing devices" that enable the complex to bind a complementary sequence. However, miRNAs are involved in regulating gene expression (by affecting mRNAs) and the CRISPR-Cas system protects bacterial cells from foreign invaders—infecting phages. Thus the CRISPR-Cas system is more like an immune system than is the miRNA system. **3.** Both the viral RNA polymerase and the RNA polymerase in Figure 17.10 synthesize an RNA molecule complementary to a template strand. However, the RNA polymerase in Figure 17.10 uses one of the strands of the DNA double helix as a template, whereas the viral RNA polymerase uses the RNA of the viral genome as a template. **4.** HIV is called a retrovirus because it synthesizes DNA using its RNA genome as a template. This is the reverse ("retro") of the usual DNA → RNA information flow. **5.** There are many steps that could be interfered with: binding of the virus to the cell, reverse transcriptase function, integration into the host cell chromosome, genome synthesis (in this case, transcription of RNA from the integrated provirus), assembly of the virus inside the cell, and budding of the virus. (Many of these, if not all, are targets of actual medical strategies to block progress of the infection in HIV-infected people.)

Concept Check 19.3

1. Mutations can lead to a new strain of a virus that can no longer be effectively fought by the immune system, even if an animal had been exposed to the original strain; a virus can jump from one species to a new host; and a rare virus can spread if a host population becomes less isolated. **2.** In horizontal transmission, a plant is infected from an external source of virus, which enters through a break in the plant's epidermis due to damage by herbivores or other agents. In vertical transmission, a plant inherits viruses from its parent either via infected seeds (sexual reproduction) or via an infected cutting (asexual reproduction).
3. Humans are not within the host range of TMV, so they can't be infected by the virus. (TMV can't bind to receptors on human cells and infect them.)

Summary of Key Concepts Questions

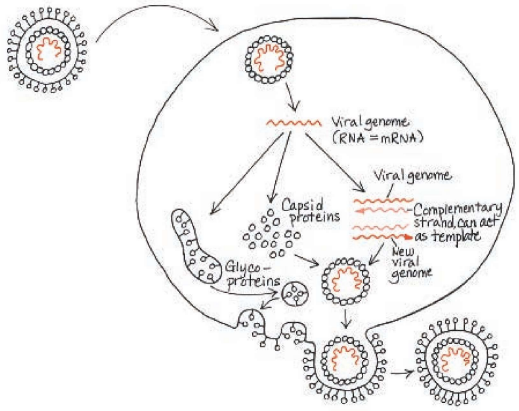
19.1 Viruses are generally considered nonliving because they are not capable of replicating outside of a host cell and are unable to carry out the

energy-transforming reactions of metabolism. To replicate and carry out metabolism, they depend completely on host enzymes and resources. **19.2** Single-stranded RNA viruses require an RNA polymerase that can make RNA using an RNA template. (Cellular RNA polymerases make RNA using a DNA template.) Retroviruses require reverse transcriptases to make DNA using an RNA template. (Once the first DNA strand has been made, the same enzyme can promote synthesis of the second DNA strand.) **19.3** The mutation rate of RNA viruses is higher than that of DNA viruses because RNA polymerase has no proofreading function, so errors in replication are not corrected. Their higher mutation rate is one reason that RNA viruses change faster than DNA viruses, leading to their being able to have an altered host range and to evade immune defenses in possible hosts.

Test Your Understanding

1. C **2.** D **3.** C **4.** D **5.** B

6. As shown below, the viral genome would be translated into capsid proteins and envelope glycoproteins directly, rather than after a complementary RNA copy was made. A complementary RNA strand would still be made, however, that could be used as a template for many new copies of the viral genome.



Chapter 20

Figure Questions

Figure 20.5

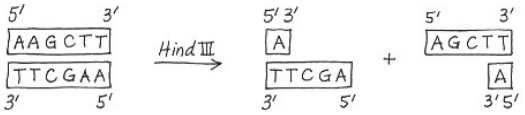
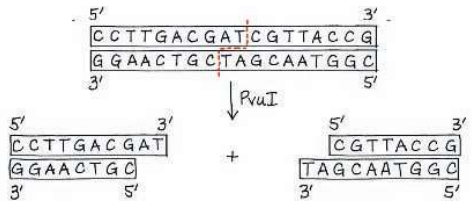


Figure 20.16 None of the eggs with the transplanted nuclei from the four-cell embryo at the upper left would have developed into a tadpole. Also, the result might include only some of the tissues of a tadpole, which might differ, depending on which nucleus was transplanted. (This assumes that there was some way to tell the four cells apart, as one can in some frog species.) **Figure 20.21** Using converted iPS cells would not carry the same risk, which is its major advantage. Because the donor cells would come from the patient, they would be perfectly matched. The patient's immune system would recognize them as "self" cells and would not mount an attack (which is what leads to rejection). On the other hand, cells that are rapidly dividing might carry a risk of inducing some type of tumor or contributing to development of cancer.

Concept Check 20.1

1. The covalent sugar-phosphate bonds of the DNA strands **2.** Yes, *Pvu*I will cut the molecule (at the position indicated by the dashed red line).



3. Some eukaryotic genes are too large to be incorporated into bacterial plasmids. Bacterial cells lack the means to process RNA transcripts into mRNA, and even if the need for RNA processing is avoided by using cDNA, bacteria lack enzymes to catalyze the post-translational processing that many eukaryotic proteins require to function properly. (This is often the case for human proteins, which are a focus of biotechnology.) **4.** During the replication of the ends of linear DNA molecules (see Figure 16.21), an RNA primer is used at the 5′ end of each new strand. The RNA must be replaced by DNA nucleotides, but DNA polymerase is incapable of starting from scratch at the 5′ end of a new DNA strand. During PCR, the primers are made of DNA nucleotides already, so they don't need to be replaced—they just remain as part of each new strand. Therefore, there is no problem with end replication during PCR, and the fragments don't shorten with each replication.

Concept Check 20.2

1. Complementary base pairing is involved in cDNA synthesis, which is required for all three techniques: RT-PCR, DNA microarray analysis, and RNA sequencing. Reverse transcriptase uses mRNA as a template to synthesize the first strand of cDNA, adding nucleotides complementary to those on the mRNA. Complementary base pairing is also involved when DNA polymerase synthesizes the second strand of the cDNA. Furthermore, in RT-PCR, the primers must base-pair with their target sequences in the DNA mixture, locating one specific region among many. Also, the DNA polymerase (for example, Taq polymerase) used in PCR relies on complementary base pairing to the template strand to add new nucleotides during synthesis of the fragments. In DNA microarray analysis, the labeled cDNA probe binds only to the specific target sequence due to complementary nucleic acid hybridization (DNA-DNA hybridization). In RNA-seq, when sequencing the cDNAs, base complementarity plays a role in the sequencing process. **2.** As a researcher interested in how cancer develops, you would want to study genes represented by spots that are green or red because these are genes for which the expression level differs between the two types of tissue. Some of these genes may be expressed differently as a result of cancer, while others might play a role in causing cancer, so both would be of interest.

Concept Check 20.3

1. The state of chromatin modification in the nucleus from the intestinal cell was undoubtedly less similar to that of a nucleus from a fertilized egg, explaining why many fewer of these nuclei were able to be reprogrammed. In contrast, the chromatin in a nucleus from a cell at the four-cell stage would have been much more like that of a nucleus in a fertilized egg and therefore much more easily programmed to direct development. **2.** No, primarily because of subtle (and perhaps not so subtle) differences in the environment in which the clone develops and lives compared with that in which the original pet lived (see the differences noted in Figure 20.18). This does provoke ethical questions. To produce Dolly, also a mammal, several hundred embryos were cloned, but only one survived to adulthood. If any of the "reject" dog embryos survived to birth as defective dogs, would they be killed? Is it ethical to produce living animals that may be defective? You can probably think of other ethical issues as well. **3.** Given that muscle cell differentiation involves a master regulatory gene (*MyoD*), you might start by introducing either the MyoD protein or an expression vector carrying the *MyoD* gene into stem cells. (This is not likely to work, because the embryonic precursor cell in Figure 18.18 is more differentiated than the stem cells you are working with, and some other changes would have to be introduced as well. But it's a good way to start! And you may be able to think of others.)

Concept Check 20.4

1. Stem cells continue to reproduce themselves, ensuring that the corrective gene product will continue to be made. **2.** Herbicide resistance, pest resistance, disease resistance, drought resistance, and delayed ripening **3.** Because hepatitis A is an RNA virus, you could isolate RNA from the blood and try to detect copies of hepatitis A RNA by RT-PCR. You would first reverse-transcribe the blood mRNA into cDNA and then use PCR to amplify the cDNA, using primers specific to hepatitis A sequences. If you then ran the products on an electrophoretic gel, the presence of a band of the appropriate size would support your hypothesis. Alternatively, you could use RNA-seq to sequence all the RNAs in your patient's blood and see whether any of the sequences match up with that of hepatitis A. (Since you are only seeking one sequence, though, RT-PCR is probably a better choice.)

Summary of Key Concepts Questions

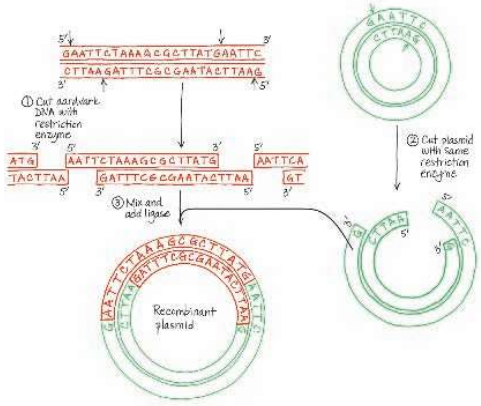
20.1 A plasmid vector and a source of foreign DNA to be cloned are both cut with the same restriction enzyme, generating restriction fragments with sticky ends. These fragments are mixed together, ligated, and reintroduced into bacterial cells. The plasmid has a gene for resistance to an antibiotic. That antibiotic is added to the host cells, and only cells that have taken up a plasmid will grow. (Another technique allows researchers to select only the cells that have a recombinant plasmid, rather than the original plasmid without an inserted gene.) **20.2** The genes that are expressed in a given tissue or cell type determine the proteins (and noncoding RNAs) that are the basis of the structure and functions of that tissue or cell type. Understanding which groups of interacting genes establish particular structures and carry out certain functions will help us learn how the parts of an organism work together. We will also be better able to treat diseases that occur when faulty gene expression leads to malfunctioning tissues. **20.3** (1) Cloning a mouse involves transplanting a nucleus from a differentiated mouse cell into a mouse egg cell that has had its own nucleus removed. Activating the egg cell and promoting its development into an embryo in a surrogate mother results in a mouse that is genetically identical to the mouse that donated the nucleus. In this case, the differentiated nucleus has been reprogrammed by factors in the egg cytoplasm. (2) Mouse ES cells are generated from inner cells in mouse blastocysts, so in this case the cells are "naturally" reprogrammed by the process of reproduction and development. (Cloned mouse embryos can also be used as a source of ES cells.) (3) iPS cells can be generated without the use of embryos from a differentiated adult mouse cell by adding certain transcription factors into the cell. In this case, the transcription factors are reprogramming the cells to become pluripotent. **20.4** First, the disease must be caused by a single gene, and the molecular basis of the problem must be understood. Second, the cells that are going to be introduced

into the patient must be cells that will integrate into body tissues and continue to multiply (and provide the needed gene product). Third, the gene must be able to be introduced into the cells in question in a safe way, as there have been instances of cancer resulting from some gene therapy trials. (Note that this will require testing the procedure in mice; moreover, the factors that determine a safe vector are not yet well understood. Maybe one of you will go on to solve this problem!)

Test Your Understanding

1. D **2.** B **3.** C **4.** B **5.** C **6.** A **7.** B **8.** You would use PCR to amplify the gene. This could be done from genomic DNA. Alternatively, mRNA could be isolated from lens cells and reverse-transcribed by reverse transcriptase to make cDNA. This cDNA could then be used for PCR. In either case, the gene would then be inserted into an expression vector so you could produce the protein and study it. **9.** Crossing over, which causes recombination, is a random event. The chance of crossing over occurring between two loci increases as the distance between them increases. If a SNP is located very close to a disease-associated allele, it is said to be genetically linked. Crossing over will rarely occur between the SNP and the allele, so the SNP can be used as a genetic marker indicating the presence of the particular allele.

10.



Chapter 21

Figure Questions

Figure 21.2 In step 2 of this figure, the order of the fragments relative to each other is not known and will be determined later by computer. The unordered nature of the fragments is reflected by their scattered arrangement in the diagram. **Figure 21.8** The transposon would be cut out of the DNA at the original site rather than copied, so the figure would show the original stretch of DNA without the transposon after the mobile transposon had been cut out. **Figure 21.10** The RNA transcripts extending from the DNA in each transcription unit are shorter on the left and longer on the right. This means that RNA polymerase must be starting on the left end of the unit and moving toward the right.

Figure 21.13

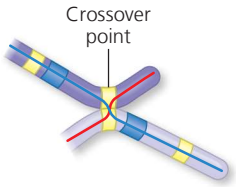


Figure 21.14 Pseudogenes are nonfunctional. They could have arisen by any mutations in the second copy that made the gene product unable to function. Examples are base changes that introduce stop codons in the sequence, alter amino acids, or change a region of the gene promoter so that the gene can no longer be expressed. **Figure 21.15** At position 5, there is an R (arginine) in lysozyme and a K (lysine) in α-lactalbumin; both of these are basic amino acids. **Figure 21.16** Let's say a transposable element (TE) existed in the intron to the left of the indicated EGF exon in the EGF gene, and the same TE was present in the intron to the right of the indicated F exon in the fibronectin gene. During meiotic recombination, these TEs could cause nonsister chromatids on homologous chromosomes to pair up incorrectly, as seen in Figure 21.13. One gene might end up with an F exon next to an EGF exon. Further mistakes in pairing over many generations might result in these two exons being separated from the rest of the gene and placed next to a single or duplicated K exon. In general, the presence of repeated sequences in introns and between genes facilitates these processes because it allows incorrect pairing of nonsister chromatids, leading to novel exon combinations. **Figure 21.18** Since you know that chimpanzees do not speak but humans do, you'd probably want to know how many amino acid differences there are between the human wild-type FOXP2 protein and that of the chimpanzee and whether these changes affect the function of the protein. (As we explain later in the text, there are two amino acid differences.) You know that humans with mutations in this gene have severe language impairment. You would want to learn more about the human mutations by checking whether they affect the same amino acids in the gene product that the chimpanzee sequence differences affect. If so, those amino acids might play an important role in the function of the protein in language. Going further, you could analyze the differences between the chimpanzee and mouse FOXP2 proteins. You might ask: Are they more similar than the chimpanzee and human proteins? (It turns out that the chimpanzee and mouse proteins have only one amino acid difference and thus are more similar than the chimpanzee and human proteins, which have two differences, and also are more similar than the human and mouse proteins, which have three differences.)

Concept Check 21.1

1. In the whole-genome shotgun approach, short fragments are generated by cutting the genome with multiple restriction enzymes. These fragments are cloned, sequenced, and then ordered by computer programs that identify overlapping regions.

Concept Check 21.2

1. The Internet allows centralization of databases such as GenBank and software resources such as BLAST, making them freely accessible. Having all the data in a central database, easily accessible on the Internet, minimizes the possibility of errors and of researchers working with different data. It streamlines the process of science, since all researchers are able to use the same software programs, rather than each having to obtain their own, possibly different, software. It speeds up dissemination of data and ensures as much as possible that errors are corrected in a timely fashion. These are just a few answers; you can probably think of more. **2.** Cancer is a disease caused by multiple factors. Focusing on a single gene or a single defect would mean ignoring other factors that may influence the cancer and even the behavior of the single gene being studied. The systems approach, because it takes into account many factors at the same time, is more likely to lead to an understanding of the causes and most useful treatments for cancer. **3.** Some of the transcribed region is accounted for by introns. The rest is transcribed into noncoding RNAs, including small RNAs, such as microRNAs (miRNAs), siRNAs, and piRNAs. Some of these RNAs help regulate gene expression by blocking translation, causing degradation of mRNA, binding to the promoter and repressing transcription, or causing remodeling of chromatin structure. The long noncoding RNAs (lncRNAs) may also contribute to gene regulation or to remodeling of chromatin structure. **4.** Genome-wide association studies use the systems biology approach in that they consider the correlation of many single nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs) with particular diseases, such as heart disease and diabetes, in an attempt to find patterns of SNPs that correlate with each disease.

Concept Check 21.3

1. Alternative splicing of RNA transcripts from a gene and post-translational processing of polypeptides **2.** At the top of the web page, you can see the number of genomes completed and those considered permanent drafts in a bar graph by year. Scrolling down, you can see the number of complete and incomplete sequencing projects by year, the number of projects by domain by year (the genomes of viruses and metagenomes are counted too, even though these are not "domains"), the phylogenetic distribution of bacterial genome projects, and projects by sequencing center. Finally, near the bottom, you can see a pie chart of the "Project Relevance of Bacterial Genome Projects," which shows that about 58.6% have medical relevance. (This number may vary over time.) The web page ends with another pie chart showing the sequencing centers for archaeal and bacterial projects. **3.** A prokaryotic cell is generally smaller than a eukaryotic cell, and prokaryotes reproduce by binary fission. The evolutionary process involved is natural selection for more quickly reproducing cells: The faster they can replicate their DNA and divide, the more likely they will be able to dominate a population of prokaryotes. The less DNA they have to replicate, then, the faster they will reproduce.

Concept Check 21.4

1. The number of genes is higher in mammals, and the amount of noncoding DNA is greater. Also, the presence of introns in mammalian genes makes them larger, on average, than prokaryotic genes. **2.** The copy-and-paste transposon mechanism and retrotransposition **3.** In the rRNA gene family, identical transcription units, each containing genes for all three different RNA products, are present in long arrays, repeated one after the other. The large number of copies of the rRNA genes enable organisms to produce the rRNA for enough ribosomes to carry out active protein synthesis, and the single transcription unit for the three rRNAs ensures that the relative amounts of the different rRNA molecules produced are correct—every time one rRNA is made, a copy of each of the other two is made as well. Rather than numerous identical units, each globin gene family consists of a relatively small number of nonidentical genes. The differences in the globin proteins encoded by these genes result in production of hemoglobin molecules adapted to particular developmental stages of the organism. **4.** The exons would be classified as exons (1.5%); the enhancer region containing the distal control elements, the region closer to the promoter containing the proximal control elements, and the promoter itself would be classified as regulatory sequences (5%); and the introns would be classified as introns (20%).

Concept Check 21.5

1. If meiosis is faulty, two copies of the entire genome can end up in a single cell. Errors in crossing over during meiosis can lead to one segment being duplicated while another is deleted. During DNA replication, slippage backward along the template strand can result in segment duplication. Also, a "copy-and-paste" transposable element could copy and paste a segment of DNA, resulting in a duplication of that segment (and of the transposable element itself.) **2.** For either gene, a mistake in crossing over during meiosis could have occurred between the two copies of that gene, such that one ended up with a duplicated exon. (The other copy would have ended up with a deleted exon.) This could have happened several times, resulting in the multiple copies of a particular exon in each gene. **3.** Homologous transposable elements scattered throughout the genome provide sites where recombination can occur between different chromosomes. Movement of these elements into coding or regulatory sequences may change expression of genes, which can affect the phenotype in a way that is subject to natural selection.

Transposable elements also can carry genes with them, leading to dispersion of genes and in some cases different patterns of expression. Transport of an exon during transposition and its insertion into a gene may add a new functional domain to the originally encoded protein, a type of exon shuffling. (For any of these changes to be heritable, they must happen in germ cells, cells that will give rise to gametes.) **4.** Because more offspring are born to women who have this inversion, it must provide some advantage during the process of reproduction and development. Because proportionally more offspring have this inversion, we would expect it to persist and spread in the population. (In fact, evidence in the study allowed the researchers to conclude that it has been increasing in proportion in the population. You'll learn more about population genetics in the next unit.)

Concept Check 21.6

1. Because both humans and macaques are primates, their genomes are expected to be more similar than the macaque and mouse genomes are. The mouse lineage diverged from the primate lineage before the human and macaque lineages diverged.
2. Homeotic genes differ in their *non*homeobox sequences, which determine the interactions of homeotic gene products with other transcription factors and hence which genes are regulated by the homeotic genes. These nonhomeobox sequences differ in the two species, as do the expression patterns of the homeobox genes.
3. *Alu* elements underwent transposition more actively in the human genome for some reason. Their increased sites of insertion may have then allowed more recombination errors in the human genome, resulting in more or different duplications. The divergence of the organization and content of the two genomes presumably made the chromosomes of each genome less similar to those of the other, thus accelerating divergence of the two species by making matings less and less likely to result in fertile offspring due to the mismatch of genetic information.

Summary of Key Concepts Questions

21.1 One focus of the Human Genome Project was to improve sequencing technology in order to speed up the process. During the project, many advances in sequencing technology allowed faster reactions and detection of products, which were therefore less expensive. **21.2** The most significant finding is that more than 75% of the human genome appears to be transcribed at some point in at least one of the cell types studied. Also, at least 80% of the genome contains an element that is functional, participating in gene regulation or maintaining chromatin structure in some way. The project was expanded to include other species to further investigate the functions of these transcribed DNA elements. It is necessary to carry out this type of analysis on the genomes of species that can be used in laboratory experiments. **21.3** (a) In general, bacteria and archaea have smaller genomes, lower numbers of genes, and higher gene density than eukaryotes. (b) Among eukaryotes, there is no apparent systematic relationship between genome size and phenotype. The number of genes is often lower than would be expected from the size of the genome—in other words, the gene density is often lower in larger genomes. (Humans are a good example.) **21.4** Transposable element–related sequences can move from place to place in the genome, and some of these sequences make a new copy of themselves when they do so. Thus, it is not surprising that they make up a significant percentage of the genome, and this percentage might be expected to increase over evolutionary time. **21.5** Chromosomal rearrangements within a species lead to some individuals having different chromosomal arrangements. Each of these individuals could still undergo meiosis and produce gametes, and fertilization involving gametes with different chromosomal arrangements could result in viable offspring. However, during meiosis in the offspring, the maternal and paternal chromosomes might not be able to pair up, causing gametes with incomplete sets of chromosomes to form. Most often, when zygotes are produced from such gametes, they do not survive. Ultimately, a new species could form if two different chromosomal arrangements became prevalent within a population and individuals could mate successfully only with other individuals having the same arrangement. **21.6** Comparing the genomes of two closely related species can reveal information about more recent evolutionary events, perhaps events that resulted in the distinguishing characteristics of the two species. Comparing the genomes of very distantly related species can tell us about evolutionary events that occurred a very long time ago. For example, genes that are shared between two distantly related species must have arisen before the two species diverged.

Test Your Understanding

1. B **2.** A **3.** C **4.** Answers for (a) through (c):

Chimpanzee	PKSSD … TSSTT … NARRD
Mouse	PKSSE … TSSTT … NARRD
Gorilla	PKSSD … TSSTT … NARRD
Human	PKSSD … TSSNT … SARRD
Rhesus monkey	PKSSD … TSSTT … NARRD

(d) There is one difference between the sequence for the mouse and the sequence for the chimpanzee, gorilla, and rhesus monkey. There are two differences between the human sequence and the sequence for the chimpanzee, gorilla, and rhesus monkey. These facts might lead to the hypothesis that the *FOXP2* gene has been evolving faster in the human lineage than in other primates: Two differences between humans and other primates occurred during the 6 million years since they diverged, but only one difference occurred during the much longer period of 65 million years since rodents and primates diverged. However, as described in the text, later analysis that included more genomes that were more diverse failed to support this hypothesis.

Chapter 22

Figure Questions

Figure 22.6 You should have circled the branch located at the far left of Figure 1.20. Although three of the descendants (*Certhidea olivacea*, *Camarhynchus pallidus*, and *Camarhynchus parvulus*) of this common ancestor ate insects, the other three species that descended from this ancestor did not eat insects. **Figure 22.8** The common ancestor lived about 5.5 million years ago. **Figure 22.13** These results show that being reared from the egg stage on one plant species or the other did not result in the adult having a beak length appropriate for that host; instead, adult beak lengths were determined primarily by the population from which the eggs were obtained. Because an egg from a balloon vine population likely had long-beaked parents, while an egg from a golden rain tree population likely had short-beaked parents, these results indicate that beak length is an inherited trait.
Figure 22.14 Both strategies should increase the time that it takes *S. aureus* to become resistant to a new drug. If a drug that harms *S. aureus* does not harm other bacteria, natural selection will not favor resistance to that drug in the other species. This would decrease the chance that *S. aureus* would acquire resistance genes from other bacteria—thus slowing the evolution of resistance. Similarly, selection for resistance to a drug that slows the growth but does not kill *S. aureus* is much weaker than selection for resistance to a drug that kills *S. aureus*—again slowing the evolution of resistance. **Figure 22.17** Based on this evolutionary tree, crocodiles are more closely related to birds than to lizards because they share a more recent common ancestor with birds (ancestor 5) than with lizards (ancestor 4).
Figure 22.20 Hind limb structure changed first. *Rodhocetus* lacked flukes, but its pelvic bones and hind limbs had changed substantially from how those bones were shaped and arranged in *Pakicetus*. For example, in *Rodhocetus*, the pelvis and hind limbs appear to be oriented for paddling, whereas they were oriented for walking in *Pakicetus*.

Concept Check 22.1

1. Hutton and Lyell proposed that geologic events in the past were caused by the same processes operating today, at the same gradual rate. This principle suggested that Earth must be much older than a few thousand years, the age that was widely accepted in the early 19th century. Hutton's and Lyell's ideas also stimulated Darwin to reason that the slow accumulation of small changes could ultimately produce the profound changes documented in the fossil record. In this context, the age of Earth was important to Darwin, because unless Earth was very old, he could not envision how there would have been enough time for evolution to occur. **2.** By this criterion, Cuvier's explanation of the fossil record and Lamarck's hypothesis of evolution are both scientific. Cuvier thought that species did not evolve over time. He also suggested that sudden, catastrophic events caused extinctions in particular areas and that such regions were later repopulated by a different set of species that immigrated from other areas. These assertions can be tested against the fossil record. Lamarck's principle of use and disuse can be used to make testable predictions for fossils of groups such as whale ancestors as they adapted to a new habitat. Lamarck's principle of use and disuse and his associated principle of the inheritance of acquired characteristics can also be tested directly in living organisms.

Concept Check 22.2

1. Organisms share characteristics (the unity of life) because they share common ancestors; the great diversity of life occurs because new species have repeatedly formed when descendant organisms gradually adapted to different environments, thereby becoming different from their ancestors. **2.** The fossil mammal species (or its ancestors) would most likely have colonized the Andes from within South America, whereas ancestors of mammals currently found in Asian mountains would most likely have colonized those mountains from other parts of Asia. As a result, the Andes fossil species would share a more recent common ancestor with South American mammals than with mammals in Asia. Thus, for many of its traits, the fossil mammal species would probably more closely resemble mammals that live in South American jungles than mammals that live on Asian mountains. It is also possible that for some of its features, the Andean fossil mammal species could closely resemble a mammal from the mountains of Asia. This could happen because similar environments had selected for similar adaptations (even though the fossil and Asian species were only distantly related to one another). **3.** As long as the white phenotype (encoded by the genotype *pp*) continues to be favored by natural selection, the proportion of white individuals in the population should increase over time relative to the proportion of purple individuals (encoded by the genotypes *PP* and *Pp*). As a result, the frequency of the *p* allele in the population would likely increase over time.

Concept Check 22.3

1. An environmental factor such as a drug does not create new traits, such as drug resistance, but rather selects for traits among those that are already present in the population. **2.** (a) Despite their different functions, the forelimbs of different mammals are structurally similar because they all represent modifications of a structure found in the common ancestor; thus, they are homologous structures. (b) In this case, the similar features of these mammals represent analogous features that arose by convergent evolution. The similarities between the sugar glider and flying squirrel indicate that similar environments selected for similar adaptations despite different ancestry. **3.** At the time that dinosaurs originated, Earth's landmasses formed a single large continent, Pangaea. Because many dinosaurs were large and mobile, it is likely that early members of these groups lived on many different parts of Pangaea. When Pangaea broke apart, fossils of these organisms would have moved with the rocks in which they were deposited. As a result, we would predict that fossils of early dinosaurs would have a broad geographic distribution (this prediction has been upheld).

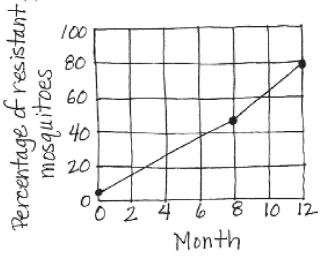
Summary of Key Concepts Questions

Concept 22.1 Darwin thought that descent with modification occurred as a gradual, steplike process. The age of Earth was important to him because if Earth were only a few thousand years old (as conventional wisdom suggested), there wouldn't have been sufficient time for major evolutionary change. **Concept 22.2** All species have the potential to overreproduce—that is, to produce more offspring than can be supported by the environment. This ensures that there will be what Darwin called a "struggle for existence" in which many of the offspring are eaten, starved, diseased, or unable to reproduce for a variety of other reasons. Members of a population exhibit a range of heritable variations, some of which make it likely that their bearers will leave more offspring than other individuals (for example, the bearer may escape predators more effectively or be more tolerant of the physical conditions of the environment). Over time, natural selection resulting from factors such as predators, lack of food, or the physical conditions of the environment can increase the proportion of individuals with favorable traits in a population (evolutionary adaptation). **Concept 22.3** The hypothesis that cetaceans originated from a terrestrial mammal and are closely related to even-toed ungulates is supported by several lines of evidence. For example, fossils document that early cetaceans had hind limbs, as expected for organisms that descended from a land mammal; these fossils also show that cetacean hind limbs became reduced over time. Other fossils show that early cetaceans had a type of ankle bone that is otherwise found only in even-toed ungulates, providing strong evidence that even-toed ungulates are the land mammals to which cetaceans are most closely related. DNA sequence data also indicate that even-toed ungulates are the land mammals to which cetaceans are, most closely related.

Test Your Understanding

1. C **2.** D **3.** C **4.** A **5.** B

7. (a)



(b) The rapid rise in the percentage of mosquitoes resistant to DDT was most likely caused by natural selection in which mosquitoes resistant to DDT could survive and reproduce while other mosquitoes could not. (c) In India—where DDT resistance first appeared—natural selection would have caused the frequency of resistant mosquitoes to increase over time. If resistant mosquitoes then migrated from India (for example, transported by wind or in planes, trains, or ships) to other parts of the world, the frequency of DDT resistance would increase there as well. In addition, if resistance to DDT were to arise independently in mosquito populations outside of India, those populations would also experience an increase in the frequency of DDT resistance.

Chapter 23

Figure Questions

Figure 23.4 The genetic code is redundant, meaning that more than one codon can specify the same amino acid. As a result, a substitution at a particular site in a coding region of the *Adh* gene might change the codon but not the translated amino acid, and thus not the resulting protein encoded by the gene. One way an insertion in an exon would not affect the gene produced is if it occurs in an untranslated region of the exon. (This is the case for the insertion at location 1,703.) **Figure 23.7** There should be 24 red balls. **Figure 23.8** The predicted frequencies are 36% C^RC^R, 48% C^RC^W, and 16% C^WC^W. **Figure 23.9** Overall, by chance the frequency of the C^W allele first increases in generation 2 and then falls to zero in generation 3—causing the C^R allele to become fixed (reach a frequency of 100%). **Figure 23.12** The frequency of banded color patterns in island populations would probably increase in the year immediately after the storm. Since mainland populations did not decline in size, the number of individuals migrating from the mainland to the islands would probably not decline either. As a result, after island populations had decreased in size (because of the storm), alleles encoding banded coloration that were transferred from the mainland would comprise a larger proportion of the gene pool in island populations. This would cause the frequency of banded color patterns in island populations to increase. **Figure 23.13** Directional selection. The seeds of golden rain tree are buried less deeply than are the seeds of the native host, balloon vine. Thus, in soapberry bug populations feeding on golden rain tree, bugs with shorter beaks had an advantage, resulting in directional selection for shorter beak length. **Figure 23.16** Crossing a single female's eggs with both an SC and an LC male's sperm allowed the researchers to directly compare the effects of the males' contribution to the next generation since both batches of offspring had the same maternal contribution. This isolation of the male's impact enabled researchers to draw conclusions about differences in genetic "quality" between the SC and LC males. **Figure 23.18** Under prolonged low-oxygen conditions, some of the red blood cells of a heterozygote may sickle, leading to harmful effects. This does not occur in individuals with two wild-type hemoglobin alleles, suggesting that there may be selection against heterozygotes in malaria-free regions (where heterozygote advantage does not occur). However, since heterozygotes are healthy under most conditions, selection against them is unlikely to be strong.

Concept Check 23.1

1. Within a population, genetic differences among individuals provide the raw material on which natural selection and other mechanisms can act. Without such differences, allele frequencies could not change over time—and hence the population could not evolve. **2.** Many mutations occur in somatic cells, which do not produce gametes and so are lost when the organism dies. Of the mutations that do occur in cell lines that produce gametes, many do not have a phenotypic effect on which natural selection can act. Others have a harmful effect and are thus unlikely to increase in frequency because they decrease the reproductive success of their bearers. **3.** Its genetic variation (whether measured at the level of the gene or at the level of nucleotide sequences) would probably drop over time. During meiosis, crossing over and the independent assortment of chromosomes produce many new combinations of alleles. In addition, a population contains a vast number of possible mating combinations, and fertilization brings together the gametes of individuals with different genetic backgrounds. Thus, via crossing over, independent assortment of chromosomes, and fertilization, sexual reproduction reshuffles alleles into fresh combinations each generation. Without sexual reproduction, the rate of forming new combinations of alleles would be vastly reduced, causing the overall amount of genetic variation to drop.

Concept Check 23.2

1. There are 700 individuals in the population: 85 of genotype *AA*, 320 of genotype *Aa*, and 295 of genotype *aa*. The genotype frequencies are thus 0.12 (85/700) for genotype *AA*, 0.46 (320/700) for genotype *Aa*, and 0.42 (295/700) for genotype *aa*. Each individual has two alleles, so the total number of alleles is 1,400. To calculate the frequency of allele *A*, note that each of the 85 individuals of genotype *AA* has two *A* alleles, each of the 320 individuals of genotype *Aa* has one *A* allele, and each of the 295 individuals of genotype *aa* has zero *A* alleles. Thus, the frequency (p) of allele *A* is

$$p = \frac{(2 \times 85) + (1 \times 320) + (0 \times 295)}{1{,}400} = 0.35$$

There are only two alleles (*A* and *a*) in our population, so the frequency of allele *a* must be $q = 1 - p = 0.65$. **2.** Because the frequency of allele *a* is 0.45, the frequency of allele *A* must be 0.55. Thus, the expected genotype frequencies are $p^2 = 0.3025$ for genotype *AA*, $2pq = 0.495$ for genotype *Aa*, and $q^2 = 0.2025$ for genotype *aa*. **3.** There are 120 individuals in the population, so there are 240 alleles. Of these, there are 124 *V* alleles—32 from the 16 *VV* individuals and 92 from the 92 *Vv* individuals. Thus, the frequency of the *V* allele is $p = 124/240 = 0.52$; hence, the frequency of the *v* allele is $q = 0.48$. Based on the Hardy-Weinberg equation, if the population were not evolving, the frequency of genotype *VV* should be $p^2 = 0.52 \times 0.52 = 0.27$; the frequency of genotype *Vv* should be $2pq = 2 \times 0.52 \times 0.48 = 0.5$; and the frequency of genotype *vv* should be $q^2 = 0.48 \times 0.48 = 0.23$. In a population of 120 individuals, these expected genotype frequencies lead us to predict that there would be 32 *VV* individuals (0.27×120), 60 *Vv* individuals (0.5×120), and 28 *vv* individuals (0.23×120). The actual numbers for the population (16 *VV*, 92 *Vv*, 12 *vv*) deviate from these expectations (fewer homozygotes and more heterozygotes than expected). This indicates that the population is not in Hardy-Weinberg equilibrium and hence may be evolving at this locus.

Concept Check 23.3

1. Natural selection is more "predictable" in that it alters allele frequencies in a nonrandom way: It tends to increase the frequency of alleles that increase the organism's reproductive success in its environment and decrease the frequency of alleles that decrease the organism's reproductive success. Alleles subject to genetic drift increase or decrease in frequency by chance alone, whether or not they are advantageous. **2.** Genetic drift results from chance events that cause allele frequencies to fluctuate at random from generation to generation; within a population, this process tends to decrease genetic variation over time. Gene flow is the transfer of alleles between populations, a process that can introduce new alleles to a population and hence may increase its genetic variation (albeit slightly, since rates of gene flow are often low). **3.** Selection is not important at this locus; furthermore, the populations are not small, and hence the effects of genetic drift should not be pronounced. Gene flow is occurring via the movement of pollen and seeds. Thus, allele and genotype frequencies in these populations should become more similar over time as a result of gene flow.

Concept Check 23.4

1. The relative fitness of a mule is zero, because fitness includes reproductive contribution to the next generation, and a sterile mule cannot produce offspring. **2.** Although both gene flow and genetic drift can increase the frequency of advantageous alleles in a population, they can also decrease the frequency of advantageous alleles or increase the frequency of harmful alleles. Only natural selection *consistently* results in an increase in the frequency of alleles that enhance survival or reproduction. Thus, natural selection is the only mechanism that consistently leads to adaptive evolution. **3.** The three modes of natural selection (directional, stabilizing, and disruptive) are defined in terms of the selective advantage of different *phenotypes*, not different genotypes. Thus, the type of selection represented by heterozygote advantage depends on the phenotype of the heterozygotes. In this question, because heterozygous individuals have a more extreme phenotype than either homozygote, heterozygote advantage represents directional selection.

Summary of Key Concepts Questions

23.1 Much of the nucleotide variability at a genetic locus occurs within introns. Nucleotide variation at these sites typically does not affect the phenotype because

introns do not code for the protein product of the gene. (Note: In certain circumstances, it is possible that a change in an intron could affect RNA splicing and ultimately have some phenotypic effect on the organism, but such mechanisms are not covered in this introductory text.) There are also many variable nucleotide sites within exons. However, most of the variable sites within exons reflect changes to the DNA sequence that do not change the sequence of amino acids encoded by the gene (and hence may not affect the phenotype). **23.2** No, this is not an example of circular reasoning. Calculating p and q from observed genotype frequencies does not imply that those genotype frequencies must be in Hardy-Weinberg equilibrium. For example, consider a population that has 195 individuals of genotype *AA*, 10 of genotype *Aa*, and 195 of genotype *aa*. Calculating p and q from these values yields $p = q = 0.5$. Using the Hardy-Weinberg equation, the predicted equilibrium frequencies are $p^2 = 0.25$ for genotype *AA*, $2pq = 0.5$ for genotype *Aa*, and $q^2 = 0.25$ for genotype *aa*. Since there are 400 individuals in the population, these predicted genotype frequencies indicate that there should be 100 *AA* individuals, 200 *Aa* individuals, and 100 *aa* individuals—numbers that differ greatly from the values that we used to calculate p and q. **23.3** It is unlikely that two such populations would evolve in similar ways. Since their environments are very different, the alleles favored by natural selection would probably differ between the two populations. Although genetic drift may have important effects in each of these small populations, drift causes unpredictable changes in allele frequencies, so it is unlikely that drift would cause the populations to evolve in similar ways. Both populations are geographically isolated, suggesting that little gene flow would occur between them (again making it less likely that they would evolve in similar ways). **23.4** Compared to males, it is likely that the females of such species would be larger, more colorful, endowed with more elaborate ornamentation (for example, a large morphological feature such as the peacock's tail), and more apt to engage in behaviors intended to attract mates or prevent other members of their sex from obtaining mates.

Test Your Understanding

1. D **2.** C **3.** B **4.** A **5.** C

Chapter 24

Figure Questions

Figure 24.7 If this had not been done, the strong preference of "starch flies" and "maltose flies" to mate with like-adapted flies could have occurred simply because the flies could detect (for example, by sense of smell) what their potential mates had eaten as larvae—and preferred to mate with flies that had a similar smell to their own. **Figure 24.11** *Tragopogon dubius* and *T. pratenis* are the parent species of the polyploid species *T. miscellus*. *T. dubius* and *T. porrifolius* are the parent species of the other polyploid species, *T. mirus*. **Figure 24.12** In murky waters where females distinguish colors poorly, females of each species might mate often with males of the other species. Hence, since hybrids between these species are viable and fertile, the gene pools of the two species might become more similar over time.
Figure 24.13 The graph indicates that there has been gene flow of some fire-bellied toad alleles into the range of the yellow-bellied toad. Otherwise, all individuals located to the left of the hybrid zone portion of the graph would have allele frequencies equal to 1. **Figure 24.15** Because the populations had only just begun to diverge from one another at this point in the process, it is likely that any existing barriers to reproduction would weaken over time. **Figure 24.19** Over time, the chromosomes of the experimental hybrids came to resemble those of *H. anomalus*. This occurred even though conditions in the laboratory differed greatly from conditions in the field, where *H. anomalus* is found, suggesting that selection for laboratory conditions was not strong. Thus, it is unlikely that the observed rise in the fertility of the experimental hybrids was due to selection for life under laboratory conditions. **Figure 24.20** The presence of *M. cardinalis* plants that carry the *M. lewisii yup* allele would make it more likely that bumblebees would transfer pollen between the two monkey flower species. As a result, we would expect the number of hybrid offspring to increase.

Concept Check 24.1

1. (a) All except the biological species concept can be applied to both asexual and sexual species because they define species on the basis of characteristics other than the ability to reproduce. In contrast, the biological species concept can be applied only to sexual species. (b) The easiest species concept to apply in the field would be the morphological species concept because it is based only on the appearance of the organism. Additional information about its ecological habits or reproduction is not required. **2.** Because these birds live in fairly similar environments and can breed successfully in captivity, the reproductive barrier in nature is probably prezygotic; given the species' differences in habitat preference, this barrier could result from habitat isolation.

Concept Check 24.2

1. In allopatric speciation, a new species forms while in geographic isolation from its parent species; in sympatric speciation, a new species forms in the absence of geographic isolation. Geographic isolation greatly reduces gene flow between populations, whereas ongoing gene flow is more likely in sympatric populations. As a result, allopatric speciation is more common than sympatric speciation. **2.** Gene flow between subsets of a population that live in the same area can be reduced in a variety of ways. In some species—especially plants—changes in chromosome number can block gene flow and establish reproductive isolation in a single generation. Gene flow can also be reduced in sympatric populations by habitat differentiation (as seen in the apple maggot fly, *Rhagoletis*) and sexual selection (as seen in Lake Victoria cichlids). **3.** Allopatric speciation would be less likely to occur on an island near a mainland than on a more isolated island of the same size. We expect this result because continued gene flow between mainland populations and those on a nearby island reduces the chance that enough genetic divergence will take place for allopatric speciation to occur.
4. If all of the homologs failed to separate during anaphase I of meiosis, some gametes would end up with an extra set of chromosomes (and others would end up with no chromosomes). If a gamete with an extra set of chromosomes fused with a normal gamete, a triploid would result; if two gametes with an extra set of chromosomes fused with each other, a tetraploid would result.

Concept Check 24.3

1. Hybrid zones are regions in which members of different species meet and mate, producing some offspring of mixed ancestry. Such regions can be viewed as "natural laboratories" in which to study speciation because scientists can directly observe factors that cause (or fail to cause) reproductive isolation.
2. (a) If hybrids consistently survived and reproduced poorly compared with the offspring of intraspecific matings, reinforcement could occur. If it did, natural selection would cause prezygotic barriers to reproduction between the parent species to strengthen over time, decreasing the production of unfit hybrids and leading to a completion of the speciation process. If reinforcement did not occur, hybrids may continue to be produced even though they are selected against (as in the *Bombina* hybrid zone). (b) If hybrid offspring survived and reproduced as well as the offspring of intraspecific matings, indiscriminate mating between the parent species would lead to the production of large numbers of hybrid offspring. As these hybrids mated with each other and with members of both parent species, the gene pools of the parent species could fuse over time, reversing the speciation process.

Concept Check 24.4

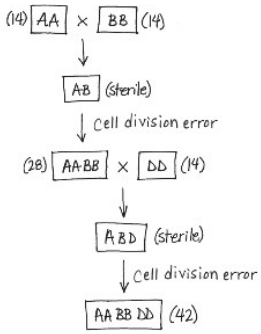
1. The time between speciation events includes (1) the length of time that it takes for populations of a newly formed species to begin diverging reproductively from one another and (2) the time it takes for speciation to be complete once this divergence begins. Although speciation can occur rapidly once populations have begun to diverge from one another, it may take millions of years for that divergence to begin. **2.** Investigators transferred alleles at the *yup* locus (which influences flower color) from each parent species to the other. *M. lewisii* plants with an *M. cardinalis yup* allele received many more visits from hummingbirds than usual; hummingbirds usually pollinate *M. cardinalis* but avoid *M. lewisii*. Similarly, *M. cardinalis* plants with an *M. lewisii yup* allele received many more visits from bumblebees than usual; bumblebees usually pollinate *M. lewisii* and avoid *M. cardinalis*. Thus, alleles at the *yup* locus can influence pollinator choice, which in these species provides the primary barrier to interspecific mating. Nevertheless, the experiment does not prove that the *yup* locus alone controls barriers to reproduction between *M. lewisii* and *M. cardinalis*; other genes might enhance the effect of the *yup* locus (by modifying flower color) or cause entirely different barriers to reproduction (for example, gametic isolation or a postzygotic barrier).
3. Crossing over. If crossing over did not occur, each chromosome in an experimental hybrid would remain as in the F_1 generation: composed entirely of DNA from one parent species or the other.

Summary of Key Concepts Questions

24.1 According to the biological species concept, a species is a group of populations whose members interbreed and produce viable, fertile offspring; thus, gene flow occurs between populations of a species. In contrast, members of different species do not interbreed and hence no gene flow occurs between their populations. Overall, then, in the biological species concept, species can be viewed as designated by the *absence* of gene flow—making gene flow of central importance to the biological species concept. **24.2** Sympatric speciation can be promoted by factors such as polyploidy, sexual selection, and habitat shifts, all of which can reduce gene flow between the subpopulations of a larger population. Of these factors, sexual selection and habitat shifts can also occur in allopatric populations and hence can also promote allopatric speciation. **24.3** If the hybrids are selected against, the hybrid zone could persist if individuals from the parent species regularly travel into the zone, where they mate to produce hybrid offspring. If hybrids are not selected against, there is no cost to the continued production of hybrids, and large numbers of hybrid offspring may be produced. However, natural selection for life in different environments may keep the gene pools of the two parent species distinct, thus preventing the loss (by fusion) of the parent species and once again causing the hybrid zone to be stable over time. **24.4** As the goatsbeard plant, Bahamas mosquitofish, and apple maggot fly illustrate, speciation continues to happen today. A new species can begin to form whenever gene flow is reduced between populations of the parent species. Such reductions in gene flow can occur in many ways: A new, geographically isolated population may be founded by a few colonists; some members of the parent species may begin to utilize a new habitat; or sexual selection may isolate formerly connected populations or subpopulations. These and many other such events are happening today.

Test Your Understanding

1. B **2.** C **3.** B **4.** A **5.** D **6.** C
8. Here is one possibility:



Chapter 25

Figure Questions

Figure 25.2 Proteins are almost always composed of the same 20 amino acids shown in Figure 5.14. However, many other amino acids could potentially form in this or any other experiment. For example, any molecule that had an R group that differed from those listed in Figure 5.14 would still be an amino acid as long as it also contained an α carbon, an amino group, and a carboxyl group—but that molecule would not be one of the 20 amino acids commonly found in nature. **Figure 25.4** The hydrophobic regions of such molecules are attracted to one another and excluded from water, whereas the hydrophilic regions have an affinity for water. As a result, the molecules can form a bilayer in which the hydrophilic regions are on the outside of the bilayer (facing water on each side of the bilayer) and the hydrophobic regions point toward each other (that is, toward the inside of the bilayer). **Figure 25.6** Because uranium-238 has a half-life of 4.5 billion years, the *x*-axis would be relabeled (in billions of years) as 4.5, 9, 13.5, and 18. **Figure 25.8** (1) The earliest direct evidence of life comes from fossils of prokaryotes that date to 3.5 billion years ago. Fossil evidence also shows that for the next 2 billion years (3.5 to 1.5 billion years ago), life on Earth consisted entirely of unicellular organisms. In fact, from 3.5 billion years ago to 1.8 billion years ago, all of Earth's organisms were prokaryotes; around 1.8 billion years ago, these unicellular prokaryotes were joined by unicellular eukaryotes (multicellular eukaryotes emerged about 1.3 billion years ago). (2) Sample answer: In Figure 25.12, there are two hatch marks on the *x*-axis. These hatch marks represent large time spans. Unless the graph was very wide, showing these entire time spans would obscure key details for the figure, such as when selected animal groups first appear in the fossil record. (3) The horizontal time scale indicates that prokaryotes originated 3.5 billion years ago and that the colonization of land took place 500 million years ago. On a 1-hour time scale, this indicates that prokaryotes appeared about 46 minutes ago, while the colonization of land took place less than 7 minutes ago. **Figure 25.12** You should have circled the node, shown in the tree diagram at approximately 635 million years ago (mya), that leads to the echinoderm/chordate lineage and to the lineage that gave rise to brachiopods, annelids, molluscs, and arthropods. To determine a minimum estimate of the age of the ancestor represented by this node, note that the most recent common ancestor of chordates and annelids must be at least as old as any of its descendants. Since fossil molluscs date to about 560 mya, the common ancestor represented by the circled branch point must be at least 560 million years old. **Figure 25.14** There are two speciation events and five extinctions in lineage A, while there are five speciation events and one extinction in lineage B during the last 2 million years. **Figure 25.17** The Australian plate's current direction of movement is roughly similar to the northeasterly direction the continent traveled over the past 66 million years. **Figure 25.27** The coding sequence of the *Pitx1* gene would differ between the marine and lake populations, but patterns of gene expression would not.

Concept Check 25.1

1. The hypothesis that conditions on early Earth could have permitted the synthesis of organic molecules from inorganic ingredients **2.** In contrast to random mingling of molecules in an open solution, segregation of molecular systems by membranes could concentrate organic molecules, assisting biochemical reactions. **3.** Today, genetic information usually flows from DNA to RNA, as when the DNA sequence of a gene is used as a template to synthesize the mRNA encoding a particular protein. However, the life cycle of retroviruses such as HIV shows that genetic information can flow in the reverse direction (from RNA to DNA). In these viruses, the enzyme reverse transcriptase uses RNA as a template for DNA synthesis, suggesting that a similar enzyme could have played a key role in the transition from an RNA world to a DNA world.

Concept Check 25.2

1. The fossil record shows that different groups of organisms dominated life on Earth at different points in time and that many organisms once alive are now extinct; specific examples of these points can be found in Figure 25.5. The fossil record also indicates that new groups of organisms can arise via the gradual modification of previously existing organisms, as illustrated by fossils that document the origin of mammals from their cynodont ancestors (see Figure 25.7).
2. 22,920 years (four half-lives: 5,730 × 4)

Concept Check 25.3

1. Free oxygen attacks chemical bonds and can inhibit enzymes and damage cells. As a result, the appearance of oxygen in the atmosphere probably caused many prokaryotes that had thrived in anaerobic environments to survive and reproduce poorly, ultimately driving many of these species to extinction. **2.** All eukaryotes have mitochondria or remnants of these organelles, but not all eukaryotes have plastids. **3.** A fossil record of life today would include many organisms with hard body parts (such as vertebrates and many marine invertebrates), but might not include some species we are very familiar with, such as those that have small geographic ranges and/or small population sizes (for example, endangered species such as the giant panda, tiger, and several rhinoceros species).

Concept Check 25.4

1. The theory of plate tectonics describes the movement of Earth's continental plates, which alters the physical geography and climate of Earth, as well as the extent to which organisms are geographically isolated. Because these factors affect extinction and speciation rates, plate tectonics has a major impact on life on Earth. **2.** Mass extinctions; major evolutionary innovations; the diversification of another group of organisms (which can provide new sources of food); migration to new locations where few competitor species exist **3.** Evidence from previous mass extinctions indicates that the diversity of life on Earth would not recover, for millions of years, to what it had been before the mass extinction—a much greater period of time than our species has been in existence (about 200,000 years). Although new speciation events would eventually cause the total number of species on Earth to recover, the many species and evolutionary lineages driven to extinction would be gone forever, thus forever changing the course of evolution on our planet. In addition, previous evidence suggests that a sixth mass extinction would reduce thriving and complex ecological communities (such as forests and coral reefs) so greatly that they might hardly resemble what they are like now. A sixth mass extinction would also change the types of organisms that live in ecological communities and how those organisms interact with one another. Finally, a sixth mass extinction would pave the way for new adaptive radiations in some of the groups that survive the extinction.

Concept Check 25.5

1. Heterochrony can cause a variety of morphological changes. For example, if the timing of the onset of sexual maturity changes, retention of juvenile characteristics (paedomorphosis) may result. Paedomorphosis can be caused by small genetic changes that result in large changes in morphology, as seen in the axolotl salamander. **2.** In animal embryos, *Hox* genes influence the development of structures such as limbs and feeding appendages. As a result, changes in these genes—or in the regulation of these genes—are likely to have major effects on morphology. **3.** From genetics, we know that gene regulation is altered by how well transcription factors bind to noncoding DNA sequences called control elements. Thus, if changes in morphology are often caused by changes in gene regulation, portions of noncoding DNA that contain control elements are likely to be strongly affected by natural selection.

Concept Check 25.6

1. Complex structures do not evolve all at once, but in increments, with natural selection selecting for adaptive variants of the earlier versions. **2.** Although the myxoma virus is highly lethal, initially some of the rabbits are resistant (0.2% of infected rabbits are not killed). Thus, assuming resistance is an inherited trait, we would expect the rabbit population to show a trend for increased resistance to the virus. We would also expect the virus to show an evolutionary trend toward reduced lethality. We would expect this trend because a rabbit infected with a less lethal virus would be more likely to live long enough for a mosquito to bite it and hence potentially transmit the virus to another rabbit. (A virus that kills its rabbit host before a mosquito transmits the virus to another rabbit dies with its host.)

Summary of Key Concepts Questions

Concept 25.1 Particles of montmorillonite clay may have provided surfaces on which organic molecules became concentrated and hence were more likely to react with one another. Montmorillonite clay particles may also have facilitated the transport of key molecules, such as short strands of RNA, into vesicles. These vesicles can form spontaneously from simple precursor molecules, "reproduce" and "grow" on their own, and maintain internal concentrations of molecules that differ from those in the surrounding environment. These features of vesicles represent key steps in the emergence of protocells and (ultimately) the first living cells. **Concept 25.2** One challenge is that radioisotopes with very long half-lives are not used by organisms to build their bones or shells. As a result, fossils older than 75,000 years cannot be dated directly. Fossils are often found in sedimentary rock, but those rocks typically contain sediments of different ages, again posing a challenge when trying to date old fossils. To circumvent these challenges, geologists use radioisotopes with long half-lives to date layers of volcanic rock that surround old fossils. This approach provides minimum and maximum estimates for the ages of fossils sandwiched between two layers of volcanic rock. **Concept 25.3** The "Cambrian explosion" refers to a relatively short interval of time (535–525 million years ago) during which large forms of many present-day animal phyla first appear in the fossil record. The evolutionary changes that occurred during this time, such as the appearance of large predators and well-defended prey, were important because they set the stage for many of the key events in the history of life over the last 500 million years. **Concept 25.4** The broad evolutionary changes documented by the fossil record reflect the rise and fall of major groups of organisms. In turn, the rise or fall of any particular group results from a balance between speciation and extinction rates: A group increases in size when the rate at which its members produce new species is greater than the rate at which its member species are lost to extinction, while a group shrinks in size if extinction rates are greater than speciation rates.
Concept 25.5 A change in the sequence or regulation of a developmental gene can produce major morphological changes. In some cases, such morphological changes may enable organisms to perform new functions or live in new environments—thus potentially leading to an adaptive radiation and the formation of a new group of organisms. **Concept 25.6** Evolutionary change results from interactions between organisms and their current environments. No goal is involved in this process. As environments change over time, the features of organisms favored by natural selection may also change. When this happens, what once may have seemed like a "goal" of evolution (for example, improvements in the function of a feature previously favored by natural selection) may cease to be beneficial or may even be harmful.

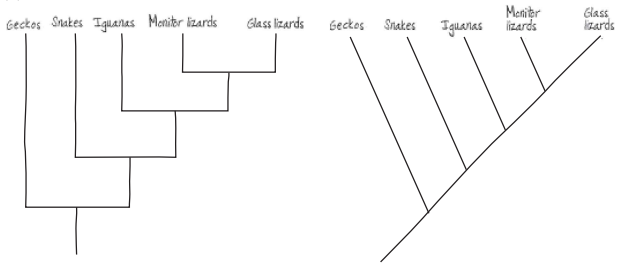
Test Your Understanding

1. B **2.** A **3.** D **4.** B **5.** D **6.** C **7.** A

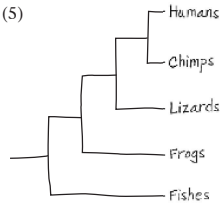
Chapter 26

Figure Questions

Figure 26.5 (1) In this tree, frogs are most closely related to a group consisting of lizards, chimps, and humans. (2) You should have circled the branch point splitting the frog lineage from the lineage leading to lizards, chimps, and humans. (3) Four: chimps–humans, lizards–chimps/humans; frogs–lizards/chimps/humans; and fishes–frogs/lizards/chimps/humans.
(4)



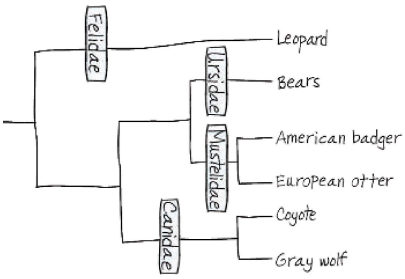
(5)



Each of the three trees identifies chimps and lizards as the two closest relatives of humans in these trees because they are the groups shown with whom we share the two most recent common ancestors.
Figure 26.6 Unknown 1b (a portion of sample 1) and unknowns 9–13 all would have to be located on the branch of the tree that currently leads to Minke (Southern Hemisphere) and unknowns 1a and 2–8. **Figure 26.9** There are four possible bases (A, C, G, T) at each nucleotide position. If the base at each position depends on chance, not common descent, we would expect roughly one out of four (25%) of them to be the same. **Figure 26.11** You should have circled the branch point that is drawn farthest to the left (the common ancestor of all taxa shown). Both cetaceans and seals descended from terrestrial lineages of mammals, indicating that the cetacean–seal common ancestor lacked a streamlined body form and hence would not be part of the cetacean–seal group. **Figure 26.12** Hinged jaws are a shared ancestral character for the group that includes frogs, turtles, and leopards. Thus, you should have circled the frog, turtle, and leopard lineages, along with their most recent common ancestor. **Figure 26.16** Crocodilians are the sister taxon to the dinosaur clade (which includes birds) because crocodilians and the dinosaur clade share an immediate common ancestor that is not shared by any other group. **Figure 26.21** This tree indicates that the sequences of rRNA and other genes in mitochondria are most closely related to those of proteobacteria, while the sequences of chloroplast genes are most closely related to those of cyanobacteria. These gene sequence relationships are what would be predicted from endosymbiont theory, which posits that both mitochondria and chloroplasts originated as engulfed prokaryotic cells.

Concept Check 26.1

1. In Figure 26.4, leopards are the sister taxon to a group consisting of the family Mustelidae (which includes badgers) and the family Canidae (which includes wolves). Since members of a sister group are each other's closest relatives, leopards are equally related to badgers and to wolves. **2.** The tree in (c) shows a different pattern of evolutionary relationships. In (c), C and B are sister taxa, whereas C and D are sister taxa in (a) and (b). **3.** The redrawn version of Figure 26.4 is shown below.

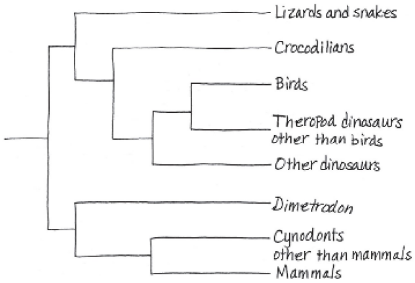


Concept Check 26.2

1. (a) Analogy, since porcupines and cacti are not closely related and since most other animals and plants do not have similar structures; (b) homology, since cats and humans are both mammals and have homologous forelimbs, of which the hand and paw are the lower part; (c) analogy, since owls and hornets are not closely related and since the structure of their wings is very different. **2.** Species B and C are more likely to be closely related. Small genetic changes (as between species B and C) can produce divergent physical appearances, but if many genes have diverged greatly (as in species A and B), then the lineages have probably been separate for a long time.

Concept Check 26.3

1. No; hair is a shared ancestral character common to all mammals and thus is not helpful in distinguishing different mammalian subgroups. **2.** The principle of maximum parsimony states that the hypothesis about nature we investigate first should be the simplest explanation found to be consistent with the facts. Actual evolutionary relationships may differ from those inferred by parsimony owing to complicating factors such as convergent evolution.
3.



The traditional classification provides a poor match to evolutionary history, thus violating the basic principle of cladistics—that classification should be based on common descent. Both birds and mammals originated from groups traditionally designated as reptiles, making reptiles (as traditionally delineated) a paraphyletic group. These problems can be addressed by removing *Dimetrodon* and cynodonts from the reptiles and by regarding birds as a group of reptiles (specifically, as a group of dinosaurs).

Concept Check 26.4

1. Proteins are gene products. Their amino acid sequences are determined by the nucleotide sequences of the DNA that codes for them. Thus, differences between comparable proteins in two species reflect underlying genetic differences that have accumulated as the species diverged from one another. As a result, differences between the proteins can reflect the evolutionary history of the species.
2. Orthologous genes are homologous genes in which the homology results from a speciation event and hence occurs between genes found in different species. Paralogous genes are homologous genes in which the homology results from gene duplication. Orthologous genes should be used to infer phylogeny since differences among them reflect the history of speciation events. **3.** In RNA processing, the exons or coding regions of a gene can be spliced together in different ways, yielding different mRNAs and hence different protein products. As a result, different proteins could potentially be produced from the same gene in different tissues, thereby enabling the gene to perform different functions in these different tissues.

Concept Check 26.5

1. A molecular clock is a method of estimating the actual time of evolutionary events based on numbers of base changes in orthologous genes. It is based on the assumption that the regions of genomes being compared evolve at constant rates.
2. There are many portions of the genome that do not code for genes; mutations that alter the sequence of bases in such regions could accumulate through drift without affecting an organism's fitness. Even in coding regions of the genome, some mutations may not have a critical effect on genes or proteins.

Concept Check 26.6

1. The kingdom Monera included bacteria and archaea, but we now know that these organisms are in separate domains. Kingdoms are subsets of domains, so a single kingdom (like Monera) that includes taxa from different domains is not valid. **2.** Because of horizontal gene transfer, some genes in eukaryotes are more closely related to bacteria, while others are more closely related to archaea; thus, depending on which genes are used, phylogenetic trees constructed from DNA data can yield conflicting results. **3.** Eukaryotes are hypothesized to have originated when a heterotrophic prokaryote (an archaeal host cell) engulfed a bacterium that would later become an organelle found in all eukaryotes—the mitochondrion. Over time, a fusion of organisms occurred as the archaeal host cell and its bacterial endosymbiont evolved to become a single organism. As a result, we would expect the cell of a eukaryote to include both archaeal DNA and bacterial DNA, making the origin of eukaryotes an example of horizontal gene transfer.

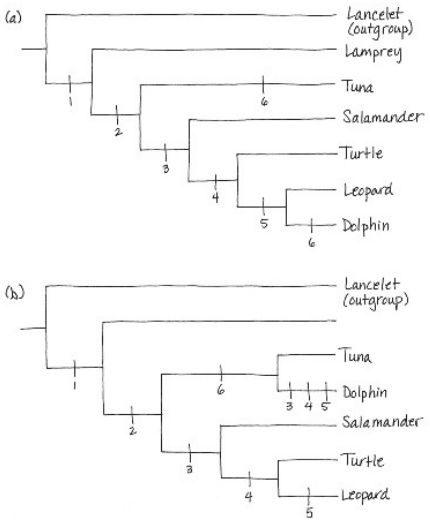
Summary of Key Concepts Questions

26.1 The fact that humans and chimpanzees are sister species indicates that we share a more recent common ancestor with chimpanzees than we do with any other living primate species. But that does not mean that humans evolved from chimpanzees, or vice versa; instead, it indicates that both humans and chimpanzees are descendants of that common ancestor. **26.2** Homologous characters result from shared ancestry. As organisms diverge over time, some of their homologous characters will also diverge. The homologous characters of organisms that diverged long ago typically differ more than do the homologous characters of organisms that diverged more recently. As a result, differences in homologous characters can be used to infer phylogeny. In

contrast, analogous characters result from convergent evolution, not shared ancestry, and hence can give misleading estimates of phylogeny. **26.3** All features of organisms arose at some point in the history of life. In the group in which a new feature first arose, that feature is a shared derived character that is unique to that clade. The group in which each shared derived character first appeared can be determined, and the resulting nested pattern can be used to infer evolutionary history. **26.4** Orthologous genes should be used; for such genes, the homology results from speciation and hence reflects evolutionary history. **26.5** A key assumption of molecular clocks is that nucleotide substitutions occur at fixed rates, and hence the number of nucleotide differences between two DNA sequences is proportional to the time since the sequences diverged from each other. Some limitations of molecular clocks: No gene marks time with complete precision; natural selection can favor certain DNA changes over others; nucleotide substitution rates can change over long periods of time (causing molecular clock estimates of when events in the distant past occurred to be highly uncertain); and the same gene can evolve at different rates in different organisms. **26.6** Genetic data indicated that many prokaryotes differed as much from each other as they did from eukaryotes. This indicated that organisms should be grouped into three "super-kingdoms," or domains (Archaea, Bacteria, Eukarya). These data also indicated that the previous kingdom Monera (which had contained all the prokaryotes) did not make biological sense and should be abandoned. Later genetic and morphological data also indicated that the former kingdom Protista (which had primarily contained single-celled organisms) should be abandoned because some protists are more closely related to plants, fungi, or animals than they are to other protists.

Test Your Understanding

1. A **2.** C **3.** B **4.** C **5.** B **6.** A **7.** D
9.



(c) The tree in (a) requires seven evolutionary changes, while the tree in (b) requires nine evolutionary changes. Thus, the tree in (a) is more parsimonious since it requires fewer evolutionary changes.

Chapter 27

Figure Questions

Figure 27.7 The top ring, to which the hook is attached, is embedded within the interior, hydrophobic portion of the lipid bilayer of the outer membrane, suggesting that the top ring is hydrophobic. Likewise, the third ring down is embedded within the hydrophobic portion of the plasma membrane's lipid bilayer, suggesting that this ring also is hydrophobic. **Figure 27.9** The third plasmid is the separate, small twisted loop located just above and to the left of the line pointing to the label "Chromosome." **Figure 27.10** It is likely that the expression or sequence of genes that affect glucose metabolism may have changed; genes for metabolic processes no longer needed by the cell also may have changed. **Figure 27.11** Transduction results in horizontal gene transfer when the host and recipient cells are members of different species. **Figure 27.16** Eukarya **Figure 27.18** Thermophiles live in very hot environments, so it is likely that their enzymes can continue to function normally at much higher temperatures than can the enzymes of other organisms. At low temperatures, however, the enzymes of thermophiles may not function as well as the enzymes of other organisms. **Figure 27.19** From the graph, plant uptake can be estimated as 0.72, 0.62, and 0.96 mg K^+ for strains 1, 2, and 3, respectively. These values average to 0.77 mg K^+. If bacteria had no effect, the average plant uptake of K^+ for strains 1, 2, and 3 should be close to 0.51 mg K^+, the value observed for plants grown in bacteria-free soil. **Figure 27.22** Penicillin

Concept Check 27.1

1. Adaptations include the capsule (shields prokaryotes from the host's immune system) and endospores (enable cells to survive harsh conditions and to revive when the environment becomes favorable). **2.** Prokaryotic cells lack the complex compartmentalization associated with the membrane-enclosed organelles of eukaryotic cells. Prokaryotic genomes have much less DNA than eukaryotic genomes, and most of this DNA is contained in a single ring-shaped chromosome located in the nucleoid rather than within a true membrane-enclosed nucleus. In addition, many prokaryotes also have plasmids, small ring-shaped DNA molecules containing a few genes. **3.** Plastids such as chloroplasts are thought to have evolved from an endosymbiotic photosynthetic prokaryote. More specifically, the phylogenetic tree shown in Figure 26.21 indicates that plastids are closely related to cyanobacteria. Hence, we can hypothesize that the thylakoid membranes of chloroplasts resemble those of cyanobacteria because chloroplasts evolved from an endosymbiotic cyanobacterium.

Concept Check 27.2

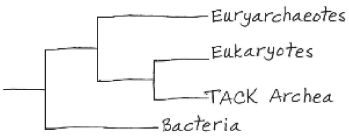
1. Prokaryotes can have extremely large population sizes, in part because they often have short generation times. The large number of individuals in prokaryotic populations makes it likely that in each generation there will be many individuals that have new mutations at any particular gene, thereby adding considerable genetic diversity to the population. **2.** In transformation, naked, foreign DNA from the environment is taken up by a bacterial cell. In transduction, phages carry bacterial genes from one bacterial cell to another. In conjugation, a bacterial cell directly transfers plasmid or chromosomal DNA to another cell via a mating bridge that temporarily connects the two cells. **3.** Yes. Genes for antibiotic resistance could be transferred (by transformation, transduction, or conjugation) from the nonpathogenic bacterium to a pathogenic bacterium; this could make the pathogen an even greater threat to human health. In general, transformation, transduction, and conjugation tend to increase the spread of resistance genes.

Concept Check 27.3

1. A phototroph derives its energy from light, while a chemotroph gets its energy from chemical sources. An autotroph derives its carbon from CO_2, HCO_3^-, or related compounds, while a heterotroph gets its carbon from organic nutrients such as glucose. Thus, there are four nutritional modes: photoautotrophic, photoheterotrophic (unique to prokaryotes), chemoautotrophic (unique to prokaryotes), and chemoheterotrophic. **2.** Chemoheterotrophy; the bacterium must rely on chemical sources of energy, since it is not exposed to light, and it must be a heterotroph if it requires a source of carbon other than CO_2 (or a related compound, such as HCO_3^-).
3. If humans could fix nitrogen, we could build proteins using atmospheric N_2 and hence would not need to eat high-protein foods such as meat, fish, or soy. Our diet would, however, need to include a source of carbon, along with minerals and water. Thus, a typical meal might consist of carbohydrates as a carbon source, along with fruits and vegetables to provide essential minerals (and additional carbon).

Concept Check 27.4

1. Molecular systematic studies indicate that some organisms once classified as bacteria are more closely related to eukaryotes and belong in a domain of their own: Archaea. Such studies have also shown that horizontal gene transfer is common and plays an important role in the evolution of prokaryotes. By not requiring that organisms be cultured in the laboratory, metagenomic studies have revealed an immense diversity of previously unknown prokaryotic species. Over time, the ongoing discovery of new species by metagenomic analyses may alter our understanding of prokaryotic phylogeny greatly. **2.** The three domains shown in Figure 27.16 are not valid under this assumption because domain Eukarya would be nested within domain Archaea. As such, Eukarya would be a subset of Archaea, not a separate domain of its own.



Concept Check 27.5

1. Although prokaryotes are small, their large numbers and metabolic abilities enable them to play key roles in ecosystems by decomposing wastes, recycling chemicals, and affecting the concentrations of nutrients available to other organisms. **2.** Cyanobacteria produce oxygen when water is split in the light reactions of photosynthesis. The Calvin cycle incorporates CO_2 from the air into organic molecules, which are then converted to sugars.

Concept Check 27.6

1. Sample answers: eating fermented foods such as yogurt, sourdough bread, or cheese; receiving clean water from sewage treatment; taking medicines produced by bacteria **2.** No. If the poison is secreted as an exotoxin, live bacteria could be transmitted to another person. But the same is true if the poison is an endotoxin—only in this case, the live bacteria that are transmitted may be descendants of the (now-dead) bacteria that produced the poison. **3.** Some of the many different species of prokaryotes that live in the human gut compete with one another for resources (from the food that you eat). Because different prokaryotic species have different adaptations, a change in diet may alter which species can grow most rapidly, thus altering species abundance.

Summary of Key Concepts Questions

27.1 Specific structural features that enable prokaryotes to thrive in diverse environments include their cell walls (which provide shape and protection), flagella (which function in directed movement), and ability to form capsules or endospores (both of which can protect against harsh conditions). Prokaryotes also possess biochemical adaptations for growth in varied conditions, such as those that enable them to tolerate extremely hot or salty environments. **27.2** Many prokaryotic species can reproduce extremely rapidly, and their populations can number in the trillions. As a result, even though mutations are rare, every day many offspring are produced that have new mutations at particular gene loci. In addition, even though prokaryotes reproduce asexually and hence the vast majority of offspring are genetically identical to their parent, the genetic variation of their populations can be increased by transduction, transformation, and conjugation. Each of these (nonreproductive) processes can increase genetic variation by transferring DNA from one cell to another—even among cells that are of different species. **27.3** Prokaryotes have an exceptionally broad range of metabolic adaptations. As a group, prokaryotes perform all four modes of nutrition (photoautotrophy, chemoautotrophy, photoheterotrophy, and chemoheterotrophy), whereas eukaryotes perform only two of these (photoautotrophy and chemoheterotrophy). Prokaryotes are also able to metabolize nitrogen in a wide variety of forms (again unlike eukaryotes), and they frequently cooperate with other prokaryotic cells of the same or different species. **27.4** Phenotypic criteria such as shape, motility, and nutritional mode do not provide a clear picture of the evolutionary history of the prokaryotes. In contrast, molecular data have elucidated relationships among major groups of prokaryotes. Molecular data have also allowed researchers to sample genes directly from the environment; using such genes to construct phylogenies has led to the discovery of major new groups of prokaryotes **27.5** Prokaryotes play key roles in the chemical cycles on which life depends. For example, prokaryotes are important decomposers, breaking down corpses and waste materials, thereby releasing nutrients to the environment where they can be used by other organisms. Prokaryotes also convert inorganic compounds to forms that other organisms can use. With respect to their ecological interactions, many prokaryotes form life-sustaining mutualisms with other species. In some cases, such as hydrothermal vent communities, the metabolic activities of prokaryotes provide an energy source on which hundreds of other species depend; in the absence of the prokaryotes, the community would collapse. **27.6** Human well-being depends on our associations with mutualistic prokaryotes, such as the many species that live in our intestines and digest food that we cannot. Humans also can harness the remarkable metabolic capabilities of prokaryotes to produce a wide range of useful products and to perform key services such as bioremediation. Negative effects of prokaryotes result primarily from bacterial pathogens that cause disease.

Test Your Understanding

1. D **2.** A **3.** B **4.** C **5.** D **6.** A

Chapter 28

Figure Questions

Figure 28.3 The diagram shows that a single secondary endosymbiosis event gave rise to the stramenopiles and alveolates—thus, these groups can trace their ancestry back to a single heterotrophic protist (shown in yellow) that ingested a red alga. In contrast, euglenids and chlorarachniophytes each descended from a different heterotrophic protist (one of which is shown in gray, the other in brown). Hence, it is likely that stramenopiles and alveolates are more closely related than are euglenids and chlorarachniophytes.
Figure 28.5

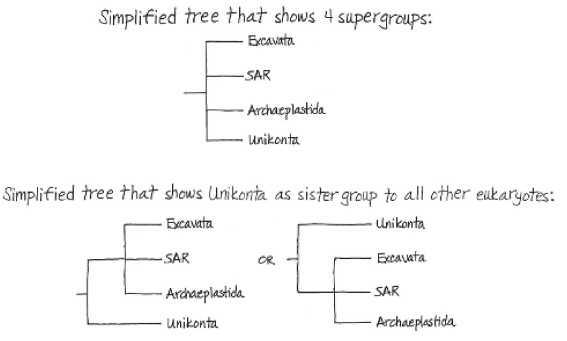


Figure 28.14 The sperm cells in the diagram are produced by the asexual (mitotic) division of cells in a single male gametophyte, which was itself produced by the asexual (mitotic) division of a single zoospore. Thus, the sperm cells are all derived from a single zoospore and so are genetically identical to one another. **Figure 28.18** Merozoites are produced by the asexual (mitotic) cell division of haploid sporozoites; similarly, gametocytes are produced by the asexual cell division of merozoites. Hence, it is likely that individuals in these three stages have the same complement of genes and that morphological differences between them result from changes in gene expression.
Figure 28.19 These events have a similar overall effect to fertilization. In both cases, haploid nuclei that were originally from two genetically different cells fuse to form a diploid nucleus. **Figure 28.25** The following stage should be circled: step 6, where a mature cell undergoes mitosis and forms four or more daughter cells. In step 7, the zoospores eventually grow into mature haploid cells, but they do not produce new daughter cells. Likewise, in step 2, a mature cell develops into a gamete, but it does not produce new daughter cells.
Figure 28.26

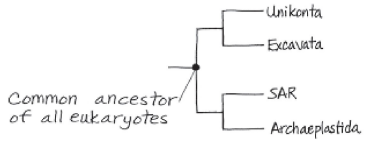


Figure 28.28 They would be haploid because originally each of these cells was a haploid, solitary amoeba.

Concept Check 28.1

1. Sample response: Protists include unicellular, colonial, and multicellular organisms; photoautotrophs, heterotrophs, and mixotrophs; species that reproduce asexually, sexually, or both ways; and organisms with diverse physical forms and adaptations. **2.** Strong evidence shows that eukaryotes acquired mitochondria after a host cell (either an archaean or a cell closely related to the archaea) first engulfed and then formed an endosymbiotic association with an alpha proteobacterium. Similarly, chloroplasts in red and green algae appear to have descended from a photosynthetic cyanobacterium that was engulfed by an ancient heterotrophic eukaryote. Secondary endosymbiosis also played an important role: Various protistan lineages acquired plastids by engulfing unicellular red or green algae. **3.** Four. The first (and primary) genome is the DNA located in the chlorarachniophyte nucleus. A chlorarachniophyte also contain remnants of a green alga's nuclear DNA, located in the nucleomorph. Finally, mitochondria and chloroplasts contain DNA from the (different) bacteria from which they evolved. These two prokaryotic genomes comprise the third and fourth genomes contained within a chlorarachniophyte.

Concept Check 28.2

1. Their mitochondria do not have an electron transport chain and so cannot function in aerobic respiration. **2.** Since the unknown protist is more closely related to diplomonads than to euglenids, it must have originated after the lineage leading to the diplomonads and parabasalids diverged from the euglenozoans. In addition, since the unknown species has fully functional mitochondria—yet both diplomonads and parabasalids do not—it is likely that the unknown species originated *before* the last common ancestor of the diplomonads and parabasalids.

Concept Check 28.3

1. Because foram tests are hardened with calcium carbonate, they form long-lasting fossils in marine sediments and sedimentary rocks. **2.** The plastid DNA would likely be more similar to the chromosomal DNA of cyanobacteria based on the well-supported hypothesis that eukaryotic plastids (such as those found in the eukaryotic groups listed) originated by an endosymbiosis event in which a eukaryote engulfed a cyanobacterium. If the plastid is derived from the cyanobacterium, its DNA would be derived from the bacterial DNA. **3.** Figure 13.6b. Algae and plants with alternation of generations have a multicellular haploid stage *and* a multicellular diploid stage. In the other two life cycles, either the haploid stage or the diploid stage is unicellular. **4.** During photosynthesis, aerobic algae produce O_2 and use CO_2. O_2 is produced as a by-product of the light reactions, while CO_2 is used as an input to the Calvin cycle (the end products of which are sugars). Aerobic algae also perform cellular respiration, which uses O_2 as an input and produces CO_2 as a waste product.

Concept Check 28.4

1. Many red algae contain a photosynthetic pigment called phycoerythrin, which gives them a reddish color and allows them to carry out photosynthesis in relatively deep coastal water. Also unlike brown algae, red algae have no flagellated stages in their life cycle and must depend on water currents to bring gametes together for fertilization. **2.** *Ulva* contains many cells and its body is differentiated into leaflike blades and a rootlike holdfast. *Caulerpa*'s body is composed of multinucleate filaments without cross-walls, so it is essentially one large cell. **3.** Red algae have no flagellated stages in their life cycle and hence must depend on water currents to bring their gametes together. This feature of their biology might increase the difficulty of reproducing on land. In contrast, the gametes of green algae are flagellated, making it possible for them to swim in thin films of water. In addition, a variety of green algae contain compounds in their cytoplasm, cell wall, or zygote coat that protect against intense sunlight and other terrestrial conditions. Such compounds may have increased the chance that descendants of green algae could survive on land.

Concept Check 28.5

1. Amoebozoans have lobe- or tube-shaped pseudopodia, whereas forams have threadlike pseudopodia. **2.** Slime molds are fungus-like in that they produce fruiting bodies that aid in the dispersal of spores, and they are animal-like in that they are motile and ingest food. However, slime molds are more closely related to tubulinids and entamoebas than to fungi or animals. **3.** The genes used to estimate the tree shown in Figure 28.26 were transferred from an alpha proteobacterium to an early eukaryote. Based on the sequences of these genes, the eukaryotes should be more closely related to alpha proteobacteria than they are to any other lineage of prokaryotes. Thus, alpha proteobacteria are well suited as an outgroup to the eukaryotes (the group of species whose relationships we are trying to determine).

Concept Check 28.6

1. Because photosynthetic protists constitute the base of aquatic food webs, many aquatic organisms depend on them for food, either directly or indirectly. (In addition, a substantial percentage of the oxygen produced by photosynthesis is made by photosynthetic protists.) **2.** Protists form mutualistic and parasitic associations with other organisms. Examples include photosynthetic dinoflagellates that form a mutualistic symbiosis with coral polyps; parabasalids that form a mutualistic symbiosis with termites; and the stramenopile *Phytophthora ramorum*, a parasite of oak trees. **3.** Corals depend on their dinoflagellate symbionts for nourishment, so coral bleaching could cause the corals to die. As the corals die, less food would be available for fishes and other species that eat coral. As a result, populations of these species might decline, and that, in turn, might cause populations of their predators to decline. **4.** The two approaches differ in the evolutionary changes they may bring about. A strain of *Wolbachia* that confers resistance to infection by *Plasmodium* and does not harm mosquitoes would spread rapidly through the mosquito population. In this case, natural selection would favor any *Plasmodium* individuals that could overcome the resistance to infection conferred by *Wolbachia*. If insecticides are used, mosquitoes that are resistant to the insecticide would be favored by natural selection. Hence, use of *Wolbachia* could cause evolution in *Plasmodium* populations, while using insecticides could cause evolution in mosquito populations.

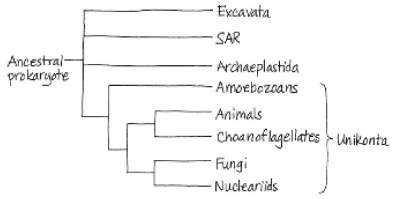
Summary of Key Concepts Questions

28.1 Sample response: Protists, plants, animals, and fungi are similar in that their cells have a nucleus and other membrane-enclosed organelles, unlike the cells of prokaryotes. These membrane-enclosed organelles make the cells of eukaryotes more complex than the cells of prokaryotes. Protists and other eukaryotes also differ from prokaryotes in having a well-developed cytoskeleton that enables them to have asymmetric forms and to change in shape as they feed, move, or grow. With respect to differences between protists and other eukaryotes, most protists are unicellular, unlike animals, plants, and most fungi. Protists also have greater nutritional diversity than other eukaryotes. **28.2** Unique cytoskeletal features are shared by many excavates. In addition, some members of Excavata have an "excavated" feeding groove for which the group was named. Moreover, recent genomic studies support the monophyly of the excavate supergroup. **28.3** Stramenopiles and alveolates are hypothesized to have originated by secondary endosymbiosis. Under this hypothesis, we can infer that the common ancestor of these two groups had a plastid, in this case of red algal origin. Thus, we would expect that apicomplexans (and alveolate or stramenopile protists) either would have plastids or would have lost their plastids over the course of evolution. **28.4** Red algae, green algae, and plants are placed in the same supergroup because considerable evidence indicates that these organisms all descended from the same ancestor, an ancient heterotrophic protist that acquired a cyanobacterial endosymbiont. **28.5** The unikonts are a diverse group of eukaryotes that includes many protists, along with animals and fungi. Most of the protists in Unikonta are amoebozoans, a clade of amoebas that have lobe- or tube-shaped pseudopodia (as opposed to the threadlike pseudopodia of rhizarians). Other protists in Unikonta include several groups that are closely related to fungi and several other groups that are closely related to animals. **28.6** Sample response: Ecologically important protists include photosynthetic dinoflagellates that provide essential sources of energy to their symbiotic partners, the corals that build coral reefs. Other important protistan symbionts include those that enable termites to digest wood and *Plasmodium*, the pathogen that causes malaria. Photosynthetic protists such as diatoms are among the most important producers in aquatic communities; as such, many other species in aquatic environments depend on them for food.

Test Your Understanding

1. D **2.** B **3.** B **4.** D **5.** D **6.** C

7.



Pathogens that share a relatively recent common ancestor with humans will likely also share metabolic and structural characteristics with humans. Because drugs target the pathogen's metabolism or structure, developing drugs that harm the pathogen but not the patient should be most difficult for pathogens with whom we share the most recent evolutionary history. Working backward in time, we can use the phylogenetic tree to determine the order in which humans shared a common ancestor with pathogens in different taxa. This process leads to the prediction that it should be hardest to develop drugs to combat animal pathogens, followed by choanoflagellate pathogens, fungal and nucleariid pathogens, amoebozoans, other protists, and finally prokaryotes.

Chapter 29

Figure Questions

Figure 29.5 The life cycles of plants and some algae, shown in Figure 13.6b, have alternation of generations; other life cycles do not. Unlike in the animal life cycle (Figure 13.6a), in the plant/algal life cycle, meiosis produces spores, not gametes. These haploid spores then divide repeatedly by mitosis, ultimately forming a multicellular haploid individual that produces gametes. There is no multicellular haploid stage in the animal life cycle. An alternation of generations life cycle also has a multicellular diploid stage, whereas the life cycle of most fungi and some protists shown in Figure 13.6c does not. **Figure 29.10** Plants, vascular plants, and seed plants are monophyletic because each of these groups includes the common ancestor of the group and all of the descendants of that common ancestor. The other two categories of plants, the nonvascular plants and the seedless vascular plants, are paraphyletic: These groups do not include all of the descendants of the group's most recent common ancestor. **Figure 29.11** Yes. As shown in the diagram, the sperm cell and the egg cell that fuse each resulted from the mitotic division of spores produced by the same sporophyte. However, these spores would differ genetically from one another because they were produced by meiosis, a cell division process that generates genetic variation among the offspring cells. **Figure 29.14** Because the moss reduces nitrogen loss from the ecosystem, species that typically colonize the soils after the moss probably experience higher soil nitrogen levels than they otherwise would. The resulting increased availability of nitrogen may benefit these species because nitrogen is an essential nutrient that often is in short supply. **Figure 29.17** A fern that had wind-dispersed sperm would not require water for fertilization, thus removing a difficulty that ferns face when they live in arid environments. The fern would also be under strong selection to produce sperm above ground (as opposed to the current situation, where some fern gametophytes are located below ground).

Concept Check 29.1

1. Plants share some key traits only with charophytes: rings of cellulose-synthesizing complexes and similarity in sperm structure. Comparisons of nuclear, chloroplast, and mitochondrial DNA sequences also indicate that certain groups of charophytes (such as *Zygnema*) are the closest living relatives of plants. **2.** Possible answers include walls toughened by sporopollenin (protects against harsh environmental conditions); multicellular, dependent embryos (provide nutrients and protection to the developing embryo); cuticle (reduces water loss); stomata (control gas exchange and reduce water loss) **3.** The multicellular diploid stage of the life cycle would not produce gametes. Instead, both males and females would produce haploid spores by meiosis. These spores would give rise to multicellular male and female haploid stages—a major change from the single-celled haploid stages (sperm and eggs) that we actually have. The multicellular haploid stages would produce gametes and reproduce sexually. An individual at the multicellular haploid stage of the human life cycle might look like us, or it might look completely different.

Concept Check 29.2

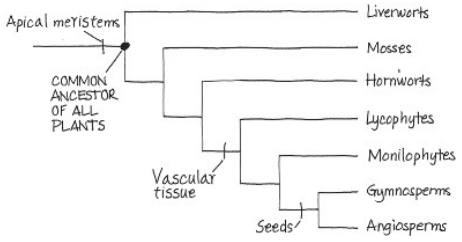
1. Most bryophytes do not have a vascular transport system, and their life cycle is dominated by gametophytes rather than sporophytes. **2.** Answers may include the following: Large surface area of protonema enhances absorption of water and minerals; the vase-shaped archegonia protect eggs during fertilization and transport nutrients to the embryos via placental transfer cells; the stalk-like seta conducts nutrients from the gametophyte to the capsule, where spores are produced; the peristome enables gradual spore discharge; stomata enable CO_2/O_2 exchange while minimizing water loss; lightweight spores are readily dispersed by wind. **3.** Effects of global warming on peatlands could result in positive feedback, which occurs when an end product of a process increases its own production. In this case, global warming is expected to lower the water levels of some peatlands. This would expose peat to air and cause it to decompose, thereby releasing stored CO_2 to the atmosphere. The release of more stored CO_2 to the atmosphere could cause additional global warming, which in turn could cause further drops in water levels, the release of still more CO_2 to the atmosphere, additional warming, and so on: an example of positive feedback.

Concept Check 29.3

1. Lycophytes have microphylls, whereas seed plants and monilophytes (ferns and their relatives) have megaphylls. Monilophytes and seed plants also share other traits not found in lycophytes, such as the initiation of new root branches at various points along the length of an existing root. **2.** Both seedless vascular plants and bryophytes have flagellated sperm that require moisture for fertilization; this shared similarity poses challenges for these species in arid regions. With respect to key differences, seedless vascular plants have lignified, well-developed vascular tissue, a trait that enables the sporophyte to grow tall and that has transformed life on Earth (via the formation of forests). Seedless vascular plants also have true leaves and roots, which, when compared with bryophytes, provide increased surface area for photosynthesis and improve their ability to extract nutrients from soil. **3.** Three mechanisms contribute to the production of genetic variation in sexual reproduction: independent assortment of chromosomes, crossing over, and random fertilization. If fertilization were to occur between gametes from the same gametophyte, all of the offspring would be genetically identical. This would be the case because all of the cells produced by a gametophyte—including its sperm and egg cells—are the descendants of a single spore and hence are genetically identical. Although crossing over and the independent assortment of chromosomes would continue to generate genetic variation during the production of spores (which ultimately develop into gametophytes), overall the amount of genetic variation produced by sexual reproduction would drop.

Summary of Key Concepts Questions

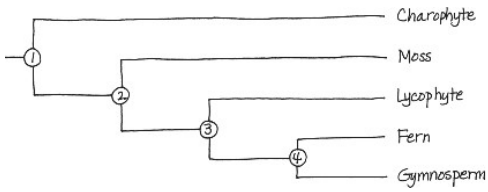
29.1



29.2 Some mosses colonize bare, sandy soils, leading to the increased retention of nitrogen in these otherwise low-nitrogen environments. Other mosses harbor nitrogen-fixing cyanobacteria that increase the availability of nitrogen in the ecosystem. The moss *Sphagnum* is often a major component of deposits of peat (partially decayed organic material). Boggy regions with thick layers of peat, known as peatlands, cover broad geographic regions and contain large reservoirs of carbon. By storing large amounts of carbon—in effect, removing CO_2 from the atmosphere—peatlands affect the global climate, making them of considerable ecological importance. **29.3** Lignified vascular tissue provided the strength needed to support a tall plant against gravity, as well as a means to transport water and nutrients to plant parts located high above ground. Roots were another key trait, anchoring the plant to the ground and providing additional structural support for plants that grew tall. Tall plants could shade shorter plants, thereby outcompeting them for light. Because the spores of a tall plant disperse farther than the spores of a short plant, it is also likely that tall plants could colonize new habitats more rapidly than short plants.

Test Your Understanding

1. B **2.** D **3.** C **4.** A **5.** C
6. (a) diploid; (b) haploid; (c) haploid; (d) diploid
7. Based on our current understanding of the evolution of major plant groups, the phylogeny has the four branch points shown here:



Derived characters unique to the charophyte and plant clade (indicated by branch point 1) include rings of cellulose-synthesizing complexes and flagellated sperm structure. Derived characters unique to the plant clade (branch point 2) include alternation of generations; multicellular, dependent embryos; walled spores produced in sporangia; and apical meristems. Derived characters unique to the vascular plant clade (branch point 3) include life cycles with dominant sporophytes, complex vascular systems (xylem and phloem), and well-developed roots and leaves. Derived characters unique to the monilophyte and seed plant clade (branch point 4) include megaphylls and roots that can branch at various points along the length of an existing root.

Chapter 30

Figure Questions

Figure 30.2 Retaining the gametophyte within the sporophyte shields the egg-containing gametophyte from UV radiation. UV radiation is a mutagen. Hence, we would expect fewer mutations to occur in the egg cells produced by a gametophyte retained within the body of a sporophyte. Most mutations are harmful. Thus, the fitness of embryos should increase because fewer embryos would carry harmful mutations. **Figure 30.3** The seed contains cells from three generations: (1) the current sporophyte (cells of ploidy $2n$, found in the seed coat and in the megasporangium remnant that surrounds the spore wall), (2) the female gametophyte (cells of ploidy n, found in the food supply), and (3) the sporophyte of the next generation (cells of ploidy $2n$, found in the embryo). **Figure 30.4** Mitosis. A single haploid megaspore divides by mitosis to produce a multicellular, haploid female gametophyte. (Likewise, a single haploid microspore divides by mitosis to produce a multicellular male gametophyte.)

Figure 30.9

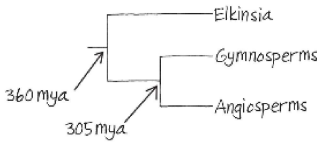
Figure 30.12 The largest number of seeds this flower could produce is six. We can infer this because the flower is shown as having six ovules, each of which can develop into a single seed. At least six pollen grains would have to germinate to produce six seeds. **Figure 30.14** No. The branching order shown could still be correct if species on the lineages leading to basal angiosperms and magnoliids had originated prior to 150 million years ago, but fossils of that age from those lineages had not yet been discovered. In such a situation, the 140-million-year-old date for the origin of the angiosperms shown on the phylogeny would be incorrect.

Concept Check 30.1

1. To reach the eggs, the flagellated sperm of seedless plants must swim through a film of water, usually over a distance of no more than a few centimeters. In contrast, the sperm of seed plants do not require water because they are produced within pollen grains that can be transported long distances by wind or by animal pollinators. Although flagellated in some species, the sperm of seed plants do not require mobility because pollen tubes convey them from the point at which the pollen grain is deposited (near the ovules) directly to the eggs. **2.** The reduced gametophytes of seed plants are nurtured by sporophytes and protected from stress, such as drought conditions and UV radiation. Pollen grains, with walls containing sporopollenin, provide protection during transport by wind or animals. Seeds have one or two layers of protective tissue, the seed coat, that improve survival by providing more protection from environmental stresses than do the walls of spores. Seeds also contain a stored supply of food, which provides nourishment for growth after dormancy is broken and the embryo emerges as a seedling. **3.** If a seed could not enter dormancy, the embryo would continue to grow after it was fertilized. As a result, the embryo might rapidly become too large to be dispersed, thus limiting its transport. The embryo's chance of survival might also be reduced because it could not delay growth until conditions become favorable.

Concept Check 30.2

1. The pine life cycle illustrates heterospory, as ovulate cones produce megaspores and pollen cones produce microspores. The reduced gametophytes are evident in the form of the microscopic pollen grains that develop from microspores and the microscopic female gametophyte that develops from the megaspore. The egg is shown developing within an ovule, and a pollen tube is shown conveying the sperm. The figure also shows the protective and nutritive features of a seed. **2.** In pines, pollination occurs when a pollen grain is transferred to an ovulate cone scale, the part of a pine that contains ovules. Fertilization occurs when a sperm nucleus unites with an egg nucleus, forming a diploid zygote. Although pollination is required for fertilization, they are separate events: In pines, pollination usually occurs more than a year before fertilization.
3.



Concept Check 30.3

1. In the oak's life cycle, the tree (the sporophyte) produces flowers, which contain gametophytes in pollen grains and ovules; the eggs in ovules are fertilized; the mature ovaries develop into dry fruits called acorns. We can view the oak's life cycle as starting when the acorn seeds germinate, resulting in embryos giving rise to seedlings and finally to mature trees, which produce flowers—and then more acorns. **2.** Pine cones and flowers both have sporophylls, modified leaves that produce spores. Pine trees have separate pollen cones (with pollen grains) and ovulate cones (with ovules inside cone scales). In flowers, pollen grains are produced by the anthers of stamens, and ovules are within the ovaries of carpels. Unlike pine cones, many flowers produce both pollen and ovules. **3.** The fact that the clade with bilaterally symmetrical flowers had more species establishes a correlation between flower shape and the rate of plant speciation. Flower shape is not necessarily responsible for the result because the shape (that is, bilateral or radial symmetry) may have been correlated with another factor that was the actual cause of the observed result. Note, however, that flower shape was associated with increased speciation rates when averaged across 19 different pairs of plant lineages. Since these 19 lineage pairs were independent of one another, this association suggests—but does not establish—that differences in flower shape cause differences in speciation rates. In general, strong evidence for causation can come from controlled, manipulative experiments, but such experiments are usually not possible for studies of past evolutionary events.

Concept Check 30.4

1. Plant diversity can be considered a resource because plants provide many important benefits to humans; as a resource, plant diversity is nonrenewable because if a species is lost to extinction, that loss is permanent. **2.** A detailed phylogeny of the seed plants would identify many different monophyletic groups of seed plants. Using this phylogeny, researchers could look for clades that contained species in which medicinally useful compounds had already been discovered. Identification of such clades would allow researchers to concentrate their search for new medicinal compounds among clade members—as opposed to searching for new compounds in species that were selected at random from the more than 290,000 existing species of seed plants.

Summary of Key Concepts Questions

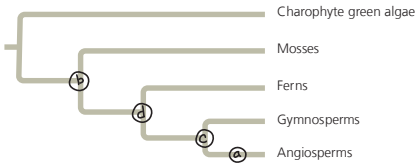
30.1 The integument of an ovule develops into the protective coat of a seed. The ovule's megaspore develops into a haploid female gametophyte, and two parts of the seed are related to that gametophyte: The food supply of the seed is derived from haploid gametophyte cells, and the embryo of the seed develops after the female gametophyte's egg cell is fertilized by a sperm cell. A remnant of the ovule's megasporangium surrounds the spore wall that encloses the seed's food supply and embryo. **30.2** Gymnosperms arose about 305 million years ago, making them a successful group in terms of their evolutionary longevity. Gymnosperms have the five derived traits common to all seed plants (reduced gametophytes, heterospory, ovules, pollen, and seeds), making them well adapted for life on land. Finally, because gymnosperms dominate immense geographic regions today, the group is also highly successful in geographic distribution. **30.3** Based on fossils known during his lifetime, Darwin was troubled by the relatively sudden and geographically widespread appearance of angiosperms in the fossil record. Recent fossil evidence shows that angiosperms arose and began to diversify over a period of 20–30 million years, a less rapid event than was suggested by the fossils known during Darwin's lifetime. Fossil discoveries have also uncovered extinct lineages of woody seed plants thought to have been more closely related to angiosperms than to gymnosperms; one such group, the Bennettitales, had flowerlike structures that may have been pollinated by insects. In addition, phylogenetic analyses have identified a woody species, *Amborella*, as the most basal lineage of extant angiosperms. The fact that both the extinct seed plant ancestors of angiosperms and the most basal taxon of extant angiosperms were woody suggests that the common ancestor of angiosperms also was woody. **30.4** The loss of tropical forests could contribute to global warming (which would have negative effects on many human societies).

People also depend on Earth's biodiversity for many products and services and hence would be harmed by the loss of species that would occur if the world's remaining tropical forests were cut down. With respect to a possible mass extinction, tropical forests harbor at least 50% of the species on Earth. If the remaining tropical forests were destroyed, large numbers of these species could be driven to extinction, thus rivaling the losses that occurred in the five mass extinction events documented in the fossil record.

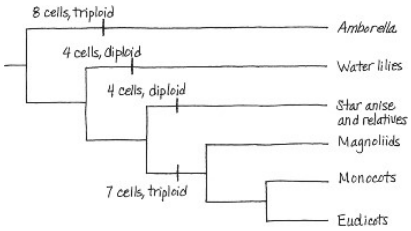
Test Your Understanding

1. C **2.** B **3.** A **4.** D **5.** C

6.



8. (a)



(b) The phylogeny indicates that basal angiosperms differed from other angiosperms in terms of the number of cells in female gametophytes and the ploidy of the endosperm. The ancestral state of the angiosperms cannot be determined from these data alone. It is possible that the common ancestor of angiosperms had seven-celled female gametophytes and triploid endosperm and hence that the eight-celled and four-celled conditions found in basal angiosperms represent derived traits for those lineages. Alternatively, either the eight-celled or four-celled condition may represent the ancestral state.

Chapter 31

Figure Questions

Figure 31.2 DNA from each of these mushrooms would be identical if each mushroom is part of a single hyphal network, as is likely. **Figure 31.5** The haploid spores produced in the sexual portion of the life cycle develop from haploid nuclei that were produced by meiosis; because genetic recombination occurs during meiosis, these spores will differ genetically from one another. In contrast, the haploid spores produced in the asexual portion of the life cycle develop from nuclei that were produced by mitosis; as a result, these spores are genetically identical to one another. **Figure 31.17** One or both of the following would apply to each species: DNA analyses would reveal that it is a member of the ascomycete clade, or aspects of its sexual life cycle would indicate that it is an ascomycete (for example, it would produce asci and ascospores). **Figure 31.18** The hypha is composed of cells that are haploid (n), as indicated by the teal-colored arrow behind it. **Figure 31.20** The mushroom is a basidiocarp, or fruiting body, of the dikaryotic mycelium, and so a cell from its stalk would be dikaryotic ($n + n$). **Figure 31.22** Two possible controls would be E−P− and E+P−. Results from an E−P− control could be compared with results from the E−P+ experiment, and results from an E+P− control could be compared with results from the E+P+ experiment. Together, these two comparisons would indicate whether the addition of the pathogen causes an increase in leaf mortality. Results from an E−P− experiment could also be compared with results from the second control (E+P−) to determine whether adding the fungal endophytes has a negative effect on the plant.

Concept Check 31.1

1. Both a fungus and a human are heterotrophs. Many fungi digest their food externally by secreting enzymes into the food and then absorbing the small molecules that result from digestion. Other fungi absorb such small molecules directly from their environment. In contrast, humans (and most other animals) ingest relatively large pieces of food and digest the food within their bodies. **2.** The ancestors of such a mutualist most likely secreted powerful enzymes to digest the body of their insect host. Since such enzymes would harm a living host, it is likely that the mutualist would not produce such enzymes or would restrict their secretion and use. **3.** Carbon that enters the plant through stomata is fixed into sugar through photosynthesis. Some of these sugars are absorbed by the fungus that partners with the plant to form mycorrhizae; others are transported within the plant body and used in the plant. Thus, the carbon may be deposited in either the body of the plant or the body of the fungus.

Concept Check 31.2

1. The majority of the fungal life cycle is spent in the haploid stage, whereas the majority of the human life cycle is spent in the diploid stage. **2.** The two mushrooms might be reproductive structures of the same mycelium (the same organism). Or they might be parts of two separate organisms that have arisen from a single parent organism through asexual reproduction (for example, from two genetically identical asexual spores) and thus carry the same genetic information.

Concept Check 31.3

1. DNA evidence indicates that fungi, animals, and their protistan relatives form a clade, the opisthokonts. Furthermore, chytrids and other fungi thought to be members of basal lineages have posterior flagella, as do most other opisthokonts. This suggests that other fungal lineages lost their flagella after diverging from ancestors that had flagella. **2.** Mycorrhizae form extensive networks of hyphae through the soil, enabling nutrients to be absorbed more efficiently than a plant can do on its own; this is true today, and similar associations were probably very important for the earliest plants (which lacked roots). Evidence for the antiquity of mycorrhizal associations includes fossils showing arbuscular mycorrhizae in the early plant *Aglaophyton* and molecular results showing that genes required for the formation of mycorrhizae are present in liverworts and other basal plant lineages. **3.** Fungi are heterotrophs. Prior to the colonization of land by plants, terrestrial fungi would have lived where other organisms (or their remains) were present and provided a source of food. Thus, if fungi colonized land before plants, they could have fed on prokaryotes or protists that lived on land or by the water's edge—but not on the plants or animals on which many fungi feed today.

Concept Check 31.4

1. Flagellated spores; molecular evidence also suggests that chytrids include species that belong to lineages that diverged from other fungi early in the history of the group. **2.** Possible answers include the following: In mucoromycetes, the sturdy, thick-walled zygosporangium can withstand harsh conditions and then undergo karyogamy and meiosis when the environment is favorable for reproduction. In one group of mucoromycetes, the glomeromycetes, the hyphae have a specialized morphology that enables the fungi to form arbuscular mycorrhizae with plant roots. In ascomycetes, the asexual spores (conidia) are often produced in chains or clusters at the tips of conidiophores, where they are easily dispersed by wind. The often cup-shaped ascocarps house the sexual spore-forming asci. In basidiomycetes, the basidiocarp supports and protects a large surface area of basidia, from which spores are dispersed. **3.** Such a change to the life cycle of an ascomycete would reduce the number and genetic diversity of ascospores that result from a mating event. Ascospore number would drop because a mating event would lead to the formation of only one ascus. Ascospore genetic diversity would also drop because in ascomycetes, one mating event leads to the formation of asci by many different dikaryotic cells. As a result, genetic recombination and meiosis occur independently many different times—which could not happen if only a single ascus was formed. It is also likely that if such an ascomycete formed an ascocarp, the shape of the ascocarp would differ considerably from that found in its close relatives.

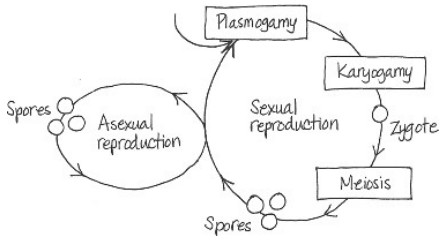
Concept Check 31.5

1. A suitable environment for growth, retention of water and minerals, protection from intense sunlight, and protection from being eaten **2.** A hardy spore stage enables dispersal to host organisms through a variety of mechanisms; their ability to grow rapidly in a favorable new environment enables them to capitalize on the host's resources. **3.** Many different outcomes might have occurred. Organisms that currently form mutualisms with fungi might have gained the ability to perform the tasks currently done by their fungal partners, or they might have formed similar mutualisms with other organisms (such as bacteria). Alternatively, organisms that currently form mutualisms with fungi might be less effective at living in their present environments. For example, the colonization of land by plants might have been more difficult. And if plants did eventually colonize land without fungal mutualists, natural selection might have favored plants that formed more highly divided and extensive root systems (in part replacing mycorrhizae).

Summary of Key Concepts Questions

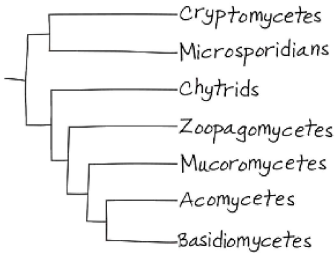
31.1 The body of a multicellular fungus typically consists of thin filaments called hyphae. These filaments form an interwoven mass (mycelium) that penetrates the substrate on which the fungus grows and feeds. Because the individual filaments are thin, the surface-to-volume ratio of the mycelium is maximized, making nutrient absorption highly efficient.

31.2



31.3 Phylogenetic analyses show that fungi and animals are more closely related to each other than either is to other multicellular eukaryotes (such as plants or multicellular algae). These analyses also show that fungi are more closely related to single-celled protists called nucleariids than they are to animals, whereas animals are more closely related to a different group of single-celled protists, the choanoflagellates, than they are to fungi. In combination, these results indicate that multicellularity evolved in fungi and animals independently, from different single-celled ancestors.

31.4



31.5 As decomposers, fungi break down the bodies of dead organisms, thereby recycling elements between the living and nonliving environments. Without the activities of fungi and bacterial decomposers, essential nutrients would remain tied up in organic matter, and life as we know it would cease. As an example of their key role as mutualists, fungi form mycorrhizal associations with plants. These associations improve the growth and survival of plants, thereby indirectly affecting the many other species (humans included) that depend on plants. As pathogens, fungi harm other species. In some cases, fungal pathogens have caused their host populations to decline across broad geographic regions, as in the case of the American chestnut.

Test Your Understanding

1. B **2.** D **3.** A **4.** D

Chapter 32

Figure Questions

Figure 32.3 As described in 1 and 2, choanoflagellates and a broad range of animals have collar cells. Since collar cells have never been observed in plants, fungi, or non-choanoflagellate protists, this suggests that choanoflagellates may be more closely related to animals than to other eukaryotes. If choanoflagellates are more closely related to animals than to any other group of eukaryotes, choanoflagellates and animals should share other traits that are not found in other eukaryotes. The data described in 3 are consistent with this prediction.
Figure 32.8 (1) Any imaginary slice through the central axis of a radial animal divides its body into mirror images. As a result, a radial animal has no front and back sides and no left and right sides.
(2)

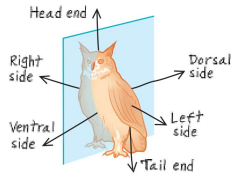


Figure 32.11 Cnidaria is the sister phylum in this tree.

Concept Check 32.1

1. In most animals, the zygote undergoes cleavage, which leads to the formation of a blastula. Next, in gastrulation, one end of the embryo folds inward, producing layers of embryonic tissue. As the cells of these layers differentiate, a wide variety of animal forms are produced. Despite the diversity of animal forms, animal development is controlled by a similar set of *Hox* genes across a broad range of taxa. **2.** The imaginary plant would require tissues composed of cells that were analogous to the muscle and nerve cells found in animals: "Muscle" tissue would be necessary for the plant to chase prey, and "nerve" tissue would be required for the plant to coordinate its movements when chasing prey. To digest captured prey, the plant would need to either secrete enzymes into one or more digestive cavities (which could be modified leaves, as in a Venus flytrap) or secrete enzymes outside of its body and feed by absorption. To extract nutrients from the soil—yet be able to chase prey—the plant would need something other than fixed roots, perhaps retractable "roots" or a way to ingest soil. To conduct photosynthesis, the plant would require chloroplasts. Overall, such an imaginary plant would be very similar to an animal that had chloroplasts and retractable roots.

Concept Check 32.2

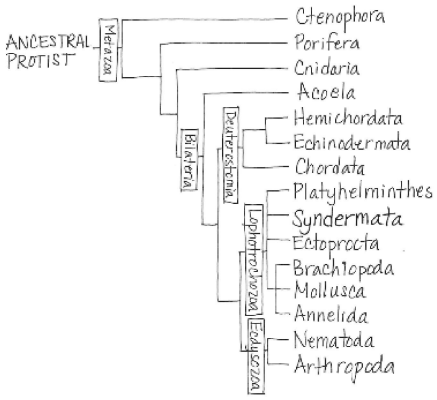
1. c, b, a, d **2.** The red-colored portion of the tree represents ancestors of animals that lived between 1 billion years ago and 770 million years ago. Although these ancestors are more closely related to animals than to fungi, they would not be classified as animals. One example of an ancestor represented by the red-colored portion of this tree is the most recent common ancestor shared by choanoflagellates and animals (see Figure 32.3). That common ancestor was not an animal (or a choanoflagellate), but it was a direct ancestor of the animals. **3.** In descent with modification, an organism shares characteristics with its ancestors (due to their shared ancestry), yet it also differs from its ancestors (because organisms accumulate differences over time as they adapt to their surroundings). As an example, consider the evolution of animal cadherin proteins, a key step in the origin of multicellular animals. These proteins illustrate both of these aspects of descent with modification: Animal cadherin proteins share many protein domains with a cadherin-like protein found in their choanoflagellate ancestors, yet they also have a unique "CCD" domain that is not found in choanoflagellates.

Concept Check 32.3

1. A snail has a spiral and determinate cleavage pattern; a human has radial, indeterminate cleavage. In a snail, the coelomic cavity is formed by splitting of mesoderm masses; in a human, the coelom forms from folds of archenteron. In a snail, the mouth forms from the blastopore; in a human, the anus develops from the blastopore. **2.** Animals that lack a body cavity tend to have thin, flat bodies. Such animals don't require an internal transport system: With bodies that are only a few cells thick, the exchange of nutrients, gases, and wastes can occur across the entire body surface. **3.** Most triploblasts have two openings to their digestive tract, a mouth and an anus. As such, their bodies have a structure that is analogous to that of a doughnut: The digestive tract (the hole of the doughnut) runs from the mouth to the anus and is surrounded by various tissues (the solid part of the doughnut). The doughnut analogy is most obvious at early stages of development (see Figure 32.10c).

Concept Check 32.4

1. Cnidarians possess tissues, while sponges do not. Also unlike sponges, cnidarians exhibit body symmetry, though it is radial and not bilateral as in most other animal phyla.
2.



Under the hypothesis that ctenophores are basal metazoans, sponges (which lack tissues) would be nested within a clade whose other members all have tissues. As a result, a group composed of animals with tissues would not form a clade. **3.** The phylogeny in Figure 32.11 indicates that molluscs are members of Lophotrochozoa, one of the three main groups of bilaterians (the others being Deuterostomia and Ecdysozoa). As seen in Figure 25.11, the fossil record shows that molluscs were present tens of millions of years before the Cambrian explosion. Thus, long before the Cambrian explosion, the lophotrochozoan clade had formed and was evolving independently of the evolutionary lineages leading to Deuterostomia and Ecdysozoa. Based on the phylogeny in Figure 32.11, we can also conclude that the lineages leading to Deuterostomia and Ecdysozoa were independent of one another before the Cambrian explosion. Since the lineages leading to the three main clades of bilaterians were evolving independently of one another prior to the Cambrian explosion, that explosion could be viewed as consisting of three "explosions," not one.

Summary of Key Concepts Questions

32.1 Unlike animals, which are heterotrophs that ingest their food, plants are autotrophs, and fungi are heterotrophs that grow on their food and feed by absorption. Animals lack cell walls, which are found in both plants and fungi. Animals also have muscle tissue and nerve tissue, which are not found in either plants or fungi. In addition, the sperm and egg cells of animals are produced by meiotic division, unlike what occurs in plants and fungi (where reproductive cells such as sperm and eggs are produced by mitotic division). Finally, animals regulate the development of body form with *Hox* genes, a unique group of genes that is not found in either plants or fungi. **32.2** Current hypotheses about the cause of the Cambrian explosion include new predator-prey relationships, an increase in atmospheric oxygen, and an increase in developmental flexibility provided by the origin of *Hox* genes and other genetic changes. **32.3** Body plans provide a helpful way to compare and contrast key features of organisms. However, phylogenetic analyses show that similar body plans have arisen independently in different groups of organisms. As such, similar body plans may have arisen by convergent evolution and hence may not be informative about evolutionary relationships. **32.4** Listed in order from the most to the least inclusive clade, humans belong to Metazoa, Eumetazoa, Bilateria, Deuterostomia, and Chordata.

Test Your Understanding

1. A **2.** D **3.** C **4.** C

Chapter 33

Figure Questions

Figure 33.7 *Obelia* is an animal, and its life cycle is indeed most similar to the generalized life cycle of animals (Figure 13.6a). In *Obelia*, both the polyp and the medusa are diploid organisms. As in other animals, in *Obelia* only the single-celled gametes are haploid. By contrast, plants and some algae (Figure 13.6b) have a multicellular haploid generation and a multicellular diploid generation. *Obelia* also differs from fungi and some protists (Figure 13.6c) in that the diploid stage of those organisms is unicellular. **Figure 33.8** Possible examples include the Golgi apparatus (flattening; increases area for receiving and transporting proteins), the cristae of mitochondria (folding; increases the surface area available for cellular respiration), the cardiovascular system (branching; increase area for materials exchange in tissues), and root hairs (projections; increase area for absorption). **Figure 33.10** Adding fertilizer to the water supply would probably increase the abundance of algae, and that, in turn, would likely increase the abundance of snails (which eat algae). If the water was also contaminated with infected human feces or urine, an increase in the number of snails would likely lead to an increase in the abundance of blood flukes (which require snails as an intermediate host). As a result, the occurrence of schistosomiasis might increase. **Figure 33.21** The extinction of freshwater bivalves might lead to an increase in the abundance of photosynthetic protists and bacteria. Because these organisms are at the base of aquatic food webs, increases in their abundance could have major effects on aquatic communities (including both increases and decreases in the abundance of other species). **Figure 33.29** Such a result would be consistent with the origin of the *Ubx* and *abd-A Hox* genes having played a major role in the evolution of increased body segment diversity in arthropods. However, note that such a result would simply show that the presence of the *Ubx* and *abd-A Hox* genes was *correlated with* an increase in body segment diversity in arthropods; it would not provide direct experimental evidence that the origin of the *Ubx* and *abd-A* genes *caused* an increase in arthropod body segment diversity. **Figure 33.35** You should have circled the clade that includes the insects, remipedians, and other crustaceans, along with the branch point that represents their most recent common ancestor.

Concept Check 33.1

1. The flagella of choanocytes draw water through their collars, which trap food particles. The particles are engulfed by phagocytosis and digested, either by choanocytes or by amoebocytes. **2.** The collar cells of sponges bear a striking resemblance to a choanoflagellate cell. This suggests that the last common ancestor of animals and their protist sister group may have resembled a choanoflagellate. Nevertheless, mesomycetozoans could still be the sister group of animals. If this is the case, the lack of collar cells in mesomycetozoans would indicate that over time their structure evolved in ways that caused it to no longer resemble a choanoflagellate cell. It is also possible that choanoflagellates and sponges share similar looking collar cells as a result of convergent evolution.

Concept Check 33.2

1. Both the polyp and the medusa are composed of an outer epidermis and an inner gastrodermis separated by a gelatinous layer, the mesoglea. The polyp is a cylindrical form that adheres to the substrate by its aboral end; the medusa is a flattened, mouth-down form that moves freely in the water. **2.** Both a feeding polyp and a medusa are diploid, as indicated by the pink arrow in the diagram. The medusa stage produces haploid gametes. **3.** Evolution is not goal oriented; hence, it would not be correct to argue that cnidarians are not "highly evolved" simply because their form had changed relatively little over the past 560 million years. Instead, the fact that cnidarians have persisted for hundreds of millions of years indicates that the cnidarian body plan is a highly successful one.

Concept Check 33.3

1. Tapeworms can absorb food from their environment and release ammonia into their environment through their body surface because their body is very flat, due in part to the lack of a body cavity. **2.** The inner tube is the alimentary canal, which runs the length of the body. The outer tube is the body wall. The two tubes are separated by the coelom. **3.** All molluscs have inherited a foot from their common ancestor. However, in different groups of molluscs, the structure of the foot has been modified over time by natural selection. In gastropods, the foot is used as a holdfast or to move slowly on the substrate. In cephalopods, the foot has been modified into part of the tentacles and into an excurrent siphon, through which water is propelled (resulting in movement in the opposite direction).

Concept Check 33.4

1. Nematodes lack body segments and a coelom; annelids have both. **2.** The arthropod exoskeleton, which had already evolved in the ocean, allows terrestrial species to retain water and support their bodies on land. Wings allow insects to disperse quickly to new habitats and to find food and mates. The tracheal system allows for efficient gas exchange despite the presence of an exoskeleton. **3.** Yes. Under the traditional hypothesis, we would expect body segmentation to be controlled by similar *Hox* genes in annelids and arthropods. However, if annelids are in Lophotrochozoa and arthropods are in Ecdysozoa (as current evidence suggests), body segmentation may have evolved independently in these two groups. In such a case, we might expect that different *Hox* genes would control the development of body segmentation in the two clades.

Concept Check 33.5

1. Each tube foot consists of an ampulla and a podium. When the ampulla squeezes, it forces water into the podium, which causes the podium to expand and contact the substrate. Adhesive chemicals are then secreted from the base of the podium, thereby attaching the podium to the substrate. **2.** Both insects and nematodes are members of Ecdysozoa, one of the three major clades of bilaterians. Therefore, a characteristic shared by *Drosophila* and *Caenorhabditis* may be informative for other members of their clade—but not necessarily for members of Deuterostomia. Instead, Figure 33.2 suggests that a species within Echinodermata or Chordata might be a more appropriate invertebrate model organism from which to draw inferences about humans and other vertebrates. **3.** Echinoderms include species with a wide range of body forms. However, even echinoderms that look very different from one another, such as sea stars and sea cucumbers, share characteristics unique to their phylum, including a water vascular system and tube feet. The differences between echinoderm species illustrate the diversity of life, while the characteristics they share illustrate the unity of life. The match between organisms and their environments can be seen in such echinoderm features as the eversible stomachs of sea stars (enabling them to digest prey that are larger than their mouth) and the complex, jaw-like structure that sea urchins use to eat seaweed.

Summary of Key Concepts Questions

33.1 The sponge body consists of two layers of cells, both of which are in contact with water. As a result, gas exchange and waste removal occur as substances diffuse into and out of the cells of the body. Choanocytes and amoebocytes ingest food particles from the surrounding water. Choanocytes also release food particles to amoebocytes, which then digest the food particles and deliver nutrients to other cells. **33.2** The cnidarian body plan consists of a sac with a central digestive compartment, the gastrovascular cavity. The single opening to this compartment serves as both a mouth and an anus. The two main variations on this body plan are sessile polyps (which adhere to the substrate at the end of the body opposite to the mouth/anus) and motile medusae (which move freely through the water and resemble flattened, mouth-down versions of polyps). **33.3** No. Some lophotrochozoans have a crown of ciliated tentacles that function in feeding (called a lophophore), while others go through a distinctive developmental stage known as trochophore larvae. Many other lophotrochozoans do not have either of these features. As a result, the clade is defined primarily by DNA similarities, not morphological similarities. **33.4** Many nematode species live in soil and in sediments on the bottom of bodies of water. These free-living species play important roles in decomposition and nutrient cycling. Other nematodes are parasites, including many species that attack the roots of plants and some that attack animals (including humans). Arthropods have profound effects on all aspects of ecology. In aquatic environments, crustaceans play key roles as grazers (of algae), scavengers, and predators and some species, such as krill, are important sources of food for whales and other vertebrates. On land, it is difficult to think of features of the natural world that are not affected in some way by insects and other arthropods, such as spiders and ticks. There are more than 1 million species of insects, many of which have enormous ecological effects as herbivores, predators, parasites, decomposers, and vectors of disease. Insects are also key sources of food for many organisms, including humans in some regions of the world. **33.5** Echinoderms and chordates are both members of Deuterostomia, one of the three main clades of bilaterian animals. As such, chordates (including humans) are more closely related to echinoderms than we are to animals in any of the other phyla covered in this chapter. Nevertheless, echinoderms and chordates have evolved independently for over 500 million years. This statement does not contradict the close relationship of echinoderms and chordates, but it does make clear that "close" is a relative term indicating that these two phyla are more closely related to each other than either is to animal phyla not in Deuterostomia.

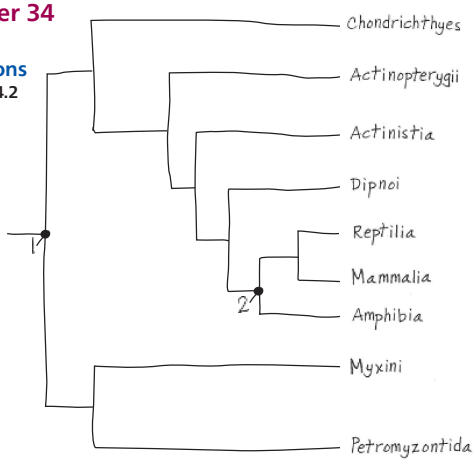
Test Your Understanding

1. A **2.** C **3.** B **4.** C **5.** C **6.** D

Chapter 34

Figure Questions

Figure 34.2



The redrawn tree shows mammals (including humans) as nested near the middle of the evolutionary tree of vertebrates. Showing the vertebrate tree in this way provides a visual illustration of the fact that the evolutionary history of vertebrates did not consist of a series of steps "leading to"

humans. **Figure 34.6** The patterns in these figures suggest that specific *Hox* genes, as well as the order in which they are expressed, have been highly conserved over the course of evolution. **Figure 34.20** *Tiktaalik* was a lobe-fin fish that had both fish and tetrapod characters. Like a fish, *Tiktaalik* had fins, scales, and gills. As described by Darwin's concept of descent with modification, such shared characters can be attributed to descent from ancestral species—in this case, *Tiktaalik*'s descent from fish ancestors. *Tiktaalik* also had traits that were unlike a fish but like a tetrapod, including a flat skull, a neck, a full set of ribs, and the skeletal structure of its fin. These characters illustrate the second part of descent with modification, showing how ancestral features had become modified over time. **Figure 34.21** Sometime between 350 mya and 340 mya. We can infer this because amphibians must have originated after the most recent common ancestor of amphibians and amniotes (and that ancestor is shown as having lived 350 mya), but no later than the date of the earliest known fossils of amphibians (shown in the figure as 340 mya). **Figure 34.25** Pterosaurs did not descend from the common ancestor of all dinosaurs; hence, pterosaurs are not dinosaurs. However, birds are descendants of the common ancestor of the dinosaurs. As a result, a monophyletic clade of dinosaurs must include birds. In that sense, birds are dinosaurs. **Figure 34.37** In a catabolic pathway, like the aerobic processes of cellular respiration, water is released as a by-product when an organic compound such as glucose is mixed with oxygen. The kangaroo rat can retain and use that water, decreasing its need to drink water. **Figure 34.38** In general, the process of exaptation occurs as a structure that had one function acquires a different function via a series of intermediate stages. Each of these intermediate stages typically has some function in the organism in which it is found. The incorporation of articular and quadrate bones into the mammalian ear illustrates exaptation because these bones originally evolved as part of the jaw, where they functioned as the jaw hinge, but over time they became co-opted for another function, namely, the transmission of sound. **Figure 34.44** As shown in this phylogeny, chimpanzees and humans represent the tips of separate branches of evolution. As such, the human and chimpanzee lineages have evolved independently after they diverged from their common ancestor—an event that took place about 8 million years ago. Hence, it is incorrect to say that humans evolved from chimpanzees (or vice versa). If humans had descended from chimpanzees, for example, the human lineage would be nested within the chimpanzee lineage, much as birds are nested within the reptile clade (see Figure 34.25).

Concept Check 34.1

1. The four characters are a notochord; a dorsal, hollow nerve chord; pharyngeal slits or clefts; and a muscular, post-anal tail. **2.** In humans, these characters are present only in the embryo. The notochord becomes disks between the vertebrae; the dorsal, hollow nerve cord develops into the brain and spinal cord; the pharyngeal clefts develop into various adult structures, and the tail is almost completely lost. **3.** You would expect the vertebrate groups Actinopterygii, Actinistia, Dipnoi, Amphibia, Reptilia, and Mammalia to have lungs or lung derivatives. All of these groups originate to the right of (evolved after) the hatch mark indicating the appearance of this derived character in their lineage.

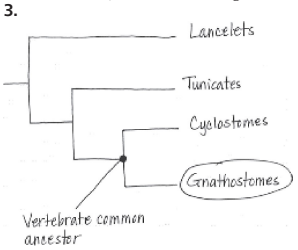
Concept Check 34.2

1. Parasitic lampreys have a round, rasping mouth, which they use to attach to fish. Non-parasitic lampreys feed only as larvae; these larvae resemble lancelets and like them, are suspension feeders. Conodonts had two sets of mineralized dental elements, which may have been used to impale prey and cut it into smaller pieces. **2.** Such a finding suggests that early organisms with a head were favored by natural selection in several different evolutionary lineages. However, while a logical argument can be made that having a head was advantageous, fossils alone do not constitute proof. **3.** In armored jawless vertebrates, bone served as external armor that may have provided protection from predators. Some species also had mineralized mouthparts, which could be used for either predation or scavenging.

Concept Check 34.3

1. Both are gnathostomes and have jaws, four clusters of *Hox* genes, enlarged forebrains, and lateral line systems. Shark skeletons consist mainly of cartilage, whereas tuna have bony skeletons. Sharks also have a spiral valve. Tuna have an operculum and a swim bladder, as well as flexible rays supporting their fins. **2.** Aquatic gnathostomes have jaws (an adaptation for feeding) and paired fins and a tail (adaptations for swimming). Aquatic gnathostomes also typically have streamlined bodies for efficient swimming and swim bladders or other mechanisms (such as oil storage in sharks) for buoyancy.

3.



4. Yes, that could have happened. The paired appendages of aquatic gnathostomes other than the lobe-fins could have served as a starting point for the evolution of limbs. The colonization of land by aquatic gnathostomes other than the lobe-fins might have been facilitated in lineages that possessed lungs, as that would have enabled those organisms to breathe air.

Concept Check 34.4

1. Tetrapods are thought to have originated about 365 million years ago when the fins of some lobe-fins evolved into the limbs of tetrapods. In addition to their four limbs with digits—a key derived trait for which the group is named—other derived traits of tetrapods include a neck (consisting of vertebrae that separate the head from the rest of the body) and a pelvic girdle that is fused to the backbone. **2.** Some fully aquatic species are paedomorphic, retaining larval features for life in water as adults. Species that live in dry environments may avoid dehydration by burrowing or living under moist leaves, and they protect their eggs with foam nests, viviparity, and other adaptations. **3.** Many amphibians spend part of their life cycle in aquatic environments and part on land. Thus, they may be exposed to a wide range of environmental problems, including water and air pollution and the loss or degradation of aquatic and/or terrestrial habitats. In addition, amphibians have highly permeable skin, providing relatively little protection from external conditions, and their eggs do not have a protective shell.

Concept Check 34.5

1. The amniotic egg provides protection to the embryo and allows the embryo to develop on land, eliminating the necessity of a watery environment for reproduction. Another key adaptation is rib cage ventilation, which improves the efficiency of air intake and may have allowed early amniotes to dispense with breathing through their skin. Finally, not breathing through their skin allowed amniotes to develop relatively impermeable skin, thereby conserving water. **2.** Yes. Although snakes lack limbs, they descended from lizards with legs. Some snakes retain vestigial pelvic and leg bones, providing evidence of their descent from an ancestor with legs. **3.** Birds have weight-saving modifications, including the absence of teeth, a urinary bladder, and a second ovary in females. The wings and feathers are adaptations that facilitate flight, as do efficient respiratory and circulatory systems that support a high metabolic rate. **4.** (a) synapsids, (b) tuataras, (c) turtles

Concept Check 34.6

1. Monotremes lay eggs. Marsupials give birth to very small live young that attach to a nipple in the mother's pouch, where they complete development. Eutherians give birth to more developed live young. **2.** Hands and feet adapted for grasping, flat nails, large brain, forward-looking eyes on a flat face, parental care, and movable big toe and thumb **3.** Mammals are endothermic, enabling them to live in a wide range of habitats. Milk provides young with a balanced set of nutrients, and hair and a layer of fat under the skin help mammals retain heat. Mammals have differentiated teeth, enabling them to eat many different kinds of food. Mammals also have relatively large brains, and many species are capable learners. Following the mass extinction at the end of the Cretaceous period, the absence of large terrestrial dinosaurs may have opened many new ecological niches to mammals, promoting an adaptive radiation. Continental drift also isolated many groups of mammals from one another, promoting the formation of many new species.

Concept Check 34.7

1. Hominins are a clade within the ape clade that includes humans and all species more closely related to humans than to other apes. The derived characters of hominins include bipedal locomotion and relatively larger brains. **2.** In hominins, bipedal locomotion evolved long before large brain size. *Homo ergaster*, for example, was fully upright, bipedal, and as tall as modern humans, but its brain was significantly smaller than that of modern humans. **3.** Yes, both can be correct. *Homo sapiens* may have established populations outside of Africa as early as 180,00 years ago, as indicated by the fossil record. However, those populations may have left few or no descendants today. Instead, all living humans may have descended from Africans that spread from Africa roughly 50,000 years ago, as indicated by genetic data.

Summary of Key Concepts Questions

34.1 Lancelets are the most basal group of living chordates, and as adults they have key derived characters of chordates. This suggests that the chordate common ancestor may have resembled a lancelet in having an anterior end with a mouth along with the following four derived characters: a notochord; a dorsal, hollow nerve cord; pharyngeal slits or clefts; and a muscular, post-anal tail. **34.2** Conodonts, among the earliest vertebrates in the fossil record, were very abundant for 300 million years. While jawless, their well-developed teeth provide early signs of bone formation. Other species of jawless vertebrates developed armor on the outside of their bodies, which probably helped protect them from predators. Like lampreys, these species had paired fins for locomotion and an inner ear with semicircular canals that provided a sense of balance. There were many species of these armored jawless vertebrates, but they all became extinct by the close of the Devonian period, 359 million years ago. **34.3** The origin of jaws altered how fossil gnathostomes obtained food, which in turn had large effects on ecological interactions. Predators could use their jaws to grab prey or remove chunks of flesh, stimulating the evolution of increasingly sophisticated means of defense in prey species. Evidence for these changes can be found in the fossil record, which includes fossils of 10-m-long predators with remarkably powerful jaws, as well as lineages of well-defended prey species whose bodies were covered by armored plates. **34.4** Amphibians require water for reproduction; their bodies can lose water rapidly through their moist, highly permeable skin; and amphibian eggs do not have a shell and hence are vulnerable to desiccation. **34.5** Birds are descended from theropod dinosaurs, and dinosaurs are nested within the archosaur lineage, one of the two main reptile lineages. Thus, the other living archosaur reptiles, the crocodilians, are more closely related to birds than they are to non-archosaur reptiles such as lizards. As a result, birds are considered reptiles. (Note that if reptiles were defined as excluding birds, the reptiles would not form a clade; instead, the reptiles would be a paraphyletic group.) **34.6** Mammals are members of a group of amniotes called synapsids. Early (nonmammalian) synapsids laid eggs and had a sprawling gait. Fossil evidence shows that mammalian features arose gradually over a period of more than 100 million years. For example, the jaw was modified over time in nonmammalian synapsids, eventually coming to resemble that of a mammal. By 180 million years ago, the first mammals had appeared. There were many species

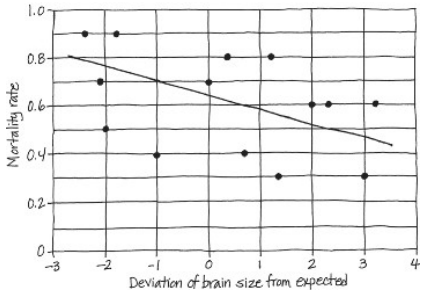
of early mammals, but most of them were small, and they were not abundant or dominant members of their community. Mammals did not rise to ecological dominance until after the extinction of the dinosaurs. **34.7** The fossil record shows that from 4.5 to 2.5 million years ago, a wide range of hominin species walked upright but had relatively small brain sizes. About 2.5 million years ago, the first members of genus *Homo* emerged. These species used tools and had larger brains than those of earlier hominins. Fossil evidence indicates that multiple members of our genus were alive at any given point in time. Furthermore, until about 1.3 million years ago, these various *Homo* species also coexisted with members of earlier hominin lineages, such as *Paranthropus*. The different hominins alive at the same periods of time varied in body size, body shape, brain size, dental morphology, and the capacity for tool use. Ultimately, except for *Homo sapiens*, all of these species became extinct. Overall, human evolution can be viewed as an evolutionary tree with many branches—the only surviving lineage of which is our own.

Test Your Understanding

1. D **2.** C **3.** B **4.** C **5.** D **6.** A

8. (a) Because brain size tends to increase consistently in such lineages, we can conclude that natural selection favored the evolution of larger brains and hence that the benefits outweighed the costs. (b) As long as the benefits of brains that are large relative to body size are greater than the costs, large brains can evolve. Natural selection might favor the evolution of brains that are large relative to body size because such brains confer an advantage in obtaining mates and/or an advantage in survival.

(c)



Mortality tends to be lower in birds with larger brains.

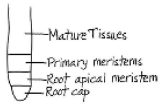
Chapter 35

Figure Questions

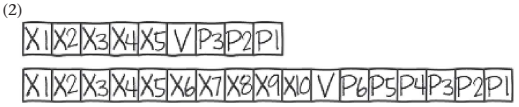
Figure 35.5 All three examples have nodes because they're all stems. The nodes are the locations where the axillary buds arise.

Figure 35.11

(1)



(2)



As a result of the addition of secondary xylem cells, the vascular cambium is pushed farther to the outside.

Figure 35.15

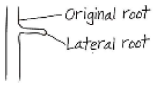
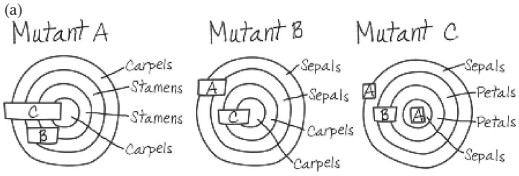


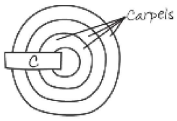
Figure 35.17 Pith and cortex are defined, respectively, as ground tissue that is internal and ground tissue that is external to vascular tissue. Since vascular bundles of monocot stems are scattered throughout the ground tissue, there is no clear distinction between internal and external relative to the vascular tissue. **Figure 35.19** The vascular cambium produces growth that increases the diameter of a stem or root. The tissues that are exterior to the vascular cambium cannot keep pace with the growth because their cells no longer divide. As a result, these tissues rupture. **Figure 35.23** Periderm (mainly cork and cork cambium), primary phloem, secondary phloem, vascular cambium, secondary xylem (sapwood and heartwood), primary xylem, and pith. At the base of ancient redwood that is many centuries old, the remnants of primary growth (primary phloem, primary xylem, and pith) would be quite insignificant. **Figure 35.30** Every root epidermal cell would develop a root hair. **Figure 35.32** Another example of homeotic gene mutation is the mutation in a *Hox* gene that causes legs to form in place of antennae in *Drosophila* (see Figure 18.20).

Figure 35.33

(a)



(b)



Concept Check 35.1

1. The vascular tissue system connects leaves and roots, allowing sugars to move from leaves to roots in the phloem and allowing water and minerals to move to the leaves in the xylem. **2.** To get sufficient energy from photosynthesis, we would need lots of surface area exposed to the sun. This large surface-to-volume ratio, however, would create a new problem—evaporative water loss. We would have to be permanently connected to a water source—the soil, also our source of minerals. In short, we would probably look and behave very much like plants. **3.** As plant cells enlarge, they typically form a huge central vacuole that contains a dilute, watery sap. Central vacuoles enable plant cells to become large with only a minimal investment of new cytoplasm. The orientation of the cellulose microfibrils in plant cell walls affects the growth pattern of cells.

Concept Check 35.2

1. Yes. In a woody plant, secondary growth is occurring in the older parts of the stem and root, while primary growth is occurring at the root and shoot tips.
2. The largest, oldest leaves would be lowest on the shoot. Since they would probably be heavily shaded, they would not photosynthesize much regardless of their size. Determinate growth benefits the plant by keeping it from investing an ever-increasing amount of resources into organs that provide little photosynthetic product. **3.** No. The carrot roots will probably be smaller at the end of the second year because the food stored in the roots will be used to produce flowers, fruits, and seeds.

Concept Check 35.3

1. In roots, primary growth occurs in three successive stages, moving away from the tip of the root: the zones of cell division, elongation, and differentiation. In shoots, it occurs at the tip of apical buds, with leaf primordia arising along the sides of an apical meristem. Most growth in length occurs in older internodes below the shoot tip.
2. The fossil probably came from a floating leaf because having stomata exclusively on the upper surface would be a poor adaptation for a desert plant since it would lead to water loss. A floating leaf, on the other hand, would benefit from having stomata on its upper surface since only that surface is in contact with the gaseous environment.
3. Root hairs are cellular extensions that increase the surface area of the root epidermis, thereby enhancing the absorption of minerals and water. Microvilli are extensions that increase the absorption of nutrients by increasing the surface area of the gut.

Concept Check 35.4

1. The sign will still be 2 m above the ground because this part of the tree is no longer growing in length (primary growth); it is now growing only in thickness (secondary growth). **2.** Stomata must be able to close because evaporation is much more intensive from leaves than from the trunks of woody trees as a result of the higher surface-to-volume ratio in leaves. **3.** Since there is little seasonal temperature variation in the tropics, the growth rings of a tree from the tropics would be difficult to discern unless the tree came from an area that had pronounced wet and dry seasons. **4.** The tree would die slowly. Girdling removes an entire ring of secondary phloem (part of the bark), completely preventing transport of sugars and starches from the shoots to the roots. After several weeks, the roots would have used all of their stored carbohydrate reserves and would die.

Concept Check 35.5

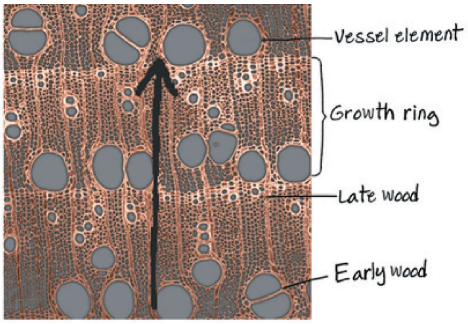
1. Although all the living vegetative cells of a plant have the same genome, they develop different forms and functions because of differential gene expression.
2. Plants show indeterminate growth; juvenile and mature phases are found on the same individual plant; and cell differentiation in plants is more dependent on final position than on lineage. **3.** One hypothesis is that tepals arise if *B* gene activity is present in all three of the outer whorls of the flower.

Summary of Key Concepts Questions

35.1 Here are a few examples: The cuticle of leaves and stems protects these structures from desiccation. Collenchyma and sclerenchyma cells have thick walls that provide support for plants. Strong, branching root systems help anchor plants in the soil. **35.2** Primary growth arises from apical meristems and involves production and elongation of organs. Secondary growth arises from lateral meristems and adds to the diameter of roots and stems. **35.3** Lateral roots emerge from the pericycle and destroy plant cells as they emerge. In stems, branches arise from axillary buds and do not destroy any cells. **35.4** With the evolution of secondary growth, plants were able to grow taller and shade competitors. **35.5** The orientation of cellulose microfibrils in the innermost layers of the cell wall causes growth along one axis. Microtubules in the cell's outermost cytoplasm play a key role in regulating the axis of cell expansion because it is their orientation that determines the orientation of cellulose microfibrils.

Test Your Understanding

1. D **2.** C **3.** C **4.** A **5.** D **6.** C **7.** D **8.** B **9.** D **10.** D
11.



12. The tea and iris leaves differ in the arrangement of photosynthetic mesophyll cells. In the tea leaf, the mesophyll cells are divided into two layers, with the lower part of the leaf having a loosely arranged spongy layer with large air spaces, and the upper part having a palisade layer of tightly packed cells. In contrast, the mesophyll cells in the iris leaf are evenly distributed with no large air spaces. These differences are associated with the natural orientation of the leaves of these two species. Tea leaves are horizontally oriented and are more likely to receive light on the upper surface, so most of the mesophyll cells are concentrated in a palisade layer to absorb light efficiently. In contrast, iris leaves are vertically oriented with both sides illuminated about equally during the course of the day, so the mesophyll cells are evenly distributed. In both leaves, structure fits function because the arrangement of mesophyll cells maximizes photosynthesis. **13.** Pranksters must have been carried the bicycle high into the tree and threaded it over a young woody branch: Primary growth did not raise the bicycle off the ground. Over time, secondary growth in the region of the tree notch enveloped the bicycle.

Chapter 36

Figure Questions

Figure 36.2 There would be no reference to photosynthesis because it ceases at night. Also, the directions of the CO_2 and O_2 arrows associated with the leaves would be reversed because at night only the gas exchange related to cellular respiration is occurring. **Figure 36.3** The leaves are being produced in a counterclockwise spiral. The next leaf primordium will emerge approximately between and to the inside of leaves 8 and 13. **Figure 36.4** A higher leaf area index will not necessarily increase photosynthesis because of upper leaves shading lower leaves. **Figure 36.6** A proton pump inhibitor would depolarize (increase) the membrane potential because fewer hydrogen ions would be pumped out across the plasma membrane. The immediate effect of an inhibitor of the H^+/sucrose transporter would be to hyperpolarize (decrease) the membrane potential because fewer hydrogen ions would be leaking back into the cell through these cotransporters. An inhibitor of the H^+/NO_3^- cotransporter would have no effect on the membrane potential because the simultaneous cotransport of a positively charged ion and a negatively charged ion has no net effect on charge difference across the membrane. An inhibitor of the potassium ion channels would decrease the membrane potential because additional positively charged ions would not be accumulating outside the cell. **Figure 36.8** Few, if any, mesophyll cells are more than three cells from a vein. **Figure 36.9** The Casparian strip blocks water and minerals from moving between endodermal cells or moving around an endodermal cell via the cell's wall. Therefore, water and minerals must pass through an endodermal cell's plasma membrane. **Figure 36.13** A section 500 µm by 300 µm is equal to 150,000 μm^2 or 0.0015 cm^2. Since there are five stomata visible in 0.0015 cm^2, the stomatal density of this bean leaf is approximately 3,333 stomata per square centimeter of leaf surface. **Figure 36.18** Because the xylem is under negative pressure (tension), excising a stylet that had been inserted into a tracheid or vessel element would probably introduce air into the cell. No xylem sap would exude unless positive root pressure was predominant.

Concept Check 36.1

1. Vascular plants must transport minerals and water absorbed by the roots to all the other parts of the plant. They must also transport sugars from sites of production to sites of use. **2.** Increased stem elongation would raise the plant's upper leaves. Erect leaves and reduced lateral branching would make the plant less subject to shading by the encroaching neighbors. **3.** Pruning shoot tips removes apical dominance, resulting in lateral shoots (branches) growing from axillary buds (see Concept 35.3). This branching produces a bushier plant with a higher leaf area index.

Concept Check 36.2

1. The cell's Ψ_P is 0.7 MPa. In a solution with a Ψ of –0.4 MPa, the cell's Ψ_P at equilibrium would be 0.3 MPa. **2.** The cell would still adjust to changes in its osmotic environment, but its responses would be slower. Although aquaporins do not affect the water potential gradient across membranes, they allow for more rapid osmotic adjustments. **3.** If tracheids and vessel elements were alive at maturity, their cytoplasm would impede water movement, preventing rapid long-distance transport. **4.** The protoplasts would burst. Because the cytoplasm has many dissolved solutes, water would enter the protoplast continuously without reaching equilibrium. (When present, the cell wall prevents rupturing by limiting expansion of the protoplast.)

Concept Check 36.3

1. At dawn, a drop is exuded from the rooted stump because the xylem is under positive pressure due to root pressure. At noon, the xylem is under negative pressure (tension) when it is cut, and the xylem sap is pulled back into the rooted stump. Root pressure cannot keep pace with the increased rate of transpiration at noon. **2.** Perhaps greater root mass helps compensate for the lower water permeability of the plasma membranes. **3.** The Casparian strip and tight junctions both prevent movement of fluid between cells.

Concept Check 36.4

1. Stomatal opening at dawn is controlled mainly by light, CO_2 concentration, and a circadian rhythm. Environmental stresses such as drought, high temperature, and wind can stimulate stomata to close during the day. Water deficiency during the peak of the day can trigger release of the plant hormone abscisic acid, which signals guard cells to close stomata. **2.** The activation of the proton pumps of stomatal cells would cause the guard cells to take up K^+. The increased turgor of the guard cells would lock the stomata open and lead to extreme evaporation from the leaf. **3.** After the flowers are cut, transpiration from any leaves and from the petals (which are modified leaves) will continue to draw water up the xylem. If cut flowers are transferred directly to a vase, air pockets in xylem vessels prevent delivery of water from the vase to the flowers. Cutting stems again underwater, a few centimeters from the original cut, will sever the xylem above the air pocket. The water droplets prevent another air pocket from forming while the flowers are transferred to a vase. **4.** Water molecules are in constant motion, traveling at different speeds. If water molecules gain enough energy, the most energetic molecules near the liquid's surface will have sufficient speed, and therefore sufficient kinetic energy, to leave the liquid in the form of gaseous molecules (water vapor). As the molecules with the highest kinetic energy leave the liquid, the average kinetic energy of the remaining liquid decreases. Because a liquid's temperature is directly related to the average kinetic energy of its molecules, the temperature drops as evaporation proceeds.

Concept Check 36.5

1. In both cases, the long-distance transport is a bulk flow driven by a pressure difference at opposite ends of tubes. Pressure is generated at the source end of a sieve tube by the loading of sugar and resulting osmotic flow of water into the phloem, and this pressure *pushes* sap from the source end to the sink end of the tube. In contrast, transpiration generates a negative pressure potential (tension) that *pulls* the ascent of xylem sap. **2.** The main sources are fully grown leaves (producing sugar by photosynthesis) and fully developed storage organs (producing sugar by breakdown of starch). Roots, buds, stems, expanding leaves, and fruits are powerful sinks because they are actively growing. A storage organ may be a sink in the summer when accumulating carbohydrates but a source in the spring when breaking down starch into sugar for growing shoot tips. **3.** Positive pressure, whether it be in the xylem when root pressure predominates or in the sieve-tube elements of the phloem, requires active transport. Most long-distance transport in the xylem depends on bulk flow driven by the negative pressure potential generated ultimately by the evaporation of water from the leaf and does not require living cells. **4.** The spiral slash prevents optimal bulk flow of the phloem sap to the root sinks. Therefore, more phloem sap can move from the source leaves to the fruit sinks, making them sweeter.

Concept Check 36.6

1. Plasmodesmata, unlike gap junctions, have the ability to pass RNA, proteins, and viruses from cell to cell. **2.** Long-distance signaling is critical for the integrated functioning of all large organisms, but the speed of such signaling is much less critical to plants because their responses to the environment, unlike those of animals, do not typically involve rapid movements. **3.** Although this strategy would eliminate the systemic spread of viral infections, it would also severely impact the development of the plants.

Summary of Key Concepts Questions

36.1 Plants with tall shoots and elevated leaf canopies generally had an advantage over shorter competitors. A consequence of the selective pressure for tall shoots was the further separation of leaves from roots. This separation created problems for the transport of materials between root and shoot systems. Plants with xylem cells were more successful at supplying their shoot systems with soil resources (water and minerals). Similarly, those with phloem cells were more successful at supplying sugar sinks with carbohydrates. **36.2** Xylem sap is pulled up the plant by transpiration much more often than it is pushed up the plant by root pressure. **36.3** Hydrogen bonds are necessary for the cohesion of water molecules to each other and for the adhesion of water to other materials, such as cell walls. Both adhesion and cohesion of water molecules are involved in the ascent of xylem sap under conditions of negative pressure. **36.4** Although stomata account for most of the water lost from plants, they are necessary for exchange of gases—for example, for the uptake of carbon dioxide needed for photosynthesis. The loss of water through stomata also drives the long-distance transport of water that brings soil nutrients from roots to the rest of the plant. **36.5** Although the movement of phloem sap depends on bulk flow, the pressure gradient that drives phloem transport depends on the osmotic uptake of water in response to the loading of sugars into sieve-tube elements at sugar sources. Phloem loading depends on H^+ cotransport processes that ultimately depend on H^+ gradients established by active K^+ pumping. **36.6** Electrical signaling, cytoplasmic pH, cytoplasmic Ca^{2+} concentration, and viral movement proteins all affect symplastic communication, as do developmental changes in the number of plasmodesmata.

Test Your Understanding

1. A **2.** B **3.** B **4.** C **5.** B **6.** C **7.** A **8.** D

Chapter 37

Figure Questions

Figure 37.3 Cations. At low pH, there would be more protons (H^+) to displace mineral cations from negatively charged soil particles into the soil solution. **Figure 37.4** The A horizon, which consists of the topsoil **Table 37.1** During photosynthesis, CO_2 is fixed into carbohydrates, which contribute to the dry mass. In cellular respiration, O_2 is reduced to H_2O and does not contribute to the dry mass. **Figure 37.9** Some other examples of mutualism are the following relationships. *Flashlight fish and bioluminescent bacteria:* The bacteria gain nutrients and protection from the fish, while the bioluminescence attracts prey and mates for the fish. *Flowering plants and pollinators:* Animals distribute the pollen and are rewarded by a meal of nectar or pollen. *Vertebrate herbivores and some bacteria in the digestive system:* Microorganisms in the alimentary canal break down cellulose to glucose and, in some cases, provide the animal with vitamins or amino acids. Meanwhile, the microorganisms have a steady supply of food and a warm environment. *Humans and some bacteria in the digestive system:* Some bacteria provide humans with vitamins, while the bacteria get nutrients from the digested food. **Figure 37.11** Both ammonium and nitrate. A decomposing animal would release amino acids into the soil that would be converted into ammonium by ammonifying bacteria. Some of this ammonium could be used directly by the plant. A large part of the ammonium, however, would be converted by nitrifying bacteria to form nitrate ions that could also be absorbed by the plant root system. **Figure 37.12** The legume plants benefit because the bacteria fix nitrogen that is absorbed by their roots. The bacteria benefit because they acquire photosynthetic products from the plants. **Figure 37.13** All three plant tissue systems are affected. Root hairs (dermal tissue) are modified to allow *Rhizobium* penetration. The cortex (ground tissue) and pericycle (vascular tissue) proliferate during nodule formation. The vascular tissue of the nodule connects to the vascular cylinder of the root to allow for efficient nutrient exchange.

Concept Check 37.1

1. Overwatering deprives roots of oxygen. Overfertilizing is wasteful and can lead to soil salinization and water pollution. **2.** As lawn clippings decompose, they restore mineral nutrients to the soil. If they are removed, the minerals lost from the soil must be replaced by fertilization. **3.** Because of their small size and negative charge, clay particles would increase the number of binding sites for cations and water molecules and would therefore increase cation exchange and water retention in the soil. **4.** Due to hydrogen bonding between water molecules, water expands when it freezes, and this causes mechanical fracturing of rocks. Water also coheres to many objects, and this cohesion combined with other forces, such as gravity, can help tug particles from rock. Finally, water, because it is polar, is an excellent solvent that allows many substances, including ions, to become dissolved in solution.

Concept Check 37.2

1. No. Even though macronutrients are required in greater amounts, all essential elements are necessary for a plant to complete its life cycle. **2.** No. The fact that the addition of an element results in an increase in the growth rate of a crop does not mean that the element is strictly required for the plant to complete its life cycle. **3.** Inadequate aeration of the roots of hydroponically grown plants would promote alcohol fermentation, which uses more energy and may lead to the accumulation of ethanol, a toxic by-product of fermentation.

Concept Check 37.3

1. The rhizosphere is the zone in the soil immediately adjacent to living roots. It harbors many rhizobacteria with which the root systems form beneficial mutualisms. Some rhizobacteria produce antibiotics that protect roots from disease. Others absorb toxic metals or make nutrients more available to roots. Still others convert gaseous nitrogen into forms usable by the plant or produce chemicals that stimulate plant growth. **2.** Soil bacteria and mycorrhizae enhance plant nutrition by making certain minerals more available to plants. For example, many types of soil bacteria are involved in the nitrogen cycle, and the hyphae of mycorrhizae provide a large surface area for the absorption of nutrients, particularly phosphate ions. **3.** Mixotrophy refers to the strategy of using photosynthesis and heterotrophy for nutrition. Euglenids are well-known mixotrophic protists. **4.** Saturating rainfall may deplete the soil of oxygen. A lack of soil oxygen would inhibit nitrogen fixation by the peanut root nodules and decrease the nitrogen available to the plants. Alternatively, heavy rain may leach nitrate from the soil. A symptom of nitrogen deficiency is yellowing of older leaves.

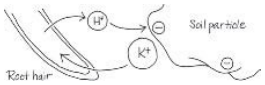
Summary of Key Concepts Questions

37.1 The term *ecosystem* refers to the communities of organisms within a given area and their interactions with the physical environment around them. Soil is teeming with many communities of organisms, including bacteria, fungi, animals, and the root systems of plants. The vigor of these individual communities depends on nonliving factors in the soil environment, such as minerals, oxygen, and water, as well as on interactions, both positive and negative, between different communities of organisms. **37.2** No. Plants can complete their life cycle when grown hydroponically, that is, in aerated salt solutions containing the proper ratios of all the minerals needed by plants. **37.3** No. Some parasitic plants obtain their energy by siphoning off carbon nutrients from other organisms.

Test Your Understanding

1. B **2.** B **3.** A **4.** D **5.** B **6.** B **7.** D **8.** C **9.** D

10.



Chapter 38

Figure Questions

Figure 38.4 Having a specific pollinator is more efficient because less pollen gets delivered to flowers of the wrong species. However, it is also a risky strategy: If the pollinator population suffers to an unusual degree from predation, disease, or climate change, then the plant may not be able to produce seeds.
Figure 38.6 The part of the angiosperm life cycle characterized by the most mitotic divisions is the step between seed germination and the mature sporophyte.
Figure 38.8 Make Connections In addition to having a single cotyledon, monocots have leaves with parallel leaf venation, scattered vascular bundles in their stems, a fibrous root system, floral parts in threes or multiples of threes, and pollen grains with only one opening. In contrast, eudicots have two cotyledons, netlike leaf venation, vascular bundles in a ring, taproots, floral parts in fours or fives or multiples thereof, and pollen grains with three openings. **Visual Skills** The mature garden bean seed lacks an endosperm at maturity. Its endosperm was consumed during seed development, and its nutrients were stored anew in the cotyledons. **Figure 38.9** Beans use a hypocotyl hook to push through the soil. The delicate leaves and shoot apical meristem are also protected by being sandwiched between two large cotyledons. The coleoptile of maize seedlings helps protect the emerging leaves.

Concept Check 38.1

1. In angiosperms, pollination is the transfer of pollen from an anther to a stigma. Fertilization is the fusion of the egg and sperm to form the zygote; it cannot occur until after the growth of the pollen tube from the pollen grain. **2.** Long styles help to weed out pollen grains that are genetically inferior and not capable of successfully growing long pollen tubes. **3.** No. The haploid (gametophyte) generation of plants is multicellular and arises from spores. The haploid phase of the animal life cycles is a single-celled gamete (egg or sperm) that arises directly from meiosis: There are no spores.

Concept Check 38.2

1. Flowering plants can avoid self-fertilization by self-incompatibility, having male and female flowers on separate plants (dioecious species), or having stamens and styles of different heights on separate plants ("pin" and "thrum" flowers). **2.** Asexually propagated crops lack genetic diversity. Genetically diverse populations are less likely to become extinct in the face of an epidemic because there is a greater likelihood that a few individuals in the population are resistant. **3.** In the short term, selfing may be advantageous in a population that is so dispersed and sparse that pollen delivery is unreliable. In the long term, however, selfing is an evolutionary dead end because it leads to a loss of genetic diversity that may preclude adaptive evolution.

Concept Check 38.3

1. Traditional breeding and genetic engineering both involve artificial selection for desired traits. However, genetic engineering techniques facilitate faster gene transfer and are not limited to transferring genes between closely related varieties or species. **2.** *Bt* maize suffers less insect damage; therefore, *Bt* maize plants are less likely to be infected by fumonisin-producing fungi that infect plants through wounds. **3.** In such species, engineering the transgene into the chloroplast DNA would not prevent its escape in pollen; such a method requires that the chloroplast DNA be found only in the egg. An entirely different method of preventing transgene escape would therefore be needed, such as male sterility, apomixis, or self-pollinating closed flowers.

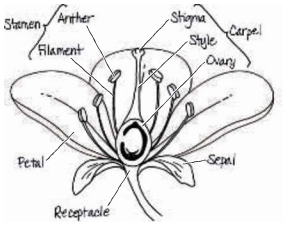
Summary of Key Concepts Questions

38.1 After pollination and fertilization, a flower changes into a fruit. The petals, sepals, and stamens typically fall off the flower. The stigma of the pistil withers, and the ovary begins to swell. The ovules (embryonic seeds) inside the ovary begin to mature. **38.2** Asexual reproduction can be advantageous in a stable environment because individual plants that are well suited to that environment pass on all their genes to offspring. Also, asexual reproduction generally results in offspring that are less fragile than the seedlings produced by sexual reproduction. However, sexual reproduction offers the advantage of dispersal of tough seeds. Moreover, sexual reproduction produces genetic variety, which may be advantageous in an unstable environment. The likelihood is better that at least one offspring of sexual reproduction will survive in a changed environment. **38.3** "Golden Rice," although not yet in commercial production, has been engineered to produce more vitamin A, thereby raising the nutritional value of rice. A protoxin gene from a soil bacterium has been engineered into *Bt* maize. This protoxin is lethal to invertebrates but harmless to vertebrates. *Bt* crops require less pesticide spraying and have lower levels of fungal infection and fungal toxins. The nutritional value of cassava is being increased in many ways by genetic engineering. Enriched levels of iron and beta-carotene (a vitamin A precursor) have been achieved, and cyanide-producing chemicals have been almost eliminated from the roots.

Test Your Understanding

1. A **2.** C **3.** C **4.** C **5.** D **6.** D **7.** D

8.



Chapter 39

Figure Questions

Figure 39.4 Panel B in Figure 11.17 shows a branching signal transduction pathway that resembles the branching phytochrome-dependent pathway involved in de-etiolation. **Figure 39.5** To determine which wavelengths of light are most effective in phototropism, you could use a glass prism to split white light into its component colors and see which colors cause the quickest bending (the answer is blue; see Figure 39.15). **Figure 39.6** No. Polar auxin transport depends on the distribution of auxin transport proteins at the basal ends of cells. **Figure 39.13** No. Since the *ein* mutation renders the seedling "blind" to ethylene, enhancing ethylene production by adding an *eto* mutation would have no effect on phenotype compared with the *ein* mutation alone. **Figure 39.16** Yes. The white light, which contains red light, would stimulate seed germination in all treatments. **Figure 39.20** Since far-red light, like darkness, causes an accumulation of the red-absorbing form (P_r) of phytochrome, single flashes of far-red light at night would have no effect on flowering beyond what the dark periods alone would have. **Figure 39.21** If this were true, then florigen would be an inhibitor of flowering, not an inducer. **Figure 39.27** Photosynthetic adaptations can occur at the molecular level, as is apparent in the fact that C_3 plants use rubisco to fix carbon dioxide initially, whereas C_4 and CAM plants use PEP carboxylase. An adaptation at the tissue level is that plants have different stomatal densities based on their genotype and environmental conditions. At the organismal level, plants alter their shoot architectures to make photosynthesis more efficient. For example, self-pruning removes branches and leaves that respire more than they photosynthesize.

Concept Check 39.1

1. Dark-grown seedlings are etiolated: They have long stems, underdeveloped root systems, and unexpanded leaves, and their shoots lack chlorophyll. Etiolated growth is beneficial to seeds sprouting under the dark conditions they would encounter underground. By devoting more energy to stem elongation and less to leaf expansion and root growth, a plant increases the likelihood that the shoot will reach the sunlight before its stored foods run out. **2.** Cycloheximide should inhibit de-etiolation by preventing the synthesis of new proteins necessary for de-etiolation. **3.** No. Applying Viagra, like injecting cyclic GMP as described in the text, should cause only a partial de-etiolation response. Full de-etiolation would require activation of the calcium branch of the signal transduction pathway.

Concept Check 39.2

1. Fusicoccin's ability to cause an increase in plasma H^+ pump activity has an auxin-like effect and promotes stem cell elongation. **2.** The plant will exhibit a constitutive triple response. Because the kinase that normally prevents the triple response is dysfunctional, the plant will undergo the triple response regardless of whether ethylene is present or the ethylene receptor is functional. **3.** Since ethylene often stimulates its own synthesis, it is under positive-feedback regulation.

Concept Check 39.3

1. Not necessarily. Many environmental factors, such as temperature and light, change over a 24-hour period in the field. To determine whether the enzyme is under circadian control, a scientist would have to demonstrate that its activity oscillates even when environmental conditions are held constant. **2.** It is impossible to say. To establish that this species is a short-day plant, it would be necessary to establish the critical night length for flowering and that this species only flowers when the night is longer than the critical night length.
3. According to the action spectrum of photosynthesis, red and blue light are the most effective in photosynthesis. Thus, it is not surprising that plants assess their light environment using blue- and red-light-absorbing photoreceptors.

Concept Check 39.4

1. A plant that overproduces ABA would undergo less evaporative cooling because its stomata would not open as widely. **2.** Plants close to the aisles may be more subject to mechanical stresses caused by passing workers and air currents. The plants nearer the center of the bench may also be taller as a result of shading and less evaporative stress. **3.** No. Because root caps are involved in sensing gravity, roots that have their root caps removed are almost completely insensitive to gravity.

Concept Check 39.5

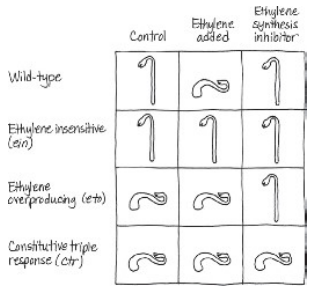
1. An infection can trigger the hypersensitive response, which causes a ring of cell death around the infection site, thereby isolating the pathogen from living host cells and preventing systemic infection. **2.** Mechanical damage breaches a plant's first line of defense against infection, its protective dermal tissue.
3. No. Pathogens that kill their hosts would soon run out of victims and might themselves go extinct. **4.** Perhaps the breeze dilutes the local concentration of a volatile defense compound that the plants produce.

Summary of Key Concepts Questions

39.1 Signal transduction pathways often activate protein kinases, enzymes that phosphorylate other proteins. Protein kinases can directly activate certain preexisting enzymes by phosphorylating them, or they can regulate gene transcription (and enzyme production) by phosphorylating specific transcription factors.
39.2 Yes, there is truth to the old adage that one bad apple spoils the whole bunch. Ethylene, a gaseous hormone that stimulates ripening, is produced by damaged, infected, or overripe fruits. Ethylene can diffuse to healthy fruit in the "bunch" and stimulate their rapid ripening. **39.3** Plant physiologists proposed the existence of a floral-promoting factor (florigen) based on the fact that a plant induced to flower could induce flowering in a second plant to which it was grafted, even though the second plant was not in an environment that would normally induce flowering in that species. **39.4** Plants subjected to drought stress are often more resistant to freezing stress because the two types of stress are quite similar. Freezing of water in the extracellular spaces causes free water concentrations outside the cell to decrease. This, in turn, causes free water to leave the cell by osmosis, leading to the dehydration of cytoplasm, much like what is seen in drought stress. **39.5** Chewing insects make plants more susceptible to pathogen invasion by disrupting the waxy cuticle of shoots, thereby creating an opening for infection. Moreover, substances released from damaged cells can serve as nutrients for the invading pathogens.

Test Your Understanding

1. B **2.** C **3.** D **4.** C **5.** B **6.** B **7.** C
8.



Chapter 40

Figure Questions

Figure 40.4 Such exchange surfaces are internal in the sense that they are inside the body. However, they are also continuous with openings on the external body surface that contact the environment. **Figure 40.6** Signals in the nervous system always travel on a direct route between the sending and receiving cell. In contrast, hormones that reach target cells can have an effect regardless of the path by which they arrive or how many times they travel through the circulatory system. **Figure 40.8** The stimuli (gray boxes) are the room temperature increasing in the top loop and decreasing in the bottom loop. The responses could include the heater turning off and the temperature decreasing in the top loop and the heater turning on and the temperature increasing in the bottom loop. The sensor/control center is the thermostat. The air conditioner would form a second control circuit, cooling the house when air temperature exceeded the set point. Such opposing, or antagonistic, pairs of control circuits increase the effectiveness of a homeostatic mechanism. **Figure 40.12** The conduction arrows would be in the opposite direction, transferring heat from the penguin to the ice because the penguin is warmer than the ice. **Figure 40.16** If a female Burmese python were not incubating eggs, her oxygen consumption would decrease with decreasing temperature, as for any other ectotherm. **Figure 40.17** The ice water would cool tissues in your head, including blood that would then circulate throughout your body. This effect would accelerate the return to a normal body temperature. If, however, the ice water reached the eardrum and cooled the blood vessel that supplies the hypothalamus, the hypothalamic thermostat would respond by inhibiting sweating and constricting blood vessels in the skin, slowing cooling elsewhere in the body. **Figure 40.18** The transport of nutrients across membranes and the synthesis of RNA and protein are coupled to ATP hydrolysis. These processes proceed spontaneously because there is an overall drop in free energy, with the excess energy given off as heat. Similarly, less than half of the free energy in glucose is captured in the coupled reactions of cellular respiration. The remainder of the energy is released as heat. **Figure 40.22** Nothing. Although genes that show a circadian variation in expression during euthermia exhibit constant RNA levels during hibernation, a gene that shows constant expression during hibernation might also show constant expression during euthermia. **Figure 40.23** In hot environments, both plants and animals experience evaporative cooling as a result of transpiration (in plants) or bathing, sweating, and panting (in animals); both plants and animals synthesize heat-shock proteins, which protect other proteins from heat stress; and animals also use various behavioral responses to minimize heat absorption. In cold environments, both plants and animals increase the proportion of unsaturated fatty acids in their membrane lipids and use antifreeze proteins that prevent or limit the formation of intracellular ice crystals; plants increase cytoplasmic levels of specific solutes that help reduce the loss of intracellular water during extracellular freezing; and animals increase metabolic heat production and use insulation, circulatory adaptations such as countercurrent exchange, and behavioral responses to minimize heat loss.

Concept Check 40.1

1. All types of epithelia consist of cells that line a surface, are tightly packed, are situated on top of a basal lamina, and form an active and protective interface with the external environment. **2.** An oxygen molecule must cross a plasma membrane when entering the body at an exchange surface in the respiratory system, in both entering and exiting the circulatory system, and in moving from the interstitial fluid to the cytoplasm of the body cell. **3.** You need the nervous system to perceive the danger and provoke a split-second muscular response to keep from falling. The nervous system, however, does not make a direct connection with blood vessels or glucose-storing cells in the liver. Instead, the nervous system triggers the release of a hormone (called epinephrine, or adrenaline) by the endocrine system, bringing about a change in these tissues in just a few seconds.

Concept Check 40.2

1. In thermoregulation, the product of the pathway (a change in temperature) decreases pathway activity by reducing the stimulus. In an enzyme-catalyzed biosynthetic process, the product of the pathway (in this case, isoleucine) inhibits the pathway that generated it. **2.** You would want to put the thermostat close to

where you would be spending time, where it would be protected from environmental perturbations, such as direct sunshine, and not right in the path of the output of the heating system. Similarly, the sensors for homeostasis located in the human brain are separated from environmental influences and can monitor conditions in a vital and sensitive tissue. **3.** In convergent evolution, the same biological trait arises independently in two or more species. Gene analysis can provide evidence for an independent origin. In particular, if the genes responsible for the trait in one species lack significant sequence similarity to the corresponding genes in another species, scientists conclude that there is a separate genetic basis for the trait in the two species and thus an independent origin. In the case of circadian rhythms, the clock genes in cyanobacteria appear unrelated to those in humans.

Concept Check 40.3

1. "Wind chill" involves heat loss through convection, as the moving air contributes to heat loss from the skin surface. **2.** The hummingbird, being a very small endotherm, has a very high metabolic rate. If by absorbing sunlight certain flowers warm their nectar, a hummingbird feeding on these flowers is saved the metabolic expense of warming the nectar to its body temperature. **3.** To raise body temperature to the higher range of fever, the hypothalamus triggers heat generation by muscular contractions, or shivering. The person with a fever may in fact say that they feel cold, even though their body temperature is above normal.

Concept Check 40.4

1. The mouse would consume oxygen at a higher rate because it is an endotherm, so its basal metabolic rate is higher than the ectothermic lizard's standard metabolic rate. **2.** The house cat; smaller animals have a higher metabolic rate per unit body mass and a greater demand for food per unit body mass. **3.** The alligator's body temperature would decrease along with the air temperature. Its metabolic rate would therefore also decrease as chemical reactions slowed. In contrast, the lion's body temperature would not change. Its metabolic rate would increase as it shivered and produced heat to keep its body temperature constant.

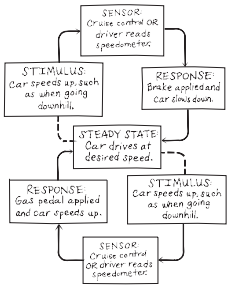
Summary of Key Concepts Questions

40.1 Animals exchange materials with their environment across their body surface, and a spherical shape has the minimum surface area per unit volume. As body size increases, the ratio of surface area to body volume decreases. **40.2** No; an animal's internal environment fluctuates slightly around set points or within normal ranges. Homeostasis is a dynamic state. Furthermore, there are sometimes programmed changes in set points, such as those resulting in radical increases in hormone levels at particular times in development. **40.3** Heat exchange across the skin is a primary mechanism for the regulation of body core temperature, with the result that the skin is cooler than the body core. **40.4** Small animals have a higher BMR per unit mass and therefore consume more oxygen per unit mass than large animals. A higher breathing rate is required to support this increased oxygen consumption.

Test Your Understanding

1. B **2.** C **3.** A **4.** B **5.** C **6.** B **7.** D

8.



Chapter 41

Figure Questions

Figure 41.6 Your diagram should show food entering through the hydra's mouth and being digested into nutrients in the large portion of the gastrovascular cavity. The nutrients then diffuse into the extensions of that cavity that reach into the tentacles. There, nutrients would be absorbed by cells of the gastrodermis and transported to cells of the epidermis of a tentacle. **Figure 41.9** The airway must be open for exhaling to occur. If the epiglottis is up, water that entered the throat from the mouth encounters air forced out of the lungs and is carried along into the nasal cavity and out the nose. **Figure 41.11** Since enzymes are proteins, and proteins are hydrolyzed in the small intestine, the digestive enzymes in that compartment need to be resistant to enzymatic cleavage other than the cleavage required to activate them. **Figure 41.12** None. Since digestion is completed in the small intestine, tapeworms simply absorb predigested nutrients through their large body surface. **Figure 41.13** Yes. The exit of the chylomicrons involves exocytosis, an active process that consumes energy in the form of ATP. In contrast, the entry of monoglycerides and fatty acids into the cell by diffusion is a passive process that does not consume energy. **Figure 41.23** Both insulin and glucagon are involved in negative feedback circuits.

Concept Check 41.1

1. The only essential amino acids are those that an animal cannot synthesize from other molecules. **2.** Many vitamins serve as enzyme cofactors, which, like enzymes themselves, are unchanged by the chemical reactions in which they participate. Therefore, only very small amounts of vitamins are needed. **3.** To identify the essential nutrient missing from an animal's diet, a researcher could supplement the diet with individual nutrients one at a time and determine which nutrient eliminates the signs of malnutrition.

Concept Check 41.2

1. A gastrovascular cavity is a digestive pouch with a single opening that functions in both ingestion and elimination; an alimentary canal is a digestive tube with a separate mouth and anus at opposite ends. **2.** As long as nutrients are within the cavity of the alimentary canal, they are in a compartment that is continuous with the outside environment via the mouth and anus and have not yet crossed a membrane to enter the body. **3.** In both cases, high-energy fuels are consumed, complex molecules are broken down into simpler ones, and waste products are eliminated. In addition, gasoline, like food, is broken down in a specialized compartment, so that surrounding structures are protected from disassembly. Finally, just as food and wastes remain outside the body in a digestive tract, neither gasoline nor its waste products enter the passenger compartment of the automobile.

Concept Check 41.3

1. Because parietal cells in the stomach pump hydrogen ions into the stomach lumen where they combine with chloride ions to form HCl, a proton pump inhibitor reduces the acidity of chyme and thus the irritation that occurs when chyme enters the esophagus. **2.** Bile acids act as emulsifiers, dispersing large fat globules into smaller fat droplets. The lipid-soluble surfaces of the bile acids bind to the fat droplets and the water-soluble surfaces of the bile acids interact with the digestive fluids. As a result, surface tension is reduced and the droplets are stabilized, facilitating enzymatic digestion of fats by lipases. **3.** Proteins would be denatured and digested into peptides. Further digestion, to individual amino acids, would require enzymatic secretions found in the small intestine. No digestion of carbohydrates or lipids would occur.

Concept Check 41.4

1. The increased time for transit through the alimentary canal allows for more extensive processing, and the increased surface area of the canal provides greater opportunity for absorption. **2.** A mammal's digestive system provides mutualistic microorganisms with an environment that is protected against other microorganisms by saliva and gastric juice, that is held at a constant temperature conducive to enzyme action, and that provides a steady source of nutrients. **3.** For the yogurt treatment to be effective, the bacteria from yogurt would have to establish a mutualistic relationship with the small intestine, where disaccharides are broken down and sugars are absorbed. Conditions in the small intestine are likely to be very different from those in a yogurt culture. The bacteria might be killed before they reach the small intestine, or they might not be able to grow there in sufficient numbers to aid in digestion.

Concept Check 41.5

1. Over the long term, the body stores excess calories in fat, whether those calories come from fat, carbohydrate, or protein in food. **2.** In most individuals, leptin levels decline during fasting. Individuals in the group with low levels of leptin are likely to be unable to produce leptin, so leptin levels would remain low regardless of food intake. Individuals in the group with high leptin levels are likely to be unable to respond to leptin, but they still should shut off leptin production as fat stores are used up. **3.** Excess insulin production will cause the blood glucose level to decrease below normal physiological levels. It will also trigger glycogen synthesis in the liver, further decreasing the blood glucose level. However, a low blood glucose level will stimulate the release of glucagon from alpha cells in the pancreas, which will trigger glycogen breakdown. Thus, there will be antagonistic effects in the liver.

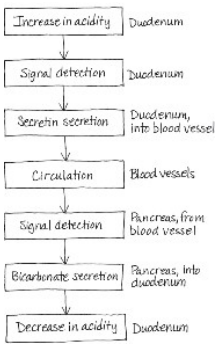
Summary of Key Concepts Questions

41.1 Since the cofactor is necessary in all animals, those animals that do not require it in their diet must be able to synthesize it from other organic molecules. **41.2** A liquid diet containing glucose, amino acids, and other building blocks could be ingested and absorbed without the need for mechanical or chemical digestion. **41.3** The small intestine has a much larger surface area than the stomach. **41.4** The assortment of teeth in our mouth and the short length of our cecum suggest that our ancestors' digestive systems were not specialized for digesting plant material. **41.5** When mealtime arrives, nervous inputs from the brain signal the stomach to prepare to digest food through secretions and churning.

Test Your Understanding

1. B **2.** A **3.** B **4.** B **5.** B **6.** D **7.** B

8.



Chapter 42

Figure Questions

Figure 42.2 Although gas exchange might be improved by a steady, one-way flow of fluid, there would likely be inadequate time for food to be digested and nutrients absorbed if fluid flowed through the cavity in this manner.
Figure 42.5 Two capillary beds. The molecule of carbon dioxide would need to enter a capillary bed in the thumb before returning to the right atrium and ventricle, then travel to the lung and enter a capillary from which it could diffuse into an alveolus and be available to be exhaled. **Figure 42.8** Each feature of the ECG recording, such as the sharp upward spike, occurs once per cardiac cycle. Using the *x*-axis to measure the time in seconds between successive spikes and dividing that number by 60 would yield the heart rate as the number of cycles per minute.
Figure 42.25 The reduction in surface tension results from the presence of surfactant. Therefore, for all the infants who had died of RDS, you would expect the amount of surfactant to be near zero. For infants who had died of other causes, you would expect the amount of surfactant to be near zero for body masses less than 1,200 g but much greater than zero for body masses above 1,200 g.
Figure 42.27 Since exhalation is largely passive, the recoil of the elastic fibers in alveoli helps force air out of the lungs. When alveoli lose their elasticity, as occurs in the disease emphysema, less air is exhaled. Because more air is left in the lungs, less fresh air can be inhaled. With a smaller volume of air exchanged, there is a decrease in the partial pressure gradient that drives gas exchange.
Figure 42.28 Breathing at a rate greater than that needed to meet metabolic demand (hyperventilation) would lower the blood CO_2 level. Sensors in major blood vessels and the medulla would signal the breathing control center to decrease the rate of contraction of the diaphragm and rib muscles, decreasing the breathing rate and restoring normal CO_2 level in the blood and other tissues.
Figure 42.29 The resulting increase in tidal volume would enhance ventilation within the lungs, increasing P_{O_2} and decreasing P_{CO_2} in the alveoli.

Concept Check 42.1

1. In both an open circulatory system and a fountain, fluid is pumped through a tube and then returns to the pump after collecting in a pool. **2.** The ability to shut off blood supply to the lungs when the animal is submerged **3.** The O_2 content would be abnormally low because some oxygen-depleted blood returned to the right atrium from the systemic circuit would mix with the oxygen-rich blood in the left atrium.

Concept Check 42.2

1. The pulmonary veins carry blood that has just passed through capillary beds in the lungs, where it accumulated O_2. The venae cavae carry blood that has just passed through capillary beds in the rest of the body, where it lost O_2 to the tissues. **2.** The delay allows the atria to empty completely, filling ventricles fully before they contract. **3.** The heart, like any other muscle, becomes stronger through regular exercise. You would expect a stronger heart to have a greater stroke volume, which would allow for the decrease in heart rate.

Concept Check 42.3

1. The large total cross-sectional area of the capillaries **2.** An increase in blood pressure and cardiac output combined with the diversion of more blood to the skeletal muscles would increase the capacity for action by increasing the rate of blood circulation and delivering more O_2 and nutrients to the skeletal muscles. **3.** Additional hearts could be used to improve blood return from the legs. However, it might be difficult to coordinate the activity of multiple hearts and to maintain adequate blood flow to hearts far from the gas exchange organs.

Concept Check 42.4

1. An increase in the number of white blood cells (leukocytes) may indicate that the person is combating an infection. **2.** Clotting factors do not initiate clotting but are essential steps in the clotting process. **3.** The chest pain results from inadequate blood flow in coronary arteries. Vasodilation promoted by nitric oxide from nitroglycerin increases blood flow, providing the heart muscle with additional oxygen and thus relieving the pain. **4.** Embryonic stem cells are pluripotent rather than multipotent, meaning they can give rise to many rather than a few different cell types.

Concept Check 42.5

1. Their interior position helps gas exchange tissues stay moist. If the respiratory surfaces of lungs extended into the terrestrial environment, they would quickly dry out, and diffusion of O_2 and CO_2 across these surfaces would stop. **2.** Earthworms need to keep their skin moist for gas exchange, but they need air outside this moist layer. If they stay in their waterlogged tunnels after a heavy rain, they will suffocate because they cannot get as much O_2 from water as from air. **3.** In fish, water passes over the gills in the direction opposite to that of blood flowing through the gill capillaries, maximizing the extraction of oxygen from the water along the length of the exchange surface. Similarly, in the extremities of some vertebrates, blood flows in opposite directions in neighboring veins and arteries; this countercurrent arrangement maximizes the recapture of heat from blood leaving the body core in arteries, which is important for thermoregulation in cold environments.

Concept Check 42.6

1. An increase in blood CO_2 concentration causes an increase in the rate of CO_2 diffusion into the cerebrospinal fluid, where the CO_2 combines with water to form carbonic acid. Dissociation of carbonic acid releases hydrogen ions, decreasing the pH of the cerebrospinal fluid. **2.** Increased heart rate increases the rate at which CO_2-rich blood is delivered to the lungs, where CO_2 is removed. **3.** A hole would allow air to enter the space between the inner and outer layers of the double membrane, resulting in a condition called a pneumothorax. The two layers would no longer stick together, and the lung on the side with the hole would collapse and cease functioning.

Concept Check 42.7

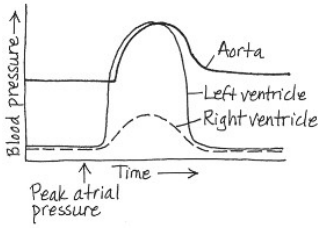
1. Differences in partial pressure between the capillaries and the surrounding tissues or medium; the net diffusion of a gas occurs from a region of higher partial pressure to a region of lower partial pressure. **2.** The Bohr shift causes hemoglobin to release more O_2 at a lower pH, such as is found in the vicinity of tissues with high rates of cellular respiration and CO_2 release. **3.** The doctor is assuming that the rapid breathing is the body's response to low blood pH. Metabolic acidosis, the lowering of blood pH as a result of metabolism, can have many causes, including complications of certain types of diabetes, shock (extremely low blood pressure), and poisoning.

Summary of Key Concepts Questions

42.1 In a closed circulatory system, an ATP-driven muscular pump generally moves fluids in one direction on a scale of millimeters to meters. Exchange between cells and their environment relies on diffusion, which involves random movements of molecules. Concentration gradients of molecules across exchange surfaces can drive rapid net diffusion on a scale of 1 mm or less. **42.2** Replacement of a defective valve should increase stroke volume. A lower heart rate would therefore be sufficient to maintain the same cardiac output. **42.3** Blood pressure in the arm would fall by 25–30 mm Hg, the same difference as is normally seen between your heart and your brain. **42.4** One microliter of blood contains about 5 million erythrocytes and 5,000 leukocytes, so leukocytes make up only about 0.1% of the cells in the absence of infection. **42.5** Because CO_2 is such a small fraction of atmospheric gas (0.29 mm Hg/760 mm Hg, or less than 0.04%), the partial pressure gradient of CO_2 between the respiratory surface and the environment always strongly favors the release of CO_2 to the atmosphere. **42.6** Because the lungs do not empty completely with each breath, incoming and outgoing air mix. Lungs thus contain a mixture of fresh and stale air. **42.7** An enzyme speeds up a reaction without changing the equilibrium and without being consumed. Similarly, a respiratory pigment speeds up the exchange of gases between the body and the external environment without changing the equilibrium state and without being consumed.

Test Your Understanding

1. C **2.** A **3.** D **4.** C **5.** C **6.** A **7.** A
8.



Chapter 43

Figure Questions

Figure 43.3 Dicer-2 binds double-stranded RNA without regard to size or sequence and then cuts that RNA into fragments, each 21 base pairs long. The Argo complex binds to double-stranded RNA fragments that are each 21 base pairs long, displaces one strand, and then uses the remaining strand to match to a particular target sequence in a single-stranded mRNA. **Figure 43.4** Cell-surface TLRs recognize molecules on the surface of pathogens, whereas TLRs in vesicles recognize internal molecules of pathogens after the pathogens are broken down.
Figure 43.5 Because the pain of a splinter stops almost immediately when you remove it from the skin, you can correctly deduce that the signals that mediate the inflammatory response are quite short-lived. **Figure 43.10** Part of the enzyme or antigen receptor provides a structural "backbone" that maintains overall shape, while interaction occurs at a surface with a close fit to the substrate or antigen. The combined effect of multiple noncovalent interactions at the active site or binding site is a high-affinity interaction of tremendous specificity.
Figure 43.14 After gene rearrangement, a lymphocyte and its daughter cells make a single version of the antigen receptor. In contrast, alternative splicing is not heritable and can give rise to diverse gene products in a single cell. **Figure 43.16** A single B cell has more than 100,000 identical antigen receptors on its surface, not four, and there are more than 1 million B cells differing in their antigen specificity, not three. **Figure 43.19** These receptors enable memory cells to present antigen on their cell surface to a helper T cell. This presentation of antigen is required to activate memory cells in a secondary immune response. **Figure 43.23** Primary response: arrows extending from Antigen (1st exposure), Antigen-presenting cell, Helper T cell, B cell, Plasma cells, Cytotoxic T cell, and Active cytotoxic T cells; secondary response: arrows extending from Antigen (2nd exposure), Memory helper T cells, Memory B cells, Memory cytotoxic T cells, Plasma cells, and Active cytotoxic T cells **Figure 43.25** There would be no change in the results. Because the two antigen-binding sites of an antibody have identical specificity, the two bacteriophages bound would have to display the same viral peptide.

Concept Check 43.1

1. Because pus contains white blood cells, fluid, and cell debris, it indicates an active and at least partially successful inflammatory response against invading pathogens. **2.** Whereas the ligand for the TLR receptor is a foreign molecule, the ligand for many signal transduction pathways is a molecule produced by the organism itself. **3.** Mounting an immune response would require recognition of some molecular feature of the wasp egg not found in the host. It might be that only some potential hosts have a receptor with the necessary specificity.

Concept Check 43.2

1. See Figure 43.9. The transmembrane regions lie within the C regions, which also form the disulfide bridges. In contrast, the antigen-binding sites are in the V regions. **2.** Generating memory cells ensures both that a receptor specific for a particular epitope will be present and that there will be more lymphocytes with this specificity than in a host that had never encountered the antigen. **3.** If each B cell produced two different light and heavy chains for its antigen receptor, different combinations would make four different receptors. If any one were self-reactive, the lymphocyte would be eliminated in the generation of self-tolerance. For this reason, many more B cells would be eliminated, and those that could respond to a foreign antigen would be less effective at doing so due to the variety of receptors (and antibodies) they express.

Concept Check 43.3

1. A child lacking a thymus would have no functional T cells. Without helper T cells to help activate B cells, the child would be unable to produce antibodies against extracellular bacteria. Furthermore, without cytotoxic T cells or helper T cells, the child's immune system would be unable to kill virus-infected cells. **2.** Since the antigen-binding site is intact, the antibody fragments could neutralize viruses and opsonize bacteria. **3.** If the handler developed immunity to proteins in the antivenin, another injection could provoke a severe immune response.

Concept Check 43.4

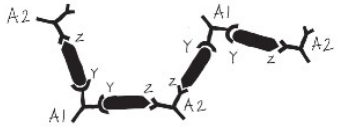
1. Myasthenia gravis is considered an autoimmune disease because the immune system produces antibodies against self molecules (certain receptors on muscle cells). **2.** A person with a cold is likely to produce oral and nasal secretions that facilitate viral transfer. In addition, since sickness can cause incapacitation or death, a virus that is programmed to exit the host when there is a physiological stress has the opportunity to find a new host at a time when the current host may cease to function. **3.** A person with a macrophage deficiency would have frequent infections. The causes would be poor innate responses, due to diminished phagocytosis and inflammation, and poor adaptive responses, due to the lack of macrophages to present antigens to helper T cells.

Summary of Key Concepts Questions

43.1 Lysozyme in saliva destroys bacterial cell walls; the viscosity of mucus helps trap bacteria; acidic pH in the stomach kills many bacteria; and the tight packing of cells lining the gut provides a physical barrier to infection. **43.2** Sufficient numbers of cells to mediate an innate immune response are always present, whereas an adaptive response requires selection and proliferation of an initially very small cell population specific for the infecting pathogen. **43.3** No. Immunological memory after a natural infection and that after vaccination are very similar. There may be minor differences in the particular antigens that can be recognized in a subsequent infection. **43.4** No. AIDS refers to a loss of immune function that can occur over time in an individual infected with HIV. However, certain multidrug combinations ("cocktails") or rare genetic variations usually prevent progression to AIDS in people infected with HIV.

Test Your Understanding

1. B **2.** C **3.** C **4.** B **5.** B **6.** B **7.** C
8. One possible answer:



9. Lamarck's discredited idea was that organisms changed their form to fit challenges and then somehow passed those changes on to their descendants. In clonal selection, heritable differences that give rise to variation arise prior to any challenge. An encounter with a particular antigen results in proliferation of the variants best suited to recognize and respond to that challenge.

Chapter 44

Figure Questions

Figure 44.13 You would expect to find these cells lining tubules where they pass through the renal medulla. Because the extracellular fluid of the renal medulla has a very high osmolarity, production of organic solutes by tubule cells in this region keeps intracellular osmolarity high, with the result that these cells maintain normal volume. **Figure 44.14** Furosemide increases urine volume. The absence of ion transport in the ascending limb leaves the filtrate too concentrated for substantial volume reduction in the distal tubule and collecting duct. **Figure 44.17** When the concentration of an ion differs across a plasma membrane, the difference in the concentration of ions inside and outside represents chemical potential energy, while the resulting difference in charge inside and outside represents electrical potential energy. **Figure 44.20** The ADH levels would likely be elevated in both sets of patients with mutations because either defect prevents the recapture of water that restores blood osmolarity to normal levels. **Figure 44.21** Arrows that would be labeled "secretion" are the arrows indicating secretion of aldosterone, angiotensinogen, and renin.

Concept Check 44.1

1. Because the salt is moved against its concentration gradient, from low concentration (fresh water) to high concentration (blood) **2.** A freshwater osmoconformer would have body fluids too dilute to carry out life's processes. **3.** Without a layer of insulating fur, the camel must use the cooling effect of evaporative water loss to maintain body temperature, thus linking thermoregulation and osmoregulation.

Concept Check 44.2

1. Because uric acid is largely insoluble in water, it can be excreted as a semisolid paste, thereby reducing an animal's water loss. **2.** Humans produce uric acid from purine breakdown, and reducing purines in the diet often lessens the severity of gout. Birds, however, produce uric acid as a waste product of general nitrogen metabolism. They would therefore need a diet low in all nitrogen-containing compounds, not just purines.

Concept Check 44.3

1. In flatworms, ciliated cells draw interstitial fluids containing waste products into protonephridia. In earthworms, waste products pass from interstitial fluids into the coelom. From there, cilia move the wastes into metanephridia via a funnel surrounding an internal opening to the metanephridia. In insects, the Malpighian tubules pump fluids from the hemolymph, which receives waste products during exchange with cells in the course of circulation. **2.** Filtrate is formed when the glomerulus filters blood from the renal artery within Bowman's capsule. Some of the filtrate contents are recovered, enter capillaries, and exit in the renal vein; the rest remain in the filtrate and pass out of the kidney in the ureter. **3.** The presence of Na^+ and other ions (electrolytes) in the dialysate would limit the extent to which they would be removed from the filtrate during dialysis. Adjusting the electrolytes in the starting dialysate can thus lead to the restoration of proper electrolyte concentrations in the plasma. Similarly, the absence of urea and other waste products in the starting dialysate facilitates their removal from the filtrate.

Concept Check 44.4

1. The numerous nephrons and well-developed glomeruli of freshwater fishes produce urine at a high rate, while the small numbers of nephrons and smaller glomeruli of marine fishes produce urine at a low rate. **2.** The kidney medulla would absorb less water; thus, the drug would increase the amount of water lost in the urine. **3.** A decline in blood pressure in the afferent arteriole would reduce the rate of filtration by moving less material through the vessels.

Concept Check 44.5

1. Alcohol inhibits the release of ADH, causing an increase in urinary water loss and increasing the chance of dehydration. **2.** The consumption of a very large amount of water in a short period of time, coupled with an absence of solute intake, can reduce sodium levels in the blood below tolerable levels. This condition, called hyponatremia, leads to disorientation and, sometimes, respiratory distress. It has occurred in some marathon runners who drink water rather than sports drinks. (It has also caused the death of a fraternity pledge as a consequence of a water hazing ritual and the death of a contestant in a water-drinking competition.) **3.** High blood pressure

Summary of Key Concepts Questions

44.1 Water moves into a cell by osmosis when the fluid outside the cells is hypoosmotic (has a lower solute concentration than the cytosol). **44.2** As cofactors for the enzymes that catalyze metabolism, nitrogen-containng molecules such as NAD^+/NADH are "recycled" during cellular respiration. They thus are not broken down and their components are not absorbed or excreted. **44.3** Filtration produces a fluid for exchange processes that is free of cells and large molecules, which are of benefit to the animal and could not readily be reabsorbed. **44.4** Both types of nephrons have proximal tubules that can reabsorb nutrients, but only juxtamedullary nephrons have loops of Henle that extend deep into the renal medulla. Thus, only kidneys containing juxtamedullary nephrons can produce urine that is more concentrated than the blood. **44.5** Patients who don't produce ADH have symptoms relieved by treatment with the hormone, but many patients with diabetes insipidus lack functional receptors for ADH.

Test Your Understanding

1. C **2.** A **3.** C **4.** D **5.** C **6.** B

Chapter 45

Figure Questions

Figure 45.4

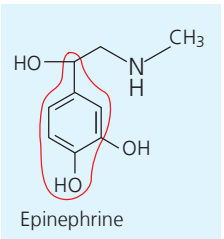


Figure 45.5 The hormone is water-soluble and has a cell-surface receptor. Such receptors, unlike those for lipid-soluble hormones, can cause observable changes in cells without hormone-dependent gene transcription. **Figure 45.6** ATP is enzymatically converted to cAMP. The other steps represent binding reactions. **Figure 45.21** The embryonic gonad can become either a testis or an ovary. In contrast, the ducts either form a particular structure or degenerate, and the bladder forms in both males and females.

Concept Check 45.1

1. Water-soluble hormones, which cannot penetrate the plasma membrane, bind to cell-surface receptors. This interaction triggers an intracellular signal transduction pathway that ultimately alters the activity of a preexisting protein in the cytoplasm and/or changes transcription of specific genes in the nucleus. Steroid hormones are lipid-soluble and can cross the plasma membrane into the cell interior, where they bind to receptors located in the cytosol or nucleus. The hormone-receptor complex then functions directly as a transcription factor that changes transcription of specific genes. **2.** An exocrine gland, because pheromones are not secreted into interstitial fluid but instead are typically released onto a body surface or into the environment **3.** Because receptors for water-soluble hormones are located on the cell surface, facing the extracellular space, injecting the hormone into the cytosol would not trigger a response.

Concept Check 45.2

1. Prolactin regulates milk production, and oxytocin regulates milk release. **2.** The posterior pituitary, an extension of the hypothalamus that contains the axons of neurosecretory cells, is the storage and release site for two neurohormones, oxytocin and antidiuretic hormone (ADH). The anterior pituitary contains endocrine cells that make at least six different hormones. Secretion of anterior pituitary hormones is controlled by hypothalamic hormones that travel via blood vessels to the anterior pituitary. **3.** The hypothalamus and pituitary glands function in many different endocrine pathways. Many defects in these glands, such as those affecting growth or organization, would therefore disrupt many hormone pathways. Only a very specific defect, such as a mutation affecting a particular hormone receptor, would alter just one endocrine pathway. The situation is quite different for the final gland in a pathway, such as the thyroid gland. In this case, a wide range of defects that disrupt gland function would disrupt only the one pathway or small set of pathways in which that gland functions. **4.** Both diagnoses could be correct. In one case, the thyroid gland may produce excess thyroid hormone despite normal hormonal input from the hypothalamus and anterior pituitary. In the other, abnormally elevated hormonal input (an elevated TSH level) may be the cause of the overactive thyroid gland.

Concept Check 45.3

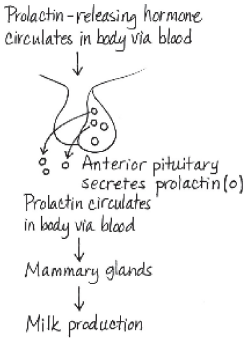
1. If the function of the pathway is to provide a transient response, a short-lived stimulus would be less dependent on negative feedback. **2.** You would be exploiting the anti-inflammatory activity of glucocorticoids. Local injection avoids the effects on glucose metabolism that would occur if glucocorticoids were taken orally and transported throughout the body in the bloodstream. **3.** Both hormones produce opposite effects in different target tissues. In the fight-or-flight response, epinephrine increases blood flow to skeletal muscles and reduces blood flow to smooth muscles in the digestive system. In establishing apical dominance, auxin promotes the growth of apical buds and inhibits the growth of lateral buds.

Summary of Key Concepts Questions

45.1 As shown in Figure 43.18, helper T cell activation by cytokines acting as local regulators involves both autocrine and paracrine signaling. **45.2** The pancreas, parathyroid glands, and pineal gland **45.3** Both the pituitary and the adrenal glands are formed by fusion of neural and nonneural tissue. ADH is secreted by the neurosecretory portion of the pituitary gland, and epinephrine is secreted by the neurosecretory portion of the adrenal gland.

Test Your Understanding

1. C **2.** D **3.** D **4.** A **5.** B **6.** B **7.** A
8.



Chapter 46

Figure Questions

Figure 46.7 Newly formed sperm enter the seminal vesicle from the testis and exit via the ejaculatory duct during intercourse. Sperm enter the spermatheca after intercourse and, after storage, are released into the oviduct to fertilize an egg moving into the uterus. **Figure 46.8** When successfully courted by a second male, regardless of his genotype, about one-third of the females rid themselves of all sperm from the first mating. Thus, two-thirds retained some sperm from the first mating. We would therefore predict that two-thirds of those females would have some offspring exhibiting the small-eye phenotype of the dominant mutation carried by the males with which the females mated first. **Figure 46.11** The analysis would be informative because the polar bodies contain all of the maternal chromosomes that don't end up in the mature egg. For example, finding two copies of the disease gene in the polar bodies would indicate its absence in the egg. This method of genetic testing is sometimes carried out when oocytes collected from a female are fertilized with sperm in a laboratory dish. **Figure 46.15** The embryo normally implants about a week after conception, but it spends several days in the uterus before implanting, receiving nutrients from the endometrium. Therefore, the fertilized egg should be cultured for several days in liquid that is at normal body temperature and contains the same nutrients as those provided by the endometrium before implantation. **Figure 46.16** Testosterone can pass from fetal blood to maternal blood via the placental circulation, temporarily upsetting the hormonal balance in the mother. **Figure 46.18** Oxytocin would most likely induce labor, starting a positive-feedback loop that would direct labor to completion. Synthetic oxytocin is in fact frequently used to induce labor when prolonged pregnancy might endanger the mother or fetus.

Concept Check 46.1

1. The offspring of sexual reproduction are more genetically diverse. However, asexual reproduction can produce more offspring over multiple generations. **2.** Unlike other forms of asexual reproduction, parthenogenesis involves gamete production. By controlling whether or not haploid eggs are fertilized, species such as honeybees can readily switch between asexual and sexual reproduction. **3.** No. Owing to random assortment of chromosomes during meiosis, the offspring may receive the same copy or different copies of a particular parental chromosome from the sperm and the egg. Furthermore, genetic recombination during meiosis will result in reassortment of genes between pairs of parental chromosomes. **4.** Fragmentation occurs in both plants and animals. Also, budding in animals and the growth of adventitious plant roots both involve emergence of new individuals from outgrowths of the parent.

Concept Check 46.2

1. Internal fertilization allows sperm to reach the egg without either gamete drying out. **2.** (a) Animals with external fertilization tend to release many gametes at once, resulting in the production of enormous numbers of zygotes. This increases the chances that some will survive to adulthood. (b) Animals with internal fertilization produce fewer offspring but generally exhibit greater care of the embryos and the young. **3.** Like the uterus of an insect, the ovary of a plant is the site of fertilization. Unlike the plant ovary, the uterus is not the site of egg production, which occurs in the insect ovary. In addition, the fertilized insect egg is expelled from the uterus, whereas the plant embryo develops within a seed in the ovary.

Concept Check 46.3

1. Spermatogenesis occurs normally only when the testicles are cooler than normal body temperature. Extensive use of a hot tub (or of very tight-fitting underwear) can cause a decrease in sperm quality and number. **2.** In humans, the secondary oocyte combines with a sperm before it finishes the second meiotic division. Thus, oogenesis is completed after, not before, fertilization. **3.** The only effect of sealing off each vas deferens is an absence of sperm in the ejaculate. Sexual response and ejaculate volume are unchanged. The cutting and sealing off of these ducts, a *vasectomy*, is a common surgical procedure for men who do not wish to produce any (more) offspring.

Concept Check 46.4

1. In the testis, FSH stimulates the Sertoli cells, which nourish developing sperm. LH stimulates the production of androgens (mainly testosterone), which in turn stimulate sperm production. In both females and males, FSH encourages the growth of cells that support and nourish developing gametes (follicle cells in females and Sertoli cells in males), and LH stimulates the production of sex hormones that promote gametogenesis (estrogens, primarily estradiol, in females and androgens, especially testosterone, in males). **2.** In estrous cycles, which occur in most female mammals, the endometrium is reabsorbed (rather than shed) if fertilization does not occur. Estrous cycles often occur just once or a few times a year, and the female is usually receptive to copulation only during the period around ovulation. Menstrual cycles are found only in humans and some other primates. They control the buildup and breakdown of the uterine lining, but not sexual receptivity. **3.** The combination of estradiol and progesterone would have a negative-feedback effect on the hypothalamus, blocking release of GnRH. This would interfere with LH secretion by the pituitary, thus preventing ovulation. This is in fact one basis of action of the most common hormonal contraceptives. **4.** In the viral replicative cycle, the production of new viral genomes is coordinated with capsid protein expression and with the production of phospholipids for viral coats. In the reproductive cycle of a human female, there is hormonally based coordination of egg maturation with the development of support tissues of the uterus.

Concept Check 46.5

1. The secretion of hCG by the early embryo stimulates the corpus luteum to make progesterone, which helps maintain the pregnancy. During the second trimester, however, hCG production drops, the corpus luteum disintegrates, and the placenta completely takes over progesterone production. **2.** Both tubal ligation and vasectomy block the movement of gametes from the gonads to a site where fertilization could take place. **3.** The introduction of a sperm nucleus directly into an oocyte bypasses the sperm's acquisition of motility in the epididymis, its swimming to meet the egg in the oviduct, and its fusion with the egg.

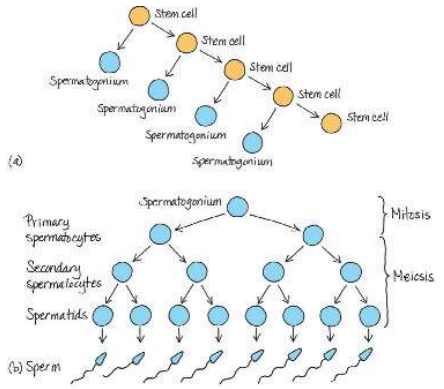
Summary of Key Concepts Questions

46.1 No. Because parthenogenesis involves meiosis, the mother would pass on to each offspring a random and therefore typically distinct combination of the chromosomes she inherited from her mother and father. **46.2** None **46.3** The

small size and lack of cytoplasm characteristic of a sperm are adaptations well suited to its function as a delivery vehicle for DNA. The large size and rich cytoplasmic contents of eggs support the growth and development of the embryo. **46.4** Circulating anabolic steroids mimic the feedback regulation of testosterone, turning off pituitary signaling to the testes and thereby blocking the release of signals required for spermatogenesis. **46.5** Oxygen in maternal blood diffuses from pools in the endometrium into fetal capillaries in the chorionic villi of the placenta and from there travels throughout the circulatory system of the fetus.

Test Your Understanding

1. D **2.** B **3.** B **4.** C **5.** A **6.** B **7.** C **8.** C
9.

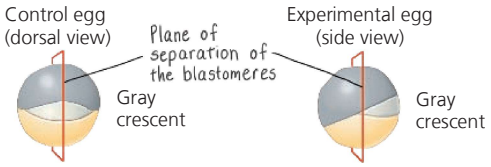


(c) The supply of stem cells would be used up, and spermatogenesis would not be able to continue.

Chapter 47

Figure Questions

Figure 47.3 You could inject the compound into an unfertilized egg, expose the egg to sperm, and see whether the fertilization envelope forms.
Figure 47.6 There would be fewer cells, and they would be closer together.
Figure 47.8 (1) The blastocoel forms a single compartment that surrounds the gut, much like a doughnut surrounds a hole. (2) Ectoderm forms the outer covering of the animal, and endoderm lines the internal organs, such as the digestive tract. Mesoderm fills much of the space between these two layers.
Figure 47.19 Eight cell divisions are required to give rise to the intestinal cell closest to the mouth. **Figure 47.22** When the researchers allowed normal cortical rotation to occur, the "back-forming" determinants were activated. When they then forced the opposite rotation to occur, the back was established on the opposite side as well. Because the molecules on the normal side were already activated, forcing the opposite rotation apparently did not "cancel out" the establishment of the back side by the first rotation.
Figure 47.23 Draw It



What If? In Spemann's control, the two blastomeres were physically separated, and each grew into a whole embryo. In Roux's experiment, remnants of the dead blastomere were still contacting the live blastomere, which developed into a half-embryo. Therefore, molecules present in the dead cell's remnants may have been signaling to the live cell, inhibiting it from making all the embryonic structures.
Figure 47.24 You could inject the isolated protein (or an mRNA encoding it) into ventral cells of an earlier gastrula. If dorsal structures form on the ventral side, that would support the idea that the protein is the signaling molecule secreted or presented by the dorsal lip. You should also do a control experiment to make sure the injection process alone did not cause dorsal structures to form. **Figure 47.26** Either Sonic hedgehog mRNA or protein can serve as a marker of the zone of polarizing activity (ZPA). The absence of either one after removal of the apical ectodermal ridge would support your hypothesis. You could also block fibroblast growth factor function and see whether the ZPA formed (by looking for Sonic hedgehog).

Concept Check 47.1

1. The fertilization envelope forms after cortical granules release their contents outside the egg, causing the vitelline membrane to rise and harden. The fertilization envelope serves as a barrier to fertilization by more than one sperm. **2.** The increased Ca^{2+} concentration in the egg would cause the cortical granules to fuse with the plasma membrane, releasing their contents and causing a fertilization envelope to form, even though no sperm had entered. This would prevent fertilization. **3.** You would expect it to fluctuate. The fluctuation of MPF drives the transition between DNA replication (S phase) and mitosis (M phase), which is still required in the abbreviated cleavage cell cycle.

Concept Check 47.2

1. The cells of the notochord migrate toward the midline of the embryo (converge), rearranging themselves so there are fewer cells across the notochord, which thus becomes longer overall (extends; see Figure 47.17). **2.** Because microfilaments would not be able to contract and decrease the size of one end of the cell, both the inward bending in the middle of the neural tube and the outward bending of the hinge regions at the edges would be blocked. Therefore, the neural tube probably would not form. **3.** Dietary intake of the vitamin folic acid dramatically reduces the frequency of neural tube defects.

Concept Check 47.3

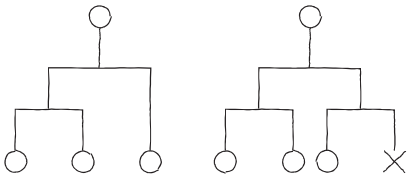
1. Axis formation establishes the location and polarity of the three axes that provide the coordinates for development. Pattern formation positions particular tissues and organs in the three-dimensional space defined by those coordinates. **2.** Morphogen gradients act by specifying cell fates across a field of cells through variation in the level of a determinant. Morphogen gradients thus act more globally than cytoplasmic determinants or inductive interactions between pairs of cells. **3.** Yes, a second embryo could develop because inhibiting BMP-4 activity would have the same effect as transplanting an organizer. **4.** The limb that developed probably would have a mirror-image duplication, with the most posterior digits in the middle and the most anterior digits at either end.

Summary of Key Concepts Questions

47.1 The binding of a sperm to a receptor on the egg surface is very specific and likely would not occur if the two gametes were from different species. Without sperm binding, the sperm and egg membranes would not fuse. **47.2** Apoptosis functions to eliminate structures required only in an immature form, nonfunctional cells from a pool larger than the number required, and tissues formed by a developmental program that is not adaptive for the organism as it has evolved. **47.3** Mutations that affected both limb and kidney development would be more likely to alter the function of monocilia because these organelles are important in several signaling pathways. Mutations that affected limb development but not kidney development would more likely alter a single pathway, such as Hedgehog signaling.

Test Your Understanding

1. A **2.** B **3.** D **4.** A **5.** D **6.** C **7.** B
8.



Chapter 48

Figure Questions

Figure 48.7 Potassium and sodium channels must differ in the structure of the channel through which the ions pass. The channel could differ in the size of the opening, the distribution of charge, or other properties that would allow one type of ion but not others to diffuse through the channel. **Figure 48.8** Adding chloride channels would make the membrane potential less positive. Adding potassium channels would have no effect because there are no potassium ions present. **Figure 48.10** In the absence of other forces, chemical concentration gradients govern net diffusion. In this case, ions are more concentrated outside of the cell and move in when the channel opens.
Figure 48.11

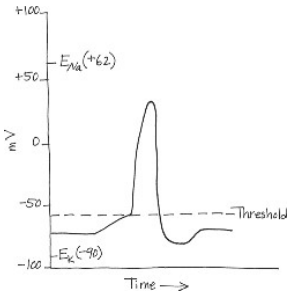


Figure 48.12

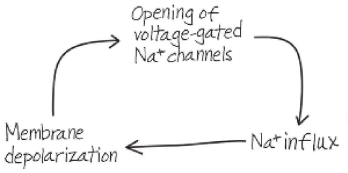


Figure 48.13

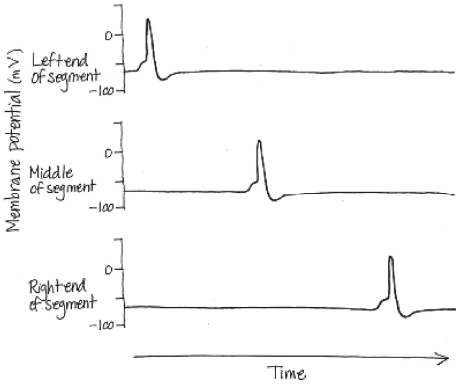


Figure 48.16 The production and transmission of action potentials would be unaffected. However, action potentials arriving at chemical synapses would be unable to trigger release of neurotransmitter. Signaling at such synapses would thus be blocked. **Figure 48.17** Summation only occurs if inputs occur simultaneously or nearly so. Thus, spatial summation, in which input is received from two different sources, is in effect also temporal summation.

Concept Check 48.1

1. A typical neuron has multiple dendrites and one axon. Dendrites transfer information to the cell body, whereas axons transmit information from the cell body. Both axons and dendrites extend from the cell body and function in information flow. **2.** Sensors in your ear transmit information to your brain. There, the activity of interneurons in processing centers enables you to recognize your name. In response, signals transmitted via motor neurons cause contraction of muscles that turn your neck. **3.** Increased branching would allow control of a greater number of postsynaptic cells, enhancing coordination of responses to nervous system signals.

Concept Check 48.2

1. Ions can flow against a chemical concentration gradient if there is an opposing electrical gradient of greater magnitude. **2.** A decrease in permeability to K^+, an increase in permeability to Na^+, or both **3.** Charged dye molecules could equilibrate only if other charged molecules could also cross the membrane. If not, a membrane potential would develop that would counterbalance the chemical gradient.

Concept Check 48.3

1. A graded potential has a magnitude that varies with stimulus strength, whereas an action potential has an all-or-none magnitude that is independent of stimulus strength. **2.** Loss of the insulation provided by myelin sheaths leads to a disruption of action potential propagation along axons. Voltage-gated sodium channels are restricted to the nodes of Ranvier, and without the insulating effect of myelin, the inward current produced at one node during an action potential cannot depolarize the membrane to the threshold at the next node. **3.** Positive feedback is responsible for the rapid opening of many voltage-gated sodium channels, causing the rapid outflow of sodium ions responsible for the rising phase of the action potential. As the membrane potential becomes positive, voltage-gated potassium channels open in a form of negative feedback that helps bring about the falling phase of the action potential. **4.** The maximum frequency would decrease because the refractory period would be extended.

Concept Check 48.4

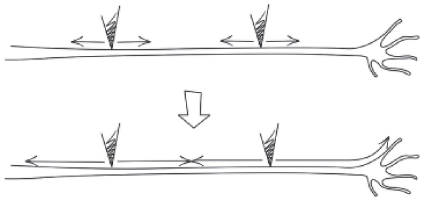
1. It can bind to different types of receptors, each triggering a specific response in postsynaptic cells. **2.** These toxins would prolong the EPSPs that acetylcholine produces because the neurotransmitter would remain longer in the synaptic cleft. **3.** Membrane depolarization, exocytosis, and membrane fusion each occur in fertilization and in neurotransmission.

Summary of Key Concepts Questions

48.1 It would prevent information from being transmitted away from the cell body along the axon. **48.2** There are very few open sodium channels in a resting neuron, so the resting potential either would not change or would become slightly more negative (hyperpolarization). **48.4** A given neurotransmitter can have many receptors that differ in their location and activity. Drugs that target receptor activity rather than neurotransmitter release or stability are therefore likely to exhibit greater specificity and potentially have fewer undesirable side effects.

Test Your Understanding

1. C **2.** C **3.** C **4.** B **5.** A **6.** D
7. The activity of the sodium-potassium pump is essential to maintain the resting potential. With the pump inactivated, the sodium and potassium concentration gradients would gradually disappear, resulting in a greatly reduced resting potential. **8.** Since GABA is an inhibitory neurotransmitter in the CNS, this drug would be expected to decrease brain activity. A decrease in brain activity might be expected to slow down or reduce behavioral activity. Many sedative drugs act in this fashion. **9.** As shown in this pair of drawings, a pair of action potentials would move outward in both directions from each electrode. (Action potentials are unidirectional only if they begin at one end of an axon.) However, because of the refractory period, the two action potentials between the electrodes both stop where they meet. Thus, only one action potential reaches the synaptic terminals.



Chapter 49

Figure Questions

Figure 49.5 During swallowing, muscles along the esophagus alternately contract and relax, resulting in peristalsis. One model to explain this alternation is that each section of muscle receives nerve impulses that alternate between excitation and inhibition, just as the quadriceps and hamstring receive opposing signals in the knee-jerk reflex. **Figure 49.15** The gray areas have a different shape and pattern, indicating different planes through the brain. This fact indicates that the nucleus accumbens and the amygdala are in different planes. **Figure 49.17** The hand is shown larger than the forearm because the hand receives more innervation than the forearm for sensory input to the brain and motor output from the brain. **Figure 49.24** If the depolarization brings the membrane potential to or past threshold, it should initiate action potentials that cause dopamine release from the VTA neurons. This should mimic natural stimulation of the brain reward system, resulting in positive and perhaps pleasurable sensations.

Concept Check 49.1

1. The sympathetic division would likely be activated. It mediates the "fight-or-flight" response in stressful situations. **2.** Nerves contain bundles of axons, some that belong to motor neurons, which send signals outward from the CNS, and some that belong to sensory neurons, which bring signals into the CNS. Therefore, you would expect effects on both motor control and sensation. **3.** Neurosecretory cells of the adrenal medulla secrete the hormones epinephrine and norepinephrine in response to preganglionic input from sympathetic neurons. These hormones travel in the circulation throughout the body, triggering responses in many tissues.

Concept Check 49.2

1. The cerebral cortex on the left side of the brain initiates voluntary movement of the right side of the body. **2.** Alcohol diminishes function of the cerebellum. **3.** A coma reflects a disruption in the cycles of sleep and arousal regulated by communication between the midbrain and pons (reticular formation) and the cerebrum. You would expect this group to have damage to the midbrain, the pons, the cerebrum, or any part of the brain between these structures. Paralysis reflects an inability to carry out motor commands transmitted from the cerebrum to the spinal cord. You would expect this group to have damage to the portion of the CNS extending from the spinal cord up to but not including the midbrain and pons.

Concept Check 49.3

1. Brain damage that disrupts behavior, cognition, memory, or other functions provides evidence that the portion of the brain affected by the damage is important for the normal activity that is blocked or altered. **2.** Broca's area, which is active during the generation of speech, is located near the motor cortex, which controls skeletal muscles, including those in the face. Wernicke's area, which is active when speech is heard, is located in the posterior part of the temporal lobe, which is involved in hearing. **3.** Each cerebral hemisphere is specialized for different parts of this task—the right for face recognition and the left for language. Without an intact corpus callosum, neither hemisphere can take advantage of the other's processing abilities.

Concept Check 49.4

1. There can be an increase in the number of synapses between the neurons or an increase in the strength of existing synaptic connections. **2.** If consciousness is an emergent property resulting from the interaction of many different regions of the brain, then it is unlikely that localized brain damage will have a discrete effect on consciousness. **3.** The hippocampus is responsible for organizing newly acquired information. Without hippocampal function, the links necessary to retrieve information from the cerebral cortex will be lacking, and no functional memory, short- or long-term, will be formed.

Concept Check 49.5

1. Both are progressive brain diseases whose risk increases with advancing age. Both result from the death of brain neurons and are associated with the accumulation of peptide or protein aggregates. **2.** The symptoms of schizophrenia can be mimicked by a drug that stimulates dopamine-releasing neurons. The brain's reward system, which is involved in drug addiction, is composed of dopamine-releasing neurons that connect the ventral tegmental area to regions in the cerebrum. Parkinson's disease results from the death of dopamine-releasing neurons. **3.** Not

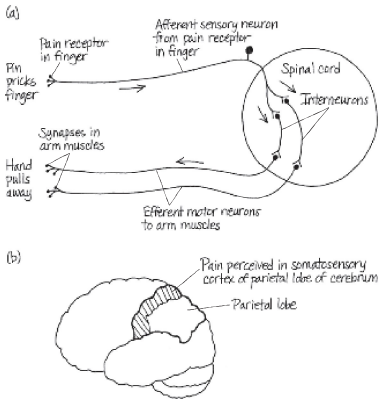
necessarily. It might be that the plaques, tangles, and missing regions of the brain seen at death reflect secondary effects, the consequence of other unseen changes that are actually responsible for the alterations in brain function.

Summary of Key Concepts Questions

49.1 Because reflex circuits involve only a few neurons—the simplest consist of a sensory neuron and a motor neuron—the path for information transfer is short and simple, increasing the speed of the response. **49.2** The midbrain coordinates visual reflexes; the cerebellum controls coordination of movement that depends on visual input; the thalamus serves as a routing center for visual information; and the cerebrum is essential for converting visual input to a visual image. **49.3** You would expect the right side of the body to be paralyzed because it is controlled by the left cerebral hemisphere, where language generation and interpretation are localized. **49.4** Learning a new language likely requires the maintenance of synapses that are formed during early development but are otherwise lost prior to adulthood. **49.5** Whereas amphetamine stimulates dopamine release, PCP blocks glutamate receptors, suggesting that schizophrenia does not reflect a defect in the function of just one neurotransmitter.

Test Your Understanding

1. B **2.** A **3.** D **4.** D **5.** C **6.** A
7.



Chapter 50

Figure Questions

Figure 50.17

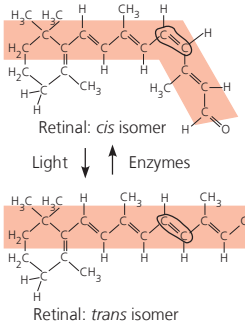


Figure 50.19 Each of the three types of cones is most sensitive to a different wavelength of light. A cone might be fully depolarized when there is light present if the light is of a wavelength far from its optimum. **Figure 50.21** In humans, an X chromosome with a defect in the red or green opsin gene is much less common than a wild-type X chromosome. Color blindness therefore typically skips a generation as the defective allele passes from an affected male to a carrier daughter and back to an affected grandson. In squirrel monkeys, no X chromosome can confer full color vision. As a result, all males are color-blind and no unusual inheritance pattern is observed. **Figure 50.23** The results of the experiment would have been identical. What matters is the activation of particular sets of neurons, not the manner in which they are activated. Any signal from a bitter cell will be interpreted by the brain as a bitter taste, regardless of the nature of the compound and the receptor involved. **Figure 50.25** Only perception. Binding of an odorant to its receptor will cause action potentials to be sent to the brain. Although an excess of that odorant might cause a diminished response through adaptation, another odorant can mask the first only at the level of perception in the brain. **Figure 50.26** Both. A muscle fiber contains many myofibrils bundled together and divided lengthwise into many sarcomeres. A sarcomere is a contractile unit made up of portions of many myofibrils, and each myofibril is a part of many sarcomeres. **Figure 50.28** Hundreds of myosin heads participate in sliding each pair of thick and thin filaments past each other. Because cross-bridge formation and breakdown are not synchronized, many myosin heads are exerting force on the thin filaments at all times during muscle contraction. **Figure 50.33** By causing all of the motor neurons that control the muscle to generate action potentials at a rate high enough to produce tetanus in all of the muscle fibers

Concept Check 50.1

1. Electromagnetic receptors in general detect only external stimuli. Nonelectromagnetic receptors, such as chemoreceptors or mechanoreceptors, can act as either internal or external sensors. **2.** The capsaicin present in the peppers activates the thermoreceptor for high temperatures. In response to the perceived high temperature, the nervous system triggers sweating to achieve evaporative cooling. **3.** You would perceive the electrical stimulus as if the sensory receptors that regulate that neuron had been activated. For example, electrical stimulation of the sensory neuron controlled by the thermoreceptor activated by menthol would likely be perceived as a local cooling.

Concept Check 50.2

1. Otoliths detect the animal's orientation with respect to gravity, providing information that is essential in environments such as the tunnel habitat of the star-nosed mole, where light cues are absent. **2.** As a sound that changes gradually from a very low to a very high pitch **3.** The stapes and the other middle ear bones transmit vibrations from the tympanic membrane to the oval window. Fusion of these bones (as occurs in a disease called otosclerosis) would block this transmission and result in hearing loss. **4.** In animals, the statoliths are extracellular. In contrast, the statoliths of plants are found within an intracellular organelle. The methods for detecting their location also differ. In animals, detection is by means of mechanoreceptors on ciliated cells. In plants, the mechanism appears to involve calcium signaling.

Concept Check 50.3

1. Planarians have ocelli that cannot form images but can sense the intensity and direction of light, providing enough information to enable the animals to find protection in shaded places. Flies have compound eyes that form images and excel at detecting movement. **2.** The person can focus on distant objects but not close objects (without glasses) because close focusing requires the lens to become almost spherical. This problem is common after age 50. **3.** The signal produced by rod and cone cells is glutamate, and their release of glutamate decreases upon exposure to light. However, a decrease in glutamate production causes other retinal cells to increase the rate at which action potentials are sent to the brain, so that the brain receives more action potentials in light than in dark. **4.** Absorption of light by retinal converts retinal from its *cis* isomer to its *trans* isomer, initiating the process of light detection. In contrast, a photon absorbed by chlorophyll does not bring about isomerization, but instead boosts an electron to a higher energy orbital, initiating the electron flow that generates ATP and NADPH.

Concept Check 50.4

1. Both taste cells and olfactory cells have receptor proteins in their plasma membrane that bind certain substances, leading to membrane depolarization through a signal transduction pathway involving a G protein. However, olfactory cells are sensory neurons, whereas taste cells are not. **2.** Since animals rely on chemical signals for behaviors that include finding mates, marking territories, and avoiding dangerous substances, it is adaptive for the olfactory system to have a robust response to a very small number of molecules of a particular odorant. **3.** Because the sweet, bitter, and umami tastes involve GPCR proteins but the sour taste does not, you might predict that the mutation is in a molecule that acts in the signal transduction pathway common to the different GPCRs.

Concept Check 50.5

1. In a skeletal muscle fiber, Ca^{2+} binds to the troponin complex, which moves tropomyosin away from the myosin-binding sites on actin and allows cross-bridges to form. In a smooth muscle cell, Ca^{2+} binds to calmodulin, which activates an enzyme that phosphorylates the myosin head and thus enables cross-bridge formation. **2.** *Rigor mortis*, a Latin phrase meaning "stiffness of death," results from the complete depletion of ATP in skeletal muscle. Since ATP is required to release myosin from actin and to pump Ca^{2+} out of the cytosol, muscles become chronically contracted beginning about 3–4 hours after death. **3.** A competitive inhibitor binds to the same site as the substrate for the enzyme. In contrast, the troponin and tropomyosin complex masks, but does not bind to, the myosin-binding sites on actin.

Concept Check 50.6

1. The main problem in swimming is drag; a fusiform body minimizes drag. The main problem in flying is overcoming gravity; wings shaped like airfoils provide lift, and adaptations such as air-filled bones reduce body mass. **2.** In modeling peristalsis you would constrict the toothpaste tube at different points along its length, using your hand to encircle the tube and squeeze concentrically. To demonstrate movement of food through the digestive tract you would want the cap off the toothpaste tube, whereas you would want the cap on to show how peristalsis contributes to worm locomotion. **3.** When you grasp the sides of the chair, you are using a contraction of the triceps to keep your arms extended against the pull of gravity on your body. As you lower yourself slowly into the chair, you gradually decrease the number of motor units in the triceps that are contracted. Contracting your biceps would jerk you down, since you would no longer be opposing gravity.

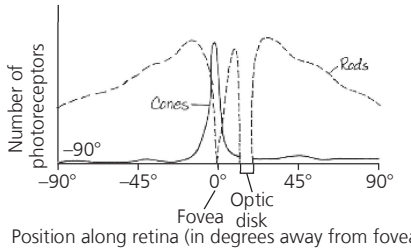
Summary of Key Concepts Questions

50.1 Nociceptors overlap with other classes of receptors in the type of stimulus they detect. They differ from other receptors only in how a particular stimulus is perceived. **50.2** Volume is encoded by the frequency of action potentials transmitted to the brain; pitch is encoded by which axons are transmitting action potentials. **50.3** The major difference is that neurons in the retina integrate information from multiple sensory receptors (photoreceptors) before transmitting information to the central nervous system. **50.4** Our olfactory sense is responsible for most of what we describe as distinct tastes. A head cold or other source of congestion blocks odorant access to receptors lining portions of the nasal cavity. **50.5** Hydrolysis of ATP is required to convert myosin to a high-energy configuration for binding to actin and to power the Ca^{2+} pump that removes cytosolic Ca^{2+} during muscle relaxation. **50.6** Human body movements rely on the contraction of muscles anchored to a rigid endoskeleton. Tendons attach muscles to

bones, which in turn are composed of fibers built up from a basic organizational unit, the sarcomere. The thin and thick filaments have separate points of attachment within the sarcomere. In response to nervous system motor output, the formation and breakdown of cross-bridges between myosin heads and actin ratchet the thin and thick filaments past each other. Because the filaments are anchored, this sliding movement shortens the muscle fibers. Furthermore, because the fibers themselves are part of the muscles attached at each end to bones, muscle contraction moves bones of the body relative to each other. In this way, the structural anchoring of muscles and filaments enables muscle function, such as the bending of an elbow by contraction of the biceps.

Test Your Understanding

1. C **2.** A **3.** B **4.** C **5.** B **6.** D
7.



The answer shows the actual distribution of rods and cones in the human eye. Your graph may differ, but should have the following properties: only cones at the fovea; fewer cones and more rods at both ends of the *x*-axis; no photoreceptors in the optic disk.

Chapter 51

Figure Questions

Figure 51.2 The fixed action pattern based on the sign stimulus of a red belly ensures that the male will chase away any invading males of his species. By chasing away such males, the defender decreases the chance that another male will fertilize eggs laid in his nesting territory. **Figure 51.5** The straight-run portion conveys two pieces of information: direction, via the angle of that run relative to the wall of the hive, and distance, via the number of waggles performed during the straight run. At a minimum, the portions between the straight runs identify the activity as a waggle dance. Since they also provide contact with workers to one side and then the other, they may ensure transmission of information to a larger number of other bees. **Figure 51.7** There should be no effect. Imprinting is an innate behavior that is carried out anew in each generation. Assuming the nest was not disturbed, the offspring of the geese imprinted on a human would imprint on the mother goose. **Figure 51.8** Perhaps the wasp doesn't use visual cues. It might also be that wasps recognize objects native to their environment, but not foreign objects, such as the pinecones. Tinbergen addressed these ideas before carrying out the pinecone study. When he swept away the pebbles and sticks around the nest, the wasps could no longer find their nests. If he shifted the natural objects in their natural arrangement, the shift in the landmarks caused a shift in the site to which the wasps returned. Finally, if natural objects around the nest site were replaced with pinecones while the wasp was in the burrow, the wasp nevertheless found her way back to the nest site. **Figure 51.10** Switching the orientations of all three grids would control for an inherent preference for or against a particular orientation. If there were no inherent preference or bias, the experiment should work equally well after the switch. **Figure 51.24** It might be that the birds require stimuli during flight to exhibit their migratory preference. If this were true, the birds would show the same orientation in the funnel experiment despite their distinct genetic programming. **Figure 51.26** It holds true for some, but not all individuals. If a parent has more than one reproductive partner, the offspring of different partners will have a coefficient of relatedness less than 0.5.

Concept Check 51.1

1. The proximate explanation for this fixed action pattern might be that nudging and rolling are released by the sign stimulus of an object outside the nest, and the behavior is carried to completion once initiated. The ultimate explanation might be that ensuring that eggs remain in the nest increases the chance of producing healthy offspring. **2.** There might be selective pressure for other prey fish to detect an injured fish because the source of the injury might threaten them as well. Among predators, there might be selection for those that are attracted to the alarm substance because they would be more likely to encounter crippled prey. Fish with adequate defenses might show no change because they have a selective advantage if they do not waste energy responding to the alarm substance. **3.** In both cases, the detection of periodic variation in the environment results in a reproductive cycle timed to environmental conditions that optimize the opportunity for success.

Concept Check 51.2

1. Natural selection would tend to favor convergence in color pattern because a predator learning to associate a pattern with a sting or bad taste would avoid all other individuals with that same color pattern, regardless of species. **2.** You might move objects around to establish an abstract rule, such as "past landmark A, the same distance as A is from the starting point," while maintaining a minimum of fixed metric relationships, that is, avoiding having the food directly adjacent to or a set distance from a landmark. As you might surmise, designing an informative experiment of this kind is not easy. **3.** Learned behavior, just like innate behavior, can contribute to reproductive isolation and thus to speciation. For example, learned bird songs contribute to species recognition during courtship, thereby helping ensure that only members of the same species mate.

Concept Check 51.3

1. Certainty of paternity is higher with external fertilization. **2.** Balancing selection could maintain the two alleles at the *forager* locus if population density fluctuated from one generation to another. At times of low population density, the energy-conserving sitter larvae (carrying the for^S allele) would be favored, while at higher population density, the more mobile Rover larvae (for^R allele) would have a selective advantage. **3.** Because females would now be present in much larger numbers than males, all three types of males should have some reproductive success. Nevertheless, since the advantage that the blue-throats rely on—a limited number of females in their territory—will be absent, the yellow-throats are likely to increase in frequency in the short term.

Concept Check 51.4

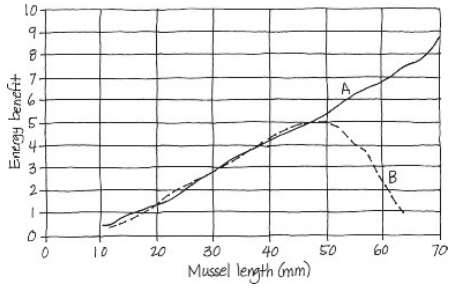
1. Because this geographic variation corresponds to differences in prey availability between two garter snake habitats, it seems likely that snakes with characteristics enabling them to feed on the abundant prey in their locale would have had increased survival and reproductive success. In this way, natural selection would have resulted in the divergent foraging behaviors. **2.** The fact that the individual shares some genes with the offspring of its sibling (in the case of humans, with the individual's niece or nephew) means that the reproductive success of that niece or nephew increases the representation of those genes in the population (selects for them). **3.** The older individual cannot be the beneficiary because he or she cannot have extra offspring. However, the cost is low for an older individual performing the altruistic act because that individual has already reproduced (but perhaps is still caring for a child or grandchild). There can therefore be selection for an altruistic act by a postreproductive individual that benefits a young relative.

Summary of Key Concepts Questions

51.1 Circannual rhythms are typically based on the cycles of light and dark in the environment. As the global climate changes, animals that migrate in response to these rhythms may shift to a location before or after local environmental conditions are optimal for reproduction and survival. **51.2** For the goose, all that is acquired is an object at which the behavior is directed. In the case of the sparrow, learning takes place that will give shape to the behavior itself. **51.3** Because feeding the female is likely to improve her reproductive success, the genes from the sacrificed male are likely to appear in a greater number of progeny. **51.4** Studying the genetic basis of these behaviors reveals that changes in a single gene can have large-scale effects on even complex behaviors.

Test Your Understanding

1. C **2.** B **3.** B **4.** A **5.** C **6.** A
7.



You could measure the size of mussels that oystercatchers successfully open and compare that with the size distribution in the habitat.

Chapter 52

Figure Questions

Figure 52.8 The species' distribution could be altered by dispersal limitations, the activities of people (such as a broad-scale conversion of forests to agriculture or selective harvesting), or many other factors, including those discussed later in the chapter (see Figure 52.18). **Figure 52.18** Some factors, such as fire, are relevant only for terrestrial systems. At first glance, water availability is primarily a terrestrial factor, too. However, species living along the intertidal zone of oceans or along the edge of lakes also suffer desiccation. Salinity stress is important for species in some aquatic and terrestrial systems. Oxygen availability is an important factor primarily for species in some aquatic systems and in soils and sediments.

Concept Check 52.1

1. In the tropics, high temperatures evaporate water and cause warm, moist air to rise. The rising air cools and releases much of its water as rain over the tropics. The remaining dry air descends at approximately 30° north and south, causing deserts to occur in those regions. **2.** The microclimate around the stream will be cooler, moister, and shadier than that around the unplanted agricultural field. **3.** Trees that require a long time to reach reproductive age are likely to evolve more slowly than annual plants in

response to climate change, constraining the potential ability of such trees to respond to rapid climate change. **4.** Plants with C_4 photosynthesis are likely to expand their range globally as Earth's climate warms. C_4 photosynthesis minimizes photorespiration and enhances sugar production, an advantage that is especially useful in warmer regions where C_4 plants are found today.

Concept Check 52.2

1. The biggest difference between the two biomes is the higher amounts of precipitation that the forest receives. **2.** Answers will vary by location but should be based on the information and maps in Figure 52.13. How much your local area has been altered from its natural state will influence how much it reflects the expected characteristics of your biome, particularly the expected plants and animals. **3.** Northern coniferous forest is likely to replace tundra along the boundary between these biomes. To see why, note that northern coniferous forest is adjacent to tundra throughout North America, northern Europe, and Asia (see Figure 52.10) and that the temperature range for northern coniferous forest is just above that for tundra (see Figure 52.11).

Concept Check 52.3

1. In the oceanic pelagic zone, the ocean bottom lies below the photic zone, so there is too little light to support benthic algae or rooted plants. **2.** Aquatic organisms either gain or lose water by osmosis if the osmolarity of their environment differs from their internal osmolarity. Water gain can cause cells to swell, and water loss can cause them to shrink. To avoid excessive changes in cell volume, organisms that live in estuaries must be able to compensate for both water gain (under freshwater conditions) and water loss (under saltwater conditions). **3.** Oxygen serves as a reactant when decomposers break down the bodies of dead algae using aerobic respiration. Following an algal bloom, there are many dead algae; hence, decomposers may use a lot of oxygen to break down the bodies of dead algae, causing the lake's oxygen levels to drop.

Concept Check 52.4

1. (a) Humans might transplant a species to a new area that it could not previously reach because of a geographic barrier. (b) Humans might eliminate a predator or herbivore species, such as sea urchins, from an area. **2.** One test would be to build a fence around a plot of land in an area that has trees of that species, excluding all deer from the plot. You could then compare the abundance of tree seedlings inside and outside the fenced plot over time. **3.** Because the ancestor of the silverswords reached isolated Hawaii early in the islands' existence, it likely faced little competition and was able to occupy many unfilled niches. The cattle egret, in contrast, arrived in the Americas only recently and has to compete with a well-established group of species. Thus, its opportunities for adaptive radiation have probably been much more limited.

Concept Check 52.5

1. Changes in how organisms interact with one another and their environment can cause evolutionary change. In turn, an evolutionary change, such as an improvement in the ability of a predator to detect its prey, can alter ecological interactions. **2.** As cod adapt to the pressure of commercial fishing by reproducing at younger ages and smaller sizes, the number of offspring they produce each year will be lower. This may cause the population to decline as time goes on, thereby further reducing the population's ability to recover. If that happened, as the population becomes smaller over time, effects of genetic drift might become increasingly important. Drift could, for example, lead to the fixation of harmful alleles, which would further hinder the ability of the cod population to recover from overfishing.

Summary of Key Concepts Questions

52.1 Because dry air would descend at the equator instead of at 30° north and south latitude (where deserts exist today), deserts would be more likely to exist along the equator (see Figure 52.3). **52.2** The dominant plants in savanna ecosystems tend to be adapted to fire and tolerant of seasonal droughts. The savanna biome is maintained by periodic fires, both natural and set by humans, but humans are also clearing savannas for agriculture and other uses. **52.3** An aphotic zone is most likely to be found in the deep waters of a lake, the oceanic pelagic zone, or the marine benthic zone. **52.4** You might arrange a flowchart that begins with abiotic limitations—first determining the physical and chemical conditions under which a species could survive—and then moves through the other factors listed in the flowchart. **52.5** Because the introduced species had few predators or parasites, it might outcompete native species and thereby increase in number and expand its range in the new location. As the introduced species increased in abundance, natural selection might cause evolution in populations of competing species, favoring individuals with traits that made them more effective competitors with the introduced species. Selection could also cause evolution in populations of potential predator or parasite species, in this case favoring individuals with traits that enabled them to take advantage of this new potential source of food. Such evolutionary changes could modify the outcome of ecological interactions, potentially leading to further evolutionary changes, and so on.

Test Your Understanding

1. B **2.** B **3.** C **4.** D **5.** C **6.** A **7.** A **8.** B

Chapter 53

Figure Questions

Figure 53.3 The dispersion of the penguins would likely appear clumped as you flew over densely populated islands and sparsely populated ocean.
Figure 53.4 Ten percent (100/1,000) of the females survive to be 3 years old.
Figure 53.6 #109 **Figure 53.7** The population with $r = 1.0$ (blue curve) reaches 1,500 individuals in about 7.5 generations, whereas the population with $r = 0.5$ (red curve) reaches 1,500 individuals in about 14.5 generations.

Figure 53.15

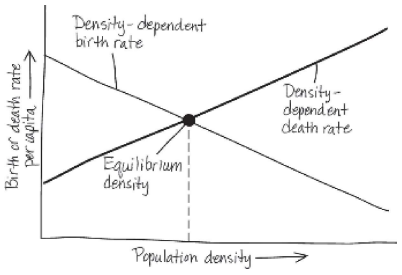
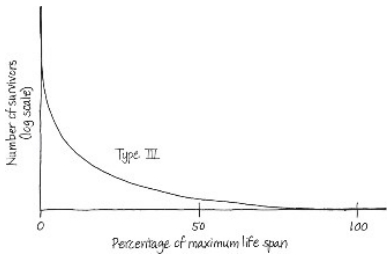


Figure 53.22 Based on Figure 53.21, which highlights the long-term, explosive growth of the human population, one might conclude (mistakenly) that the growth rate of the human population has not decreased in recent decades. However, the growth rate of the human population *has* decreased in recent decades—a slowdown that is evident in the blue curve shown in Figure 53.22. Both curves are accurate, but they convey different messages because they differ in the time scale over which human population size is represented. The time period covered by Figure 53.21 is so long (over 6,000 years in the "unbroken" portion of the *x*-axis lying to the right of the hatch mark) that the recent slowdown in how fast the human population is growing is not visually apparent. In contrast, Figure 53.22 covers only 100 years, a time period that is short enough to show the recent decrease in the growth rate of the human population.
Figure 53.24 If the average ecological footprint were 8 gha per person, Earth could support about 1.5 billion people in a sustainable fashion. This estimate is obtained by dividing the total amount of Earth's productive land (11.9 billion gha) by the number of global hectares used per person (8 gha/person), which yields 1.49 billion people.

Concept Check 53.1

1.



A Type III survivorship curve is most likely because very few of the young probably survive.
2. The proportion alive at the start of year 0–1 is $485/485 = 1.0$. The proportion alive at the start of year 1–2 is $218/485 = 0.449$. **3.** Male sticklebacks would likely have a uniform pattern of dispersion, with antagonistic interactions maintaining a relatively constant spacing between them.

Concept Check 53.2

1. Although r is constant, the population size (N) is increasing. As r is applied to an increasingly large N, population growth (rN) accelerates, producing the J-shaped curve. **2.** Exponential growth is more likely in the area where a forest was destroyed by fire. The first plants that found suitable habitat there would encounter an abundance of space, nutrients, and light. In the undisturbed forest, competition among plants for these resources would be intense. **3.** The equation for the number of people added to the population each year is $\Delta N/\Delta t = r_{\Delta t}N$. Therefore, the net population growth in 2018 was

$$\Delta N/\Delta t = 0.005 \times 327{,}000{,}000 = 1{,}635{,}000$$

or roughly 1.6 million people. To determine whether the population is growing exponentially, you would need to determine whether $r > 0$ and if it is constant through time (across multiple years).

Concept Check 53.3

1. When N (population size) is small, there are relatively few individuals producing offspring. When N is large, near the carrying capacity, the per capita growth rate is relatively small because it is limited by available resources. The steepest part of the logistic growth curve corresponds to a population with a number of reproducing individuals that is substantial but not yet near carrying capacity.
2. All else being equal, you would expect a plant species to have a larger carrying capacity at the equator than at high latitudes because there is more incident sunlight near the equator. **3.** The sudden change in environmental conditions might alter the phenotypic traits favored by natural selection. Assuming the newly favored traits were encoded at least in part by genes, natural selection might alter gene frequencies in this population. In addition, a substantial drop in the carrying capacity of the population could cause the size of the population to drop considerably. If this occurred, effects of genetic drift could become more pronounced—and that in turn could lead to the fixation of harmful alleles, hindering the ability of the population to rebound in size.

Concept Check 53.4

1. Three key life history traits are when reproduction begins, how often reproduction occurs, and how many offspring are produced per reproductive episode. Organisms differ widely for each of these traits. For example, the age of first reproduction is typically 3–4 years in coho salmon compared to 30 years in loggerhead turtles. Similarly, an agave reproduces only once during its lifetime, whereas an oak tree reproduces many times. Finally, the white rhinoceros produces a single calf when it reproduces, while most insects produce many offspring each time they reproduce. **2.** By preferentially investing in the eggs it lays in the nest, the peacock wrasse increases the chance those eggs will survive. The eggs it disperses widely and does not provide care for are less likely to survive, at least some of the time, but require a lower investment by the adults. (In this sense, the adults avoid the risk of placing all their eggs in one basket.) **3.** If a parent's survival is compromised greatly by bearing young during times of stress, the animal's fitness may increase if it abandons its current young and survives to produce healthier young at a later time.

Concept Check 53.5

1. Three attributes are the size, quality, and isolation of patches. A patch that is larger or of higher quality is more likely to attract individuals and to be a source of individuals for other patches. A patch that is relatively isolated will undergo fewer exchanges of individuals with other patches. **2.** You should have circled the portion of the curve where it is close to *K* (after generation 10). **3.** You would need to study the population for more than one cycle (longer than 10 years and probably at least 20) before having sufficient data to examine changes through time. Otherwise, it would be impossible to know whether an observed decrease in the population size reflected a long-term trend or was part of the normal cycle. **4.** In negative feedback, the output, or product, of a process slows that process. In populations that have a density-dependent birth rate, such as dune fescue grass, an accumulation of product (more individuals, resulting in a higher population density) slows the process (population growth) by decreasing the birth rate.

Concept Check 53.6

1. A bottom-heavy age structure, with a disproportionate number of young people, portends continuing growth of the population as these young people begin reproducing. In contrast, a more evenly distributed age structure predicts a more stable population size, and a top-heavy age structure predicts a decrease in population size because relatively fewer young people are reproducing. **2.** The growth rate of Earth's human population has dropped by half since the 1960s, from 2.2% in 1962 to 1.1% today. Nonetheless, the yearly increase in population size has not slowed as much because the smaller growth rate is counterbalanced by increased population size; hence, the number of additional people on Earth each year remains enormous—approximately 80 million. **3.** Each student will calculate his or her own ecological footprint. Each of us influences our ecological footprint by how we live—what we eat, how much energy we use, and the amount of waste we generate—as well as by how many children we have. Making choices that reduce our demand for resources makes our ecological footprint smaller.

Summary of Key Concepts Questions

53.1 Ecologists can potentially estimate birth rates by counting the number of young born each year, and they can estimate death rates by seeing how the number of adults changes each year. **53.2** Under the exponential model, both populations will continue to grow to infinite size, regardless of the specific value of *r* (see Figure 53.7). **53.3** There are many things you can do to increase the carrying capacity of the species, including increasing its food supply, protecting it from predators, and providing more sites for nesting or reproduction. **53.4** Ecological trade-offs are common because organisms do not have access to unlimited amounts of energy and resources. As a result, the use of energy or resources for one function (such as reproduction) can decrease the energy or resources available to support other functions (such as growth or survival). **53.5** An example of a biotic factor is disease caused by a pathogen; natural disasters, such as earthquakes and floods, are examples of abiotic factors. **53.6** Humans are unique in our potential ability to reduce global population through contraception and family planning. Humans also are capable of consciously choosing their diet and personal lifestyle, and these choices influence the number of people Earth can support.

Test Your Understanding

1. B **2.** A **3.** A **4.** D **5.** C **6.** B **7.** C **8.** A **9.** C

Chapter 54

Figure Questions

Figure 54.3 Its realized and fundamental niches would be similar, unlike those of *Chthamalus*. **Figure 54.5** Beak depths in the *G. fortis* population would likely decrease over time. With the extinction of *G. fuliginosa*, the small seeds eaten by that species would increase in abundance. As a result, natural selection would favor *G. fortis* individuals with smaller beaks because those individuals can eat small seeds more efficiently than could *G. fortis* individuals with larger beaks. **Figure 54.6** Individuals of a harmless species that resembled a distantly related harmful species might be attacked by predators less often than were other individuals that did not resemble the harmful species. As a result, individuals of the harmless species that resembled a harmful species would tend to contribute more offspring to the next generation than would other individuals of the harmless species. Over time, as natural selection by predators continued to favor those individuals of the harmless species that most closely resembled the harmful species, the resemblance of the harmless species to the harmful species would increase. However, selection is not the only process that could cause a harmless species to resemble a closely related harmful species. In this case, the two species could also resemble each other because they descended from a recent common ancestor and hence share many traits (including a resemblance to one another). **Figure 54.16** An increase in the abundance of carnivores that eat zooplankton might cause zooplankton abundance to drop, thereby causing phytoplankton abundance to increase. **Figure 54.17** The number of types of organisms eaten is zero for phytoplankton; one for copepods, crab-eater seals, and baleen whales; two for krill, carnivorous plankton, elephant seals, and sperm whales; three for squids, fishes, and leopard seals; and five for birds and smaller toothed whales. The two groups that both consume and are consumed by each other are fishes and squids. **Figure 54.18** Zooplankton are primary consumers of phytoplankton. Fish larvae are secondary consumers of zooplankton. Sea nettles function as secondary consumers when they eat zooplankton, but as tertiary consumers when they eat fish larvae. Juvenile striped bass are tertiary consumers of fish larvae. **Figure 54.20** The death of individuals of *Mytilus*, a competitively dominant species, should open up space for individuals of other species and thereby increase species richness even in the absence of *Pisaster*. **Figure 54.27** At the earliest stages of primary succession, free-living prokaryotes in the soil would reduce atmospheric N_2 to NH_3. Symbiotic nitrogen fixation could not occur until plants were present at the site. **Figure 54.31** We would expect that (a) population sizes would decrease because there would be fewer resources and less suitable habitat; (b) the extinction curve would rise more rapidly as the number of species on the island increased because small islands generally have fewer resources, less diverse habitats, and smaller population sizes; and (c) the predicted equilibrium species number would be smaller than shown in Figure 54.31. **Figure 54.34** Shrew populations in different locations and habitats might show substantial genetic variation in their susceptibility to the Lyme pathogen. As a result, there might be fewer infected ticks where shrew populations are less susceptible to the Lyme pathogen and more infected ticks where shrews are more susceptible.

Concept Check 54.1

1. Competition has negative effects on individuals of both species (−/−). In predation, members of the predator population benefit by killing and eating members of the prey population; this is an example of exploitation (+/−). Mutualism is an interaction in which individuals of both species benefit (+/+). **2.** One of the competing species will become locally extinct because of the greater reproductive success of the more efficient competitor. **3.** By specializing in eating seeds of different plant species, individuals of the two finch species may be less likely to come into contact in the separate habitats, thereby reinforcing a reproductive barrier to hybridization.

Concept Check 54.2

1. Species richness, the number of species in the community, and relative abundance, the proportions of the community represented by the various species, both contribute to species diversity. Compared to a community with a very high proportion of one species, one with a more even proportion of species is considered more diverse. **2.** A food chain presents a set of one-way transfers of food energy up to successively higher trophic levels. A food web documents how food chains are linked together, with many species weaving into the web at more than one trophic level. **3.** In bottom-up control, adding extra predators would have little effect on lower trophic levels, particularly vegetation. If top-down control applied, increased bobcat numbers would decrease raccoon numbers, increase snake numbers, decrease mouse numbers, and increase grass biomass. **4.** A decrease in krill abundance might increase the abundance of organisms that krill eat (phytoplankton and copepods), while decreasing the abundance of organisms that eat krill (baleen whales, crabeater seals, birds, fishes, and carnivorous plankton); baleen whales and crabeater seals might be particularly at risk because they eat only krill. However, many of these possible changes could lead to other changes as well, making the overall outcome hard to predict. For example, a decrease in krill abundance could cause an increase in copepod abundance—but an increase in copepod abundance could counteract some of the other effects of decreased krill abundance (since like krill, copepods eat phytoplankton and are eaten by carnivorous plankton and fishes).

Concept Check 54.3

1. High levels of disturbance are generally so disruptive that they eliminate many species from communities, leaving the community dominated by a few tolerant species. Low levels of disturbance permit competitively dominant species to exclude other species from the community. On the other hand, moderate levels of disturbance can facilitate coexistence of a greater number of species in a community by preventing competitively dominant species from becoming abundant enough to eliminate other species from the community. **2.** Early successional species can facilitate the arrival of other species in many ways, including increasing the fertility or water-holding capacity of soils or providing shelter to seedlings from wind and intense sunlight. **3.** The absence of fire for 100 years would represent a change to a low level of disturbance. According to the intermediate disturbance hypothesis, this change should cause diversity to decline as competitively dominant species gain sufficient time to exclude less competitive species.

Concept Check 54.4

1. Ecologists propose that the greater species richness of tropical regions is the result of their longer evolutionary history and the greater solar energy input and water availability in tropical regions. **2.** Immigration of species to islands declines with distance from the mainland and increases with island area. Extinction of species is lower on larger islands and on less isolated islands. Since the number of species on islands is largely determined by the difference between rates of immigration and extinction, the number of species will be highest on

large islands near the mainland and lowest on small islands far from the mainland. **3.** Because of their greater mobility, birds disperse to islands more often than snakes and lizards, so birds should have greater richness.

Concept Check 54.5

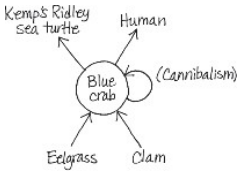
1. Pathogens are microorganisms, viruses, viroids, or prions that cause disease. **2.** To keep the rabies virus out, you could ban imports of all mammals, including pets. Potentially, you could also attempt to vaccinate all dogs in the British Isles against the virus. A more practical approach might be to quarantine all pets brought into the country that are potential carriers of the disease, the approach the British government actually takes.

Summary of Key Concepts Questions

54.1 Note: Sample answers follow; other answers could also be correct. Competition: a fox and a bobcat competing for prey. Predation: an orca eating a sea otter. Herbivory: a bison eating grass. Parasitism: a parasitoid wasp that lays its eggs on a caterpillar. Mutualism: a fungus and an alga that make up a lichen. Commensalism: a wildflower that grows in a maple forest and a maple tree. **54.2** Not necessarily if the more species-rich community is dominated by only one or a few species **54.3** Similar to clear-cutting a forest or plowing a field, some species would be present initially. As a result, the disturbance would initiate secondary succession in spite of its severe appearance. **54.4** Glaciations are major disturbances that can completely destroy communities found in temperate and polar regions. As a result, tropical communities may be older than temperate or polar communities. This can cause species diversity to be high in the tropics simply because there has been more time for speciation to occur. **54.5** A keystone species is one with a pivotal ecological role. Hence, a pathogen that reduces the abundance of (or otherwise harms) a keystone species could greatly alter the structure of the community. For example, if a novel pathogen drove a keystone species to local extinction, drastic changes in species diversity could occur.

Test Your Understanding

1. D **2.** C **3.** C **4.** C **5.** B **6.** C **7.** D **8.** B
9. Community 1: $H = -(0.05 \ln 0.05 + 0.05 \ln 0.05 + 0.85 \ln 0.85 + 0.05 \ln 0.05) = 0.59$. Community 2: $H = -(0.30 \ln 0.30 + 0.40 \ln 0.40 + 0.30 \ln 0.30) = 1.1$. Community 2 is more diverse. **10.** Crab numbers should increase, reducing the abundance of eelgrass.



Chapter 55

Figure Questions

Figure 55.4 The blue arrow leading to *Primary consumers* could represent a grasshopper feeding on a plant. The blue arrow leading from *Primary consumers* to *Detritus* could represent the remains of a dead primary consumer (such as a grasshopper) becoming part of the detritus found in the ecosystem. The blue arrow leading from *Primary consumers* to *Secondary and tertiary consumers* could represent a bird (the secondary consumer) eating a grasshopper (the primary consumer). Finally, the blue arrow leading from *Primary consumers* to *Primary producers* could represent CO_2 released by a grasshopper in cellular respiration. **Figure 55.5** The map does not accurately reflect the productivity of wetlands, coral reefs, and coastal zones because these habitats cover areas that are too small to show up clearly on global maps. **Figure 55.6** New duck farms would add extra nitrogen and phosphorus to the water samples used in the experiment. We would expect that the extra phosphorus from these new duck farms would not alter the results (because in the original experiment, phosphorus levels were *already* so high that adding phosphorus did not increase phytoplankton growth). However, the new duck farms might increase nitrogen levels to the point where adding extra nitrogen in an experiment would not increase phytoplankton density. **Figure 55.12** The availability of water and exposure to light are other factors that may have varied across the sites. Factors such as these that are not included in the experimental design could make the results more difficult to interpret. Multiple factors can also be correlated to each other in nature, so ecologists must be careful that the factor they are studying is actually causing the observed response and is not just correlated with it. **Figure 55.13** (1) If the rate of decomposition slowed, more organic materials would be transferred from reservoir A to reservoir B; eventually, this might lead to more organic material becoming fossilized into fossil fuels. In addition, a decrease in decomposition rate would cause fewer inorganic materials to become available as nutrients in reservoir C, which would ultimately slow the rates of nutrient uptake and photosynthesis by living organisms. (2) Materials move into and out of reservoir A on a much shorter time scale than they move into reservoir B. Materials may remain in reservoir B for a very long time, or humans may remove them at a rapid pace by excavating and burning fossil fuels. **Figure 55.15** If the *y*-axis had a consistent scale with no break, the change in nitrate concentration in runoff from one tick mark to the next would remain constant throughout the entire axis. For example, if the *y*-axis were redrawn to have a consistent scale that ran from 0 to 80 mg/L with nine evenly spaced tick marks, the nitrate concentration would increase by 10 mg/L from each tick mark to the next. Drawing the graph with a consistent scale would emphasize the dramatic increase in nitrate concentration that occurred in 1966, but it would be harder to see other, comparatively small changes that occurred from 1965 to 1968 in both control and deforested areas. **Figure 55.19** Populations evolve as organisms interact with each other and with the physical and chemical conditions of their environment. As a result, any human action that alters the environment has the potential to cause evolutionary change. In particular, since climate change has greatly affected arctic ecosystems, we would expect that climate change will cause evolution in arctic tundra populations.

Concept Check 55.1

1. Energy passes through an ecosystem, entering as sunlight and leaving as heat. It is not recycled within the ecosystem. **2.** You would need to know how much biomass the wildebeests ate from your plot and how much nitrogen was contained in that biomass. You would also need to know how much nitrogen they deposited in urine or feces. **3.** The second law states that in any energy transfer or transformation, some of the energy is dissipated to the surroundings as heat. For the ecosystem to remain intact, this "escape" of energy from the ecosystem must be offset by the continuous influx of solar radiation.

Concept Check 55.2

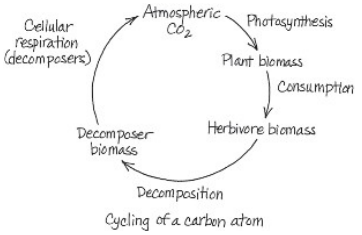
1. Only a fraction of solar radiation strikes plants or algae, only a portion of that fraction is of wavelengths suitable for photosynthesis, and much energy is reflected or lost as heat. **2.** By manipulating the level of the factors of interest, such as phosphorus availability or soil moisture, and measuring responses by primary producers **3.** It is likely that NEP would decline after the fire. To see why, recall that NEP = GPP − R_T, where GPP is gross primary production and R_T is the total amount of cellular respiration in the ecosystem. By killing trees and other plants, the fire would cause GPP to decline from its pre-fire level. In addition, as decomposers broke down the remains of trees killed by fire, the overall amount of cellular respiration (R_T) in the ecosystem could increase (because of increased cellular respiration by decomposers). **4.** The enzyme rubisco, which catalyzes the first step in the Calvin cycle, is the most abundant protein on Earth. Like all proteins, rubisco contains nitrogen, and because photosynthetic organisms require so much rubisco, they also require considerable nitrogen to make it. Phosphorus is also needed as a component of several metabolites in the Calvin cycle and as a component of both ATP and NADPH (see Figure 10.19).

Concept Check 55.3

1. 20 J; 40% **2.** Nicotine protects the plant from herbivores. **3.** Total net primary production is 10,000 + 1,000 + 100 + 10 J = 11,110 J. This is the amount of energy theoretically available to decomposers.

Concept Check 55.4

1. For example, for the carbon cycle:



Cycling of a carbon atom

2. Removal of the trees stops nitrogen uptake from the soil, allowing nitrate to accumulate in the soil. The nitrate is washed away by precipitation and enters the streams. **3.** Most of the nutrients in a tropical rain forest are contained in the trees, so removing the trees by logging rapidly depletes nutrients from the ecosystem. The nutrients that remain in the soil are quickly carried away into streams and groundwater by the abundant precipitation.

Concept Check 55.5

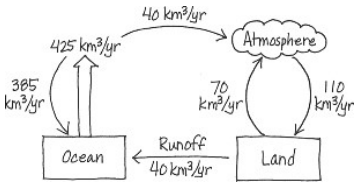
1. The main goal is to restore degraded ecosystems to a more natural state. **2.** Bioremediation uses organisms—generally prokaryotes, fungi, or plants—to detoxify or remove pollutants from ecosystems. Biological augmentation uses organisms, such as nitrogen-fixing plants, to add essential materials to degraded ecosystems. **3.** The Kissimmee River project returns the flow of water to the original channel and restores natural flow, a self-sustaining outcome. Ecologists at the Maungatautari reserve will need to maintain the integrity of the fence indefinitely, an outcome that is not self-sustaining in the long term.

Summary of Key Concepts Questions

55.1 Because energy conversions are inefficient, with some energy inevitably lost as heat, you would expect that a given mass of primary producers would support a smaller biomass of consumers. **55.2** If you know NPP and want to estimate NEP, you must be able to determine how much of the total respiration (R_T) results from heterotrophs and how much results from autotrophs. In a sample of ocean water, primary producers and other organisms are usually mixed together, making their respective respirations hard to separate. **55.3** Runners use much more energy in respiration when they are running than when they are sedentary, reducing their production efficiency. **55.4** Factors other than temperature, including a shortage of water and nutrients, slow decomposition in hot deserts. **55.5** If the topsoil and deeper soil are kept separate, the engineers could return the deeper soil to the site first and then apply the more fertile topsoil to improve the success of revegetation and other restoration efforts.

Test Your Understanding

1. B **2.** B **3.** A **4.** C **5.** A **6.** D **7.** D **8.** D
9. (a)



(b) On average, the ratio is 1, with equal amounts of water moving from the ocean to land as precipitation and moving from land to ocean in runoff. (c) During an ice age, the amount of ocean evaporation falling on land as precipitation would be greater than the amount returning to the oceans in runoff; thus, the ratio would be 71. The difference would build up on land as ice.

Chapter 56

Figure Questions

Figure 56.3 You would need to know the complete range of the species and that it is missing across all of that range. You would also need to be certain that the species isn't hidden, as might be the case for an animal that is hibernating underground or a plant that is present in the form of seeds or spores. **Figure 56.8** The two examples are similar in that segments of DNA from the harvested samples were analyzed and compared with segments from specimens of known origin. One difference is that the whale researchers investigated relatedness at species and population levels to determine whether illegal activity had occurred, whereas the elephant investigators determined relatedness at the population level to determine the precise location of the poaching. Another difference is that mtDNA was used for the whale study, whereas nuclear DNA was used for the elephant study. The primary limitations of such approaches are the need to have (or generate) a reference database and the requirement that the organisms have sufficient variation in their DNA to reveal the relatedness of samples. **Figure 56.10** The higher the pH, the lower the acidity. Thus, the precipitation in this forest is becoming less acidic. **Figure 56.12** Answers may vary, but there are two reasons not to support transplanting additional birds. First, the Illinois population has a different genetic makeup than birds in other regions, and you would want to maintain to the greatest extent possible the frequency of beneficial genes or alleles found only in the Illinois population. Second, the translocation of birds from other states already caused the percentage of hatched eggs to increase dramatically, indicating that the transplantation of additional birds is not necessary. **Figure 56.14** The natural disturbance regime in this habitat includes frequent fires that clear undergrowth but do not kill mature pine trees. Without these fires, the undergrowth quickly fills in and the habitat becomes unsuitable for red-cockaded woodpeckers. **Figure 56.16** The photo shows edges between forest and grassland ecosystems, and grassland and river ecosystems. **Figure 56.24** The PCB concentration increased by a factor of 4.9 from phytoplankton to zooplankton, 41.6 from phytoplankton to smelt, 8.5 from zooplankton to smelt, 4.6 from smelt to lake trout, 119.2 from smelt to herring gull eggs, and 25.7 from lake trout to herring gull eggs. **Figure 56.31** Ocean acidification reduces the availability of carbonate ions (CO_3^{2-}). Corals and many other marine organisms require carbonate ions to build their shells. Since shell-building organisms depend upon their shells for survival, scientists have predicted that ocean acidification will cause many shell-building organisms to die. In turn, increased mortality rates of organisms that build shells would cause many other changes to ecological communities. For example, increased mortality rates of corals would harm the many other species that seek protection in coral reefs or that feed upon the species living there. **Figure 56.32** The model results in the blue curve (natural factors only) and the results in the purple curve (natural *and* human factors) both provide a good match to observed temperature changes until about 1960. After 1960, however, the results in the blue curve are a poor match to observed temperature changes, whereas the results in the purple curve continue to provide a good match. These results suggest that human activities such as burning fossil fuels have contributed to the observed rise in global temperatures, especially for the period 1960 to the present.

Concept Check 56.1

1. In addition to species loss, the biodiversity crisis includes the loss of genetic diversity within populations and species and the degradation of entire ecosystems. **2.** Habitat destruction, such as deforestation, channelizing of rivers, or conversion of natural ecosystems to agriculture or cities, deprives species of places to live. Introduced species, which are transported by humans to regions outside their native range, often reduce the population sizes of native species through competition or by feeding on them (as predators, herbivores, or pathogens). Overharvesting has reduced populations of plants and animals or driven them to extinction. Finally, global change is altering the environment to the extent that it reduces the capacity of Earth to sustain life. **3.** If both populations breed separately, then gene flow between the populations would not occur and genetic differences between them would be greater. As a result, the loss of genetic diversity would be greater than if the populations interbreed.

Concept Check 56.2

1. Reduced genetic variation decreases the capacity of a population to evolve in the face of change. **2.** The effective population size, N_e, would be $4(30 \times 10)/(30 + 10) = 30$ birds. **3.** Because millions of people use the greater Yellowstone ecosystem each year, it would be impossible to eliminate all contact between people and bears. Instead, you might try to reduce the kinds of encounters where bears are killed. You might recommend lower speed limits on roads in the park, adjust the timing or location of hunting seasons (where hunting is allowed outside the park) to minimize contact with mother bears and cubs, and provide financial incentives for livestock owners to try alternative means of protecting livestock, such as using guard dogs.

Concept Check 56.3

1. A small area supporting numerous endemic species as well as a large number of endangered and threatened species **2.** Zoned reserves may provide sustained supplies of forest products, water, hydroelectric power, educational opportunities, and income from tourism. **3.** Habitat corridors can increase the rate of movement or dispersal of organisms between habitat patches and thus the rate of gene flow between subpopulations. They thus help prevent a decrease in fitness attributable to inbreeding. They can also minimize interactions between organisms and humans as the organisms disperse; in cases involving potential predators, such as bears or large cats, minimizing such interactions is desirable.

Concept Check 56.4

1. Adding nutrients causes population explosions of algae and the organisms that feed on them. Increased respiration by algae and consumers, including decomposers, depletes the lake's oxygen, which the fish require. **2.** Decomposers are consumers that use nonliving organic matter as fuel for cellular respiration, which releases CO_2 as a by-product. Because higher temperatures lead to faster decomposition, organic matter in these soils could be decomposed to CO_2 more rapidly, thereby speeding up global warming. **3.** Reduced concentrations of ozone in the atmosphere increase the amount of UV radiation that reaches Earth's surface and the organisms living there. UV radiation can cause mutations by producing disruptive thymine dimers in DNA.

Concept Check 56.5

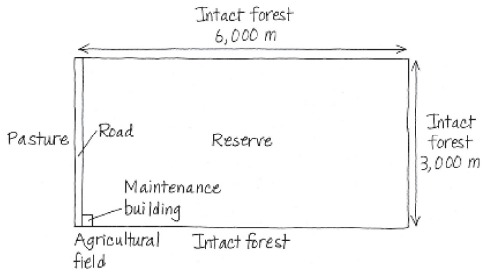
1. Sustainable development is an approach to development that works toward the long-term prosperity of human societies and the ecosystems that support them, which requires linking the biological sciences with the social sciences, economics, and humanities. **2.** Biophilia, our sense of connection to nature and all forms of life, may act as a significant motivation for the development of an environmental ethic that resolves not to allow species to become extinct or ecosystems to be destroyed. Such an ethic is necessary if we are to become more attentive and effective custodians of the environment. **3.** At a minimum, you would want to know the size of the population and the average reproductive rate of the individuals in it. To develop the fishery sustainably, you would seek a harvest rate that maintains the population near its original size and maximizes its harvest in the long term rather than the short term.

Summary of Key Concepts Questions

56.1 Nature provides us with many beneficial services, including a supply of reliable, clean water, the production of food and fiber, and the dilution and detoxification of our pollutants. **56.2** A more genetically diverse population is better able to withstand pressures from disease or environmental change, making it less likely to become extinct over a given period of time. **56.3** Habitat fragmentation can isolate populations, leading to inbreeding and genetic drift, and it can make populations more susceptible to local extinctions resulting from edge effects, including a change in physical conditions and an increase in competition or predation with edge-adapted species. **56.4** It's healthier to feed at a lower trophic level because biological magnification increases the concentration of toxins at higher levels. **56.5** One goal of conservation biology is to preserve as many species as possible. Sustainable approaches that maintain the quality of habitats are required for the long-term survival of organisms.

Test Your Understanding

1. C **2.** D **3.** B **4.** A **5.** B **6.** D
7.



To minimize the area of forest into which the cowbirds penetrate, you should locate the road along the west edge of the reserve (since that edge abuts deforested pasture and an agricultural field). Any other location would increase the area of affected habitat. Similarly, the maintenance building should be in the southwest corner of the reserve to minimize the area susceptible to cowbirds.

APPENDIX B Classification of Life

This appendix presents a taxonomic classification for the major extant groups of organisms discussed in this text; not all phyla are included. The classification presented here is based on the three-domain system, which assigns the two major groups of prokaryotes, bacteria and archaea, to separate domains (with eukaryotes making up the third domain).

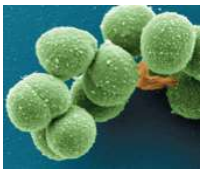
Various alternative classification schemes are discussed in Unit Five of the text. The taxonomic turmoil includes debates about the number and boundaries of kingdoms and about the alignment of the Linnaean classification hierarchy with the findings of modern cladistic analysis.

DOMAIN BACTERIA

- **Proteobacteria**
- **Chlamydia**
- **Spirochetes**
- **Cyanobacteria**
- **Gram-positive Bacteria**

DOMAIN ARCHAEA

- **Euryarchaeota**
- **Thaumarchaeota**
- **Aigarchaeota**
- **Crenarchaeota**
- **Korarchaeota**



DOMAIN EUKARYA

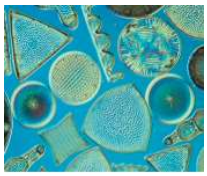
In the phylogenetic hypothesis we present in Chapter 28, major clades of eukaryotes are grouped together in the four "supergroups" listed in blue type. Formerly, all the eukaryotes generally called protists were assigned to a single kingdom, Protista. However, advances in systematics have made it clear that some protists are more closely related to plants, fungi, or animals than they are to other protists. As a result, the kingdom Protista has been abandoned.

Excavata

- Diplomonadida (diplomonads)
- Parabasala (parabasalids)
- Euglenozoa (euglenozoans)
  - Kinetoplastida (kinetoplastids)
  - Euglenophyta (euglenids)

SAR

- Stramenopila (stramenopiles)
  - Oomycota (oomycetes)
  - Phaeophyta (brown algae)
  - Bacillariophyta (diatoms)



- Alveolata (alveolates)
  - Dinoflagellata (dinoflagellates)
  - Apicomplexa (apicomplexans)
  - Ciliophora (ciliates)
- Rhizaria (rhizarians)
  - Radiolaria (radiolarians)
  - Foraminifera (forams)
  - Cercozoa (cercozoans)

Archaeplastida

- Rhodophyta (red algae)
- Chlorophyta (green algae: chlorophytes)
- Charophyta (green algae: charophytes)
- Plantae
  - Phylum Hepatophyta (liverworts), Phylum Bryophyta (mosses), Phylum Anthocerophyta (hornworts) — Nonvascular plants (bryophytes)
  - Phylum Lycophyta (lycophytes), Phylum Monilophyta (ferns, horsetails, whisk ferns) — Seedless vascular plants
  - Phylum Ginkgophyta (ginkgo), Phylum Cycadophyta (cycads), Phylum Gnetophyta (gnetophytes), Phylum Coniferophyta (conifers) — Gymnosperms
  - Phylum Anthophyta (flowering plants) — Angiosperms
  - Gymnosperms, Angiosperms — Seed plants

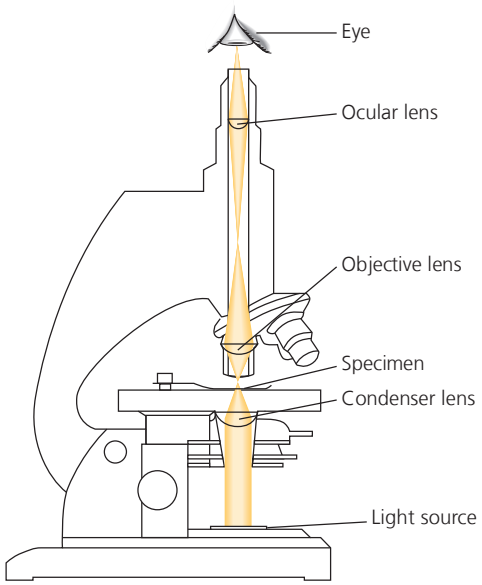
DOMAIN EUKARYA, continued

Unikonta (also called Amorphea)

- Amoebozoa (amoebozoans)
  - Tubulinea (tubulinids)
  - Myxogastrida (plasmodial slime molds)
  - Dictyostelida (cellular slime molds)
  - Entamoeba (entamoebas)
- Nucleariida (nucleariids)
- Fungi
  - Phylum Cryptomycota (cryptomycetes)
  - Phylum Microsporidia (microsporidians)
  - Phylum Chytridiomycota (chytrids)
  - Phylum Zoopagomycota (zoopagomycetes)
  - Phylum Mucoromycota (mucoromycetes)
  - Phylum Ascomycota (ascomycetes)
  - Phylum Basidiomycota (basidiomycetes)

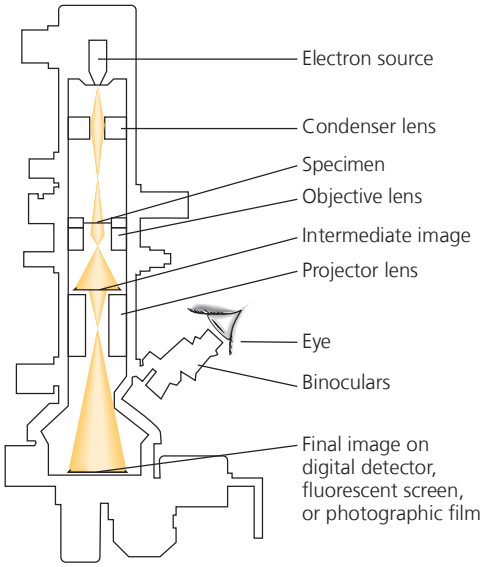
- Choanoflagellata (choanoflagellates)
- Animalia
  - Phylum Porifera (sponges)
  - Phylum Ctenophora (comb jellies)
  - Phylum Cnidaria (cnidarians)
    - Medusozoa (hydrozoans, jellies, box jellies)
    - Anthozoa (sea anemones and most corals)
  - Phylum Acoela (acoel flatworms)
  - Phylum Placozoa (placozoans)
  - Lophotrochozoa (lophotrochozoans)
  - Phylum Platyhelminthes (flatworms)
    - Catenulida (chain worms)
    - Rhabditophora (planarians, flukes, tapeworms)
  - Phylum Nemertea (ribbon worms)
  - Phylum Ectoprocta (ectoprocts)
  - Phylum Brachiopoda (brachiopods)
  - Phylum Syndermata (rotifers and spiny-headed worms)
  - Phylum Gastrotricha (gastrotrichs)
  - Phylum Cycliophora (cycliophorans)
  - Phylum Mollusca (molluscs)
    - Polyplacophora (chitons)
    - Gastropoda (gastropods)
    - Bivalvia (bivalves)
    - Cephalopoda (cephalopods)
  - Phylum Annelida (segmented worms)
    - Errantia (errantians)
    - Sedentaria (sedentarians)
  - Ecdysozoa (ecdysozoans)
  - Phylum Loricifera (loriciferans)
  - Phylum Priapula (priapulans)
  - Phylum Nematoda (roundworms)
  - Phylum Arthropoda (This survey groups arthropods into a single phylum, but some zoologists now split the arthropods into multiple phyla.)
    - Chelicerata (horseshoe crabs, arachnids)
    - Myriapoda (millipedes, centipedes)
    - Pancrustacea (crustaceans, insects)
  - Phylum Tardigrada (tardigrades)
  - Phylum Onychophora (velvet worms)
  - Deuterostomia (deuterostomes)
  - Phylum Hemichordata (hemichordates)
  - Phylum Echinodermata (echinoderms)
    - Asteroidea (sea stars, sea daisies)
    - Ophiuroidea (brittle stars)
    - Echinoidea (sea urchins, sand dollars)
    - Crinoidea (sea lilies)
    - Holothuroidea (sea cucumbers)
  - Phylum Chordata (chordates)
    - Cephalochordata (cephalochordates: lancelets)
    - Urochordata (urochordates: tunicates)
    - Cyclostomata (cyclostomes) } Vertebrates
      - Myxini (hagfishes)
      - Petromyzontida (lampreys)
    - Gnathostomata (gnathostomes)
      - Chondrichthyes (sharks, rays, chimaeras)
      - Actinopterygii (ray-finned fishes)
      - Actinistia (coelacanths)
      - Dipnoi (lungfishes)
      - Amphibia (amphibians: frogs, salamanders, caecilians)
      - Reptilia (reptiles: tuataras, lizards, snakes, turtles, crocodilians, birds)
      - Mammalia (mammals)

APPENDIX C A Comparison of the Light Microscope and the Electron Microscope



Light Microscope

In light microscopy, light is focused on a specimen by a glass condenser lens; the image is then magnified by an objective lens and an ocular lens for projection on the eye, digital camera, digital video camera, or photographic film.



Electron Microscope

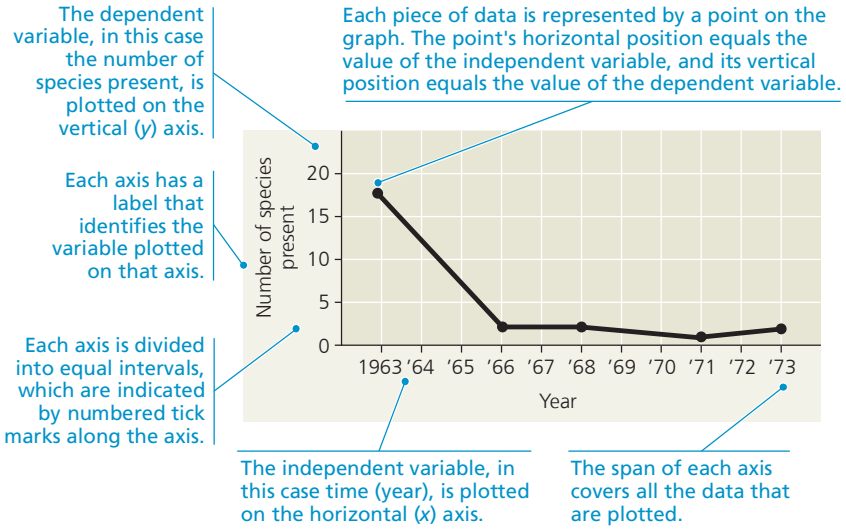
In electron microscopy, a beam of electrons (top of the microscope) is used instead of light, and electromagnets are used instead of glass lenses. The electron beam is focused on the specimen by a condenser lens; the image is magnified by an objective lens and a projector lens for projection on a digital detector, fluorescent screen, or photographic film.

APPENDIX D Scientific Skills Review

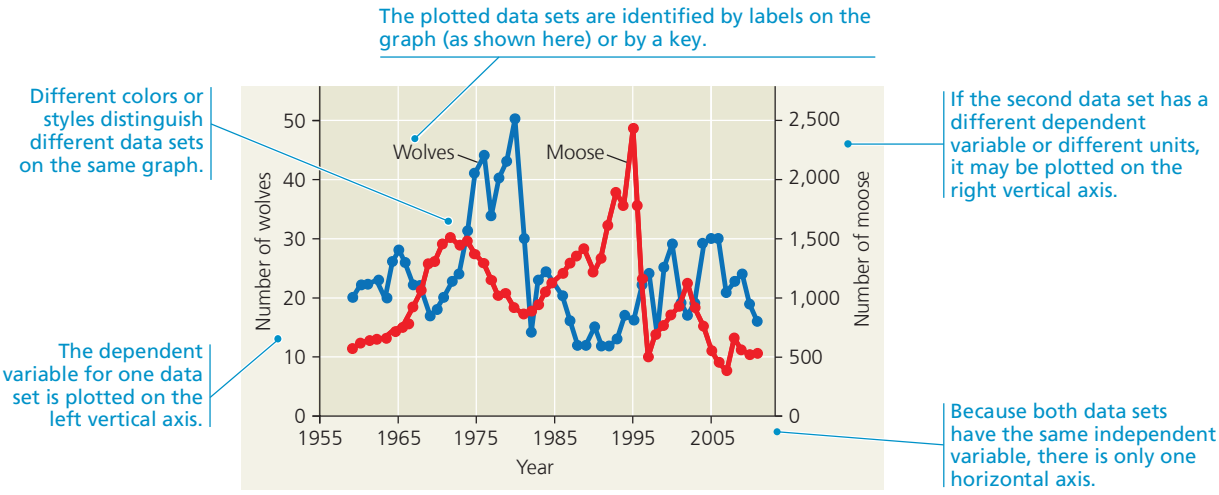
Graphs

Graphs provide a visual representation of numerical data. They may reveal patterns or trends in the data that are not easy to recognize in a table. A graph is a diagram that shows how one variable in a data set is related (or perhaps not related) to another variable. The **independent variable** is the factor that is manipulated or changed by the researchers. The **dependent variable** is the factor that the researchers are measuring in relation to the independent variable. The independent variable is typically plotted on the *x*-axis and the dependent variable on the *y*-axis. Types of graphs that are frequently used in biology include scatter plots, line graphs, bar graphs, and histograms.

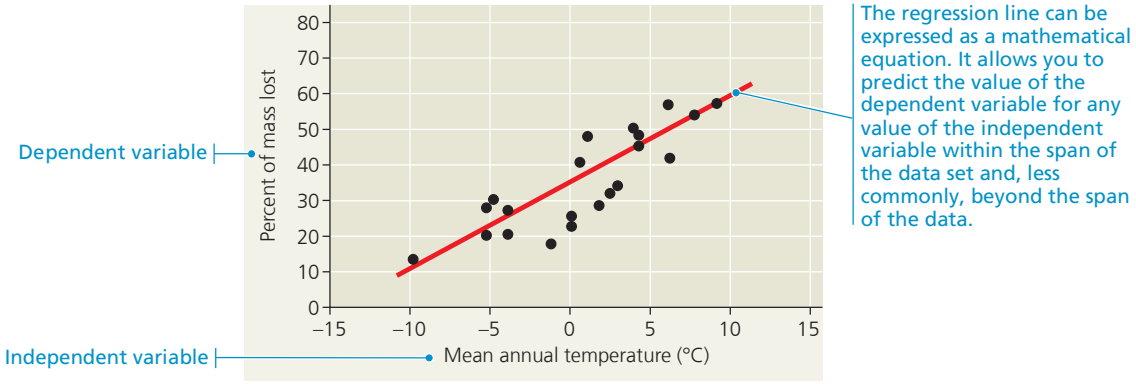
- A **scatter plot** is used when the data for all variables are numerical and continuous. Each piece of data is represented by a point. In a **line graph**, each data point is connected to the next point in the data set with a straight line, as in the graph to the right. (To practice making and interpreting scatter plots and line graphs, see the Scientific Skills Exercises in Chapters 2, 3, 7, 8, 10, 13, 19, 24, 34, 43, 47, 49, 50, 52, 54, and 56.)



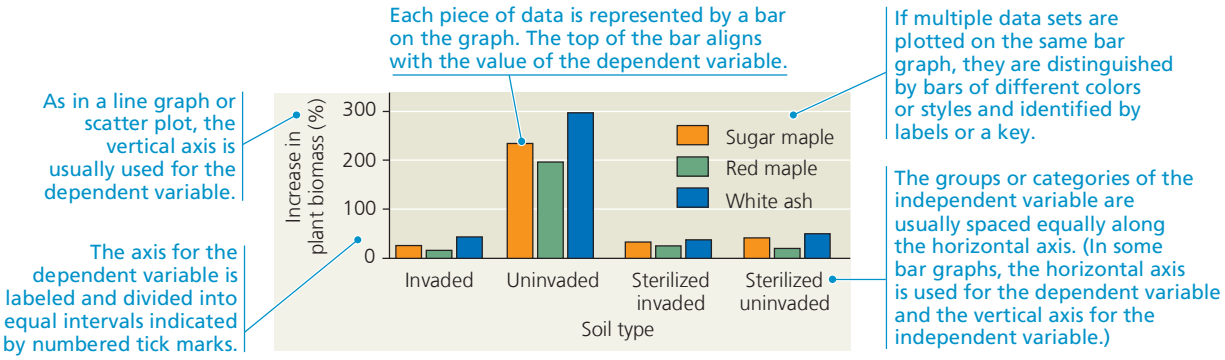
- Two or more data sets can be plotted on the same line graph to show how two dependent variables are related to the same independent variable. (To practice making and interpreting line graphs with two or more data sets, see the Scientific Skills Exercises in Chapters 7, 43, 47, 49, 50, 52, and 56.)



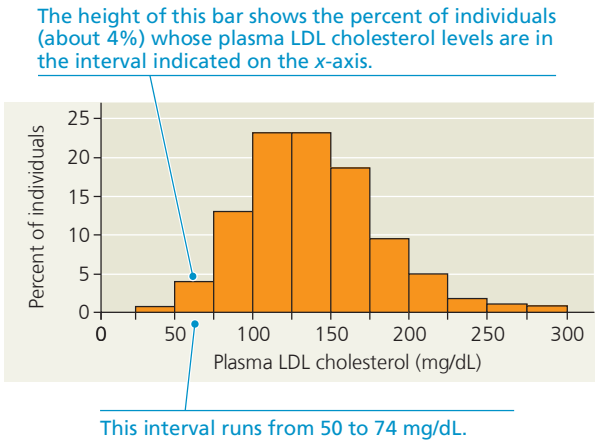
In some scatter plot graphs, a straight or curved line is drawn through the entire data set to show the general trend in the data. A straight line that mathematically best fits the data is called a *regression line*. Alternatively, a mathematical function that best fits the data may describe a curved line, often termed a *best-fit curve*. (To practice making and interpreting regression lines, see the Scientific Skills Exercises in Chapters 3, 10, and 34.)



A **bar graph** is a kind of graph in which the independent variable represents groups or nonnumerical categories and the values of the dependent variable(s) are shown by bars. (To practice making and interpreting bar graphs, see the Scientific Skills Exercises in Chapters 1, 9, 18, 22, 25, 29, 33, 35, 39, 51, 52, and 54.)



A variant of a bar graph called a **histogram** can be made for numeric data by first grouping, or "binning," the variable plotted on the *x*-axis into intervals of equal width. The "bins" may be integers or spans of numbers. In the histogram at right, the intervals are 25 mg/dL wide. The height of each bar shows the percent (or, alternatively, the number) of experimental subjects whose characteristics can be described by one of the intervals plotted on the *x*-axis. (To practice making and interpreting histograms, see the Scientific Skills Exercises in Chapters 12, 14, and 42.)



Glossary of Scientific Inquiry Terms

See Concept 1.3 for more discussion of the process of scientific inquiry.

control group In a controlled experiment, a set of subjects that lacks (or does not receive) the specific factor being tested. Ideally, the control group is identical to the experimental group in other respects.

controlled experiment An experiment designed to compare an experimental group with a control group; ideally, the two groups differ only in the factor being tested.

data Recorded observations.

deductive reasoning A type of logic in which specific results are predicted from a general premise.

dependent variable A factor whose value is measured during an experiment to see whether it is influenced by changes in another factor (the independent variable).

experiment A scientific test. Often carried out under controlled conditions that involve manipulating one factor in a system in order to see the effects of changing that factor.

experimental group A set of subjects that has (or receives) the specific factor being tested in a controlled experiment. Ideally, the experimental group is identical to the control group for all other factors.

hypothesis A testable explanation for a set of observations based on the available data and guided by inductive reasoning. A hypothesis is narrower in scope than a theory.

independent variable A factor whose value is manipulated or changed during an experiment to reveal possible effects on another factor (the dependent variable).

inductive reasoning A type of logic in which generalizations are based on a large number of specific observations.

inquiry The search for information and explanation, often focusing on specific questions.

model A physical or conceptual representation of a natural phenomenon.

prediction In deductive reasoning, a forecast that follows logically from a hypothesis. By testing predictions, experiments may allow certain hypotheses to be rejected.

theory An explanation that is broader in scope than a hypothesis, generates new hypotheses, and is supported by a large body of evidence.

variable A factor that varies during an experiment.

Chi-Square (χ^2) Distribution Table

To use the table, find the row that corresponds to the degrees of freedom in your data set. (The degrees of freedom is the number of categories of data minus 1.) Move along that row to the pair of values that your calculated χ^2 value lies between. Move up from those numbers to the probabilities at the top of the columns to find the probability range for your χ^2 value. A probability of 0.05 or less is generally considered significant. (To practice using the chi-square test, see the Scientific Skills Exercise in Chapter 15.)

Degrees of Freedom (df)	Probability										
	0.95	0.90	0.80	0.70	0.50	0.30	0.20	0.10	0.05	0.01	0.001
1	0.004	0.02	0.06	0.15	0.45	1.07	1.64	2.71	3.84	6.64	10.83
2	0.10	0.21	0.45	0.71	1.39	2.41	3.22	4.61	5.99	9.21	13.82
3	0.35	0.58	1.01	1.42	2.37	3.66	4.64	6.25	7.82	11.34	16.27
4	0.71	1.06	1.65	2.19	3.36	4.88	5.99	7.78	9.49	13.28	18.47
5	1.15	1.61	2.34	3.00	4.35	6.06	7.29	9.24	11.07	15.09	20.52
6	1.64	2.20	3.07	3.83	5.35	7.23	8.56	10.64	12.59	16.81	22.46
7	2.17	2.83	3.82	4.67	6.35	8.38	9.80	12.02	14.07	18.48	24.32
8	2.73	3.49	4.59	5.53	7.34	9.52	11.03	13.36	15.51	20.09	26.12
9	3.33	4.17	5.38	6.39	8.34	10.66	12.24	14.68	16.92	21.67	27.88
10	3.94	4.87	6.18	7.27	9.34	11.78	13.44	15.99	18.31	23.21	29.59

Mean and Standard Deviation

The **mean** is the sum of all data points in a data set divided by the number of data points. The mean (or average) represents a "typical" or central value around which the data points are clustered. The mean of a variable x (denoted by $\bar{x}$) is calculated from the following equation:

$$\bar{x} = \frac{\sum_{i=1}^{n} x_i}{n}$$

In this formula, n is the number of observations, and x_i is the value of the ith observation of variable x; the "Σ" symbol indicates that the n values of x_i are to be summed. (To practice calculating the mean, see the Scientific Skills Exercises in Chapters 27, 32, and 34.)

The **standard deviation** provides a measure of the variation found in a set of data points. The standard deviation (s) of a variable x is calculated from the following equation:

$$s = \sqrt{\frac{\sum_{i=1}^{n} (x_i - \bar{x})^2}{n - 1}}$$

In this formula, n is the number of observations, x_i is the value of the ith observation of variable x, and $\bar{x}$ is the mean of x; the "Σ" symbol indicates that the n values of $(x_i - \bar{x})^2$ are to be summed. (To practice calculating standard deviation, see the Scientific Skills Exercises in Chapters 27, 32, and 34.)

Performing a *t*-Test

One way to assess whether the results of an experiment are statistically significant is to perform a *t*-test. Consider an experiment in which one group of bean plants was treated with fertilizer, whereas a control group was not. Before beginning the experiment, the researchers hypothesized that fertilizer would not affect plant height (the fertilizer would neither increase plant height nor decrease it).

When the experiment was completed, the fertilized plants appeared overall to have grown taller than the unfertilized ones—that is, the mean height of the fertilized plants was greater than the mean height of the unfertilized ones. This result suggests that the fertilizer did, in fact, have an effect and, hence, that the two means are not equal. However, it is also possible that the different means in the two study groups resulted from natural variation of plant heights within the two groups, particularly if the total number of plants is small. How can we determine the likelihood that the observed differences are meaningful and therefore indicate that the fertilizer had an effect? The *t*-test provides a standardized way to decide whether the fertilizer had a significant effect on mean plant height.

To perform a *t*-test, the first step is to calculate the value T (named for "*t*-test"):

$$T = \frac{\bar{x}_1 - \bar{x}_2}{\sqrt{\frac{(s_1^2 + s_2^2)}{n}}}$$

In this equation, $\bar{x}_1$ is the mean for the experimental group (fertilized plants), $\bar{x}_2$ is the mean for the control group (unfertilized plants), s_1 is the standard deviation for the experimental group, and s_2 is the standard deviation for the control group. Finally, n is the number of observations in each of the groups. [Note: The formula shown here is valid when the experimental and control groups have the same number of observations (n). A different formula would be used if the two groups had different numbers of observations.]

To calculate T, plug in the values for $\bar{x}_1$, $\bar{x}_2$, s_1, s_2, and n. T will be close to zero when the means $\bar{x}_1$ and $\bar{x}_2$ are nearly equal, and T will be farther from zero (will differ more greatly from zero) when the means are considerably different.

Is the calculated value T different enough from zero to reject the hypothesis that the two means are equal? This decision is based on the probability (p) that an observed difference between two means could have occurred simply by chance (assuming the initial hypothesis was correct, that is, that the two means are equal). The value of p can be determined using a t distribution that has $2(n-1)$ degrees of freedom, where n is the number of observations. When p is small (typically, when it is less than 0.05), we reject the hypothesis that the means $\bar{x}_1$ and $\bar{x}_2$ are equal. The value of p can be obtained from an online calculator or looked up in tables for t distributions in a statistics textbook.

Credits

Photo Credits

Front Endpapers and Front Matter **laptop** Lemberg Vector studio/Shutterstock; **iPhone, iPad** Pixedon; **Brief Contents, Students page, pp. i, iii, xiv, xvi water lily** Rohrbaugh Photography; **p. iv donkeys** AFP/Getty images; **p. v sunflowers** Christopher Ison/Alamy Stock Photo Image; **p. vi CRISPR video** HHMI BioInteractive; **breathing animation** BioFlix® 3-D Animation; **p. xii human** lanych/Shutterstock; **monkey** David Bagnall/Alamy Stock Photo; **gibbon** Eric Isselee/Shutterstock; **frogs** Joel Sartore/Getty Images; **p. xiii students** YanLev/Shutterstock; **p. xv authors** Josh Frost, Pearson Education, **Neil Campbell** Pearson Education; **p. xviii bioluminescence** Biosphoto/Alamy Stock Photo; **mice** Permission for use granted by Randy Jirtle, Professor of Epigenetics, NC State University, Raleigh, NC; **Dutch Hunger Winter** History and Art Collection/Alamy Stock Photo; **p. xix snowshoe hares (a)** From: Camouflage mismatch in seasonal coat color due to decreased snow duration. L. S. Mills, et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2013 Apr 30;110(18):7360-5. Fig. 1; **(b)** L. Scott Mills; **p. xix graph** Data from K. Kupferschmidt, Resistance Fighters. *Science* 352(6287):758-761. 13 May 2016; **p. xxii space-filling model, ribbon model** Data from PDB ID 2LYZ: R. Diamond. Real-Space Refinement of the Structure of Hen Egg-white Lysozyme. *Journal of Molecular Biology* 82(3):371–91 (Jan. 25, 1974); **wireframe model** Clive Freeman, The Royal Institution/Science Source; **p. xxiv sunflower** © Radius Images/Getty Images; **p. xxv seal** Hemis Morales/agefotostock; **cryo-EM** Veronica Falconieri and Siriam Subramaniam, National Cancer Institute; **students** Pearson Education; **p. xxvi Olden** CUNY; **Bautista** Mark Joseph Hanson; **Mojica** University of Alicante; **Extavour** Kris Snibbe; **Chisholm** Gretchen Ertl; **Gonsalves** Courtesy of Dennis Gonsalves; **Strathdee** UCSD Health; **Rochman** Courtesy of Chelsea Rochman; **p. xxxii seal** Hemis Morales/agefotostock; **p. xxxiii researchers** CDC; **p. xxxiv marmot** Tierfotoagentur/Alamy Stock Photo; **caterpillar** blickwinkel/Alamy Stock Photo Image; **p. xxxv impala** Nature Picture Library/Alamy Stock Photo; **pea blossom** John Swithinbank/Agefotostock; **p. xxxvi DNA** 4X-image/E+/Getty Images; **p. xxxvii cell** Thomas Deerinck, NCMIR/Science Source; **sea horse** Rich Cary/Shutterstock; **p. xxxviii hare** L. Scott Mills; **amber** Iolanda Astor/AGE fotostock/Alamy Stock Photo; **p. xxxix dulse** Andrew J. Martinez/Science Source; **p. xl seed** Howard Sandler/shutterstock; **fungi** Sava Krstic; **p. xli ladybug** André Skonieczny/F1online digitale Bildagentur GmbH/Alamy Stock Photo; **shark** Gino Santa Maria/shutterstock; **tree** Raimund Linke/Photodisc/Getty Images; **p. xlii farmer** Visuals Stock/Alamy Stock Photo; **pollen** Dartmouth College Electron Microscope Facility; **p. xliii penguins** Paul Nicklen/National Geographic Image Collection/Getty Images; **p. xliv virus** Kateryna Kon/Shutterstock; **p. xlv zebras** Mike Taylor/Alamy Stock Photo; **p. xlvi plover** Joel Sartore/National Geographic Images; **p. xlvii reef** Matthew Banks/Alamy Stock Photo Image; **tiger** Edwin Giesbers/Nature Picture Library.

Chapter 1 **1.1 top** J.B. Miller/Florida Department of Environmental Protection; **bottom left** Hopi Hoekstra/Harvard University; **bottom right** Shawn P. Carey/Migration Productions; **1.2 sunflower** John Foxx/ImageState Media Partners; **seahorse** R. Dirscherl/OceanPhoto/Frank Lane Picture Agency; **rabbit** Joe McDonald/Encyclopedia/Corbis; **butterfly** Louise Docker Sydney Australia/Moment/Getty Images; **seedling** Frederic Didillon/Garden Picture Library/Getty Images; **venus flytrap** Maximilian Weinzierl/Alamy Stock Photo; **giraffe** Malcolm Schuyl/Frank Lane Picture Agency; **1.3 biosphere** Leonello Calvetti/Stocktrek Images/Getty Images; **ecosystems** Terry Donnelly/Alamy Stock Photo; **communities, populations** Floris van Breugel/naturepl.com; **organisms** Greg Vaughn/Alamy Stock Photo; **organs** Pat Burner/Pearson Education; **tissues** Photo Researchers/Science Source; **cells** Andreas Holzenburg, University of Texas Rio Grande Valley; **organelles** Jeremy Burgess/Science Source; **p. 6 hummingbird** Jim Zipp/Science Source; **1.4 left** Steve Gschmeissner/Science Source; **1.5** Conly L. Rieder, Wadsworth Center, Albany, NY; **1.6** Gelpi/Fotolia; **1.8a** Carol Yepes/Moment/Getty Images; **inset** Ralf Dahm/Max Planck Institute of Neurobiology; **1.11** James Balog/Aurora/Getty Images; **1.12** Kefca/Shutterstock; **1.13a, b** Eye of Science/Science Source; **1.13c plantae** John Delapp/Design Pics/Getty Images; **fungi** daksel/Fotolia; **animalia** Anup Shah/naturepl.com; **protists** M. I. Walker/Science Source; **1.14 lake** Basel 101658/Shutterstock; **paramecium** SPL/Science Source; **cilium** Dartmouth College Electron Microscope Facility; **cilia** Steve Gschmeissner/Science Source; **1.15** Robert Clark/National Geographic Image Collection; **1.16 left** G. Richmond/FineArt/Alamy Stock Photo; **1.16 right** Origin of Species/Charles Darwin, 1859. Murray edition; **1.17 hawk** jhayes44/E+/Getty Images; **robin** Sebastian Knight/Shutterstock; **flamingo** zhaoyan/Shutterstock; **penguin** Volodymyr Goinyk/Shutterstock; **1.19** Dorling Kindersley ltd/Alamy Stock Photo; **1.21** Michael Nichols/National Geographic Image Collection; **p. 17 Goodall** Jim Dallas/Alamy Stock Photo; **1.23 top** Martin Shields/Alamy Stock Photo; **center** xpacifica/Getty Images; **bottom left** Rolf Hicker Photography/All Canada Photos/Alamy Stock Photo; **bottom right** Maureen Spuhler/Pearson Education; **1.24 left** HildeAnna/Shutterstock; **inset** Courtesy of Hopi Hoekstra/Harvard University; **right** Sacha Vignieri; **inset** Shawn P. Carey, Migration Productions; **1.25** From: The selective advantage of cryptic coloration in mice. Vignieri, S. N., J. Larson, and H. E. Hoekstra. 2010. *Evolution* 64:2153–2158. Fig. 1; **p. 21 Hoekstra** Josh Frost/Pearson Education; **Scientific Skills Exercise** Rolf Nussbaumer Photography/Alamy Stock Photo; **1.26 left** John Amis/AP Images; **top** Don Heupel/AP Images; **right** LBJ Presidential Library/Alamy Stock Photo; **bottom** McClatchy-Tribune/Tribune Content Agency LLC/Alamy Stock Photo; **p. 26 gecko** Chris Mattison/Alamy Stock Photo.

Unit One Interview CUNY.

Chapter 2 **2.1 top** www.pqpictures.co.uk/Alamy Stock Photo; **bottom** Nature Picture Library/Alamy Stock Photo; **2.2 left** sciencephotos/Alamy Stock Photo; **center, right** Stephen Frisch/Pearson Education; **p. 29 Olden** CUNY; **2.3 community** Richard Wong/Alamy Stock Photo; **lily** Tom Hilton; **rock** Andrew Alden; **2.5** National Library of Medicine; **Scientific Skills Exercise** Pascal Goetgheluck/Science Source; **2.13** Stephen Frisch/Pearson Education; **p. 39 gecko** nico99/Shutterstock; **hairs** Andrew Syred/Science Source; **p. 40 Pert** Photo 12/Alamy Stock Photo; **2.17** Nigel Cattlin/Science Source; **p. 43 top** Rolf Nussbaumer Photography/Alamy Stock Photo; **bottom** From: Spray aiming in the bombardier beetle: photographic evidence. T. Eisner et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A* 1999 Aug 17;96(17):9705-9. Fig. 1.

Chapter 3 **3.1 top** Hemis Morales/agefotostock; **bottom** Paul Nicklen/National Geographic Image Collection; **3.3** Alasdair James/E+/Getty Images; **3.4** N.C Brown Center for Ultrastructure Studies, SUNY-ESF, Syracuse, NY; **3.6** Four Oaks/Shutterstock; **p. 48 Solomon** Justina Thorsen; **3.10** JPL/University of Arizona/NASA; **3.11 lemon** Paulista/Fotolia; **ant** Nature Picture Library/Alamy Stock Photo; **blood cells** SCIEPRO/SPL/AGE Fotostock; **bleach** Beth Van Trees/Shutterstock; **Scientific Skills Exercise** Vlad61/Shutterstock; **p. 55 cat** Eric Guilloret/Biosphoto/Science Source.

Chapter 4 **4.1** Florian Möllers/Nature Picture Library; **p. 57 Miller** Robin Heyden, Pearson Education; **Scientific Skills Exercise** Mandeville Special Collections Library; **vials** Jeffrey Bada/Scripps Institution of Oceanography/University of California San Diego; **p. 60 Gordon** Stuart Brinin; **4.6a** David M. Phillips/Science Source; **p. 65 lions** George Sanker/Nature Picture Library.

Chapter 5 **5.1** Mark J. Winter/Science Source; **5.6a arm** Dougal Waters/Getty Images; **plastids** Omikron/Science Source; **5.6b** Mediscan/Alamy Stock Photo; **5.6c cell** John Durham/Science Source; **microfibrils** Biophoto Associates/Science Source; **5.8** blickwinkel/Alamy Stock Photo; **5.10a** Vincent Giordano Photo/Shutterstock; **5.10b** Bamorgan91/Shutterstock; **p. 75 Jones** Courtesy of Lovell Jones; **5.13 eggs** Andrey Stratilatov/Shutterstock; **muscle, collagen** Nina Zanetti/Pearson Education; **5.16 wireframe model** Clive Freeman, The Royal Institution/Science Source; **5.17** Peter M. Colman; **5.18 spider** Dieter Hopf/imageBROKER/AGE Fotostock; **blood cells** SCIEPRO/SPL/AGE Fotostock; **5.19** Eye of Science/Science Source; **p. 82 Pauling** James W. Behnke/Pearson Education; **5.21 top** Dsrjsr; **bottom** Laguna Design/Science Source; **5.25** Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC); **5.26 DNA** Alfred Pasieka/Science Source; **neanderthal** Mark Thiessen/National Geographic/Alamy Stock Photo; **hippo** Frontline Photography/Alamy Stock Photo; **whale** WaterFrame_mus/Alamy Stock Photo; **5.26 doctor** Chassenet/BSIP/Alamy Stock Photo; **elephants** Villiers Steyn/Shutterstock; **roots** D.J. Read, Department of Animal and Plant Sciences, University of Sheffield; **Scientific Skills Exercise human** lanych/Shutterstock; **monkey** David Bagnall/Alamy Stock Photo; **gibbon** Eric Isselee/Shutterstock; **Problem-Solving Exercise** Cindy Hopkins/Alamy Stock Photo; **p. 91 chick** Africa Studio/Shutterstock.

Unit Two Interview **top** Mark Joseph Hansen; **bottom** Robin Heyden.

Chapter 6 **6.1** M. I. Walker/Science Source; **6.3 brightfield, phase-contrast, Nomarski** Elisabeth Pierson/Pearson Education; **fluorescence** Michael W. Davidson/The Florida State University Research Foundation; **confocal** Karl Garsha; **deconvolution** Hans van der Voort SVI; **super-resolution** Muthugapatti K. Kandasamy, Biomedical Microscopy Core, University of Georgia; **SEM, TEM** Steve Gschmeissner/Science Source; **cryo-EM** Veronica Falconieri and Siriam Subramaniam, National Cancer Institute; **6.5b** CNRI/Science Source; **6.6a** Don W. Fawcett/Science Source; **Scientific Skills Exercise** Kelly Tatchell; **6.8 human cells** S. Cinti/Science Source; **yeast SEM** SPL/Science Source; **yeast TEM** A. Barry Dowsett/Science Source; **duckweed** Biophoto Associates/Science Source; **alga SEM** SPL/Science Source; **alga TEM** From: Flagellar microtubule dynamics in *Chlamydomonas*: cytochalasin D induces periods of microtubule shortening and elongation; and colchicine induces disassembly of the distal, but not proximal, half of the flagellum. W. L. Dentler et al. *J Cell Biol.* 1992 Jun;117(6):1289-98. Fig. 10d; **p. 102 nucleus** Thomas Deerinck/Mark Ellisman/NCMIR; **6.9 nuclear envelope** Biophoto Associates/Science Source; **pore complex** Don W. Fawcett/Science Source; **nuclear lamina** Ueli Aebi; **6.10 left** Don W. Fawcett/Science Source; **right** Harry Noller; **p. 103 Ramakrishnan** Courtesy of Venki Ramakrishnan; **6.11** R. W. Bolender; Don W. Fawcett/Science Source; **6.12** Don W. Fawcett/Science Source; **6.13a** Steve Gschmeissner/Science Source; **6.13b** Don W. Fawcett/Science Source; **6.14** Eldon H. Newcomb; **6.17a** Keith R. Porter/Science Source; **6.17c** From: The shape of mitochondria and the number of mitochondrial nucleoids during the cell cycle of *Euglena gracilis*. Y. Hayashi and K. Ueda. *Journal of Cell Science*, 93:565-570, fig. 3. Copyright © 1989 by Company of Biologists; **6.18a** Jeremy Burgess/Mary Martin/Science Source; **6.18b** Ed Reschke/Photolibrary/Getty Images; **6.19** Eldon H. Newcomb; **6.20** Albert Tousson; **p. 113 Langford** Syracuse University; **6.21b** Bruce J. Schnapp; **Table 6.1 left to right** Gopal Murti/Science Source, Nikon MicroscopyU (www.microscopyu.com), Mark Ladinsky; **6.22** Kent L. McDonald; **6.23a** Biophoto Associates/Science Source; **6.23b** Oliver Meckes, Nicole Ottawa/Eye of Science/Science Source; **6.24a** Omikron/Science Source; **6.24b** Dartmouth College Electron Microscope Facility; **6.24c** Richard W. Linck; **6.25** From: Organization of actin, myosin, and intermediate filaments in the brush border of intestinal epithelial cells. Hirokawa et al. *J Cell Biol.* 1982 Aug;94(2):425-43. Fig. 1. The Rockefeller University Press; **6.26a** Clara Franzini-Armstrong/University of Pennsylvania; **6.26b** M. I. Walker/Science Source; **6.26c** Michael Clayton/University of Wisconsin; **6.27** G. F. Leedale/Science Source; **6.29** Eldon H. Newcomb, University of Wisconsin, Department of Botany; **6.30 top** Reproduced with permission from: *Freeze-Etch Histology*, by L. Orci and A. Perrelet, Springer-Verlag, Heidelberg, 1975. Plate 32. Page 68. Copyright 1975 by Springer-Verlag GmbH & Co KG; **6.30 center** From: Fine structure of desmosomes, hemidesmosomes, and an adepidermal globular layer in developing newt epidermis. DE Kelly. *J Cell Biol.* 1966 Jan; 28(1):51-72. Fig. 7. Reproduced by permission of Rockefeller University Press; **bottom** From: Low resistance junctions in crayfish. Structural changes with functional uncoupling. C. Peracchia and A. F. Dulhunty, *The Journal of Cell Biology.* 1976 Aug; 70(2 pt 1):419-39. Fig. 6. Reproduced by permission of Rockefeller University Press; **6.31** Eye of Science/Science Source; **p. 125 epithelial cell** Susumu Nishinaga/Science Source.

Chapter 7 **7.1** David Goodsell; **p. 129 mosaic** camerawithlegs/Fotolia; **7.10** Used by permission of B. L. de Groot. Related to work done for: Water Permeation Across Biological Membranes: Mechanism and Dynamics of Aquaporin-1 and GlpF. B. L de Groot, H. Grubmüller. *Science* 294:2353-2357 (2001); **p. 132 Agre** Sam Kittner, Pearson Education; **7.14** Michael Abbey/Science Source; **p. 135 ion channel** From: Crystal structure of a mammalian voltage-dependent Shaker family K^+ channel. S. B. Long et al. *Science*. 2005 Aug 5;309(5736):897-903. Epub 2005 Jul 7. Cover image; **p. 135 Serrano** Darren Phillips/New Mexico State University; **Scientific Skills Exercise** Photo Fun/Shutterstock; **7.21 left** Biophoto Associates/Science Source; **center** Don W. Fawcett/Science Source; **right** From: M.M. Perry and A.B. Gilbert, *Journal of Cell Science* 39: 257–272, Figs. 11 and 13 (1979). © 1979 The Company of Biologists Ltd.; **p. 142 spray** Kristoffer Tripplaar/Alamy Stock Photo.

Chapter 8 **8.1** Biosphoto/Alamy Stock Photo; **8.2** Stephen Simpson/Getty Images; **8.3** Robert N. Johnson/RnJ Photography; **8.4a** From: Micromechanical properties of biological silica in skeletons of deep-sea sponges. Alexander Woesz et al. *J. Mat. Res.* Volume 21, Issue 8, August 2006, pp. 2068-2078. Fig. 1; **8.4b** Neale Clark Agency/robertharding/Alamy Stock Photo; **8.15** Thomas Steitz; **Scientific Skills Exercise** Fer Gregory/Shutterstock; **8.17** Jack Dykinga/Nature Picture Library/Alamy Stock Photo; **8.22** Keith R. Porter/Science Source; **p. 163 penguins** Flickr/Getty Images.

Chapter 9 **9.1** Tierfotoagentur/Alamy Stock Photo; **9.3** Dionisvera/Fotolia; **9.9** Z. Hong Zhou, University of California, Los Angeles; **Scientific Skills Exercise** Thomas Kitchin & Victoria Hurst/Design Pics/Alamy Stock Photo; **p. 180 cacao** Aedka Studio/Shutterstock; **p. 186 model** Medical Research Council; **CoQ10** Stephen Rees/Shutterstock.

Chapter 10 **10.1 tree** Rolf Roeckl/mauritius images GmbH/Alamy Stock Photo; **caterpillar** blickwinkel/Alamy Stock Photo; **10.2a** STILLFX/Shutterstock; **10.2b** NatalieJean/Shutterstock; **10.2c** M. I. Walker/Science Source; **10.2d** Michael Abbey/Science Source; **10.2e** Heide N. Schulz-Vogt, Leibniz Institute for Baltic Sea Research Warnemuende; **10.3 top, 10.21** Andreas Holzenburg, University of Texas Rio Grande Valley; **bottom** Jeremy Burgess/Science Source; **p. 194** ***C. thermalis*** Dennis Nürnberg; **10.11b** Christine L. Case; **Scientific Skills Exercise** The Ohio State University; **10.20a** Doukdouk/Alamy Stock Photo; **10.20b** Keysurfing/Shutterstock; **p. 211 snow** gary yim/Shutterstock.

Chapter 11 **11.1 top, 11.5c** Federico Veronesi/Gallo Images/Alamy Stock Photo; **bottom** Nature Picture Library/Alamy Stock Photo; **11.2a–c** A. Dale Kaiser/Stanford University; **11.2d** Michiel Vos; **Problem-Solving Exercise** Bruno Coignard and Jeff Hageman, CDC; **p. 214 Bassler** Alena Soboleva; **11.7** From: High-resolution crystal structure of an engineered human beta2-adrenergic G protein-coupled receptor. V. Cherezov, et al. *Science*. 2007 Nov 23;318(5854):1258-65. Epub 2007 Oct 25; **p. 220 Bautista** Mark Joseph Hanson; **11.19** Gopal Murti/Science Source; **11.21** William Wood; **p. 233 chips** Maureen Spuhler/Seelevel.com.

Chapter 12 **12.1** George von Dassow; **12.2a, c** Biophoto/Science Source; **12.2b** Biology Pics/Science Source; **12.3** Andrew S. Bajer, University of Oregon, Eugene; **12.4, 12.5** Biophoto/Science Source; **12.7** Conly L. Rieder, Wadsworth Center, Albany, NY; **12.8 left** Jane Stout and Claire Walczak, Indiana University; **right** Matthew J. Schibler; **12.10a** Don W. Fawcett/Science Source; **12.10b** B. A. Palevitz and E. H. Newcomb, University of Wisconsin; **12.11** Elizabeth Pierson, Pearson Education; **p. 246 Nurse** Zach Veilleux, Rockefeller University; **12.18** Guenter Albrecht-Buehler; **12.19** Lan Bo Chen; **12.20** Nature's Geometry/Science Source; **Scientific Skills Exercise** Molecular Expressions; **p. 250 Alberts** Photo by Tom Kochel, courtesy of the Department of Biochemistry and Biophysics, The University of California San Francisco. Gitschier J. (2012) "Scientist Citizen: An Interview with Bruce Alberts". *PLoS Genetics* 8(5): e1002743. doi:10.1371/journal.pgen.1002743. Figure 1; **p. 252 onion cells** Scenics & Science/Alamy Stock Photo; **HeLa cells** Steve Gschmeissner/Science Source.

Unit Three Interview **Mojica, flask, petri dish** University of Alicante; **lake** Richard Brown/Alamy Stock Photo.

Chapter 13 **13.1** PeopleImages/DigitalVision/Getty Images; **p. 255 sperm** Don W. Fawcett/Science Source; **13.2a** Roland Birke/Okapia/Science Source; **13.2b** George Ostertag/Alamy Stock Photo; **13.3 top** Ermakoff/Science Source; **bottom** CNRI/Science Source; **Scientific Skills Exercise** SciMAT/Science Source; **13.12** Mark Petronczki and Maria Siomos; **13.13** John Walsh, Micrographia.com; **p. 268 bananas** Randy Ploetz.

Chapter 14 **14.1** John Swithinbank/Agefotostock; **14.14a** Maximilian Weinzierl/Alamy Stock Photo; **14.14b** Paul Dymond/Alamy Stock Photo; **Scientific Skills Exercise** Apomares/E+/Getty Images; **14.15** Barbara Bowman, Pearson Education; **14.16** Patricia Willocq; **14.18** Michael Ciesielski Photography; **p. 287 Wexler** Ron Galella, Ltd./Getty Images; **14.19** CNRI/Science Source; **p. 293 cat** Arco Images GmbH/Alamy Stock Photo; **family** Rene MALTETE/Gamma-Rapho/Getty Images.

Chapter 15 **15.1** Courtesy of Peter Lichter; **15.2** Martin Shields/Alamy Stock Photo; **15.5** Andrew Syred/Science Source; **15.6b** Li Jingwang/E+/Getty Images; **15.6c** Kosam/Shutterstock; **15.6d** Creative images/Fotolia; **15.8** Jagodka/Shutterstock; **Scientific Skills Exercise** Oliver911119/Shutterstock; **p. 306 Orr-Weaver** Maria Nemchuk; **15.15 left** CNRI/Science Source; **right** Denys_Kuvaiev/Fotolia; **p. 311 Tilghman** Denise Applewhite, Office of Communications, Princeton University; **15.18** Phomphan/Shutterstock; **p. 313 butterfly** James K Adams.

Chapter 16 **16.1** 4X-image/E+/Getty Images; **16.3** Oliver Meckes/Eye of Science/Science Source; **Scientific Skills Exercise** Marevision Agency/AGE Fotostock/Alamy Stock Photo; **16.6a** Library of Congress; **16.6b** Science Source; **16.13a** Jerome Vinograd; **16.13b** From: Enrichment and visualization of small replication units from cultured mammalian cells. D. J. Burks et al. *J Cell Biol*. 1978 Jun;77(3):762-73. Fig. 6A; **16.22** Peter Lansdorp; **16.23 DNA strand** Gopal Murti/Science Source; **nucleosome** Victoria E. Foe; **chromosome** Biophoto/Science Source; **16.24a** Thomas Reid, Genetics Branch/CCR/NCI/NIH; **16.24b** Michael R. Speicher/Medical University of Graz; **p. 334 models** Thomas A. Steitz/Yale University.

Chapter 17 **17.1** AFP/Getty Images; **17.7a** Keith V. Wood; **17.7b** Sinclair Stammers/Science Source; **p. 346 Steitz** National Science Foundation; **17.18** Joachim Frank; **17.23b** Barbara Hamkalo; **17.24** Oscar Miller/Science Source; **17.26** Eye of Science/Science Source; **Problem-Solving Exercise** Duplass/Shutterstock; **p. 360 Mojica** University of Alicante; **p. 364 cat** Vasiliy Koval/Shutterstock.

Chapter 18 **18.1 top** gallimaufry/Shutterstock; **18.1 bottom** Andreas Werth; **18.8a** Permission for use granted by Randy Jirtle, Professor of Epigenetics, NC State University, Raleigh, NC; **18.8b** History and Art Collection/Alamy Stock Photo; **Scientific Skills Exercise** hidesy/E+/Getty Images; **18.13** Michael Speicher and Nigel Carter, Medical University of Graz; **p. 381 Lin** Courtesy of Haifan Lin; **18.16** Mike Wu; **18.20** F. Rudolf Turner, Indiana University; **18.21** Wolfgang Driever, University of Freiburg, Freiburg, Germany; **p. 387 Hopkins** Courtesy of the Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Archives; **18.22** Ruth Lahmann, The Whitehead Institution; **18.27** Bloomberg/Getty Images; **p. 394 King** © University of Washington; **p. 397 fish** Peter Herring/Image Quest Marine.

Chapter 19 **19.1** Thomas Deerinck, NCMIR/Science Source; **19.2** Peter von Sengbusch, Botanik; **19.3a** Science Source; **19.3b** Linda M. Stannard, University of Cape Town/Science Source; **19.3c** Hazel Appleton, Health Protection Agency Centre for Infections/Science Source; **19.3d** Ami Images/Science Source; **19.7** molekuul.be/Fotolia; **p. 404 Mojica** University of Alicante; **19.9 top** Charles Dauguet/Science Source; **bottom** Petit Format/Science Source; **19.10a** CDC; **19.10b** Kuhn and Rossmann research groups, Purdue University; **19.10c** Cynthia Goldsmith, CDC; **p. 410 Satcher** Courtesy of David Satcher; **Scientific Skills Exercise** Dong yanjun/Imaginechina/AP Images; **19.11** Olivier Asselin/Alamy Stock Photo; **inset** James Gathany, CDC; **19.12** Nigel Cattlin/Alamy Stock Photo; **p. 414 Tamiflu** Nelson Hale/Shutterstock.

Chapter 20 **20.1** Ian Derrington; **20.2** P. Morris, Garvan Institute of Medical Research; **20.6b** Scott Sinklier/Alamy Stock Photo; **20.9** Ethan Bier; **20.13** George S. Watts and Bernard W. Futscher, University of Arizona Cancer Center; **20.14** Stephen McNally, UC Berkeley; **p. 427 Rotimi** National Human Genome Research Institute; **20.17** Roslin Institute; **20.18** Pat Sullivan/AP Images; **20.19** Steve Gschmeissner/Science Photo Library/Alamy Stock Photo; **20.23** Brad DeCecco/Redux; **20.24** Steve Helber/AP Images; **p. 439 Suzuki** dpa picture alliance archive/Alamy Stock Photo; **p. 441 hot spring** Galyna Andrushko/Shutterstock.

Chapter 21 **21.1 elephant shark** Image Quest Marine; **sea horse** Rich Cary/Shutterstock; **21.4** University of Toronto Lab; **21.5** Affymetrix; **21.7 left** AP Images; **right** Virginia Walbot; **p. 451 Walbot** Courtesy of Virginia Walbot; **21.10a** Oscar L. Miller Jr., Dept. of Biology, University of Virginia; **p. 455 Lander** Justin Knight Photography; **21.18 mice** Francois Gohier/Science Source; **brain cells** From: Altered ultrasonic vocalization in mice with a disruption in the *Foxp2* gene. W. Shu et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2005 Jul 5;102(27):9643-8. Epub 2005 Jun 27. Fig. 3; **p. 463 Rotimi** National Human Genome Research Institute; **p. 464 sea urchins** WaterFrame/Alamy Stock Photo; **p. 466 treehopper** Patrick Landmann/Science Source.

Unit Four Interview **top** Kris Snibbe; **bottom** Courtesy of Cassandra Extavour.

Chapter 22 **22.1** Lighthouse/UIG/AGE Fotostock; **22.2 rhino fossil** *Recherches sur les ossemens fossiles.* G. Cuvier. Atlas, pl. 17 (1836); **iguana** Wayne Lynch/All Canada Photos/AGE Fotostock; **frog** The Natural History Museum, London/Alamy Stock Photo; **Alfred Russel Wallace** The Natural History Museum/Alamy Stock Photo; ***The Origin of Species*** 1859 Murray edition of *The Origin of Species* by Charles Darwin; **22.4** Karen Moskowitz/Stone/Getty Images; **22.5 left** Derek Bayes/Lebrecht Music and Arts Photo Library/Alamy Stock Photo; **right** Photo Researchers/Science History Images/Alamy Stock Photo; **22.6a** Michel Gunther/Science Source; **22.6b** David Hosking/Frank Lane Picture Agency; **22.6c** David Hosking/Alamy Stock Photo; **22.7** Darwin, C. R. Notebook B: Transmutation of species (1837-1838), p. 36. CUL-DAR121; **22.9 Brussels sprouts** Arena Photo UK/Fotolia; **kale** Željko Radojko/Fotolia; **cabbage** Guy Shapira/Shutterstock; **wild mustard** Martin Fowler/Alamy Stock Photo; **broccoli** YinYang/E+/Getty Images; **kohlrabi** Motorolka/Shutterstock; **22.10** Robert Hamilton/Alamy Stock Photo; **22.11** Kichigin/Shutterstock; **22.12a** William Mullins/Alamy Stock Photo; **22.12b** Chris Mattison/Alamy Stock Photo; **22.13** Scott P. Carroll; **22.16 left** Keith Wheeler/Science Source; **right** Omikron/Science Source; **22.18 left** ANT Photo Library/Science Source; **right** Joe McDonald/Steve Bloom Images/Alamy Stock Photo; **22.19** Chris Linz, Thewissen lab, Northeastern Ohio Universities College of Medicine (NEOUCOM); **p. 485 honeypot ant** © Joel Sartore/National Geographic Image Collection.

Chapter 23 **23.1** Sylvain Cordier/Science Source; **p. 487 Grants** Robin Heyden; **23.3** Juniors Bildarchiv GmbH/Alamy Stock Photo; **23.5** Erick Greene; **23.6 left** Edward Bennett Agency/Design Pics Inc/Alamy Stock Photo; **right** Patrick Valkenburg/Alaska Department of Fish and Game; **Scientific Skills Exercise** DLeonis/Fotolia; **23.11** Bruce Montagne/Dembinsky Photo Associates/Alamy Stock Photo; **23.12 top** Kristin Stanford, Stone Laboratory, Ohio State University; **bottom** Kent Bekker, United States Fish and Wildlife Service; **23.14** Anthony Bannister/NHPA/Photoshot/Newscom; **23.15** Dave Blackey Agency/All Canada Photos/Alamy Stock Photo; **23.18 blood cells** Eye of Science/Science Source; **doctor with child** Caroline Penn/Alamy Stock Photo; **mosquito** James Gathany and Frank Collins, University of Notre Dame, CDC; **23.19a** From: Camouflage mismatch in seasonal coat color due to decreased snow duration. L. S. Mills, et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2013 Apr 30;110(18):7360-5. Fig. 1; **23.19b** L. Scott Mills; **p. 505 lake** Thomas/Pat Leeson/Science Source.

Chapter 24 **24.1** Joel Sartore/National Geographic Image Collection; **24.2a left** Malcolm Schuyl/Alamy Stock Photo; **right** Wave RF/Getty Images; **24.2b top left** Robert Kneschke/Kalium/AGE Fotostock; **top center** Justin Horrocks/E+/Getty Images; **top right** Ryan Mcvay/Getty Images; **bottom left** Dragon Images/Shutterstock; **bottom center** arek_malang/Shutterstock; **bottom right** Jaki good photography - celebrating the art of life/Moment Open/Getty Images; **24.3a** Phil Huntley-Franck; **24.3b** Jerry A. Payne, USDA Agricultural Research Service, Bugwood.org; **24.3c** Hogle Zoo; **24.3d** USDA; **24.3e** Imagebroker/Alamy Stock Photo; **24.3f, g** Takahiro Asami; **24.3h** Larry Geddis/Alamy Stock Photo; **24.3i** Chuck Brown/Science Source; **24.3j** mivod/Shutterstock; **24.3k** Bagicat/Fotolia; **24.3l** FreeReinDesigns/Fotolia; **24.3m** Kazutoshi Okuno; **24.4 top** CLFProductions/Shutterstock; **right** Boris Karpinski/Alamy Stock Photo; **bottom** Troy Maben/AP Images; **24.6a** Courtesy of Brian Langerhans; **24.8 maps** NASA EOS Earth Observing System; **shrimp** Arthur Anker, Florida Museum of Natural History; **Scientific Skills Exercise** John Shaw/Avalon/Photoshot/Alamy Stock Photo; **24.11** Pam and Doug Soltis; **24.12** Ole Seehausen; **24.13** Jeroen Speybroeck, Research

Institute for Nature and Forest; **24.14a** Steve Byland/Shutterstock; **24.14b** Bonnie Taylor Barry/Shutterstock; **Problem-Solving Exercise** Philimon Bulawayo/Reuters; **24.16** Ole Seehausen; **p. 521 Gould** Ulf Andersen/Hulton Archive/Getty Images; **24.18** Jason Rick and Loren Rieseberg; **24.20** Reprinted by permission from *Nature*. From: Allele substitution at a flower colour locus produces a pollinator shift in monkeyflowers. H. D. Bradshaw et al. *Nature*. 2003 November 12; 426(6963):176-8. Fig. 1. © 2003. Macmillan Magazines Limited; **p. 524 frog** Rolf Nussbaumer Photography/Alamy Stock Photo.

Chapter 25 **25.1** Juergen Ritterbach/Alamy Stock Photo; **25.2** Stringer/Chile/Reuters/Newscom; **25.3 left** NASA; **right** Deborah S. Kelley; **25.4b** From: Chemically-Induced Birthing and Foraging in Vesicle Systems. F. M. Menger, and Kurt Gabrielson. *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, February 1994, 116 (4), pp 1567–1568. Fig. 1; **25.4c** Jack W. Szostak; **p. 528 Szostak** Li Huang/Courtesy of Jack Szostak; **25.5a** John Cancalosi/Alamy Stock Photo Image; **25.5b** Jerome Gorin/PhotoAlto sas/Alamy Stock Photo; **25.5c** Michael Lockley; **25.5d** Iolanda Astor/AGE Fotostock/Alamy Stock Photo; **25.5e** Government of Yukon; **25.8 stromatolites** Biosphoto/Alamy Stock Photo; **stromatolite (inset)** Sinclair Stammers/Science Source; **microfossil** David Lamb; ***Coccosteus*** Roger Jones; ***Tiktaalik*** Ted Daeschler/Academy of Natural Sciences; ***Archaefructus*** David L. Dilcher and Ge Sun; **25.11a** Xunlai Yuan; **25.11b** From: The most probable Eumetazoa among late Precambrian macrofossils. A.Y. Ivantsov. *Invertebrate Zoology*. Vol.14. No.2: 127–133 [in English], 2017. Fig 2; **25.13a** From: Four hundred-million-year-old vesicular arbuscular mycorrhizae. W. Remy et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci USA*. 1994 Dec 6;91(25):11841-3. Figure 1; **inset** From: Four hundred-million-year-old vesicular arbuscular mycorrhizae. Remy W1, Taylor TN, Hass H, Kerp H. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 1994 Dec 6;91(25):11841-3. Figure 4; **p. 537 Vermeij** Courtesy of Geerat J. Vermeij; **Scientific Skills Exercise** Biophoto Associates/Science Source; **25.23** ***Dubautia laxa, Argyroxiphium sandwicense, Dubautia waialealae, Dubautia scabra, Dubautia linearis*** Gerald D. Carr; ***Carlquistia muirii*** Bruce G. Baldwin; **25.24** Jean Kern; **25.25** Juniors Bildarchiv GmbH/Alamy Stock Photo; **25.27 top** David Horsley; **bottom** From: Genetic and developmental basis of evolutionary pelvic reduction in threespine sticklebacks. MD Shapiro et al. *Nature*. Erratum. 2006 February 23; 439(7079):1014; **25.28** Sinclair Stammers/Science Source; **p. 547 Extavour** Kris Snibbe; **p. 551 volcano** Solent News/Splash News/Newscom.

Unit Five Interview **top** Gretchen Ertl; **bottom** Steven J. Biller.

Chapter 26 **26.1** blickwinkel/Alamy Stock Photo; **26.17a** Mick Ellison; **26.17b** Julius T. Csotonyi/Science Source; **26.22** Gary Crabbe/Enlightened Images/Alamy Stock Photo; **inset** Gerald Schoenknecht; **Scientific Skills Exercise** Nigel Cattlin/Alamy Stock Photo; **p. 570 Moran** Courtesy of Nancy Moran; **p. 572 manatee** David Fleetham/Alamy Stock Photo.

Chapter 27 **27.1 top** Zastolskiy Viktor/Shutterstock; **center right** Janice Haney Carr, CDC; **bottom left** Irina Sen/Shutterstock; **bottom right** Oliver Meckes/Eye of Science/Science Source; **27.2a** Janice Haney Carr, CDC; **27.2b** CDC; **27.2c** Stem Jems/Science Source; **27.3** L. Brent Selinger/Pearson; **27.4** Immo Rantala/SPL/Science Source; **27.5** Oliver Meckes/Eye of Science/Science Source; **27.6** Kwangshin Kim/Science Source; **27.7** David DeRosier; **27.8a** From: Taxonomic Considerations of the Family Nitrobacteraceae Buchanan: Requests for Opinions. Stanley W. Watson, *IJSEM* (*International Journal of Systematic and Evolutionary Microbiology* formerly (in 1971) *Intl. Journal of Systematic Bacteriology*), July 1971 vol. 21 no. 3, 254-270. FIg. 14; **27.8b** From: Light-dependent governance of cell shape dimensions in cyanobacteria. B. L. Montgomery. *Front Microbiol*. 2015 May 26;6:514. doi: 10.3389/fmicb.2015.00514. eCollection 2015. Fig. 1. CC BY 4.0; **27.9** Huntington Potter; **27.12** Charles C. Brinton, Jr; **27.14** John Walsh/Science Source; **27.15** Paul Gunning/Science Source; **27.17 spirochetes** Cnri/SPL/Science Source; **proteobacteria** Yuichi Suwa; **cyanobacteria** Michael Abbey/Science Source; **chlamydia** Moredon Animal Health/SPL/Science Source; **gram-positive bacteria** Paul Alan Hoskisson; **27.18** Irina Sen/Shutterstock; **27.19** Pascale Frey-Klett; **27.20** WaterFrame/Alamy Stock Photo; **p. 587 Chisholm** Gretchen Ertl **27.21 left** Steve Heap Agency/Zoonar GmbH/Alamy Stock Photo; **center** David M. Phillips/Science Source; **right** James Gathany, CDC; **Scientific Skills Exercise** Slava Epstein; **27.24** From: RNA-directed gene editing specifically eradicates latent and prevents new HIV-1 infection. W. Hu et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2014 Aug 5;111(31):11461-6. Fig. 3D; **27.25** From: Synthesis of High-Molecular-Weight Polyhydroxyalkanoates by Marine Photosynthetic Purple Bacteria. M. Higuchi-Takeuchi et al. *PLoS One*. 2016 Aug 11;11(8):e0160981. doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0160981. eCollection 2016. Fig. 2; **27.26** Accent Alaska/Alamy Stock Photo; **p. 592 pin** Biophoto Associates/Science Source.

Chapter 28 **28.1, 28.2** Brian S. Leander; **Scientific Skills Exercise** Shutterstock; **28.4** Ken Ishida; **28.5** ***Giardia*** Tony Brain/Science Source; **diatom** M I Walker/NHPA/Photoshot/Newscom; ***Volvox*** Frank Fox/Science Source; ***Volvox* (inset)** David J. Patterson; ***Globigerina*** Howard Spero, University of California Davis; ***Globigerina* (inset)** National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA); **amoeba** Michael Abbey/Science Source; **28.6a** The Natural History Museum, London/Science Source; **28.6b** CSIRO; **28.7** David M. Phillips/Science Source; **28.8** David J. Patterson; **28.9** Oliver Meckes/Science Source; **28.10** David J. Patterson; **28.11** CDC; **28.12** Steve Gschmeissner/Science Source; **28.13** Colin Bates; **28.14** Paul Kay/Oxford Scientific/Getty Images; **28.15a** Jennifer L. Matthews; **28.15b** Noble Proctor/Science Source; **28.16** Guy Brugerolle; **28.17a** David M. Phillips/Science Source; **28.17b** Science Source; **28.18** ©1979 Rockefeller University Press. *Journal of Experimental Medicine*. 149:172-184. doi:10.1084/jem.149.1.172; **28.19a** M. I. Walker/Science Source; **28.20** Perennou Nuridsany/Science Source; **28.21** Nature Picture Library/Alamy Stock Photo; **28.22** Eva Nowack; **28.23** ***Bonnemaisonia hamifera*** D. P. Wilson/Science Source; ***Palmaria palmata*** Andrew J. Martinez/Science Source; **nori** Biophoto Associates/Science Source; **sushi** Dorling Kindersley ltd/Alamy Stock Photo; **28.24a** Michael Abbey/Science Source; **28.24b** Laurie Campbell/Photoshot; **28.24c** David L. Ballantine; **28.25** William L. Dentler; **28.27** Ken Hickman; **28.28** Robert Kay; **28.29** Patrick Keeling; **28.30** David Rizzo; **p. 617** ***Didinium*** Greg Antipa/Biophoto Associates/Science Source.

Chapter 29 **29.1** Exactostock/SuperStock; **29.2** From: Cellulose Biosynthesis: Exciting Times for a Difficult Field of Study, *Annual Review of Plant Physiology and Plant Molecular Biology* Vol. 50:245-276 (Volume publication date June 1999) Fig. 1; **29.3** M. I. Walker/Science Source; **29.5 left** Linda Graham/University of Wisconsin-Madison; **right** Karen S. Renzaglia; **29.6** Johan De Meester/Arterra Picture Library/Alamy Stock Photo; **inset** Photo by Brian King, courtesy of Nancy Smith-Huerta, Miami University; **29.7** Ed Reschke/Getty Images; **29.8** Charles H. Wellman; **29.9** From: The early evolution of land plants, from fossils to genomics: a commentary on Lang (1937) 'On the plant-remains from the Downtonian of England and Wales'. D. Edwards and P. Kenrick. *Philos Trans R Soc Lond B Biol Sci*. 2015 Apr 19;370(1666). pii: 20140343. doi: 10.1098/rstb.2014.0343; **29.11** Custom Life Science Images/Alamy Stock Photo; **29.12** Bill Malcolm & Nancy Malcolm; **29.13 thalloid liverwort** Alvin E. Staffan/Science Source; **sporophyte** Linda E. Graham; **leafy liverwort, hornwort** The Hidden Forest; **moss** Tony Wharton/Fundamental Photographs; **29.15a** John Warburton-Lee Photography/Alamy Stock Photo; **29.15b** Thierry Lauzun/Iconotec/Alamy Stock Photo; **29.16** Hans Kerp; **Scientific Skills Exercise** Richard Becker/Fundamental Photographs; **29.18 top** Michael Sundue, Ferns of the World; **bottom** FloralImages/Alamy Stock Photo; **29.19 spikemoss** Purdue University; **quillwort** Murray Fagg/Australian National Botanic Gardens; **club moss** Helga and Kurt Rasbach; **ostrich fern** John Martin/Alamy Stock Photo; **horsetail** Stephen P. Parker/Science Source; **whisk fern** Francisco Javier Yeste Garcia; **29.20** Christian Jegou/Publiphoto/Science Source; **p. 634** Ed Reschke/Getty Images; **p. 635 stomata** © W. Barthlott, lotus-salvinia.de.

Chapter 30 **30.1** Lyn Topinka, USGS; **inset** Marlin Harms; **Scientific Skills Exercise** Guy Eisner; **30.5** Rudolph Serbet, Natural History and Biodiversity Institute, University of Kansas; **30.6** Claus Habfast; **30.7** ***Cycas revoluta*** Warren Price Photography/Shutterstock; **ginkgo seeds** www.biolib.de; ***Ginkgo biloba*** Travis Amos/Pearson Education; ***Welwitschia*** Jeroen Peys/Getty Images; ***Welwitschia* cones** Francesco Tomasinelli/Science Source; ***Gnetum*** Michael Clayton; ***Ephedra*** Bob Gibbons/Frank Lane Picture Agency Limited; **Douglas fir** vincentlouis/Fotolia; **juniper** Svetlana Tikhonova/Shutterstock; **larch** Adam Jones/Getty Images; **sequoia** Daniel Acevedo/AGE Fotostock/Alamy Stock Photo; ***Wollemi* fossil** Jaime Plaza/Royal Botanic Gardens Sydney; ***Wollemi* forest** Wildlight Photo Agency/Alamy Stock Photo; **bristlecone pine** Russ Bishop/Alamy Stock Photo; **30.9 top** Silver Spiral Arts/Shutterstock; **bottom** Paul Atkinson/Shutterstock; **30.10 tomatoes** Tim UR/Shutterstock; **grapefruit** almandreev/Shutterstock; **nectarine** Ines Behrens-Kunkel/Shutterstock; **hazelnuts** Diana Taliun/Fotolia; **milkweed** Maria Dryfhout/123RF; **30.11 explosive seed** Mike Davis; **winged fruit** Pixtal/AGE Fotostock; **mouse with fruit** Eduard Kyslynskyy/Shutterstock; **cocklebur** Nataly Studio/Shutterstock; **dog with burrs** Scott Camazine/Science Source; **30.13a** David L. Dilcher; **30.15** Nuridsany et Perennou/Science Source; **30.17 water lily** Dorling Kindersley ltd/Alamy Stock Photo; **star anise** Floridata.com; ***Amborella trichopoda*** Joel McNeal; ***Magnolia grandiflora*** Dorling Kindersley ltd/Alamy Stock Photo; **orchid** PS-I/Alamy Stock Photo; **barley** kenjii/Fotolia; **pygmy palm** Kanok Chantong/Shutterstock; **snow pea** Maria Dattola/Getty Images; **dog rose** Glam/Shutterstock; **Armenian oak** Dorling Kindersley ltd/Alamy Stock Photo; **30.18** NASA; **p. 653 milkweed** Howard Sandler/Shutterstock.

Chapter 31 **31.1 top** Arie v.d. Wolde/Shutterstock; **bottom** Ted M. Kinsman/Science Source; **31.2 top** Nata-Lia/Shutterstock; **bottom** Fred Rhoades; **bottom (inset)** George L. Barron; **31.4a** Biophoto Associates/Science Source; **Scientific Skills Exercise** U.S. Department of Energy/DOE Photo; **31.6** Olga Popova/123RF; **inset** Biophoto Associates/Science Source; **31.7** Mediscan/Alamy Stock Photo; **31.9** Martin R. Smith; **31.11** Tim James; **31.12** Electron micrograph taken by Leon White. CC by 2.5; **31.13** William E. Barstow; **31.14** Clarence Holmes Wildlife/Alamy Stock Photo; **31.15 bread** Antonio D'Albore/Getty Images; ***Rhizopus*** Culture Collection of Fungi (CCF); **Sporangia** George L. Barron; **zygosporangium** Ed Reschke/Getty Images; **31.16** Sava Krstic; **31.17 left** Bryan Eastham/Fotolia; **right** Science Source; **31.19 top** Frank Paul/Alamy Stock Photo; **center** kichigin19/Fotolia; **bottom** Fletcher and Baylis/Science Source; **31.20** Biophoto Associates/Science Source; **31.21** Stephen Dorey Creatively/Alamy Stock Photo; **31.23** Mark Bowler/Science Source; **31.24 top** Ralph Lee Hopkins/National Geographic/Getty Images; **center** Don Johnston/AGE Fotostock/Alamy Stock Photo; **bottom** Eye of Science/Science Source; **31.25** Eye of Science/Science Source; **31.26a** Scott Camazine/Alamy Stock Photo; **31.26b left** Christian Hatter/imageBROKER/Alamy Stock Photo; **right** Sabena Jane Blackbird/Alamy Stock Photo; **31.26c** Hecker-Sauer/AGE Fotostock; **31.27** Vance T. Vredenburg; **31.28** Gary Strobel; **p. 672 wasp** Erich G Vallery/USDA Forest Service.

Chapter 32 **32.1 chameleon** Rolf Nussbaumer Photography/Alamy Stock Photo; **koala** Tom Brakefield/Stockbyte/Getty Images; **neuron** James Cavallini/Science Source; **muscle** Nina Zanetti/Pearson Education; **p. 676 King** Josh Frost, Pearson Education; **32.5a** Lisa-Ann Gershwin; **32.5b** From: The most probable Eumetazoa among late Precambrian macrofossils. A.Yu. Ivantsov. *Invertebrate Zoology*. Vol.14. No.2: 127–133 [in English], 2017. Fig 2; **32.6** From: Predatorial borings in late precambrian mineralized exoskeletons. S. Bengtson and Y. Zhao. *Science*. 1992 Jul 17;257(5068):367-9. Fig. 3. Reprinted with permission from AAAS; **32.7** John Sibbick/Science Source; **inset** Chip Clark; **32.12a** Blickwinkel/Alamy Stock Photo; **p. 685 animal** WaterFrame/Alamy Stock Photo.

Chapter 33 **33.1** Paul Anthony Stewart; **33.2 sponge** Andrew J. Martinez/Science Source; **jelly** Helmut Comeli/Alamy Stock Photo; **Acoela** Teresa Zuberbühler; **placozoan** From: Global diversity of the Placozoa. M. Eitel et al. *PLoS One*. 2013;8(4):e57131. doi: 10.1371/journal.pone.0057131. Epub 2013 Apr 2. Fig. 1; **ctenophore** Gregory G. Dimijian/Science Source; **marine flatworm** Robinson Ed/Perspectives/Getty Images; **rotifer** M. I. Walker/Science Source; **ectoprocts** blickwinkel/Alamy Stock Photo; **brachiopod** Image Quest Marine; **gastrotrich** Sinclair Stammers/Nature Picture Library; **ribbon worm** Sue Daly/NaturePL; **cycliophor** Peter Funch; **annelid** cbimages/Alamy Stock Photo; **octopus** Photonimo/Shutterstock; **loriciferan** Reinhart Mobjerg Kristensen; **priapulan** Andreas Altenburger/Alamy Stock Photo; **onychophoran** Thomas Stromberg; **roundworm** London Scientific Films/Oxford Scientific/Getty Images; **tardigrades** Andrew Syred/Science Source; **spider** Reinhard Hölzl/ImageBROKER/AGE Fotostock; **acorn worm** Leslie Newman & Andrew Flowers/Science Source; **tunicate** Ethan Daniels/Stocktrek Images/Alamy Stock Photo; **sea urchin** Louise Murray/roberthardingAlamy Stock Photo; **33.3** Andrew J. Martinez/Science Source; **33.6a left** Helmut Corneli/Alamy Stock Photo; **right** David Doubilet/National Geographic; **33.6b left** Neil G. McDaniel/Science Source; **right** Mark Conlin/V&W/Image Quest Marine; **33.7** Biophoto Associates/Science Source; **33.8 top left** blickwinkel/

Alamy Stock Photo; **bottom left** Amar and Isabelle Guillen - Guillen Photo LLC/Alamy Stock Photo; **top right** Eldon H. Newcomb; **bottom right** Science Photo Library/Alamy Stock Photo; **33.10** CDC; **33.11** Eye of Science/Science Source; **33.11** Eye of Science/Science Source; **33.12** M. I. Walker/Science Source; **33.13** Holger Herlyn, University of Mainz, Germany; **33.14a** blickwinkel/Alamy Stock Photo; **33.14b** Image Quest Marine; **33.16** Image Quest Marine; **33.17a** Lubos Chlubny/Fotolia; **33.17b** Terry Moore/Stocktrek Images/Alamy Stock Photo; **Scientific Skills Exercise** Christophe Courteau/Water Rights/Alamy Stock Photo; **33.18** Andrew J. Martinez/Science Source; **33.20 top** Mark Conlin/VWPics/Alamy Stock Photo; **center** Photonimo/Shutterstock; **bottom** SeaTops/Alamy Stock Photo; **33.21 left** Dave Clarke/Zoological Society of London; **right** The U.S. Bureau of Fisheries; **33.22** Fredrik Pleijel; **33.23** Wolcott Henry/National Geographic; **33.24** Astrid Michler; Hanns-Frieder Michler/Science Source; **33.25** Wayne Taylor/The AGE/Fairfax Media via Getty Images; **33.26** London Scientific Films/Oxford Scientific/Getty Images; **33.27** Power and Syred/Science Source; **33.28** Dan Cooper; **33.29b** Courtesy of Sean B. Carroll; **33.31** Mark Newman/Frank Lane Picture Agency; **33.32 top** Tim Flach/The Image Bank/Getty Images; **center** Andrew Syred/Science Source; **bottom** Reinhard Hölzl/ImageBROKER/AGE Fotostock; **33.34a** Premaphotos/Nature Picture Library; **33.34b** Tom McHugh/Science Source; **33.36** Maximilian Weinzierl/Alamy Stock Photo; **33.37** Peter Herring/Image Quest Marine; **33.38** Peter Parks/Image Quest Marine; **33.40** André Skonieczny/F1online digitale Bildagentur GmbH/Alamy Stock Photo; **33.41a, b, d, e** Cathy Keifer/Shutterstock; **33.41c** Jim Zipp/Science Source; **33.42 Archaeognatha** Kevin Murphy; **Zygentoma** Denis Crawford/Alamy Stock Photo; **Coleoptera** Premaphotos/Nature Picture Library; **Diptera** Bruce Marlin; **Hymenoptera** John Cancalosi/Nature Picture Library; **Lepidoptera** Hans Christoph Kappel/Nature Picture Library; **Hemiptera** Dante Fenolio/Science Source; **Orthoptera** Chris Mattison/Alamy Stock Photo; **33.43** Andrey Nekrasov/Image Quest Marine; **33.44** Daniel Janies; **33.45** Jeff Rotman/Science Source; **33.46** Louise Murray/robertharding/Alamy Stock Photo; **33.47** Jurgen Freund/Nature Picture Library; **33.48** Hal Beral/Corbis; **p. 717 beetles** Lucy Arnold.

Chapter 34 **34.1 top to bottom** Derek Siveter, Tom McHugh/Science Source, Gino Santa Maria/Shutterstock; Digital Vision/Photodisc/Getty Images, Arnaz Mehta, Tom McHugh/Science Source, Rolf Nussbaumer Photography/Alamy Stock Photo, Visceralimage/Fotolia; **34.4** Natural Visions/Alamy Stock Photo; **34.5c** Ethan Daniels/Stocktrek Images/Alamy Stock Photo; **34.8** Tom McHugh/Science Source; **34.9** Marevision/AGE Fotostock; **inset** Hartl/blickwinkel/Alamy Stock Photo; **34.10** Junyuan Chen/Nanjing Institute of Geology and Palaeontology, Chinese Academy of Sciences; **34.14** Field Museum Library/Premium Archive/Getty Images; **34.15a** Gino Santa Maria/Shutterstock; **34.15b** Masa Ushioda/Image Quest Marine; **34.15c** RGB Ventures/SuperStock/Alamy Stock Photo; **34.17 tuna** James D. Watt/Image Quest Marine; **lionfish** Teigler/blickwinkel/Alamy Stock Photo; **sea horse** George Grall/National Geographic; **eel** Fred McConnaughey/Science Source; **34.18** Reprinted by permission from Macmillan Publishers Ltd: From: The oldest articulated osteichthyan reveals mosaic gnathostome characters. M. Zhu. *Nature.* 2009 Mar 26;458(7237):469-74. doi: 10.1038/nature07855. Fig. 2; **34.19** Arnaz Mehta/SeaPics; **34.20 fossil, ribs, scales** Ted Daeschler/Academy of Natural Sciences/Vireo; **fin** Kalliopi Monoyios Studio; **34.22a** Alberto Fernández/AGE Fotostock/Alamy Stock Photo; **34.22b** Anneka/Shutterstock; **34.22c** Zeeshan Mirza/ephotocorp/Alamy Stock Photo; **34.23a** DP Wildlife Vertebrates/Alamy Stock Photo; **34.23b** FLPA/Alamy Stock Photo; **34.23c** John Cancalosi/Photolibrary/Getty Images; **34.24** Hinrich Kaiser, Victor Valley College; **Problem-Solving Exercise** Joel Sartore/National Geographic; **34.27** Nobumichi Tamura; **34.28** Chris Mattison/Alamy Stock Photo; **p. 736 Sereno** Paul Sereno Fossil Lab; **34.29a** Natural Visions/Alamy Stock Photo; **34.29b** Lee T. Matt; **34.29c** Nick Garbutt/Nature Picture Library; **34.29d** Juniors Bildarchiv/AGE Fotostock; **34.29e** Carl & Ann Purcell/Corbis NX/Getty Images; **34.30a** Visceralimage/Fotolia; **34.30b** The Natural History Museum/Alamy Stock Photo; **34.32** Boris Karpinski/Alamy Stock Photo; **34.33** DLILLC/Corbis/VCG/Getty Images; **34.34** Mariusz Blach/Fotolia; **34.35** The Africa Image Library/Alamy Stock Photo; **inset** mychicport/Shutterstock; **34.36** Gianpiero Ferrari/Frank Lane Picture Agency Limited; **34.39** Clearviewstock/Shutterstock; **inset** Commonwealth Scientific and Industrial Research Organization; **34.40a** John Cancalosi/Alamy Stock Photo; **34.40b** Martin Harvey/Alamy Stock Photo; **34.40c** Rick & Nora Bowers/Alamy Stock Photo; **34.43** ImageBroker/Alamy Stock Photo; **34.45a** Kevin Schafer/AGE Fotostock; **34.45b** J & C Sohns/Picture Press/Getty Images; **34.46a** Morales/AGE Fotostock; **34.46b** Tim Laman/NaturePL; **34.46c** T.J. Rich/Nature Picture Library; **34.46d** E.A. Janes/AGE Fotostock; **34.46e** Martin Harvey/Photolibrary/Getty Images; **34.48** T. White/David L. Brill Photography; **34.49a** John Reader/Science Source; **34.49b** Mauricio Anton/Science Source; **Scientific Skills Exercise** Golfx/Shutterstock; **34.50** Danita Delimont/Alamy Stock Photo; **34.52a** Erik Trinkaus; **34.52b** Tom Higham, University of Oxford; **34.53** David L. Brill Photography; **34.54** From: *Homo naledi,* a new species of the genus *Homo* from the Dinaledi Chamber, South Africa. L. R. Berger et al. *eLife* 2015;4:e09560. Fig. 6; **34.55** C. Henshilwood; **p. 756 animal** Tony Heald/Nature Picture Library.

Unit Six Interview Courtesy of Dennis Gonsalves.

Chapter 35 **35.1 tree** Raimund Linke/Photodisc/Getty Images; **seedling** Beata Becia/Shutterstock; **leaf cross section** P&R Fotos/AGE Fotostock/Alamy Stock Photo; **chloroplasts** John Durham/Science Source; **tube-shaped cells** Science Photo Library/Alamy Stock Photo; **root hairs** Scenics & Science/Alamy Stock Photo; **35.3** Jeremy Burgess/Science Source; **35.4 buttress roots** Karl Weidmann/Science Source; **prop roots** Natalie Bronstein; **beet** Rob Walls/Alamy Stock Photo; **pneumatophores** Bjorn Svensson/AGE Fotostock/Alamy Stock Photo; **strangling roots** Dana Tezarr/Photodisc/Getty Images; **35.5 top** Maureen Spuhler/Seelevel.com; **center** Dorling Kindersley ltd/Alamy Stock Photo; **bottom** Toshihiko Watanabe/Aflo/Alamy Stock Photo; **35.7 tendrils** Neil Cooper/Alamy Stock Photo; **spines** Martin Ruegner/Photodisc/Getty Images; **storage leaves** Dmytro Skorobogatov/123RF; **reproductive leaves** Godunova Tatiana/Shutterstock; **Scientific Skills Exercise** Dorling Kindersley ltd/Alamy Stock Photo; **35.9** Steve Gschmeissner/SPL/AGE Fotostock; **35.10 parenchyma** M I (Spike) Walker/Alamy Stock Photo; **35.10 collenchyma** Keith Wheeler/Science Source; **sclereid** Graham Kent/Pearson Education; **fiber** Graham Kent/Pearson Education; **tracheids and vessels** N.C Brown Center for Ultrastructure Studies; **sieve-tube element (TEM)** From: *Plant Cell Biology* on DVD: Information for students and a resource for teachers Springer-Verlag 2009, by B Gunning; **sieve-tube element (LM)** Ray F. Evert; **sieve plate** Graham Kent/Pearson Education; **35.13** From: ABA-mediated ROS in mitochondria regulate root meristem activity by controlling PLETHORA expression in *Arabidopsis*. Yang L. *PLoS Genet.* 2014 Dec 18;10(12):e1004791. doi: 10.1371/journal.pgen.1004791. eCollection 2014 Dec. Figure 6G; **35.14a, b** Ed Reschke; **35.14a center** Chuck Brown/Science Source; **35.15, 35.16** Michael Clayton; **35.17, 35.18** Ed Reschke; **35.20 left** Michael Clayton; **right** Alison W. Roberts; **35.23** University of Southern California; **35.25** Edu Boer, NVWA, NL; **35.26** From: Natural variation in *Arabidopsis*: from molecular genetics to ecological genomics. D. Weigel. *Plant Physiol*. 2012 Jan;158(1):2-22. doi: 10.1104/pp.111.189845. Epub 2011 Dec 6. Fig. 1; **p. 776 Chory** Micheline Pelletier/Courtesy of Joanne Chory; **35.28** From: Microtubule plus-ends reveal essential links between intracellular polarization and localized modulation of endocytosis during division-plane establishment in plant cells. P. Dhonukshe. *BMC Biol*. 2005 Apr 14;3:11. Fig4B; **35.28 (inset)** B. Wells and K. Roberts; **35.29** From: The making of a compound leaf: genetic manipulation of leaf architecture in tomato. D. Hareven. *Cell*. 1996 Mar 8;84(5):735-44. Fig. 1; **35.30** From: A common position-dependent mechanism controls cell-type patterning and GLABRA2 regulation in the root and hypocotyl epidermis of *Arabidopsis*. C. Y. Hung et al. *Plant Physiol*. 1998 May;117(1):73-84. Fig. 2*g*; **p. 778 Benfey** Jie Huang/Duke University; **35.31** Lawrence Jensen; **35.32** From: Genetic interactions among floral homeotic genes of *Arabidopsis*. JL Bowman, DR Smyth, EM Meyerowitz. *Development*. 1991 May;112(1):1-20; Fig. 1A; **p. 780 Walbot** Courtesy of Virginia Walbot; **p. 782 woody eudicot** From: Anatomy of the vessel network within and between tree rings of *Fraxinus lanuginosa* (Oleaceae). P. B. Kitin et al. *American Journal of Botany*. 2004;91:779-788. Fig. 1; **p. 783 tea leaves** Volodymyr Burdiak/Shutterstock; **tea leaf cross section** Keith Wheeler/Science Source; **iris leaves** Rob Stark/Shutterstock; **iris leaf cross section** www.willemsmicroscope.com; **bicycle** Janet Horton/Alamy Stock Photo; ***Hakea purpurea*** Biophoto Associates/Science Source.

Chapter 36 **36.1** velislava/Alamy Stock Photo; **36.3** Rolf Rutishauser and Evelin Pfeifer; **p. 790 plant** Nigel Cattlin/Alamy Stock Photo; **36.8** Benjamin Blonder and David Elliott; **36.10** Scott Camazine/Science Source; **36.13** AGE Fotostock/Alamy Stock Photo; **36.14** Power and Syred/Science Source; **36.15 leafless ocotillo** mike lane/Alamy Stock Photo; **green ocotillo** Rick & Nora Bowers/Alamy Stock Photo; **ocotillo close-up** Mint Images/SuperStock; **oleander cross section** Natalie Bronstein; **blossom** SutidaS/Shutterstock; **cactus** Danita Delimont/Alamy Stock Photo; **36.18** M. H. Zimmerman/Harvard Forest; **36.19** From: A coiled-coil interaction mediates cauliflower mosaic virus cell-to-cell movement. L. Stavolone et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2005 Apr 26;102(17):6219-24. Epub 2005 Apr 18. Fig. 5c; **p. 802 Zambryski** Noah Berger Photography; **p. 804 forest** Catalin Petolea/Alamy Stock Photo.

Chapter 37 **37.1** Visuals Stock/Alamy Stock Photo; **37.2** ARS/USDA; **37.4** National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA); **37.5** Menlo Park/USGS; **37.6** Kevin Horan/The Image Bank/Getty Images; **p. 811 Coruzzi** Courtesy of Gloria M. Coruzzi; **37.8 healthy** View Stock RF/AGE Fotostock; **nitrogen-deficient** Guillermo Roberto Pugliese/International Plant Nutrition Institute (IPNI); **phosphorus-deficient** C. Witt/IPNI; **potassium-deficient** M.K. Sharma and P. Kumar/IPNI; **Scientific Skills Exercise** Nigel Cattlin/Science Source; **37.9 lichen** David T. Webb, University of Montana; **lichen section** Courtesy of Ralf Wagner; **puffer** Andrey Nekrasov/Pixtal/AGE Fotostock; ***Azolla*** Daniel L Nickrent; **37.9 ant** Juan Carlos Vindas/Moment Open/Getty Images; **fungal garden** Martin Dohrn/Nature Picture Library; **root** Yoshihiro Kobae; **nectar** Oxford Scientific/Getty Images; **37.10** Sarah Lydia Lebeis; **37.12** Scimat/Science Source; **37.14 sheath** Hugues B. Massicotte/University of Northern British Columbia Ecosystem and Management Program, Prince George, BC, Canada; **cells, arbuscules** Mark Brundrett; **37.15 fern** David Wall/Alamy Stock Photo; **mistletoe** Peter Lane/Alamy Stock Photo; **dodder** Emilio Ereza/Alamy Stock Photo; **Indian pipe** Martin Shields/Alamy Stock Photo; **pitcher plants** Dorling Kindersley ltd/Alamy Stock Photo; **ant on pitcher plant** Paul Zahl/Science Source; **sundew** Fritz Polking/Frank Lane Picture Agency Limited W. Rolfes/Arco Images GmbH/Alamy Stock Photo; **Venus flytrap** Chris Mattison/Nature Picture Library; **p. 821 footprint** Mode Images/Alamy Stock Photo.

Chapter 38 **38.1** blickwinkel/Alamy Stock Photo; **inset** Nicolas J. Vereecken; **38.4 hazel carpellate** Friedhelm Adam/imageBROKER/Getty Images; **hazel staminate** Wildlife GmbH/Alamy Stock Photo; **dandelions** © Bjørn Rørslett/NN/Samfoto/Sipa USA; **moth** Doug Backlund/WildPhotosPhotography.com; **blowfly** Kjell B. Sandved/Science Source; **bat** Rolf Nussbaumer/imageBROKER/AGE Fotostock; **hummingbird** Rolf Nussbaumer/Nature Picture Library; **38.5** W. Barthlott and W.Rauh/Nees Institute for Biodiversity of Plants; **38.6 top** Michael Clayton/Botany Dept., University of Wisconsin; **bottom** Ed Reschke/Photolibrary/Getty Images; **38.10** Blickwinkel/Alamy Stock Photo; **38.12 coconut** Kevin Schafer/Alamy Stock Photo; ***Alsomitra macrocarpa*** Aquiya/Fotolia; **dandelion** Steve Bloom Images/Alamy Stock Photo; **maple seed** Chrispo/Fotolia; **tumbleweed** Nurlan Kalchinov/Alamy Stock Photo; ***Tribulus terrestris*** California Department of Food and Agriculture's Plant Health and Pest Prevention Services; **squirrel** Alan Williams/Alamy Stock Photo; **feces** Kim A Cabrera; **ant** Benoit Guénard; **38.13** Dennis Frates/Alamy Stock Photo; **Scientific Skills Exercise monkeyflower** Ken Barber/Alamy Stock Photo; **hummingbird** Dec Hogan/Shutterstock; **38.14a** Marcel Dorken; **38.14b** Nobumitsu Kawakubo; **38.15** Meriel G. Jones, University of Liverpool School of Biological Sciences; **38.16** Dorling Kindersley ltd/Alamy Stock Photo; **p. 837 Herrera-Estrella** Michael Starghill, Michael Starghill Photography; **38.17** Gary P. Munkvold; **p. 838 Gonsalves** Courtesy of Dennis Gonsalves; **38.18** ton koene/Alamy Stock Photo; **p. 841 pollen** Dartmouth College Electron Microscope Facility.

Chapter 39 **39.1** Christopher Ison/Alamy Stock Photo; **39.2** Natalie Bronstein; **39.6** From: Regulation of polar auxin transport by AtPIN1 in *Arabidopsis* vascular tissue. L. Gälweiler et al. *Science.* 1998 Dec 18;282(5397):2226-30; Fig. 4; **39.9a** Richard Amasino; **39.9b** Fred Jensen, Kearney Agricultural Center; **39.11 left** Mia Molvray; **right** Karen E. Koch; **39.13a** Kurt Stepnitz; **39.13b** Joseph J. Kieber; **39.14** Ed Reschke; **39.16** Nigel Cattlin/Alamy Stock Photo; **39.18** Martin Shields/Alamy Stock Photo; **p. 858 Satter** Robin Heyden/Pearson Education; **39.22** Michael L. Evans/Ohio State University; **39.23** From the cover of *Cell*, Volume 60, Issue 3, 9 February 1990. Janet Braam, Ronald W. Davis. Used by permission, Copyright ©1990 Cell Press. Image

courtesy of Elsevier Sciences, Ltd; **39.24** Martin Shields/Alamy Stock Photo; **39.25** J. L. Basq/M. C. Drew; **39.26** New York State Agricultural Experiment Station/Cornell University College of Agriculture and Life Sciences; **p. 867 Dangl** Courtesy of Jeff Dangl; **39.27 poppy seed** De Meester Johan/Arterra Picture Library/Alamy Stock Photo; **taro plant** David T. Webb; **olive leaf** Science Photo Library/Alamy Stock Photo; **cactus spines** Susumu Nishinaga/Science Source; **snowflake plant** Giuseppe Mazza; **passion flower** Lawrence E. Gilbert/University of Texas-Austin; **hummingbird** Danny Kessler; **bamboo plants** Kim Jackson/Mode Images/Alamy Stock Photo; **wasp, cocoons** Custom Life Science Images/Alamy Stock Photo; **p. 871 deer** Gary Crabbe/Alamy Stock Photo.

Unit Seven Interview UCSD Health.

Chapter 40 **40.1 top** Paul Nicklen/National Geographic/Getty Images; **center left** CNRS/IPEV/IPHC, France; **bottom** Nature Picture Library/Alamy Stock Photo; **40.2 seal** Dave Fleetham/Robert Harding World Imagery; **penguin** WILDLIFE GmbH/Alamy Stock Photo; **tuna** Andre Seale/Image Quest Marine; **40.4 intestine** Eye of Science/Science Source; **lung, kidney** Susumu Nishinaga/Science Source; **40.5 epithelia** Steve Downing/Pearson Education; **loose connective tissue, adipose tissue, bone, skeletal muscle** Nina Zanetti/Pearson Education; **40.5 blood** Jarun Ontakrai/Shutterstock; **cartilage** Chuck Brown/Science Source; **fibrous connective tissue, smooth muscle, cardiac muscle** Ed Reschke/Photolibrary/Getty Images; **neuron** James Cavallini/Science Source; **glia** Thomas Deerinck; **40.7 otter** Kaufung Agency/blickwinkel/Alamy Stock Photo; **bass** Roderick Paul Walker/Alamy Stock Photo; **40.10** Meiqianbao/Shutterstock; **40.11a** Paul Souders/Danita Delimont Creative/Alamy Stock Photo; **40.11b** Bill Gozansky/Alamy Stock Photo; **40.14** Mirko Graul/Shutterstock; **40.15** From: Assessment of oxidative metabolism in brown fat using PET imaging. Otto Muzik, Thomas J. Mangner and James G. Granneman. *Front. Endocrinol.*, 08 February 2012 | http://dx.doi.org/10.3389/fendo.2012.00015 Fig. 2; **40.19** Jeff Rotman/Alamy Stock Photo; **40.21** FLPA/Alamy Stock Photo; **p. 893 Bartholomew** Robin Heyden **40.23 plants** Irin-K/Shutterstock; **bobcat** Thomas Kitchin/Victoria Hurst/All Canada Photos/AGE Fotostock; **sunflowers** Phil_Good/Fotolia; **fly** WildPictures/Alamy Stock Photo; **sprouts** Bogdan Wankowicz/Shutterstock; **molting** Nature's Images/Science Source; **plant vessels** Last Refuge/Robert Harding Picture Library Ltd/Alamy Stock Photo; **blood vessels** Susumu Nishinaga/Science Source; **peas** Scott Rothstein/Shutterstock; **pigs** steven goodier/Alamy Stock Photo; **intestinal lining** David M. Martin/Science Source; **root hairs, mesophyll** Rosanne Quinnell © The University of Sydney. eBot http://hdl.handle.net/102.100.100/1463, http://hdl.handle.net/102.100.100/2574; **alveoli** David M. Phillips/Science Source; **p. 897 macaques** Yoshiteru Takahashi/Sebun Photo/amana images/Getty Images.

Chapter 41 **41.1** Milo Burcham/First Light/Getty Images; **41.3** Stefan Huwiler/Rolf Nussbaumer Photography/Alamy Stock Photo; **41.5 baleen** Vicki Beaver/Alamy Stock Photo; **caterpillar** Stuart Wilson/Science Source; **fly** Peter Parks/Image Quest Marine; **python** Gunter Ziesler/Photolibrary/Getty Images; **41.16 left** McPhoto/INS Agency/blickwinkel/Alamy Stock Photo; **right** Tom Brakefield/Stockbyte/Getty Images; **41.19** James Archer, CDC; **p. 913 Strathdee** UCSD Health; **41.21** Peter Batson/Image Quest Marine; **Scientific Skills Exercise** ORNL/Science Source; **p. 920 owl** Stefan Huwiler/imageBROKER RF/AGE Fotostock.

Chapter 42 **42.1** John Cancalosi/Alamy Stock Photo; **42.2a** Reinhard Dirscherl/WaterFrame/Getty Images; **42.2b** Eric Grave/Science Source; **42.9 top** Indigo Instruments; **bottom** Ed Reschke/Photolibrary/Getty Images; **p. 931 Yanagisawa** Skeeter Hagler; **42.18** Eye of Science/Science Source; **42.19** Image Source Plus/Alamy Stock Photo; **Scientific Skills Exercise** cassis/Fotolia; **42.21a** Peter Batson/Image Quest Marine; **42.21b** Olgysha/Shutterstock; **42.21c** Greg Amptman/Shutterstock; **42.23c** Prepared by Dr. Hong Y. Yan, University of Kentucky and Dr. Peng Chai, University of Texas; **42.24** Motta and Macchiarelli, Anatomy Dept., Univ. La Sapienza, Rome/Science Source; **42.26** Hans-Rainer Duncker, Institute of Anatomy and Cell Biology, Justus-Liebig-University Giessen; **42.32** Doug Allan/Nature Picture Library; **p. 951 spider** CB2/ZOB/WENN.com/Newscom.

Chapter 43 **43.1 macrophage** SPL/Science Source; **virus** James Cavallini/BSIP SA/Alamy Stock Photo; **bacterium** Chris Bjornberg/Science Source; **fungus** Callista Images/Cultura Creative (RF)/Alamy Stock Photo; **influenza** Kateryna Kon/Shutterstock; **43.15** Steve Gschmeissner/Science Source; **43.27** CNRI/Science Source; **Scientific Skills Exercise** Eye of Science/Science Source; **p. 973 Wong-Staal** Bill Branson/NIH; **43.29** Stephen C. Harrison/The Laboratory of Structural Cell Biology/Harvard Medical School; **p. 974 zur Hausen** Tobias Schwerdt; **p. 976 vaccine** Tatan Yuflana/AP Images.

Chapter 44 **44.1** David Wall/Alamy Stock Photo; **44.2** Mark Conlin/VWPICS/Visual&Written SL/Alamy Stock Photo; **44.4** Eye of Science/Science Source; **Scientific Skills Exercise** Jiri Lochman/Lochman Transparencies; **44.6 left** GeorgePeters/E+/Getty Images; **center** Eric Isselée/Fotolia; **right** Maksym Gorpenyuk/Shutterstock; **44.7** Stephane Bidouze/Shutterstock; **44.12** Steve Gschmeissner/Science Source; **44.15** Michael Lynch/Shutterstock; **44.16** v_blinov/Fotolia; **44.17 fish** Image Quest Marine; **stomata** Eye of Science/Science Source; **frog** F1online digitale Bildagentur GmbH/Alamy Stock Photo; **bacterium** Power and Syred/Science Source; **p. 998 iguana** Steven A. Wasserman.

Chapter 45 **45.1 top** Phillip Colla/Oceanlight.com; **bottom** Craig K. Lorenz/Science Source; **45.3** Volker Witte/Ludwig-Maximilians-Universitat Munchen; **45.11** Cathy Keifer/123rf; **Problem-Solving Exercise** angellodeco/Fotolia; **45.17** AP Images; **45.22 left** Blickwinkel/Alamy Stock Photo; **right** Jurgen and Christine Sohns/Frank Lane Picture Agency; **p. 1018 frogs** Eric Roubos.

Chapter 46 **46.1 coral** Auscape/UIG/Getty Images; **hydra** Roland Birke/Okapia/Science Source; **nudibranchs** Colin Marshall/Frank Lane Picture Agency; **frogs** Andy Sands/Nature Picture Library; **sperm** Don W. Fawcett/Science Source; **cardinals** William Leaman/Alamy Stock Photo; **zebras** Mike Taylor/Alamy Stock Photo; **46.2** Colin Marshall/Frank Lane Picture Agency; **46.3a** P. de Vries/Crews, David; **46.5** Andy Sands/Nature Picture Library; **46.6** John Cancalosi/Alamy Stock Photo; **Scientific Skills Exercise** Andrew Syred/Science Source; **46.12** Design Pics Inc/Alamy Stock Photo; **46.17** Tidningarnas Telelgrambyra AB; **46.21** M.I. Walker/Science Source; **p. 1042 Komodo dragon** Dave Thompson/AP Images.

Chapter 47 **47.1** Brad Smith/Stamps School of Art & Design, University of Michigan; **inset** Oxford Scientific/Getty Images; **47.3 top** Victor D. Vacquier; **bottom** From: Wave of free calcium at fertilization in the sea urchin egg visualized with fura-2. M. Hafner et al, *Cell Motil Cytoskeleton*. 1988;9(3):271-7. Fig. 1; **47.6** George von Dassow; **47.7 top** Jürgen Berger/Max Planck Institute for Developmental Biology, Tübingen Germany; **bottom** Andrew J. Ewald, Johns Hopkins Medical School; **47.13b** Alejandro Díaz Díez/AGE Fotostock/Alamy Stock Photo; **47.14a** P. Huw Williams and Jim Smith, The Wellcome Trust/Cancer Research UK Gurdon Institute; **47.14c** Thomas Poole, SUNY Health Science Center; **47.15b** Keith Wheeler/Science Source; **47.18b** From: Cell lineage analysis in ascidian embryos by intracellular injection of a tracer enzyme. III. Up to the tissue restricted stage. H. Nishida. *Dev Biol*. 1987 Jun;121(2):526-41. Fig. 1. Reprinted by permission of Academic Press; **47.19** From: Post-embryonic cell lineages of the nematode, *Caenorhabditis elegans*. E. Sulston et al. *Dev Biol*. 1977 Mar;56(1):110-56. Fig. 1; **47.20** Susan Strome; **47.21** Susan Strome; **47.24** From: Dorsal-ventral patterning and neural induction in *Xenopus* embryos. E. M. De Robertis and H. Kuroda. *Annu Rev Cell Dev Biol*. 2004;20:285-308. Fig. 1; **47.25a** Kathryn Tosney, University of Michigan; **47.26** Based on Honig and Summerbell, courtesy of Lawrence S. Honig; **p. 1066 turtle** James Gerholdt/Getty Images.

Chapter 48 **48.1** Franco Banfi/Science Source; **48.2** Edwin R. Lewis; **p. 1068 Olivera** From: QnAs with Baldomero M. Olivera. Beth Azar. *PNAS* August 21, 2012 109 (34) 13470; https://doi.org/10.1073/pnas.1211581109. Fig. 1; **48.5** Thomas Deerinck/National Center for Microscopy and Imaging Research, University of California, San Diego; **48.14** Alan Peters; **p. 1084** B.A.E./Alamy Stock Photo.

Chapter 49 **49.10** Tamily Weissman; **49.11** Larry Mulvehill/Corbis; **49.15** From: A functional MRI study of happy and sad affective states induced by classical music. M. T. Mitterschiffthaler et al. *Hum Brain Mapp*. 2007 Nov. 28(11):1150-62. Fig. 1; **49.18** Marcus E. Raichle, Washington University Medical Center. From research based on "Positron emission tomographic studies of the cortical anatomy of single-word processing". S.E. Petersen et al. *Nature* 331:585-589 (1988); **49.19** National Library of Medicine (NLM); **p. 1099 Jarvis** Walter Oleksy/Alamy Stock Photo; **p. 1103 Heberlein** Matthew Staley; **49.25** Martin M. Rotker/Science Source; **p. 1106 microphone** Eric Delmar/Getty Images.

Chapter 50 **50.1** Kenneth Catania; **50.6** CSIRO Publishing; **50.7a** Michael Nolan/Robert Harding World Imagery; **50.7b** Grischa Georgiew/Panther Media/AGE Fotostock; **50.9** From: Richard Elzinga, *Fundamentals of Entomology*, 3rd ed. ©1987, p. 185. Reprinted by permission of Prentice-Hall, Upper Saddle River, NJ; **50.10** SPL/Science Source; **50.16a** APHIS Animal and Plant Health Inspection Service/USDA; **50.17** Steve Gschmeissner/Science Source; **50.21** Neitz Laboratories; **50.26** Clara Franzini-Armstrong; **50.27** H. E. Huxley; **50.34** Joe Quinn/Alamy Stock Photo; **50.39** Dave Watts/NHPA/Science Source; **p. 1135** Terence Dawson; **Scientific Skills Exercise** Vance A. Tucker; **p. 1138 hound** Dogs/Fotolia.

Chapter 51 **51.1** Robert Koss/Shutterstock; **51.3** Manamana/Shutterstock; **51.5b** Scott Camazine/Alamy Stock Photo; **p. 1143** Ian Fletcher/Shutterstock; **p. 1144** Dustin Finkelstein/Getty Images for SXSW; **51.7** Thomas D. McAvoy/The LIFE Picture Collection/Getty Images; **51.9** Lincoln Brower/Sweet Briar College; **51.11** Dr Clive Bromhall/Oxford Scientific/Getty Images; **51.12** Richard Wrangham; **inset** Mike Korostelev www.mkorostelev.com/Moment Open/Getty Images; **Scientific Skills Exercise** Matt Goff; **51.14a** Matt T. Lee; **51.14b** David Osborn/Alamy Stock Photo; **51.14c** David Tipling/Frank Lane Picture Agency Limited; **51.15** Fotograferen.net/Alamy Stock Photo; **51.16** Gerald S. Wilkinson; **51.17** Juniors Bildarchiv/F300/Alamy Stock Photo; **51.20** Martin Harvey/Photolibrary/Getty Images; **51.21** Erik Svensson/Lund University, Sweden; **51.22** Lowell Getz; **51.23** Rory Doolin; **51.25** Jennifer Jarvis, University of Cape Town; **51.27** Fred van Wijk/Alamy Stock Photo; **51.28** Jupiterimages/Creatas/Thinkstock/Getty Images; **p. 1160 Wilson** Michael Dwyer/Alamy Stock Photo; **p. 1162 woodpecker** William Leaman/Alamy Stock Photo.

Unit Eight Interview Courtesy of Chelsea Rochman.

Chapter 52 **52.1 top** Christopher Austin; **bottom, left to right:** Siepmann/imageBROKER/Alamy Stock Photo, Anton Foltin/123RF, Digital Vision/Photodisc/Getty Images, NOAA Okeanos Explorer Program; **52.2 top to bottom:** Luca Nichetti/Shutterstock, Barrie Britton/Nature Picture Library, Oleg Znamenskiy/Fotolia, Bluegreen Pictures/Alamy Stock Photo, Juan Carlos Muñoz, AGE Fotostock/Alamy Stock Photo, 1Xpert/Fotolia; **p. 1170 Davis** Courtesy of Margaret Davis; **52.9** Susan Carpenter; **52.11 desert** Anton Foltin/123RF; **grassland** David Halbakken/AGE Fotostock; **broadleaf forest** Gary718/Shutterstock; **tropical forest** Siepmann/ImageBroker/Alamy Stock Photo; **coniferous forest** Bent G. Nordeng/Shutterstock; **tundra** Juan Carlos Munoz/Nature Picture Library; **52.12 left** JTB Media Creation, Inc./Alamy Stock Photo; **right** Krystyna Szulecka/Alamy Stock Photo; **52.13 tropical forest** Siepmann/imageBROKER/Alamy Stock Photo; **desert** Anton Foltin/123RF; **savanna** Robert Harding Picture Library/Alamy Stock Photo; **chaparral** blickwinkel/Alamy Stock Photo; **grassland** David Halbakken/AGE Fotostock; **coniferous forest** Bent Nordeng/Shutterstock; **broadleaf forest** Gary718/Shutterstock; **tundra** Juan Carlos Munoz/Nature Picture Library; **52.16 oligotrophic lake** Susan Lee Powell; **eutrophic lake** AfriPics.com/Alamy Stock Photo; **wetland** David Tipling/Nature Picture Library; **headwater stream** scubaluna/Shutterstock; **Loire river** Photononstop/SuperStock; **estuaries** Juan Carlos Munoz/AGE Fotostock; **intertidal zone** Stuart Westmorland/Danita Delimont/Alamy Stock Photo; **ocean** Tatonka/Shutterstock; **coral reef** Digital Vision/Photodisc/Getty Images; **benthic zone** NOAA Okeanos Explorer Program; **52.17** JLV Image Works/Fotolia; **52.19** Sylvain Oliveira/Alamy Stock Photo; **52.20** Scott Ling; **52.22** Sabastien Lecocq/Alamy Stock Photo; **Scientific Skills Exercise *Spartina*** John W. Bova/Science Source; ***Typha*** Dave Bevan/Alamy Stock Photo; **52.23** Harold Stiver/Alamy Stock Photo; **p. 1189 giraffe** Daryl Balfour/The Image Bank/Getty Images.

Chapter 53 **53.1 top** Joel Sartore/National Geographic Image Collection; **bottom** Villiers Steyn/Shutterstock; **53.2** Todd Pusser/Nature Picture Library; **53.3a** Bernard Castelein/Nature Picture Library/Alamy Stock Photo; **53.3b** Michael S Nolan/AGE Fotostock; **53.3c** Alexander Chaikin/Shutterstock; **Table 53.1 top** Kevin Ebi/Alamy Stock Photo; **bottom** Jennifer A. Dever; **53.8** Villiers Steyn/Shutterstock; **53.11** Bence Mate/

Nature Picture Library/Alamy Stock Photo; **Scientific Skills Exercise** Lebendkulturen.de/Shutterstock; **53.12a** Stone Nature Photography/Alamy Stock Photo; **53.12b** Kent Foster/Science Source; **inset** Robert D. and Jane L. Dorn; **53.13** Dietmar Nill/Nature Picture Library; **53.14a** Steve Bloom Images/Alamy Stock Photo; **53.14b left** Fernanda Preto/Alamy Stock Photo; **right** Edward Parker/Alamy Stock Photo; **53.16** National Geographic/Alamy Stock Photo; **53.17 wheat** FotoVoyager/E+/Getty Images; **cheetah** Ian Cumming/Axiom/Design Pics/Alamy Stock Photo; **humans** Jorge Dan/Reuters; **mice** Nicholas Bergkessel Jr./Science Source; **yeast** Andrew Syred/Science Source; **53.19** Alan & Sandy Carey/Science Source; **53.20** Robert Pickett/Papilio/Alamy Stock Photo; **p. 1206 transponder** From: Tracking butterfly movements with harmonic radar reveals an effect of population age on movement distance. O. Ovaskainen et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2008 Dec 9;105(49):19090-5. doi: 10.1073/pnas.0802066105. Epub 2008 Dec 5. Fig. 1; **53.25** NASA; **p. 1213 locusts** Carlos Guevara/Reuters/Newscom.

Chapter 54 **54.1 eel** Jeremy Brown/123RF; **coral reef** Jan Wlodarczyk/Alamy Stock Photo; **triggerfish** imageBROKER/Alamy Stock Photo; **shark** Andrey Armyagov/Alamy Stock Photo; **coral bleaching** Reinhard Dirscherl/Alamy Stock Photo; **54.2 left** Joseph T. Collins/Science Source; **right** National Museum of Natural History/Smithsonian Institution; **54.4** Frank W Lane/Frank Lane Picture Agency Limited; **Scientific Skills Exercise** Johan Larson/Shutterstock; **54.6a** Tony Heald/Nature Picture Library; **54.6b** Tom Brakefield/Getty Images; **54.6c** Dirk Ercken/Shutterstock; **54.6d** Barry Mansell/Nature Picture Library; **54.6e left** Daniel Janzen/JANZEN.UPENN.EDU/Caters News; **right** Robert Pickett/Papilio/Alamy Stock Photo; **54.6f left** David J Martin/Shutterstock; **right** Lightwriter1949/Alamy Stock Photo; **54.7** Roger Steene/Image Quest Marine; **p. 1219 Langkilde** Patrick Mansell/PennState; **54.8** Doug Perrine/NaturePL.com; **54.9a** Bazzano Photography/Alamy Stock Photo; **54.9b** Nicholas Smythe/Science Source; **54.10** Daryl Balfour/Gallo Images/Getty Images; **54.11a** Sally D. Hacker; **54.13** Gary W. Saunders; **54.14** Dung Vo Trung/Science Source; **54.15** Cedar Creek Ecosystem Science Reserve, University of Minnesota; **54.20a** Genny Anderson; **54.21** Adam Welz; **54.25** National Park Service (NPS.gov); **p. 1229 Turner** From: Tracking butterfly movements with harmonic radar reveals an effect of population age on movement distance. O. Ovaskainen et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2008 Dec 9;105(49):19090-5. doi: 10.1073/pnas.0802066105. Epub 2008 Dec 5. Fig. 1; **54.26a** Charles D. Winters/Science Source; **54.26b** Keith Boggs; **54.26c** Terry Donnelly/Mary Liz Austin; **54.26d** Glacier Bay National Park and Preserve; **54.27 left to right** Charles D. Winters/Science Source, Keith Boggs, Terry Donnelly/Mary Liz Austin, Glacier Bay National Park/Preserve; **54.28 top** R. Grant Gilmore/NOAA; **54.28 bottom** Lance Horn/National Undersea Research Center/University of North Carolina-Wilmington/NOAA; **54.32** Tim Laman/National Geographic/Getty Images; **54.34** Nelish Pradhan/Bates College/Lewiston, ME; **54.35** Josh Spice; **p. 1237 flower** Jim Holden/Alamy Stock Photo.

Chapter 55 **55.1** Steven Kazlowski/RGB Ventures/SuperStock/Alamy Stock Photo; **55.2** Stone Nature Photography/Alamy Stock Photo; **55.3 left** Scimat/Science Source; **right** Justus de Cuveland/imageBROKER/AGE Fotostock; **55.5** MODIS Science Team/Earth Observatory/NASA; **55.8** A. T. Willett/Alamy Stock Photo; **Problem-Solving Exercise tree** Steven Katovich/USDA Forest Service; **mountain pine beetles** British Columbia Ministry of Forests, Lands and Natural Resource Operations; **55.9** Matt Meadows/Photolibrary/Getty Images; **Scientific Skills Exercise** David R. Frazier Photolibrary/Science Source; **p. 1252 Likens** Courtesy of Gene Likens; **55.15** Hubbard Brook Research Foundation/USDA Forest Service; **55.16** Mark Gallagher/Princeton Hydro, LLC/Ringoes, NJ; **55.17 top to bottom** Kissimmee Division/South Florida Water Management District, Jean Hall/FLPA/Science Source, Tim Day/Xcluder Pest Proof Fencing Company, From: Species richness accelerates marine ecosystem restoration in the Coral Triangle. S. L. Williams et al. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A*. 2017 Nov 7;114(45):11986-11991. doi: 10.1073/pnas.1707962114. Epub 2017 Oct 24. Fig. 1a. Photos courtesy of D. Trockel, University of California, Davis, CA; **55.18** U.S. Department of Energy; **p. 1259 beetle** Dr Eckart Pott/NHPA/Photoshot.

Chapter 56 **56.1 gecko** Phung My Trung, vncreatures.net; **clearcutting** Mason Vranish/Alamy Stock Photo; **tusks, 56.8** Benezeth M. Mutayoba; **energy** Ververidis Vasilis/Shutterstock; **park** Edwin Giesbers/Nature Picture Library; **reef** Matthew Banks/Alamy Stock Photo Image; **56.3 top** Alaz/Shutterstock; **bottom** Mark Carwardine/Photolibrary/Getty Images; **56.4** Merlin D. Tuttle/Science Source; **56.5** Scott Camazine/Science Source; **p. 1263 Wilson** Michael Dwyer/Alamy Stock Photo; **56.6** Michael Edwards/The Image Bank/Getty Images; **56.7** Bruce Coleman/Alamy Stock Photo; **56.9** Travel Pictures/Alamy Stock Photo; **56.12** Bruce Montagne/Dembinsky Photo Associates/Alamy Stock Photo; **56.13** Courtesy Interagency Grizzly Bear Study Team, USGS; **56.14a** Chuck Bargeron; **inset** William Leaman/Alamy Stock Photo; **56.14b** William D. Boyer/USDA; **56.16** Vladimir Melnikov/Shutterstock; **56.17** Richard O. Bierregaard, Jr.; **56.18** Frans Lemmens/Alamy Stock Photo; **56.21** Mark Chiappone; **56.22** Lyda Bergman, Green Teams of Canada; **56.25** Alfred Eisenstaedt/The LIFE Picture Collection/Getty Images; **56.27** Claire Fackler, NOAA National Marine Sanctuaries; **p. 1277 Rochman** Courtesy of Chelsea Rochman; **56.28** Courtesy of Bette Willis and Joleah Lamb; **Scientific Skills Exercise** Hank Morgan/Science Source; **56.31 resin canal** Biophoto Associates/Science Source; **tunnels** Ladd Livingston, Idaho Department of Lands, Bugwood.org; **dead trees** Dezene Huber; **pika** Chris Ray; **caribou** E.A. Janes/Robert Harding World Imagery; **chickweed** Gilles Delacroix/Garden World Images/AGE Fotostock; **urchin** Scott Ling; **56.34** NASA Ozone Watch; **56.36a** Serge de Sazo/Science Source; **56.36b** Javier Trueba/MSF/Science Source; **56.36c** Gabriel Rojo/Nature Picture Library; **56.36d** Titus Lacoste/The Image Bank/Getty Images; **p. 1287 tiger** Edwin Giesbers/Nature Picture Library.

Appendix A **Figure 2.17** Nigel Cattlin/Science Source; **Figure 6.24 left** Omikron/Science Source; **6.24 right** Dartmouth College Electron Microscope Facility; **Ch. 9 Test Your Understanding 10** Medical Research Council; **Figure 12.4** Biophoto/Science Source; **Figure 12.8** Jane Stout and Claire Walczak, Indiana University; **Ch. 12 Test Your Understanding 9** Scenics & Science/Alamy Stock Photo; **Ch. 16 Test Your Understanding 11** Thomas A. Steitz, Yale University, New Haven; **Figure 30.9** Paul Atkinson/Shutterstock; **Ch. 35 Test Your Understanding 11** From: Anatomy of the vessel network within and between tree rings of *Fraxinus lanuginosa* (Oleaceae). Peter B. Kitin, Tomoyuki Fujii, Hisashi Abe and Ryo Funada. *American Journal of Botany*. 2004;91:779-788.

Appendix B **Bacteria, Archaea** Eye of Science/Science Source; **diatoms** M I Walker/NHPA/Photoshot/Newscom; **lily** Howard Rice/Dorling Kindersley, Ltd./Alamy Stock Photo; **fungus** daksel/fotolia; **chimpanzees** E.A. Janes/AGE Fotostock.

Illustration and Text Credits

Chapter 1 **1.23** Adapted from *The Real Process of Science* (2013), Understanding Science website. The University of California Museum of Paleontology, Berkeley, and the Regents of the University of California. Retrieved from http://undsci.berkeley.edu/article/howscienceworks_02; **1.25** Data from S. N. Vignieri, J. G. Larson, and H. E. Hoekstra, The Selective Advantage of Crypsis in Mice, *Evolution* 64:2153–2158 (2010); **Scientific Skills Exercise** Data from D. W. Kaufman, Adaptive Coloration in *Peromyscus polionotus*: Experimental Selection by Owls, *Journal of Mammalogy* 55:271–283 (1974).

Chapter 2 **Scientific Skills Exercise** Data from R. Pinhasi et al., Revised Age of late Neanderthal Occupation and the End of the Middle Paleolithic in the Northern Caucasus, *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences USA* 147:8611–8616 (2011). doi 10.1073/pnas.1018938108.

Chapter 3 **3.7** map based on NOAA Fisheries, Bowhead Whale (*Balaena mysticetus*); sea ice extent from National Snow and Ice Data Center (https://nsidc.org/arcticseaicenews/); **3.9** Based on Simulating Water and the Molecules of Life by Mark Gerstein and Michael Levitt, from *Scientific American*, November 1998; **Scientific Skills Exercise** Data from C. Langdon et al., Effect of Calcium Carbonate Saturation State on the Calcification Rate of an Experimental Coral Reef, *Global Biogeochemical Cycles* 14:639–654 (2000).

Chapter 4 **4.2** Data from S. L. Miller, A Production of Amino Acids Under Possible Primitive Earth Conditions, *Science* 117:528–529 (1953); **Scientific Skills Exercise** Data from E. T. Parker et al., Primordial Synthesis of Amines and Amino Acids in a 1958 Miller H_2S-rich Spark Discharge Experiment, *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences USA* 108:5526–5531 (2011). www.pnas.org/cgi/doi/10.1073/pnas.1019191108; **4.7** Adapted from Becker, Wayne M.; Reece, Jane B.; Poenie, Martin F., *The World of the Cell*, 3rd Ed., ©1996. Reprinted and electronically reproduced by permission of Pearson Education, Inc., Upper Saddle River, New Jersey.

Chapter 5 **5.11** Adapted from Wallace/Sanders/Ferl, *Biology: The Science of Life*, 3rd Ed., ©1991. Reprinted and electronically reproduced by permission of Pearson Education, Inc., Upper Saddle River, New Jersey; **5.13** Collagen Data from Protein Data Bank ID 1CGD: "Hydration Structure of a Collagen Peptide" by Jordi Bella et al., from *Structure*, September 1995, Volume 3(9); **5.16 Space-filling model, ribbon model** Data from PDB ID 2LYZ: R. Diamond. Real-Space Refinement of the Structure of Hen Egg-white Lysozyme. *Journal of Molecular Biology* 82(3):371–91 (Jan. 25, 1974); **5.18 Transthyretin** Data from PDB ID 3GS0: S.K. Palaninathan, N.N. Mohamedmohaideen, E. Orlandini, G. Ortore, S. Nencetti, A. Lapucci, A. Rossello, J.S. Freundlich, J.C. Sacchettini. Novel Transthyretin Amyloid Fibril Formation Inhibitors: Synthesis, Biological Evaluation, and X-ray Structural Analysis. *Public Library of Science ONE* 4:e6290–e6290 (2009); **5.18 Collagen** Data from PDB ID 1CGD: J. Bella, B. Brodsky, and H.M. Berman. Hydration Structure of a Collagen Peptide, *Structure* 3:893–906 (1995); **5.18 Hemoglobin** Data from PDB ID 2HHB: G. Fermi, M.F. Perutz, B. Shaanan, R. Fourme. The Crystal Structure of Human Deoxyhaemoglobin at 1.74 Å resolution. *J. Mol. Biol.* 175:159–174 (1984).

Chapter 6 **6.6** Adapted from Becker, Wayne M.; Reece, Jane B.; Poenie, Martin F., *The World of the Cell*, 3rd Ed., ©1996. Reprinted and electronically reproduced by permission of Pearson Education, Inc. Upper Saddle River, New Jersey; **6.8 Animal cell** Adapted from Marieb, Elaine N.; Hoehn, Katja, *Human Anatomy and Physiology*, 8th Ed., © 2010. Printed and electronically reproduced by permission of Pearson Education, Inc., Upper Saddle River, New Jersey; **6.9–6.13, 6.17, 6.22, 6.24 Small cell** Adapted from Marieb, Elaine N.; Hoehn, Katja, *Human Anatomy and Physiology*, 8th Ed., ©2010. Printed and electronically reproduced by permission of Pearson Education, Inc., Upper Saddle River, New Jersey; **6.14** Adapted from Marieb, Elaine N.; Hoehn, Katja, *Human Anatomy and Physiology*, 8th Ed., ©2010. Printed and electronically reproduced by permission of Pearson Education, Inc., Upper Saddle River, New Jersey; **Table 6.1** Adapted from Hardin Jeff; Bertoni Gregory Paul, Kleinsmith, Lewis J., *Becker's World of the Cell,* 8th Edition, © 2012, p. 423. Reprinted and electronically reproduced by permission of Pearson Education, Inc. Upper Saddle River, New Jersey; **6.32** Data from: Proton pump: PDB ID 3B8C: Crystal Structure of the Plasma Membrane Proton Pump, Pedersen, B.P., Buch-Pedersen, M. J., Morth, J.P., Palmgren, M.G., Nissen, P. (2007) *Nature* 450: 1111–1114; calcium channel: PDB ID 5E1J: Structure of the Voltage-Gated Two-Pore Channel TPC1 from *Arabidopsis thaliana*, Guo, J., Zeng, W., Chen, Q., Lee, C., Chen, L., Yang, Y., Cang, C., Ren, D., Jiang, Y. (2016) *Nature* 531: 196–201; aquaporin: PDB ID 5I32: Crystal Structure of an Ammonia-Permeable Aquaporin, Kirscht, A., Kaptan, S.S., Bienert, G.P., Chaumont, F., Nissen, P., de Groot, B.L., Kjellbom, P., Gourdon, P., Johanson, U. (2016) *Plos Biol.* 14: e1002411–e1002411; BRI1 and SERK1 co-receptors: PDB ID 4LSX: Molecular mechanism for plant steroid receptor activation by somatic embryogenesis co-receptor kinases, Santiago, J., Henzler, C., Hothorn, M. (2013) *Science* 341: 889–892; BRI1 kinase domain: PDB ID 4OAC: Crystal structures of the phosphorylated BRI1 kinase domain and implications for brassinosteroid signal initiation, Bojar, D., Martinez, J., Santiago, J., Rybin, V., Bayliss, R., Hothorn, M. (2014) *Plant J.* 78: 31–43; BAK1 kinase domain: PDB ID 3UIM: Structural basis for the impact of phosphorylation on the activation of plant receptor-like kinase BAK1, Yan, L., Ma, Y.Y., Liu, D., Wei, X., Sun, Y., Chen, X., Zhao, H., Zhou, J., Wang, Z., Shui, W., Lou, Z.Y. (2012) *Cell Res.* 22: 1304–1308; BSK8 pseudokinase: PDB ID: 4I92 Structural Characterization of the RLCK Family Member BSK8: A Pseudokinase with an Unprecedented Architecture, Grutter, C., Sreeramulu, S., Sessa, G., Rauh, D. (2013) *J. Mol. Biol.* 425: 4455–4467; ATP synthase PDB ID 1E79: The Structure of the Central Stalk in Bovine F(1)-ATPase at 2.4 Å Resolution, Gibbons, C., Montgomery, M.G., Leslie, A.G.W., Walker, J.E. (2000) *Nat. Struct. Biol.* 7: 1055; ATP synthase PDB ID 1C17: Structural changes linked to proton translocation by subunit c of the ATP synthase, Rastogi, V.K., Girvin, M.E. (1999) *Nature* 402: 263–268; ATP synthase PDB ID 1L2P: The "Second Stalk" of *Escherichia coli* ATP Synthase: Structure of the Isolated Dimerization Domain, Del Rizzo, P.A., Bi, Y., Dunn,

S.D., Shilton, B.H. (2002) *Biochemistry* 41: 6875–6884; ATP synthase PDB ID 2A7U: Structural Characterization of the Interaction of the Delta and Alpha Sub-units of the *Escherichia coli* F(1)F(0)-ATP Synthase by NMR Spectroscopy, Wilkens, S., Borchardt, D., Weber, J., Senior, A.E. (2005) *Biochemistry* 44: 11786–11794; Phosphofructokinase: PDB ID 1PFK: Crystal Structure of the Complex of Phosphofructokinase from *Escherichia coli* with Its Reaction Products, Shirakihara, Y., Evans, P.R. (1988) *J. Mol. Biol*. 204: 973–994; Hexokinase: PDB ID 4QS8: Biochemical and Structural Study of *Arabidopsis* Hexokinase 1, Feng, J., Zhao, S., Chen, X., Wang, W., Dong, W., Chen, J., Shen, J.-R., Liu, L., Kuang, T. (2015) *Acta Crystallogr.*, Sect. D 71: 367–375; Isocitrate dehydrogenase: PDB ID 3BLW: Allosteric Motions in Structures of Yeast NAD+-specific Isocitrate Dehydrogenase, Taylor, A.B., Hu, G., Hart, P.J., McAlister-Henn, L. (2008) *J. Biol. Chem.* 283:10872–10880; NADH-quinone oxidoreduc-tase: PDB ID 3M9S: The architecture of respiratory complex I, Efremov, R.G., Barada-ran, R., Sazanov, L.A. (2010) *Nature* 465: 441–445; NADH-quinone oxidore-ductase: PDB ID 3RKO: Structure of the membrane domain of respiratory complex I, Efremov, R.G., Sazanov, L.A. (2011) *Nature* 476: 414–420; Succinate dehydrogenase: PDB ID 1NEK: Architecture of Succinate Dehydrogenase and Reactive Oxygen Species Generation, Yankovskaya, V., Horsefield, R., Tornroth, S., Luna-Chavez, C., Miyoshi, H., Leger, C., Byrne, B., Cecchini, G., Iwata, S. (2003) *Science* 299: 700–704; Ubiquinone: http://www.proteopedia.org/wiki/index.php/Image: Coenzyme_Q10.pdb; Cytochrome bc1: PDB ID 1BGY: Complete structure of the 11-subunit bovine mitochondrial cytochrome bc1 complex, Iwata, S., Lee, J.W., Okada, K., Lee, J.K., Iwata, M., Rasmussen, B., Link, T.A., Ramaswamy, S., Jap, B.K. (1998) *Science* 281: 64–71; Cytochrome *c*: PDB ID 3CYT: Redox Conformation Changes in Refined Tuna Cytochrome c, Takano, T., Dickerson, R.E. (1980) *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 77: 6371–6375; Cytochrome *c* oxidase: PDB ID 1OCO: Redox-Coupled Crystal Structural Changes in Bovine Heart Cytochrome c Oxidase, Yoshikawa, S., Shinzawa-Itoh, K., Nakashima, R., Yaono, R., Yamashita, E., Inoue, N., Yao, M., Fei, M.J., Libeu, C.P., Mizushima, T., Yamaguchi, H., Tomizaki, T., Tsukihara, T. (1998) *Science* 280: 1723–1729; Rubisco: PDB ID 1RCX: The Structure of the Complex between Rubisco and its Natural Substrate Ribulose 1,5-Bisphosphate, Taylor, T.C., Andersson, I. (1997) *J. Mol. Biol*. 265: 432–444; Photosystem II: PDB ID 1S5L: Architecture of the Photosynthetic Oxygen-Evolving Center, Ferreira, K.N., Iverson, T.M., Maghlaoui, K., Barber, J., Iwata, S. (2004) *Science* 303: 1831–1838; Plastoquinone: http://www.rcsb.org/pdb/ligand/ligandsummary.do?hetId=PL9; Photosystem I: PDB ID 1JB0: Three-Dimensional Structure of Cyanobacterial Photosystem I at 2.5 Å Resolution, Jordan, P., Fromme, P., Witt, H.T., Klukas, O., Saenger, W., Krauss, N. (2001) *Nature* 411: 909–917; Ferredoxin-NADP+ reductase: PDB ID 3W5V: Concentration-Dependent Oligomerization of Cross-Linked Complexes between Ferredoxin and Ferredoxin-NADP(+) Reductase; DNA:PDB ID 1BNA: Structure of a B-DNA Dodecamer: Conformation and Dynamics, Drew, H.R., Wing, R.M., Takano, T., Broka, C., Tanaka, S., Itakura, K., Dickerson, R.E. (1981) *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 78: 2179–2183; RNA polymerase: PDB ID 2E2I: Structural basis of transcription: role of the trigger loop in substrate specificity and catalysis, Wang, D., Bushnell, D.A., Westover, K.D., Kaplan, C.D., Kornberg, R.D. (2006) *Cell* (Cambridge, Mass.) 127: 941–954; Nucleosome: PDB ID 1AOI: Crystal Structure of the Nucleosome Core Particle at 2.8 Å Resolution, Luger, K., Mader, A.W., Richmond, R.K., Sargent, D.F., Richmond, T.J. (1997) *Nature* 389: 251–260; tRNA: PDB ID 4TNA: Further refinement of the structure of yeast tRNAPhe, Hingerty, B., Brown, R.S., Jack, A. (1978) *J. Mol. Biol*. 124: 523–534; Ribosome: PDB ID 1FJF: Structure of the 30S Ribosomal Subunit, Wimberly, B.T., Brodersen, D.E., Clemons Jr., W.M., Morgan-Warren, R.J., Carter, A.P., Vonrhein, C., Hartsch, T., Ramakrishnan, V. (2000) *Nature* 407: 327–339; Ribosome: PDB ID 1JJ2: The Kink-Turn: A New RNA Secondary Structure Motif, Klein, D.J., Schmeing, T.M., Moore, P.B., Steitz, T.A. (2001) *EMBO J.* 20: 4214–4221; Microtubule: PDB ID 3J2U: Structural Model for Tubulin Recognition and Deformation by Kinesin-13 Microtubule Depolymerases, Asenjo, A.B., Chatterjee, C., Tan, D., Depaoli, V., Rice, W.J., Diaz-Avalos, R., Silvestry, M., Sosa, H. (2013) *Cell Rep*. 3: 759–768; Actin microfilament: PDB ID 1ATN: Atomic Structure of the Actin:DNase I Complex. Kabsch, W., Mannherz, H.G., Suck, D., Pai, E.F., Holmes, K.C. (1990) *Nature* 347: 37–44; Myosin: PDB ID 1M8Q: Molecular Modeling of Averaged Rigor Crossbridges from Tomograms of Insect Flight Muscle, Chen, L.F., Winkler, H., Reedy, M.K., Reedy, M.C., Taylor, K.A. (2002) *J. Struct. Biol.* 138: 92–104; Phosphoglucose Isomerase: PDB ID 1IAT: The Crystal Structure of Human Phosphoglucose Isomerase at 1.6 Å Resolution: Implications for Catalytic Mechanism, Cytokine Activity and Haemolytic Anaemia, Read, J., Pearce, J., Li, X., Muirhead, H., Chirgwin, J., Davies, C. (2001) *J. Mol. Biol*. 309: 447–463; Aldolase: PDB ID 1ALD: Activity and Specificity of Human Aldolases, Gamblin, S.J., Davies, G.J., Grimes, J.M., Jackson, R.M., Littlechild, J.A., Watson, H.C. (1991) *J. Mol. Biol*. 219: 573–576; Triosephosphate Isomerase: PDB ID 7TIM: Structure of the Triose-Phosphate Isomerase-Phosphoglycolohydroxamate Complex: An Analogue of the Intermediate on the Reaction Pathway, Davenport, R.C., Bash, P.A., Seaton, B.A., Karplus, M., Petsko, G.A., Ringe, D. (1991) *Biochemistry* 30: 5821–5826; Glyceraldehyde-3-Phosphate Dehydrogenase: PDB ID 3GPD: Twinning in Crystals of Human Skeletal Muscle D-Glyceraldehyde-3-Phosphate Dehydrogenase, Mercer, W.D., Winn, S.I., Watson, H.C. (1976) *J. Mol. Biol*. 104: 277–283; Phosphoglycerate Kinase: PDB ID 3PGK: Sequence and Structure of Yeast Phosphoglycerate Kinase, Watson, H.C., Walker, N.P., Shaw, P.J., Bryant, T.N., Wendell, P.L., Fothergill, L.A., Perkins, R.E., Conroy, S.C., Dobson, M.J., Tuite, M.F. (1982) *EMBO J.* 1: 1635–1640; Phosphoglycerate Mutase: PDB ID 3PGM: Structure and Activity of Phosphoglycerate Mutase, Winn, S.I., Watson, H.C., Harkins, R.N., Fothergill, L.A. (1981) *Philos. Trans. R. Soc. London, Ser. B* 293: 121–130; Enolase: PDB ID 5ENL: Inhibition of Enolase: The Crystal Structures of Enolase-Ca2(+)-2-Phosphoglycerate and Enolase-Zn2(+)-Phosphoglycolate Complexes at 2.2-Å Resolution, Lebioda, L., Stec, B., Brewer, J.M., Tykarska, E. (1991) *Biochemistry* 30: 2823–2827; Pyruvate Kinase: PDB ID 1A49: Structure of the Bis(Mg2+)-ATP-Oxalate Complex of the Rabbit Muscle Pyruvate Kinase at 2.1 Å Resolution: ATP Binding over a Barrel, Larsen, T.M., Benning, M.M., Rayment, I., Reed, G.H. (1998) *Biochemistry* 37: 6247–6255; Citrate Synthase: PDB ID 1CTS: Crystallographic Refinement and Atomic Models of Two Different Forms of Citrate Synthase at 2.7 and 1.7 Å Resolution, Remington, S., Wiegand, G., Huber, R. (1982) *J. Mol. Biol*. 158: 111–152; Succinyl-CoA Synthetase: PDB ID 2FP4: Interactions of GTP with the ATP-Grasp Domain of GTP-Specific Succinyl-CoA Synthetase, Fraser, M.E., Hayakawa, K., Hume, M.S., Ryan, D.G., Brownie, E.R. (2006) *J. Biol. Chem.* 281: 11058-11065; Malate Dehydrogenase: PDB ID 4WLE: Crystal Structure of Citrate Bound MDH2, Eo, Y.M., Han, B.G., Ahn, H.C. To Be Published; **Summary art nucleus, Golgi apparatus and endoplasmic reticulum** Adapted from Marieb, Elaine N.; Hoehn, Katja, *Human Anatomy and Physiology*, 8th Ed., ©2010. Printed and electronically reproduced by permission of Pearson Education, Inc., Upper Saddle River, New Jersey.

Chapter 7 **7.4** Data from L. D. Frye and M. Edidin, The Rapid Intermixing of Cell Surface Antigens after Formation of Mouse-human Heterokaryons, *Journal of Cell Science* 7:319 (1970); **7.6** Based on Similar Energetic Contributions of Packing in the Core of Membrane and Water-Soluble Proteins by Nathan H. Joh et al., from *Journal of the American Chemical Society*, Volume 131(31); **Scientific Skills Exercise** Data from Figure 1 in T. Kondo and E. Beutler, Developmental Changes in Glucose Transport of Guinea Pig Erythrocytes, *Journal of Clinical Investigation* 65:1–4 (1980).

Chapter 8 **8 Scientific Skills Exercise** Data from S. R. Commerford et al., Diets Enriched in Sucrose or Fat Increase Gluconeogenesis and G-6-pase but not Basal Glucose Production in Rats, *American Journal of Physiology—Endocrinology and Metabolism* 283:E545–E555 (2002); **8.19** Data from Protein Data Bank ID 3e1f: "Direct and Indirect Roles of His-418 in Metal Binding and in the Activity of Beta-Galactosidase (*E. coli*)" by Douglas H. Juers et al., from *Protein Science*, June 2009, Volume 18(6); **8.20** Data from Protein Data Bank ID 1MDYO: "Crystal Structure of MyoD bHLH Domain-DNA Complex: Perspectives on DNA Recognition and Implications for Transcriptional Activation" from *Cell*, May 1994, Volume 77(3); **8.22 Small cell** Adapted from Marieb, Elaine N.; Hoehn, Katja, *Human Anatomy and Physiology*, 8th Ed., ©2010. Printed and electronically reproduced by permission of Pearson Education, Inc., Upper Saddle River, New Jersey.

Chapter 9 **9.4** Adaptation of Figure 2.69 from *Molecular Biology of the Cell*, 4th Edition, by Bruce Alberts et al. Garland Science/Taylor & Francis LLC; **9.8** Figure adapted from *Biochemistry*, 4th Edition, by Christopher K. Mathews et al. Pearson Education, Inc.; **Scientific Skills Exercise** Data from M. E. Harper and M. D. Brand, The Quantitative Contributions of Mitochondrial Proton Leak and ATP Turnover Reactions to the Changed Respiration Rates of Hepatocytes from Rats of Different Thyroid Status, *Journal of Biological Chemistry* 268:14850–14860 (1993).

Chapter 10 **10.9** Data from T. W. Engelmann, Bacterium Photometricum. Ein Beitrag zur Vergleichenden Physiologie des Lichtund Farbensinnes, *Archiv. für Physiologie* 30:95–124 (1883); **10.12b** Data from Architecture of the Photosynthetic Oxygen-Evolving Center by Kristina N. Ferreira et al., from *Science*, March 2004, Volume 303(5665); **10.14** Adaptation of Figure 4.1 from *Energy, Plants, and Man*, by Richard Walker and David Alan Walker. © 1992 by Richard Walker and David Alan Walker. Reprinted with permission of Richard Walker; **Scientific Skills Exercise** Data from D. T. Patterson and E. P. Flint, Potential Effects of Global Atmospheric CO_2 Enrichment on the Growth and Competitiveness of C3 and C4 Weed and Crop Plants, Weed *Science* 28(1):71–75 (1980).

Chapter 11 **Problem-Solving Exercise** Data from N. Balaban et al., Treatment of *Staphylococcus aureus* Biofilm Infection by the Quorum-Sensing Inhibitor RIP, *Antimicrobial Agents and Chemotherapy*, 51:2226–2229 (2007); **11.8, 11.12** Adapted from Becker, Wayne M.; Reece, Jane B.; Poenie, Martin F., *The World of the Cell*, 3rd Edition, © 1996. Reprinted and electronically reproduced by permission of Pearson Education, Inc., Upper Saddle River, New Jersey.

Chapter 12 **12.9** Data from G. J. Gorbsky, P. J. Sammak, and G. G. Borisy, Chromosomes Move Poleward in Anaphase along Stationary Microtubules that Coordinately Disassemble from their Kinetochore Ends, *Journal of Cell Biology* 104:9–18 (1987); **12.13** Adaptation of Figure 18.41 from *Molecular Biology of the Cell*, 4th Edition, by Bruce Alberts et al. Garland Science/Taylor & Francis LLC; **12.14** Data from R. T. Johnson and P. N. Rao, Mammalian Cell Fusion: Induction of Premature Chromosome Condensation in Interphase Nuclei, *Nature* 226:717–722 (1970); **Scientific Skills Exercise** Data from K. K. Velpula et al., Regulation of Glioblastoma Progression by Cord Blood Stem Cells is Mediated by Downregulation of Cyclin D1, *PLoS ONE* 6(3): e18017 (2011).

Chapter 14 **14.3, 14.8** Data from G. Mendel, Experiments in Plant Hybridization, *Proceedings of the Natural History Society of Brünn* 4:3–47 (1866).

Chapter 15 **15.3** Data from T. H. Morgan, Sex-limited inheritance in *Drosophila, Science* 32:120–122 (1910); **15.9** Based on the data from "The Linkage of Two Factors in *Drosophila* That Are Not Sex-Linked" by Thomas Hunt Morgan and Clara J. Lynch, from *Biological Bulletin*, August 1912, Volume 23(3).

Chapter 16 **16.2** Data from F. Griffith, The Significance of Pneumococcal Types, *Journal of Hygiene* 27:113–159 (1928); **16.4** Data from A. D. Hershey and M. Chase, Independent Functions of Viral Protein and Nucleic Acid in Growth of Bacteriophage, *Journal of General Physiology* 36:39–56 (1952); **Scientific Skills Exercise** Data from several papers by Chargaff: for example, E. Chargaff et al., Composition of the Desoxypentose Nucleic Acids of Four Genera of Sea-urchin, *Journal of Biological Chemistry* 195:155–160 (1952); **pp. 320–321 quote** J. D. Watson and F. H. C. Crick, Genetical Implications of the Structure of Deoxyribonucleic Acid, *Nature* 171:964–967 (1953); **16.11** Data from M. Meselson and F. W. Stahl, The Replication of DNA in *Escherichia coli, Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences USA* 44:671–682 (1958).

Chapter 17 **17.3** Data from A. M. Srb and N. H. Horowitz, The Ornithine Cycle in Neurospora and Its Genetic Control, *Journal of Biological Chemistry* 154:129–139 (1944); **17.12** Adapted from Becker, Wayne M.; Reece, Jane B.; Poenie, Martin F., *The World of the Cell,* 3rd Edition, © 1996. Reprinted and electronically reproduced by permission of Pearson Education, Inc., Upper Saddle River, New Jersey; **17.14** Adapted from Klein-Smith, Lewis J., Kish, Valerie M.; *Principles of Cell and Molecular Biology*. Reprinted and electronically reproduced by permissions of Pearson Education, Inc., Upper Saddle River, New Jersey; **17.18** Adapted from Mathews, Christopher K.; Van Holde, Kensal E., *Biochemistry*, 2nd ed., ©1996. Reprinted and electronically reproduced by permission of Pearson Education, Inc. Upper Saddle River, New Jersey; **Scientific Skills Exercise** Material provided courtesy of Dr. Thomas Schneider, National Cancer Institute, National Institutes of Health, 2012; **Problem-Solving Exercise** Data from N. Nishi and K. Nanjo, Insulin Gene Mutations and Diabetes, *Journal of Diabetes Investigation* Vol. 2: 92–100 (2011).

Chapter 18 **18.10** Data from PDB ID 1MDY: P. C. Ma et al. Crystal structure of MyoD bHLH Domain-DNA Complex: Perspectives on DNA Recognition and Implications for Transcriptional Activation, *Cell* 77:451–459 (1994); **Scientific Skills Exercise** Data from J. N. Walters et al., Regulation of Human Microsomal Prostaglandin E Synthase-1 by IL-1b Requires a Distal Enhancer Element with a Unique Role for C/EBPb, *Biochemical Journal* 443:561–571 (2012); **18.26** Adapted from Becker, Wayne M.; Reece, Jane B.; Poenie, Martin F., *The World of the Cell*, 3rd Edition, © 1996. Reprinted and electronically reproduced by permission of Pearson Education, Inc., Upper Saddle River, New Jersey.

Chapter 19 **19.2** Data from M. J. Beijerinck, Concerning a Contagium Vivum Fluidum as Cause of the Spot Disease of Tobacco Leaves, *Verhandelingen der Koninkyke Akademie Wettenschappen te Amsterdam* 65:3–21 (1898). Translation published in English as Phytopathological Classics Number 7 (1942), American Phytopathological Society Press, St. Paul, MN; **Scientific Skills Exercise** Data from J.-R. Yang et al., New Variants and Age Shift to High Fatality Groups Contribute to Severe Successive Waves in the 2009 Influenza Pandemic in Taiwan, *PLoS ONE* 6(11): e28288 (2011).

Chapter 20 **20.7** Adapted from Becker, Wayne M.; Reece, Jane B.; Poenie, Martin F., *The World of the Cell*, 3rd Edition, © 1996. Reprinted and electronically reproduced by permission of Pearson Education, Inc., Upper Saddle River, New Jersey; **20.16** Data from J. B. Gurdon et al., The Developmental Capacity of Nuclei Transplanted from Keratinized Cells of Adult Frogs, *Journal of Embryology and Experimental Morphology* 34:93–112 (1975); **20.21** Data from K. Takahashi et al., Induction of pluripotent stem cells from adult human fibroblasts by defined factors, *Cell* 131:861–872 (2007).

Chapter 21 **21.3** Simulated screen shots based on Mac OS X and from data found at NCBI, U.S. National Library of Medicine using Conserved Domain Database, Sequence Alignment Viewer, and Cn3D; **21.8, 21.9** Adapted from Becker, Wayne M.; Reece, Jane B.; Poenie, Martin F., *The World of the Cell,* 3rd Edition, © 1996. Reprinted and electronically reproduced by permission of Pearson Education, Inc., Upper Saddle River, New Jersey; **21.10 Hemoglobin** Data from PDB ID 2HHB: G. Fermi, M.F. Perutz, B. Shaanan, and R. Fourme. The Crystal Structure of Human Deoxyhaemoglobin at 1.74 Å resolution. *J. Mol. Biol*. 175:159–174 (1984); **21.15a** Drawn from data in Protein Data Bank ID 1LZ1: "Refinement of Human Lysozyme at 1.5 Å Resolution Analysis of Non-bonded and Hydrogen-bond Interactions" by P. J. Artymiuk and C. C. Blake, from *Journal of Molecular Biology*, 1981, 152:737–762; **21.15b** Drawn from data in Protein Data Bank ID 1A4V: "Structural Evidence for the Presence of a Secondary Calcium Binding Site in Human Alpha-Lactalbumin" by N. Chandra et al., from *Biochemistry*, 1998, 37:4767–4772; **Hemoglobin in Scientific Skills Exercise** PDB ID 2HHB: G. Fermi, M.F. Perutz, B. Shaanan, and R. Fourme. The Crystal Structure of Human Deoxyhaemoglobin at 1.74 Å Resolution. *J. Mol. Biol*. 175:159–174 (1984); **Scientific Skills Exercise** Compiled using data from NCBI; **21.18** Data from W. Shu et al., Altered ultrasonic vocalization in mice with a disruption in the *Foxp2* gene, *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences USA* 102:9643–9648 (2005); **21.19** Adapted from *The Homeobox: Something Very Precious That We Share with Flies, From Egg to Adult* by Peter Radetsky, © 1992. Reprinted by permission from William McGinnis; **21.20** Adaptation from "Hox Genes and the Evolution of Diverse Body Plans" by Michael Akam, from *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society B: Biological Sciences*, September 29, 1995, Volume 349(1329): 313–319. Reprinted by permission from The Royal Society.

Chapter 22 **22.8** Artwork by Utako Kikutani (as appeared in "What Can Make a Four-Ton Mammal a Most Sensitive Beast?" by Jeheskel Shoshani, from *Natural History*, November 1997, Volume 106(1), 36–45). Copyright © 1997 by Utako Kikutani. Reprinted with permission of the artist; **22.13** Data from "Host Race Radiation in the Soapberry Bug: Natural History with the History" by Scott P. Carroll and Christin Boyd, from *Evolution,* 1992, Volume 46(4); **22.14** Figure created by Dr. Binh Diep on request of Michael Cain. Copyright © 2011 by Binh Diep. Reprinted with permission; **Scientific Skills Exercise** Data from J. A. Endler, Natural Selection on Color Patterns in *Poecilia reticulata, Evolution* 34:76–91 (1980); **Test Your Understanding Question 7** Data from C. F. Curtis et al., Selection for and Against Insecticide Resistance and Possible Methods of Inhibiting the Evolution of Resistance in Mosquitoes, *Ecological Entomology* 3:273–287 (1978).

Chapter 23 **23.4** Based on the data from *Evolution*, by Douglas J. Futuyma. Sinauer Associates, 2006; and Nucleotide Polymorphism at the Alcohol Dehydrogenase Locus of *Drosophila melanogaster* by Martin Kreitman, from *Nature*, August 1983, Volume 304(5925); **23.11a** Maps adapted from Figure 20.6 from *Discover Biology*, 2nd Edition, edited by Michael L. Cain, Hans Damman, Robert A. Lue, and Carol Kaesuk Loon. W. W. Norton & Company, Inc.; **23.12** Data from Joseph H. Camin and Paul R. Ehrlich, Natural Selection in Water Snakes (*Natrix sipedon* L.) on Islands in Lake Erie, *Evolution* 12:504–511 (1958); **23.14** Based on many sources: *Evolution* by Douglas J. Futuyma. Sinauer Associates 2005; and *Vertebrate Paleontology and Evolution* by Robert L. Carroll. W.H. Freeman & Co., 1988; **23.16** Data from A. M. Welch et al., Call Duration as an Indicator of Genetic Quality in Male Gray Tree Frogs, *Science* 280:1928–1930 (1998); **23.17** Adapted from Frequency-Dependent Natural Selection in the Handedness of Scale-Eating Cichlid Fish by Michio Hori, from *Science*, April 1993, Volume 260(5105); **Test Your Understanding Question 7** Data from R. K. Koehn and T. J. Hilbish, The Adaptive Importance of Genetic Variation, *American Scientist* 75:134–141 (1987).

Chapter 24 **24.6** Original unpublished graph created by Brian Langerhans; **24.7** Data from D. M. B. Dodd, Reproductive Isolation as a Consequence of Adaptive Divergence in *Drosophila pseudoobscura, Evolution* 43:1308–1311 (1989); **Scientific Skills Exercise** Data from S. G. Tilley, A. Verrell, and S. J. Arnold, Correspondence between Sexual Isolation and Allozyme Differentiation: A Test in the Salamander *Desmognathus ochrophaeus, Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences USA* 87:2715–2719 (1990); **24.12** Data from O. Seehausen and J. J. M. van Alphen, The Effect of Male Coloration on Female Mate Choice in Closely Related Lake Victoria Cichlids (*Haplochromis nyererei* complex), *Behavioral Ecology and Sociobiology* 42:1–8 (1998); **24.13d** Based on *Hybrid Zone and the Evolutionary Process*, edited by Richard G. Harrison. Oxford University Press; **24.19b** Data from Role of Gene Interactions in Hybrid Speciation: Evidence from Ancient and Experimental Hybrids by Loren H. Rieseberg et al., from *Science*, May 1996, Volume 272(5262).

Chapter 25 **25.2** Based on data from The Miller Volcanic Spark Discharge Experiment by Adam P. Johnson et al., from *Science*, October 2008, Volume 322(5900); **25.4** Based on "Experimental Models of Primitive Cellular Compartments: Encapsulation, Growth, and Division" by Martin M. Hanczyc, Shelly M. Fujikawa, and Jack W. Szostak, from *Science*, October 2003, Volume 302(5645); **25.6** Eicher, D. L, *Geologic Time*, 2nd Ed., ©1976, p. 119. Adapted and electronically reproduced by permission of Pearson Education, Inc., Upper Saddle River, New Jersey; **25.7 First four skulls** Adapted from many sources including D.J. Futuyma, *Evolution*, Fig. 4.10, Sunderland, MA: Sinauer Associates, Sunderland, MA (2005) and from R.L. Carroll, *Vertebrate Paleontology and Evolution*. W.H. Freeman & Co. (1988); **25.7 Last skull** Adapted from Z. Luo et al., A New Mammaliaform from the Early Jurassic and Evolution of Mammalian Characteristics, *Science* 292:1535 (2001); **25.8** Adapted from When Did Photosynthesis Emerge on Earth? by David J. Des Marais, from *Science*, September 2000, Volume 289(5485). **25.9** Adapted from The Rise of Atmospheric Oxygen by Lee R. Kump, from *Nature*, January 2008, Volume 451(7176); **Scientific Skills Exercise** Data from T. A. Hansen, Larval Dispersal and Species Longevity in Lower Tertiary Gastropods, *Science* 199:885–887 (1978); **25.16** Based on *Earthquake Information Bulletin*, December 1977, Volume 9(6), edited by Henry Spall; **25.18** Based on many sources: D.M. Raup and J. J. Sepkoski, Jr., Mass Extinctions in the Marine Fossil Record, *Science* 215:1501–1503 (1982); J. J. Sepkoski, Jr., A Kinetic Model of Phanerozoic Taxonomic Diversity. III. Post-Paleozoic Families and Mass Extinctions, *Paleobiology* 10:246–267 (1984); and D. J. Futuyma, *The Evolution of Biodiversity*, p. 143, Fig. 7.3a and p. 145, Fig. 7.6, Sinauer Associates, Sunderland, MA; **25.20** Based on data from A Long-Term Association between Global Temperature and Biodiversity, Origination and Extinction in the Fossil Record by P.J. Mayhew, G.B. Jenkins and T.G. Benton, *Proceedings of the Royal Society B: Biological Sciences* 275(1630):47–53. The Royal Society, 2008; **25.21** Adapted from Anatomical and Ecological Constraints on Phanerozoic Animal Diversity in the Marine Realm by Richard K. Bambach et al., from *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences USA*, May 2002, Volume 99(10); **25.26** Based on data from The Miller Volcanic Spark Discharge Experiment by Adam P. Johnson et al., from *Science*, October 2008, Volume 322(5900); **25.27** Data from Genetic and Developmental Basis of Evolutionary Pelvic Reduction in Threespine Sticklebacks by Michael D. Shapiro et al., from *Nature*, April 2004, Volume 428(6984); **25.29** Adaptations of Figure 3-1 (a–d, f) from *Evolution*, 3rd Edition, by Monroe W. Strickberger. Jones & Bartlett Learning, Burlington, MA.

Chapter 26 **26.6** Data from C. S. Baker and S. R. Palumbi, Which Whales Are Hunted? A Molecular Genetic Approach to Monitoring Whaling, *Science* 265:1538–1539 (1994); **26.13** Based on The Evolution of the Hedgehog Gene Family in Chordates: Insights from Amphioxus Hedgehog by Sebastian M. Shimeld, from *Developmental Genes and Evolution*, January 1999, Volume 209(1); **26.19** Based on *Molecular Markers, Natural History, and Evolution*, 2nd ed., by J.C. Advise. Sinauer Associates, 2004; **26.20** Adapted from Timing the Ancestor of the HIV-1 Pandemic Strains by B. Korber et al., *Science* 288(5472):1789–1796 (6/9/00); **Scientific Skills Exercise** Data from Nancy A. Moran, Yale University. See N. A. Moran and T. Jarvik, Lateral transfer of genes from fungi underlies carotenoid production in aphids, *Science* 328:624–627 (2010); **26.23** Adapted from Phylogenetic Classification and the Universal Tree by W.F. Doolittle, *Science* 284(5423):2124–2128 (6/25/99).

Chapter 27 **27.10** Graph Data from V. S. Cooper and R. E. Lenski, The Population Genetics of Ecological Specialization in Evolving *Escherichia coli* Populations, *Nature* 407:736–739 (2000); **27.19** Data from Root-Associated Bacteria Contribute to Mineral Weathering and to Mineral Nutrition in Trees: A Budgeting Analysis by Christophe Calvaruso et al., *Applied and Environmental Microbiology*, February 2006, Volume 72(2); **27.22** Data from K. Kupferschmidt, Resistance Fighters. *Science* 352(6287):758-761. 13 May 2016; **Scientific Skills Exercise** Data from L. Ling et al. A New Antibiotic Kills Pathogens without Detectable Resistance, *Nature* 517:455–459 (2015); **Test Your Understanding Question 8** Data from J. J. Burdon et al., Variation in the Effectiveness of Symbiotic Associations between Native Rhizobia and Temperate Australian Acacia: Within Species Interactions, *Journal of Applied Ecology* 36:398–408 (1999).

Chapter 28 **Scientific Skills Exercise** Data from D. Yang et al., Mitochondrial Origins, *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences USA* 82:4443–4447 (1985); **28.19** Adaptation of illustration by Kenneth X. Probst, from *Microbiology* by R.W. Bauman. Copyright © 2004 by Kenneth X. Probst; **28.26** Data from R. Derelle et al., Bacterial proteins pinpoint a single eukaryotic root, *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences USA* 112:E693–699 (2015); **28.32** Based on Global Phytoplankton Decline over the Past Century by Daniel G. Boyce et al., from *Nature*, July 29, 2010, Volume 466(7306); and authors' personal communications.

Chapter 29 **29.14** Data from "Inputs, Outputs, and Accumulation of Nitrogen in an Early Successional Moss (Polytrichum) Ecosystem" by Richard D. Bowden, from *Ecological Monographs*, June 1991, Volume 61(2); **Scientific Skills Exercise** Data from T.M. Lenton et al, First Plants Cooled the Ordovician. *Nature Geoscience* 5:86–89 (2012); **Test Your Understanding Question 8** Data from O. Zackrisson et al., Nitrogen Fixation Increases with Successional Age in Boreal Forests, *Ecology* 85:3327–3334 (2006).

Chapter 30 **Scientific Skills Exercise** Data from S. Sallon et al, Germination, Genetics, and Growth of an Ancient Date Seed. *Science* 320:1464 (2008); 30.14a Adapted from "A Revision of Williamsoniella" by T. M. Harris, from *Proceedings of the Royal Society B: Biological Sciences*, October 1944, Volume 231(583): 313–328; **30.14b** Adaptation of Figure 2.3, *Phylogeny and Evolution of Angiosperm*, 2nd Edition, by Douglas E. Soltis et al. (2005). Sinauer Associates, Inc.

Chapter 31 **Scientific Skills Exercise** Data from F. Martin et al., The genome of *Laccaria bicolor* provides insights into mycorrhizal symbiosis, *Nature* 452:88–93 (2008); **31.22** Data from A. E. Arnold et al., Fungal Endophytes Limit Pathogen Damage in a Tropical Tree, *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences USA* 100:15649–15654 (2003); **31.27** Adaption of Figure 1 from "Reversing Introduced Species Effects: Experimental Removal of Introduced Fish Leads to Rapid Recovery of a Declining Frog" by Vance T. Vredenburg, from *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences USA*, May 2004, Volume 101(20). Copyright (2004) National Academy of Sciences, U.S.A.;

Test Your Understanding Question 5 Data from R. S. Redman et al., Thermotolerance Generated by Plant/Fungal Symbiosis, *Science* 298:1581 (2002).

Chapter 32 **Scientific Skills Exercise** Data from Bradley Deline, University of West Georgia, and Kevin Peterson, Dartmouth College, 2013.

Chapter 33 **Scientific Skills Exercise** Data from R. Rochette et al., Interaction between an Invasive Decapod and a Native Gastropod: Predator Foraging Tactics and Prey Architectural Defenses, *Marine Ecology Progress Series* 330:179–188 (2007); **33.21** Adaptation of Figure 3 from "The Global Decline of Nonmarine Mollusks" by Charles Lydeard et al., from *Bioscience*, April 2004, Volume 54(4). American Institute of Biological Sciences. Oxford University Press; **33.29** Tree Data from J. K. Grenier et al., Evolution of the Entire Arthropod Hox Gene Set Predated the Origin and Radiation of the Onychophoran/Arthropod Clade, *Current Biology* 7:547–553 (1997).

Chapter 34 **34.10** Adaptation of Figure 1a from "Fossil Sister Group of Craniates: Predicted and Found" by Jon Mallatt and Jun-yuan Chen, from *Journal of Morphology*, May 15, 2003, Volume 258(1). John Wiley & Sons, Inc.; **34.12** Adapted from *Vertebrates: Comparative Anatomy, Function, Evolution* (2002) by Kenneth Kardong. The McGraw-Hill Companies, Inc.; **34.18** Adaptation of Figure 3 from "The Oldest Articulated Osteichthyan Reveals Mosaic Gnathostome Characters" by Min Zhu et al., from *Nature,* March 26, 2009, Volume 458(7237); **34.21** Adaptation of Figure 4 from "The Pectoral Fin of *Tiktaalik roseae* and the Origin of the Tetrapod Limb" by Neil H. Shubin et al., from *Nature,* April 6, 2006, Volume 440(7085). Macmillan Publishers Ltd.; **34.21** *Acanthostega* adaptation of Figure 27 from "The Devonian Tetrapod *Acanthostega gunnari* Jarvik: Postcranial Anatomy, Basal Tetrapod Relationships and Patterns of Skeletal Evolution" by Michael I. Coates, from *Transactions of the Royal Society of Edinburgh: Earth Sciences*, Volume 87: 398; **34.38a** Based on many sources including Figure 4.10 from *Evolution*, by Douglas J. Futuyma. Sinauer Associates, 2005; and *Vertebrate Paleontology and Evolution* by Robert L. Carroll. W.H. Freeman & Co., 1988; **34.47** Based on many photos of fossils. Some sources are *O. tugenensis* photo in "Early Hominid Sows Division" by Michael Balter, from *Science Now*, Feb. 22, 2001; *A. garhi* and *H. neanderthalensis* based on *The Human Evolution Coloring Book* by Adrienne L. Zihlman and Carla J. Simmons. Harper Collins, 2001; *K. platyops* based on photo in "New Hominin Genus from Eastern Africa Shows Diverse Middle Pliocene Lineages" by Meave Leakey et al., from *Nature,* March 2001, Volume 410(6827); *P. boisei* based on a photo by David Brill; *H. ergaster* based on a photo at www.museumsinhand.com; *S. tchadensis* based on Figure 1b from "A New Hominid from the Upper Miocene of Chad, Central Africa" by Michel Brunet et al., from *Nature,* July 2002, Volume 418(6894); **Scientific Skills Exercise** Data from Dean Falk, Florida State University, 2013; **Test Your Understanding Question 8** Data from D. Sol et al., Big-Brained Birds Survive Better in Nature, *Proceedings of the Royal Society B* 274:763–769 (2007).

Chapter 35 **Scientific Skills Exercise** Data from D. L. Royer et al., Phenotypic Plasticity of Leaf Shape Along a Temperature Gradient in Acer rubrum, *PLOS ONE* 4(10):e7653 (2009); **35.21** Data from "Mongolian Tree Rings and 20th-Century Warming" by Gordon C. Jacoby, et al., from *Science,* August 9, 1996, Volume 273(5276): 771–773.

Chapter 36 **Scientific Skills Exercise** Data from J. D. Murphy and D. L. Noland, Temperature Effects on Seed Imbibition and Leakage Mediated by Viscosity and Membranes, *Plant Physiology* 69:428–431 (1982); **36.18** Data from S. Rogers and A. J. Peel, Some Evidence for the Existence of Turgor Pressure in the Sieve Tubes of Willow (*Salix*), *Planta* 126:259–267 (1975).

Chapter 37 **37.10b** Data from D.S. Lundberg et al., Defining the Core *Arabidopsis thaliana* Root Microbiome, *Nature* 488:86–94 (2012).

Chapter 38 **Scientific Skills Exercise** Data from S. Sutherland and R. K. Vickery, Jr. Trade-offs between Sexual and Asexual Reproduction in the Genus *Mimulus. Oecologia* 76:330–335 (1998).

Chapter 39 **39.5** Data from C. R. Darwin, *The Power of Movement in Plants*, John Murray, London (1880). P. Boysen-Jensen, Concerning the Performance of Phototropic Stimuli on the Avenacoleoptile, *Berichte der Deutschen Botanischen Gesellschaft (Reports of the German Botanical Society)* 31:559–566 (1913); **39.6** Data from L. Gälweiler et al., Regulation of Polar Auxin Transport by AtPIN1 in *Arabidopsis* Vascular Tissue, *Science* 282:2226–2230 (1998); **39.15a** Based on *Plantwatching: How Plants Remember, Tell Time, Form Relationships and More* by Malcolm Wilkins. Facts on File, 1988; **39.16** Data from H. Borthwick et al., A Reversible Photo Reaction Controlling Seed Germination, *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences USA* 38:662–666 (1952); **Problem-Solving Exercise** Map data from Camilo Mora et al. Days for Plant Growth Disappear under Projected Climate Change: Potential Human and Biotic Vulnerability. *PLoS Biol.* 13(6): e1002167 (2015); **Scientific Skills Exercise** Data from O. Falik et al., Rumor Has It ...: Relay Communication of Stress Cues in Plants, *PLoS ONE* 6(11):e23625 (2011).

Chapter 40 **40.16** Data from V. H. Hutchison, H. G. Dowling, and A. Vinegar, Thermoregulation in a Brooding Female Indian Python, *Python molurus bivittatus, Science* 151:694–696 (1966); **Scientific Skills Exercise** Based on the data from M. A. Chappell et al., Energetics of Foraging in Breeding Adélie Penguins, *Ecology* 74:2450–2461 (1993); M. A. Chappell et al., Voluntary Running in Deer Mice: Speed, Distance, Energy Costs, and Temperature Effects, *Journal of Experimental Biology* 207:3839–3854 (2004); T. M. Ellis and M. A. Chappell, Metabolism, Temperature Relations, Maternal Behavior, and Reproductive Energetics in the Ball Python (*Python regius*), *Journal of Comparative Physiology* B 157:393–402 (1987); **40.22** Data from F. G. Revel et al., The Circadian Clock Stops Ticking During Deep Hibernation in the European Hamster, *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences USA* 104:13816–13820 (2007).

Chapter 41 **41.4** Data from R. W. Smithells et al., Possible Prevention of Neural-Tube Defects by Periconceptional Vitamin Supplementation, *Lancet* 315:339–340 (1980); **41.8** Adapted from Marieb, Elaine; Hoehn, Katja, *Human Anatomy and Physiology*, 8th Edition, 2010, p. 852, Reprinted and electronically reproduced by permission of Pearson Education, Upper Saddle River, New Jersey; **41.17** Adapted from Ottman N., Smidt H., de Vos W.M. and Belzer C. (2012) The function of our microbiota: who is out there and what do they do? *Front. Cell. Inf. Microbiol.* 2:104. doi: 10.3389/fcimb.2012.00104; **41.24** Republished with permission of American Association for the Advancement of Science, from Cellular Warriors at the Battle of the Bulge by Kathleen Sutliff and Jean Marx, from *Science,* February 2003, Volume 299(5608); **Scientific Skills Exercise** Based on the data from D. L. Coleman, Effects of Parabiosis of Obese Mice with Diabetes and Normal Mice, Diabetologia 9:294–298 (1973).

Chapter 42 **Scientific Skills Exercise** Data from J. C. Cohen et al., Sequence Variations in PCSK9, Low LDL, and Protection Against Coronary Heart Disease, *New England Journal of Medicine* 354:1264–1272 (2006); **42.25** Data from M. E. Avery and J. Mead, Surface Properties in Relation to Atelectasis and Hyaline Membrane Disease, *American Journal of Diseases of Children* 97:517–523 (1959).

Chapter 43 **43.5** Adapted from *Microbiology: An Introduction*, 11th Edition, by Gerard J. Tortora, Berdell R. Funke, and Christine L. Case. Pearson Education, Inc.; **43.6** Adapted from Marieb, Elaine N.; Hoehn, Katja, *Human Anatomy and Physiology*, 8th Ed., © 2010. Reprinted and electronically reproduced by permission of Pearson Education, Inc., Upper Saddle River, New Jersey; **43.24** Based on multiple sources: WHO/UNICEF Coverage Estimates 2014 Revision. July 2015. Map Production: Immunization Vaccines and Biologicals (IVB). World Health Organization, 16 July 2015; Our Progress Against Polio, May 1, 2014. CDC; **Scientific Skills Exercise** Data from sources: L. J. Morrison et al., Probabilistic Order in Antigenic Variation of *Trypanosoma brucei, International Journal for Parasitology* 35:961-972 (2005); and L. J. Morrison et al., Antigenic Variation in the African Trypanosome: Molecular Mechanisms and Phenotypic Complexity, *Cellular Microbiology* 1: 1724–1734 (2009).

Chapter 44 **Scientific Skills Exercise** Data from R. E. MacMillen et al., Water Economy and Energy Metabolism of the Sandy Inland Mouse, *Leggadina hermannsburgensis, Journal of Mammalogy* 53:529–539 (1972); **44.6** Adapted from Mitchell, Lawrence G., *Zoology*, © 1998. Reprinted and electronically reproduced by permission of Pearson Education, Inc., Upper Saddle River, New Jersey; **44.12 Kidney structure** Adapted from Marieb, Elaine N.; Hoehn, Katja, *Human Anatomy and Physiology*, 8th Ed., 2010. Reprinted and electronically reproduced by permission of Pearson Education, Inc., Upper Saddle River, New Jersey; **44.13a Kidney structure** Adapted from Marieb, Elaine N.; Hoehn, Katja, *Human Anatomy and Physiology,* 8th Ed., 2010. Reprinted and electronically reproduced by permission of Pearson Education, Inc., Upper Saddle River, New Jersey; **44.20** Data in tables from P. M. Deen et al., Requirement of Human Renal Water Channel Aquaporin-2 for Vasopressin-Dependent Concentration of Urine, *Science* 264:92–95 (1994); **Summary Figure** Adapted from Beck, *Life: An Introduction to Biology*, 3rd Ed., ©1991, p. 643. Reprinted and electronically reproduced by permission of Pearson Education, Inc., Upper Saddle River, New Jersey; **Test Your Understanding Question 7** Data for kangaroo rat from *Animal Physiology: Adaptation and Environment* by Knut Schmidt-Nielsen. Cambridge University Press, 1991.

Chapter 45 **Scientific Skills Exercise** Data from J. Born et al., Timing the End of Nocturnal Sleep, *Nature* 397:29–30 (1999).

Chapter 46 **46.8** Data from R. R. Snook and D. J. Hosken, Sperm Death and Dumping in *Drosophila, Nature* 428:939–941 (2004); **Scientific Skills Exercise** Data from A. Jost, Recherches Sur la Differenciation Sexuelle de l'embryon de Lapin (Studies on the Sexual Differentiation of the Rabbit Embryo), *Archives d'Anatomie Microscopique et de Morphologie Experimentale* 36:271–316 (1947); **46.16** Adapted from Marieb, Elaine N., Hoehn, Katja, *Human Anatomy and Physiology*, 8th Ed., 2010. Reprinted and electronically reproduced by permission of Pearson Education, Inc., Upper Saddle River, New Jersey.

Chapter 47 **47.3** Data from "Intracellular Calcium Release at Fertilization in the Sea Urchin Egg" by R. Steinhardt et al., from *Developmental Biology*, July 1977, Volume 58(1); **Scientific Skills Exercise** Data from J. Newport and M. Kirschner, A Major Developmental Transition in Early *Xenopus* Embryos: I. Characterization and Timing of Cellular Changes at the Midblastula Stage, *Cell* 30:675–686 (1982); **47.10** Adapted from Keller, R. E. 1986. The Cellular Basis of Amphibian Gastrulation. In L. Browder (ed.), *Developmental Biology: A Comprehensive Synthesis*, Vol. 2. Plenum, New York, pp. 241–327; **47.14** Based on "Cell Commitment and Gene Expression in the Axolotl Embryo" by T. J. Mohun et al., from *Cell*, November 1980, Volume 22(1); **47.17** *Principles of Development*, 2nd Edition by Wolpert (2002), Fig. 8.26, p. 275. By permission of Oxford University Press; **47.19** Republished with permission of Garland Science, Taylor & Francis Group, from *Molecular Biology of the Cell*, Bruce Alberts et al., 4th Edition, © 2002; permission conveyed through Copyright Clearance Center, Inc.; **47.23** Data from H. Spemann, *Embryonic Development and Induction*, Yale University Press, New Haven, CT (1938); **47.24** Data from H. Spemann and H. Mangold, Induction of Embryonic Primordia by Implantation of Organizers from a Different Species, Trans. V. Hamburger (1924). Reprinted in *International Journal of Developmental Biology* 45:13–38 (2001); **47.26** Data from L. S. Honig and D. Summerbell, Maps of strength of positional signaling activity in the developing chick wing bud, *Journal of Embryology and Experimental Morphology* 87:163–174 (1985); **47.27** Adapted from Marieb, Elaine N.; Hoehn, Katja, *Human Anatomy and Physiology*, 8th Edition, 2010. Reprinted and electronically reproduced by permission of Pearson Education, Inc., Upper Saddle River, New Jersey.

Chapter 48 **48.12** Graph Based on Figure 6-2d from *Cellular Physiology of Nerve and Muscle,* 4th Edition, by Gary G. Matthews. Wiley-Blackwell, 2003; **Scientific Skills Exercise** Data from C. B. Pert and S. H. Snyder, Opiate Receptor: Demonstration in Nervous Tissue, *Science* 179:1011–1014 (1973).

Chapter 49 **49.7** Adapted from Marieb, Elaine N.; Hoehn, Katja, *Human Anatomy and Physiology*, 8th Ed., © 2010. Reprinted and electronically reproduced by permission of Pearson Education, Inc., Upper Saddle River, New Jersey; **49.12** Based on "Sleep in Marine Mammals" by L. M. Mukhametov, from *Sleep Mechanisms*, edited by Alexander A. Borberly and J. L. Valatx. Springer; **Scientific Skills Exercise** Data from M. R. Ralph et al., Transplanted Suprachiasmatic Nucleus Determines Circadian Period, *Science* 247:975–978 (1990); **49.20** Adaptation of Figure 1c from "Avian Brains and a New Understanding of Vertebrate Brain Evolution" by Erich D. Jarvis et al., from *Nature Reviews Neuroscience*, February 2005, Volume 6(2); **49.23** Adaptation of Figure 10 from *Schizophrenia Genesis: The Origins of Madness* by Irving I. Gottesman. Worth Publishers.

Chapter 50 **50.12a, 50.13, 50.17 eye structure, 50.24a, 50.26, 50.31** Adapted from Marieb, Elaine N; Hoehn, Katja, *Human Anatomy and Physiology*, 8th Ed., © 2010 Reprinted and electronically reproduced by Permission of Pearson Education, Inc., Upper Saddle River, New Jersey; **50.23** Data from K. L. Mueller et al., The receptors and coding logic for bitter taste, *Nature* 434:225–229 (2005); **50.35 grasshopper** Based on Hickman et al., *Integrated Principles of Zoology*, 9th ed., p. 518, Fig. 22.6, McGraw-Hill Higher Education, NY (1993); **Scientific Skills Exercise** Data from K. Schmidt-Nielsen, Locomotion: Energy Cost of Swimming, Flying, and Running, *Science* 177:222–228 (1972).

Chapter 51 **51.4** Based on "*Drosophila*: Genetics Meets Behavior" by Marla B. Sokolowski, from *Nature Reviews: Genetics*, November 2001, Volume 2(11); **51.8** Data from *The Study of Instinct*, N. Tinbergen, Clarendon Press, Oxford (1951); **51.10** Adapted from "Prospective and Retrospective Learning in Honeybees" by Martin Giurfa and Julie Bernard, from *International Journal of Comparative Psychology*, 2006, Volume 19(3); **51.13** Adapted from Evolution of Foraging Behavior in *Drosophila* by Density Dependent Selection by Maria B. Sokolowski et al., from *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences USA*, July 8, 1997, Volume 94(14); **Scientific Skills Exercise Data** from Shell Dropping: Decision-Making and Optimal Foraging in Northwestern Crows by Reto Zach, from *Behaviour*, 1979, Volume 68(1–2); 51; **51.18** Reprinted by permission from Klaudia Witte; **51.24 Illustration** Adaptations of photograph by Jonathan Blair, Figure/PhotoID: 3.14, as appeared in *Animal Behavior: An Evolutionary Approach*, 8th Edition, Editor: John Alcock, p. 88. Reprinted by permission; **51.24 Map** data from "Rapid Microevolution of Migratory Behaviour in a Wild Bird Species" by P. Berthold et al., from *Nature,* December 1992, Volume 360(6405); **Art for Concept 51.2 Summary**: Data from *The Study of Instinct*, N. Tinbergen, Clarendon Press, Oxford (1951).

Chapter 52 **52.19** Based on the data from *Ecology and Field Biology* by Robert L. Smith. Pearson Education, 1974; and *Sibley Guide to Birds* by David Allen Sibley. Random House, 2000; **52.20** Based on the data from W.J. Fletcher, Interactions among Subtidal Australian Sea Urchins, Gastropods and Algae: Effects of Experimental Removals, *Ecological Monographs* 57:89–109 (1987); **52.21** Based on S. D. Ling et al. Climate-Driven Range Extension of a Sea Urchin: Inferring Future Trends by Analysis of Recent Population Dynamics, *Global Change Biology* (2009) 15, 719–731, doi: 10.1111/j.1365-2486.2008.01734.x; **Scientific Skills Exercise** Based on the data from C. M. Crain et al., Physical and Biotic Drivers of Plant Distribution Across Estuarine Salinity Gradients, *Ecology* 85:2539–2549 (2004); **Graph for Test Your Understanding Question 11** Based on the data from J. Clausen et al., *Experimental Studies on the Nature of Species. III. Environmental Responses of Climatic Races of Achillea,* Carnegie Institution of Washington Publication No. 581 (1948).

Chapter 53 **53.2** Data from A. M. Gormley et al., Capture-Recapture Estimates of Hector's Dolphin Abundance at Banks Peninsula, New Zealand, *Marine Mammal Science* 21:204–216 (2005); **Table 53.1** Data from P. W. Sherman and M. L. Morton, Demography of Belding's Ground Squirrel, *Ecology* 65:1617–1628 (1984); **53.4** Based on Demography of Belding's Ground Squirrels by Paul W. Sherman and Martin L. Morton, from *Ecology*, October 1984, Volume 65(5); **53.13** Data from Brood Size Manipulations in the Kestrel (*Falco tinnunculus*): Effects on Offspring and Parent Survival by C. Dijkstra et al., from *Journal of Animal Ecology*, 1990, Volume 59(1); **53.15** Based on Climate and Population Regulation: The Biogeographer's Dilemma by J. T. Enright, from *Oecologia*, 1976, Volume 24(4); **53.16** Based on the data from Predator Responses, Prey Refuges, and Density-Dependent Mortality of a Marine Fish by T.W. Anderson, *Ecology* 82(1):245–257 (2001); **53.18** Based on the data provided by Dr. Rolf O. Peterson; **53.21** Based on U.S. Census Bureau International Data Base; **53.22** Based on U.S. Census Bureau International Data Base; **53.23** Based on U.S. Census Bureau International Data Base; **53.24** Based on Ewing B., D. Moore, S. Goldfinger, A. Oursler, A. Reed, and M. Wackernagel. 2010. *The Ecological Footprint Atlas 2010.* Oakland: Global Footprint Network, p. 33 (www.footprintnetwork.org).

Chapter 54 **54.1, 54.2** Based on A. Stanley Rand and Ernest E. Williams. The Anoles of La Palma: Aspects of Their Ecological Relationships, *Breviora*, Volume 327: 1–19. Museum of Comparative Zoology, Harvard University; **54.3** Data from J. H. Connell, The Influence of Interspecific Competition and Other Factors on the Distribution of the Barnacle *Chthamalus stellatus*, *Ecology* 42:710–723 (1961); **Scientific Skills Exercise** Based on the data from B. L. Phillips and R. Shine, An Invasive Species Induces Rapid Adaptive Change in a Native Predator: Cane Toads and Black Snakes in Australia, *Proceedings of the Royal Society B* 273:1545–1550 (2006); **54.11** Based on the data from Sally D. Hacker and Mark D. Bertness, Experimental Evidence for Factors Maintaining Plant Species Diversity in a New England Salt Marsh. *Ecology,* September 1999, Volume 80(6); **54.14 Graph** Data from N. Fierer and R. B. Jackson, The Diversity and Biogeography of Soil Bacterial Communities, *Proceedings of the National Academy of Sciences USA* 103:626–631 (2006); **54.17** Based on George A. Knox. Antarctic Marine Ecosystems, from *Antarctic Ecology*, Volume 1, edited by Martin W. Holdgate. Academic Press, 1970; **54.18** Adapted from Denise L. Breitburg et al., Varying Effects of Low Dissolved Oxygen on Trophic Interactions in an Estuarine Food Web. *Ecological Monographs*, November 1997, Volume 67(4). Used by permission of the Ecological Society of America; **54.19** Based on B. Jenkins et al., Productivity, Disturbance and Food Web Structure at a Local Spatial Scale in Experimental Container Habitats. *OIKOS,* November 1992, Volume 65(2); **54.20 Graph** Data from R. T. Paine, Food web complexity and species diversity, *American Naturalist* 100:65–75 (1966); **54.24** Based on the data from C.R. Townsend, M.R. Scarsbrook, and S. Doledec, The Intermediate Disturbance Hypothesis, Refugia, and Biodiversity in Streams, *Limnology and Oceanography* 42:938–949 (1997); **54.26** Based on Robert L. Crocker and Jack Major. Soil Development in Relation to Vegetation and Surface Age at Glacier Bay, Alaska. *Journal of Ecology*, July 1955, Volume 43(2); **54.27** Adapted from F. Stuart Chapin et al., Mechanisms of Primary Succession Following Deglaciation at Glacier Bay. *Ecological Monographs*, May 1994, Volume 64(2). Ecological Society of America; **54.29** Adapted from D. J. Currie. Energy and Large-Scale Patterns of Animal-and Plant-Species Richness. *American Naturalist*, January 1991, Volume 137(1): 27–49; **54.30** Adapted from Robert H. MacArthur and Edward O. Wilson, An Equilibrium Theory of Insular Zoogeography. *Evolution*, December 1963, Volume 17(4). Society for the Study of Evolution; **54.33** Based on Daniel S. Simberloff and Edward O. Wilson. 1969. Experimental Zoogeography of Islands: The Colonization of Empty Islands. *Ecology*, Vol. 50, No. 2 (Mar., 1969), pp. 278–296.

Chapter 55 **55.4** Based on Figure 1.2 from Donald L. DeAngelis (1992), *Dynamics of Nutrient Cycling and Food Webs*. Taylor & Francis; **55.6** Data from J. H. Ryther and W. M. Dunstan, Nitrogen, Phosphorus, and Eutrophication in the Coastal Marine Environment, *Science* 171:1008–1013 (1971); **Table 55.1** Data from D. W. Menzel and J. H. Ryther, Nutrients Limiting the Production of Phytoplankton in the Sargasso Sea, with Special Reference to Iron, *Deep Sea Research* 7:276–281 (1961); **55.7** Based on the data from Fig. 4.1, p. 82, in R.H. Whittaker (1970), *Communities and Ecosystems*. Macmillan, New York; **55.8** Based on Fig. 3c and 3d from Temperate Forest Health in an Era of Emerging Megadisturbance, Constance I. Millar and Nathan L. Stephenson, *Science* 349, 823 (2015); doi: 10.1126/science.aaa9933; **Scientific Skills Exercise** Data from J. M. Teal, Energy Flow in the Salt Marsh Ecosystem of Georgia, *Ecology* 43:614–624 (1962); **55.12** Data from J. A. Trofymow and the CIDET Working Group, The Canadian Intersite Decomposition Experiment: Project and Site Establishment Report (Information Report BC-X-378), Natural Resources Canada, Canadian Forest Service, Pacific Forestry Centre (1998) and T. R. Moore et al., Litter decomposition rates in Canadian forests, *Global Change Biology* 5:75–82 (1999); **55.14** Adapted from Figure 7.4 from Robert E. Ricklefs (2001), *The Economy of Nature,* 5th edition. W.H. Freeman and Company; **55.18b** Based on the data from Wei-Min Wu et al. (2006), Pilot-Scale in Situ Bioremediation of Uranium in a Highly Contaminated Aquifer. 2. Reduction of U(VI) and Geochemical Control of U(VI) Bioavailability. *Environmental Science Technology* 40 (12):3986–3995 (5/13/06); **Art for Concept 55.1 Summary** Based on Figure 1.2 from Donald L. DeAngelis (1992). *Dynamics of Nutrient Cycling and Food Webs*. Taylor & Francis.

Chapter 56 **56.10** Based on data from Gene Likens; **56.11** Krebs, Charles J., *Ecology: The Experimental Analysis of Distribution and Abundance*, 5th Ed., © 2001. Reprinted and electronically reproduced by permission of Pearson Education, Inc., Upper Saddle River, New Jersey; **56.13** Data from "Tracking the Long-Term Decline and Recovery of an Isolated Population" by R.L. Westemeier et al., *Science* Volume 282(5394):1695–1698 (11/27/98), AAAS; **56.19** Adapted from Norman Myers et al. (2000). Biodiversity Hotspots for Conservation Priorities, *Nature,* February 24, 2000, Volume 403(6772); **56.28** Based on CO_2 data from www.esrl.noaa.gov/gmd/ccgg/trends. Temperature data from www.giss.nasa.gov/gistemps/graphs/Fig. A.lrg.gif; **Scientific Skills Exercise** Based on data from National Oceanic & Atmospheric Administration, Earth System Research Laboratory, Global Monitoring Division; **56.32** Based on the data from "History of the Ozone Hole," from NASA website, February 26, 2013; and "Antarctic Ozone," from British Antarctic Society website, June 7, 2013; **56.35** Based on the data from Instituto Nacional de Estadistica y Censos de Costa Rica and Centro Centroamericano de Poblacion, Universidad de Costa Rica.

Appendix A **Figure 5.11** Wallace/Sanders/Ferl, *Biology: The Science of Life*, 3rd Ed., © 1991. Reprinted and electronically reproduced by permission of Pearson Education, Inc., Upper Saddle River, New Jersey.

Glossary

Pronunciation Key

ā	ace
a/ah	ash
ch	chose
ē	meet
e/eh	bet
g	game
ī	ice
i	hit
ks	box
kw	quick
ng	song
ō	robe
o	ox
oy	boy
s	say
sh	shell
th	thin
ū	boot
u/uh	up
z	zoo

′ = primary accent

′ = secondary accent

5′ cap A modified form of guanine nucleotide added onto the 5′ end of a pre-mRNA molecule.

ABC hypothesis A model of flower formation identifying three classes of organ identity genes that direct formation of the four types of floral organs.

abiotic (ā′-bī-ot′-ik) Nonliving; referring to the physical and chemical properties of an environment.

abortion The termination of a pregnancy in progress.

abscisic acid (ABA) (ab-sis′-ik) A plant hormone that slows growth, often antagonizing the actions of growth hormones. Two of its many effects are to promote seed dormancy and facilitate drought tolerance.

absorption The third stage of food processing in animals: the uptake of small nutrient molecules by an organism's body.

absorption spectrum The range of a pigment's ability to absorb various wavelengths of light; also a graph of such a range.

abyssal zone (uh-bis′-ul) The part of the ocean's benthic zone between 2,000 and 6,000 m deep.

acanthodian (ak′-an-thō′-dē-un) Any of a group of ancient jawed aquatic vertebrates from the Silurian and Devonian periods.

accessory fruit A fruit, or assemblage of fruits, in which the fleshy parts are derived largely or entirely from tissues other than the ovary.

acclimatization (uh-klī′-muh-tī -zā′-shun) Physiological adjustment to a change in an environmental factor.

acetyl CoA Acetyl coenzyme A; the entry compound for the citric acid cycle in cellular respiration, formed from a two-carbon fragment of pyruvate attached to a coenzyme.

acetylcholine (as′-uh-til-kō′-lēn) One of the most common neurotransmitters; functions by binding to receptors and altering the permeability of the postsynaptic membrane to specific ions, either depolarizing or hyperpolarizing the membrane.

acid A substance that increases the hydrogen ion concentration of a solution.

acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS) The symptoms and signs present during the late stages of HIV infection, defined by a specified reduction in the number of T cells and the appearance of characteristic secondary infections.

acrosomal reaction (ak′-ruh-sōm′-ul) The discharge of hydrolytic enzymes from the acrosome, a vesicle in the tip of a sperm, when the sperm approaches or contacts an egg.

acrosome (ak′-ruh-sōm) A vesicle in the tip of a sperm containing hydrolytic enzymes and other proteins that help the sperm reach the egg.

actin (ak′-tin) A globular protein that links into chains, two of which twist helically about each other, forming microfilaments (actin filaments) in muscle and other kinds of cells.

action potential An electrical signal that propagates (travels) along the membrane of a neuron or other excitable cell as a nongraded (all-or-none) depolarization.

action spectrum A graph that profiles the relative effectiveness of different wavelengths of radiation in driving a particular process.

activation energy The amount of energy that reactants must absorb before a chemical reaction will start; also called free energy of activation.

activator A protein that binds to DNA and stimulates gene transcription. In prokaryotes, activators bind in or near the promoter; in eukaryotes, activators generally bind to control elements in enhancers.

active immunity Long-lasting immunity conferred by the action of B cells and T cells and the resulting B and T memory cells specific for a pathogen. Active immunity can develop as a result of natural infection or immunization.

active site The specific region of an enzyme that binds the substrate and that forms the pocket in which catalysis occurs.

active transport The movement of a substance across a cell membrane against its concentration or electrochemical gradient, mediated by specific transport proteins and requiring an expenditure of energy.

adaptation Inherited characteristic of an organism that enhances its survival and reproduction in a specific environment.

adaptive evolution A process in which traits that enhance survival or reproduction tend to increase in frequency over time, resulting in a better match between organisms and their environment.

adaptive immunity A vertebrate-specific defense that is mediated by B lymphocytes (B cells) and T lymphocytes (T cells) and that exhibits specificity, memory, and self-nonself recognition; also called acquired immunity.

adaptive radiation Period of evolutionary change in which groups of organisms form many new species whose adaptations allow them to fill different ecological roles in their communities.

addition rule A rule of probability stating that the probability of any one of two or more mutually exclusive events occurring can be determined by adding their individual probabilities.

adenosine triphosphate *See* ATP (adenosine triphosphate).

adenylyl cyclase (uh-den′-uh-lil) An enzyme that converts ATP to cyclic AMP in response to an extracellular signal.

adhesion The clinging of one substance to another, such as water to plant cell walls, in this case by means of hydrogen bonds.

adipose tissue A connective tissue that insulates the body and serves as a fuel reserve; contains fat-storing cells called adipose cells.

adrenal gland (uh-drē′-nul) One of two endocrine glands located adjacent to the kidneys in mammals. Endocrine cells in the outer portion (cortex) respond to adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH) by secreting steroid hormones that help maintain homeostasis during long-term stress. Neurosecretory cells in the central portion (medulla) secrete epinephrine and norepinephrine in response to nerve signals triggered by short-term stress.

aerobic respiration A catabolic pathway for organic molecules, using oxygen (O_2) as the final electron acceptor in an electron transport chain and ultimately producing ATP. This is the most efficient catabolic pathway and is carried out in most eukaryotic cells and many prokaryotic organisms.

age structure The relative number of individuals of each age in a population.

aggregate fruit A fruit derived from a single flower that has more than one carpel.

AIDS (acquired immunodeficiency syndrome) The symptoms and signs present during the late stages of HIV infection, defined by a specified reduction in the number of T cells and the appearance of characteristic secondary infections.

alcohol fermentation Glycolysis followed by the reduction of pyruvate to ethyl alcohol, regenerating NAD^+ and releasing carbon dioxide.

alga (plural, **algae**) A general term for any species of photosynthetic protist, including both unicellular and multicellular forms. Algal species are included in three eukaryote supergroups (Excavata, SAR, and Archaeplastida).

alimentary canal (al′-uh-men′-tuh-rē) A complete digestive tract, consisting of a tube running between a mouth and an anus.

alkaline vent A deep-sea hydrothermal vent that releases water that is warm (40–90°C) rather than hot and that has a high pH (is basic). These vents consist of tiny pores lined with iron and other catalytic minerals that some scientists hypothesize might have been the location of the earliest abiotic synthesis of organic compounds.

allele (uh-lē′-ul) Any of the alternative versions of a gene that may produce distinguishable phenotypic effects.

allopatric speciation (al′-uh-pat′-rik) The formation of new species in populations that are geographically isolated from one another.

allopolyploid (al′-ō-pol′-ē-ployd) A fertile individual that has more than two chromosome sets as a result of two different species interbreeding and combining their chromosomes.

allosteric regulation The binding of a regulatory molecule to a protein at one site that affects the function of the protein at a different site.

alpha (α) helix (al′-fuh hē′-liks) A coiled region constituting one form of the secondary structure of proteins, arising from a specific pattern of hydrogen bonding between atoms of the polypeptide backbone (not the side chains).

alternation of generations A life cycle in which there is both a multicellular diploid form, the sporophyte, and a multicellular haploid form, the gametophyte; characteristic of plants and some algae.

alternative RNA splicing A type of eukaryotic gene regulation at the RNA-processing level in which different mRNA molecules are produced from the same primary transcript, depending on which RNA segments are treated as exons and which as introns.

altruism (al′-trū-iz-um) Selflessness; behavior that reduces an individual's fitness while increasing the fitness of another individual.

alveolates (al-vē′-uh-lets) One of the three major subgroups for which the SAR eukaryotic supergroup is named. This clade arose by secondary endosymbiosis, and its members have membrane-enclosed sacs (alveoli) located just under the plasma membrane.

alveolus (al-vē′-uh-lus) (plural, **alveoli**) One of the dead-end air sacs where gas exchange occurs in a mammalian lung.

Alzheimer's disease (alts′-hī-merz) An age-related dementia (mental deterioration) characterized by confusion and memory loss.

amino acid (uh-mēn′-ō) An organic molecule possessing both a carboxyl and an amino group. Amino acids serve as the monomers of polypeptides.

amino group (uh-mēn′-ō) A chemical group consisting of a nitrogen atom bonded to two hydrogen atoms; can act as a base in solution, accepting a hydrogen ion and acquiring a charge of 1+.

aminoacyl-tRNA synthetase An enzyme that joins each amino acid to the appropriate tRNA.

ammonia A small, toxic molecule (NH_3) produced by nitrogen fixation or as a metabolic waste product of protein and nucleic acid metabolism.

ammonite A member of a group of shelled cephalopods that were important marine predators for hundreds of millions of years until their extinction at the end of the Cretaceous period (65.5 million years ago).

amniocentesis (am′-nē-ō-sen-tē′-sis) A technique associated with prenatal diagnosis in which amniotic fluid is obtained by aspiration from a needle inserted into the uterus. The fluid and the fetal cells it contains are analyzed to detect certain genetic and congenital defects in the fetus.

amniote (am′-nē-ōt) A member of a clade of tetrapods named for a key derived character, the amniotic egg, which contains specialized membranes, including the fluid-filled amnion, that protect the embryo. Amniotes include mammals as well as birds and other reptiles.

amniotic egg An egg that contains specialized membranes that function in protection, nourishment, and gas exchange. The amniotic egg was a major evolutionary innovation, allowing embryos to develop on land in a fluid-filled sac, thus reducing the dependence of tetrapods on water for reproduction.

amoeba (uh-mē′-buh) A protist characterized by the presence of pseudopodia.

amoebocyte (uh-mē′-buh-sīt′) An amoeba-like cell that moves by pseudopodia and is found in most animals. Depending on the species, it may digest and distribute food, dispose of wastes, form skeletal fibers, fight infections, or change into other cell types.

amoebozoan (uh-mē′-buh-zō′-an) A protist in a clade that includes many species with lobe- or tube-shaped pseudopodia.

amphibian A member of the clade of tetrapods that includes salamanders, frogs, and caecilians.

amphipathic (am′-fē-path′-ik) Having both a hydrophilic region and a hydrophobic region.

amplification The strengthening of stimulus energy during transduction.

amygdala (uh-mig′-duh-luh) A structure in the temporal lobe of the vertebrate brain that has a major role in the processing of emotions.

amylase (am′-uh-lās′) An enzyme that hydrolyzes starch (a glucose polymer from plants) and glycogen (a glucose polymer from animals) into smaller polysaccharides and the disaccharide maltose.

anabolic pathway (an′-uh-bol′-ik) A metabolic pathway that consumes energy to synthesize a complex molecule from simpler molecules.

anaerobic respiration (an-er-ō′-bik) A catabolic pathway in which inorganic molecules other than oxygen accept electrons at the "downhill" end of electron transport chains.

analogous Having characteristics that are similar because of convergent evolution, not homology.

analogy (an-al′-uh-jē) Similarity between two species that is due to convergent evolution rather than to descent from a common ancestor with the same trait.

anaphase The fourth stage of mitosis, in which the chromatids of each chromosome have separated and the daughter chromosomes are moving to the poles of the cell.

anatomy The structure of an organism.

anchorage dependence The requirement that a cell must be attached to a substratum in order to initiate cell division.

androgen (an′-drō-jen) Any steroid hormone, such as testosterone, that stimulates the development and maintenance of the male reproductive system and secondary sex characteristics.

aneuploidy (an′-yū-ploy′-dē) A chromosomal aberration in which one or more chromosomes are present in extra copies or are deficient in number.

angiosperm (an′-jē-ō-sperm) A flowering plant, which forms seeds inside a protective chamber called an ovary.

anhydrobiosis (an-hī′-drō-bī-ō′-sis) A dormant state involving loss of almost all body water.

animal pole The point at the end of an egg in the hemisphere where the least yolk is concentrated; opposite of vegetal pole.

anion (an′-ī-on) A negatively charged ion.

anterior Pertaining to the front, or head, of a bilaterally symmetrical animal.

anterior pituitary A portion of the pituitary gland that develops from nonneural tissue; consists of endocrine cells that synthesize and secrete several tropic and nontropic hormones.

anther In an angiosperm, the terminal pollen sac of a stamen, where pollen grains containing sperm-producing male gametophytes form.

antheridium (an-thuh-rid′-ē-um) (plural, **antheridia**) In plants, the male gametangium, a moist chamber in which gametes develop.

anthropoid (an′-thruh-poyd) A member of a primate group made up of the monkeys and the apes (gibbons, orangutans, gorillas, chimpanzees, bonobos, and humans).

antibody A protein secreted by plasma cells (differentiated B cells) that binds to a particular antigen; also called immunoglobulin. All antibodies have the same Y-shaped structure and in their monomer form consist of two identical heavy chains and two identical light chains.

anticodon (an′-tī-kō′-don) A nucleotide triplet at one end of a tRNA molecule that base-pairs with a particular complementary codon on an mRNA molecule.

antidiuretic hormone (ADH) (an′-tī-dī-yū-ret′-ik) A peptide hormone, also called vasopressin, that promotes water retention by the kidneys. Produced in the hypothalamus and released from the posterior pituitary, ADH also functions in the brain.

antigen (an′-ti-jen) A substance that elicits an immune response by binding to receptors of B or T cells.

antigen presentation (an′-ti-jen) The process by which an MHC molecule binds to a fragment of an intracellular protein antigen and carries it to the cell surface, where it is displayed and can be recognized by a T cell.

antigen-presenting cell (an′-ti-jen) A cell that upon ingesting pathogens or internalizing pathogen proteins generates peptide fragments that are bound by class II MHC molecules and subsequently displayed on the cell surface to T cells. Macrophages, dendritic cells, and B cells are the primary antigen-presenting cells.

antigen receptor (an′-ti-jen) The general term for a surface protein, located on B cells and T cells, that binds to antigens, initiating adaptive immune responses. The antigen receptors on B cells are called B cell receptors, and the antigen receptors on T cells are called T cell receptors.

antiparallel Referring to the arrangement of the sugar-phosphate backbones in a DNA double helix (they run in opposite 5′ → 3′ directions).

aphotic zone (ā′-fō′-tik) The part of an ocean or lake beneath the photic zone, where light does not penetrate sufficiently for photosynthesis to occur.

apical bud (ā′-pik-ul) A bud at the tip of a plant stem; also called a terminal bud.

apical dominance (ā′-pik-ul) Tendency for growth to be concentrated at the tip of a plant shoot because the apical bud partially inhibits axillary bud growth.

apical ectodermal ridge (AER) (ā′-pik-ul) A thickened area of ectoderm at the tip of a limb bud that promotes outgrowth of the limb bud.

apical meristem (ā′-pik-ul mār′-uh-stem) A localized region at a growing tip of a plant body where one or more cells divide repeatedly. The dividing cells of an apical meristem enable the plant to grow in length.

apicomplexan (ap′-ē-kom-pleks′-un) A group of alveolate protists, this clade includes many species that parasitize animals. Some apicomplexans cause human disease.

apomixis (ap′-uh-mik′-sis) The ability of some plant species to reproduce asexually through seeds without fertilization by a male gamete.

apoplast (ap′-ō-plast) Everything external to the plasma membrane of a plant cell, including cell walls, intercellular spaces, and the space within dead structures such as xylem vessels and tracheids.

apoptosis (ā-puh-tō′-sus) A type of programmed cell death, which is brought about by activation of enzymes that break down many chemical components in the cell.

aposematic coloration (ap′-ō-si-mat′-ik) The bright warning coloration of many animals with effective physical or chemical defenses.

appendix A small, finger-like extension of the vertebrate cecum; contains a mass of white blood cells that contribute to immunity.

aquaporin A channel protein in a cellular membrane that specifically facilitates osmosis, the diffusion of free water across the membrane.

aqueous solution (ā′-kwē-us) A solution in which water is the solvent.

arachnid A member of a subgroup of the major arthropod clade Chelicerata. Arachnids have six pairs of appendages, including four pairs of walking legs, and include spiders, scorpions, ticks, and mites.

arbuscular mycorrhiza (ar-bus′-kyū-lur mī′-kō-rī′-zuh) Association of a fungus with a plant root system in which the fungus causes the invagination of the host (plant) cells' plasma membranes; also called endomycorrhiza.

arbuscular mycorrhizal fungus (ar-bus′-kyū-lur) A symbiotic fungus whose hyphae grow through the cell wall of plant roots and extend into the root cell (enclosed in tubes formed by invagination of the root cell plasma membrane).

arbuscules Specialized branching hyphae that are found in some mutualistic fungi and exchange nutrients with living plant cells.

Archaea (ar′-kē′-uh) One of two prokaryotic domains, the other being Bacteria.

Archaeplastida (ar′-kē-plas′-tid-uh) One of four supergroups of eukaryotes proposed in a current hypothesis of the evolutionary history of eukaryotes. This monophyletic group, which includes red algae, green algae, and plants, descended from an ancient protistan ancestor that engulfed a cyanobacterium. *See also* Excavata, SAR, and Unikonta.

archegonium (ar-ki-gō′-nē-um) (plural, **archegonia**) In plants, the female gametangium, a moist chamber in which gametes develop.

archenteron (ar-ken′-tuh-ron) The endoderm-lined cavity, formed during gastrulation, that develops into the digestive tract of an animal.

archosaur (ar′-kō-sōr) A member of the reptilian group that includes crocodiles, alligators and dinosaurs, including birds.

arteriole (ar-ter′-ē-ōl) A vessel that conveys blood between an artery and a capillary bed.

artery A vessel that carries blood away from the heart to organs throughout the body.

arthropod A segmented ecdysozoan with a hard exoskeleton and jointed appendages. Familiar examples include insects, spiders, millipedes, and crabs.

artificial selection The selective breeding of domesticated plants and animals to encourage the occurrence of desirable traits.

ascocarp The fruiting body of a sac fungus (ascomycete).

ascomycete (as′-kuh-mī′-sēt) A member of the fungal phylum Ascomycota, commonly called sac fungus. The name comes from the saclike structure in which the spores develop.

ascus (plural, **asci**) A saclike spore capsule located at the tip of a dikaryotic hypha of a sac fungus.

asexual reproduction The generation of offspring from a single parent that occurs without the fusion of gametes. In most cases, the offspring are genetically identical to the parent.

A site One of a ribosome's three binding sites for tRNA during translation. The A site holds the tRNA carrying the next amino acid to be added to the polypeptide chain. (A stands for aminoacyl tRNA.)

assisted migration The translocation of a species to a favorable habitat beyond its native range for the purpose of protecting the species from human-caused threats.

associative learning The acquired ability to associate one environmental feature (such as a color) with another (such as danger).

atherosclerosis A cardiovascular disease in which fatty deposits called plaques develop in the inner walls of the arteries, obstructing the arteries and causing them to harden.

atom The smallest unit of matter that retains the properties of an element.

atomic mass The total mass of an atom, numerically equivalent to the mass in grams of 1 mole of the atom. (For an element with more than one isotope, the atomic mass is the average mass of the naturally occurring isotopes, weighted by their abundance.)

atomic nucleus An atom's dense central core, containing protons and neutrons.

atomic number The number of protons in the nucleus of an atom, unique for each element and designated by a subscript.

ATP (adenosine triphosphate) (a-den′-ō-sēn trī-fos′-fāt) An adenine-containing nucleoside triphosphate that releases free energy when its phosphate bonds are hydrolyzed. This energy is used to drive endergonic reactions in cells.

ATP synthase A complex of several membrane proteins that functions in chemiosmosis with adjacent electron transport chains, using the energy of a hydrogen ion (proton) concentration gradient to make ATP. ATP synthases are found in the inner mitochondrial membranes of eukaryotic cells and in the plasma membranes of prokaryotes.

atrial natriuretic peptide (ANP) (ā′-trē-ul na′-trē-yū-ret′-ik) A peptide hormone secreted by cells of the atria of the heart in response to high blood pressure. ANP's effects on the kidney alter ion and water movement and reduce blood pressure.

atrioventricular (AV) node A region of specialized heart muscle tissue between the left and right atria where electrical impulses are delayed for about 0.1 second before spreading to both ventricles and causing them to contract.

atrioventricular (AV) valve A heart valve located between each atrium and ventricle that prevents a backflow of blood when the ventricle contracts.

atrium (ā′-trē-um) (plural, **atria**) A chamber of the vertebrate heart that receives blood from the veins and transfers blood to a ventricle.

autocrine Referring to a secreted molecule that acts on the cell that secreted it.

autoimmune disease An immunological disorder in which the immune system turns against self.

autonomic nervous system (ot′-ō-nom′-ik) An efferent branch of the vertebrate peripheral nervous system that regulates the internal environment; consists of the sympathetic and parasympathetic divisions and the enteric nervous system.

autopolyploid (ot′-ō-pol′-ē-ployd) An individual that has more than two chromosome sets that are all derived from a single species.

autosome (ot′-ō-sōm) A chromosome that is not directly involved in determining sex; not a sex chromosome.

autotroph (ot′-ō-trōf) An organism that obtains organic food molecules without eating other organisms or substances derived from other organisms. Autotrophs use energy from the sun or from oxidation of inorganic substances to make organic molecules from inorganic ones.

auxin (ok′-sin) A term that primarily refers to indoleacetic acid (IAA), a natural plant

hormone that has a variety of effects, including cell elongation, root formation, secondary growth, and fruit growth.

axillary bud (ak′-sil-ār-ē) A structure that has the potential to form a lateral shoot, or branch. The bud appears in the angle formed between a leaf and a stem.

axon (ak′-son) A typically long extension, or process, of a neuron that carries nerve impulses away from the cell body toward target cells.

B cells The lymphocytes that complete their development in the bone marrow and become effector cells for the humoral immune response.

Bacteria One of two prokaryotic domains, the other being Archaea.

bacteriophage (bak-tēr′-ē-ō-fāj) A virus that infects bacteria; also called a phage.

bacteroid A form of the bacterium *Rhizobium* contained within the vesicles formed by the root cells of a root nodule.

balancing selection Natural selection that maintains two or more phenotypic forms in a population.

bar graph A graph in which the independent variable represents groups or nonnumerical categories and the values of the dependent variable(s) are shown by bars.

bark All tissues external to the vascular cambium, consisting mainly of the secondary phloem and layers of periderm.

Barr body A dense object lying along the inside of the nuclear envelope in cells of female mammals, representing a highly condensed, inactivated X chromosome.

basal angiosperm A member of one of three clades of early-diverging lineages of extant flowering plants. Examples are *Amborella*, water lilies, and star anise and its relatives.

basal body (bā′-sul) A eukaryotic cell structure consisting of a "9 + 0" arrangement of microtubule triplets. The basal body may organize the microtubule assembly of a cilium or flagellum and is structurally very similar to a centriole.

basal metabolic rate (BMR) The metabolic rate of a resting, fasting, and nonstressed endotherm at a comfortable temperature.

basal taxon In a specified group of organisms, a taxon whose evolutionary lineage diverged early in the history of the group.

base A substance that reduces the hydrogen ion concentration of a solution.

basidiocarp Elaborate fruiting body of a dikaryotic mycelium of a club fungus.

basidiomycete (buh-sid′-ē-ō-mī′-sēt) A member of the fungal phylum Basidiomycota, commonly called club fungus. The name comes from the club-like shape of the basidium.

basidium (plural, **basidia**) (buh-sid′-ē-um, buh-sid′-ē-ah) A reproductive appendage that produces sexual spores on the gills of mushrooms (club fungi).

Batesian mimicry (bāt′-zē-un mim′-uh-krē) A type of mimicry in which a harmless species resembles an unpalatable or harmful species to which it is not closely related.

behavior Individually, an action carried out by muscles or glands under control of the nervous system in response to a stimulus; collectively, the sum of an animal's responses to external and internal stimuli.

behavioral ecology The study of behavioral interactions between individuals within populations and communities, usually in an evolutionary context.

benign tumor A mass of abnormal cells with specific genetic and cellular changes such that the cells are not capable of surviving at a new site and generally remain at the site of the tumor's origin.

benthic zone The bottom surface of an aquatic environment.

benthos (ben′-thōz) The communities of organisms living in the benthic zone of an aquatic biome.

beta (β) pleated sheet One form of the secondary structure of proteins in which the polypeptide chain folds back and forth. Two regions of the chain lie parallel to each other and are held together by hydrogen bonds between atoms of the polypeptide backbone (not the side chains).

beta oxidation A metabolic sequence that breaks fatty acids down to two-carbon fragments that enter the citric acid cycle as acetyl CoA.

bilateral symmetry Body symmetry in which a central longitudinal plane divides the body into two equal but opposite halves.

bilaterian (bī′-luh-ter′-ē-uhn) A member of a clade of animals with bilateral symmetry and three germ layers.

bile A mixture of substances that is produced in the liver and stored in the gallbladder; enables formation of fat droplets in water as an aid in the digestion and absorption of fats.

binary fission A method of asexual reproduction in single-celled organisms in which the cell grows to roughly double its size and then divides into two cells. In prokaryotes, binary fission does not involve mitosis, but in single-celled eukaryotes that undergo binary fission, mitosis is part of the process.

binomial A common term for the two-part, latinized format for naming a species, consisting of the genus and specific epithet; also called a binomen.

biodiversity hot spot A relatively small area with numerous endemic species and a large number of endangered and threatened species.

bioenergetics (1) The overall flow and transformation of energy in an organism. (2) The study of how energy flows through organisms.

biofilm A surface-coating colony of one or more species of unicellular organisms that engage in metabolic cooperation; most known biofilms are formed by prokaryotes.

biofuel A fuel produced from biomass.

biogeochemical cycle Any of the various chemical cycles, which involve both biotic and abiotic components of ecosystems.

biogeography The scientific study of the past and present geographic distributions of species.

bioinformatics The use of computers, software, and mathematical models to process and integrate biological information from large data sets.

biological augmentation An approach to restoration ecology that uses organisms to add essential materials to a degraded ecosystem.

biological clock An internal timekeeper that controls an organism's biological rhythms. The biological clock marks time with or without environmental cues but often requires signals from the environment to remain tuned to an appropriate period. *See also* circadian rhythm.

biological magnification A process in which retained substances become more concentrated at each higher trophic level in a food chain.

biological species concept Definition of a species as a group of populations whose members have the potential to interbreed in nature and produce viable, fertile offspring but do not produce viable, fertile offspring with members of other such groups.

biology The scientific study of life.

biomass The total mass of organic matter comprising a group of organisms in a particular habitat.

biome (bī′-ōm) Any of the world's major ecosystem types, often classified according to the predominant vegetation for terrestrial biomes and the physical environment for aquatic biomes and characterized by adaptations of organisms to that particular environment.

bioremediation The use of organisms to detoxify and restore polluted and degraded ecosystems.

biosphere The entire portion of Earth inhabited by life; the sum of all the planet's ecosystems.

biotechnology The manipulation of organisms or their components to produce useful products.

biotic (bī-ot′-ik) Pertaining to the living factors—the organisms—in an environment.

bipolar disorder A depressive mental illness characterized by swings of mood from high to low; also called manic-depressive disorder.

birth control pill A hormonal contraceptive that inhibits ovulation, retards follicular development, or alters a woman's cervical mucus to prevent sperm from entering the uterus.

blade (1) A leaflike structure of a seaweed that provides most of the surface area for photosynthesis. (2) The flattened portion of a typical leaf.

blastocoel (blas′-tuh-sēl) The fluid-filled cavity that forms in the center of a blastula.

blastocyst (blas′-tuh-sist) The blastula stage of mammalian embryonic development, consisting of an inner cell mass, a cavity, and an outer layer, the trophoblast. In humans, the blastocyst forms 1 week after fertilization.

blastomere An early embryonic cell arising during the cleavage stage of an early embryo.

blastopore (blas′-tō-pōr) In a gastrula, the opening of the archenteron that typically develops into the anus in deuterostomes and the mouth in protostomes.

blastula (blas′-tyū-luh) A hollow ball of cells that marks the end of the cleavage stage during early embryonic development in animals.

blood A connective tissue with a fluid matrix called plasma in which red blood cells, white blood cells, and cell fragments called platelets are suspended.

blue-light photoreceptor Any of several classes of light-absorbing molecules that have physiological effects when activated by blue light.

body cavity A fluid- or air-filled space between the digestive tract and the body wall.

body plan In multicellular eukaryotes, a set of morphological and developmental traits that are integrated into a functional whole—the living organism.

Bohr shift A lowering of the affinity of hemoglobin for oxygen, caused by a drop in pH. It facilitates the release of oxygen from hemoglobin in the vicinity of active tissues.

bolus A lubricated ball of chewed food.

bone A connective tissue consisting of living cells held in a rigid matrix of collagen fibers embedded in calcium salts.

book lung An organ of gas exchange in spiders, consisting of stacked plates contained in an internal chamber.

bottleneck effect Genetic drift that occurs when the size of a population is reduced, as by a natural disaster or human actions. Typically, the surviving population is no longer genetically representative of the original population.

bottom-up control A situation in which the abundance of organisms at each trophic level is limited by nutrient supply or the availability of food at lower trophic levels; thus, the supply of nutrients controls plant numbers, which control herbivore numbers, which in turn control predator numbers.

Bowman's capsule (bō′-munz) A cup-shaped receptacle in the vertebrate kidney that is the initial, expanded segment of the nephron, where filtrate enters from the blood.

brachiopod (bra′-kē-uh-pod′) A marine lophotrochozoan with a shell divided into dorsal and ventral halves; also called lamp shells.

brain Organ of the central nervous system where information is processed and integrated.

brainstem A collection of structures in the vertebrate brain, including the midbrain, the pons, and the medulla oblongata; functions in homeostasis, coordination of movement, and conduction of information to higher brain centers.

branch point The representation on a phylogenetic tree of the divergence of two or more taxa from a common ancestor. A branch point is usually shown as a dichotomy in which a branch representing the ancestral lineage splits (at the branch point) into two branches, one for each of the two descendant lineages.

brassinosteroid A steroid hormone in plants that has a variety of effects, including inducing cell elongation, retarding leaf abscission, and promoting xylem differentiation.

breathing Ventilation of the lungs through alternating inhalation and exhalation.

bronchiole (brong′-kē-ōl′) A fine branch of the bronchi that transports air to alveoli.

bronchus (brong′-kus) (plural, **bronchi**) One of a pair of breathing tubes that branch from the trachea into the lungs.

brown alga A multicellular, photosynthetic protist with a characteristic brown or olive color that results from carotenoids in its plastids. Most brown algae are marine, and some have a plantlike body.

bryophyte (brī′-uh-fīt) An informal name for a moss, liverwort, or hornwort; a nonvascular plant that lives on land but lacks some of the terrestrial adaptations of vascular plants.

buffer A solution that contains a weak acid and its corresponding base. A buffer minimizes changes in pH when acids or bases are added to the solution.

bulk feeder An animal that eats relatively large pieces of food.

bulk flow The movement of a fluid due to a difference in pressure between two locations.

bundle-sheath cell In C_4 plants, a type of photosynthetic cell arranged into tightly packed sheaths around the veins of a leaf.

C_3 plant A plant that uses the Calvin cycle for the initial steps that incorporate CO_2 into organic material, forming a three-carbon compound as the first stable intermediate.

C_4 plant A plant in which the Calvin cycle is preceded by reactions that incorporate CO_2 into a four-carbon compound, the end product of which supplies CO_2 for the Calvin cycle.

calcitonin (kal′-si-tō′-nin) A hormone secreted by the thyroid gland that lowers the blood calcium level by promoting calcium deposition in bone and calcium excretion from the kidneys; nonessential in adult humans.

callus A mass of dividing, undifferentiated cells growing at the site of a wound or in culture.

calorie (cal) The amount of heat energy required to raise the temperature of 1 g of water by 1°C; also the amount of heat energy that 1 g of water releases when it cools by 1°C. The Calorie (with a capital C), usually used to indicate the energy content of food, is a kilocalorie.

Calvin cycle The second of two major stages in photosynthesis (following the light reactions), involving fixation of atmospheric CO_2 and reduction of the fixed carbon into carbohydrate.

Cambrian explosion A relatively brief time in geologic history when many present-day phyla of animals first appeared in the fossil record. This burst of evolutionary change occurred about 535–525 million years ago and saw the emergence of the first large, hard-bodied animals.

cAMP (cyclic AMP) Cyclic adenosine monophosphate, named because of its ring structure, is a common chemical signal that has a diversity of roles, including as a second messenger in many eukaryotic cells, and as a regulator of some bacterial operons.

CAM plant A plant that uses crassulacean acid metabolism, an adaptation for photosynthesis in arid conditions. In this process, CO_2 entering open stomata during the night is converted to organic acids, which release CO_2 for the Calvin cycle during the day, when stomata are closed.

canopy The uppermost layer of vegetation in a terrestrial biome.

capillary (kap′-il-ār′-ē) A microscopic blood vessel that penetrates the tissues and consists of a single layer of endothelial cells that allows exchange between the blood and interstitial fluid.

capillary bed (kap′-il-ār′-ē) A network of capillaries in a tissue or organ.

capsid The protein shell that encloses a viral genome. It may be rod-shaped, polyhedral, or more complex in shape.

capsule (1) In many prokaryotes, a dense and well-defined layer of polysaccharide or protein that surrounds the cell wall and is sticky, protecting the cell and enabling it to adhere to substrates or other cells. (2) The sporangium of a bryophyte (moss, liverwort, or hornwort).

carbohydrate (kar′-bō-hī′-drāt) A sugar (monosaccharide) or one of its dimers (disaccharides) or polymers (polysaccharides).

carbon fixation The initial incorporation of carbon from CO_2 into an organic compound by an autotrophic organism (a plant, another photosynthetic organism, or a chemoautotrophic prokaryote).

carbonyl group (kar′-buh-nil) A chemical group present in aldehydes and ketones and consisting of a carbon atom double-bonded to an oxygen atom.

carboxyl group (kar-bok′-sil) A chemical group present in organic acids and consisting of a single carbon atom double-bonded to an oxygen atom and also bonded to a hydroxyl group.

cardiac cycle (kar′-dē-ak) The alternating contractions and relaxations of the heart.

cardiac muscle (kar′-dē-ak) A type of striated muscle that forms the contractile wall of the heart. Its cells are joined by intercalated disks that relay the electrical signals underlying each heartbeat.

cardiac output (kar′-dē-ak) The volume of blood pumped per minute by each ventricle of the heart.

cardiovascular system A closed circulatory system with a heart and branching network of arteries, capillaries, and veins. The system is characteristic of vertebrates.

carnivore An organism that consumes animals for nutrition.

carotenoid (kuh-rot′-uh-noyd′) An accessory pigment, either yellow or orange, in the chloroplasts of plants and in some prokaryotes. By absorbing wavelengths of light that chlorophyll cannot, carotenoids broaden the spectrum of colors that can drive photosynthesis.

carpel (kar′-pul) The ovule-producing reproductive organ of a flower, consisting of the stigma, style, and ovary.

carrier In genetics, an individual who is heterozygous at a given genetic locus for a recessively inherited disorder. The heterozygote is generally phenotypically normal for the disorder but can pass on the recessive allele to offspring.

carrying capacity The maximum population size that can be supported by the available resources, symbolized as *K*.

cartilage (kar′-til-ij) A flexible connective tissue with an abundance of collagenous fibers embedded in chondroitin sulfate.

Casparian strip (ka-spār′-ē-un) A water-impermeable ring of wax in the endodermal cells of plants that blocks the passive flow of water and solutes into the stele by way of cell walls.

catabolic pathway (kat′-uh-bol′-ik) A metabolic pathway that releases energy by breaking down complex molecules to simpler molecules.

catalysis (kuh-ta′-luh-sis) A process by which a chemical agent called a catalyst selectively increases the rate of a reaction without being consumed by the reaction.

catalyst (kat′-uh-list) A chemical agent that selectively increases the rate of a reaction without being consumed by the reaction.

cation (cat′-ī′-on) A positively charged ion.

cation exchange (cat′-ī′-on) A process in which positively charged minerals are made available to a plant when hydrogen ions in the soil displace mineral ions from the clay particles.

cecum (sē′-kum) (plural, **ceca**) The blind pouch forming one branch of the large intestine.

cell Life's fundamental unit of structure and function; the smallest unit of organization that can perform all activities required for life.

cell body The part of a neuron that houses the nucleus and most other organelles.

cell cycle An ordered sequence of events in the life of a cell, from its origin in the division of a parent cell until its own division into two. The eukaryotic cell cycle is composed of interphase (including G_1, S, and G_2 phases) and M phase (including mitosis and cytokinesis).

cell cycle control system A cyclically operating set of molecules in the eukaryotic cell that both triggers and coordinates key events in the cell cycle.

cell division The reproduction of cells.

cell fractionation The disruption of a cell and separation of its parts by centrifugation at successively higher speeds.

cell-mediated immune response The branch of adaptive immunity that involves the activation of cytotoxic T cells, which defend against infected cells.

cell plate A membrane-bounded, flattened sac located at the midline of a dividing plant cell, inside which the new cell wall forms during cytokinesis.

cellular respiration The catabolic pathways of aerobic and anaerobic respiration, which break down organic molecules and use an electron transport chain for the production of ATP.

cellulose (sel′-yū-lōs) A structural polysaccharide of plant cell walls, consisting of glucose monomers joined by β glycosidic linkages.

cell wall A protective layer external to the plasma membrane in the cells of plants, prokaryotes, fungi, and some protists. Polysaccharides such as cellulose (in plants and some protists), chitin (in fungi), and peptidoglycan (in bacteria) are important structural components of cell walls.

central nervous system (CNS) The portion of the nervous system where signal integration occurs; in vertebrate animals, the brain and spinal cord.

central vacuole In a mature plant cell, a large membranous sac with diverse roles in growth, storage, and sequestration of toxic substances.

centriole (sen′-trē-ōl) A structure in the centrosome of an animal cell composed of a cylinder of microtubule triplets arranged in a "9 + 0" pattern. A centrosome has a pair of centrioles.

centromere (sen′-trō-mēr) In a duplicated chromosome, the region on each sister chromatid where it is most closely attached to its sister chromatid by proteins that bind to the centromeric DNA. Other proteins condense the chromatin in that region, so it appears as a narrow "waist" on the duplicated chromosome. (An unduplicated chromosome has a single centromere, identified by the proteins bound there.)

centrosome (sen′-trō-sōm) A structure present in the cytoplasm of animal cells that functions as a microtubule-organizing center and is important during cell division. A centrosome has two centrioles.

cercozoan An amoeboid or flagellated protist that feeds with threadlike pseudopodia.

cerebellum (sār′-ruh-bel′-um) Part of the vertebrate hindbrain located dorsally; functions in unconscious coordination of movement and balance.

cerebral cortex (suh-rē′-brul) The surface of the cerebrum; the largest and most complex part of the mammalian brain, containing nerve cell bodies of the cerebrum; the part of the vertebrate brain most changed through evolution.

cerebrum (suh-rē′-brum) The dorsal portion of the vertebrate forebrain, composed of right and left hemispheres; the integrating center for memory, learning, emotions, and other highly complex functions of the central nervous system.

cervix (ser′-viks) The neck of the uterus, which opens into the vagina.

chaparral A scrubland biome of dense, spiny evergreen shrubs found at midlatitudes along coasts where cold ocean currents circulate offshore; characterized by mild, rainy winters and long, hot, dry summers.

chaperonin (shap′-er-ō′-nin) A protein complex that assists in the proper folding of other proteins.

character An observable heritable feature that may vary among individuals.

character displacement The tendency for characteristics to be more divergent in sympatric populations of two species than in allopatric populations of the same two species.

checkpoint A control point in the cell cycle where stop and go-ahead signals can regulate the cycle.

chelicera (kē-lih′-suh-ruh) (plural, **chelicerae**) One of a pair of clawlike feeding appendages characteristic of chelicerates.

chelicerate (kē-lih-suh′-rāte) An arthropod that has chelicerae and a body divided into a cephalothorax and an abdomen. Living chelicerates include sea spiders, horseshoe crabs, scorpions, ticks, and spiders.

chemical bond An attraction between two atoms, resulting from a sharing of outer-shell electrons or the presence of opposite charges on the atoms. The bonded atoms gain complete outer electron shells.

chemical energy Energy available in molecules for release in a chemical reaction; a form of potential energy.

chemical equilibrium In a chemical reaction, the state in which the rate of the forward reaction equals the rate of the reverse reaction, so that the relative concentrations of the reactants and products do not change with time.

chemical reaction The making and breaking of chemical bonds, leading to changes in the composition of matter.

chemiosmosis (kem′-ē-oz-mō′-sis) An energy-coupling mechanism that uses energy stored in the form of a hydrogen ion gradient across a membrane to drive cellular work, such as the synthesis of ATP. Under aerobic conditions, most ATP synthesis in cells occurs by chemiosmosis.

chemoautotroph (kē′-mō-ot′-ō-trōf) An organism that obtains energy by oxidizing inorganic substances and needs only carbon dioxide as a carbon source.

chemoheterotroph (kē′-mō-het′-er-ō-trōf) An organism that requires organic molecules for both energy and carbon.

chemoreceptor A sensory receptor that responds to a chemical stimulus, such as a solute or an odorant.

chiasma (plural, **chiasmata**) (kī-az′-muh, kī-az′-muh-tuh) The X-shaped, microscopically visible region where crossing over has occurred earlier in prophase I between homologous nonsister chromatids. Chiasmata become visible after synapsis ends, with the two homologs remaining associated due to sister chromatid cohesion.

chitin (kī′-tin) A structural polysaccharide, consisting of amino sugar monomers, found in many fungal cell walls and in the exoskeletons of all arthropods.

chlorophyll (klōr′-ō-fil) A green pigment located in membranes within the chloroplasts of plants and algae and in the membranes of certain prokaryotes. Chlorophyll *a* participates directly in the light reactions, which convert solar energy to chemical energy.

chlorophyll *a* (klōr′-ō-fil) A photosynthetic pigment that participates directly in the light reactions, which convert solar energy to chemical energy.

chlorophyll *b* (klōr′-ō-fil) An accessory photosynthetic pigment that transfers energy to chlorophyll *a*.

chloroplast (klōr′-ō-plast) An organelle found in plants and photosynthetic protists that absorbs sunlight and uses it to drive the synthesis of organic compounds from carbon dioxide and water.

choanocyte (kō-an′-uh-sīt) A flagellated feeding cell found in sponges. Also called a collar cell, it has a collar-like ring that traps food particles around the base of its flagellum.

cholesterol (kō-les′-tuh-rol) A steroid that forms an essential component of animal cell membranes and acts as a precursor molecule for the synthesis of other biologically important steroids, such as many hormones.

chondrichthyan (kon-drik′-thē-an) A member of the clade Chondrichthyes, vertebrates with skeletons made mostly of cartilage, such as sharks and rays.

chordate A member of the phylum Chordata, animals that at some point during their development have a notochord; a dorsal, hollow nerve cord; pharyngeal slits or clefts; and a muscular, post-anal tail.

chorionic villus sampling (CVS) (kōr′-ē-on′-ik vil′-us) A technique associated with prenatal diagnosis in which a small sample of the fetal portion of the placenta is removed for analysis to detect certain genetic and congenital defects in the fetus.

chromatin (krō′-muh-tin) The complex of DNA and proteins that makes up eukaryotic chromosomes. When the cell is not dividing, chromatin exists in its dispersed form, as a mass of

very long, thin fibers that are not visible with a light microscope.

chromosome (krō′-muh-sōm) A cellular structure consisting of one DNA molecule and associated protein molecules. A duplicated chromosome has two DNA molecules. (In some contexts, such as genome sequencing, the term may refer to the DNA alone.) A eukaryotic cell typically has multiple, linear chromosomes, which are located in the nucleus. A prokaryotic cell often has a single, circular chromosome, which is found in the nucleoid, a region that is not enclosed by a membrane. *See also* chromatin.

chromosome theory of inheritance (krō′-muh-sōm) A basic principle in biology stating that genes are located at specific positions (loci) on chromosomes and that the behavior of chromosomes during meiosis accounts for inheritance patterns.

chylomicron (kī′-lō-mī′-kron) A lipid transport globule composed of fats mixed with cholesterol and coated with proteins.

chyme (kīm) The mixture of partially digested food and digestive juices formed in the stomach.

chytrid (kī′-trid) A member of the fungal phylum Chytridiomycota, mostly aquatic fungi with flagellated zoospores that represent an early-diverging fungal lineage.

ciliate (sil′-ē-it) A type of protist that moves by means of cilia.

cilium (sil′-ē-um) (plural, **cilia**) A short appendage containing microtubules in eukaryotic cells. A motile cilium is specialized for locomotion or moving fluid past the cell; it is formed from a core of nine outer doublet microtubules and two inner single microtubules (the "9 + 2" arrangement) ensheathed in an extension of the plasma membrane. A primary cilium is usually nonmotile and plays a sensory and signaling role; it lacks the two inner microtubules (the "9 + 0" arrangement).

circadian rhythm (ser-kā′-dē-un) A physiological cycle of about 24 hours that persists even in the absence of external cues.

***cis-trans* isomer** One of several compounds that have the same molecular formula and covalent bonds between atoms but differ in the spatial arrangements of their atoms owing to the inflexibility of double bonds; also called a geometric isomer.

citric acid cycle A chemical cycle involving eight steps that completes the metabolic breakdown of glucose molecules begun in glycolysis by oxidizing acetyl CoA (derived from pyruvate) to carbon dioxide; occurs within the mitochondrion in eukaryotic cells and in the cytosol of prokaryotes; together with pyruvate oxidation, the second major stage in cellular respiration.

clade (klād) A group of species that includes an ancestral species and all of its descendants. A clade is equivalent to a monophyletic group.

cladistics (kluh-dis′-tiks) An approach to systematics in which organisms are placed into groups called clades based primarily on common descent.

class In Linnaean classification, the taxonomic category above the level of order.

cleavage (1) The process of cytokinesis in animal cells, characterized by pinching of the plasma membrane. (2) The succession of rapid cell divisions without significant growth during early embryonic development that converts the zygote to a ball of cells.

cleavage furrow The first sign of cleavage in an animal cell; a shallow groove around the cell in the cell surface near the old metaphase plate.

climate The long-term prevailing weather conditions at a given place.

climate change A directional change in temperature, precipitation, or other aspect of the global climate that lasts for three decades or more.

climograph A plot of the temperature and precipitation in a particular region.

clitoris (klit′-uh-ris) An organ at the upper intersection of the labia minora that engorges with blood and becomes erect during sexual arousal.

cloaca (klō-ā′-kuh) A common opening for the digestive, urinary, and reproductive tracts found in many nonmammalian vertebrates but in few mammals.

clonal selection The process by which an antigen selectively binds to and activates only those lymphocytes bearing receptors specific for the antigen. The selected lymphocytes proliferate and differentiate into a clone of effector cells and a clone of memory cells specific for the stimulating antigen.

clone (1) A group of genetically identical individuals or cells. (2) In popular usage, an individual that is genetically identical to another individual. (3) As a verb, to make one or more genetic replicas of an individual or cell. *See also* gene cloning.

cloning vector In genetic engineering, a DNA molecule that can carry foreign DNA into a host cell and replicate there. Cloning vectors include plasmids and bacterial artificial chromosomes (BACs), which move recombinant DNA from a test tube back into a cell, and viruses that transfer recombinant DNA by infection.

closed circulatory system A circulatory system in which blood is confined to vessels and is kept separate from the interstitial fluid.

cnidocyte (nī′-duh-sīt) A specialized cell unique to the phylum Cnidaria; contains a capsule-like organelle housing a coiled thread that, when discharged, explodes outward and functions in prey capture or defense.

cochlea (kok′-lē-uh) The complex, coiled organ of hearing that contains the organ of Corti.

coding strand Nontemplate strand of DNA, which has the same sequence as the mRNA except it has thymine (T) instead of uracil (U).

codominance The situation in which the phenotypes of both alleles are exhibited in the heterozygote because both alleles affect the phenotype in separate, distinguishable ways.

codon (kō′-don) A three-nucleotide sequence of DNA or mRNA that specifies a particular amino acid or termination signal; the basic unit of the genetic code.

coefficient of relatedness The fraction of genes that, on average, are shared by two individuals.

coelom (sē′-lōm) A body cavity lined by tissue derived only from mesoderm.

coenocytic fungus (sē′-no-si′-tic) A fungus that lacks septa and hence whose body is made up of a continuous cytoplasmic mass that may contain hundreds or thousands of nuclei.

coenzyme (kō-en′-zīm) An organic molecule serving as a cofactor. Most vitamins function as coenzymes in metabolic reactions.

coevolution The joint evolution of two interacting species, each in response to selection imposed by the other.

cofactor Any nonprotein molecule or ion that is required for the proper functioning of an enzyme. Cofactors can be permanently bound to the active site or may bind loosely and reversibly, along with the substrate, during catalysis.

cognition The process of knowing that may include awareness, reasoning, recollection, and judgment.

cognitive map A neural representation of the abstract spatial relationships between objects in an animal's surroundings.

cohesion The linking together of like molecules, often by hydrogen bonds.

cohesion-tension hypothesis The leading explanation of the ascent of xylem sap. It states that transpiration exerts pull on xylem sap, putting the sap under negative pressure, or tension, and that the cohesion of water molecules transmits this pull along the entire length of the xylem from shoots to roots.

cohort A group of individuals of the same age in a population.

coleoptile (kō′-lē-op′-tul) The covering of the young shoot of the embryo of a grass seed.

coleorhiza (kō′-lē-uh-rī′-zuh) The covering of the young root of the embryo of a grass seed.

collagen A glycoprotein in the extracellular matrix of animal cells that forms strong fibers, found extensively in connective tissue and bone; the most abundant protein in the animal kingdom.

collecting duct The location in the kidney where processed filtrate, called urine, is collected from the renal tubules.

collenchyma cell (kō-len′-kim-uh) A flexible plant cell type that occurs in strands or cylinders that support young parts of the plant without restraining growth.

colon (kō′-len) The largest section of the vertebrate large intestine; functions in water absorption and formation of feces.

commensalism (kuh-men′-suh-lizm) A +/0 ecological interaction that benefits the individuals of one species but neither harms nor helps the individuals of the other species.

communication (1) In behavior, a process involving the transmission and reception of signals between organisms. (2) Transfer of information from one cell or molecule to another by means of chemical or physical signals.

community All the organisms that inhabit a particular area; an assemblage of populations of different species living close enough together for potential interaction.

community ecology The study of how interactions between species affect community structure and organization.

community structure The number of species found in an ecological community, the particular species that are present, and the relative abundance of these species.

companion cell A type of plant cell that is connected to a sieve-tube element by many plasmodesmata and whose nucleus and ribosomes may serve one or more adjacent sieve-tube elements.

competition A −/− interaction that occurs when individuals of different species both use a resource that limits the survival and reproduction of each species.

competitive exclusion The concept that when populations of two similar species compete for the same limited resources, one population will use the resources more efficiently and have a reproductive advantage that will eventually lead to the elimination of the other population.

competitive inhibitor A substance that reduces the activity of an enzyme by entering the active site in place of the substrate, whose structure it mimics.

complement system A group of about 30 blood proteins that may amplify the inflammatory response, enhance phagocytosis, or directly lyse extracellular pathogens.

complementary DNA (cDNA) A double-stranded DNA molecule made *in vitro* using mRNA as a template and the enzymes reverse transcriptase and DNA polymerase. A cDNA molecule corresponds to the exons of a gene.

complete dominance The situation in which the phenotypes of the heterozygote and dominant homozygote are indistinguishable.

complete flower A flower that has all four basic floral organs: sepals, petals, stamens, and carpels.

complete metamorphosis The transformation of a larva into an adult that looks very different, and often functions very differently in its environment, than the larva.

compound A substance consisting of two or more different elements combined in a fixed ratio.

compound eye A type of multifaceted eye in insects and crustaceans consisting of up to several thousand light-detecting, focusing ommatidia.

concentration gradient A region along which the density of a chemical substance increases or decreases.

conception The fertilization of an egg by a sperm in humans.

cone A cone-shaped cell in the retina of the vertebrate eye, sensitive to color.

conformer An animal for which an internal condition conforms to (changes in accordance with) changes in an environmental variable.

conidium (plural, **conidia**) A haploid spore produced at the tip of a specialized hypha in ascomycetes during asexual reproduction.

conifer A member of the largest gymnosperm phylum. Most conifers are cone-bearing trees, such as pines and firs.

conjugation (kon′-jū-gā′-shun) (1) In prokaryotes, the direct transfer of DNA between two cells that are temporarily joined. When the two cells are members of different species, conjugation results in horizontal gene transfer. (2) In ciliates, a sexual process in which two cells exchange haploid micronuclei but do not reproduce.

connective tissue Animal tissue that functions mainly to bind and support other tissues, having a sparse population of cells scattered through an extracellular matrix.

conodont An early, soft-bodied vertebrate with prominent eyes and dental elements.

conservation biology The integrated study of ecology, evolutionary biology, physiology, molecular biology, and genetics to sustain biological diversity at all levels.

consumer An organism that feeds on producers, other consumers, or nonliving organic material.

contraception The deliberate prevention of pregnancy.

contractile vacuole A membranous sac that helps move excess water out of certain freshwater protists.

control element A segment of noncoding DNA that helps regulate transcription of a gene by serving as a binding site for a transcription factor. Multiple control elements are present in a eukaryotic gene's enhancer.

control group In a controlled experiment, a set of subjects that lacks (or does not receive) the specific factor being tested. Ideally, the control group is identical to the experimental group in other respects.

controlled experiment An experiment designed to compare an experimental group with a control group; ideally, the two groups differ only in the factor being tested.

convergent evolution The evolution of similar features in independent evolutionary lineages.

convergent extension A process in which the cells of a tissue layer rearrange themselves in such a way that the sheet of cells becomes narrower (converges) and longer (extends).

cooperativity A kind of allosteric regulation whereby a shape change in one subunit of a protein caused by substrate binding is transmitted to all the other subunits, facilitating binding of additional substrate molecules to those subunits.

coral reef Typically a warm-water, tropical ecosystem dominated by the hard skeletal structures secreted primarily by corals. Some coral reefs also exist in cold, deep waters.

corepressor A small molecule that binds to a bacterial repressor protein and changes the protein's shape, allowing it to bind to the operator and switch an operon off.

cork cambium (kam′-bē-um) A cylinder of meristematic tissue in woody plants that replaces the epidermis with thicker, tougher cork cells.

corpus callosum (kor′-pus kuh-lō′-sum) The thick band of nerve fibers that connects the right and left cerebral hemispheres in mammals, enabling the hemispheres to process information together.

corpus luteum (kor′-pus lū′-tē-um) A secreting tissue in the ovary that forms from the collapsed follicle after ovulation and produces progesterone.

cortex (1) The outer region of cytoplasm in a eukaryotic cell, lying just under the plasma membrane, that has a more gel-like consistency than the inner regions due to the presence of multiple microfilaments. (2) In plants, ground tissue that is between the vascular tissue and dermal tissue in a root or eudicot stem.

cortical nephron In mammals and birds, a nephron with a loop of Henle located almost entirely in the renal cortex.

cotransport The coupling of the "downhill" diffusion of one substance to the "uphill" transport of another against its own concentration gradient.

cotyledon (kot′-uh-lē′-dun) A seed leaf of an angiosperm embryo. Some species have one cotyledon, others two.

countercurrent exchange The exchange of a substance or heat between two fluids flowing in opposite directions. For example, blood in a fish gill flows in the opposite direction of water passing over the gill, maximizing diffusion of oxygen into and carbon dioxide out of the blood.

countercurrent multiplier system A countercurrent system in which energy is expended in active transport to facilitate exchange of materials and generate concentration gradients.

covalent bond (kō-vā′-lent) A type of strong chemical bond in which two atoms share one or more pairs of valence electrons.

crassulacean acid metabolism (CAM) (crass-yū-lā′-shen) An adaptation for photosynthesis in arid conditions, first discovered in the family Crassulaceae. In this process, a plant takes up CO_2 and incorporates it into a variety of organic acids at night; during the day, CO_2 is released from organic acids for use in the Calvin cycle.

CRISPR-Cas9 system A technique for editing genes in living cells, involving a bacterial protein called Cas9 associated with a guide RNA complementary to a gene sequence of interest.

crista (plural, **cristae**) (kris′-tuh, kris′-tē) An infolding of the inner membrane of a mitochondrion. The inner membrane houses electron transport chains and molecules of the enzyme catalyzing the synthesis of ATP (ATP synthase).

critical load The amount of added nutrient, usually nitrogen or phosphorus, that can be absorbed by plants without damaging ecosystem integrity.

crop rotation The practice of growing different crops in succession on the same land chiefly to preserve the productive capacity of the soil.

cross-fostering study A behavioral study in which the young of one species are placed in the care of adults from another species.

crossing over The reciprocal exchange of genetic material between nonsister chromatids during prophase I of meiosis.

cross-pollination In angiosperms, the transfer of pollen from an anther of a flower on one plant to the stigma of a flower on another plant of the same species.

cryptic coloration Camouflage that makes a potential prey difficult to spot against its background.

cryptomycete A member of the fungal phylum Cryptomycota, unicellular fungi that have flagellated spores; cryptomycetes and their sister taxon (microsporidians) are a basal fungal lineage.

culture A system of information transfer through social learning or teaching that influences the behavior of individuals in a population.

cuticle (kyū′-tuh-kul) Any of a variety of tough but flexible, non-mineral outer coverings of an organism, or parts of an organism, which provide protection.

cyclic AMP (cAMP) Cyclic adenosine monophosphate, named because of its ring structure, is a common chemical signal that has a diversity of roles, including as a second messenger in many eukaryotic cells, and as a regulator of some bacterial operons.

cyclic electron flow A route of electron flow during the light reactions of photosynthesis that involves only one photosystem and that produces ATP but not NADPH or O_2.

cyclin (sī′-klin) A cellular protein that occurs in a cyclically fluctuating concentration and that plays an important role in regulating the cell cycle.

cyclin-dependent kinase (Cdk) (sī′-klin) A protein kinase that is active only when attached to a particular cyclin.

cyclostome (sī′-cluh-stōm) Member of one of the two main clades of vertebrates; cyclostomes lack jaws and include lampreys and hagfishes. *See also* gnathostome.

cystic fibrosis (sis′-tik fī-brō′-sis) A human genetic disorder caused by a recessive allele for a chloride channel protein; characterized by an excessive secretion of mucus and consequent vulnerability to infection; fatal if untreated.

cytochrome (sī′-tō-krōm) An iron-containing protein that is a component of electron transport chains in the mitochondria and chloroplasts of eukaryotic cells and the plasma membranes of prokaryotic cells.

cytokine (sī′-tō-kīn′) Any of a group of small proteins secreted by a number of cell types, including macrophages and helper T cells, that regulate the function of other cells.

cytokinesis (sī′-tō-kuh-nē′-sis) The division of the cytoplasm to form two separate daughter cells immediately after mitosis, meiosis I, or meiosis II.

cytokinin (sī′-tō-kī′-nin) Any of a class of related plant hormones that retard aging and act in concert with auxin to stimulate cell division, influence the pathway of differentiation, and control apical dominance.

cytoplasm (sī′-tō-plaz-um) The contents of the cell bounded by the plasma membrane; in eukaryotes, the portion exclusive of the nucleus.

cytoplasmic determinant A maternal substance, such as a protein or RNA, that when placed into an egg influences the course of early development by regulating the expression of genes that affect the developmental fate of cells.

cytoplasmic streaming A circular flow of cytoplasm, involving interactions of myosin and actin filaments, that speeds the distribution of materials within cells.

cytoskeleton A network of microtubules, microfilaments, and intermediate filaments that extend throughout the cytoplasm and serve a variety of mechanical, transport, and signaling functions.

cytosol (sī′-tō-sol) The semifluid portion of the cytoplasm.

cytotoxic T cell A type of lymphocyte that, when activated, kills infected cells as well as certain cancer cells and transplanted cells.

dalton A measure of mass for atoms and subatomic particles; the same as the atomic mass unit, or amu.

data Recorded observations.

day-neutral plant A plant in which flower formation is not controlled by photoperiod or day length.

decomposer An organism that absorbs nutrients from nonliving organic material such as corpses, fallen plant material, and the wastes of living organisms and converts them to inorganic forms; a detritivore.

deductive reasoning A type of logic in which specific results are predicted from a general premise.

de-etiolation The changes a plant shoot undergoes in response to sunlight; also known informally as greening.

dehydration reaction A chemical reaction in which two molecules become covalently bonded to each other with the removal of a water molecule.

deletion (1) A deficiency in a chromosome resulting from the loss of a fragment through breakage. (2) A mutational loss of one or more nucleotide pairs from a gene.

demographic transition In a stable population, a shift from high birth and death rates to low birth and death rates.

demography The study of changes over time in the vital statistics of populations, especially birth rates and death rates.

denaturation (dē-nā′-chur-ā′-shun) In proteins, a process in which a protein loses its native shape due to the disruption of weak chemical bonds and interactions, thereby becoming biologically inactive; in DNA, the separation of the two strands of the double helix. Denaturation occurs under extreme (noncellular) conditions of pH, salt concentration, or temperature.

dendrite (den′-drīt) One of usually numerous, short, highly branched extensions of a neuron that receive signals from other neurons.

dendritic cell An antigen-presenting cell, located mainly in lymphatic tissues and skin, that is particularly efficient in presenting antigens to helper T cells, thereby initiating a primary immune response.

density The number of individuals per unit area or volume.

density dependent Referring to any characteristic that varies with population density.

density-dependent inhibition The phenomenon observed in normal animal cells that causes them to stop dividing when they come into contact with one another.

density independent Referring to any characteristic that is not affected by population density.

deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA) (dē-ok′-sē-rī′-bō-nū-klā′-ik) A nucleic acid molecule, usually a double-stranded helix, in which each polynucleotide strand consists of nucleotide monomers with a deoxyribose sugar and the nitrogenous bases adenine (A), cytosine (C), guanine (G), and thymine (T); capable of being replicated and determining the inherited structure of a cell's proteins.

deoxyribose (dē-ok′-si-rī′-bōs) The sugar component of DNA nucleotides, having one fewer hydroxyl group than ribose, the sugar component of RNA nucleotides.

dependent variable A factor whose value is measured during an experiment or other test to see whether it is influenced by changes in another factor (the independent variable).

depolarization A change in a cell's membrane potential such that the inside of the membrane is made less negative relative to the outside. For example, a neuron membrane is depolarized if a stimulus decreases its voltage from the resting potential of −70 mV in the direction of zero voltage.

dermal tissue The outer protective covering of plants.

desert A terrestrial biome characterized by very low precipitation.

desmosome A type of intercellular junction in animal cells that functions as a rivet, fastening cells together.

determinate cleavage A type of embryonic development in protostomes that rigidly casts the developmental fate of each embryonic cell very early.

determinate growth A type of growth characteristic of most animals and some plant organs, in which growth stops after a certain size is reached.

determination The progressive restriction of developmental potential in which the possible fate of each cell becomes more limited as an embryo develops. At the end of determination, a cell is committed to its fate.

detritus (di-trī′-tus) Dead organic matter.

deuteromycete (dū′-tuh-rō-mī′-sēt) Traditional classification for a fungus with no known sexual stage.

deuterostome development (dū′-tuh-rō-stōm′) In animals, a developmental mode distinguished by the development of the anus from the blastopore; often also characterized by radial cleavage and by the body cavity forming as outpockets of mesodermal tissue.

Deuterostomia (dū′-tuh-rō-stōm′-ē-uh) One of the three main lineages of bilaterian animals. *See also* Ecdysozoa and Lophotrochozoa.

development The events involved in an organism's changing gradually from a simple to a more complex or specialized form.

diabetes mellitus (dī′-uh-bē′-tis mel′-uh-tus) An endocrine disorder marked by an inability to maintain glucose homeostasis. The type 1 form results from autoimmune destruction of insulin-secreting cells; treatment usually requires daily insulin injections. The type 2 form most commonly results from reduced responsiveness of target cells to insulin; obesity and lack of exercise are risk factors.

diacylglycerol (DAG) (dī-a′-sil-glis′-er-ol) A second messenger produced by the cleavage of the phospholipid PIP_2 in the plasma membrane.

diaphragm (dī′-uh-fram′) (1) A sheet of muscle that forms the bottom wall of the thoracic cavity in mammals. Contraction of the diaphragm pulls air into the lungs. (2) A dome-shaped rubber cup fitted into the upper portion of the vagina before sexual intercourse. It serves as a physical barrier to the passage of sperm into the uterus.

diapsid (dī-ap′-sid) A member of an amniote clade distinguished by a pair of holes on each side of the skull. Diapsids include the lepidosaurs and archosaurs.

diastole (dī-as′-tō-lē) The stage of the cardiac cycle in which a heart chamber is relaxed and fills with blood.

diastolic pressure Blood pressure in the arteries when the ventricles are relaxed.

diatom Photosynthetic protist in the stramenopile clade; diatoms have a unique glass-like wall made of silicon dioxide embedded in an organic matrix.

dicot A term traditionally used to refer to flowering plants that have two embryonic seed leaves, or cotyledons. Recent molecular evidence indicates that dicots do not form a clade; species once classified as dicots are now grouped into eudicots, magnoliids, and several lineages of basal angiosperms.

differential gene expression The expression of different sets of genes by cells with the same genome.

differentiation The process by which a cell or group of cells becomes specialized in structure and function.

diffusion The random thermal motion of particles of liquids, gases, or solids. In the presence of a concentration or electrochemical gradient, diffusion results in the net movement of a substance from a region where it is more concentrated to a region where it is less concentrated.

digestion The second stage of food processing in animals: the breaking down of food into molecules small enough for the body to absorb.

dihybrid (dī′-hī′-brid) An organism that is heterozygous with respect to two genes of interest. All the offspring from a cross between parents doubly homozygous for different alleles are dihybrids. For example, parents of genotypes *AABB* and *aabb* produce a dihybrid of genotype *AaBb*.

dihybrid cross (dī′-hī′-brid) A cross between two organisms that are each heterozygous for both of the characters being followed (or the self-pollination of a plant that is heterozygous for both characters).

dikaryotic (dī′-kār-ē-ot′-ik) Referring to a fungal mycelium with two haploid nuclei per cell, one from each parent.

dinoflagellate (dī′-nō-flaj′-uh-let) A member of a group of mostly unicellular photosynthetic algae with two flagella situated in perpendicular grooves in cellulose plates covering the cell.

dinosaur A member of an extremely diverse clade of reptiles varying in body shape, size, and habitat. Birds are the only extant dinosaurs.

dioecious (dī-ē′-shus) In plant biology, having the male and female reproductive parts on different individuals of the same species.

diploblastic Having two germ layers.

diploid cell (dip′-loyd) A cell containing two sets of chromosomes ($2n$), one set inherited from each parent.

diplomonad A protist that has modified mitochondria, two equal-sized nuclei, and multiple flagella.

directional selection Natural selection in which individuals at one end of the phenotypic range survive or reproduce more successfully than do other individuals.

disaccharide (dī-sak′-uh-rīd) A double sugar, consisting of two monosaccharides joined by a glycosidic linkage formed by a dehydration reaction.

dispersal The movement of individuals or gametes away from their parent location. This movement sometimes expands the geographic range of a population or species.

dispersion The pattern of spacing among individuals within the boundaries of a population.

disruptive selection Natural selection in which individuals on both extremes of a phenotypic range survive or reproduce more successfully than do individuals with intermediate phenotypes.

distal tubule In the vertebrate kidney, the portion of a nephron that helps refine filtrate and empties it into a collecting duct.

disturbance A natural or human-caused event that changes a biological community and usually removes organisms from it. Disturbances, such as fires and storms, play a pivotal role in structuring many communities.

disulfide bridge A strong covalent bond formed when the sulfur of one cysteine monomer bonds to the sulfur of another cysteine monomer.

DNA (deoxyribonucleic acid) (dē-ok′-sē-rī′-bō-nū-klā′-ik) A nucleic acid molecule, usually a double-stranded helix, in which each polynucleotide strand consists of nucleotide monomers with a deoxyribose sugar and the nitrogenous bases adenine (A), cytosine (C), guanine (G), and thymine (T); capable of being replicated and determining the inherited structure of a cell's proteins.

DNA cloning The production of multiple copies of a specific DNA segment.

DNA ligase (lī′-gās) A linking enzyme essential for DNA replication; catalyzes the covalent bonding of the 3′ end of one DNA fragment (such as an Okazaki fragment) to the 5′ end of another DNA fragment (such as a growing DNA chain).

DNA methylation The presence of methyl groups on the DNA bases (usually cytosine) of plants, animals, and fungi. (The term also refers to the process of adding methyl groups to DNA bases.)

DNA microarray assay A method to detect and measure the expression of thousands of genes at one time. Tiny amounts of a large number of single-stranded DNA fragments representing different genes are fixed to a glass slide and tested for hybridization with samples of labeled cDNA.

DNA polymerase (puh-lim′-er-ās) An enzyme that catalyzes the elongation of new DNA (for example, at a replication fork) by the addition of nucleotides to the 3′ end of an existing chain. There are several different DNA polymerases; DNA polymerase III and DNA polymerase I play major roles in DNA replication in *E. coli*.

DNA replication The process by which a DNA molecule is copied; also called DNA synthesis.

DNA sequencing Determining the complete nucleotide sequence of a gene or DNA segment.

DNA technology Techniques for sequencing and manipulating DNA.

domain (1) A taxonomic category above the kingdom level. The three domains are Archaea, Bacteria, and Eukarya. (2) A discrete structural and functional region of a protein.

dominant allele An allele that is fully expressed in the phenotype of a heterozygote.

dormancy A condition typified by extremely low metabolic rate and a suspension of growth and development.

dorsal In an animal with bilateral symmetry, pertaining to the top (in most animals) or back (in animals with upright posture) of the body.

dorsal lip The region above the blastopore on the dorsal side of the amphibian embryo.

double bond A double covalent bond; the sharing of two pairs of valence electrons by two atoms.

double circulation A circulatory system consisting of separate pulmonary and systemic circuits, in which blood passes through the heart after completing each circuit.

double fertilization A mechanism of fertilization in angiosperms in which two sperm cells unite with two cells in the female gametophyte (embryo sac) to form the zygote and endosperm.

double helix The form of native DNA, referring to its two adjacent antiparallel polynucleotide strands wound around an imaginary axis into a spiral shape.

Down syndrome A human genetic disease usually caused by the presence of an extra chromosome 21; characterized by developmental delays and heart and other defects that are generally treatable or non-life-threatening.

Duchenne muscular dystrophy (duh-shen′) A human genetic disease caused by a sex-linked recessive allele; characterized by progressive weakening and a loss of muscle tissue.

duodenum (dū′-uh-dēn′-um) The first section of the small intestine, where chyme from the stomach mixes with digestive juices from the pancreas, liver, and gallbladder as well as from gland cells of the intestinal wall.

duplication An aberration in chromosome structure due to fusion with a fragment from a homologous chromosome, such that a portion of a chromosome is duplicated.

dynein (dī′-nē-un) In cilia and flagella, a large motor protein extending from one microtubule doublet to the adjacent doublet. ATP hydrolysis drives changes in dynein shape that lead to bending of cilia and flagella.

E site One of a ribosome's three binding sites for tRNA during translation. The E site is the place where discharged tRNAs leave the ribosome. (E stands for exit.)

Ecdysozoa (ek′-dē-sō-zō′-uh) One of the three main lineages of bilaterian animals; many ecdysozoans are molting animals. *See also* Deuterostomia and Lophotrochozoa.

echinoderm (i-kī′-nō-derm) A slow-moving or sessile marine deuterostome with a water vascular system and, in larvae, bilateral symmetry. Echinoderms include sea stars, brittle stars, sea urchins, feather stars, and sea cucumbers.

ecological footprint The aggregate land and water area required by a person, city, or nation to produce all of the resources it consumes and to absorb all of the waste it generates.

ecological niche (nich) The sum of a species' use of the biotic and abiotic resources in its environment.

ecological species concept Definition of a species in terms of ecological niche, the sum of how members of the species interact with the nonliving and living parts of their environment.

ecological succession Transition in the species composition of a community following a disturbance; establishment of a community in an area virtually barren of life.

ecology The study of how organisms interact with each other and their environment.

ecosystem All the organisms in a given area as well as the abiotic factors with which they interact; one or more communities and the physical environment around them.

ecosystem ecology The study of energy flow and the cycling of chemicals among the various biotic and abiotic components in an ecosystem.

ecosystem engineer An organism that influences community structure by causing physical changes in the environment.

ecosystem service A function performed by an ecosystem that directly or indirectly benefits humans.

ecotone The transition from one type of habitat or ecosystem to another, such as the transition from a forest to a grassland.

ectoderm (ek′-tō-durm) The outermost of the three primary germ layers in animal embryos; gives rise to the outer covering and, in some phyla, the nervous system, inner ear, and lens of the eye.

ectomycorrhiza (plural, **ectomycorrhizae**) (ek′-tō-mī′-kō-rī′-zuh, ek′-tō-mī′-kō-rī′-zē) Association of a fungus with a plant root system in which the fungus surrounds the roots but does not cause invagination of the host (plant) cell's plasma membrane.

ectomycorrhizal fungus A symbiotic fungus that forms sheaths of hyphae over the surface of plant roots and also grows into extracellular spaces of the root cortex.

ectoparasite A parasite that feeds on the external surface of a host.

ectopic Occurring in an abnormal location.

ectoproct A sessile, colonial lophotrochozoan; also called a bryozoan.

ectothermic Referring to organisms for which external sources provide most of the heat for temperature regulation.

Ediacaran biota (ē′-dē-uh-keh′-run bī-ō′-tuh) An early group of macroscopic, mostly soft-bodied, multicellular eukaryotes known from fossils that range in age from 635 million to 541 million years old.

effective population size An estimate of the size of a population based on the numbers of females and males that successfully breed; generally smaller than the total population.

effector A pathogen-encoded protein that cripples the host's innate immune system.

effector cell (1) A muscle cell or gland cell that carries out the body's response to stimuli as directed by signals from the brain or other processing center of the nervous system. (2) A lymphocyte that has undergone clonal selection and is capable of mediating an adaptive immune response.

egg The female gamete.

ejaculation The propulsion of sperm from the epididymis through the muscular vas deferens, ejaculatory duct, and urethra.

electrocardiogram (ECG or EKG) A record of the electrical impulses that travel through heart muscle during the cardiac cycle.

electrochemical gradient The diffusion gradient of an ion, which is affected by both the concentration difference of an ion across a membrane (a chemical force) and the ion's tendency to move relative to the membrane potential (an electrical force).

electrogenic pump An active transport protein that generates voltage across a membrane while pumping ions.

electromagnetic receptor A receptor of electromagnetic energy, such as visible light, electricity, or magnetism.

electromagnetic spectrum The entire spectrum of electromagnetic radiation, ranging in wavelength from less than a nanometer to more than a kilometer.

electron A subatomic particle with a single negative electrical charge and a mass about 1/2,000 that of a neutron or proton. One or more electrons move around the nucleus of an atom.

electron microscope (EM) A microscope that uses magnets to focus an electron beam on or through a specimen, resulting in a practical resolution that is 100-fold greater than that of a light microscope using standard techniques. A transmission electron microscope (TEM) is used to study the internal structure of thin sections of cells. A scanning electron microscope (SEM) is used to study the fine details of cell surfaces.

electron shell An energy level of electrons at a characteristic average distance from the nucleus of an atom.

electron transport chain A sequence of electron carrier molecules (membrane proteins) that shuttle electrons down a series of redox reactions that release energy used to make ATP.

electronegativity The attraction of a given atom for the electrons of a covalent bond.

electroporation A technique to introduce recombinant DNA into cells by applying a brief electrical pulse to a solution containing the cells. The pulse creates temporary holes in the cells' plasma membranes, through which DNA can enter.

element Any substance that cannot be broken down to any other substance by chemical reactions.

elimination The fourth and final stage of food processing in animals: the passing of undigested material out of the body.

embryo sac (em′-brē-ō) The female gametophyte of angiosperms, formed from the growth and division of the megaspore into a multicellular structure that typically has eight haploid nuclei.

embryonic lethal A mutation with a phenotype leading to death of an embryo or larva.

embryophyte Alternate name for land plants that refers to their shared derived trait of multicellular, dependent embryos.

emergent properties New properties that arise with each step upward in the hierarchy of life, owing to the arrangement and interactions of parts as complexity increases.

emigration The movement of individuals out of a population.

enantiomer (en-an′-tē-ō-mer) One of two compounds that are mirror images of each other and that differ in shape due to the presence of an asymmetric carbon.

endangered species A species that is in danger of extinction throughout all or a significant portion of its range.

endemic (en-dem′-ik) Referring to a species that is confined to a specific geographic area.

endergonic reaction (en′-der-gon′-ik) A nonspontaneous chemical reaction in which free energy is absorbed from the surroundings.

endocrine gland (en′-dō-krin) A ductless gland that secretes hormones directly into the interstitial fluid, from which they diffuse into the bloodstream.

endocrine system (en′-dō-krin) In animals, the internal system of communication involving hormones, the ductless glands that secrete hormones, and the molecular receptors on or in target cells that respond to hormones; functions in concert with the nervous system to effect internal regulation and maintain homeostasis.

endocytosis (en′-dō-sī-tō′-sis) Cellular uptake of biological molecules and particulate matter via formation of vesicles from the plasma membrane.

endoderm (en′-dō-durm) The innermost of the three primary germ layers in animal embryos; lines the archenteron and gives rise to the liver, pancreas, lungs, and the lining of the digestive tract in species that have these structures.

endodermis In plant roots, the innermost layer of the cortex that surrounds the vascular cylinder.

endomembrane system The collection of membranes inside and surrounding a eukaryotic cell, related either through direct physical contact or by the transfer of membranous vesicles; includes the plasma membrane, the nuclear envelope, the smooth and rough endoplasmic reticulum, the Golgi apparatus, lysosomes, vesicles, and vacuoles.

endometriosis (en′-dō-mē-trē-ō′-sis) The condition resulting from the presence of endometrial tissue outside of the uterus.

endometrium (en′-dō-mē′-trē-um) The inner lining of the uterus, which is richly supplied with blood vessels.

endoparasite A parasite that lives within a host.

endophyte A harmless fungus, or occasionally another organism, that lives between cells of a plant part or multicellular alga.

endoplasmic reticulum (ER) (en′-dō-plaz′-mik ruh-tik′-yū-lum) An extensive membranous network in eukaryotic cells, continuous with the outer nuclear membrane and composed of ribosome-studded (rough) and ribosome-free (smooth) regions.

endorphin (en-dōr′-fin) Any of several hormones produced in the brain and anterior pituitary that inhibit pain perception.

endoskeleton A hard skeleton buried within the soft tissues of an animal.

endosperm In angiosperms, a nutrient-rich tissue formed by the union of a sperm with

two polar nuclei during double fertilization. The endosperm provides nourishment to the developing embryo in angiosperm seeds.

endospore A thick-coated, resistant cell produced by some bacterial cells when they are exposed to harsh conditions.

endosymbiont theory The theory that mitochondria and plastids originated as prokaryotic cells engulfed by a host cell. The engulfed cell and its host cell then evolved into a single organism. *See also* endosymbiosis.

endosymbiosis A relationship between two species in which one organism lives inside the cell or cells of another organism. *See also* endosymbiont theory.

endothelium (en′-dō-thē′-lē-um) The simple squamous layer of cells lining the lumen of blood vessels.

endothermic Referring to organisms that are warmed by heat generated by their own metabolism. This heat usually maintains a relatively stable body temperature higher than that of the external environment.

endotoxin A toxic component of the outer membrane of certain gram-negative bacteria that is released only when the bacteria die.

energetic hypothesis The concept that the length of a food chain is limited by the inefficiency of energy transfer along the chain.

energy The capacity to cause change, especially to do work (to move matter against an opposing force).

energy coupling In cellular metabolism, the use of energy released from an exergonic reaction to drive an endergonic reaction.

enhancer A segment of eukaryotic DNA containing multiple control elements, usually located far from the gene whose transcription it regulates.

enteric nervous system Within the autonomic nervous system, a distinct network of neurons that exerts partially independent control over the digestive tract, pancreas, and gallbladder.

entropy A measure of molecular disorder, or randomness.

enzyme (en′-zīm) A macromolecule serving as a catalyst, a chemical agent that increases the rate of a reaction without being consumed by the reaction. Most enzymes are proteins.

enzyme-substrate complex (en′-zīm) A temporary complex formed when an enzyme binds to its substrate molecule(s).

eosinophil Immune system cell that secretes destructive enzymes and helps defend against multicellular pathogens.

epicotyl (ep′-uh-kot′-ul) In an angiosperm embryo, the embryonic axis above the point of attachment of the cotyledon(s) and below the first pair of miniature leaves.

epidemic A widespread outbreak of a disease.

epidermis (1) The dermal tissue of nonwoody plants, usually consisting of a single layer of tightly packed cells. (2) The outermost layer of cells in an animal.

epididymis (ep′-uh-did′-uh-mus) A coiled tubule located adjacent to the mammalian testis where sperm are stored.

epigenetics The study of the inheritance of traits transmitted by mechanisms that do not involve the nucleotide sequence.

epinephrine (ep′-i-nef′-rin) A catecholamine that, when secreted as a hormone by the adrenal medulla, mediates "fight-or-flight" responses to short-term stresses; also released by some neurons as a neurotransmitter; also called adrenaline.

epiphyte (ep′-uh-fīt) A plant that nourishes itself but grows on the surface of another plant for support, usually on the branches or trunks of trees.

epistasis (ep′-i-stā′-sis) A type of gene interaction in which the phenotypic expression of one gene alters that of another independently inherited gene.

epithelial tissue (ep′-uh-thē′-lē-ul) Sheets of tightly packed cells that line organs and body cavities as well as external surfaces.

epithelium (plural, **epithelia**) An epithelial tissue.

epitope A small, accessible region of an antigen to which an antigen receptor or antibody binds.

equilibrium potential (E_{ion}) The magnitude of a cell's membrane voltage at equilibrium; calculated using the Nernst equation.

erythrocyte (eh-rith′-ruh-sīt) A blood cell that contains hemoglobin, which transports oxygen; also called a red blood cell.

erythropoietin (EPO) (eh-rith′-rō-poy′-uh-tin) A hormone that stimulates the production of erythrocytes. It is secreted by the kidney when body tissues do not receive enough oxygen.

esophagus (eh-sof′-uh-gus) A muscular tube that conducts food, by peristalsis, from the pharynx to the stomach.

essential amino acid An amino acid that an animal cannot synthesize itself and must be obtained from food in prefabricated form.

essential element A chemical element required for an organism to survive, grow, and reproduce.

essential fatty acid An unsaturated fatty acid that an animal needs but cannot make.

essential nutrient A substance that an organism cannot synthesize from any other material and therefore must absorb in preassembled form.

estradiol (es′-truh-dī′-ol) A steroid hormone that stimulates the development and maintenance of the female reproductive system and secondary sex characteristics; the major estrogen in mammals.

estrogen (es′-trō-jen) Any steroid hormone, such as estradiol, that stimulates the development and maintenance of the female reproductive system and secondary sex characteristics.

estrous cycle (es′-trus) A reproductive cycle characteristic of female mammals except humans and certain other primates, in which the endometrium is reabsorbed in the absence of pregnancy and sexual response occurs only during a mid-cycle point known as estrus.

estuary The area where a freshwater stream or river merges with the ocean.

ethylene (eth′-uh-lēn) A gaseous plant hormone involved in responses to mechanical stress, programmed cell death, leaf abscission, and fruit ripening.

etiolation Plant morphological adaptations for growing in darkness.

euchromatin (yū-krō′-muh-tin) The less condensed form of eukaryotic chromatin that is available for transcription.

eudicot (yū-dī′-kot) A member of a clade that contains the vast majority of flowering plants that have two embryonic seed leaves, or cotyledons.

euglenid (yū′-glen-id) A protist, such as *Euglena* or its relatives, characterized by an anterior pocket from which one or two flagella emerge.

euglenozoan A member of a diverse clade of flagellated protists that includes predatory heterotrophs, photosynthetic autotrophs, and pathogenic parasites.

Eukarya (yū-kār′-ē-uh) The domain that includes all eukaryotic organisms.

eukaryote A single-celled or multicellular organism comprised of eukaryotic cells; eukaryotes include protists, plants, fungi, and animals.

eukaryotic cell (yū′-kār-ē-ot′-ik) A type of cell with a membrane-enclosed nucleus and membrane-enclosed organelles. Organisms with eukaryotic cells (protists, plants, fungi, and animals) are called eukaryotes.

eumetazoan (yū′-met-uh-zō′-un) A member of a clade of animals with true tissues. All animals except sponges and a few other groups are eumetazoans.

eurypterid (yur-ip′-tuh-rid) An extinct carnivorous chelicerate; also called a water scorpion.

Eustachian tube (yū-stā′-shun) The tube that connects the middle ear to the pharynx.

eutherian (yū-thēr′-ē-un) Placental mammal; mammal whose young complete their embryonic development within the uterus, joined to the mother by the placenta.

eutrophic lake (yū-trōf′-ik) A lake that has a high rate of biological productivity supported by a high rate of nutrient cycling.

eutrophication A process by which nutrients, particularly phosphorus and nitrogen, become highly concentrated in a body of water, leading to increased growth of organisms such as algae or cyanobacteria.

evaporative cooling The process in which the surface of an object becomes cooler during evaporation, a result of the molecules with the greatest kinetic energy changing from the liquid to the gaseous state.

evapotranspiration The total evaporation of water from an ecosystem, including water transpired by plants and evaporated from a landscape, usually measured in millimeters and estimated for a year.

evo-devo Evolutionary developmental biology; a field of biology that compares developmental processes of different multicellular organisms to understand how these processes have evolved and how changes can modify existing organismal features or lead to new ones.

evolution Descent with modification; the process by which species accumulate differences from their ancestors as they adapt to different environments over time; also defined as a change in the genetic composition of a population from generation to generation.

evolutionary lineage The sequence of ancestral organisms leading to a particular taxon;

represented by a branch (line) in a phylogenetic tree.

evolutionary tree A branching diagram that reflects a hypothesis about evolutionary relationships among groups of organisms.

Excavata (ex′-kuh-vah′-tuh) One of four supergroups of eukaryotes proposed in a current hypothesis of the evolutionary history of eukaryotes. Excavates have unique cytoskeletal features, and some species have an "excavated" feeding groove on one side of the cell body. *See also* SAR, Archaeplastida, and Unikonta.

excitatory postsynaptic potential (EPSP) An electrical change (depolarization) in the membrane of a postsynaptic cell caused by the binding of an excitatory neurotransmitter from a presynaptic cell to a postsynaptic receptor; makes it more likely for a postsynaptic cell to generate an action potential.

excretion The disposal of nitrogen-containing metabolites and other waste products.

exergonic reaction (ek′-ser-gon′-ik) A spontaneous chemical reaction in which there is a net release of free energy.

exocytosis (ek′-sō-sī-tō′-sis) The cellular secretion of biological molecules by the fusion of vesicles containing them with the plasma membrane.

exon A sequence within a primary transcript that remains in the RNA after RNA processing; also refers to the region of DNA from which this sequence was transcribed.

exoskeleton A hard encasement on the surface of an animal, such as the shell of a mollusc or the cuticle of an arthropod, that provides protection and points of attachment for muscles.

exotoxin (ek′-sō-tok′-sin) A toxic protein that is secreted by a prokaryote or other pathogen and that produces specific symptoms, even if the pathogen is no longer present.

expansin Plant enzyme that breaks the cross-links (hydrogen bonds) between cellulose microfibrils and other cell wall constituents, loosening the wall's fabric.

experiment A scientific test. Often carried out under controlled conditions that involve manipulating one factor in a system in order to see the effects of changing that factor.

experimental group A set of subjects that has (or receives) the specific factor being tested in a controlled experiment. Ideally, the experimental group is identical to the control group for all other factors.

exploitation A +/− ecological interaction in which individuals of one species benefit by feeding on (and thereby harming) individuals of the other species. Exploitative interactions include predation, herbivory, and parasitism.

exponential population growth Growth of a population in an ideal, unlimited environment, represented by a J-shaped curve when population size is plotted over time.

expression vector A cloning vector that contains a highly active bacterial promoter just upstream of a restriction site where a eukaryotic gene can be inserted, allowing the gene to be expressed in a bacterial cell. Expression vectors are also available that have been genetically engineered for use in specific types of eukaryotic cells.

extinction vortex A downward population spiral in which inbreeding and genetic drift combine to cause a small population to shrink and, unless the spiral is reversed, become extinct.

extracellular matrix (ECM) The meshwork surrounding animal cells, consisting of glycoproteins, polysaccharides, and proteoglycans synthesized and secreted by cells.

extraembryonic membrane One of four membranes (yolk sac, amnion, chorion, and allantois) located outside the embryo that support the developing embryo in reptiles and mammals.

extreme halophile An organism that lives in a highly saline environment, such as the Great Salt Lake or the Dead Sea.

extreme thermophile An organism that thrives in hot environments (often 60–80°C or hotter).

extremophile An organism that lives in environmental conditions so extreme that few other species can survive there. Extremophiles include extreme halophiles ("salt lovers") and extreme thermophiles ("heat lovers").

F_1 generation The first filial, hybrid (heterozygous) offspring arising from a parental (P generation) cross.

F_2 generation The offspring resulting from interbreeding (or self-pollination) of the hybrid F_1 generation.

facilitated diffusion The passage of molecules or ions down their electrochemical gradient across a biological membrane with the assistance of specific transmembrane transport proteins, requiring no energy expenditure.

facultative anaerobe (fak′-ul-tā′-tiv an′-uh-rōb) An organism that makes ATP by aerobic respiration if oxygen is present but that switches to anaerobic respiration or fermentation if oxygen is not present.

family In Linnaean classification, the taxonomic category above genus.

fast-twitch fiber A muscle fiber used for rapid, powerful contractions.

fat A lipid consisting of three fatty acids linked to one glycerol molecule; also called a triacylglycerol or triglyceride.

fate map A territorial diagram of embryonic development that displays the future derivatives of individual cells and tissues.

fatty acid A carboxylic acid with a long carbon chain. Fatty acids vary in length and in the number and location of double bonds; three fatty acids linked to a glycerol molecule form a fat molecule, also called triacylglycerol or triglyceride.

feces (fē′-sēz) The wastes of the digestive tract.

feedback inhibition A method of metabolic control in which the end product of a metabolic pathway acts as an inhibitor of an enzyme within that pathway.

feedback regulation The regulation of a process by its output or end product.

fermentation A catabolic process that makes a limited amount of ATP from glucose (or other organic molecules) without an electron transport chain and that produces a characteristic end product, such as ethyl alcohol or lactic acid.

fertilization (1) The union of haploid gametes to produce a diploid zygote. (2) The addition of mineral nutrients to the soil.

fetus (fē′-tus) A developing mammal that has all the major structures of an adult. In humans, the fetal stage lasts from the 9th week of gestation until birth.

F factor In bacteria, the DNA segment that confers the ability to form pili for conjugation and associated functions required for the transfer of DNA from donor to recipient. The F factor may exist as a plasmid or be integrated into the bacterial chromosome.

fibroblast (fī′-brō-blast) A type of cell in loose connective tissue that secretes the protein ingredients of the extracellular fibers.

fibronectin An extracellular glycoprotein secreted by animal cells that helps them attach to the extracellular matrix.

filament In an angiosperm, the stalk portion of the stamen, the pollen-producing reproductive organ of a flower.

filter feeder An animal that feeds by using a filtration mechanism to strain small organisms or food particles from its surroundings.

filtrate Cell-free fluid extracted from the body fluid by the excretory system.

filtration In excretory systems, the extraction of water and small solutes, including metabolic wastes, from the body fluid.

fimbria (plural, **fimbriae**) A short, hairlike appendage of a prokaryotic cell that helps it adhere to the substrate or to other cells.

first law of thermodynamics The principle of conservation of energy: Energy can be transferred and transformed, but it cannot be created or destroyed.

fission The separation of an organism into two or more individuals of approximately equal size.

fixed action pattern In animal behavior, a sequence of unlearned acts that is essentially unchangeable and, once initiated, usually carried to completion.

flaccid (flas′-id) Limp. Lacking turgor (stiffness or firmness), as in a plant cell in surroundings where there is a tendency for water to leave the cell. (A walled cell becomes flaccid if it has a higher water potential than its surroundings, resulting in the loss of water.)

flagellum (fluh-jel′-um) (plural, **flagella**) A long cellular appendage specialized for locomotion. Like motile cilia, eukaryotic flagella have a core with nine outer doublet microtubules and two inner single microtubules (the "9 + 2" arrangement) ensheathed in an extension of the plasma membrane. Prokaryotic flagella have a different structure.

florigen A flowering signal, probably a protein, that is made in leaves under certain conditions and that travels to the shoot apical meristems, inducing them to switch from vegetative to reproductive growth.

flower In an angiosperm, a specialized shoot with up to four sets of modified leaves, bearing structures that function in sexual reproduction.

fluid feeder An animal that lives by sucking nutrient-rich fluids from another living organism.

fluid mosaic model The currently accepted model of cell membrane structure, which envisions the membrane as a mosaic of protein molecules drifting laterally in a fluid bilayer of phospholipids.

follicle (fol′-uh-kul) A microscopic structure in the ovary that contains the developing oocyte and secretes estrogens.

follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH) (fol′-uh-kul) A tropic hormone that is produced and secreted by the anterior pituitary and that stimulates the production of eggs by the ovaries and sperm by the testes.

food chain The pathway along which food energy is transferred from trophic level to trophic level, beginning with producers.

food vacuole A membranous sac formed by phagocytosis of microorganisms or particles to be used as food by the cell.

food web The interconnected feeding relationships in an ecosystem.

foot (1) The portion of a bryophyte sporophyte that gathers sugars, amino acids, water, and minerals from the parent gametophyte via transfer cells. (2) One of the three main parts of a mollusc; a muscular structure usually used for movement. *See also* mantle and visceral mass.

foraging The seeking and obtaining of food.

foram (foraminiferan) An aquatic protist that secretes a hardened shell containing calcium carbonate and extends pseudopodia through pores in the shell.

forebrain One of three ancestral and embryonic regions of the vertebrate brain; develops into the thalamus, hypothalamus, and cerebrum.

fossil A preserved remnant or impression of an organism that lived in the past.

foundation species A species that has strong effects on its community as a result of its large size, high abundance, or pivotal role in community dynamics. Foundation species may provide significant habitat or food for other species; they may also be competitively dominant in exploiting key resources.

founder effect Genetic drift that occurs when a few individuals become isolated from a larger population and form a new population whose gene pool composition is not reflective of that of the original population.

fovea (fō′-vē-uh) The place on the retina at the eye's center of focus, where cones are highly concentrated.

F plasmid The plasmid form of the F factor.

fragmentation A means of asexual reproduction whereby a single parent breaks into parts that regenerate into whole new individuals.

frameshift mutation A mutation occurring when nucleotides are inserted in or deleted from a gene and the number inserted or deleted is not a multiple of three, resulting in the improper grouping of the subsequent nucleotides into codons.

free energy The portion of a biological system's energy that can perform work when temperature and pressure are uniform throughout the system. The change in free energy of a system (ΔG) is calculated by the equation $\Delta G = \Delta H - T\Delta S$, where ΔH is the change in enthalpy (in biological systems, equivalent to total energy), ΔT is the absolute temperature, and ΔS is the change in entropy.

frequency-dependent selection Selection in which the fitness of a phenotype depends on how common the phenotype is in a population.

fruit A mature ovary of a flower. The fruit protects dormant seeds and often functions in their dispersal.

functional group A specific configuration of atoms commonly attached to the carbon skeletons of organic molecules and involved in chemical reactions.

fusion In evolutionary biology, a process in which gene flow between two species that can form hybrid offspring weakens barriers to reproduction between the species. This process causes their gene pools to become increasingly alike and can cause the two species to fuse into a single species.

G_0 phase A nondividing state occupied by cells that have left the cell cycle, sometimes reversibly.

G_1 phase The first gap, or growth phase, of the cell cycle, consisting of the portion of interphase before DNA synthesis begins.

G_2 phase The second gap, or growth phase, of the cell cycle, consisting of the portion of interphase after DNA synthesis occurs.

gallbladder An organ that stores bile and releases it as needed into the small intestine.

game theory An approach to evaluating alternative strategies in situations where the outcome of a particular strategy depends on the strategies used by other individuals.

gametangium (gam′-uh-tan′-jē-um) (plural, **gametangia**) Multicellular plant structure in which gametes are formed. Female gametangia are called archegonia, and male gametangia are called antheridia.

gamete (gam′-ēt) A haploid reproductive cell, such as an egg or sperm, that is formed by meiosis or is the descendant of cells formed by meiosis. Gametes unite during sexual reproduction to produce a diploid zygote.

gametogenesis (guh-mē′-tō-gen′-uh-sis) The process by which gametes are produced.

gametophyte (guh-mē′-tō-fīt) In organisms (plants and some algae) that have alternation of generations, the multicellular haploid form that produces haploid gametes by mitosis. The haploid gametes unite and develop into sporophytes.

ganglion (gan′-glē-uhn) (plural, **ganglia**) A cluster (functional group) of nerve cell bodies.

gap junction A type of intercellular junction in animal cells, consisting of proteins surrounding a pore that allows the passage of materials between cells.

gas exchange The uptake of molecular oxygen from the environment and the discharge of carbon dioxide to the environment.

gastric juice A digestive fluid secreted by the stomach.

gastrovascular cavity A central cavity with a single opening in the body of certain animals, including cnidarians and flatworms, that functions in both the digestion and distribution of nutrients.

gastrula (gas′-trū-luh) An embryonic stage in animal development encompassing the formation of three layers: ectoderm, mesoderm, and endoderm.

gastrulation (gas′-trū-lā′-shun) In animal development, a series of cell and tissue movements in which the blastula-stage embryo folds inward, producing a three-layered embryo, the gastrula.

gated channel A transmembrane protein channel that opens or closes in response to a particular stimulus.

gated ion channel A gated channel for a specific ion. The opening or closing of such channels may alter a cell's membrane potential.

gel electrophoresis (ē-lek′-trō-fōr-ē′-sis) A technique for separating nucleic acids or proteins on the basis of their size and electrical charge, both of which affect their rate of movement through an electric field in a gel made of agarose or another polymer.

gene A discrete unit of hereditary information consisting of a specific nucleotide sequence in DNA (or RNA, in some viruses).

gene annotation Analysis of genomic sequences to identify protein-coding genes and determine the function of their products.

gene cloning The production of multiple copies of a gene.

gene drive A process that biases inheritance such that a particular allele is more likely to be inherited than are other alleles, causing the favored allele to spread (be "driven") through the population.

gene editing Altering genes in a specific, predictable way.

gene expression The process by which information encoded in DNA directs the synthesis of proteins or, in some cases, RNAs that are not translated into proteins and instead function as RNAs.

gene flow The transfer of alleles from one population to another, resulting from the movement of fertile individuals or their gametes.

gene pool The aggregate of all copies of every type of allele at all loci in every individual in a population. The term is also used in a more restricted sense as the aggregate of alleles for just one or a few loci in a population.

gene therapy The introduction of genes into an afflicted individual for therapeutic purposes.

genetic drift A process in which chance events cause unpredictable fluctuations in allele frequencies from one generation to the next. Effects of genetic drift are most pronounced in small populations.

genetic engineering The direct manipulation of genes for practical purposes.

genetic map An ordered list of genetic loci (genes or other genetic markers) along a chromosome.

genetic profile An individual's unique set of genetic markers, detected most often today by PCR or, previously, by electrophoresis and nucleic acid probes.

genetic recombination General term for the production of offspring with combinations of traits that differ from those found in either parent.

genetic variation Differences among individuals in the composition of their genes or other DNA sequences.

genetically modified organism (GMO) An organism that has acquired one or more genes by artificial means.

genetics The scientific study of heredity and hereditary variation.

genome (jē′-nōm) The genetic material of an organism or virus; the complete complement

of an organism's or virus's genes along with its noncoding nucleic acid sequences.

genome-wide association study (jē′-nōm) A large-scale analysis of the genomes of many people having a certain phenotype or disease, with the aim of finding genetic markers that correlate with that phenotype or disease.

genomic imprinting (juh-nō′-mik) A phenomenon in which expression of an allele in offspring depends on whether the allele is inherited from the male or female parent.

genomics (juh-nō′-miks) The systematic study of whole sets of genes (or other DNA) and their interactions within a species, as well as genome comparisons between species.

genotype (jē′-nō-tīp) The genetic makeup, or set of alleles, of an organism.

genus (jē′-nus) (plural, **genera**) A taxonomic category above the species level, designated by the first word of a species' two-part scientific name.

geologic record A standard time scale dividing Earth's history into time periods, grouped into four eons—Hadean, Archaean, Proterozoic, and Phanerozoic—and further subdivided into eras, periods, and epochs.

germ layer One of the three main layers in a gastrula that will form the various tissues and organs of an animal body.

gestation (jes-tā′-shun) Pregnancy; the condition of carrying one or more embryos in the uterus.

gibberellin (jib′-uh-rel′-in) Any of a class of related plant hormones that stimulate growth in the stem and leaves, trigger the germination of seeds and breaking of bud dormancy, and (with auxin) stimulate fruit development.

glans In humans, the rounded head of the penis (in males) or of the clitoris (in females); the glans is highly sensitive to stimulation.

glia (glial cells) Cells of the nervous system that support, regulate, and augment the functions of neurons.

global ecology The study of the functioning and distribution of organisms across the biosphere and how the regional exchange of energy and materials affects them.

glomeromycete (glō′-mer-ō-mī′-sēt) A member of the fungal phylum Glomeromycota, characterized by a distinct branching form of mycorrhizae called arbuscular mycorrhizae.

glomerulus (glō-mār′-yū-lus) A ball of capillaries surrounded by Bowman's capsule in the nephron and serving as the site of filtration in the vertebrate kidney.

glucocorticoid A steroid hormone that is secreted by the adrenal cortex and that influences glucose metabolism and immune function.

glucagon (glū′-kuh-gon) A hormone secreted by the pancreas that raises blood glucose levels. It promotes glycogen breakdown and release of glucose by the liver.

glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate (G3P) (glis′-er-al′-de-hīd) A three-carbon carbohydrate that is the direct product of the Calvin cycle; it is also an intermediate in glycolysis.

glycogen (glī′-kō-jen) An extensively branched glucose storage polysaccharide found in the liver and muscle of animals; the animal equivalent of starch.

glycolipid A lipid with one or more covalently attached carbohydrates.

glycolysis (glī-kol′-uh-sis) A series of reactions that ultimately splits glucose into pyruvate. Glycolysis occurs in almost all living cells, serving as the starting point for fermentation or cellular respiration.

glycoprotein A protein with one or more covalently attached carbohydrates.

glycosidic linkage A covalent bond formed between two monosaccharides by a dehydration reaction.

gnathostome (na′-thu-stōm) Member of one of the two main clades of vertebrates; gnathostomes have jaws and include sharks and rays, ray-finned fishes, coelacanths, lungfishes, amphibians, reptiles, and mammals. *See also* cyclostome.

Golgi apparatus (gol′-jē) An organelle in eukaryotic cells consisting of stacks of flat membranous sacs that modify, store, and route products of the endoplasmic reticulum and synthesize some products, notably noncellulose carbohydrates.

gonad (gō′-nad) A male or female gamete-producing organ.

G protein A GTP-binding protein that relays signals from a plasma membrane signal receptor, known as a G protein-coupled receptor, to other signal transduction proteins inside the cell.

G protein-coupled receptor (GPCR) A signal receptor protein in the plasma membrane that responds to the binding of a signaling molecule by activating a G protein. Also called a G protein-linked receptor.

graded potential An electrical response of a cell to a stimulus, consisting of a change in voltage across the membrane proportional to the stimulus strength.

Gram stain A staining method that distinguishes between two different kinds of bacterial cell walls; may be used to help determine medical response to an infection.

gram-negative Describing the group of bacteria that have a cell wall that is structurally more complex and contains less peptidoglycan than the cell wall of gram-positive bacteria. Gram-negative bacteria are often more toxic than gram-positive bacteria.

gram-positive Describing the group of bacteria that have a cell wall that is structurally less complex and contains more peptidoglycan than the cell wall of gram-negative bacteria. Gram-positive bacteria are usually less toxic than gram-negative bacteria.

granum (gran′-um) (plural, **grana**) A stack of membrane-bounded thylakoids in the chloroplast. Grana function in the light reactions of photosynthesis.

gravitropism (grav′-uh-trō′-pizm) A response of a plant or animal to gravity.

gray matter Regions of clustered neuron cell bodies within the CNS.

green alga A photosynthetic protist, named for green chloroplasts that are similar in structure and pigment composition to the chloroplasts of plants. Green algae are a paraphyletic group; some members are more closely related to plants than they are to other green algae.

greenhouse effect The warming of Earth due to the atmospheric accumulation of carbon dioxide and certain other gases, which absorb reflected infrared radiation and reradiate some of it back toward Earth.

gross primary production (GPP) The total primary production of an ecosystem.

ground tissue Plant tissue that is neither vascular nor dermal, fulfilling a variety of functions, such as storage, photosynthesis, and support.

growth factor (1) A protein that must be present in the extracellular environment (culture medium or animal body) for the growth and normal development of certain types of cells. (2) A local regulator that acts on nearby cells to stimulate cell proliferation and differentiation.

growth hormone (GH) A hormone that is produced and secreted by the anterior pituitary and that has both direct (nontropic) and tropic effects on a wide variety of tissues.

guard cells The two cells that flank the stomatal pore and regulate the opening and closing of the pore.

gustation The sense of taste.

guttation The exudation of water droplets from leaves, caused by root pressure in certain plants.

gymnosperm (jim′-nō-sperm) A vascular plant that bears naked seeds—seeds not enclosed in protective chambers.

hagfish Marine jawless vertebrates that have highly reduced vertebrae and a skull made of cartilage; most hagfishes are bottom-dwelling scavengers.

hair cell A mechanosensory cell that alters output to the nervous system when hairlike projections on the cell surface are displaced.

half-life The amount of time it takes for 50% of a sample of a radioactive isotope to decay.

halophile *See* extreme halophile.

Hamilton's rule The principle that for natural selection to favor an altruistic act, the benefit to the recipient, devalued by the coefficient of relatedness, must exceed the cost to the altruist.

haploid cell (hap′-loyd) A cell containing only one set of chromosomes (*n*).

Hardy-Weinberg equilibrium The state of a population in which frequencies of alleles and genotypes remain constant from generation to generation, provided that only Mendelian segregation and recombination of alleles are at work.

heart A muscular pump that uses metabolic energy to elevate the hydrostatic pressure of the circulatory fluid (blood or hemolymph). The fluid then flows down a pressure gradient through the body and eventually returns to the heart.

heart attack The damage or death of cardiac muscle tissue resulting from prolonged blockage of one or more coronary arteries.

heart murmur A hissing sound that most often results from blood squirting backward through a leaky valve in the heart.

heart rate The frequency of heart contraction (in beats per minute).

heat Thermal energy in transfer from one body of matter to another.

heat of vaporization The quantity of heat a liquid must absorb for 1 g of it to be converted from the liquid to the gaseous state.

heat-shock protein A protein that helps protect other proteins during heat stress.

Heat-shock proteins are found in plants, animals, and microorganisms.

heavy chain One of the two types of polypeptide chains that make up an antibody molecule and B cell receptor; consists of a variable region, which contributes to the antigen-binding site, and a constant region.

helicase An enzyme that untwists the double helix of DNA at replication forks, separating the two strands and making them available as template strands.

helper T cell A type of T cell that, when activated, secretes cytokines that promote the response of B cells (humoral response) and cytotoxic T cells (cell-mediated response) to antigens.

hemocoel A body cavity lined by tissue derived from mesoderm and by tissue derived from endoderm.

hemoglobin (hē′-mō-glō′-bin) An iron-containing protein in red blood cells that reversibly binds oxygen.

hemolymph (hē′-mō-limf′) In invertebrates with an open circulatory system, the body fluid that bathes tissues.

hemophilia (hē′-muh-fil′-ē-uh) A human genetic disease caused by a sex-linked recessive allele resulting in the absence of one or more blood-clotting proteins; characterized by excessive bleeding following injury.

hepatic portal vein A large vessel that conveys nutrient-laden blood from the small intestine to the liver, which regulates the blood's nutrient content.

herbivore (hur′-bi-vōr′) An animal that mainly eats plants or algae.

herbivory A +/− ecological interaction in which an organism eats part of a plant or alga.

heredity The transmission of traits from one generation to the next.

hermaphrodite (hur-maf′-ruh-dīt′) An individual that functions as both male and female in sexual reproduction by producing both sperm and eggs.

hermaphroditism (hur-maf′-rō-dī-tizm) A condition in which an individual has both female and male gonads and functions as both a male and a female in sexual reproduction by producing both sperm and eggs.

heterochromatin (het′-er-ō-krō′-muh-tin) Eukaryotic chromatin that remains highly compacted during interphase and is generally not transcribed.

heterochrony (het′-uh-rok′-ruh-nē) Evolutionary change in the timing or rate of an organism's development.

heterocyst (het′-er-ō-sist) A specialized cell that engages in nitrogen fixation in some filamentous cyanobacteria; also called a heterocyte.

heterokaryon (het′-er-ō-kār′-ē-un) A fungal mycelium that contains two or more haploid nuclei per cell.

heteromorphic (het′-er-ō-mōr′-fik) Referring to a condition in the life cycle of plants and certain algae in which the sporophyte and gametophyte generations differ in morphology.

heterosporous (het-er-os′-pōr-us) Referring to a plant species that has two kinds of spores: microspores, which develop into male gametophytes, and megaspores, which develop into female gametophytes.

heterotroph (het′-er-ō-trōf) An organism that obtains organic food molecules by eating other organisms or substances derived from them.

heterozygote An organism that has two different alleles for a gene (encoding a character).

heterozygote advantage Greater reproductive success of heterozygous individuals compared with homozygotes; tends to preserve variation in a gene pool.

heterozygous (het′-er-ō-zī′-gus) Having two different alleles for a given gene.

hibernation A long-term physiological state in which metabolism decreases, the heart and respiratory system slow down, and body temperature is maintained at a lower level than normal.

high-density lipoprotein (HDL) A particle in the blood made up of thousands of cholesterol molecules and other lipids bound to a protein. HDL scavenges excess cholesterol.

hindbrain One of three ancestral and embryonic regions of the vertebrate brain; develops into the medulla oblongata, pons, and cerebellum.

histamine (his′-tuh-mēn) A substance released by mast cells that causes blood vessels to dilate and become more permeable in inflammatory and allergic responses.

histogram A variant of a bar graph that is made for numeric data by first grouping, or "binning," the variable plotted on the *x*-axis into intervals of equal width. The "bins" may be integers or ranges of numbers. The height of each bar shows the percent or number of experimental subjects whose characteristics can be described by one of the intervals plotted on the *x*-axis.

histone (his′-tōn) A small protein with a high proportion of positively charged amino acids that binds to the negatively charged DNA and plays a key role in chromatin structure.

histone acetylation (his′-tōn) The attachment of acetyl groups to certain amino acids of histone proteins.

HIV (human immunodeficiency virus) The infectious agent that causes AIDS. HIV is a retrovirus.

holdfast A rootlike structure that anchors a seaweed.

homeobox (hō′-mē-ō-boks′) A 180-nucleotide sequence within homeotic genes and some other developmental genes that is widely conserved in animals. Related sequences occur in plants and yeasts.

homeostasis (hō′-mē-ō-stā′-sis) The steady-state physiological condition of the body.

homeotic gene (hō-mē-o′-tik) Any of the master regulatory genes that control placement and spatial organization of body parts in animals, plants, and fungi by controlling the developmental fate of groups of cells.

hominin (hō′-mi-nin) A group consisting of humans and the extinct species that are more closely related to us than to chimpanzees.

homologous chromosomes (or homologs) (hō-mol′-uh-gus) A pair of chromosomes of the same length, centromere position, and staining pattern that possess genes for the same characters at corresponding loci. One homologous chromosome is inherited from the organism's father, the other from the mother. Also called a homologous pair.

homologous pair *See* homologous chromosomes.

homologous structures (hō-mol′-uh-gus) Structures in different species that are similar because of common ancestry.

homologs *See* homologous chromosomes.

homology (hō-mol′-ō-jē) Similarity in characteristics resulting from a shared ancestry.

homoplasy (hō′-muh-play′-zē) A similar (analogous) structure or molecular sequence that has evolved independently in two species.

homosporous (hō-mos′-puh-rus) Referring to a plant species that has a single kind of spore, which typically develops into a bisexual gametophyte.

homozygote An organism that has a pair of identical alleles for a gene (encoding a character).

homozygous (hō′-mō-zī′-gus) Having two identical alleles for a given gene.

horizontal gene transfer The transfer of genes from one genome to another through mechanisms such as transposable elements, plasmid exchange, viral activity, and perhaps fusions of different organisms.

hormone In multicellular organisms, one of many types of secreted chemicals that are formed in specialized cells, travel in body fluids, and act on specific target cells in other parts of the organism, changing the target cells' functioning.

hornwort A small, herbaceous, nonvascular plant that is a member of the phylum Anthocerophyta.

host The larger participant in a symbiotic relationship, often providing a home and food source for the smaller symbiont.

host range The limited number of species whose cells can be infected by a particular virus.

Human Genome Project An international collaborative effort to map and sequence the DNA of the entire human genome.

human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) The infectious agent that causes AIDS (acquired immunodeficiency syndrome). HIV is a retrovirus.

humoral immune response (hyū′-mer-ul) The branch of adaptive immunity that involves the activation of B cells and that leads to the production of antibodies, which defend against bacteria and viruses in body fluids.

humus (hyū′-mus) Decomposing organic material that is a component of topsoil.

Huntington's disease A human genetic disease caused by a dominant allele; characterized by uncontrollable body movements and degeneration of the nervous system; usually fatal 10 to 20 years after the onset of symptoms.

hybrid Offspring that results from the mating of individuals from two different species or from two true-breeding varieties of the same species.

hybrid zone A geographic region in which members of different species meet and mate, producing at least some offspring of mixed ancestry.

hybridization In genetics, the mating, or crossing, of two true-breeding varieties.

hydration shell The sphere of water molecules around a dissolved ion.

hydrocarbon An organic molecule consisting only of carbon and hydrogen.

hydrogen bond A type of weak chemical bond that is formed when the slightly positive hydrogen atom of a polar covalent bond in one molecule is attracted to the slightly negative atom of a polar covalent bond in another molecule or in another region of the same molecule.

hydrogen ion A single proton with a charge of 1+. The dissociation of a water molecule (H_2O) leads to the generation of a hydroxide ion (OH^-) and a hydrogen ion (H^+); in water, H^+ is not found alone but associates with a water molecule to form a hydronium ion.

hydrolysis (hī-drol′-uh-sis) A chemical reaction that breaks bonds between two molecules by the addition of water; functions in disassembly of polymers to monomers.

hydronium ion A water molecule that has an extra proton bound to it; H_3O^+, commonly represented as H^+.

hydrophilic (hī′-drō-fil′-ik) Having an affinity for water.

hydrophobic (hī′-drō-fō′-bik) Having no affinity for water; tending to coalesce and form droplets in water.

hydrophobic interaction (hī′-drō-fō′-bik) A type of weak chemical interaction caused when molecules that do not mix with water coalesce to exclude water.

hydroponic culture A method in which plants are grown in mineral solutions rather than in soil.

hydrostatic skeleton A skeletal system composed of fluid held under pressure in a closed body compartment; the main skeleton of most cnidarians, flatworms, nematodes, and annelids.

hydrothermal vent An area on the seafloor where heated water and minerals from Earth's interior gush into the seawater, producing a dark, hot, oxygen-deficient environment. The producers in a hydrothermal vent community are chemoautotrophic prokaryotes.

hydroxide ion A water molecule that has lost a proton; OH^-.

hydroxyl group (hī-drok′-sil) A chemical group consisting of an oxygen atom joined to a hydrogen atom. Molecules possessing this group are soluble in water and are called alcohols.

hyperpolarization A change in a cell's membrane potential such that the inside of the membrane becomes more negative relative to the outside. Hyperpolarization reduces the chance that a neuron will transmit a nerve impulse.

hypersensitive response A plant's localized defense response to a pathogen, involving the death of cells around the site of infection.

hypertension A disorder in which blood pressure remains abnormally high.

hypertonic Referring to a solution that, when surrounding a cell, will cause the cell to lose water.

hypha (plural, **hyphae**) (hī′-fuh, hī′-fē) One of many connected filaments that collectively make up the mycelium of a fungus.

hypocotyl (hī′-puh-cot′-ul) In an angiosperm embryo, the embryonic axis below the point of attachment of the cotyledon(s) and above the radicle.

hypothalamus (hī′-pō-thal′-uh-mus) The ventral part of the vertebrate forebrain; functions in maintaining homeostasis, especially in coordinating the endocrine and nervous systems; secretes hormones of the posterior pituitary and releasing factors that regulate the anterior pituitary.

hypothesis (hī-poth′-uh-sis) A testable explanation for a set of observations based on the available data and guided by inductive reasoning. A hypothesis is narrower in scope than a theory.

hypotonic Referring to a solution that, when surrounding a cell, will cause the cell to take up water.

imbibition The uptake of water by a seed or other structure, resulting in swelling.

immigration The influx of new individuals into a population from other areas.

immune system An organism's system of defenses against agents that cause disease.

immunization The process of generating a state of immunity by artificial means. In vaccination, an inactive or weakened form of a pathogen is administered, inducing B and T cell responses and immunological memory. In passive immunization, antibodies specific for a particular pathogen are administered, conferring immediate but temporary protection.

immunoglobulin (Ig) (im′-yū-nō-glob′-yū-lin) *See* antibody.

imprinting In animal behavior, the formation at a specific stage in life of a long-lasting behavioral response to a specific individual or object. *See also* genomic imprinting.

inclusive fitness The total effect an individual has on proliferating its genes by producing its own offspring and by providing aid that enables other close relatives to increase production of their offspring.

incomplete dominance The situation in which the phenotype of heterozygotes is intermediate between the phenotypes of individuals homozygous for either allele.

incomplete flower A flower in which one or more of the four basic floral organs (sepals, petals, stamens, or carpels) are either absent or nonfunctional.

incomplete metamorphosis A type of development in certain insects, such as grasshoppers, in which the young (called nymphs) resemble adults but are smaller and have different body proportions. The nymph goes through a series of molts, each time looking more like an adult, until it reaches full size.

independent variable A factor whose value is manipulated or changed during an experiment to reveal possible effects on another factor (the dependent variable).

indeterminate cleavage A type of embryonic development in deuterostomes in which each cell produced by early cleavage divisions retains the capacity to develop into a complete embryo.

indeterminate growth A type of growth characteristic of plants, in which the organism continues to grow as long as it lives.

induced fit Caused by entry of the substrate, the change in shape of the active site of an enzyme so that it binds more snugly to the substrate.

inducer A specific small molecule that binds to a bacterial repressor protein and changes the repressor's shape so that it cannot bind to an operator, thus switching an operon on.

induction A process in which a group of cells or tissues influences the development of another group through close-range interactions.

inductive reasoning A type of logic in which generalizations are based on a large number of specific observations.

inflammatory response An innate immune defense triggered by physical injury or infection of tissue involving the release of substances that promote swelling, enhance the infiltration of white blood cells, and aid in tissue repair and destruction of invading pathogens.

inflorescence A group of flowers tightly clustered together.

ingestion The first stage of food processing in animals: the act of eating.

ingroup A species or group of species whose evolutionary relationships are being examined in a given analysis.

inhibitory postsynaptic potential (IPSP) An electrical change (usually hyperpolarization) in the membrane of a postsynaptic neuron caused by the binding of an inhibitory neurotransmitter from a presynaptic cell to a postsynaptic receptor; makes it more difficult for a postsynaptic neuron to generate an action potential.

innate behavior Animal behavior that is developmentally fixed and under strong genetic control. Innate behavior is exhibited in virtually the same form by all individuals in a population despite internal and external environmental differences during development and throughout their lifetimes.

innate immunity A form of defense common to all animals that is active immediately upon exposure to a pathogen and that is the same whether or not the pathogen has been encountered previously.

inner cell mass An inner cluster of cells at one end of a mammalian blastocyst that subsequently develops into the embryo proper and some of the extraembryonic membranes.

inner ear One of the three main regions of the vertebrate ear; includes the cochlea (which in turn contains the organ of Corti) and the semicircular canals.

inositol trisphosphate (IP_3) (in-ō′-suh-tol) A second messenger that functions as an intermediate between certain signaling molecules and a subsequent second messenger, Ca^{2+}, by causing a rise in cytoplasmic Ca^{2+} concentration.

inquiry The search for information and explanation, often focusing on specific questions.

insertion A mutation involving the addition of one or more nucleotide pairs to a gene.

***in situ* hybridization** A technique using nucleic acid hybridization with a labeled probe to detect the location of a specific mRNA in an intact organism.

insulin (in′-suh-lin) A hormone secreted by pancreatic beta cells that lowers blood glucose levels. It promotes the uptake of glucose by most body cells and the synthesis and storage of glycogen in the liver and also stimulates protein and fat synthesis.

integral protein A transmembrane protein with hydrophobic regions that extend into and often completely span the hydrophobic interior of the membrane and with

hydrophilic regions in contact with the aqueous solution on one or both sides of the membrane (or lining the channel in the case of a channel protein).

integrin (in′-tuh-grin) In animal cells, a transmembrane receptor protein with two subunits that interconnects the extracellular matrix and the cytoskeleton.

integument (in-teg′-yū-ment) Layer of sporophyte tissue that contributes to the structure of an ovule of a seed plant.

integumentary system The outer covering of a mammal's body, including skin, hair, and nails, claws, or hooves.

interferon (in′-ter-fēr′-on) A protein that has antiviral or immune regulatory functions. For example, interferons secreted by virus-infected cells help nearby cells resist viral infection.

intermediate disturbance hypothesis The concept that moderate levels of disturbance can foster greater species diversity than low or high levels of disturbance.

intermediate filament A component of the cytoskeleton that includes filaments intermediate in size between microtubules and microfilaments.

interneuron An association neuron; a nerve cell within the central nervous system that forms synapses with sensory and/or motor neurons and integrates sensory input and motor output.

internode A segment of a plant stem between the points where leaves are attached.

interphase The period in the cell cycle when the cell is not dividing. During interphase, cellular metabolic activity is high, chromosomes and organelles are duplicated, and cell size may increase. Interphase often accounts for about 90% of the cell cycle.

intersexual selection A form of natural selection in which individuals of one sex (usually the females) are choosy in selecting their mates from the other sex; also called mate choice.

interspecific interaction A relationship between individuals of two or more species in a community.

interstitial fluid The fluid filling the spaces between cells in most animals.

intertidal zone The shallow zone of the ocean adjacent to land and between the high- and low-tide lines.

intrasexual selection A form of natural selection in which there is direct competition among individuals of one sex for mates of the opposite sex.

intrinsic rate of increase (*r*) In population models, the per capita rate at which an exponentially growing population increases in size at each instant in time.

introduced species A species moved by humans, either intentionally or accidentally, from its native location to a new geographic region; sometimes called a non-native species, exotic species, or invasive species.

intron (in′-tron) A noncoding, intervening sequence within a primary transcript that is removed from the transcript during RNA processing; also refers to the region of DNA from which this sequence was transcribed.

inversion An aberration in chromosome structure resulting from reattachment of a chromosomal fragment in a reverse orientation to the chromosome from which it originated.

invertebrate An animal without a backbone. Invertebrates make up 95% of animal species.

***in vitro* fertilization (IVF)** (vē′-trō) Fertilization of oocytes in laboratory containers followed by artificial implantation of the early embryo in the mother's uterus.

***in vitro* mutagenesis** A technique used to discover the function of a gene by cloning it, introducing specific changes into the cloned gene's sequence, reinserting the mutated gene into a cell, and studying the phenotype of the mutant.

ion (ī′-on) An atom or group of atoms that has gained or lost one or more electrons, thus acquiring a charge.

ion channel (ī′-on) A transmembrane protein channel that allows a specific ion to diffuse across the membrane down its concentration or electrochemical gradient.

ionic bond (ī-on′-ik) A chemical bond resulting from the attraction between oppositely charged ions.

ionic compound (ī-on′-ik) A compound resulting from the formation of an ionic bond; also called a salt.

iris The colored part of the vertebrate eye, formed by the anterior portion of the choroid.

isomer (ī′-sō-mer) One of two or more compounds that have the same numbers of atoms of the same elements but different structures and hence different properties.

isomorphic Referring to alternating generations in plants and certain algae in which the sporophytes and gametophytes look alike, although they differ in chromosome number.

isotonic (ī′-sō-ton′-ik) Referring to a solution that, when surrounding a cell, causes no net movement of water into or out of the cell.

isotope (ī′-sō-tōp′) One of several atomic forms of an element, each with the same number of protons but a different number of neutrons, thus differing in atomic mass.

iteroparity Reproduction in which adults produce offspring over many years; also called repeated reproduction.

jasmonate Any of a class of plant hormones that regulate a wide range of developmental processes in plants and play a key role in plant defense against herbivores.

joule (J) A unit of energy: 1 J = 0.239 cal; 1 cal = 4.184 J.

juxtaglomerular apparatus (JGA) (juks′-tuh-gluh-mār′-yū-ler) A specialized tissue in nephrons that releases the enzyme renin in response to a drop in blood pressure or volume.

juxtamedullary nephron In mammals and birds, a nephron with a loop of Henle that extends far into the renal medulla.

karyogamy (kār′-ē-og′-uh-mē) In fungi, the fusion of haploid nuclei contributed by the two parents; occurs as one stage of sexual reproduction, preceded by plasmogamy.

karyotype (kār′-ē-ō-tīp) A display of the chromosome pairs of a cell arranged by size and shape.

keystone species A species that is not necessarily abundant in a community yet exerts strong control on community structure by the nature of its ecological role or niche.

kidney In vertebrates, one of a pair of excretory organs where blood filtrate is formed and processed into urine.

kilocalorie (kcal) A thousand calories; the amount of heat energy required to raise the temperature of 1 kg of water by 1°C.

kinetic energy (kuh-net′-ik) The energy associated with the relative motion of objects. Moving matter can perform work by imparting motion to other matter.

kinetochore (kuh-net′-uh-kōr) A structure of proteins attached to the centromere that links each sister chromatid to the mitotic spindle.

kinetoplastid A protist, such as a trypanosome, that has a single large mitochondrion that houses an organized mass of DNA.

kingdom A taxonomic category, the second broadest after domain.

kin selection Natural selection that favors altruistic behavior by enhancing the reproductive success of relatives.

***K*-selection** Selection for life history traits that are sensitive to population density.

labia majora A pair of thick, fatty ridges that enclose and protect the rest of the vulva.

labia minora A pair of slender skin folds that surround the openings of the vagina and urethra.

lacteal (lak′-tē-ul) A tiny lymph vessel extending into the core of an intestinal villus and serving as the destination for absorbed chylomicrons.

lactic acid fermentation Glycolysis followed by the reduction of pyruvate to lactate, regenerating NAD^+ with no release of carbon dioxide.

lagging strand A discontinuously synthesized DNA strand that elongates by means of Okazaki fragments, each synthesized in a 5′ → 3′ direction away from the replication fork.

lamprey Any of the jawless vertebrates with highly reduced vertebrae that live in freshwater and marine environments. Almost half of extant lamprey species are parasites that feed by clamping their round, jawless mouth onto the flank of a live fish; nonparasitic lampreys are suspension feeders that feed only as larvae.

lancelet A member of the clade Cephalochordata, small blade-shaped marine chordates that lack a backbone.

landscape An area containing several different ecosystems linked by exchanges of energy, materials, and organisms.

landscape ecology The study of how the spatial arrangement of habitat types affects the distribution and abundance of organisms and ecosystem processes.

large intestine The portion of the vertebrate alimentary canal between the small intestine and the anus; functions mainly in water absorption and the formation of feces.

larva (lar′-vuh) (plural, **larvae**) A free-living, sexually immature form in some animal life cycles that may differ from the adult animal in morphology, nutrition, and habitat.

larynx (lār′-inks) The portion of the respiratory tract containing the vocal cords; also called the voice box.

lateralization Segregation of functions in the cortex of the left and right cerebral hemispheres.

lateral line system A mechanoreceptor system consisting of a series of pores and receptor units along the sides of the body in fishes and aquatic amphibians; detects water movements made by the animal itself and by other moving objects.

lateral meristem (mār′-uh-stem) A meristem that thickens the roots and shoots of woody plants. The vascular cambium and cork cambium are lateral meristems.

lateral root A root that arises from the pericycle of an established root.

law of conservation of mass A physical law stating that matter can change form but cannot be created or destroyed. In a closed system, the mass of the system is constant.

law of independent assortment Mendel's second law, stating that each pair of alleles segregates, or assorts, independently of each other pair during gamete formation; applies when genes for two characters are located on different pairs of homologous chromosomes or when they are far enough apart on the same chromosome to behave as though they are on different chromosomes.

law of segregation Mendel's first law, stating that the two alleles in a pair segregate (separate from each other) into different gametes during gamete formation.

leading strand The new complementary DNA strand synthesized continuously along the template strand toward the replication fork in the mandatory 5′ → 3′ direction.

leaf The main photosynthetic organ of vascular plants.

leaf primordium (plural, **primordia**) A finger-like projection along the flank of a shoot apical meristem, from which a leaf arises.

learning The modification of behavior as a result of specific experiences.

lens The structure in an eye that focuses light rays onto the photoreceptors.

lenticel (len′-ti-sel) A small raised area in the bark of stems and roots that enables gas exchange between living cells and the outside air.

lepidosaur (leh-pid′-uh-sōr) A member of the reptilian group that includes lizards, snakes, and two species of New Zealand animals called tuataras.

leukocyte (lū′-kō-sīt′) A blood cell that functions in fighting infections; also called a white blood cell.

lichen The mutualistic association between a fungus and a photosynthetic alga or cyanobacterium.

life cycle The generation-to-generation sequence of stages in the reproductive history of an organism.

life history The traits that affect an organism's schedule of reproduction and survival.

life table A summary of the age-specific survival and reproductive rates of individuals in a population.

ligament A fibrous connective tissue that joins bones together at joints.

ligand (lig′-und) A molecule that binds specifically to another molecule, usually a larger one.

ligand-gated ion channel (lig′-und) A transmembrane protein containing a pore that opens or closes as it changes shape in response to a signaling molecule (ligand), allowing or blocking the flow of specific ions; also called an ionotropic receptor.

light chain One of the two types of polypeptide chains that make up an antibody molecule and B cell receptor; consists of a variable region, which contributes to the antigen-binding site, and a constant region.

light-harvesting complex A complex of proteins associated with pigment molecules (including chlorophyll *a*, chlorophyll *b*, and carotenoids) that captures light energy and transfers it to reaction-center pigments in a photosystem.

light microscope (LM) An optical instrument with lenses that refract (bend) visible light to magnify images of specimens.

light reactions The first of two major stages in photosynthesis (preceding the Calvin cycle). These reactions, which occur on the thylakoid membranes of the chloroplast or on membranes of certain prokaryotes, convert solar energy to the chemical energy of ATP and NADPH, releasing oxygen in the process.

lignin (lig′-nin) A strong polymer embedded in the cellulose matrix of the secondary cell walls of vascular plants that provides structural support in terrestrial species.

limiting nutrient An element that must be added for production to increase in a particular area.

limnetic zone In a lake, the well-lit, open surface waters far from shore.

linear electron flow A route of electron flow during the light reactions of photosynthesis that involves both photosystems (I and II) and produces ATP, NADPH, and O_2. The net electron flow is from H_2O to $NADP^+$.

line graph A graph in which each data point is connected to the next point in the data set with a straight line.

linkage map A genetic map based on the frequencies of recombination between markers during crossing over of homologous chromosomes.

linked genes Genes located close enough together on a chromosome that they tend to be inherited together.

lipid (lip′-id) Any of a group of large biological molecules, including fats, phospholipids, and steroids, that mix poorly, if at all, with water.

littoral zone In a lake, the shallow, well-lit waters close to shore.

liver A large internal organ in vertebrates that performs diverse functions, such as producing bile, maintaining blood glucose level, and detoxifying poisonous chemicals in the blood.

liverwort A small, herbaceous, nonvascular plant that is a member of the phylum Hepatophyta.

loam The most fertile soil type, made up of roughly equal amounts of sand, silt, and clay.

lobe-fin Member of a clade of osteichthyans having rod-shaped muscular fins. The group includes coelacanths, lungfishes, and tetrapods.

local regulator A secreted molecule that influences cells near where it is secreted.

locomotion Active motion from place to place.

locus (plural, **loci**), (lō′-kus), (lō′-sī) A specific place along the length of a chromosome where a given gene is located.

logistic population growth Population growth that levels off as population size approaches carrying capacity.

long-day plant A plant that flowers (usually in late spring or early summer) only when the light period is longer than a critical length.

long noncoding RNA (lncRNA) An RNA between 200 and hundreds of thousands of nucleotides in length that does not code for protein but is expressed at significant levels.

long-term memory The ability to hold, associate, and recall information over one's lifetime.

long-term potentiation (LTP) An enhanced responsiveness to an action potential (nerve signal) by a receiving neuron.

loop of Henle (hen′-lē) The hairpin turn, with a descending and ascending limb, between the proximal and distal tubules of the vertebrate kidney; functions in water and salt reabsorption.

lophophore (lof′-uh-fōr) In some lophotrochozoan animals, including brachiopods, a crown of ciliated tentacles that surround the mouth and function in feeding.

Lophotrochozoa (lo-phah′-truh-kō-zō′-uh) One of the three main lineages of bilaterian animals; lophotrochozoans include organisms that have lophophores or trochophore larvae. *See also* Deuterostomia and Ecdysozoa.

low-density lipoprotein (LDL) A particle in the blood made up of thousands of cholesterol molecules and other lipids bound to a protein. LDL transports cholesterol from the liver for incorporation into cell membranes.

lung An infolded respiratory surface of a terrestrial vertebrate, land snail, or spider that connects to the atmosphere by narrow tubes.

luteinizing hormone (LH) (lū′-tē-uh-nī′-zing) A tropic hormone that is produced and secreted by the anterior pituitary and that stimulates ovulation in females and androgen production in males.

lycophyte (lī′-kuh-fīt) An informal name for a member of the phylum Lycophyta, which includes club mosses, spike mosses, and quillworts.

lymph The colorless fluid, derived from interstitial fluid, in the lymphatic system of vertebrates.

lymph node An organ located along a lymph vessel. Lymph nodes filter lymph and contain cells that attack viruses and bacteria.

lymphatic system A system of vessels and nodes, separate from the circulatory system, that returns fluid, proteins, and cells to the blood.

lymphocyte A type of white blood cell that mediates immune responses. The two main classes are B cells and T cells.

lysogenic cycle (lī′-sō-jen′-ik) A type of phage replicative cycle in which the viral genome becomes incorporated into the bacterial host chromosome as a prophage, is replicated along with the chromosome, and does not kill the host.

lysosome (lī′-suh-sōm) A membrane-enclosed sac of hydrolytic enzymes found in the cytoplasm of animal cells and some protists.

lysozyme (lī′-sō-zīm) An enzyme that destroys bacterial cell walls; in mammals, it is found in sweat, tears, and saliva.

lytic cycle (lit′-ik) A type of phage replicative cycle resulting in the release of new phages by lysis (and death) of the host cell.

macroevolution Evolutionary change above the species level. Examples of macroevolutionary change include the origin of a new group of organisms through a series of speciation events and the impact of mass extinctions on the diversity of life and its subsequent recovery.

macromolecule A giant molecule formed by the joining of smaller molecules. Polysaccharides, proteins, and nucleic acids are macromolecules.

macronutrient An essential element that an organism must obtain in relatively large amounts. *See also* micronutrient.

macrophage (mak′-rō-fāj) A phagocytic cell present in many tissues that functions in innate immunity by destroying microorganisms and in acquired immunity as an antigen-presenting cell.

magnoliid A member of the angiosperm clade that is most closely related to the combined eudicot and monocot clades. Extant examples are magnolias, laurels, and black pepper plants.

major depressive disorder A mood disorder characterized by feelings of sadness, lack of self-worth, emptiness, or loss of interest in nearly all things.

major histocompatibility complex (MHC) molecule A host protein that functions in antigen presentation. Foreign MHC molecules on transplanted tissue can trigger T cell responses that may lead to rejection of the transplant.

malignant tumor A cancerous tumor containing cells that have significant genetic and cellular changes and are capable of invading and surviving in new sites. Malignant tumors can impair the functions of one or more organs.

Malpighian tubule (mal-pig′-ē-un) A unique excretory organ of insects that empties into the digestive tract, removes nitrogenous wastes from the hemolymph, and functions in osmoregulation.

mammal A member of the clade Mammalia, amniotes that have hair and mammary glands (glands that produce milk).

mammary gland An exocrine gland that secretes milk for nourishing the young. Mammary glands are characteristic of mammals.

mantle One of the three main parts of a mollusc; a fold of tissue that drapes over the mollusc's visceral mass and may secrete a shell. *See also* foot and visceral mass.

mantle cavity A water-filled chamber that houses the gills, anus, and excretory pores of a mollusc.

map unit A unit of measurement of the distance between genes. One map unit is equivalent to a 1% recombination frequency.

marine benthic zone The ocean floor.

mark-recapture method A sampling technique used to estimate the size of animal populations.

marsupial (mar-sū′-pē-ul) A mammal, such as a koala, kangaroo, or opossum, whose young complete their embryonic development inside a maternal pouch called the marsupium.

mass extinction The elimination of a large number of species throughout Earth, the result of global environmental changes.

mass number The total number of protons and neutrons in an atom's nucleus.

mast cell Immune system cell that secretes histamine; plays role in inflammatory response and allergies.

mate-choice copying Behavior in which individuals in a population copy the mate choice of others, apparently due to social learning.

maternal effect gene A gene that, when mutant in the mother, results in a mutant phenotype in the offspring, regardless of the offspring's genotype. Maternal effect genes, also called egg-polarity genes, were first identified in *Drosophila melanogaster*.

matter Anything that takes up space and has mass.

maximum likelihood As applied to DNA sequence data, a principle that states that when considering multiple phylogenetic hypotheses, one should take into account the hypothesis that reflects the most likely sequence of evolutionary events, given certain rules about how DNA changes over time.

maximum parsimony The principle that when considering multiple explanations for an observation, one should first investigate the simplest explanation that is consistent with the facts.

mean The sum of all data points in a data set divided by the number of data points.

mechanoreceptor A sensory receptor that detects physical deformation in the body's environment associated with pressure, touch, stretch, motion, or sound.

medulla oblongata (meh-dul′-uh ob′-long-gō′-tuh) The lowest part of the vertebrate brain, commonly called the medulla; a swelling of the hindbrain anterior to the spinal cord that controls autonomic, homeostatic functions, including breathing, heart and blood vessel activity, swallowing, digestion, and vomiting.

medusa (muh-dū′-suh) (plural, **medusae**) The floating, mouth-down form of the cnidarian body plan. The alternate form is the polyp.

megapascal (MPa) (meg′-uh-pas-kal′) A unit of pressure equivalent to about 10 atmospheres of pressure.

megaphyll (meh′-guh-fil) A leaf with a highly branched vascular system, found in almost all vascular plants other than lycophytes. *See also* microphyll.

megaspore A spore from a heterosporous plant species that develops into a female gametophyte.

meiosis (mī-ō′-sis) A modified type of cell division in sexually reproducing organisms consisting of two rounds of cell division but only one round of DNA replication. It results in cells with half the number of chromosome sets as the original cell.

meiosis I (mī-ō′-sis) The first division of a two-stage process of cell division in sexually reproducing organisms that results in cells with half the number of chromosome sets as the original cell.

meiosis II (mī-ō′-sis) The second division of a two-stage process of cell division in sexually reproducing organisms that results in cells with half the number of chromosome sets as the original cell.

melanocyte-stimulating hormone (MSH) A hormone produced and secreted by the anterior pituitary with multiple activities, including regulating the behavior of pigment-containing cells in the skin of some vertebrates.

melatonin A hormone that is secreted by the pineal gland and that is involved in the regulation of biological rhythms and sleep.

membrane potential The difference in electrical charge (voltage) across a cell's plasma membrane due to the differential distribution of ions. Membrane potential affects the activity of excitable cells and the transmembrane movement of all charged substances.

memory cell One of a clone of long-lived lymphocytes, formed during the primary immune response, that remains in a lymphoid organ until activated by exposure to the same antigen that triggered its formation. Activated memory cells mount the secondary immune response.

menopause The cessation of ovulation and menstruation marking the end of a human female's reproductive years.

menstrual cycle (men′-strū-ul) In humans and certain other primates, the periodic growth and shedding of the uterine lining that occurs in the absence of pregnancy.

menstruation The shedding of portions of the endometrium during a uterine (menstrual) cycle.

meristem (mār′-uh-stem) Plant tissue that remains embryonic as long as the plant lives, allowing for indeterminate growth.

mesoderm (mez′-ō-derm) The middle primary germ layer in a triploblastic animal embryo; develops into the notochord, the lining of the coelom, muscles, skeleton, gonads, kidneys, and most of the circulatory system in species that have these structures.

mesohyl (mez′-ō-hīl) A gelatinous region between the two layers of cells of a sponge.

mesophyll (mez′-ō-fil) Leaf cells specialized for photosynthesis. In C_3 and CAM plants, mesophyll cells are located between the upper and lower epidermis; in C_4 plants, they are located between the bundle-sheath cells and the epidermis.

messenger RNA (mRNA) A type of RNA, synthesized using a DNA template, that attaches to ribosomes in the cytoplasm and specifies the primary structure of a protein. (In eukaryotes, the primary RNA transcript must undergo RNA processing to become mRNA.)

metabolic pathway A series of chemical reactions that either builds a complex molecule (anabolic pathway) or breaks down a complex molecule to simpler molecules (catabolic pathway).

metabolic rate The total amount of energy an animal uses in a unit of time.

metabolism (muh-tab′-uh-lizm) The totality of an organism's chemical reactions, consisting of catabolic and anabolic pathways, which manage the material and energy resources of the organism.

metagenomics The collection and sequencing of DNA from a group of species, usually an environmental sample of microorganisms. Computer software sorts partial sequences and assembles them into genome sequences of individual species making up the sample.

metamorphosis (met′-uh-mōr′-fuh-sis) A developmental transformation that turns an animal larva into either an adult or an adult-like stage that is not yet sexually mature.

metanephridium (met′-uh-nuh-frid′-ē-um) (plural, **metanephridia**) An excretory organ found in many invertebrates that typically consists of tubules connecting ciliated internal openings to external openings.

metaphase The third stage of mitosis, in which the spindle is complete and the chromosomes, attached to microtubules at their kinetochores, are all aligned at the metaphase plate.

metaphase plate An imaginary structure located at a plane midway between the two poles of a cell in metaphase on which the centromeres of all the duplicated chromosomes are located.

metapopulation A group of spatially separated populations of one species that interact through immigration and emigration.

metastasis (muh-tas′-tuh-sis) The spread of cancer cells to locations distant from their original site.

methanogen (meth-an′-ō-jen) An organism that produces methane as a waste product of the way it obtains energy. All known methanogens are in domain Archaea.

methyl group A chemical group consisting of a carbon bonded to three hydrogen atoms. The methyl group may be attached to a carbon or to a different atom.

microbiome The collection of microorganisms living in or on an organism's body, along with their genetic material.

microclimate Climate patterns on a very fine scale, such as the specific climatic conditions underneath a log.

microevolution Evolutionary change below the species level; change in the allele frequencies in a population over generations.

microfilament A cable composed of actin proteins in the cytoplasm of almost every eukaryotic cell, making up part of the cytoskeleton and acting alone or with myosin to cause cell contraction; also called an actin filament.

micronutrient An essential element that an organism needs in very small amounts. *See also* macronutrient.

microphyll (mī′-krō-fil) A small, usually spine-shaped leaf supported by a single strand of vascular tissue, found only in lycophytes.

microplastic A plastic particle less than 5 mm in size; microplastics have contaminated all of the world's oceans as well as freshwater and terrestrial ecosystems.

micropyle A pore in the integuments of an ovule.

microRNA (miRNA) A small, single-stranded RNA molecule, generated from a double-stranded RNA precursor. The miRNA associates with one or more proteins in a complex that can degrade or prevent translation of an mRNA with a complementary sequence.

microspore A spore from a heterosporous plant species that develops into a male gametophyte.

microsporidian A member of the fungal phylum Microsporidia, unicellular parasites of protists and animals; microsporidians and their sister taxon (cryptomycetes) are a basal fungal lineage.

microtubule A hollow rod composed of tubulin proteins that makes up part of the cytoskeleton in all eukaryotic cells and is found in cilia and flagella.

microvillus (plural, **microvilli**) One of many fine, finger-like projections of the epithelial cells in the lumen of the small intestine that increase its surface area.

midbrain One of three ancestral and embryonic regions of the vertebrate brain; develops into sensory integrating and relay centers that send sensory information to the cerebrum.

middle ear One of three main regions of the vertebrate ear; in mammals, a chamber containing three small bones (the malleus, incus, and stapes) that convey vibrations from the eardrum to the oval window.

middle lamella (luh-mel′-uh) In plants, a thin layer of adhesive extracellular material, primarily pectins, found between the primary walls of adjacent young cells.

migration A regular, long-distance change in location.

mineral In nutrition, a simple nutrient that is inorganic and therefore cannot be synthesized in the body.

mineralocorticoid A steroid hormone secreted by the adrenal cortex that regulates salt and water homeostasis.

minimum viable population (MVP) The smallest population size at which a species is able to sustain its numbers and survive.

mismatch repair The cellular process that uses specific enzymes to remove and replace incorrectly paired nucleotides.

missense mutation A nucleotide-pair substitution that results in a codon that codes for a different amino acid.

mitochondrial matrix The compartment of the mitochondrion enclosed by the inner membrane and containing enzymes and substrates for the citric acid cycle, as well as ribosomes and DNA.

mitochondrion (mī′-tō-kon′-drē-un) (plural, **mitochondria**) An organelle in eukaryotic cells that serves as the site of cellular respiration; uses oxygen to break down organic molecules and synthesize ATP.

mitosis (mī-tō′-sis) A process of nuclear division in eukaryotic cells conventionally divided into five stages: prophase, prometaphase, metaphase, anaphase, and telophase. Mitosis conserves chromosome number by allocating replicated chromosomes equally to each of the daughter nuclei.

mitotic (M) phase The phase of the cell cycle that includes mitosis and cytokinesis.

mitotic spindle An assemblage of microtubules and associated proteins that is involved in the movement of chromosomes during mitosis.

mixotroph An organism that is capable of both photosynthesis and heterotrophy.

model A physical or conceptual representation of a natural phenomenon.

model organism A particular species chosen for research into broad biological principles because it is representative of a larger group and usually easy to grow in a lab.

molarity A common measure of solute concentration, referring to the number of moles of solute per liter of solution.

mold Informal term for a fungus that grows as a filamentous fungus, producing haploid spores by mitosis and forming a visible mycelium.

mole (mol) The number of grams of a substance that equals its molecular or atomic mass in daltons; a mole contains Avogadro's number of the molecules or atoms in question.

molecular clock A method for estimating the time required for a given amount of evolutionary change, based on the observation that some regions of genomes evolve at constant rates.

molecular mass The sum of the masses of all the atoms in a molecule; sometimes called molecular weight.

molecule Two or more atoms held together by covalent bonds.

molting A process in ecdysozoans in which the exoskeleton is shed at intervals, allowing growth by the production of a larger exoskeleton.

monilophyte An informal name for a member of the phylum Monilophyta, which includes ferns, horsetails, and whisk ferns and their relatives.

monoclonal antibody (mon′-ō-klōn′-ul) Any of a preparation of antibodies that have been produced by a single clone of cultured cells and thus are all specific for the same epitope.

monocot A member of a clade consisting of flowering plants that have one embryonic seed leaf, or cotyledon.

monogamous (muh-nog′-uh-mus) Referring to a type of relationship in which one male mates with just one female.

monohybrid An organism that is heterozygous with respect to a single gene of interest. All the offspring from a cross between parents homozygous for different alleles are monohybrids. For example, parents of genotypes *AA* and *aa* produce a monohybrid of genotype *Aa*.

monohybrid cross A cross between two organisms that are heterozygous for the character being followed (or the self-pollination of a heterozygous plant).

monomer (mon′-uh-mer) The subunit that serves as the building block of a polymer.

monophyletic (mon′-ō-fī-let′-ik) Pertaining to a group of taxa that consists of a common ancestor and all of its descendants. A monophyletic taxon is equivalent to a clade.

monosaccharide (mon′-ō-sak′-uh-rīd) The simplest carbohydrate, active alone or serving as a monomer for disaccharides and polysaccharides. Also called simple sugars, monosaccharides have molecular formulas that are generally some multiple of CH_2O.

monosomic Referring to a diploid cell that has only one copy of a particular chromosome instead of the normal two.

monotreme An egg-laying mammal, such as a platypus or echidna. Like all mammals, monotremes have hair and produce milk, but they lack nipples.

morphogen A substance, such as Bicoid protein in *Drosophila*, that provides positional

information in the form of a concentration gradient along an embryonic axis.

morphogenesis (mōr′-fō-jen′-uh-sis) The development of the form of an organism and its structures.

morphological species concept Definition of a species in terms of measurable anatomical criteria.

moss A small, herbaceous, nonvascular plant that is a member of the phylum Bryophyta.

motor neuron A nerve cell that transmits signals from the brain or spinal cord to muscles or glands.

motor protein A protein that interacts with cytoskeletal elements and other cell components, producing movement of the whole cell or parts of the cell.

motor system An efferent branch of the vertebrate peripheral nervous system composed of motor neurons that carry signals to skeletal muscles in response to external stimuli.

motor unit A single motor neuron and all the muscle fibers it controls.

movement corridor A series of small clumps or a narrow strip of quality habitat (usable by organisms) that connects otherwise isolated patches of quality habitat.

MPF Maturation-promoting factor (or M-phase-promoting factor); a protein complex required for a cell to progress from late interphase to mitosis. The active form consists of cyclin and a protein kinase.

mucoromycete A member of the fungal phylum Mucoromycota, characterized by the formation of a sturdy structure called a zygosporangium during sexual reproduction.

mucus A viscous and slippery mixture of glycoproteins, cells, salts, and water that moistens and protects the membranes lining body cavities that open to the exterior.

Müllerian mimicry (myū-lār′-ē-un mim′-uh-krē) Reciprocal mimicry by two unpalatable species.

multifactorial Referring to a phenotypic character that is influenced by multiple genes and environmental factors.

multigene family A collection of genes with similar or identical sequences, presumably of common origin.

multiple fruit A fruit derived from an entire inflorescence.

multiplication rule A rule of probability stating that the probability of two or more independent events occurring together can be determined by multiplying their individual probabilities.

muscle tissue Tissue consisting of long muscle cells that can contract, either on its own or when stimulated by nerve impulses.

mutagen (myū′-tuh-jen) A chemical or physical agent that interacts with DNA and can cause a mutation.

mutation (myū-tā′-shun) A change in the nucleotide sequence of an organism's DNA or in the DNA or RNA of a virus.

mutualism (myū′-chū-ul-izm) A +/+ ecological interaction that benefits individuals of both interacting species.

mycelium (mī-sē′-lē-um) (plural, **mycelia**) The densely branched network of hyphae in a fungus.

mycorrhiza (plural, **mycorrhizae**) (mī′-kō-rī′-zuh, mī′-kō-rī′-zē) A mutualistic association of plant roots and fungus.

mycosis (mī-kō′-sis) General term for a fungal infection.

myelin sheath (mī′-uh-lin) Wrapped around the axon of a neuron, an insulating coat of cell membranes from Schwann cells or oligodendrocytes. It is interrupted by nodes of Ranvier, where action potentials are generated.

myofibril (mī′-ō-fī′-bril) A longitudinal bundle in a muscle cell (fiber) that contains thin filaments of actin and regulatory proteins and thick filaments of myosin.

myoglobin (mī′-uh-glō′-bin) An oxygen-storing, pigmented protein in muscle cells.

myosin (mī′-uh-sin) A type of motor protein that associates into filaments that interact with actin filaments to cause cell contraction.

myriapod (mir′-ē-uh-pod′) A terrestrial arthropod with many body segments and one or two pairs of legs per segment. Millipedes and centipedes are the two major groups of living myriapods.

NAD^+ The oxidized form of nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide, a coenzyme that can accept electrons, becoming NADH. NADH temporarily stores electrons during cellular respiration.

NADH The reduced form of nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide that temporarily stores electrons during cellular respiration. NADH acts as an electron donor to the electron transport chain.

$NADP^+$ The oxidized form of nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide phosphate, an electron carrier that can accept electrons, becoming NADPH. NADPH temporarily stores energized electrons produced during the light reactions.

NADPH The reduced form of nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide phosphate; temporarily stores energized electrons produced during the light reactions. NADPH acts as "reducing power" that can be passed along to an electron acceptor, reducing it.

natural killer cell A type of white blood cell that can kill tumor cells and virus-infected cells as part of innate immunity.

natural selection A process in which individuals that have certain inherited traits tend to survive and reproduce at higher rates than other individuals because of those traits.

negative feedback A form of regulation in which accumulation of an end product of a process slows the process; in physiology, a primary mechanism of homeostasis, whereby a change in a variable triggers a response that counteracts the initial change.

negative pressure breathing A breathing system in which air is pulled into the lungs.

nematocyst (nem′-uh-tuh-sist′) In a cnidocyte of a cnidarian, a capsule-like organelle containing a coiled thread that when discharged can penetrate the body wall of the prey.

nephron (nef′-ron) The tubular excretory unit of the vertebrate kidney.

neritic zone The shallow region of the ocean overlying the continental shelf.

nerve A fiber composed primarily of the bundled axons of neurons.

nervous system In animals, the fast-acting internal system of communication involving sensory receptors, networks of nerve cells, and connections to muscles and glands that respond to nerve signals; functions in concert with the endocrine system to effect internal regulation and maintain homeostasis.

nervous tissue Tissue made up of neurons and supportive cells.

net ecosystem production (NEP) The gross primary production of an ecosystem minus the energy used by all autotrophs and heterotrophs for respiration.

net primary production (NPP) The gross primary production of an ecosystem minus the energy used by the producers for respiration.

neural crest In vertebrates, a region located along the sides of the neural tube where it pinches off from the ectoderm. Neural crest cells migrate to various parts of the embryo and form pigment cells in the skin and parts of the skull, teeth, adrenal glands, and peripheral nervous system.

neural tube A tube of infolded ectodermal cells that runs along the anterior-posterior axis of a vertebrate, just dorsal to the notochord. It will give rise to the central nervous system.

neurohormone A molecule that is secreted by a neuron, travels in body fluids, and acts on specific target cells, changing their functioning.

neuron (nyūr′-on) A nerve cell; the fundamental unit of the nervous system, having structure and properties that allow it to conduct signals by taking advantage of the electrical charge across its plasma membrane.

neuronal plasticity The capacity of a nervous system to change with experience.

neuropeptide A relatively short chain of amino acids that serves as a neurotransmitter.

neurotransmitter A molecule that is released from the synaptic terminal of a neuron at a chemical synapse, diffuses across the synaptic cleft, and binds to the postsynaptic cell, triggering a response.

neutral variation Genetic variation that does not provide a selective advantage or disadvantage.

neutron A subatomic particle having no electrical charge (electrically neutral), with a mass of about 1.7×10^{-24} g, found in the nucleus of an atom.

neutrophil The most abundant type of white blood cell. Neutrophils are phagocytic and tend to self-destruct as they destroy foreign invaders, limiting their life span to a few days.

nitric oxide (NO) A gas produced by many types of cells that functions as a local regulator and as a neurotransmitter.

nitrogen cycle The natural process by which nitrogen, either from the atmosphere or from decomposed organic material, is converted by soil bacteria to compounds assimilated by plants. This incorporated nitrogen is then taken in by other organisms and subsequently released, acted on by bacteria, and made available again to the nonliving environment.

nitrogen fixation The conversion of atmospheric nitrogen (N_2) to ammonia (NH_3). Biological nitrogen fixation is carried out by certain prokaryotes, some of which have mutualistic relationships with plants.

nociceptor (nō′-si-sep′-tur) A sensory receptor that responds to noxious or painful stimuli; also called a pain receptor.

node A point along the stem of a plant at which leaves are attached.

node of Ranvier (ron′-vē-ā′) Gap in the myelin sheath of certain axons where an action potential may be generated. In saltatory conduction, an action potential is regenerated at each node, appearing to "jump" along the axon from node to node.

nodule A swelling on the root of a legume. Nodules are composed of plant cells that contain nitrogen-fixing bacteria of the genus *Rhizobium*.

noncompetitive inhibitor A substance that reduces the activity of an enzyme by binding to a location remote from the active site, changing the enzyme's shape so that the active site no longer effectively catalyzes the conversion of substrate to product.

nondisjunction An error in meiosis or mitosis in which members of a pair of homologous chromosomes or a pair of sister chromatids fail to separate properly from each other.

nonequilibrium model A model that maintains that communities change constantly after being buffeted by disturbances.

nonpolar covalent bond A type of covalent bond in which electrons are shared equally between two atoms of similar electronegativity.

nonsense mutation A mutation that changes an amino acid codon to one of the three stop codons, resulting in a shorter and usually nonfunctional protein.

norepinephrine (nor-ep′-i-nef′-rin) A catecholamine that is chemically and functionally similar to epinephrine and acts as a hormone or neurotransmitter; also called noradrenaline.

northern coniferous forest A terrestrial biome characterized by long, cold winters and dominated by cone-bearing trees.

no-till agriculture A plowing technique that minimally disturbs the soil, thereby reducing soil loss.

notochord (nō′-tuh-kord′) A longitudinal, flexible rod made of tightly packed mesodermal cells that runs along the anterior-posterior axis of a chordate in the dorsal part of the body.

nuclear envelope In a eukaryotic cell, the double membrane that surrounds the nucleus, perforated with pores that regulate traffic with the cytoplasm. The outer membrane is continuous with the endoplasmic reticulum.

nuclear lamina A netlike array of protein filaments that lines the inner surface of the nuclear envelope and helps maintain the shape of the nucleus.

nucleariid A member of a group of unicellular, amoeboid protists that are more closely related to fungi than they are to other protists.

nuclease An enzyme that cuts DNA or RNA, either removing one or a few bases or hydrolyzing the DNA or RNA completely into its component nucleotides.

nucleic acid (nū-klā′-ik) A polymer (polynucleotide) consisting of many nucleotide monomers; serves as a blueprint for proteins and, through the actions of proteins, for all cellular activities. The two types are DNA and RNA.

nucleic acid hybridization (nū-klā′-ik) The base pairing of one strand of a nucleic acid to the complementary sequence on a strand from *another* nucleic acid molecule.

nucleic acid probe (nū′-klā′-ik) In DNA technology, a labeled single-stranded nucleic acid molecule used to locate a specific nucleotide sequence in a nucleic acid sample. Molecules of the probe hydrogen-bond to the complementary sequence wherever it occurs; radioactive, fluorescent, or other labeling of the probe allows its location to be detected.

nucleoid (nū′-klē-oyd) A non-membrane-enclosed region in a prokaryotic cell where its chromosome is located.

nucleolus (nū-klē′-ō-lus) (plural, **nucleoli**) A specialized structure in the nucleus, consisting of chromosomal regions containing ribosomal RNA (rRNA) genes along with ribosomal proteins imported from the cytoplasm; site of rRNA synthesis and ribosomal subunit assembly. *See also* ribosome.

nucleosome (nū′-klē-ō-sōm′) The basic, bead-like unit of DNA packing in eukaryotes, consisting of a segment of DNA wound around a protein core composed of two copies of each of four types of histone.

nucleotide (nū′-klē-ō-tīd′) The building block of a nucleic acid, consisting of a five-carbon sugar covalently bonded to a nitrogenous base and one to three phosphate groups.

nucleotide excision repair (nū′-klē-ō-tīd′) A repair system that removes and then correctly replaces a damaged segment of DNA using the undamaged strand as a guide.

nucleotide-pair substitution (nū′-klē-ō-tīd′) A type of point mutation in which one nucleotide in a DNA strand and its partner in the complementary strand are replaced by another pair of nucleotides.

nucleus (1) An atom's central core, containing protons and neutrons. (2) The organelle of a eukaryotic cell that contains the genetic material in the form of chromosomes, made up of chromatin. (3) A cluster of neurons.

nutrition The process by which an organism takes in and makes use of food substances.

obligate aerobe (ob′-lig-et ār′-ōb) An organism that requires oxygen for cellular respiration and cannot live without it.

obligate anaerobe (ob′-lig-et an′-uh-rōb) An organism that carries out only fermentation or anaerobic respiration. Such organisms cannot use oxygen and in fact may be poisoned by it.

ocean acidification The process by which the pH of the ocean is lowered (made more acidic) when excess CO_2 dissolves in seawater and forms carbonic acid (H_2CO_3).

oceanic pelagic zone Most of the ocean's waters far from shore, constantly mixed by ocean currents.

odorant A molecule that can be detected by sensory receptors of the olfactory system.

Okazaki fragment (ō′-kah-zah′-kē) A short segment of DNA synthesized away from the replication fork on a template strand during DNA replication. Many such segments are joined together to make up the lagging strand of newly synthesized DNA.

olfaction The sense of smell.

oligodendrocyte A type of glial cell that forms insulating myelin sheaths around the axons of neurons in the central nervous system.

oligotrophic lake A nutrient-poor, clear lake with few phytoplankton.

ommatidium (ōm′-uh-tid′-ē-um) (plural, **ommatidia**) One of the facets of the compound eye of arthropods and some polychaete worms.

omnivore An animal that regularly eats animals as well as plants or algae.

oncogene (on′-kō-jēn) A gene found in viral or cellular genomes that is involved in triggering molecular events that can lead to cancer.

oocyte (ō′-uh-sīt) A cell in the female reproductive system that differentiates to form an egg.

oogenesis (ō′-uh-jen′-uh-sis) The process in the ovary that results in the production of female gametes.

oogonium (ō′-uh-gō′-nē-em) (plural, **oogonia**) A cell that divides mitotically to form oocytes.

open circulatory system A circulatory system in which fluid called hemolymph bathes the tissues and organs directly and there is no distinction between the circulating fluid and the interstitial fluid.

operator In bacterial and phage DNA, a sequence of nucleotides near the start of an operon to which an active repressor can attach. The binding of the repressor prevents RNA polymerase from attaching to the promoter and transcribing the genes of the operon.

operculum (ō-per′-kyuh-lum) In aquatic osteichthyans, a protective bony flap that covers and protects the gills.

operon (op′-er-on) A unit of genetic function found in bacteria and phages, consisting of a promoter, an operator, and a coordinately regulated cluster of genes whose products function in a common pathway.

opisthokont (uh-pis′-thuh-kont′) A member of an extremely diverse clade of eukaryotes that includes fungi, animals, and several closely related groups of protists.

opposable thumb A thumb that can touch the ventral surface (fingerprint side) of the fingertip of all four fingers of the same hand with its own ventral surface.

opsin A membrane protein bound to a light-absorbing pigment molecule.

optimal foraging model The basis for analyzing behavior as a compromise between feeding costs and feeding benefits.

oral cavity The mouth of an animal.

orbital The three-dimensional space where an electron is found 90% of the time.

order In Linnaean classification, the taxonomic category above the level of family.

organ A specialized center of body function composed of several different types of tissues.

organelle (ōr-guh-nel′) Any of several membrane-enclosed structures with specialized functions, suspended in the cytosol of eukaryotic cells.

organic chemistry The study of carbon compounds (organic compounds).

organism An individual living thing, consisting of one or more cells.

organismal ecology The branch of ecology concerned with the morphological, physiological, and behavioral ways in

which individual organisms meet the challenges posed by their biotic and abiotic environments.

organ of Corti (kor′-tē) The actual hearing organ of the vertebrate ear, located in the floor of the cochlear duct in the inner ear; contains the receptor cells (hair cells) of the ear.

organogenesis (ōr-gan′-ō-jen′-uh-sis) The process in which organ rudiments develop from the three germ layers after gastrulation.

organ system A group of organs that work together in performing vital body functions.

origin of replication Site where the replication of a DNA molecule begins, consisting of a specific sequence of nucleotides.

orthologous genes Homologous genes that are found in different species because of speciation.

osculum (os′-kyuh-lum) A large opening in a sponge that connects the spongocoel to the environment.

osmoconformer An animal that is isoosmotic with its environment.

osmolarity (oz′-mō-lār′-uh-tē) Solute concentration expressed as molarity.

osmoregulation Regulation of solute concentrations and water balance by a cell or organism.

osmoregulator An animal that controls its internal osmolarity independent of the external environment.

osmosis (oz-mō′-sis) The diffusion of free water across a selectively permeable membrane.

osteichthyan (os′-tē-ik′-thē-an) A member of a vertebrate clade with jaws and mostly bony skeletons.

outer ear One of the three main regions of the ear in reptiles (including birds) and mammals; made up of the auditory canal and, in many birds and mammals, the pinna.

outgroup A species or group of species from an evolutionary lineage that is known to have diverged before the lineage that contains the group of species being studied. An outgroup is selected so that its members are closely related to the group of species being studied, but not as closely related as any study-group members are to each other.

oval window In the vertebrate ear, a membrane-covered gap in the skull bone, through which sound waves pass from the middle ear to the inner ear.

ovarian cycle (ō-vār′-ē-un) The cyclic recurrence of the follicular phase, ovulation, and the luteal phase in the mammalian ovary, regulated by hormones.

ovary (ō′-vuh-rē) (1) In flowers, the portion of a carpel in which the egg-containing ovules develop. (2) In animals, the structure that produces female gametes and reproductive hormones.

oviduct (ō′-vuh-duct) A tube passing from the ovary to the vagina in invertebrates or to the uterus in vertebrates, where it is also called a fallopian tube.

oviparous (ō-vip′-uh-rus) Referring to a type of development in which young hatch from eggs laid outside the mother's body.

ovoviviparous (ō′-vō-vī-vip′-uh-rus) Referring to a type of development in which young hatch from eggs that are retained in the mother's uterus.

ovulation The release of an egg from an ovary. In humans, an ovarian follicle releases an egg during each uterine (menstrual) cycle.

ovule (o′-vyūl) A structure that develops within the ovary of a seed plant and contains the female gametophyte.

oxidation The complete or partial loss of electrons from a substance involved in a redox reaction.

oxidative phosphorylation (fos′-fōr-uh-lā′-shun) The production of ATP using energy derived from the redox reactions of an electron transport chain; the third major stage of cellular respiration.

oxidizing agent The electron acceptor in a redox reaction.

oxytocin (ok′-si-tō′-sen) A hormone produced by the hypothalamus and released from the posterior pituitary. It induces contractions of the uterine muscles during labor and causes the mammary glands to eject milk during nursing.

***p53* gene** A tumor-suppressor gene that codes for a specific transcription factor that promotes the synthesis of proteins that inhibit the cell cycle.

paedomorphosis (pē′-duh-mōr′-fuh-sis) The retention in an adult organism of the juvenile features of its evolutionary ancestors.

pain receptor A sensory receptor that responds to noxious or painful stimuli; also called a nociceptor.

paleoanthropology The study of human origins and evolution.

paleontology (pā′-lē-un-tol′-ō-jē) The scientific study of fossils.

pancreas (pan′-krē-us) A gland with exocrine and endocrine tissues. The exocrine portion functions in digestion, secreting enzymes and an alkaline solution into the small intestine via a duct; the ductless endocrine portion functions in homeostasis, secreting the hormones insulin and glucagon into the blood.

pancrustacean A member of a diverse arthropod clade that includes lobsters, crabs, barnacles and other crustaceans, as well as insects and their six-legged terrestrial relatives.

pandemic A global epidemic.

Pangaea (pan-jē′-uh) The supercontinent that formed near the end of the Paleozoic era, when plate movements brought all the landmasses of Earth together.

parabasalid A protist, such as a trichomonad, with modified mitochondria.

paracrine Referring to a secreted molecule that acts on a neighboring cell.

paralogous genes Homologous genes that are found in the same genome as a result of gene duplication.

paraphyletic (pār′-uh-fī-let′-ik) Pertaining to a group of taxa that consists of a common ancestor and some, but not all, of its descendants.

parareptile A basal group of reptiles, consisting mostly of large, stocky quadrupedal herbivores. Parareptiles died out in the late Triassic period.

parasite (pār′-uh-sīt) An organism that feeds on the cell contents, tissues, or body fluids of another species (the host) while in or on the host organism. Parasites harm but usually do not kill their host.

parasitism (pār′-uh-sit-izm) A +/− ecological interaction in which one organism, the parasite, benefits by feeding upon another organism, the host, which is harmed; some parasites live within the host (feeding on its tissues), while others feed on the host's external surface.

parasympathetic division A division of the autonomic nervous system; generally enhances body activities that gain and conserve energy, such as digestion and reduced heart rate.

parathyroid gland One of four small endocrine glands, embedded in the surface of the thyroid gland, that secrete parathyroid hormone.

parathyroid hormone (PTH) A hormone secreted by the parathyroid glands that raises blood calcium level by promoting calcium release from bone and calcium retention by the kidneys.

parenchyma cell (puh-ren′-ki-muh) A relatively unspecialized plant cell type that carries out most of the metabolism, synthesizes and stores organic products, and develops into a more differentiated cell type.

parental type An offspring with a phenotype that matches one of the true-breeding parental (P generation) phenotypes; also refers to the phenotype itself.

Parkinson's disease A progressive brain disease characterized by difficulty in initiating movements, slowness of movement, and rigidity.

parthenogenesis (par′-thuh-nō′-jen′-uh-sis) A form of asexual reproduction in which females produce offspring from unfertilized eggs.

partial pressure The pressure exerted by a particular gas in a mixture of gases (for instance, the pressure exerted by oxygen in air).

passive immunity Short-term immunity conferred by the transfer of antibodies, as occurs in the transfer of maternal antibodies to a fetus or nursing infant.

passive transport The diffusion of a substance across a biological membrane with no expenditure of energy.

pathogen An organism or virus that causes disease.

pathogen-associated molecular pattern (PAMP) A molecular sequence that is specific to a certain pathogen.

pattern formation The development of a multicellular organism's spatial organization, the arrangement of organs and tissues in their characteristic places in three-dimensional space.

peat Extensive deposits of partially decayed organic material often formed primarily from the wetland moss *Sphagnum*.

pedigree A diagram of a family tree with conventional symbols, showing the occurrence of heritable characters in parents and offspring over multiple generations.

pelagic zone The open-water component of aquatic biomes.

penis The copulatory structure of male mammals.

PEP carboxylase An enzyme that adds CO_2 to phosphoenolpyruvate (PEP) to form oxaloacetate in mesophyll cells of C_4 plants. It acts prior to photosynthesis.

pepsin An enzyme present in gastric juice that begins the hydrolysis of proteins.

pepsinogen The inactive form of pepsin secreted by chief cells located in gastric pits of the stomach.

peptide bond The covalent bond between the carboxyl group on one amino acid and the amino group on another, formed by a dehydration reaction.

peptidoglycan (pep′-tid-ō-glī′-kan) A type of polymer in bacterial cell walls consisting of modified sugars cross-linked by short polypeptides.

perception The interpretation of sensory system input by the brain.

pericycle The outermost layer in the vascular cylinder, from which lateral roots arise.

periderm (pār′-uh-derm′) The protective coat that replaces the epidermis in woody plants during secondary growth, formed of the cork and cork cambium.

peripheral nervous system (PNS) The sensory and motor neurons that connect to the central nervous system.

peripheral protein A protein loosely bound to the surface of a membrane or to part of an integral protein and not embedded in the lipid bilayer.

peristalsis (pār′-uh-stal′-sis) (1) Alternating waves of contraction and relaxation in the smooth muscles lining the alimentary canal that push food along the canal. (2) A type of movement on land produced by rhythmic waves of muscle contractions passing from front to back, as in many annelids.

peristome (pār′-uh-stōme′) A ring of interlocking, tooth-like structures on the upper part of a moss capsule (sporangium), often specialized for gradual spore discharge.

peritubular capillary One of the tiny blood vessels that form a network surrounding the proximal and distal tubules in the kidney.

peroxisome (puh-rok′-suh-sōm′) An organelle containing enzymes that transfer hydrogen atoms from various substrates to oxygen (O_2), producing and then degrading hydrogen peroxide (H_2O_2).

personalized medicine A type of medical care in which each person's specific genetic profile can provide information about diseases or conditions for which the person is especially at risk and help make health-care decisions.

petal A modified leaf of a flowering plant. Petals are the often colorful parts of a flower that advertise it to insects and other pollinators.

petiole (pet′-ē-ōl) The stalk of a leaf, which joins the leaf to a node of the stem.

P generation The true-breeding (homozygous) parent individuals from which F_1 hybrid offspring are derived in studies of inheritance. (P stands for parental.)

pH A measure of hydrogen ion concentration equal to $-\log[H^+]$ and ranging in value from 0 to 14.

phage (fāj) A virus that infects bacteria; also called a bacteriophage.

phagocytosis (fag′-ō-sī-tō′-sis) A type of endocytosis in which large particulate substances or small organisms are taken up by a cell. It is carried out by some protists and by certain immune cells of animals (in mammals, mainly macrophages, neutrophils, and dendritic cells).

pharyngeal cleft (fuh-rin′-jē-ul) In chordate embryos, one of the grooves that separate a series of arches along the outer surface of the pharynx and may develop into a pharyngeal slit.

pharyngeal slit (fuh-rin′-jē-ul) In chordate embryos, one of the slits that form from the pharyngeal clefts and open into the pharynx, later developing into gill slits in many vertebrates.

pharynx (fār′-inks) (1) An area in the vertebrate throat where air and food passages cross. (2) In flatworms, the muscular tube that protrudes from the ventral side of the worm and ends in the mouth.

phase change (1) A shift from one developmental phase to another. (2) In plants, a morphological change that arises from a transition in shoot apical meristem activity.

phenotype (fē′-nō-tīp) The observable physical and physiological traits of an organism, which are determined by its genetic makeup.

pheromone (fār′-uh-mōn) In animals and fungi, a small molecule released into the environment that functions in communication between members of the same species. In animals, it acts much like a hormone in influencing physiology and behavior.

phloem (flō′-em) Vascular plant tissue consisting of living cells arranged into elongated tubes that transport sugar and other organic nutrients throughout the plant.

phloem sap (flō′-em) The sugar-rich solution carried through a plant's sieve tubes.

phosphate group A chemical group consisting of a phosphorus atom bonded to four oxygen atoms; important in energy transfer.

phospholipid (fos′-fō-lip′-id) A lipid made up of glycerol joined to two fatty acids and a phosphate group. The hydrocarbon chains of the fatty acids act as nonpolar, hydrophobic tails, while the rest of the molecule acts as a polar, hydrophilic head. Phospholipids form bilayers that function as biological membranes.

phosphorylated intermediate (fos′-fōr-uh-lā′-ted) A molecule (often a reactant) with a phosphate group covalently bound to it, making it more reactive (less stable) than the unphosphorylated molecule.

phosphorylation cascade (fos′-fōr-uh-lā′-shun) A series of chemical reactions during cell signaling mediated by enzymes (kinases), in which each kinase in turn phosphorylates and activates another, ultimately leading to phosphorylation of many proteins.

photic zone (fō′-tic) The narrow top layer of an ocean or lake, where light penetrates sufficiently for photosynthesis to occur.

photoautotroph (fō′-tō-ot′-ō-trōf) An organism that harnesses light energy to drive the synthesis of organic compounds from carbon dioxide.

photoheterotroph (fō′-tō-het′-er-ō-trōf) An organism that uses light to generate ATP but must obtain carbon in organic form.

photomorphogenesis Effects of light on plant morphology.

photon (fō′-ton) A quantum, or discrete quantity, of light energy that behaves as if it were a particle.

photoperiodism (fō′-tō-pēr′-ē-ō-dizm) A physiological response to photoperiod, the interval in a 24-hour period during which an organism is exposed to light. An example of photoperiodism is flowering.

photophosphorylation (fō′-tō-fos′-fōr-uh-lā′-shun) The process of generating ATP from ADP and phosphate by means of chemiosmosis, using a proton-motive force generated across the thylakoid membrane of the chloroplast or the membrane of certain prokaryotes during the light reactions of photosynthesis.

photoreceptor An electromagnetic receptor that detects the radiation known as visible light.

photorespiration A metabolic pathway that consumes oxygen and ATP, releases carbon dioxide, and decreases photosynthetic output. Photorespiration generally occurs on hot, dry, bright days, when the stomata close and the O_2:CO_2 ratio in the leaf increases, favoring the binding of O_2 rather than CO_2 by rubisco.

photosynthesis (fō′-tō-sin′-thi-sis) The conversion of light energy to chemical energy that is stored in sugars or other organic compounds; occurs in plants, algae, and certain prokaryotes.

photosystem A light-capturing unit located in the thylakoid membrane of the chloroplast or in the membrane of some prokaryotes, consisting of a reaction-center complex surrounded by numerous light-harvesting complexes. There are two types of photosystems, I and II; they absorb light best at different wavelengths.

photosystem I (PS I) A light-capturing unit in a chloroplast's thylakoid membrane or in the membrane of some prokaryotes; it has two molecules of P700 chlorophyll *a* at its reaction center.

photosystem II (PS II) One of two light-capturing units in a chloroplast's thylakoid membrane or in the membrane of some prokaryotes; it has two molecules of P680 chlorophyll *a* at its reaction center.

phototropism (fō′-tō-trō′-pizm) The bending of a plant or other organism in response to light, either toward the source of light (positive phototropism) or away from it (negative phototropism).

phylogenetic tree A branching diagram that represents a hypothesis about the evolutionary history of a group of organisms.

phylogeny (fī-loj′-uh-nē) The evolutionary history of a species or group of related species.

phylum (fī′-lum) (plural, **phyla**) In Linnaean classification, the taxonomic category above class.

physiology The processes and functions of an organism.

phytochromes (fī′-tuh-krōm) Plant pigments that absorb mostly red and far-red light and regulate many plant responses, such as seed germination and shade avoidance.

phytoremediation An emerging technology that seeks to reclaim contaminated areas by taking advantage of some plant species' ability to extract heavy metals and other pollutants from the soil and to concentrate them in easily harvested portions of the plant.

pilus (plural, **pili**) (pī′-lus, pī′-lī) In bacteria, a structure that links one cell to another at the start of conjugation; also called a sex pilus or conjugation pilus.

pineal gland (pī′-nē-ul) A small gland on the dorsal surface of the vertebrate forebrain that secretes the hormone melatonin.

pinocytosis (pī′-nō-sī-tō′-sis) A type of endocytosis in which the cell ingests extracellular fluid and its dissolved solutes.

pistil A single carpel (a simple pistil) or a group of fused carpels (a compound pistil).

pith Ground tissue that is internal to the vascular tissue in a stem; in many monocot roots, parenchyma cells that form the central core of the vascular cylinder.

pituitary gland (puh-tū′-uh-tār′-ē) An endocrine gland at the base of the hypothalamus; consists of a posterior lobe, which stores and releases two hormones produced by the hypothalamus, and an anterior lobe, which produces and secretes many hormones that regulate diverse body functions.

placenta (pluh-sen′-tuh) A structure in the uterus of a pregnant eutherian mammal that nourishes the fetus with the mother's blood supply; formed from the uterine lining and embryonic membranes.

placoderm A member of an extinct group of fishlike vertebrates that had jaws and were enclosed in a tough outer armor.

planarian A free-living flatworm found in ponds and streams.

plasma (plaz′-muh) The liquid matrix of blood in which the blood cells are suspended.

plasma membrane (plaz′-muh) The membrane at the boundary of every cell that acts as a selective barrier, regulating the cell's chemical composition.

plasmid (plaz′-mid) A small, circular, double-stranded DNA molecule that carries accessory genes separate from those of a bacterial chromosome; in DNA cloning, plasmids are used as vectors carrying up to about 10,000 base pairs (10 kb) of DNA. Plasmids are also found in some eukaryotes, such as yeasts.

plasmodesma (plaz′-mō-dez′-muh) (plural, **plasmodesmata**) An open channel through the cell wall that connects the cytoplasm of adjacent plant cells, allowing water, small solutes, and some larger molecules to pass between the cells.

plasmogamy (plaz-moh′-guh-mē) In fungi, the fusion of the cytoplasm of cells from two individuals; occurs as one stage of sexual reproduction, followed later by karyogamy.

plasmolysis (plaz-mol′-uh-sis) A phenomenon in walled cells in which the cytoplasm shrivels and the plasma membrane pulls away from the cell wall; occurs when the cell loses water to a hypertonic environment.

plastid One of a family of closely related organelles that includes chloroplasts, chromoplasts, and amyloplasts. Plastids are found in cells of photosynthetic eukaryotes.

plate tectonics The theory that the continents are part of great plates of Earth's crust that float on the hot, underlying portion of the mantle. Movements in the mantle cause the continents to move slowly over time.

platelet A pinched-off cytoplasmic fragment of a specialized bone marrow cell. Platelets circulate in the blood and are important in blood clotting.

pleiotropy (plī′-o-truh-pē) The ability of a single gene to have multiple effects.

pluripotent Describing a cell that can give rise to many, but not all, parts of an organism.

point mutation A change in a single nucleotide pair of a gene.

polar covalent bond A covalent bond between atoms that differ in electronegativity. The shared electrons are pulled closer to the more electronegative atom, making it slightly negative and the other atom slightly positive.

polar molecule A molecule (such as water) with an uneven distribution of charges in different regions of the molecule.

polarity A lack of symmetry; structural differences in opposite ends of an organism or structure, such as the root end and shoot end of a plant.

pollen grain In seed plants, a structure consisting of the male gametophyte enclosed within a pollen wall.

pollen tube A tube that forms after germination of the pollen grain and that functions in the delivery of sperm to the ovule.

pollination (pol′-uh-nā′-shun) The transfer of pollen to the part of a seed plant containing the ovules, a process required for fertilization.

poly-A tail A sequence of 50–250 adenine nucleotides added onto the 3′ end of a pre-mRNA molecule.

polygamous Referring to a type of relationship in which an individual of one sex mates with several of the other.

polygenic inheritance (pol′-ē-jen′-ik) An additive effect of two or more genes on a single phenotypic character.

polymer (pol′-uh-mer) A long molecule consisting of many similar or identical monomers linked together by covalent bonds.

polymerase chain reaction (PCR) (puh-lim′-uh-rās) A technique for amplifying DNA *in vitro* by incubating it with specific primers, a heat-resistant DNA polymerase, and nucleotides.

polynucleotide (pol′-ē-nū′-klē-ō-tīd) A polymer consisting of many nucleotide monomers in a chain. The nucleotides can be those of DNA or RNA.

polyp The sessile variant of the cnidarian body plan. The alternate form is the medusa.

polypeptide (pol′-ē-pep′-tīd) A polymer of many amino acids linked together by peptide bonds.

polyphyletic (pol′-ē-fī-let′-ik) Pertaining to a group of taxa that includes distantly related organisms but does not include their most recent common ancestor.

polyploidy (pol′-ē-ploy′-dē) A chromosomal alteration in which the organism possesses more than two complete chromosome sets. It is the result of an accident of cell division.

polyribosome (polysome) (pol′-ē-rī′-buh-sōm′) A group of several ribosomes attached to, and translating, the same messenger RNA molecule.

polysaccharide (pol′-ē-sak′-uh-rīd) A polymer of many monosaccharides, formed by dehydration reactions.

polyspermy The fertilization of an egg by more than one sperm.

polytomy (puh-lit′-uh-mē) In a phylogenetic tree, a branch point from which more than two descendant taxa emerge. A polytomy indicates that the evolutionary relationships between the descendant taxa are not yet clear.

pons A portion of the brain that participates in certain automatic, homeostatic functions, such as regulating the breathing centers in the medulla.

population A group of individuals of the same species that live in the same area and interbreed, producing fertile offspring.

population dynamics The study of how complex interactions between biotic and abiotic factors influence variations in population size.

population ecology The study of populations in relation to their environment, including environmental influences on population density and distribution, age structure, and variations in population size.

positional information Molecular cues that control pattern formation in an animal or plant embryonic structure by indicating a cell's location relative to the organism's body axes. These cues elicit a response by genes that regulate development.

positive feedback A form of regulation in which an end product of a process speeds up that process; in physiology, a control mechanism in which a change in a variable triggers a response that reinforces or amplifies the change.

positive interaction A +/+ or +/0 ecological interaction between individuals of two species in which at least one individual benefits and neither is harmed; positive interactions include mutualism and commensalism.

positive pressure breathing A breathing system in which air is forced into the lungs.

posterior Pertaining to the rear, or tail end, of a bilaterally symmetrical animal.

posterior pituitary An extension of the hypothalamus composed of nervous tissue that secretes oxytocin and antidiuretic hormone made in the hypothalamus; a temporary storage site for these hormones.

postzygotic barrier (pōst′-zī-got′-ik) A reproductive barrier that prevents hybrid zygotes produced by two different species from developing into viable, fertile adults.

potential energy The energy that matter possesses as a result of its location or spatial arrangement (structure).

predation An interaction in which an individual of one species, the predator, kills and eats an individual of the other species, the prey.

prediction In deductive reasoning, a forecast that follows logically from a hypothesis. By testing predictions, experiments may allow certain hypotheses to be rejected.

pregnancy The condition of carrying one or more embryos in the uterus; also called gestation.

pressure potential (Ψ_P) A component of water potential that consists of the physical pressure on a solution, which can be positive, zero, or negative.

prezygotic barrier (prē′-zī-got′-ik) A reproductive barrier that impedes mating between species or hinders fertilization if interspecific mating is attempted.

primary cell wall In plants, a relatively thin and flexible layer that surrounds the plasma membrane of a young cell.

primary consumer An herbivore; an organism that eats plants or other autotrophs.

primary electron acceptor In the thylakoid membrane of a chloroplast or in the membrane of some prokaryotes, a specialized molecule that shares the reaction-center complex with a pair of chlorophyll *a* molecules and that accepts an electron from them.

primary growth Growth produced by apical meristems, lengthening stems and roots.

primary immune response The initial adaptive immune response to an antigen, which appears after a lag of about 10–17 days.

primary meristems The three meristematic derivatives (protoderm, procambium, and ground meristem) of an apical meristem.

primary oocyte (ō′-uh-sīt) An oocyte prior to completion of meiosis I.

primary producer An autotroph, usually a photosynthetic organism. Collectively, autotrophs make up the trophic level of an ecosystem that ultimately supports all other levels.

primary production The amount of light energy converted to chemical energy (organic compounds) by the autotrophs in an ecosystem during a given time period.

primary structure The level of protein structure referring to the specific linear sequence of amino acids.

primary succession A type of ecological succession that occurs in an area where there were originally no organisms present and where soil has not yet formed.

primary transcript An initial RNA transcript from any gene; also called pre-mRNA when transcribed from a protein-coding gene.

primase An enzyme that joins RNA nucleotides to make a primer during DNA replication, using the parental DNA strand as a template.

primer A short polynucleotide with a free 3′ end, bound by complementary base pairing to the template strand and elongated with DNA nucleotides during DNA replication.

prion An infectious agent that is a misfolded version of a normal cellular protein. Prions appear to increase in number by converting correctly folded versions of the protein to more prions.

problem solving The cognitive activity of devising a method to proceed from one state to another in the face of real or apparent obstacles.

producer An organism that produces organic compounds from CO_2 by harnessing light energy (in photosynthesis) or by oxidizing inorganic chemicals (in chemosynthetic reactions carried out by some prokaryotes).

product A material resulting from a chemical reaction.

production efficiency The percentage of energy stored in assimilated food that is not used for respiration or eliminated as waste.

progesterone A steroid hormone that contributes to the menstrual cycle and prepares the uterus for pregnancy; the major progestin in mammals.

progestin Any steroid hormone with progesterone-like activity.

prokaryote A single-celled organism of the domain Bacteria or Archaea.

prokaryotic cell (prō′-kār′-ē-ot′-ik) A type of cell lacking a membrane-enclosed nucleus and membrane-enclosed organelles. Organisms with prokaryotic cells (bacteria and archaea) are called prokaryotes.

prolactin A hormone produced and secreted by the anterior pituitary with a great diversity of effects in different vertebrate species. In mammals, it stimulates growth of and milk production by the mammary glands.

prometaphase The second stage of mitosis, in which the nuclear envelope fragments and the spindle microtubules attach to the kinetochores of the chromosomes.

promoter A specific nucleotide sequence in the DNA of a gene that binds RNA polymerase, positioning it to start transcribing RNA at the appropriate place.

prophage (prō′-fāj) A phage genome that has been inserted into a specific site on a bacterial chromosome.

prophase The first stage of mitosis, in which the chromatin condenses into discrete chromosomes visible with a light microscope, the mitotic spindle begins to form, and the nucleolus disappears but the nucleus remains intact.

prostaglandin (pros′-tuh-glan′-din) One of a group of modified fatty acids that are secreted by virtually all tissues and that perform a wide variety of functions as local regulators.

prostate gland (pros′-tāt) A gland in human males that secretes an acid-neutralizing component of semen.

protease (prō′-tē-āz) An enzyme that digests proteins by hydrolysis.

protein (prō′-tēn) A biologically functional molecule consisting of one or more polypeptides folded and coiled into a specific three-dimensional structure.

protein kinase (prō′-tēn kī′-nās) An enzyme that transfers phosphate groups from ATP to a protein, thus phosphorylating the protein.

protein phosphatase (prō′-tēn fos′-fuh-tās) An enzyme that removes phosphate groups from (dephosphorylates) proteins, often functioning to reverse the effect of a protein kinase.

proteoglycan (prō′-tē-ō-glī′-kan) A large molecule consisting of a small core protein with many carbohydrate chains attached, found in the extracellular matrix of animal cells. A proteoglycan may consist of up to 95% carbohydrate.

proteome The entire set of proteins expressed by a given cell, tissue, or organism.

proteomics (prō′-tē-ō′-miks) The systematic study of sets of proteins and their properties, including their abundance, chemical modifications, and interactions.

protist An informal term applied to any eukaryote that is not a plant, animal, or fungus. Most protists are unicellular, though some are colonial or multicellular.

protocell An abiotic precursor of a living cell that had a membrane-like structure and that maintained an internal chemistry different from that of its surroundings.

proton (prō′-ton) A subatomic particle with a single positive electrical charge, with a mass of about 1.7×10^{-24} g, found in the nucleus of an atom.

protonema (prō′-tuh-nē′-muh) (plural, **protonemata**) A mass of green, branched, one-cell-thick filaments produced by germinating moss spores.

protonephridium (prō′-tō-nuh-frid′-ē-um) (plural, **protonephridia**) An excretory system, such as the flame bulb system of flatworms, consisting of a network of tubules lacking internal openings.

proton-motive force (prō′-ton) The potential energy stored in the form of a proton electrochemical gradient, generated by the pumping of hydrogen ions (H^+) across a biological membrane during chemiosmosis.

proton pump (prō′-ton) An active transport protein in a cell membrane that uses ATP to transport hydrogen ions out of a cell against their concentration gradient, generating a membrane potential in the process.

proto-oncogene (prō′-tō-on′-kō-jēn) A normal cellular gene that has the potential to become an oncogene.

protoplast The living part of a plant cell, which also includes the plasma membrane.

protostome development In animals, a developmental mode distinguished by the development of the mouth from the blastopore; often also characterized by spiral cleavage and by the body cavity forming when solid masses of mesoderm split.

provirus A viral genome that is permanently inserted into a host genome.

proximal tubule In the vertebrate kidney, the portion of a nephron immediately downstream from Bowman's capsule that conveys and helps refine filtrate.

pseudogene (sū′-dō-jēn) A DNA segment that is very similar to a real gene but does not yield a functional product; a DNA segment that formerly functioned as a gene but has become inactivated in a particular species because of mutation.

pseudopodium (sū′-dō-pō′-dē-um) (plural, **pseudopodia**) A cellular extension of amoeboid cells used in moving and feeding.

P site One of a ribosome's three binding sites for tRNA during translation. The P site holds the tRNA carrying the growing polypeptide chain. (P stands for peptidyl tRNA.)

pterosaur Winged reptile that lived during the Mesozoic era.

pulse The rhythmic bulging of the artery walls with each heartbeat.

punctuated equilibria In the fossil record, long periods of apparent stasis, in which a species undergoes little or no morphological change, interrupted by relatively brief periods of sudden change.

Punnett square A diagram used in the study of inheritance to show the predicted genotypic results of random fertilization in genetic crosses between individuals of known genotype.

pupil The opening in the iris, which admits light into the interior of the vertebrate eye. Muscles in the iris regulate its size.

purine (pyū′-rēn) One of two types of nitrogenous bases found in nucleotides, characterized by a six-membered ring fused to a

five-membered ring. Adenine (A) and guanine (G) are purines.

pyrimidine (puh-rim′-uh-dēn) One of two types of nitrogenous bases found in nucleotides, characterized by a six-membered ring. Cytosine (C), thymine (T), and uracil (U) are pyrimidines.

quantitative character A heritable feature that varies continuously over a range rather than in an either-or fashion.

quaternary structure (kwot′-er-nār′-ē) The particular shape of a complex, aggregate protein, defined by the characteristic three-dimensional arrangement of its constituent subunits, each a polypeptide.

radial cleavage A type of embryonic development in deuterostomes in which the planes of cell division that transform the zygote into a ball of cells are either parallel or perpendicular to the vertical axis of the embryo, thereby aligning tiers of cells one above the other.

radial symmetry Symmetry in which the body is shaped like a pie or barrel (lacking a left side and a right side) and can be divided into mirror-imaged halves by any plane through its central axis.

radicle An embryonic root of a plant.

radioactive isotope An isotope (an atomic form of a chemical element) that is unstable; the nucleus decays spontaneously, giving off detectable particles and energy.

radiolarian A protist, usually marine, with a shell generally made of silica and pseudopodia that radiate from the central body.

radiometric dating A method for determining the absolute age of rocks and fossils, based on the half-life of radioactive isotopes.

radula A straplike scraping organ used by many molluscs during feeding.

***ras* gene** A gene that codes for Ras, a G protein that relays a growth signal from a growth factor receptor on the plasma membrane to a cascade of protein kinases, ultimately resulting in stimulation of the cell cycle.

ratite (rat′-īt) A member of the group of flightless birds.

ray-finned fish A member of the clade Actinopterygii, aquatic osteichthyans with fins supported by long, flexible rays, including tuna, bass, and herring.

reabsorption In excretory systems, the recovery of solutes and water from filtrate.

reactant A starting material in a chemical reaction.

reaction-center complex A complex of proteins associated with a special pair of chlorophyll *a* molecules and a primary electron acceptor. Located centrally in a photosystem, this complex triggers the light reactions of photosynthesis. Excited by light energy, the pair of chlorophylls donates an electron to the primary electron acceptor, which passes an electron to an electron transport chain.

reading frame On an mRNA, the triplet grouping of ribonucleotides used by the translation machinery during polypeptide synthesis.

receptacle The base of a flower; the part of the stem that is the site of attachment of the floral organs.

reception In cellular communication, the first step of a signaling pathway in which a signaling molecule is detected by a receptor molecule on or in the cell.

receptor-mediated endocytosis (en′-dō-sī-tō′-sis) The movement of specific molecules into a cell by the infolding of vesicles containing proteins with receptor sites specific to the molecules being taken in; enables a cell to acquire bulk quantities of specific substances.

receptor potential A graded potential occurring in a receptor cell.

receptor tyrosine kinase (RTK) A receptor protein spanning the plasma membrane, the cytoplasmic (intracellular) part of which can catalyze the transfer of a phosphate group from ATP to a tyrosine on another protein. Receptor tyrosine kinases often respond to the binding of a signaling molecule by dimerizing and then phosphorylating a tyrosine on the cytoplasmic portion of the other receptor in the dimer.

recessive allele An allele whose phenotypic effect is not observed in a heterozygote.

reciprocal altruism Altruistic behavior between unrelated individuals, whereby the altruistic individual benefits in the future when the beneficiary reciprocates.

recombinant chromosome A chromosome created when crossing over combines DNA from two parents into a single chromosome.

recombinant DNA molecule A DNA molecule made *in vitro* with segments from different sources.

recombinant type (recombinant) An offspring whose phenotype differs from that of the true-breeding P generation parents; also refers to the phenotype itself.

rectum The terminal portion of the large intestine, where the feces are stored prior to elimination.

red alga A photosynthetic protist, named for its color, which results from a red pigment that masks the green of chlorophyll. Most red algae are multicellular and marine.

redox reaction (rē′-doks) A chemical reaction involving the complete or partial transfer of one or more electrons from one reactant to another; short for **red**uction-**ox**idation reaction.

reducing agent The electron donor in a redox reaction.

reduction The complete or partial addition of electrons to a substance involved in a redox reaction.

reference genome A complete sequence that researchers agree best represents the genome of a given species, arrived at by sequencing multiple individuals.

reflex An automatic reaction to a stimulus, mediated by the spinal cord or lower brain.

refractory period (rē-frakt′-ōr-ē) A period, immediately following a response to stimulation, during which a cell or organ is unresponsive to further stimulation.

regulator An animal for which mechanisms of homeostasis moderate internal changes in a particular variable in the face of external fluctuation of that variable.

regulatory gene A gene that codes for a protein, such as a repressor, that controls the transcription of another gene or group of genes.

reinforcement In evolutionary biology, a process in which natural selection strengthens prezygotic barriers to reproduction, thus reducing the chances of hybrid formation. Such a process is likely to occur only if hybrid offspring are less fit than members of the parent species.

relative abundance The proportional abundance of different species in a community.

relative fitness The contribution an individual makes to the gene pool of the next generation, relative to the contributions of other individuals in the population.

renal cortex The outer portion of the vertebrate kidney.

renal medulla The inner portion of the vertebrate kidney, beneath the renal cortex.

renal pelvis The funnel-shaped chamber that receives processed filtrate from the vertebrate kidney's collecting ducts and is drained by the ureter.

renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system (RAAS) A hormone cascade pathway that helps regulate blood pressure and blood volume.

repetitive DNA Nucleotide sequences, usually noncoding, that are present in many copies in a eukaryotic genome. The repeated units may be short and arranged tandemly (in series) or long and dispersed in the genome.

replication fork A Y-shaped region on a replicating DNA molecule where the parental strands are being unwound and new strands are being synthesized.

repressor A protein that inhibits gene transcription. In prokaryotes, repressors bind to the DNA in or near the promoter. In eukaryotes, repressors may bind to control elements within enhancers, to activators, or to other proteins in a way that blocks activators from binding to DNA.

reproductive isolation The existence of biological factors (barriers) that impede members of two species from producing viable, fertile offspring.

reptile A member of the clade of amniotes that includes tuataras, lizards and snakes, turtles, crocodilians, and birds.

reservoir In biogeochemical cycles, location of a chemical element, consisting of either organic or inorganic materials that are either available for direct use by organisms or unavailable as nutrients.

residual volume The amount of air that remains in the lungs after forceful exhalation.

resource partitioning The division of environmental resources by coexisting species such that the niche of each species differs by one or more significant factors from the niches of all coexisting species.

respiratory pigment A protein that transports oxygen in blood or hemolymph.

response (1) In cellular communication, the change in a specific cellular activity brought about by a transduced signal from outside the cell. (2) In feedback regulation, a physiological activity triggered by a change in a variable.

resting potential The membrane potential characteristic of a nonconducting excitable cell, with the inside of the cell more negative than the outside.

restriction enzyme An endonuclease (type of enzyme) that recognizes and cuts DNA molecules foreign to a bacterium (such as phage genomes). The enzyme cuts at specific nucleotide sequences (restriction sites).

restriction fragment A DNA segment that results from the cutting of DNA by a restriction enzyme.

restriction site A specific sequence on a DNA strand that is recognized and cut by a restriction enzyme.

retina (ret′-i-nuh) The innermost layer of the vertebrate eye, containing photoreceptor cells (rods and cones) and neurons; transmits images formed by the lens to the brain via the optic nerve.

retinal The light-absorbing pigment in rods and cones of the vertebrate eye.

retrotransposon (re′-trō-trans-pō′-zon) A transposable element that moves within a genome by means of an RNA intermediate, a transcript of the retrotransposon DNA.

retrovirus (re′-trō-vī′-rus) An RNA virus that replicates by transcribing its RNA into DNA and then inserting the DNA into a cellular chromosome; an important class of cancer-causing viruses.

reverse transcriptase (tran-skrip′-tās) An enzyme encoded by certain viruses (retroviruses) that uses RNA as a template for DNA synthesis.

reverse transcriptase–polymerase chain reaction (RT-PCR) A technique for determining expression of a particular gene. It uses reverse transcriptase and DNA polymerase to synthesize cDNA from all the mRNA in a sample and then subjects the cDNA to PCR amplification using primers specific for the gene of interest.

rhizarians (rī-za′-rē-uhns) One of the three major subgroups for which the SAR eukaryotic supergroup is named. Many species in this clade are amoebas characterized by threadlike pseudopodia.

rhizobacterium A soil bacterium whose population size is much enhanced in the rhizosphere, the soil region close to a plant's roots.

rhizoid (rī′-zoyd) A long, tubular single cell or filament of cells that anchors bryophytes to the ground. Unlike roots, rhizoids are not composed of tissues, lack specialized conducting cells, and do not play a primary role in water and mineral absorption.

rhizosphere The soil region close to plant roots and characterized by a high level of microbiological activity.

rhodopsin (rō-dop′-sin) A visual pigment consisting of retinal and opsin. Upon absorbing light, the retinal changes shape and dissociates from the opsin.

ribonucleic acid (RNA) (rī′-bō-nū-klā′-ik) A type of nucleic acid consisting of a polynucleotide made up of nucleotide monomers with a ribose sugar and the nitrogenous bases adenine (A), cytosine (C), guanine (G), and uracil (U); usually single-stranded; functions in protein synthesis, in gene regulation, and as the genome of some viruses.

ribose The sugar component of RNA nucleotides.

ribosomal RNA (rRNA) (rī′-buh-sō′-mul) RNA molecules that, together with proteins, make up ribosomes; the most abundant type of RNA.

ribosome (rī′-buh-sōm) A complex of rRNA and protein molecules that functions as a site of protein synthesis in the cytoplasm; consists of a large and a small subunit. In eukaryotic cells, each subunit is assembled in the nucleolus. *See also* nucleolus.

ribozyme (rī′-buh-zīm) An RNA molecule that functions as an enzyme, such as an intron that catalyzes its own removal during RNA splicing.

RNA interference (RNAi) A mechanism for silencing the expression of specific genes. In RNAi, double-stranded RNA molecules that match the sequence of a particular gene are processed into siRNAs that either block translation or trigger the degradation of the gene's messenger RNA. This happens naturally in some cells and can be carried out in laboratory experiments as well.

RNA polymerase An enzyme that links ribonucleotides into a growing RNA chain during transcription, based on complementary binding to nucleotides on a DNA template strand.

RNA processing Modification of RNA primary transcripts, including splicing out of introns, joining together of exons, and alteration of the 5′ and 3′ ends.

RNA sequencing (RNA-seq) (RNA-sēk) A method of analyzing large sets of RNAs that involves making cDNAs and sequencing them.

RNA splicing After synthesis of a eukaryotic primary RNA transcript, the removal of portions of the transcript (introns) that will not be included in the mRNA and the joining together of the remaining portions (exons).

rod A rodlike cell in the retina of the vertebrate eye, sensitive to low light intensity.

root An organ in vascular plants that anchors the plant and enables it to absorb water and minerals from the soil.

root cap A cone of cells at the tip of a plant root that protects the apical meristem.

root hair A tiny extension of a root epidermal cell, growing just behind the root tip and increasing surface area for absorption of water and minerals.

root pressure Pressure exerted in the roots of plants as the result of osmosis, causing exudation from cut stems and guttation of water from leaves.

root system All of a plant's roots, which anchor it in the soil, absorb and transport minerals and water, and store food.

rooted Describing a phylogenetic tree that contains a branch point (often, the one farthest to the left) representing the most recent common ancestor of all taxa in the tree.

rough ER That portion of the endoplasmic reticulum with ribosomes attached.

round window In the mammalian ear, the point of contact where vibrations of the stapes create a traveling series of pressure waves in the fluid of the cochlea.

R plasmid A bacterial plasmid carrying genes that confer resistance to certain antibiotics.

***r*-selection** Selection for life history traits that maximize reproductive success in uncrowded environments.

rubisco (rū-bis′-kō) Ribulose bisphosphate (RuBP) carboxylase-oxygenase, the enzyme that normally catalyzes the first step of the Calvin cycle (the addition of CO_2 to RuBP). When excess O_2 is present or CO_2 levels are low, rubisco can bind oxygen, resulting in photorespiration.

ruminant (rūh′-muh-nent) A cud-chewing animal, such as a cow or sheep, with multiple stomach compartments specialized for an herbivorous diet.

salicylic acid (sal′-i-sil′-ik) A signaling molecule in plants that may be partially responsible for activating systemic acquired resistance to pathogens.

salivary gland A gland associated with the oral cavity that secretes substances that lubricate food and begin the process of chemical digestion.

salt A compound resulting from the formation of an ionic bond; also called an ionic compound.

saltatory conduction (sol′-tuh-tōr′-ē) Rapid transmission of a nerve impulse along an axon, resulting from the action potential jumping from one node of Ranvier to another, skipping the myelin-sheathed regions of membrane.

SAR One of four supergroups of eukaryotes proposed in a current hypothesis of the evolutionary history of eukaryotes. This supergroup contains a large, extremely diverse collection of protists from three major subgroups: stramenopiles, alveolates, and rhizarians. *See also* Excavata, Archaeplastida, and Unikonta.

sarcomere (sar′-kō-mēr) The fundamental, repeating unit of striated muscle, delimited by the Z lines.

sarcoplasmic reticulum (SR) (sar′-kō-plaz′-mik ruh-tik′-yū-lum) A specialized endoplasmic reticulum that regulates the calcium concentration in the cytosol of muscle cells.

saturated fatty acid A fatty acid in which all carbons in the hydrocarbon tail are connected by single bonds, thus maximizing the number of hydrogen atoms that are attached to the carbon skeleton.

savanna A tropical grassland biome with scattered individual trees and large herbivores and maintained by occasional fires and drought.

scaffolding protein A type of large relay protein to which several other relay proteins are simultaneously attached, increasing the efficiency of signal transduction.

scanning electron microscope (SEM) A microscope that uses an electron beam to scan the surface of a sample, coated with metal atoms, to study details of its topography.

scatter plot A graph in which each piece of data is represented by a point. A scatter plot is used when the data for all variables are numerical and continuous.

schizophrenia (skit′-suh-frē′-nē-uh) A severe mental disturbance characterized by psychotic episodes in which patients have a distorted perception of reality.

Schwann cell A type of glial cell that forms insulating myelin sheaths around the axons of neurons in the peripheral nervous system.

science An approach to understanding the natural world.

scion (sī′-un) The twig grafted onto the stock when making a graft.

sclerenchyma cell (skluh-ren′-kim-uh) A rigid, supportive plant cell type usually lacking a protoplast and possessing thick secondary walls strengthened by lignin at maturity.

scrotum A pouch of skin outside the abdomen that houses the testes; functions in maintaining the testes at the lower temperature required for spermatogenesis.

second law of thermodynamics The principle stating that every energy transfer or transformation increases the entropy of the universe. Usable forms of energy are at least partly converted to heat.

second messenger A molecule that relays messages in a cell from a receptor to a target where an action within the cell takes place.

secondary cell wall In plant cells, a strong and durable matrix that is often deposited in several laminated layers around the plasma membrane and provides protection and support.

secondary consumer A carnivore that eats herbivores.

secondary endosymbiosis A process in eukaryotic evolution in which a heterotrophic eukaryotic cell engulfed a photosynthetic eukaryotic cell, which survived in a symbiotic relationship inside the heterotrophic cell.

secondary growth Growth produced by lateral meristems, thickening the roots and shoots of woody plants.

secondary immune response The adaptive immune response elicited on second or subsequent exposures to a particular antigen. The secondary immune response is more rapid, of greater magnitude, and of longer duration than the primary immune response.

secondary oocyte (ō′-uh-sīt) An oocyte that has completed meiosis I.

secondary production The amount of chemical energy in consumers' food that is converted to their own new biomass during a given time period.

secondary structure Regions of repetitive coiling or folding of the polypeptide backbone of a protein due to hydrogen bonding between constituents of the backbone (not the side chains).

secondary succession A type of succession that occurs where an existing community has been cleared by some disturbance that leaves the soil or substrate intact.

secretion (1) The discharge of molecules synthesized by a cell. (2) The active transport of wastes and certain other solutes from the body fluid into the filtrate in an excretory system.

seed An adaptation of some terrestrial plants consisting of an embryo packaged along with a store of food within a protective coat.

seed coat A tough outer covering of a seed, formed from the outer coat of an ovule. In a flowering plant, the seed coat encloses and protects the embryo and endosperm.

seedless vascular plant An informal name for a plant that has vascular tissue but lacks seeds. Seedless vascular plants form a paraphyletic group that includes the phyla Lycophyta (club mosses and their relatives) and Monilophyta (ferns and their relatives).

selective permeability A property of biological membranes that allows them to regulate the passage of substances across them.

self-incompatibility The ability of a seed plant to reject its own pollen and sometimes the pollen of closely related individuals.

semelparity (seh′-mel-pār′-i-tē) Reproduction in which an organism produces all of its offspring in a single event; also called big-bang reproduction.

semen (sē′-mun) The fluid that is ejaculated by the male during orgasm; contains sperm and secretions from several glands of the male reproductive tract.

semicircular canals A three-part chamber of the inner ear that functions in maintaining equilibrium.

semiconservative model Type of DNA replication in which the replicated double helix consists of one old strand, derived from the parental molecule, and one newly made strand.

semilunar valve A valve located at each exit of the heart, where the aorta leaves the left ventricle and the pulmonary artery leaves the right ventricle.

seminal vesicle (sem′-i-nul ves′-i-kul) A gland in males that secretes a fluid component of semen that lubricates and nourishes sperm.

seminiferous tubule (sem′-i-nif′-er-us) A highly coiled tube in the testis in which sperm are produced.

senescence (se-nes′-ens) The programmed death of certain cells or organs or the entire organism.

sensitive period A limited phase in an animal's development when learning of particular behaviors can take place; also called a critical period.

sensor In homeostasis, a receptor that detects a stimulus.

sensory adaptation The tendency of sensory neurons to become less sensitive when they are stimulated repeatedly.

sensory neuron A nerve cell that receives information from the internal or external environment and transmits signals to the central nervous system.

sensory reception The detection of a stimulus by sensory cells.

sensory receptor A specialized structure or cell that responds to a stimulus from an animal's internal or external environment.

sensory transduction The conversion of stimulus energy to a change in the membrane potential of a sensory receptor cell.

sepal (sē′-pul) A modified leaf in angiosperms that helps enclose and protect a flower bud before it opens.

septum (plural, **septa**) One of the cross-walls that divide a fungal hypha into cells. Septa generally have pores large enough to allow ribosomes, mitochondria, and even nuclei to flow from cell to cell.

serial endosymbiosis A hypothesis for the origin of eukaryotes consisting of a sequence of endosymbiotic events in which mitochondria, chloroplasts, and perhaps other cellular structures were derived from small prokaryotes that had been engulfed by larger cells.

set point In homeostasis in animals, a value maintained for a particular variable, such as body temperature or solute concentration.

seta (sē′-tuh) (plural, **setae**) The elongated stalk of a bryophyte sporophyte.

sex chromosome A chromosome responsible for determining the sex of an individual.

sex-linked gene A gene located on either sex chromosome. Most sex-linked genes are on the X chromosome and show distinctive patterns of inheritance; there are very few genes on the Y chromosome.

sexual dimorphism (dī-mōr′-fizm) Differences between the secondary sex characteristics of males and females of the same species.

sexual reproduction Reproduction arising from fusion of two gametes.

sexual selection A process in which individuals with certain inherited characteristics are more likely than other individuals of the same sex to obtain mates.

Shannon diversity index An index of community diversity symbolized by H and represented by the equation $H = -(p_A \ln p_A + p_B \ln p_B + p_C \ln p_C + \cdots)$, where A, B, C ... are species, p is the relative abundance of each species, and ln is the natural logarithm.

shared ancestral character A character, shared by members of a particular clade, that originated in an ancestor that is not a member of that clade.

shared derived character An evolutionary novelty that is unique to a particular clade.

shoot system The aerial portion of a plant body, consisting of stems, leaves, and (in angiosperms) flowers.

short tandem repeat (STR) Simple sequence DNA containing multiple tandemly repeated units of two to five nucleotides. Variations in STRs act as genetic markers in STR analysis, used to prepare genetic profiles.

short-day plant A plant that flowers (usually in late summer, fall, or winter) only when the light period is shorter than a critical length.

short-term memory The ability to hold information, anticipations, or goals for a time and then release them if they become irrelevant.

sickle-cell disease A recessively inherited human blood disorder in which a single nucleotide change in the α-globin gene causes hemoglobin to aggregate, changing red blood cell shape and causing multiple symptoms in afflicted individuals.

sieve plate An end wall in a sieve-tube element, which facilitates the flow of phloem sap in angiosperm sieve tubes.

sieve-tube element A living cell that conducts sugars and other organic nutrients in the phloem of angiosperms; also called a sieve-tube member. Connected end to end, they form sieve tubes.

sign stimulus An external sensory cue that triggers a fixed action pattern by an animal.

signal Any kind of information sent from one organism to another, or from one place in an organism to another place.

signal peptide A sequence of about 20 amino acids at or near the leading (amino) end of a polypeptide that targets it to the endoplasmic reticulum or other organelles in a eukaryotic cell.

signal-recognition particle (SRP) A protein-RNA complex that recognizes a signal peptide as it emerges from a ribosome and helps direct the ribosome to the

endoplasmic reticulum (ER) by binding to a receptor protein on the ER.

signal transduction The linkage of a mechanical, chemical, or electromagnetic stimulus to a specific cellular response.

signal transduction pathway A series of steps linking a mechanical, chemical, or electrical stimulus to a specific cellular response.

silent mutation A nucleotide-pair substitution that has no observable effect on the phenotype; for example, within a gene, a mutation that results in a codon that codes for the same amino acid.

simple fruit A fruit derived from a single carpel or several fused carpels.

simple sequence DNA A DNA sequence that contains many copies of tandemly repeated short sequences.

single bond A single covalent bond; the sharing of a pair of valence electrons by two atoms.

single circulation A circulatory system consisting of a single pump and circuit, in which blood passes from the sites of gas exchange to the rest of the body before returning to the heart.

single-lens eye The camera-like eye found in some jellies, polychaete worms, spiders, and many molluscs.

single nucleotide polymorphism (SNP) (snip) A single base-pair site in a genome where nucleotide variation is found in at least 1% of the population.

single-strand binding protein A protein that binds to the unpaired DNA strands during DNA replication, stabilizing them and holding them apart while they serve as templates for the synthesis of complementary strands of DNA.

sinoatrial (SA) node (sī′-nō-ā′-trē-uhl) A region in the right atrium of the heart that sets the rate and timing at which all cardiac muscle cells contract; the pacemaker.

sister chromatids Two copies of a duplicated chromosome attached to each other by proteins at the centromere and, sometimes, along the arms. While joined, two sister chromatids make up one chromosome. Chromatids are eventually separated during mitosis or meiosis II.

sister taxa Groups of organisms that share an immediate common ancestor and hence are each other's closest relatives.

skeletal muscle A type of striated muscle that is generally responsible for the voluntary movements of the body.

sliding-filament model The idea that muscle contraction is based on the movement of thin (actin) filaments along thick (myosin) filaments, shortening the sarcomere, the basic unit of muscle organization.

slow-twitch fiber A muscle fiber that can sustain long contractions.

small interfering RNA (siRNA) One of multiple small, single-stranded RNA molecules generated by cellular machinery from a long, linear, double-stranded RNA molecule. The siRNA associates with one or more proteins in a complex that can degrade or prevent translation of an mRNA with a complementary sequence.

small intestine The longest section of the alimentary canal, so named because of its small diameter compared with that of the large intestine; the principal site of the enzymatic hydrolysis of food macromolecules and the absorption of nutrients.

smooth ER That portion of the endoplasmic reticulum that is free of ribosomes.

smooth muscle A type of muscle lacking the striations of skeletal and cardiac muscle because of the uniform distribution of myosin filaments in the cells; responsible for involuntary body activities.

social learning Modification of behavior through the observation of other individuals.

sociobiology The study of social behavior based on evolutionary theory.

sodium-potassium pump A transport protein in the plasma membrane of animal cells that actively transports sodium out of the cell and potassium into the cell.

soil horizon A soil layer with physical characteristics that differ from those of the layers above or beneath.

solute (sol′-yūt) A substance that is dissolved in a solution.

solute potential (Ψ_S) A component of water potential that is proportional to the molarity of a solution and that measures the effect of solutes on the direction of water movement; also called osmotic potential, it can be either zero or negative.

solution A liquid that is a homogeneous mixture of two or more substances.

solvent The dissolving agent of a solution. Water is the most versatile solvent known.

somatic cell (sō-mat′-ik) Any cell in a multicellular organism except a sperm or egg or their precursors.

somite One of a series of blocks of mesoderm that exist in pairs just lateral to the notochord in a vertebrate embryo.

soredium (suh-rē′-dē-um) (plural, **soredia**) In lichens, a small cluster of fungal hyphae with embedded algae.

sorus (plural, **sori**) A cluster of sporangia on a fern sporophyll. Sori may be arranged in various patterns, such as parallel lines or dots, which are useful in fern identification.

spatial learning The establishment of a memory that reflects the environment's spatial structure.

speciation (spē′-sē-ā′-shun) An evolutionary process in which one species splits into two or more species.

species (spē′-sēz) A population or group of populations whose members have the potential to interbreed in nature and produce viable, fertile offspring but do not produce viable, fertile offspring with members of other such groups.

species-area curve (spē′-sēz) The biodiversity pattern that shows that the larger the geographic area of a community is, the more species it has.

species diversity (spē′-sēz) The number and relative abundance of species in a biological community.

species richness (spē′-sēz) The number of species in a biological community.

specific heat The amount of heat that must be absorbed or lost for 1 g of a substance to change its temperature by 1°C.

spectrophotometer An instrument that measures the proportions of light of different wavelengths absorbed and transmitted by a pigment solution.

sperm The male gamete.

spermatheca (sper′-muh-thē′-kuh) (plural, **spermathecae**) In many insects, a sac in the female reproductive system where sperm are stored.

spermatogenesis (sper-ma′-tō-gen′-uh-sis) The continuous and prolific production of mature sperm in the testis.

spermatogonium (sper-ma′-tō-gō′-nē-um) (plural, **spermatogonia**) A cell that divides mitotically to form spermatocytes.

S phase The synthesis phase of the cell cycle; the portion of interphase during which DNA is replicated.

sphincter (sfink′-ter) A ringlike band of muscle fibers that controls the size of an opening in the body, such as the passage between the esophagus and the stomach.

spiral cleavage A type of embryonic development in protostomes in which the planes of cell division that transform the zygote into a ball of cells are diagonal to the vertical axis of the embryo. As a result, the cells of each tier sit in the grooves between cells of adjacent tiers.

spliceosome (splī′-sō-sōm) A large complex made up of proteins and RNA molecules that splices RNA by interacting with the ends of an RNA intron, releasing the intron and joining the two adjacent exons.

spongocoel (spon′-jō-sēl) The central cavity of a sponge.

spontaneous process A process that occurs without an overall input of energy; a process that is energetically favorable.

sporangium (spōr-an′-jē-um) (plural, **sporangia**) A multicellular organ in fungi and plants in which meiosis occurs and haploid cells develop.

spore (1) In the life cycle of a plant or alga undergoing alternation of generations, a haploid cell produced in the sporophyte by meiosis. A spore can divide by mitosis to develop into a multicellular haploid individual, the gametophyte, without fusing with another cell. (2) In fungi, a haploid cell, produced either sexually or asexually, that produces a mycelium after germination.

sporocyte (spō′-ruh-sīt) A diploid cell within a sporangium that undergoes meiosis and generates haploid spores; also called a spore mother cell.

sporophyll (spō′-ruh-fil) A modified leaf that bears sporangia and hence is specialized for reproduction.

sporophyte (spō′-ruh-fīt) In organisms (plants and some algae) that have alternation of generations, the multicellular diploid form that results from the union of gametes. Meiosis in the sporophyte produces haploid spores that develop into gametophytes.

sporopollenin (spōr-uh-pol′-eh-nin) A durable polymer that covers exposed zygotes of charophyte algae and forms the walls of plant spores, preventing them from drying out.

stability In evolutionary biology, a term referring to a hybrid zone in which hybrids continue to be produced; this causes the hybrid zone to be "stable" in the sense of persisting over time.

stabilizing selection Natural selection in which intermediate phenotypes survive or reproduce more successfully than do extreme phenotypes.

stamen (stā′-men) The pollen-producing reproductive organ of a flower, consisting of an anther and a filament.

standard deviation A measure of the variation found in a set of data points.

standard metabolic rate (SMR) Metabolic rate of a resting, fasting, and nonstressed ectotherm at a particular temperature.

starch A storage polysaccharide in plants, consisting entirely of glucose monomers joined by glycosidic linkages.

start point In transcription, the nucleotide position on the promoter where RNA polymerase begins synthesis of RNA.

statocyst (stat′-uh-sist′) A type of mechanoreceptor that functions in equilibrium in invertebrates by use of statoliths, which stimulate hair cells in relation to gravity.

statolith (stat′-uh-lith′) (1) In plants, a specialized plastid that contains dense starch grains and may play a role in detecting gravity. (2) In invertebrates, a dense particle that settles in response to gravity and is found in sensory organs that function in equilibrium.

stele (stēl) The vascular tissue of a stem or root.

stem A vascular plant organ consisting of an alternating system of nodes and internodes that support the leaves and reproductive structures.

stem cell Any relatively unspecialized cell that can produce, during a single division, two identical daughter cells or two more specialized daughter cells that can undergo further differentiation, or one cell of each type.

steroid A type of lipid characterized by a carbon skeleton consisting of four fused rings with various chemical groups attached.

sticky end A single-stranded end of a double-stranded restriction fragment.

stigma (plural, **stigmata**) The sticky part of a flower's carpel, which receives pollen grains.

stimulus In feedback regulation, a fluctuation in a variable that triggers a response.

stipe A stemlike structure of a seaweed.

stock The plant that provides the root system when making a graft.

stoma (stō′-muh) (plural, **stomata**) A microscopic pore surrounded by guard cells in the epidermis of leaves and stems that allows gas exchange between the environment and the interior of the plant.

stomach An organ of the digestive system that stores food and performs preliminary steps of digestion.

stramenopiles (strah′-men-ō′-pē-lēs) One of the three major subgroups for which the SAR eukaryotic supergroup is named. This clade arose by secondary endosymbiosis and includes diatoms and brown algae.

stratum (strah′-tum) (plural, **strata**) A rock layer formed when new layers of sediment cover older ones and compress them.

strigolactone Any of a class of plant hormones that inhibit shoot branching, trigger the germination of parasitic plant seeds, and stimulate the association of plant roots with mycorrhizal fungi.

strobilus (strō-bī′-lus) (plural, **strobili**) The technical term for a cluster of sporophylls known commonly as a cone, found in most gymnosperms and some seedless vascular plants.

stroke The death of nervous tissue in the brain, usually resulting from rupture or blockage of arteries in the neck or head.

stroke volume The volume of blood pumped by a heart ventricle in a single contraction.

stroma (strō′-muh) The dense fluid within the chloroplast surrounding the thylakoid membrane and containing ribosomes and DNA; involved in the synthesis of organic molecules from carbon dioxide and water.

stromatolite Layered rock that results from the activities of prokaryotes that bind thin films of sediment together.

structural isomer One of two or more compounds that have the same molecular formula but differ in the covalent arrangements of their atoms.

style The stalk of a flower's carpel, with the ovary at the base and the stigma at the top.

substrate The reactant on which an enzyme works.

substrate feeder An animal that lives in or on its food source, eating its way through the food.

substrate-level phosphorylation (fos′-fōr-uh-lā′-shun) The enzyme-catalyzed formation of ATP by direct transfer of a phosphate group to ADP from an intermediate substrate in catabolism.

sugar sink A plant organ that is a net consumer or storer of sugar. Growing roots, buds, stems, and fruits are examples of sugar sinks supplied by phloem.

sugar source A plant organ in which sugar is being produced by either photosynthesis or the breakdown of starch. Mature leaves are the primary sugar sources of plants.

sulfhydryl group A chemical group consisting of a sulfur atom bonded to a hydrogen atom.

summation A phenomenon of neural integration in which the membrane potential of the postsynaptic cell is determined by the combined effect of EPSPs or IPSPs produced in rapid succession at one synapse or simultaneously at different synapses.

suprachiasmatic nucleus (SCN) (sūp′-ruh-kī′-as-ma-tik) A group of neurons in the hypothalamus of mammals that functions as a biological clock.

surface tension A measure of how difficult it is to stretch or break the surface of a liquid. Water has a high surface tension because of the hydrogen bonding of surface molecules.

surfactant A substance secreted by alveoli that decreases surface tension in the fluid that coats the alveoli.

survivorship curve A plot of the number of members of a cohort that are still alive at each age; one way to represent age-specific mortality.

suspension feeder An animal that feeds by removing suspended food particles from the surrounding medium by a capture, trapping, or filtration mechanism.

sustainable agriculture Long-term productive farming methods that are environmentally safe.

sustainable development Development that meets the needs of people today without limiting the ability of future generations to meet their needs.

swim bladder In aquatic osteichthyans, an air sac that enables the animal to control its buoyancy in the water.

symbiont (sim′-bē-ont) The smaller participant in a symbiotic relationship, living in or on the host.

symbiosis An ecological relationship between organisms of two different species that live together in direct and intimate contact.

sympathetic division A division of the autonomic nervous system; generally increases energy expenditure and prepares the body for action.

sympatric speciation (sim-pat′-rik) The formation of new species in populations that live in the same geographic area.

symplast In plants, the continuum of cytosol connected by plasmodesmata between cells.

synapse (sin′-aps) The junction where a neuron communicates with another cell across a narrow gap via a neurotransmitter or an electrical coupling.

synapsid (si-nap′-sid) A member of an amniote clade distinguished by a single hole on each side of the skull. Synapsids include the mammals.

synapsis (si-nap′-sis) The pairing and physical connection of one duplicated chromosome to its homolog during prophase I of meiosis.

synaptonemal complex (si-nap′-tuh-nē′-muhl) A zipper-like structure composed of proteins, which connects a chromosome to its homolog tightly along their lengths during part of prophase I of meiosis.

systematics A scientific discipline focused on classifying organisms and determining their evolutionary relationships.

systemic acquired resistance A defensive response in infected plants that helps protect healthy tissue from pathogenic invasion.

systemic circuit The branch of the circulatory system that supplies oxygenated blood to and carries deoxygenated blood away from organs and tissues throughout the body.

systems biology An approach to studying biology that aims to model the dynamic behavior of whole biological systems based on a study of the interactions among the system's parts.

systole (sis′-tō-lē) The stage of the cardiac cycle in which a heart chamber contracts and pumps blood.

systolic pressure Blood pressure in the arteries during contraction of the ventricles.

taproot A main vertical root that develops from an embryonic root and gives rise to lateral (branch) roots.

tastant Any chemical that stimulates the sensory receptors in a taste bud.

taste bud A collection of modified epithelial cells on the tongue or in the mouth that are receptors for taste in mammals.

TATA box A DNA sequence in eukaryotic promoters crucial in forming the transcription initiation complex.

taxis (tak′-sis) An oriented movement toward or away from a stimulus.

taxon (plural, **taxa**) A named taxonomic unit at any given level of classification.

taxonomy (tak-son′-uh-mē) A scientific discipline concerned with naming and classifying the diverse forms of life.

Tay-Sachs disease A human genetic disease caused by a recessive allele for a dysfunctional enzyme, leading to accumulation of certain lipids in the brain. Seizures, blindness, and degeneration of motor and mental performance usually become manifest a few months after birth, followed by death within a few years.

T cells The class of lymphocytes that mature in the thymus; they include both effector cells for the cell-mediated immune response and helper cells required for both branches of adaptive immunity.

technology The application of scientific knowledge for a specific purpose, often involving industry or commerce but also including uses in basic research.

telomere (tel′-uh-mēr) The tandemly repetitive DNA at the end of a eukaryotic chromosome's DNA molecule. Telomeres protect the organism's genes from being eroded during successive rounds of replication. *See also* repetitive DNA.

telophase The fifth and final stage of mitosis, in which daughter nuclei are forming and cytokinesis has typically begun.

temperate broadleaf forest A biome located throughout midlatitude regions where there is sufficient moisture to support the growth of large, broadleaf deciduous trees.

temperate grassland A terrestrial biome that exists at midlatitude regions and is dominated by grasses and forbs.

temperate phage A phage that is capable of replicating by either a lytic or lysogenic cycle.

temperature A measure in degrees of the average kinetic energy (thermal energy) of the atoms and molecules in a body of matter.

template strand The DNA strand that provides the pattern, or template, for ordering, by complementary base pairing, the sequence of nucleotides in an RNA transcript.

tendon A fibrous connective tissue that attaches muscle to bone.

terminator In bacteria, a sequence of nucleotides in DNA that marks the end of a gene and signals RNA polymerase to release the newly made RNA molecule and detach from the DNA.

territoriality A behavior in which an animal defends a bounded physical space against encroachment by other individuals, usually of its own species.

tertiary consumer (ter′-shē-ār′-ē) A carnivore that eats other carnivores.

tertiary structure (ter′-shē-ār′-ē) The overall shape of a protein molecule due to interactions of amino acid side chains, including hydrophobic interactions, ionic bonds, hydrogen bonds, and disulfide bridges.

test In foram protists, a porous shell that consists of a single piece of organic material hardened with calcium carbonate.

testcross Breeding an organism of unknown genotype with a homozygous recessive individual to determine the unknown genotype. The ratio of phenotypes in the offspring reveals the unknown genotype.

testis (plural, **testes**) The male reproductive organ, or gonad, in which sperm and reproductive hormones are produced.

testosterone A steroid hormone required for development of the male reproductive system, spermatogenesis, and male secondary sex characteristics; the major androgen in mammals.

tetanus (tet′-uh-nus) The maximal, sustained contraction of a skeletal muscle, caused by a very high frequency of action potentials elicited by continual stimulation.

tetrapod A vertebrate clade whose members have limbs with digits. Tetrapods include mammals, amphibians, and birds and other reptiles.

thalamus (thal′-uh-mus) An integrating center of the vertebrate forebrain. Neurons with cell bodies in the thalamus relay neural input to specific areas in the cerebral cortex and regulate what information goes to the cerebral cortex.

theory An explanation that is broader in scope than a hypothesis, generates new hypotheses, and is supported by a large body of evidence.

thermal energy Kinetic energy due to the random motion of atoms and molecules; energy in its most random form. *See also* heat.

thermocline A narrow stratum of abrupt temperature change in the ocean and in many temperate-zone lakes.

thermodynamics (ther′-mō-dī-nam′-iks) The study of energy transformations that occur in a collection of matter. *See also* first law of thermodynamics and second law of thermodynamics.

thermophile *See* extreme thermophile.

thermoreceptor A receptor stimulated by either heat or cold.

thermoregulation The maintenance of internal body temperature within a tolerable range.

theropod A member of a group of dinosaurs that were bipedal carnivores.

thick filament A filament composed of staggered arrays of myosin molecules; a component of myofibrils in muscle fibers.

thigmomorphogenesis (thig′-mō-mor′-phō-gen′-uh-sis) A response in plants to chronic mechanical stimulation, resulting from increased ethylene production. An example is thickening stems in response to strong winds.

thigmotropism (thig-mō′-truh-pizm) A directional growth of a plant in response to touch.

thin filament A filament consisting of two strands of actin and two strands of regulatory protein coiled around one another; a component of myofibrils in muscle fibers.

threatened species A species that is considered likely to become endangered in the foreseeable future.

threshold The potential that an excitable cell membrane must reach for an action potential to be initiated.

thrombus (plural, **thrombi**) A fibrin-containing clot that forms in a blood vessel and blocks the flow of blood.

thylakoid (thī′-luh-koyd) A flattened, membranous sac inside a chloroplast. Thylakoids often exist in stacks called grana that are interconnected; their membranes contain molecular "machinery" used to convert light energy to chemical energy.

thymus (thī′-mus) A small organ in the thoracic cavity of vertebrates where maturation of T cells is completed.

thyroid gland An endocrine gland, located on the ventral surface of the trachea, that secretes two iodine-containing hormones, triiodothyronine (T_3) and thyroxine (T_4), as well as calcitonin.

thyroid hormone Either of two iodine-containing hormones (triiodothyronine and thyroxine) that are secreted by the thyroid gland and that help regulate metabolism, development, and maturation in vertebrates.

thyroxine (T_4) One of two iodine-containing hormones that are secreted by the thyroid gland and that help regulate metabolism, development, and maturation in vertebrates.

tidal volume The volume of air a mammal inhales and exhales with each breath.

tight junction A type of intercellular junction between animal cells that prevents the leakage of material through the space between cells.

tissue An integrated group of cells with a common structure, function, or both.

tissue system One or more tissues organized into a functional unit connecting the organs of a plant.

Toll-like receptor (TLR) A membrane receptor on a phagocytic white blood cell that recognizes fragments of molecules common to a set of pathogens.

tonicity The ability of a solution surrounding a cell to cause that cell to gain or lose water.

top-down control A situation in which the abundance of organisms at each trophic level is controlled by the abundance of consumers at higher trophic levels; thus, predators limit herbivores, and herbivores limit plants.

topoisomerase A protein that breaks, swivels, and rejoins DNA strands. During DNA replication, topoisomerase helps to relieve strain in the double helix ahead of the replication fork.

topsoil A mixture of particles derived from rock, living organisms, and decaying organic material (humus).

torpor A physiological state in which activity is low and metabolism decreases.

totipotent (tō′-tuh-pōt′-ent) Describing a cell that can give rise to all parts of the embryo and adult, as well as extraembryonic membranes in species that have them.

trace element An element indispensable for life but required in extremely minute amounts.

trachea (trā′-kē-uh) The portion of the respiratory tract that passes from the larynx to the bronchi; also called the windpipe.

tracheal system In insects, a system of branched, air-filled tubes that extends throughout the body and carries oxygen directly to cells.

tracheid (trā′-kē-id) A long, tapered water-conducting cell found in the xylem of nearly all vascular plants. Functioning tracheids are no longer living.

trait One of two or more detectable variants in a genetic character.

***trans* fat** An unsaturated fat, formed artificially during hydrogenation of oils, containing one or more *trans* double bonds.

transcription The synthesis of RNA using a DNA template.

transcription factor A regulatory protein that binds to DNA and affects transcription of specific genes.

transcription initiation complex The completed assembly of transcription factors and RNA polymerase bound to a promoter.

transcription unit A region of DNA that is transcribed into an RNA molecule.

transduction A process in which phages (viruses) carry bacterial DNA from one bacterial cell to another. When these two cells are members of different species, transduction results in horizontal gene transfer. *See also* signal transduction pathway.

transfer RNA (tRNA) An RNA molecule that functions as a translator between nucleic acid and protein languages by picking up a specific amino acid and carrying it to the ribosome, where the tRNA recognizes the appropriate codon in the mRNA.

transformation (1) The process by which a cell in culture acquires the ability to divide indefinitely, similar to the division of cancer cells. (2) A change in genotype and phenotype due to the assimilation of external DNA by a cell. When the external DNA is from a member of a different species, transformation results in horizontal gene transfer.

transgene A gene that has been transferred naturally or by a genetic engineering technique from one organism to another.

transgenic Pertaining to an organism whose genome contains DNA introduced from another organism of the same or a different species.

translation The synthesis of a polypeptide using the genetic information encoded in an mRNA molecule. There is a change of "language" from nucleotides to amino acids.

translocation (1) An aberration in chromosome structure resulting from attachment of a chromosomal fragment to a nonhomologous chromosome. (2) During protein synthesis, the third stage in the elongation cycle, when the RNA carrying the growing polypeptide moves from the A site to the P site on the ribosome. (3) The transport of organic nutrients in the phloem of vascular plants.

transmembrane protein A type of integral protein that spans the entire membrane.

transmission electron microscope (TEM) A microscope that passes an electron beam through very thin sections stained with metal atoms and is primarily used to study the internal structure of cells.

transpiration The evaporative loss of water from a plant.

transport epithelium One or more layers of specialized epithelial cells that carry out and regulate solute movement.

transport protein A transmembrane protein that helps a certain substance or class of closely related substances to cross the membrane.

transport vesicle A small membranous sac in a eukaryotic cell's cytoplasm carrying molecules produced by the cell.

transposable element A segment of DNA that can move within the genome of a cell by means of a DNA or RNA intermediate; also called a transposable genetic element.

transposon A transposable element that moves within a genome by means of a DNA intermediate.

transverse (T) tubule An infolding of the plasma membrane of skeletal muscle cells.

triacylglycerol (trī-as′-ul-glis′-uh-rol) A lipid consisting of three fatty acids linked to one glycerol molecule; also called a fat or triglyceride.

trichome An epidermal cell that is a highly specialized, often hairlike outgrowth on a plant shoot.

triple response A plant growth maneuver in response to mechanical stress, involving slowing of stem elongation, thickening of the stem, and a curvature that causes the stem to start growing horizontally.

triplet code A genetic information system in which a series of three-nucleotide-long words specifies a sequence of amino acids for a polypeptide chain.

triploblastic Possessing three germ layers: the endoderm, mesoderm, and ectoderm. All bilaterian animals are triploblastic.

trisomic Referring to a diploid cell that has three copies of a particular chromosome instead of the normal two.

trochophore larva (trō′-kuh-fōr) Distinctive larval stage observed in some lophotrochozoan animals, including some annelids and molluscs.

trophic efficiency The percentage of production transferred from one trophic level to the next higher trophic level.

trophic level The position an organism occupies in a food chain.

trophic structure The different feeding relationships in an ecosystem, which determine the route of energy flow and the pattern of chemical cycling.

trophoblast The outer epithelium of a mammalian blastocyst. It forms the fetal part of the placenta, supporting embryonic development but not forming part of the embryo proper.

tropical dry forest A terrestrial biome characterized by relatively high temperatures and precipitation overall but with a pronounced dry season.

tropical rain forest A terrestrial biome characterized by relatively high precipitation and temperatures year-round.

tropics Latitudes between 23.5° north and south.

tropism A growth response that results in the curvature of whole plant organs toward or away from stimuli due to differential rates of cell elongation.

tropomyosin The regulatory protein that blocks the myosin-binding sites on actin molecules.

troponin complex The regulatory proteins that control the position of tropomyosin on the thin filament.

true-breeding Referring to organisms that produce offspring of the same variety over many generations of self-pollination.

tubal ligation A means of sterilization in which a woman's two oviducts (fallopian tubes) are tied closed and a segment of each is removed to prevent eggs from reaching the uterus.

tube foot One of numerous extensions of an echinoderm's water vascular system. Tube feet function in locomotion and feeding.

tumor-suppressor gene A gene whose protein product inhibits cell division, thereby preventing the uncontrolled cell growth that contributes to cancer.

tundra A terrestrial biome at the extreme limits of plant growth. At the northernmost limits, it is called arctic tundra, and at high altitudes, where plant forms are limited to low shrubby or matlike vegetation, it is called alpine tundra.

tunicate A member of the clade Urochordata, sessile marine chordates that lack a backbone.

turgid (ter′-jid) Swollen or distended, as in plant cells. (A walled cell becomes turgid if it has a lower water potential than its surroundings, resulting in entry of water.)

turgor pressure The force directed against a plant cell wall after the influx of water and swelling of the cell due to osmosis.

turnover The mixing of waters as a result of changing water-temperature profiles in a lake.

tympanic membrane Another name for the eardrum, the membrane between the outer and middle ear.

Unikonta (yū′-ni-kon′-tuh) One of four supergroups of eukaryotes proposed in a current hypothesis of the evolutionary history of eukaryotes. This clade, which is supported by studies of myosin proteins and DNA, consists of amoebozoans and opisthokonts. *See also* Excavata, SAR, and Archaeplastida.

unsaturated fatty acid A fatty acid that has one or more double bonds between carbons in the hydrocarbon tail. Such bonding reduces the number of hydrogen atoms attached to the carbon skeleton.

urban ecology The study of organisms and their environment in urban and suburban settings.

urea A soluble nitrogenous waste produced in the liver by a metabolic cycle that combines ammonia with carbon dioxide.

ureter (yū-rē′-ter) A duct leading from the kidney to the urinary bladder.

urethra (yū-rē′-thruh) A tube that releases urine from the mammalian body near the vagina in females and through the penis in males; also serves in males as the exit tube for the reproductive system.

uric acid A product of protein and purine metabolism and the major nitrogenous waste product of insects, land snails, and many reptiles. Uric acid is relatively nontoxic and largely insoluble in water.

urinary bladder The pouch where urine is stored prior to elimination.

uterine cycle The cyclic changes in the endometrium (uterine lining) of mammals that occur in the absence of pregnancy. In certain primates, including humans, the uterine cycle is a menstrual cycle.

uterus A female organ where eggs are fertilized and/or development of the young occurs.

vaccine A harmless variant or derivative of a pathogen that stimulates a host's immune system to mount defenses against the pathogen.

vacuole (vak′-yū-ōl′) A membrane-bounded vesicle whose specialized function varies in different kinds of cells.

vagina Part of the female reproductive system between the uterus and the outside opening; the birth canal in mammals. During

copulation, the vagina accommodates the male's penis and receives sperm.

valence The bonding capacity of a given atom; the number of covalent bonds that an atom can form, which usually equals the number of unpaired electrons in its outermost (valence) shell.

valence electron An electron in the outermost electron shell.

valence shell The outermost energy shell of an atom, containing the valence electrons involved in the chemical reactions of that atom.

van der Waals interactions Weak attractions between molecules or parts of molecules that result from transient local partial charges.

variable A factor that varies in an experiment.

variation Differences between members of the same species.

vas deferens In mammals, the tube in the male reproductive system in which sperm travel from the epididymis to the urethra.

vasa recta The capillary system in the kidney that serves the loop of Henle.

vascular cambium A cylinder of meristematic tissue in woody plants that adds layers of secondary vascular tissue called secondary xylem (wood) and secondary phloem.

vascular plant A plant with vascular tissue. Vascular plants include all living plant species except liverworts, mosses, and hornworts.

vascular tissue Plant tissue consisting of cells joined into tubes that transport water and nutrients throughout the plant body.

vasectomy The cutting and sealing of each vas deferens to prevent sperm from entering the urethra.

vasoconstriction A decrease in the diameter of blood vessels caused by contraction of smooth muscles in the vessel walls.

vasodilation An increase in the diameter of blood vessels caused by relaxation of smooth muscles in the vessel walls.

vasopressin *See* antidiuretic hormone (ADH).

vector An organism that transmits pathogens from one host to another.

vegetal pole The point at the end of an egg in the hemisphere where most yolk is concentrated; opposite of animal pole.

vegetative propagation Asexual reproduction in plants that is facilitated or induced by humans.

vegetative reproduction Asexual reproduction in plants.

vein (1) In animals, a vessel that carries blood toward the heart. (2) In plants, a vascular bundle in a leaf.

ventilation The flow of air or water over a respiratory surface.

ventral In an animal with bilateral symmetry, pertaining to the underside (in most animals) or front (in animals with upright posture) of the body.

ventricle (ven′-tri-kul) (1) A heart chamber that pumps blood out of the heart. (2) A space in the vertebrate brain, filled with cerebrospinal fluid.

venule (ven′-yūl) A vessel that conveys blood between a capillary bed and a vein.

vernalization The use of cold treatment to induce a plant to flower.

vertebrate A chordate animal with vertebrae, the series of bones that make up the backbone.

vesicle (ves′-i-kul) A membrane-bound sac in or outside a cell.

vessel A continuous water-conducting micropipe found in most angiosperms and a few nonflowering vascular plants.

vessel element A short, wide, water-conducting cell found in the xylem of most angiosperms and a few nonflowering vascular plants. Dead at maturity, vessel elements are aligned end to end to form micropipes called vessels.

vestigial structure A feature of an organism that is a historical remnant of a structure that served a function in the organism's ancestors.

villus (plural, **villi**) (1) A finger-like projection of the inner surface of the small intestine. (2) A finger-like projection of the chorion of the mammalian placenta. Large numbers of villi increase the surface areas of these organs.

viral envelope A membrane, derived from membranes of the host cell, that cloaks the capsid, which in turn encloses a viral genome.

virulent phage A phage that replicates only by a lytic cycle.

virus An infectious particle incapable of replicating outside of a cell, consisting of an RNA or DNA genome surrounded by a protein coat (capsid) and, for some viruses, a membranous envelope.

visceral mass One of the three main parts of a mollusc; the part containing most of the internal organs. *See also* foot and mantle.

visible light That portion of the electromagnetic spectrum that can be detected as various colors by the human eye, ranging in wavelength from about 380 nm to about 740 nm.

vital capacity The maximum volume of air that a mammal can inhale and exhale with each breath.

vitamin An organic molecule required in the diet in very small amounts. Many vitamins serve as coenzymes or parts of coenzymes.

viviparous (vī-vip′-uh-rus) Referring to a type of development in which the young are born alive after having been nourished in the uterus by blood from the placenta.

voltage-gated ion channel A specialized ion channel that opens or closes in response to changes in membrane potential.

vulva Collective term for the female external genitalia.

water potential (ψ) The physical property predicting the direction in which water will flow, governed by solute concentration and applied pressure.

water vascular system A network of hydraulic canals unique to echinoderms that branches into extensions called tube feet, which function in locomotion and feeding.

wavelength The distance between crests of waves, such as those of the electromagnetic spectrum.

wetland A habitat that is inundated by water at least some of the time and that supports plants adapted to water-saturated soil.

white matter Tracts of axons within the CNS.

whole-genome shotgun approach Procedure for genome sequencing in which the genome is randomly cut into many overlapping short segments that are sequenced; computer software then assembles the complete sequence.

wild type The phenotype most commonly observed in natural populations; also refers to the individual with that phenotype.

wilting The drooping of leaves and stems as a result of plant cells becoming flaccid.

wobble Flexibility in the base-pairing rules in which the nucleotide at the 5′ end of a tRNA anticodon can form hydrogen bonds with more than one kind of base in the third position (3′ end) of a codon.

xerophyte (zir′-ō-fīt′) A plant adapted to an arid climate.

X-linked gene A gene located on the X chromosome; such genes show a distinctive pattern of inheritance.

X-ray crystallography A technique used to study the three-dimensional structure of molecules. It depends on the diffraction of an X-ray beam by the individual atoms of a crystallized molecule.

xylem (zī′-lum) Vascular plant tissue consisting mainly of tubular dead cells that conduct most of the water and minerals upward from the roots to the rest of the plant.

xylem sap (zī′-lum) The dilute solution of water and minerals carried through vessels and tracheids.

yeast Single-celled fungus. Yeasts reproduce asexually by binary fission or by the pinching of small buds off a parent cell. Many fungal species can grow both as yeasts and as a network of filaments; relatively few species grow only as yeasts.

yolk Nutrients stored in an egg.

zero population growth (ZPG) A period of stability in population size, when additions to the population through births and immigration are balanced by subtractions through deaths and emigration.

zona pellucida The extracellular matrix surrounding a mammalian egg.

zoned reserve An extensive region that includes areas relatively undisturbed by humans surrounded by areas that have been changed by human activity and are used for economic gain.

zone of polarizing activity (ZPA) A block of mesoderm located just under the ectoderm where the posterior side of a limb bud is attached to the body; required for proper pattern formation along the anterior-posterior axis of the limb.

zoonotic pathogen A disease-causing agent that is transmitted to humans from other animals.

zoopagomycete A member of the fungal phylum Zoopagomycota, multicellular parasites or commensal symbionts of animals; sexual reproduction, where known, involves the formation of a sturdy structure called a zygosporangium.

zoospore Flagellated spore found in chytrid fungi and some protists.

zygomycete (zī′-guh-mī′-sēt) A member of the fungal phylum Zygomycota, characterized by the formation of a sturdy structure called a zygosporangium during sexual reproduction.

zygosporangium (zī′-guh-spōr-an′-jē-um) (plural, **zygosporangia**) In zygomycete fungi, a sturdy multinucleate structure in which karyogamy and meiosis occur.

zygote (zī′-gōt) The diploid cell produced by the union of haploid gametes during fertilization; a fertilized egg.

Index

NOTE: A page number in regular type indicates where a topic is discussed in the text; a **bold** page number indicates where a term is bold and defined; an *f* following a page number indicates a figure (the topic may also be discussed in the text on that page); a *t* following a page number indicates a table (the topic may also be discussed in the text on that page).

2,4-dichlorophenoxyacetic acid (2,4-D), 849
3′ end (sugar-phosphate backbone), 85*f*, 345*f*, 348*f*
3-phosphoglycerate, 201, 202*f*
5′ cap, **345***f*, 348*f*
5′ end (sugar-phosphate backbone), 85*f*
5-methylcytosine, 63*f*
10-nm fibers, DNA, 330*f*–331*f*, 332
30-nm fibers, DNA, 330*f*

A

a (yeast mating type), 213*f*, 214, 217
ABC hypothesis, flower formation, **780***f*
abd-A gene, 706*f*
Abdomen, insect, 710*f*
Abiotic factors, **1169**
  microclimate and, 1169–1170
  in pollination, 824*f*
  in species distributions, 1178, 1183*f*–1186*f*
Abiotic stresses, plant, **862**–863, 864*f*, 865
Abiotic synthesis, organic molecule, 57*f*, 58, 526*f*–527*f*
Abnormal chromosome number disorders, 307*f*
ABO blood groups, 280*f*, 292, 969–970
Abomasum, 914*f*
Abortion, **1039**
  spontaneous, 306
Abscisic acid (ABA), **798**, 846*t*, **852***f*, 863
Abscission, leaf, 852, 854*f*
Absorption, **904**
  in animal food processing, 904, 905*f*
  of carbon dioxide, 1245
  in large intestine, 910
  of light energy and primary production, 1242*f*
  of nutrients, 895*f*
  plant and animal, 895*f*
  in small intestine, 909*f*–910*f*
  of water and mineral by root cells, 792
Absorption spectrum, **193***f*
Abstinence, 1037, 1038*f*
Abstract thinking, 1146
Abyssal zone, **1177***f*
Acacia trees, 10*f*, 1220*f*
Acanthocephalans, 687*f*, 698*f*, 1220
Acanthodians, **726**
Accessory fruits, **831***f*
Accessory glands, male reproductive, 1025*f*, 1026
Acclimatization, **883***f*, 888
Accommodation, visual, 1122*f*
Acetic acid, 63*f*
Acetone, 63*f*
Acetylation, histone, **371***f*
Acetylcholine, **1080**, 1081*t*, 1128, 1129*f*
Acetylcholinesterase, 1080
Acetyl CoA (acetyl coenzyme A), **171***f*–173*f*
Acetylsalicylic acid, 651
Achillea lanulosa, 1189
Achondroplasia, 287*f*
Acid bogs, 529*f*
Acid growth hypothesis, 848, 849*f*
Acidic rain, 55
Acidification, ocean, 53*f*, 54
Acid precipitation, 821, 1265, 1266*f*
Acid reflux, 908
Acids, **51**
  acid precipitation and, 821, 1265, 1266*f*
  amino acids as, 76, 77*f*
  buffers and, 52–53
  hydrogen ions, bases, and, 51
  ocean acidification and, 53*f*, 54
  pH scale and, 51, 52*f*
Acinetobacter baumannii, 913
Acoela, 683*f*, 687*f*
Acorn woodpeckers (*Melanerpes formicivorus*), 1162
Acorn worms, 689*f*
Acquired immunodeficiency, 971, 972*f*, 973. *See also* AIDS
Acquired traits, noninheritance of, 471*f*
Acromegaly, 1010
Acrosomal reactions, 1044*f*, **1045**
Acrosomes, **1028***f*, 1044*f*, **1045**
Actias luna, 43
Actin, 76*f*, **115**, 241, 879*f*
Actin filaments, 113*t*, 1056*f*, 1125, 1126*f*–1127*f*. *See also* Microfilaments
Actinistia, 719*f*, 729*f*
Actinomycetes, 584*f*
Actinopterygii (ray-finned fishes), 719*f*, 728*f*–729*f*
Action potentials, neuron, **1073**
  adaptations of axon structure for, 1076*f*–1077*f*
  conduction of, 1075*f*, 1076
  evolution of, 1084
  generation of, 1073, 1074*f*, 1075
  graded potentials, voltage-gated ion channels, and, 1073, 1074*f*
  hyperpolarization and depolarization of membrane potentials and, 1072*f*–1073*f*
  in long-term potentiation, 1101*f*
  in sensory systems, 1109*f*
Action potentials, plant, **862**
Action spectrum, **193**, 194*f*, **855**
Activation, allosteric, 160*f*, 161
Activation, egg, 1046
Activation energy, 153, **154***f*–155*f*
Activators, 160*f*, **369***f*, 374*f*–375*f*, 397
Active immunity, **968**
Active sites, enzyme, **155***f*–156*f*
Active transport, 126, **136**
  ATP as energy for, 137*f*
  cotransport in, 138*f*, 139
  maintenance of membrane potential by ion pumps in, 137, 138*f*
  passive transport vs., 137*f*
  in plant cells, 209*f*
  of solutes across plant plasma membranes, 788, 789*f*
Activity, animal metabolic rate and, 891–892
Actual range, 1184
Acyclovir, 409
Adaptation, sensory, 1109–1110
Adaptations, **472**. *See also* Evolution; Natural selection
  in amniote development, 1053*f*, 1054
  axon width and myelination as, 1076*f*–1077*f*
  evolution and, 2*f*, 14*f*–16*f*, 472, 473*f*–476*f*
  as evolutionary compromises, 501*f*
  floral, to prevent self-fertilization, 834, 835*f*
  gas exchange, 947*f*–949*f*
  for heat exchange in animals, 873*f*, 885*f*–889*f*
  against herbivory, 1219–1220
  mycorrhizae as plant, 817
  of pathogens to evade immune systems, 957, 971–972, 973*f*, 973*t*, 974, 976
  of plants and animals to life challenges, 894*f*–895*f*
  of plants to global climate change, 204–205
  of plants to terrestrial life, 203
  of plants to toxic elements, 30*f*
  predator and prey, 1217, 1218*f*–1219*f*, 1237
  prokaryotic, 573*f*–577*f*, 578, 581*t*, 582*f*
  as property of life, 3*f*
  to reduce terrestrial nutrient limitations, 1244
  of seed plants, 653
  sexual reproduction patterns as, 1022
  of smooth muscles, 1132
  terrestrial, of fungi and plants, 619*f*, 621, 660
  terrestrial, of seed plants, 637*f*–638*f*, 639
  of vertebrate digestive systems, 911*f*–914*f*
Adaptive evolution, **494**, 498, 499*f*, 501. *See also* Evolution; Natural selection
Adaptive immunity, **953**
  active and passive immunity in, 968
  antigen recognition by B cells and antibodies of, 958*f*–959*f*
  antigen recognition by T cells, 959*f*–960*f*
  B cell and T cell development of, 960, 961*f*–963*f*
  B cell and T cell proliferation in, 961, 962*f*
  B cells and antibodies in responses of, 964, 965*f*–966*f*
  cytotoxic T cells in responses of, to infected cells, 966*f*, 967
  helper T cells in responses of, 963, 964*f*
  immune rejection and, 969–970
  immunization and, 968*f*, 976
  immunological memory of, 960, 962, 963*f*
  medical tools using antibodies of, 969*f*
  molecular recognition by, 957*f*
  overview of, 957*f*, 967*f*
  pathogen recognition in, 952*f*, 957*f*–958*f*
  self-tolerance in, 961
Adaptive radiations, 15*f*–16*f*, 525, **542**, 543*f*, 544, 736, 1183, 1184*f*
Addition rule, **277***f*, 278
Adélie penguin, 892
Adenine, 84, 85*f*, 86, 317*f*, 318, 341*f*, 850
Adenomatous polyposis coli (APC), 391*f*, 394
Adenosine diphosphate. *See* ADP
Adenosine triphosphate. *See* ATP
Adenoviruses, 400*f*
Adenylyl cyclase, **223***f*–224*f*
Adhesion, **46***f*, 795–796
Adhesive chemicals, echinoderm, 713, 714*f*
Adipose tissue, **878***f*, 915, 918
ADP (adenosine diphosphate)
  as enzyme activator, 160
  hydrolysis of ATP to, 151*f*
  in sliding-filament model of muscle contraction, 1126, 1127*f*
  synthesis of ATP from, 153*f*, 169, 175, 176*f*, 177–178
Adrenal cortex, 1004*f*, 1013–1014
Adrenal glands, **1012**
  epinephrine and. *See* Epinephrine (adrenaline)
  in human endocrine system, 1004*f*
  responses of, to stress, 1012*f*–1013*f*, 1014
  smooth ER and, 104
Adrenaline. *See* Epinephrine
Adrenal medulla, 1004*f*, 1012*f*–1013*f*
Adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH), 1004*f*, 1008*f*, 1012*f*, 1013–1014
Adult stem cells, 430, 431*f*
Adventitious roots, 760*f*
Adventitious shoots, 833*f*
Aerial roots, 760*f*
Aerobic prokaryotes, 577*f*
Aerobic respiration, **165**, 179–181
Afferent arteriole, 987*f*
Afferent neurons, 1088*f*, 1108*f*
Africa, human population in, 1208, 1209*f*
African-Americans, sickle-cell disease in, 286*f*, 287
African buffalo, 1221*f*
African elephants (*Loxodonta africana*), 474*f*, 1197*f*, 1265*f*
African golden mole, 558*f*, 559
African grey parrots, 1099
Africans
  genomes of, 462–463
  sickle-cell disease in, 286*f*, 287
African sleeping sickness, 713
Agave, 1200, 1201*f*
Age-related macular degeneration (AMD), 432
Age structure, human population, **1208**, 1209*f*
Aggregate fruits, **831***f*
Aging, 233, 289
Aglaophyton major, 628*f*, 660
Agonistic behavior, 1153*f*
agouti gene, 372*f*
Agriculture. *See also* Crop plants
  allopolyploidy in, 514*f*–515*f*

biotechnology in, 437–439
C_3 plants in, 203
C_4 plants in, 203
climate change and, 863
community disturbances by, 1231
effects of atmospheric carbon dioxide on productivity of, 205
fertilizing in. *See* Fertilization, soil
fungal food products of, 670
global human population size and, 1211
importance of insects to, 713
importance of mycorrhizae to, 818
nematode pests in, 705
nitrogen fixation and, 817
nutrient pollution from, 1274, 1275*f*
plant biotechnology and genetic engineering in, 836*f*–838*f*, 839–840
plant breeding in, 823, 835–837
plant cloning in, 428
plant control systems in, 871
seed plants in, 651
soil conservation and sustainable, 807*f*–809*f*, 1273
vegetative propagation of plants in, 835–836
Agrobacterium tumefaciens, 422, 595, 837
Aguirre-Jarquin, Clemente, 24*f*
AIDS (acquired immunodeficiency syndrome), **406**, **973***f*, 974. *See also* HIV
cell-surface proteins and blocking HIV to prevent, 130*f*
drug cocktails in treatment of, 489
emergence of, 410
G protein-coupled receptors and, 217*f*
HIV and, 398*f*, 406, 407*f*
host range of, 401
Aigarchaeota clade, 586
Ailuropoda melanoleuca, 448*t*
Ain, Michael C., 287*f*
Air circulation patterns, global, 1166*f*
Air roots, 760*f*
Air sacs, 942*f*–945*f*
Alanine, 77*f*
Alarm calls, 1148*f*
Albatross, 977*f*, 1277*f*
Albinism, 285*f*, 335*f*, 336–337
Albumen, 735*f*
Albumin, 377*f*, 934*f*
Albuterol, 62*f*
Alcohol compounds, 63*f*
Alcohol dehydrogenase, 66*f*
Alcohol fermentation, **180***f*
Alcoholic beverages, 670
Aldehyde compounds, 63*f*
Alder, 1230*f*–1231*f*
Aldoses, 68*f*
Aldosterone, 220, 221*f*, 995, 996*f*, 1014
Algae, **596**
alternation of generations in, 258*f*, 259
blooms of, 1227*f*, 1242, 1243*f*
brown, 602, 603*f*, 604
chloroplasts in, 110, 111*f*
DNA identification of, 1222
as earliest multicellular eukaryotes, 535*f*
evolution of plants from green, 617, 618, 619*f*, 621
evolution of photosynthetic, 596*f*–597*f*
fossils of, 529*f*, 533*f*
fungi and, as lichens, 663, 668*f*–669*f*
green, 101*f*, 596*f*–597*f*, 610*f*–611*f*, 614, 617, 618, 619*f*, 621
horizontal gene transfer in, 569*f*
photosynthesis in, 188*f*
as protists, 599*f*
red, 596*f*–597*f*, 609*f*, 610
structure and organelles of cells of, 101*f*
Algin, 603
Alimentary canals, 688*f*, **697***f*, 704*f*, **905***f*, 912*f*
Alkaline vents, **526***f*
Alkaloids, 868*f*
Alkaptonuria, 293, 336
Allantois, 735*f*, 1053*f*, 1054
Alleles, **272**. *See also* Genes
combination predictions of, 268
correlating behavior of chromosome pairs with, 295, 296*f*–297*f*
degrees of dominance of, and phenotypes, 279*f*, 280
dominant, in genetic disorders, 287*f*
dominant vs. recessive, in Mendelian inheritance, 272, 273*f*–276*f*, 293
frequencies of, in gene pools of populations, 490*f*
genetic markers for disease-causing, 427*f*
genetic variation from recombination of, 305. *See also* Recombination
genetic variation preserved in recessive, 500
genomic imprinting of maternal or paternal, 372
as information, 293
microevolution as alteration in frequencies of, in populations, 487*f*, 493, 494*f*–497*f*
multiple, and pleiotropy, 280*f*
mutations as sources of, 265, 488–489
recessive, in genetic disorders, 285*f*–286*f*, 287
in sexual life cycles, 259
sickle-cell, 502*f*–503*f*
testing populations for frequencies of, 490, 491*f*, 492–493
transmission of, 269
Allergens, 839, 970*f*, 971
Allergies, 438, 970*f*, 971
Alliaria petiolata, 818
Alligator mississippiensis. *See* American alligator
Alligators, 737*f*, 738, 925
Allohexaploid, 514–515, 524
Allolactose, 368*f*–396*f*, 370
Allopatric populations, character displacement in, 1216, 1217*f*
Allopatric speciation, **511***f*–512*f*, 513, 539–540
Allopolyploids, **514***f*–515*f*
All-or-none responses, 1073
Allosteric regulation, **160***f*–161*f*
α (yeast mating type), 213*f*, 214, 217
α chain, 959*f*
α-globin gene family, 453*f*
α helix, **80***f*
α-lactalbumin, 456, 457*f*
Alpha (α) carbon, 75
Alpha cells, 916*f*
Alpha proteobacteria, 584*f*, 596
Alpheus species, 512*f*, 513
Alpine chickweed, 1281*f*
Alpine pennycress (*Thlaspi caerulescens*), 809
Alpine tundra, 1176*f*
Alpine wood sorrel, 835*f*
Alternate phyllotaxy, 786*f*
Alternation of generations, **258***f*, **603***f*, 604, **620***f*, 621
Alternative RNA splicing, **347***f*, **378***f*, 449
Altruism, **1156***f*–1159*f*, 1162
Alu elements, 452, 459
Aluminum toxicity, plant, 809
Alveolates, 599*f*, **604***f*–606*f*
Alveoli, 604*f*, **943***f*–944*f*
Alzheimer's disease, 83, 231, 311, 361, 413, 433, 435, **1103**, 1104*f*
Amacrine cells, 1118*f*
Amazon rain forest, 1271*f*
Amber, fossils in, 529*f*
Amborella trichopoda, 648*f*, 650*f*, 653
Amebic dysentery, 613
American alligator (*Alligator mississippiensis*), 737*f*
American beech trees (*Fagus grandifolia*), 1170*f*
American chestnut trees, 1226, 1234
American Dust Bowl, 807*f*
American flamingo, 14*f*
American pika (*Ochotona princeps*), 1280*f*
American pokeweed, 830*f*
Amine compounds, 63*f*
Amines, 1001*f*
Amino acids
abiotic synthesis of, 526*f*–527*f*
activation of, in eukaryotic cells, 356*f*
deamination of, for catabolism, 182
in DNA-binding proteins, 91
in enzymatic catalysis, 156
essential, 899*f*
in evolution of enzymes, 159*f*
in genetic code, 340*f*–342*f*
human dietary deficiencies in, 901
as neurotransmitters, 1081*t*
in nitrogen cycle, 1251*f*
in polypeptides and proteins, 67, 75, 76*f*–78*f*. *See also* Polypeptides; Proteins
in proteins, 75, 77*f*
sequences of, 444, 445*f*, 446, 458
sickle-cell disease and, 82*f*
specified by nucleotide triplets in translation, 347*f*–350*f*
structure of, 91
using sequences of, to test hypothesis on horizontal gene transfer, 570
Amino acid sequence identity tables, reading, in Scientific Skills Exercise, 458
Amino acid sequences, 444, 445*f*, 446, 458
Aminoacyl tRNA, 349*f*
Aminoacyl-tRNA synthetases, **349***f*
Amino end. *See* N-terminus
Amino group, 63*f*
Amitochondriate protists, 597
Ammonia, **982**
as base, 51
hydrogen bonds and, 39*f*
as nitrogenous waste, 982*f*, 983, 988
Ammonites, **702**
Ammonium, in nitrogen cycle, 1251*f*
Amniocentesis, **288**, 289*f*, 1039–1040
Amnion, 480, 735*f*, 1053*f*
Amniotes, **734**, **1053**
derived characters of, 734, 735*f*
developmental adaptations of, 1053*f*, 1054
evolution of, 678
fossils and early evolution of, 735*f*
mammals as, 741
phylogeny of, 734*f*
reptiles, 735*f*–740*f*
Amniotic egg, 718, **734**, 735*f*
Amoebas, 117*f*, 235*f*, 449, 599*f*, **606**
Amoebocytes, **690***f*, 691
Amoeboid movement, 117*f*
Amoebozoans, **612***f*–613*f*
Amorphea, 599, 611
AMP (adenosine monophosphate), 183*f*, 184, 349*f*
AMPA receptors, 1101*f*
Amphetamines, 1102, 1103*f*
Amphibians, **731**
adaptations of kidneys of, 992
axis formation in, 1060*f*
brains of, 1091*f*
breathing in, 925, 944
cell developmental potential in, 1060, 1061*f*
cell fate and pattern formation by inductive signals in, 1062*f*
cleavage in, 1048*f*, 1049
diversity of, 732*f*–733*f*
double circulation in, 924*f*, 925
evolution of, 678
external fertilization in, 1022*f*
fungal parasites of, 669, 670*f*
gastrulation in, 1051*f*, 1052
hearing and equilibrium in, 1116*f*
neurulation in, 1054*f*, 1055
parental care in, 1151
phylogeny of, 719*f*
species distributions of, 1164*f*, 1185
vaccine for, 733
Amphipathic molecules, **127**
Amplification, sensory, **1109**–1110
Amplification, signal, 221, 226–227
Ampulla, sea star, 714*f*
Amygdala, 1095*f*–**1096***f*
Amylase, **906**
Amyloid plaques, 1104*f*
Amylopectin, 70*f*
Amyloplasts, 111
Amylose, 70*f*, 111
Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS), 1129
Anabaena, 582*f*
Anableps anableps, 365*f*
Anabolic pathways, **144**, 183
Anabolic steroids, 1014
Anabrus simplex, 449, 712*f*, 1112*f*
Anaerobic respiration, 165, 179–182, **582**
Analogies, **558***f*
Analogous structures, **481**
Anaphase, 252
Anaphase (mitosis), **237**, 239*f*, 241*f*, 243*f*, 263*f*
Anaphase I, 260*f*, 263*f*, 266*f*
Anaphase II, 261*f*, 266*f*
Anaphylactic shock, 971
Anatomical homologies, 479*f*, 480
Anatomy, 873*f*–**874**. *See also* Animal form and function; Morphology; Plant structure
Ancestral characters, shared, **560**, 561*f*
Ancestry, common, 15*f*–16*f*, 479*f*–481*f*, 555, 556*f*–560*f*, 648
Anchorage dependence, **247**, 248*f*

Anchoring junctions, 120*f*
Androgens, 1004*f*, **1014**, 1015*f*, 1030, 1031*f*
Anemia, 936
Anesthetics, 1084
Aneuploidies, **307**, 308*f*, 309
Angiosperm reproduction
  asexual, 833*f*–836*f*
  breeding and genetic engineering in, 836*f*–838*f*, 839–840
  flower pollination in, 824*f*–825*f*
  flower structure and function in, 823*f*–824*f*, 830
  fruit structure and function in, 830*f*–831*f*
  life cycle of, 646*f*, 647, 653, 826, 827*f*, 828
  mutualisms in, 825*f*
  seeds in, 828*f*–830*f*
Angiosperms, **623***f*
  bulk flow in sugar translocation in, 800, 801*f*
  characteristics of, 644*f*–646*f*, 647
  evolutionary mystery of, for C. Darwin, 477
  evolution of, 647*f*–649*f*
  evolution of seeds in, 639
  flowers of, 644*f*
  fruits of, 644, 645*f*
  gametophyte-sporophyte relationships in, 637*f*, 638
  life cycle of, 646*f*, 647, 653, 826, 827*f*, 828
  G. Mendel's techniques of crossing, 270*f*–271*f*
  origin of, 533*f*
  phylogeny of, 622*t*, 648*f*–650*f*, 653
  reproduction of. *See* Angiosperm reproduction
Angiotensin II, 995, 996*f*
Anhydrobiosis, **979**, 980*f*
Animal behavior, 1140
  cerebral cortex information processing and, 1097*f*, 1098
  genetics, altruism, and inclusive fitness in evolution of, 1154, 1155*f*–1159*f*, 1160
  hormones and, 999*f*
  learning and, 1144*t*, 1145*f*–1148*f*
  stimuli for simple and complex, 1140*f*–1143*f*
  survival and reproductive success in evolution of, 1148, 1149*f*–1154*f*, 1161
  in thermoregulation, 873*f*, 887*f*
Animal cells. *See also* Eukaryotic cells
  apoptosis in, 230*f*–231*f*
  cell junctions of, 120*f*
  cellular respiration in. *See* Cellular respiration
  cytokinesis in, 241, 242*f*
  endocytosis in, 140*f*
  extracellular matrix of, 118, 119*f*
  local and long-distance cell signaling in, 215*f*, 216
  meiosis in, 260*f*–261*f*
  nuclear transplantation of differentiated, 428, 429*f*–430*f*
  stem cells, 430*f*–431*f*
  structure and organelles of, 100*f*
  structure and specialization of, 674
  water balance of, 134*f*–135*f*
Animal development. *See also* Embryonic development
  adaptations of, 894*f*
  animal phylogeny and, 682, 683*f*, 684
  cell fate specification in, 1057, 1058*f*–1064*f*
  comparing processes of, 463*f*–464*f*
  developmental biology and, 1057
  fertilization and cleavage in, 1044*f*–1048*f*, 1049
  morphogenesis in, 1049, 1050*f*–1057*f*
  protostome vs. deuterostome, 681, 682*f*
  reproduction and embryonic, 674*f*, 675
Animal form and function
  anatomy and physiology as, 873*f*–874
  bioenergetics of, 889, 890*f*––893*f*
  body plans, 679, 680*f*–682*f*
  correlation of, at all levels of organization, 874*f*–880*f*, 876*t*
  evolution of body size and shape in, 874*f*
  exchange with environment in, 874, 875*f*, 876
  feedback regulation of homeostasis in, 881*f*–883*f*
  hierarchical organization of body plans in, 876*t*, 877*f*–879*f*
  mammalian organ systems in, 876*t*
  regulation of, by endocrine and nervous systems, 880*f*
  thermoregulation in, 884*f*–889*f*
Animal hormones, **880**, **1000**. *See also* Endocrine systems*;* Hormones
  behavior and, 999*f*
  birth control, **1038***f*, 1039
  cascade pathways of, 1008, 1009*f*, 1010, 1014
  cellular response pathways of, 1002*f*–1003*f*
  chemical classes of, 1002*f*, 1003
  as chemical signals of endocrine system, 1000*f*–1004*f*
  in childbirth and labor, 1037*f*
  embryonic, 1035
  endocrine system glands and, 1003, 1004*f*
  endocrine systems and, in cell signaling, 880*f*
  erythropoietin, 936
  evolution of, 1015*f*, 1016
  feedback regulation of, 1005–1006
  in fight-or-flight responses, 212
  multiple effects of single, 1003
  in neuroendocrine signaling, 1000*f*, 1001, 1006*f*–1008*f*. *See also* Neuroendocrine signaling
  plant hormones vs., 216, 894*f*
  receptors for, 1000*f*–1004*f*, 1018
  regulation of appetite and consumption by, 917*f*, 918
  in regulation of digestive systems, 915*f*
  in regulation of mammalian reproduction, 1030, 1031*f*–1032*f*, 1033–1034
  in regulatory functions of endocrine glands, 1011*f*–1015*f*, 1016
  in sex determination, 1030
  in simple endocrine pathway, 1004, 1005*f*
  in simple neuroendocrine pathway, 1005*f*
Animalia kingdom, **12***f*, 568
Animal nutrition. *See also* Human nutrition
  adaptations of vertebrate digestive systems for diets in, 911*f*–914*f*
  compartmentalized processing in, 898
  diets and requirements for, 899*f*–902*f*, 900*t*–901*t*
  digestive systems and, 905, 906*f*–911*f*
  feedback regulation of digestion, energy storage, and appetite in, 914, 915*f*–917*f*, 918
  feeding mechanisms in, 902, 903*f*
  food processing stages in, 902, 903*f*–905*f*
  nutritional modes in, 673*f*, 674, 894*f*
Animal pole, **1048***f*
Animal reproduction. *See also* Human reproduction
  amphibian, 732*f*–733*f*
  asexual, 266, 267*f*, 1020
  development and, 674*f*, 675
  different ways of, 1019*f*
  evolution of sexual, 1021, 1022*f*
  fertilization mechanisms in, 1022*f*–1024*f*
  of fish, 728
  hormonal regulation of mammalian, 1030, 1031*f*–1032*f*, 1033–1034
  reproductive cycles in, 1021*f*
  sexual life cycles in, 258*f*. *See also* Sexual life cycles
  of sharks and rays, 727
  variations in patterns of sexual, 1020*f*
Animals. *See also* Animal behavior*;* Animal development*;* Animal form and function*;* Animal hormones*;* Animal nutrition*;* Animal reproduction
  aquatic. *See* Aquatic animals
  catabolic pathways in, 182*f*, 183
  cells of, 6*f*. *See also* Animal cells
  cell structure and specialization of tissues of, 674
  cellular respiration in hibernating, 178
  circulatory and gas exchange systems of. *See* Cardiovascular systems*;* Circulatory systems*;* Gas exchange
  climate change and, 11*f*, 1280*f*–1281*f*
  cloning of, 428, 429*f*–430*f*
  as consumers and predators, 673*f*
  correlation of diversity of miRNAs with complexity of, 678
  defense mechanisms of, 28*f*
  in domain Eukarya, 12*f*
  in ecosystem interaction, 10*f*, 11
  endangered or threatened, 1261, 1262*f*, *1288*
  in energy flow and chemical cycling, 9*f*
  evolutionary history of, 675*f*–677*f*, 678–679
  evolutionary links between plants and, 648, 649*f*
  extinctions of, 702*f*
  flower pollination by, 824*f*–825*f*
  fruit and seed dispersal by, 832*f*
  fungal mutualisms with, 668*f*
  fungal parasites of, 669*f*–670*f*
  glycogen as storage polysaccharide for, 70*f*, 71
  herbivore adaptations in, 477*f*, 478
  immune systems of. *See* Immune systems
  kingdom and domain mutualisms with, 813*f*
  land colonization by, 533*f*, 536, 537*f*
  latitude and size of, 897
  life challenges and solutions for, 894*f*–895*f*
  maximizing body surface area of, 695*f*
  microevolution of populations of. *See* Microevolution
  neurons and nervous systems of. *See* Nervous systems*;* Neurons
  nutrition of, 12*f*, 13
  as opisthokonts, 613
  osmoregulation and excretion of. *See* Excretory systems*;* Osmoregulation
  osmoregulation in, 978*f*–980*f*, 981
  phylogeny of, 682, 683*f*, 684, 686
  plant recruitment of, as herbivore defense, 869*f*
  protein production by "pharm" transgenic, 436*f*
  relationship of, to unikont protists, 611–612
  reproduction and development of, 674*f*, 675
  seed dispersal by, 645*f*
  sensory and motor systems of. *See* Motor systems*;* Sensory systems
  tropical deforestation and extinctions of, 651*f*, 652
  zoonotic pathogens and, 1234, 1235*f*
Animal viruses
  classes of, 406*t*
  as pathogens, 407*f*–413*f*
  replicative cycles of, 404, 405*f*, 406*t*, 407*f*
Anions, **37**, 38*f*, 806, 807*f*, 1070*t*
Ankle bones, 481*f*
Annelids, 688*f*, 703*f*–704*f*, 705, 923*f*, 985*f*, 1086*f*
Annual human population growth rates, 1207*f*, 1208
Annuals, 766
Antagonistic functions, autonomic nervous system, 1089*f*
Antagonistic muscle pairs, 1132*f*
Antarctica, 1224*f*
Antarctic Circumpolar Current, 1168*f*
Antennae, 43, 1110, 1111*f*, 1123
Anterior pituitary gland, 1004*f*, **1007***f*–1008*f*, 1016, 1030, 1031*f*–1032*f*
Anterior-posterior axis, 1055, 1060*f*
Antheraea polyphemus, 1001
Antheridia, 624*f*, **625**, 630*f*
Anthers, **644***f*, **823***f*
Anthocerophyta (hornworts), 623, 626*f*
Anthophyta. *See* Angiosperms
Anthozoans, 692*f*–693*f*
Anthrax, 575*f*, 584*f*
Anthropoids, **746***f*–747*f*
Anti-aging effects, 850
Antibiotic drugs
  bacteria and, 349
  bacterial resistance to, 213, 581, 588*f*–589*f*
  for cystic fibrosis, 286
  as enzyme inhibitors, 158–159
  evolution of resistance to, 478*f*, 592
  fungal, 670
  gram-positive bacteria and, 584*f*
  peptidoglycan and, 574–575
  prokaryotic ribosomes and, 577
  from soil bacteria, 590
  sponges and, 691
  viruses and, 409
Antibodies, **958**
  in allergic reactions, 970*f*, 971
  antigen recognition by, 958*f*–959*f*
  gene rearrangement by, 960, 961*f*
  in humoral immune response, 963, 964*f*–967*f*
  immunological memory, 963*f*
  as medical tools, 969*f*
  as proteins, 76*f*, 79*f*
  in responses to extracellular pathogens, 964, 965*f*–966*f*
Anticodons, **348***f*–349*f*
Antidiuretic hormone (ADH), 994*f*–995*f*, 1004*f*, **1007***f*, **1155***f*
Antifreeze proteins, 865, 888
Antigen fragments, 959*f*–960*f*
Antigenic variation, 972–973
Antigen presentation, **959***f*–960*f*
Antigen-presenting cells, **963**, 964*f*
Antigen receptors, **958***f*–961*f*
Antigens, **958**, 963*f*–967*f*
  in allergic reactions, 970*f*, 971
  B cell recognition of, 958*f*–959*f*
  T cell recognition of, 959*f*–960*f*

Antihistamines, 971
Anti-inflammatory drugs, 1013–1014
Antimicrobial peptides, 953–954, 955*f*, 956–957
Antioxidants, 195
Antiparallel DNA sugar-phosphate backbones, **86***f*, 317*f*–320*f*, **318**, 324, 325*f*–327*f*
Antithrombin, 436*f*
Antivenin, 968
Antiviral drugs, 409
Ants, 28*f*, 298*f*, 485, 668*f*, 712*f*, 813*f*, 832*f*, 1001*f*, 1220*f*
Anurans, 732*f*–733*f*
Anus, 911
Aorta, 926*f*, 930*f*
Apes, 746*f*–747*f*
Aphids, 570, 801*f*
Aphotic zone, **1177***f*
Apical buds, **761**
Apical dominance, **770**, 850*f*
Apical ectodermal ridge (AER), **1062***f*, 1063*f*
Apical meristems, **621***f*, **766***f*–767*f*
Apical surface, epithelial, 877*f*
Apicomplexans, **605**, 606*f*
Apicoplasts, 606*f*
Apodans, 732*f*
Apomixis, **833**
Apoplast, **787**, 788*f*, 800*f*
Apoplastic route, 788*f*, 793*f*
Apoptosis, **229**
  cell-signaling pathways of, 230, 231*f*
  cytotoxic T cell response and, 966*f*, 967
  emergent properties of, 233
  ethylene in response to senescence and, 853–854
  in immune cells, 233
  molecular mechanisms of, 230*f*
  in morphogenesis, 1056–1057
  p53 gene and, 390*f*
  plant response to flooding with, 864*f*
  as programmed cell death, 229*f*, 230
  self-tolerance vs., 961
Aposematic coloration, 1218*f*, **1219**
Appendages, arthropod, 706, 707*f*, 708–709
Appendix, **911***f*
Appetite regulation, 917*f*, 918
Apple fruit, 831*f*
Apple maggot fly (*Rhagoletis pomonella*), 508*f*, 515–516
Aptenodytes forsteri, 873*f*
Aptenodytes patagonicus, 740*f*, 884*f*, 1192*f*
Aquaporins, **132**, **790**, **989**
  cellular membrane selective permeability and, 132*f*
  facilitated diffusion and, 135*f*
  in kidney regulation, 994*f*–995*f*
  mutations in, as causes of diabetes insipidus, 995*f*
  water diffusion and role of, 790–791
Aquatic animals
  adaptations of kidneys of, 992, 993*f*
  gills for gas exchange in, 921*f*, 940*f*–941*f*
  ice and, 44
  nitrogenous wastes of, 982*f*
  osmoregulation in, 979*f*–980*f*
Aquatic biomes
  acid precipitation in, 1265, 1266*f*
  biodiversity hot spots in, 1272*f*
  coral reefs, 1182*f*
  decomposition in, 1248–1249
  estuaries, 1180*f*
  eutrophication of, 1275*f*
  food chains in, 1224*f*
  habitat loss in, 1264
  intertidal zones, 1181*f*
  lakes, 1179*f*
  locomotion in, 1135
  marine benthic zones, 1182*f*
  nutrient cycling in, 1250*f*–1251*f*
  oceanic pelagic zones, 1181*f*
  plastic waste in, 1277*f*
  primary production in, 1242, 1243*f*, 1243*t*
  protists as producers in, 614, 615*f*
  streams and rivers, 1180*f*
  thermoregulation in, 881*f*
  wetlands, 1179*f*
  zonation in, 1177*f*–1178*f*
Aqueous humor, 1118*f*
Aqueous solutions, **49**
  acidic and basic conditions of, 51, 52*f*–53*f*, 54
  solvents, solutes, and, 49*f*, 50
Aquifers, 808
Arabidopsis thaliana (mustard plant)
  altering gene expression of, with touch, 862*f*
  genome size of, 448*t*
  as model organism, 22, 774, 776*f*, 783
  triple response in, 853*f*
Arachnids, 689*f*, **708***f*
Arbuscular mycorrhizae, **656**, 660, 663, **817**, 818*f*
Arbuscule, 537*f*, **656***f*
Archaea, **12***f*
  domain, 12*f*, 568, 569*f*, 585*t*, 586
  genome sizes and number of genes for, 448*t*, 449
  prokaryotic cells of, 6*f*, 97. *See also* Prokaryotes; Prokaryotic cells
Archaean eon, 530*f*, 532*f*–533*f*
Archaefructus sinensis, 533*f*, 647*f*
Archaeoglobus fulgidus, 448*t*
Archaeognatha (bristletails), 712*f*
Archaeology, peat moss and, 627*f*
Archaeopteris, 641
Archaeopteryx, 739*f*
Archaeplastida, 599*f*, **609***f*–610*f*
Archegonia, 624*f*, **625**, 630*f*
Archenterons, **682***f*, **1050***f*
Architeuthis dux, 702
Archosaurs, **736**
Arctic, 48*f*
Arctic fox, 1238*f*, 1244, 1256*f*
Arctic ground squirrel (*Spermophilus parryii*), 893
Arctic sea ice, 1279
Arctic tundra ecosystem, 1238*f*, 1244, 1256*f*–1257*f*
Ardipithecus ramidus, 748*f*–749*f*
Area effects, community diversity and, 1232*f*
Arginine, 77*f*, 336*f*–338*f*
Argo complex, 954*f*
Argyroneta aquatica, 951
Arid conditions, 142, 203, 204*f*–206*f*, 1166*f*, 1168
Aristotle, 470
Armenian oak, 650*f*
Arms, chromatid, 236, 264
Arousal
  autonomic, 1096
  brain functions in sleep and, 1094*f*
  human sexual, 1034, 1081
Arsenic, 29
Art, humans and, 754*f*
Arteries, **924***f*–926*f*, 929*f*–931*f*, 937*f*, 939
Arterioles, **924**, 929*f*–932*f*
Arthrophytes, 632*f*
Arthropods, **706**. *See also* Ecdysozoans
  chelicerates, 707, 708*f*
  chitin as structural polysaccharide for, 72*f*
  compound eyes of, 1117*f*, 1118
  crustaceans and insects as pancrustaceans, 709*f*–712*f*, 713
  evolution of, 678
  exoskeletons of, 1133
  general characteristics of, 707*f*, 708
  Hox genes and body plan of, 706*f*, 707
  land colonization by, 536–537
  Malpighian tubules of, 985*f*
  myriapods, 707–708, 709*f*
  nervous systems of, 1086*f*
  origins of, 706*f*, 707
  phylogeny of, 689*f*, 709*f*
Artificial corridors, 1271*f*, 1272
Artificial selection, 474, **475***f*, 476, 651, 823, 836*f*, 837
Artiodactyls, 745*f*
Ascending limb, loop of Henle, 988*f*, 989
Asci, **663**
Ascocarps, **663***f*
Ascomycetes, 660*f*, **663***f*–664*f*, 665*t*, 671*f*
Asexual reproduction, **255**, **833**, **1020**
  in angiosperms, 833*f*–836*f*
  in bryophytes, 625
  evolution of, in animals, 266, 267*f*
  in fungi, 658*f*–659*f*
  inheritance in, 255*f*
  in lichens, 668*f*–669*f*
  mechanisms of, 1020
  in protists, 594
  in rotifers, 697–698
  sexual reproduction vs., 255*f*, 833–834, 1021, 1022*f*. *See also* Sexual reproduction
  switch to, 268
  of triploid organisms, 268
Asian army ants (*Leptogenys distinguenda*), 1001*f*
Asian elephant, 474*f*
Asian ladybird beetles, 475*f*
A site (aminoacyl-tRNA binding site), **350***f*, 352*f*–353*f*
A soil horizon, 806*f*
Asparagine, 77*f*
Aspartic acid, 77*f*
Aspen trees (*Populus tremuloides*), 791*f*, 833*f*
Aspirin, 651, 1001, 1013–1014, 1112
Assassin bugs, 712*f*
Assembly stage, phage lytic cycle, 402*f*
Association areas, cerebral cortex, 1096
Associative learning, **1146***f*
Asteroidea, 713, 714*f*
Asters, 238*f*, 240*f*
Asthma, 62, 217, 933, 1012
Astragalus bones, 481*f*
Astrobiologists, 50
Astrocytes, 1090*f*
Asymmetrical cell division, 777*f*
Asymmetric carbon, 61*f*–62*f*, 68, 75
Asymmetry, body, 1059–1060, 1061*f*, 1064*f*
Atherosclerosis, 74, 75, 139, 141, **937***f*, 938–939
Athletes
  abuse of anabolic steroids by, 1014
  blood doping by, 936
Athlete's foot, 670
Atlantic lobster (*Homarus americanus*), 979
Atlantic salmon (*Salmo salar*), 89
Atmosphere
  animal evolution and oxygen in, 677
  carbon dioxide in, 11
  Earth's early, 526*f*–527*f*
  global climate change and carbon dioxide in, 1278*f*, 1279, 1282, 1283*f*
  ozone in, 1283*f*, 1284
  photosynthesis and oxygen in, 533, 534*f*
Atomic mass, **31**
Atomic mass unit (amu), 31
Atomic nucleus, **30***f*, 31
Atomic number, **31**
Atoms, **30***f*–36*f*, 37
ATP (adenosine triphosphate), **64**, **150**
  in bioenergetics, 890*f*
  catabolic pathways and production of, 165
  conversion of, to cyclic AMP, 223*f*–224*f*
  in DNA replication, 324
  energy coupling and, 150, 151*f*–153*f*
  as energy for active transport, 137*f*
  as energy for membrane proteins, 130*f*
  as energy source for cellular processes, 64
  in feedback regulation of cellular respiration, 183*f*, 184
  in muscle fiber contraction speed, 1131
  phosphofructokinase and, 186
  in photosynthesis, 191*f*, 192, 197*f*–200*f*, 201, 206, 207*f*
  regeneration of, in ATP cycle, 153*f*
  regulation of regeneration of, 160
  in sliding-filament model of muscle contraction, 1126, 1127*f*, 1128
  synthesis of, by cellular respiration, 164*f*, 165, 169. *See also* Cellular respiration
  synthesis of, by fermentation and anaerobic respiration, 179, 180*f*, 181
  thylakoids and production of, 211
  in translation, 349*f*
  work as hydrolysis of, 151*f*, 152
  yield of, at each stage of cellular respiration, 177*f*, 178
ATP synthase, **175***f*–176*f*, 177, 186, 311
Atria, heart, **924***f*–927*f*
Atrial natriuretic peptide (ANP), **996**
Atrioventricular (AV) nodes, **928***f*
Atrioventricular (AV) valves, **927***f*
Attachment function, membrane protein, 130*f*
Attachment stage, phage lytic cycle, 402*f*
Auditory communication, 1141–1142
Aurea mutant tomato, 844*f*, 845
Australia, 481*f*, 539–540, 605*f*, 742–744
Australian moles, 558*f*, 559
Australian thorny devil lizard (*Moloch horridus*), 737*f*
Australopiths, 749, 750*f*
Autism spectrum disorder, 1100
Autocrine signaling, 1000*f*, **1001**
Autoimmune diseases, **971***f*
Autonomic arousal, 1096
Autonomic nervous system, **1088***f*–1089*f*
Autophagy, 107*f*, 108
Autopolyploids, **514***f*
Autosomes, **257**

Autotrophs, **188***f*, 581*t*, 586, 889, 894*f*, 1240f
Auxin, 845, 846*t*, 847*f*, **848***f*, 849*f*, 850, 854*f*, 861
Avery, Mary Ellen, 943, 944*f*
Avery, Oswald, 315
Avian flu, 410, 1234, 1235*f*
Avogadro's number, 50
Axel, Richard, 1124
Axillary buds, **761**
Axis formation, 385*f*–386*f*, 387, 1059, 1060*f*
Axolotls, 544, 545*f*, 921*f*
Axons, 879*f*, 1067, **1068***f*, 1076*f*–1077*f*, 1084, 1086–1087, 1089*f*, 1090
Azidothymidine (AZT), 409
Azolla, 813*f*, 817

B

Bacillus anthracis, 575*f*, 584*f*
Bacillus thuringiensis, 837, 838*f*
Backbone, nucleic acid, 86*f*
Backbone, polypeptide, 78*f*
Bacteria, **12***f*
  alcohol fermentation by, 180*f*
  anaerobic respiration in, 179–180
  antibiotic drugs and, 349
  antibiotic resistance in, 478*f*, 581
  binary fission in, 242, 243*f*
  bioremediation using, 1255*f*
  Cas9 protein of, 360, 361*f*
  cell signaling in, 213*f*, 214
  cell structure of, 97*f*
  cellular integration and, 121*f*
  cholera and, 224
  conjugation in, 579, 580*f*, 581
  as decomposers, 1240*f*
  in digestive systems, 912, 913*f*–914*f*
  diversity of, 1223*f*
  as DNA cloning vectors, 418*f*, 419
  DNA packing in chromosomes of, 330–331
  DNA replication in, 322*f*–327*f*
  domain, 12*f*, 568, 569*f*, 583*f*–584*f*, 585*t*
  evidence for DNA in research on, 315*f*–316*f*, 317
  evolution of cell division in, 242, 243*f*
  evolution of glycolysis in, 182
  expressing cloned eukaryotic genes in, 422–423
  flagellum, movement of, 993*f*
  genome sizes and number of genes for, 448*t*, 449
  G proteins and infections by, 218*f*
  Gram staining of, 574, 575*f*
  immune system recognition of, 952*f*
  land colonization by, 536
  as model organism. *See Escherichia coli*
  mutualistic and pathogenic, 587, 588*f*, 813*f*
  nitrogen-fixing, and plants, 814*f*–816*f*, 817, 1244
  nutrient limitations and, 1244
  origin of photosynthesis in, 533, 534*f*
  origins of mitochondria and chloroplasts, 109, 110*f*
  in Permian mass extinction, 540
  photosynthesis of, 188*f*, 189, 199
  phylogeny of, 583*f*–584*f*, 585
  plant defenses against, 866
  in polymerase chain reaction, 421, 422*f*
  prokaryotic cells of, 6*f*, 97. *See also* Prokaryotes; Prokaryotic cells
  regulation of transcription in, 365*f*–369*f*, 370
  relatedness of, to mitochondria, 595
  reproduction rate of, 592
  root mutualism with, 592
  soil, 807
  transcription and translation in, 339*f*, 355*f*
  transcription in, 342, 343*f*–344*f*
  translation in. *See* Translation
  viral infections of. *See* Phages
Bacteriophages (phages), **315**, **401**
  capsids of, 400*f*, 401
  Cas9 protein and, 360, 361*f*
  defense against, 404*f*
  in DNA research, 315*f*–316*f*, 317
  in fighting infections, 872, 931
  prophages and temperate, 402, 403*f*
  replicative cycles of, 402*f*–404*f*
  in transduction, 579*f*
  virulent, 402*f*
Bacteriorhodopsin, 129*f*
Bacteroides thetaiotaomicron, 587
Bacteroids, **816***f*, 817
Bada, Jeffrey, 58
Bait-and-switch defense, 600–601
Baker, C. S., 557*f*
Baker's yeast. *See Saccharomyces cerevisiae*
Balance, body, 1112*f*–1116*f*, 1135
Balancer, 1066
Balancing selection, **500**, 501*f*–503*f*
Balanus balanoides, 1216*f*
Baleen, 903*f*
Ball-and-socket joints, 1134*f*
Ball-and-stick models, 39*f*, 59*f*
Ballooning, spider, 708
Ball pythons, 892
Banana, 268, 313
Banana slugs, 1155, 1156*f*
Barbiturates, 104–105
Barbs, 645*f*
Bar graphs in Scientific Skills Exercises, 23, 179, 376, 483, 590, 629, 700, 762, 864, 1150, 1186, 1217
Bark, **774**
Bark beetles, 1244*f*, 1245, 1280*f*
Barley, 650*f*, 851*f*
Barnacles, 708–709, 710*f*, 1216*f*
Barr, Murray, 300
Barr body, **300***f*, 309
Barrier contraceptives, 1038*f*
Barrier defenses, 953–954
Barrier reefs, 1182*f*
Basal angiosperms, **649**, 650*f*
Basal animals, 682, 683*f*, 684, 690
Basal body, **115**, 116*f*
Basal cells, 828*f*
Basal lamina, 929*f*
Basal-like breast cancer, 393*f*
Basal metabolic rate (BMR), **890***f*–891*f*, 892
Basal nuclei, 1093*f*
Basal surface, epithelial, 877*f*
Basal taxon, 556*f*, **557**
Base pairing, DNA and RNA, 86*f*, 319*f*–321*f*
Bases, **51**
  amino acids as, 76, 77*f*
  buffers and, 52–53
  hydrogen ions, acids, and, 51
  pH scale and, 51, 52*f*
Basidiocarps, **666***f*
Basidiomycetes, 657, 660*f*, **665***f*–667*f*
Basidiospores, 666*f*
Basidium, **665**
Basilar membrane, 1113*f*
Basin wetlands, 1179*f*
Basking, reptilian, 735–736
Basophils, 934*f*–935*f*
Bass fishes, 881*f*
Bassham, James, 191
Batesian mimicry, 1218*f*, **1219**, 1237
Batrachochytrium dendrobatidis, 669, 670*f*
Bats, 15*f*, 717, 825*f*, 991*f*, 992, 1262*f*
Bautista, Diana, 92
B cells, **958***f*–960, 961*f*–966*f*
  DNA of, 976
Bdelloid rotifers, 266, 267*f*, 698
Beach mouse (*Peromyscus polionotus*), 2*f*, 20*f*–21*f*
Beadle, George, 336*f*–338*f*
Beagle, HMS, C. Darwin's voyage on, 471, 472*f*
Beaks
  finch, 473*f*, 486*f*–487*f*
  shapes of bird, 740*f*
  soapberry bug, 477*f*, 478
Beans, 829*f*–830*f*, 858*f*, 899
Bears, 145*f*, 510*f*, 1268*f*, 1269
Beavers, 1226*f*
Bed bugs, 712*f*
Beech trees, 1170*f*
Bees, 298*f*, 712*f*, 824*f*, 887
Beetles, 475*f*, 712*f*, 717, 1244*f*, 1245, 1259, 1280*f*
Behavior, **1140**. *See also* Animal behavior
Behavioral ecology, **1140**
Behavioral isolation, 508*f*
Beijerinck, Martinus, 399
Belding's ground squirrels, 1156, 1158, 1159*f*, 1193*t*, 1194*f*, 1195, 1213
Beluga whales, 1111*f*
Benign tumors, **249**
Bennettitales, 648*f*
Benson, Andrew, 191
Benthic zone, **1177***f*
Benthos, **1177**
Bergmann, Christian, 897
Berthold, Peter, 1157*f*
β_2-adrenergic receptor, 217*f*, 220
β-amyloid, 1104
β chain, 959*f*
β-galactosidase, 159*f*, 368*f*
β-globin, 87, 89, 357*f*, 358, 364
β-globin gene family, 453*f*
β-keratin, bird feathers and, 738*f*, 739
β pleated sheet, **80***f*
Beta-carotene, 838*f*
Beta cells, 916*f*
Beta oxidation, **183**
BGI (formerly Beijing Genome Institute), 444
bicoid gene, 386*f*–387*f*, 463
Biennials, 766
Big-bang reproduction, 1200
Bilateral symmetry
  animal, 679, 680*f*, 683
  axis formation and, 1059, 1060*f*
  flower, 644*f*, 649*f*
Bilaterians, **677**
  chordates, 719*f*
  Deuterostomia, 713
  Ecdysozoans, 705
  invertebrates, 686*f*
  Lophotrochozoans, 694
  origin of, 677
  phylogeny of, 683*f*, 717
Bilayers, phospholipid. *See* Phospholipid bilayers
Bile, **909**, 915*f*
Binary fission, **242**, 243*f*, 577–578, 606, 607*f*
Binding sites, ribosome, 350*f*
Binomials (nomenclature), 470, **554**, 555*f*
Biochemical pathways. *See* Metabolic pathways
Biochemistry, 96
Biodiversity
  angiosperm, 649*f*–650*f*. *See also* Angiosperms
  animal. *See* Animals
  of bacteria and archaea. *See* Archaea; Bacteria
  cellular structures and, 125
  classification of, 470
  climate change effects on, 1279
  conservation biology and, 1261. *See also* Conservation biology
  current crisis of, 1260*f*–1262*f*
  effects of mass extinctions on, 540*f*–542*f*
  evolution and, 14*f*–16*f*, 473. *See also* Evolution
  of fungi. *See* Fungi
  gymnosperm, 641, 642*f*–643*f*
  habitat loss and fragmentation and, 1263, 1264*f*
  human welfare and, 1262, 1263*f*
  invertebrate. *See* Invertebrates
  landscape ecology and regional conservation to sustain, 1270, 1271*f*–1274*f*
  levels of, 1261*f*–1262*f*
  plant. *See* Plants
  protection of, 1260
  protist. *See* Protists
  resurrection of, 1266
  within species, 507*f*
  sustainable development and, 1284, 1285*f*, 1286
  taxonomy and classification of, 12*f*–13*f*
  threats to, 1260*f*, 1261, 1263, 1264*f*–1266*f*
  tree of life and, 15*f*–16*f*. *See also* Phylogenetic trees; Phylogenies; Tree of life
  tropical deforestation as threat to, 651*f*, 652
  unity in, 13*f*–14*f*, 26, 469, 473
  vertebrate. *See* Vertebrates
Biodiversity hot spots, **1272***f*
Bioenergetics, **144**, **889**. *See also* Metabolism
  energy allocation and use in, 889, 890*f*
  energy budgets in, 892
  energy costs of foraging in, 1149
  influences on metabolic rate in, 891*f*, 892
  of locomotion, 1136
  metabolic rates and thermoregulation in, 890–891
  of osmoregulation, 980
  principles of, 163
  thyroid regulation of, 1009
  torpor, hibernation, and energy conservation in, 892, 893*f*
  of urea and uric acid wastes, 983
Biofilms, 213, **582***f*
Biofortification, 838*f*
Biofuels, 671*f*, **838**
Biogenic amines, 1081*t*

Biogeochemical cycles, **1249***f*–1252*f*. *See also* Energy flow and chemical cycling
Biogeographic factors, community diversity and, 1231, 1232*f*–1234*f*
Biogeography, **482***f*, 483
Bioinformatics, **9**, **87**, **443**
  in analysis of protein structure, 83
  centralized resources of, for genome analysis, 444, 445*f*
  genome analysis using genomics and, 443
  genomics, proteomics, and, 86, 87*f*
  identifying protein-coding genes using gene annotation in, 445–446
  in study of genomes, 9
  systems biology and proteomics in study of genes and gene expression in, 446, 447*f*–448*f*
Biological augmentation, **1255**
Biological clocks, 857, 858*f*–860*f*, **1094**–1095. *See also* Circadian rhythms
Biological Dynamics of Forest Fragments Project, 1271*f*
Biological magnification, **1275**, 1276*f*
Biological molecules. *See also* Organic compounds
  analyzing polypeptide sequence data of, 87, 89
  carbohydrates as. *See* Carbohydrates
  four classes of, 66
  genomics and proteomics in study of, 86, 87*f*
  lipids as, 72, 73*f*–75*f*
  macromolecules as polymers of monomers and, 66*f*–67*f*
  as measures of evolution, 87, 89
  nucleic acids as, 84, 85*f*–86*f*
  proteins as. *See* Proteins
Biological species concept, **507***f*–510*f*
Biology, **3**
  astrobiology in, 50*f*
  biodiversity in. *See* Animals; Biodiversity; Plants
  biophilia and, 1285*f*
  cells in. *See* Cells
  classification in. *See* Cladistics; Phylogenies; Systematics; Taxonomy
  connection of, to chemistry. *See* Chemistry
  conservation biology in. *See* Conservation biology
  developmental biology in, 1057
  ecology in. *See* Ecology
  emergent properties at levels of biological organization in, 4–6, 4*f*–5*f*
  evolutionary developmental (evo-devo) biology in, 387, 463, 544
  evolution as theme of, 2, 3, 11, 12*f*–16*f*. *See also* Evolution
  expression and transmission of genetic information in, 6, 7*f*–8*f*. *See also* Genetics
  genomics and proteomics in, 86, 87*f*
  interactions in biological systems in, 10*f*–11*f*. *See also* Interactions
  molecular biology in. *See* Molecular biology
  organization in, 4*f*–5*f*, 6
  science of, 3, 16, 17*f*–24*f*. *See also* Case studies; Inquiry Figures; Research Method Figures; Scientific Skills Exercises
  sociobiology in, 1159–1160
  systems biology in, 5–6, 446, 447*f*–448*f*
  transfer and transformation of energy and matter in, 9*f*. *See also* Energy
  unifying themes of, 2*f*–11*f*
Bioluminescence, 143*f*
Biomass, **838**, **1223**, 1241–1242
Biomass pyramid, 1247*f*, 1248
Biomes, **1171**. *See also* Aquatic biomes; Biosphere; Global ecology; Terrestrial biomes
  aquatic, 1177*f*–1182*f*
  terrestrial, 1171*f*–1176*f*, 1189
Biophilia, 1262, 1285*f*
Bioremediation, **591***f*, 809, **1253**
  ecosystem restoration using, 1253, 1255*f*
Biorhythms, melatonin and, 1015
Biosphere, **4f, 1165**f. *See also* Earth
  aquatic biomes of, 1177*f*–1182*f*
  biomes of. *See* Aquatic biomes; Terrestrial biomes
  climate of, 1166*f*–1170*f*
  ecological role of prokaryotes in, 586*f*–587*f*
  future of, 1285*f*, 1286
  global climate change of. *See* Climate change
  global ecology of, 1165*f*. *See also* Global ecology
  human population, and carrying capacity of, 1209, 1210*f*, 1211
  importance of seedless vascular plants to, 633–634
  as level of biological organization, 4*f*
  photosynthesis as process that feeds, 188*f*. *See also* Photosynthesis
  terrestrial biomes of, 1171*f*–1176*f*, 1189
Biosynthetic pathways, 144, 183
Biotechnology, **433**
  DNA technology. *See* DNA technology
  evolution and, 441
  genetic code and, 342*f*, 441
  genetic engineering of plants, 837, 838*f*, 839–840
  in genetic testing, 288, 289*f*
  genome-sequencing, 9
  phytoremediation, 809
  practical applications of, 433, 434*f*–437*f*, 438–439
  prokaryotes in, 589, 590*f*–591*f*
  science, society, and, 23, 24*f*
Biotic factors, **1170**
  microclimate and, 1169–1170
  in pollination, 824*f*–825*f*
  in species distributions, 1178, 1183*f*–1184*f*
Biotic stresses, plant, **862**, 866, 867*f*–869*f*
Bipedal animals, 750*f*, 1135
Bipolar cells, 1118*f*, 1120, 1121*f*
Bipolar disorder, **1103**
Birds
  adaptations of kidneys of, 992*f*
  alimentary canals in, 905*f*
  avian flu in, 1234, 1235*f*
  axis formation in, 1060
  brains of, 1091*f*
  breathing by, 925, 944, 945*f*
  cleavage in, 1048
  DDT and, 1276*f*
  derived characters of, 738*f*, 739
  as descended from dinosaurs, 564*f*, 565
  endangered or threatened, 1261, 1262*f*
  evolution of, 679
  evolution of cognition and brains of, 1098, 1099*f*
  evolution of finches, 473*f*, 486*f*–487*f*
  evolution of genes in, 456, 457*f*
  flight adaptations of, 1135–1136
  flower pollination by, 825*f*
  gastrulation in, 1052*f*
  genetic variation in migration patterns of, 1156, 1157*f*
  greater prairie chicken, 495*f*, 496, 1267*f*
  hearing and equilibrium in, 1116
  limb formation in, 1062, 1063*f*, 1064
  living, 739, 740*f*
  migration behaviors of, 1140, 1141*f*
  nitrogenous wastes of, 982*f*, 983*f*
  organogenesis in, 1055*f*
  origin of, 739*f*
  phylogeny of, 719*f*
  plastic waste and, 1277*f*
  as pollinators, 522
  populations of, 1190*f*
  problem solving of, 1147
  red-cockaded woodpecker decline, 1269*f*–1270*f*
  salt excretion in marine, 982*f*
  sex determination of, 298*f*
  species-area curves for, 1232*f*
  thermoregulation in, 886*f*
  unity and diversity of, 14*f*
  wings of, 739, 740*f*
Birth control, human, 1037, 1038*f*, 1039
Birth control pills, **1038***f*, 1039
Birth defects, human, 902*f*, 1039–1040
Births
  demographics of, 1193*t*, 1194*f*–1195*f*
  in density-dependent population growth, 1203*f*–1205*f*
  in exponential population growth, 1196, 1197*f*
  in population dynamics, 1192
Births, human
  birth defects in, 902*f*
  effects of vitamin supplementation on neural tube defects in, 902*f*
  life-expectancy at, 1208–1209
  newborn screening and, 289–290
  stages of labor in, 1036, 1037*f*
  zero population growth and, 1208
Bisphenol A, 1015
Bitter tastes, 1123*f*–1124*f*
Bivalves, 699, 701*f*–702*f*
Black-bellied seedcracker finches, 498
Black bread mold, 662*f*, 663
Black-breasted hill turtle (*Geoemyda spengleri*), 736*f*
Black-capped chickadees (*Poecile atricapillus*), 517*f*
Blackcap warblers, 1156, 1157*f*
Black rush plants, 1221*f*
Blacktip reef sharks (*Carcharhinus melanopterus*), 727*f*
Bladderwort, 448*t*, 449
Blades, **602**, 603*f*, **761**
Blastocoel, **1047***f*
Blastocysts, 430, 431*f*, **1034**, 1035*f*, **1052**, 1053*f*
Blastomeres, **1047***f*
Blastopores, **682***f*, **1050***f*, 1062*f*
BLAST program, 444, 445*f*
Blastula, **674***f*, 1044, **1047***f*
Blebbing, 229*f*–230*f*
Blending hypothesis on inheritance, 271
Blindness, 311, 495, 584*f*, 1122
Blind spot, eye, 1118*f*
Blood, **878***f*, **923**. *See also* Blood pressure; Blood vessels
  ABO blood groups for human, 280*f*, 292
  animal thermoregulation and, 885, 886*f*
  apoptosis of human white blood cells, 229*f*
  blood groups of, 969–970
  cell division of bone marrow cells and, 235*f*
  cholesterol in, and atherosclerosis, 75
  in closed circulatory systems, 707, 923, 923*f*. *See also* Cardiovascular systems; Closed circulatory systems
  clotting of, 10, 300, 418*f*, 436, 703*f*, 704, 936*f*, 937
  components of, 934*f*–936*f*, 937
  diffusion from, to interstitial fluid across capillary walls, 932, 933*f*
  enzymes and glucose levels in, 157
  filtration of, by nephrons, 987, 988*f*, 989
  flow velocity of, 930*f*
  gas exchange systems and components of, 947*f*–949*f*
  glucose level regulation in, 10*f*
  glycoproteins and types of human, 131
  hormones in, 999
  immune system rejection of transfusions of, 969–970
  melatonin concentrations in human, 883*f*
  pH of human, 52*f*, 53
  regulation of calcium levels in, 1011*f*
  sickle-cell disease and. *See* Sickle-cell disease
  small intestine and, 125
  vampire bat digestion of, 991*f*, 992
Blood-brain barrier, 1090
Blood doping, 936
Blood flow velocity, 930*f*
Blood flukes, 696*f*, 1220
Blood groups, 280*f*, 969–970
Bloodhounds, 1138
Bloodletting, 703*f*, 704
Blood pressure
  cardiac cycle changes in, 930, 951
  in closed circulatory systems, 925
  gravity and, 931*f*–932*f*, 951
  hormonal regulation of, 994*f*–996*f*
  hypertension and, 939
  regulation of, 930–931
Blood vessels
  blood flow velocity in, 930*f*
  blood pressure in, 930, 931*f*–932*f*, 951
  capillary function, 932*f*–933*f*
  lymphatic systems and, 933*f*
  structure and function of, 929*f*, 930
  Viagra and, 224
Blooms
  algal, 1227*f*, 1242, 1243*f*
  diatom, 602
  dinoflagellate, 605*f*
  nitrogen pollution and phytoplankton, 1275*f*
Blowfly, 825*f*
Blueberry maggot fly (*Rhagoletis mendax*), 508*f*
Blue crab, 1237
Blue dragons (*Glaucus atlanticus*), 686*f*
Bluefin tuna, 1265*f*
Blue-footed boobies, 508*f*
Bluehead wrasse (*Thalassoma bifasciatum*), 1020
Blue jays (*Cyanocitta cristata*), 1146*f*
Blue-light photoreceptors, **855**, 856*f*, 858–859

Blue whales, 719
Bobcat, 894*f*
Body axes, 1060*f*
Body cavities, **680**, 681*f*, 717
Body hairs, insect, 1112*f*
Body plans, **679**
  angiosperm, 648*f*
  animal, 679, 680*f*–682*f*
  arthropod, 706*f*, 707
  cell fate and. *See* Cell fate
  correlation of diversity of miRNAs with complexity of animal, 678
  fungal, 655*f*–656*f*
  hierarchical organization of animal, 876*t*, 877*f*–879*f*. *See also* Animal form and function
  homeotic genes and, 463*f*–464*f*
  human. *See* Human body
  lichen, 668*f*–669*f*
  macroevolution of, 544*f*–546*f*, 547
  maximizing body surface area in animal, 695*f*
  mollusc, 699*f*
  morphogenesis and. *See* Morphogenesis
  pattern formation of, 384, 385*f*–387*f*
  plant, as herbivore defense, 868*f*
Body size, metabolic rate and animal, 891*f*
Body temperature regulation. *See* Thermoregulation
Bog mummy, 627*f*
Bohr shift, **948***f*
Bolting, 851
Bolus, 906*f*
Bombardier beetle, 43
Bombina toads, 516, 517*f*, 520
Bombus affinis, 1170*f*
Bonasa umbellus, 1271
Bonds, chemical. *See* Chemical bonds
Bone marrow, 235*f*, 434*f*
Bone morphogenetic protein 4 (BMP-4), 1062
Bones, 725, **878***f*
  of human skeleton, 1134*f*
  of mammalian ear, 741, 742*f*
Bonobos, 460, 746*f*–747*f*
Bony fishes, 979*f*, 992, 993*f*
Book lungs, **708***f*
Boom-and-bust population cycles, 1205*f*, 1206
Borisy, Gary, 241*f*
Borrelia burgdorferi, 584*f*
Botox, 1080
Bottleneck effect, **495***f*, 496
Bottlenose dolphins, 886*f*, 1094*f*
Bottom-up control, 1226, **1227***f*
Botulism, 218*f*, 403, 584*f*, 588, 1080
Boundaries
  ecosystem, 1270, 1271*f*, 1287
Bound ribosomes, 103*f*, 104, 354*f*
Boveri, Theodor, 295
Bowden, Richard, 627*f*
Bowman's capsule, **987***f*
Box jellies, 692*f*–693*f*
Boysen-Jensen, Peter, 847*f*, 848
Brachiopods, 688*f*, **698***f*, 699, 713
Brachyistius frenatus, 1203*f*
Brainbow technology, 1085*f*
Brain cancer, 250
Brain cells, 126*f*
Brain Research through Advancing Innovative Neurotechnologies (BRAIN), 1106
Brains, **1069**. *See also* Nervous systems
  arousal and sleep functions of, 1094*f*
  biological clock regulation by, 1094–1095
  breathing control centers in human, 946*f*
  in central nervous systems, 1086*f*, 1087
  cerebral cortex and cognitive functions of, 1096, 1097*f*–1099*f*
  development of, 722*f*, 1092*f*, 1099–1100
  disorders of, 1103, 1104*f*
  drug addiction and reward system of, 1103*f*
  emotional functions of, 1095*f*, 1096
  evolution of chordate and vertebrate, 722*f*
  evolution of cognition in avian pallium and human, 1098, 1099*f*
  evolution of vertebrate, 1091*f*
  frontal lobe function of, 1098
  glia in mammalian, 1069*f*
  glioblastoma cancer of, 447
  human, 748, 1092*f*–1093*f*, 1095*f*–1104*f*
  hypothalamus of human, in thermoregulation, 888, 889*f*
  imaging of, 1085*f*, 1096*f*
  information processing by, 1096, 1097*f*–1098*f*
  language and speech functions of, 1098*f*
  lateralization of cortical function of, 1098
  mammalian, 741
  Neanderthal, 752
  nervous tissue of, 879*f*
  in neuroendocrine signaling, 1007*f*–1008*f*
  neurons in, 1068, 1085*f*, 1091. *See also* Neurons
  opiate receptors in mammalian, 1082
  of primates, 747–784
  regions of, 1091*f*–1093*f*
  in sensory systems, 1109
  size of, 756
  strokes in, 937
  visual information processing in, 1121*f*
  Zika virus and, 409
Brainstem, **1092***f*–1093*f*, 1094–1095
Brain waves, 1094*f*
Branching, body surface area and, 695*f*
Branching, carbon skeleton, 60*f*
Branching, plant, 770
Branching evolution, 548–549
Branch length, phylogenetic tree, 561, 562*f*
Branch points, **555**, **556***f*
Brassinosteroids, 845, 846*t*, **854**–855
Brazil nut tree, 1202*f*
BRCA1 and *BRCA2* genes, 392*f*–393*f*, 394
Bread mold. *See Neurospora crassa*
Breakdown pathways, 144
Breast cancer, 220, 249*f*, 391, 392*f*–393*f*, 394, 433
Breasts, 1026–1027
Breathing, 756, 920, 925, **944**, 945*f*–946*f*
Breathing control centers, 946*f*
Breeding
  as artificial selection, 474, 475*f*
  plant, 823, 835–837
Brenner, Sydney, 1058–1059
Brewer's yeast. *See Saccharomyces cerevisiae*
Briggs, Robert, 428
Brightfield microscopy, 95*f*
Brine shrimp, 464*f*, 545*f*, 546
Bristlecone pine tree, 643*f*
Bristletails, 712*f*
Brittle stars, 714*f*, 715
Broca, Pierre, 1098
Broca's area, 1098*f*
Bronchi, **942**, 943*f*
Bronchioles, **943***f*
Brood bodies, 625*f*
Brown algae, 598*f*, **602**, 603*f*, 604
Brown bears, 145*f*
Brown fat, 178, 887*f*
Brown-headed cowbird (*Molothrus ater*), 1271, 1287
Brown tree snake, 1264
Brundtland, G. H., 1262
Brush border, 909*f*
Brushtail possum, 743*f*
Bryophytes, **622**–623
  ecological and economic importance of, 627*f*, 628
  evolution of, 635
  gametangia of, 625, 626*f*
  gametophytes of, 624*f*–626*f*
  gametophyte-sporophyte relationships in, 637*f*, 638
  mosses, liverworts, and hornworts as, 623, 626*f*
  as nonvascular plants, 622, 622*t*
  phylogeny of, 623*f*
  sporophytes of, 625, 626*f*
Bryozoans, 687*f*, 698*f*
B soil horizon, 806*f*
Bt toxin, 837, 838*f*, 839
Bubulcus ibis, 1183, 1184*f*, 1221*f*
Buck, Linda, 1124
Budding, 100*f*, 255*f*, 659*f*, 1020
Buff-end moth (*Phalera bucephala*), 476*f*
Buffers, **52**–53
Bugs, 712*f*
Bulbourethral glands, 1025*f*, 1026
Bulk feeders, **903***f*
Bulk flow, **791**
  as long-distance transport, 791*f*
  as translocation mechanism in angiosperms, 800, 801*f*
  of water and minerals from roots to shoots, 792, 793*f*–795*f*, 796
Bulk transport, 126
Bumblebees, 522, 1170*f*, 1279
Bundle sheath, 771*f*
Bundle-sheath cells, **203**, 204*f*
Burkholderia glathei, 586*f*
Burkitt's lymphoma, 394
Burmese pythons (*Python molurus bivittatus*), 887, 888*f*
Bush babies, 746*f*
Butterflies, 313, 551, 711*f*–712*f*, 824*f*, 839
Buttress roots, 760*f*
Buxbaum, Joseph, 462*f*

C

C_3 plants, **203**, 205
C_4 plants, **203**, 204*f*–206*f*
C_4 Rice Project, 438
Cabomba aquatica, 775*f*
Cacao tree, 667*f*, 668
Cachexia, 1016
Cactus, 799*f*, 825*f*, 1172*f*, 1178, 1183*f*
Caddisflies, 551
Cadherin proteins, 676*f*
Caecilians, 732*f*
Caenorhabditis elegans (soil nematode)
  apoptosis in, 230*f*
  fate mapping for, 1058*f*–1059*f*
  genome size and number of genes of, 448*t*, 449
  as model organism, 22, 705*f*
  nervous system of, 1086*f*, 1087
Caffeine, 233
Caimans, 925
Calcitonin, 1004*f*, **1011***f*
Calcium, 29*t*
Calcium homeostasis, 1011*f*
Calcium ions
  diffusion of, across synapses, 1077, 1078*f*
  in formation of fertilization envelope, 1045*f*, 1046
  in regulation of muscle contraction, 1128, 1129*f*, 1131–1132
  in signal transduction pathways, 224, 225*f*, 844*f*, 845
California Current, 1168*f*
California mice, 1143, 1144*t*
Callus, **835**–836
Calmodulin, 1132
Calochortus tiburonensis, 30*f*
Calories (cal), **46**, 890
Calorimeters, 890
Calvin, Melvin, 191
Calvin cycle, **191***f*, 192, 201, 202*f*, 206, 207*f*
Cambrian explosion, 533*f*, **536***f*, **677***f*, 678, 685
Camels, 980
Camouflage, 20*f*–21*f*, 23, 468*f*, 476*f*, 501*f*, 1218*f*, 1219
cAMP (cyclic AMP), **223***f*–224*f*, 233, **369***f*, 1002, 1003*f*, 1080
CAM (crassulacean acid metabolism) plants, 205, **206***f*, 798, 799*f*
cAMP receptor protein (CRP), 369*f*
Canada goose, 886*f*
Canary Islands, 1213
Cancer
  abnormal cell cycle control systems in, 248, 249*f*, 250
  abnormal protein kinases in, 222–223
  biotechnology in treatment of, 434
  carcinogen screening and, 360
  chromosomal translocations and, 309
  DNA microarray detection of, 426
  endocrine disruptors and, 1015
  faulty apoptosis in, 231
  faulty cell-surface receptors in, 217, 220
  faulty growth factors in, 226
  genetic markers for, 428
  genomics, cell signaling, and breast, 391, 392*f*–393*f*, 394
  genomics and proteomics in study and treatment of, 88*f*
  HIV and, 974
  immune system and, 974*f*
  inherited disposition and environmental factors in, 394
  interferences with normal cell-signaling pathways in development of, 389, 390*f*, 391
  lymph nodes and, 933

mismatch repair and colon, 327
multistep model of development of, 391*f*, 394
ozone depletion, UV radiation, and, 1284
personal genome analysis and, 433
personalized medicine and, 433
PET scanners and, 31, 32*f*
skin, 328, 1284
species and genetic diversity and treatments for, 1263*f*
sponges and, 691
stem cells and, 431
systems biology approach to, 447, 448*f*
telomeres and prevention of, 329
treatment of, with cell cycle inhibitor, 250
tumor-suppressor genes and, 388
types of genes associated with, 388, 389*f*
viruses in, 394–395
Cancer Genome Atlas, 392*f*–393*f*, 394, 447
Candida albicans, 670
Cane toads, 1217
Canine parvovirus, 409
Cannibalism, 413, 1237
Canopy, **1172**
Canyon tree frog, 1218*f*
Capillaries, **924***f*–926*f*, 929*f*–930*f*, 932*f*–933*f*
Capillary beds, **924**, 932*f*–933*f*
*Capra pyrenaica pyrenaic*a, 1266
Capsaicin, 1111
Capsids, **400***f*–401*f*
Capsomeres, 400*f*, 402
Capsule, 97*f*, **575***f*
Capsule, sporangium, **625**
Carbohydrates, **68**
cell-cell recognition role of membrane, 130*f*–131*f*
digestion and absorption of, 908*f*–909*f*
as fuel for catabolism, 182*f*, 183
glycoproteins and, 400–401. *See also* Glycoproteins
as macromolecules, 66
monosaccharides and disaccharides, 68*f*–69*f*, 70
oxidation of, during cellular respiration, 166–167
in plant composition, 809
polysaccharides, 70*f*–72*f*
as product of photosynthesis, 206, 207*f*
Carbon
in amino acids, 75
as essential element, 29*t*, 64
half-life of, 33
isotopes of, 31–33
in organic compounds, 58, 59*f*, 60. *See also* Organic compounds
in peatlands, 628
in plant composition, 809
Carbon-12, 530
Carbon-14, 530
Carbonate ions, 53*f*, 54
Carbon cycle, 1250*f*, 1257*f*
Carbon dioxide (CO_2)
atmospheric, 205, 1278*f*, 1279, 1282, 1283*f*
in carbon cycle, 1250*f*
in carbon fixation, 191*f*, 201, 202*f*–206*f*
covalent bonding of carbon atoms in, 59–60
diatom capture of, 602
diffusion of, across capillary walls, 932
in ecosystem interaction, 10*f*, 11
food quality and levels of, 812
fossil fuels, ocean acidification, and, 53*f*, 54
in gas exchange, 921, 939*t*, 940, 947*f*–949*f*
in global climate change, 204–205
global climate change and, 11, 48, 1170
inhibition of fruit ripening with, 854
insect effects on forest absorption of, 1245
in mammalian circulation, 926*f*
metabolic rate and, 890
net ecosystem production and, 1242, 1245
nonvascular plants and, in Ordovician period climate change, 629
in Permian mass extinction, 540
in photosynthesis, 41*f*
photosynthetic processing of, by marine protists, 615*f*
in plant cells, 209*f*
prokaryotic chemical recycling of, 586
in regulation of human breathing, 946*f*
rubisco as acceptor for, 201, 202*f*
seedless vascular plants and, 633
in *Sphagnum* peat moss, 628
as stimulus for stomatal opening and closing, 797–798
tropical rain forest deforestation and, 651*f*, 652
Carbon fixation, **191***f*, 192, 201, 202*f*–206*f*
Carbonic acid, 51, 53*f*, 54, 946
Carbon monoxide, 1082
Carbon sink, 1245
Carbon skeletons, 56, 60*f*–61*f*
Carbon source, 1245
Carbonyl group, 63*f*
Carboxyl end. *See* C-terminus
Carboxyl group, 63*f*
Carboxylic acid, 63*f*
Carcharhinus melanopterus, 727*f*
Carcinogens, 360, 388. *See also* Cancer
Cardiac cycle, **927***f*–928*f*, 930, 951
Cardiac muscle, **879***f*, **1131**
Cardiac output, **927**
Cardiomyopathy, familial, 357
Cardiovascular diseases, 74, 311, 937*f*, 938–939, 951
Cardiovascular systems, **924**
adaptations of, 947*f*–949*f*
blood composition and function in, 934*f*–937*f*, 938–939
blood vessels of, 929*f*–933*f*, 951
closed circulatory systems. *See* Circulatory systems
coordination of gas exchange systems and. *See* Gas exchange
diseases of, 74, 937*f*, 938–939, 951
effects of adrenal hormones on, 1012
evolutionary variations in double circulation of, 925
hearts and blood vessels in single and double circulation of, 924*f*, 925
hearts in mammalian, 926*f*–928*f*
lymphatic systems and, 933*f*
single and double circulation in, 924*f*–926*f*
Caribou (*Rangifer tarandus*), 490*f*, 1021, 1256*f*–1257*f*, 1281*f*
Carnegiea gigantea, 1178, 1183*f*
Carnivora, phylogenetic tree of, 555*f*, 745*f*
Carnivores, **901**
alimentary canals of, 912*f*
dentition and diet in, 911*f*, 912
energetic hypothesis and biomass of, 1225*f*
Carnivorous plants, 818, 819*f*, 820
Carolina chickadees (*Poecile carolinensis*), 517*f*
Carotenoids, 193, 194*f*, **195**, 570, 605*f*
Carpellate flowers, 834
Carpels, 270*f*, 271, **644***f*, **823***f*
Carrier proteins, 132, 135*f*–137*f*
Carriers, genetic disorder, **285***f*, 286, 288
Carrion flower, 825*f*
Carrots, 428
Carrying capacity (*K*), **1197**
global, for human population, 1209, 1210*f*, 1211
in logistic population growth model, 1198*f*–1199*f*, 1198*t*, 1200
Carson, Rachel, 1276*f*
Cartilage, **878***f*
Cartilage skeleton, 723–726
Cas9 protein, 360, 361*f*. *See also* CRISPR-Cas9 system
in gene editing, 426, 427*f*, 434–435
prokaryotes and, 589, 590*f*
Cascade
hormonal, 1008, 1009*f*, 1010, 1014
Casein, 76*f*
Case studies
on decline of red-cockaded woodpecker, 1269*f*–1270*f*
on evolution of tolerance to toxic elements, 30*f*
on greater prairie chicken extinction vortex, 1267*f*
on grizzly bear populations, 1268*f*, 1269
on kidney function in vampire bats, 991*f*, 992
on nutrient cycling in Hubbard Brook Experimental Forest, 1252*f*
on predation and mouse coat coloration, 20*f*–21*f*
sustainable development in Costa Rica, 1284, *1285f*
on variation in migratory patterns, 1156, 1157*f*
on variation in prey selection, 1155, 1156*f*
Casparian strip, **792**, 793*f*
Caspases, 230, 233
Cas protein, 404*f*
Cassava, 651, 838*f*
Castor beans, 829
Catabolic pathways, **144**, 165, 166*f*–168*f*, 182*f*–184
Catalysis, **154**, 155*f*–156*f*. *See also* Enzymatic catalysis
Catalysts, **75**, **153**. *See also* Enzymatic catalysis
Catalytic cycle, 156*f*
Catalytic knob, ATP synthase, 175*f*
Cataracts, 1284
Catecholamines, 1012*f*
Catenulida, 694
Caterpillars, 488*f*, 871, 897, 903*f*, 1006*f*, 1007, 1246*f*
Catharanthus roseus, 1263*f*
Cation exchange, **806**, 807*f*
Cations, **37**, 38*f*, 806, 807*f*
Cats, 293, 300*f*, 364, 430*f*
Catskill Mountains, 1263
Cattails (*Typha angustifolia*), 1186
Cattle, 914*f*
Cattle egrets (*Bubulcus ibis*), 1183, 1184*f*, 1221*f*
Caulerpa, 610*f*
Causation, behavioral, 1140
Cavendish banana, 268
CC (Carbon Copy, cloned cat), 430*f*
CCR5 gene, 435
CCR5 protein, 130*f*
Cdks (cyclin-dependent kinases), **245**, 246*f*
Cecum, **911***f*
Cedar Creek Ecosystem Science Reserve, 1223*f*
Celera Genomics, 443*f*
Cell adhesion molecules, 1056
Cell body, 879*f*, **1068***f*, 1079*f*
Cell-cell recognition
by cellular membranes, 130*f*, 131
in local cell signaling, 215*f*
Cell cycle, **237**. *See also* Cell cycle control system; Cell division
binary fission in bacterial, 242, 243*f*
cell division roles in, 234*f*–235*f*
cellular organization of chromosomes in, 235*f*, 236
cytokinesis in, 241, 242*f*–243*f*
distribution of chromosomes during eukaryotic, 236*f*, 237
evolution of, 252
evolution of mitosis of, 243, 244*f*
interpreting histograms on, 250
mitosis stages of, in animal cells, 238*f*–239*f*
mitotic phases and interphases of, 237*f*
mitotic spindle in mitotic phase of, 240*f*–241*f*
regulation of eukaryotic, by cell cycle control system, 244, 245*f*–249*f*, 250
treating cancer by inhibiting, 250
Cell cycle control system, **245**. *See also* Cell cycle
in cancer development, 248, 249*f*, 250, 388, 389*f*–393*f*, 394
checkpoints in, 245*f*
cyclins and cyclin-dependent kinases in, 245, 246*f*
cytoplasmic signals in, 244, 245*f*
internal and external signals at checkpoints of, as stop and go signs, 246, 247*f*–248*f*
interpreting histograms on, 250
Cell cycle–inhibiting pathway, 389, 390*f*
Cell cycle–stimulating pathway, 389, 390*f*
Cell differentiation. *See* Differentiation, cell
Cell division, **235**
bacterial, 242, 243*f*
cancer and interference with cell-signaling pathways of, 389, 390*f*, 391
in cell cycle, 234*f*–235*f*. *See also* Cell cycle
cytokinins in, 850
cytoplasmic determinants and induction in, 382*f*, 383
distribution of chromosomes during eukaryotic, 235*f*–236*f*, 237
as embryonic development process, 381*f*, 382. *See also* Embryonic development
evolution of, 243, 244*f*
of HeLa cancer cells, 252
key roles of, 235*f*
in meiosis, 259*f*–262*f*. *See also* Meiosis
in mitosis vs. in meiosis, 262, 263*f*, 264
newt lung cell, 7*f*
in plant growth, 776, 777*f*
prokaryotic, 577–578
Cell expansion, 777*f*
Cell fate, 1057–1059*f*, 1061–1064*f*
Cell fractionation, **96***f*, 97, 125
Cell-free fetal DNA, 288

Cell junctions
in local cell signaling, 215*f*
plasmodesmata in plants, 119*f*, 120
tight junctions, desmosomes, and gap junctions in animals, 120*f*
Cell-mediated immune response, 957*f*, **963**, 966*f*–967*f*
Cell migration
in organogenesis, 1054*f*, 1055
Cell motility, 112, 113*t*, 114, 115*f*–117*f*, 1056*f*
Cell plate, **241**, 242*f*–243*f*
Cells, **5***f*, **759**
animal. *See* Animal cells
auxin in differentiation of, 850
auxin in elongation of, 848, 849*f*
blood, 934*f*–936*f*, 937
calculating volume and surface area of, 99
cell fractionation in study of, 96*f*, 97
cellular integration of, 121*f*
cellular membranes of. *See* Cellular membranes
cellular respiration and. *See* Cellular respiration
climate change effects on, 1280*f*
communication between. *See* Cell signaling
cytokinins in division and differentiation of, 850
differentiation of. *See* Differentiation, cell
division of, as fundamental to life, 235. *See also* Cell cycle; Cell division
eukaryotic vs. prokaryotic, 97*f*–98*f*, 99. *See also* Eukaryotic cells; Prokaryotic cells
as fundamental units of life, 5*f*–6*f*, 93*f*
locations of enzymes in, 161*f*
metabolism of. *See* Metabolism
microscopy in study of, 94*f*–95*f*, 96
molecular machinery in, 122*f*–123*f*
photosynthesis and. *See* Photosynthesis
plant. *See* Plant cells
programmed death of. *See* Apoptosis
programming of, by viral DNA, 315*f*–316*f*, 317
protein folding in, 83*f*
protocells as first, 528*f*
sequential gene regulation in differentiation of, 383, 384*f*
shape changes in animal morphogenesis, 1056*f*–1057*f*
in sickle-cell disease, 502*f*
size range of, 94*f*
of small intestine, 125
stem cells. *See* Stem cells
transcription specific to type of, 374–375, 377*f*
unity in, 13*f*
water regulation of, 142
Cell sap, 108
Cell signaling. *See also* Signal transduction pathways
by animal endocrine and nervous systems, 880*f*
in apoptosis, 229*f*–231*f*
cancer and interference with normal, 389, 390*f*, 391
in cell cycle control system, 244, 245*f*–248*f*. *See also* Cell cycle control system
cellular membrane selective permeability and, 130*f*
cilia in, 114
endocrine system, 1000*f*–1004*f*
evolution of, 213*f*, 214, 233
feedback regulation of, 1005–1006
fight-or-flight responses in, 212*f*
local and long-distance, 215*f*, 216
mechanical, 119
pathways of. *See* Endocrine signaling; Neuroendocrine signaling
reception stage of, 217*f*–221*f*
response stage of, 226*f*–228*f*, 229
in simple endocrine pathway, 1004, 1005*f*
in simple neuroendocrine pathway, 1005*f*
symplastic, 801–802
three stages of, 216*f*, 217
transduction stage of, 221, 222*f*–225*f*
Cell-surface proteins, 119*f*, 130*f*
Cell-surface receptor tyrosine kinases (RTKs), 250
Cell-surface transmembrane receptors, 217*f*–220*f*
Cellular hormone response pathways, 1002*f*–1003*f*
Cellular innate immune defenses, 954, 955*f*
Cellular-level herbivore defenses, plant, 868*f*
Cellular membranes. *See also* Plasma membranes
active transport across, 136, 137*f*–138*f*, 139
animal, 674
bulk transport across, by exocytosis and endocytosis, 139, 140*f*, 141
evolution of differences in lipid composition of, 129
fluidity of, 128*f*, 129
as fluid mosaics of lipids and proteins, 127*f*, 128
interpreting scatter plots on glucose uptake across, 136
membrane carbohydrates in cell-cell recognition by, 130*f*–131*f*
membrane proteins of, 129*f*–130*f*, 132
of mitochondria, 110, 111*f*
movement across plant cell, 209*f*
nuclear envelopes, 102, 103*f*
organelles and internal, 98*f*, 99
passive transport as diffusion across, 132, 133*f*–135*f*
phospholipids in, 74*f*, 75
in plant response to cold stress, 865
selective permeability of, 127*f*, 131, 132*f*
specialized prokaryotic, 577*f*
synthesis and sidedness of, 131*f*
Cellular respiration, **165**
ATP production by catabolic pathways and, 165
ATP yield at each stage of, 177*f*, 178
bar graphs of, 179
biosynthesis in anabolic pathways and, 183
in carbon cycle, 1250*f*
as catabolic, 144, 165
in energy flow and chemical cycling, 9*f*, 164*f*, 165
enzymes for, in mitochondria, 161*f*
evolutionary significance of glycolysis in, 182
fermentation vs., 165, 179, 180*f*–181*f*, 182
glycolysis in, 170*f*–171*f*
metabolic rate and, 890*f*
mitochondria in, 109–110, 111*f*
monosaccharides in, 69
origin of, 534, 535*f*
overall reaction for, 149
oxidative phosphorylation in, 174*f*–177*f*
oxygen diffusion and, 133
photosynthesis vs., 190. *See also* Photosynthesis
in plant cells, 209*f*
pyruvate oxidation and citric acid cycle in, 171*f*–173*f*
redox reactions and, 165, 166*f*–168*f*
regulation of, via feedback mechanisms, 183*f*, 184
scale of, 122*f*
stages of, 168, 169*f*
using cell fractionation to study, 97
versatility of catabolic pathways and, 182*f*, 183
Cellular slime molds, 612, 613*f*
Cellulose, **71**
microfibrils, 777*f*
in plant cell walls, 70*f*–71*f*, 72, 118
as product of photosynthesis, 206, 207*f*
proteins synthesizing, 619*f*
water and, 49
Cellulose synthase, 118
Cell walls, **118**
cellulose in plant, 619
fungal cell, 100*f*, 661
osmosis, water balance, and, 134*f*–135*f*
plant cell, 101*f*, 118*f*
prokaryotic, 97*f*, 574, 575*f*
Cenozoic era, 530*f*, 533*f*, 539*f*, 679
Center for Plant Conservation, 1261
Centipedes, 708, 709*f*
Central axis, 680*f*
Central canal, 1087*f*
Central disk, sea star, 714*f*
Central dogma, DNA, 339
Central nervous system (CNS), **1069**, **1086**. *See also* Brains
neuronal plasticity of, **1100***f*
neurons of, 1069
neurotransmitters and, 1080
peripheral nervous system and, 1086, 1087*f*–1090*f*
in sensory systems, 1108–1109
structure and function of vertebrate, 1087*f*–1088*f*
Central vacuoles, 101*f*, **108***f*
Centrifuge, 96*f*, 97
Centrioles, **114***f*
Centromeres, **236***f*, 264
Centromeric DNA, 452
Centrosomes, 100*f*, **114***f*, 238*f*, **240***f*
Centrostephanus rodgersii, 1281*f*
Century plants, 1200, 1201*f*
Cephalization, 1086–1087
Cephalochordata (lancelets), 719*f*, **720**, 721*f*–722*f*
Cephalopods, 699, 701*f*, 702
Ceratotherium simum cottoni, 1266
Cercozoans, **608***f*, 609
Cerebellum, 1091*f*, **1092***f*–1093*f*
Cerebral cortex, **1093***f*, 1096, 1097*f*–1099*f*, 1100, 1114
Cerebral ganglia, 704*f*–710*f*
Cerebral hemispheres, 1093*f*
Cerebrospinal fluid, 946*f*, 1087*f*
Cerebrum, 1091*f*, **1092***f*–1093*f*, 1094
Certainty of paternity, 1150, 1151*f*
Cervical cancer, 974*f*
Cervix, **1026**, 1027*f*
Cetaceans, 481*f*–482*f*, 745*f*
Cetartiodactyla, 745*f*
cGMP (cyclic GMP), 224, 844*f*, 845
Chaetae, 703, 704*f*
Chagas' disease, 600
Chain worms, 694
Chambered nautilus, 701*f*, 702
Chameleons, 673*f*, 735*f*
Chamerion angustifolium, 636*f*
Chamois (*Rupicapra rupicapra*), 901*f*
Change, global. *See* Global change
Change, spontaneous, 148*f*
Channel proteins, 132, 135*f*, 136
Chaparral biomes, **1174***f*
Character displacement, **1216**, 1217*f*, 1237
Characters, **270**
dominant vs. recessive traits and, 271*f*, 272*t*
multifactorial, 282*f*
shared ancestral and shared derived, 560, 561*f*
taxonomy and, 554
traits and, 270–271
Character tables, 561*f*
Charadrius melodus, 1190*f*
Chargaff, Edwin, 317*f*, 318
Chargaff's rules, 317*f*, 318, 320
Charged tRNA, 349*f*
Charophytes, 610, 619*f*–620*f*
Charpentier, Emmanuelle, 426
Chase, Martha, 316*f*, 317
Cheating behavior, 1159
Checkpoints, cell cycle control system, **245***f*–247*f*
Cheetahs, 212*f*, 1204*f*
Chelicerae, **708**
Chelicerates, **707**, 708*f*
Chemical bonds, **36**
with carbon, 56, 58, 59*f*, 60
covalent, 36*f*–37*f*
hydrogen bonds, 38, **39***f*
ionic, 37, 38*f*
van der Waals interactions, 39
Chemical cycling
in ecosystems, 1238*f*–1240*f*, 1241
Chemical cycling, energy flow and. *See* Biogeochemical cycles; Energy flow and chemical cycling
Chemical defense, prey, 1218*f*
Chemical digestion, 907*f*–908*f*, 909
Chemical energy, 143–**144**, 145*f*, 889, 890*f*. *See also* Cellular respiration; Photosynthesis
Chemical equilibrium, **41**
buffers and, 52–53
in chemical reactions, 41
free energy change and, 147, 148*f*
metabolism and, 148, 149*f*–150*f*
Chemical mutagens, 360
Chemical reactions, **40**
activation energy barrier of, 153, 154*f*–155*f*
chemical energy in, 144, 145*f*
endergonic, 148, 149*f*
enzymatic catalysis of. *See* Enzymatic catalysis
exergonic, 148, 149*f*, 154*f*, 165
free energy change and, 147, 148*f*
making and breaking of chemical bonds by, 40*f*–41*f*
metabolism and. *See* Metabolism
in photosynthesis, 190*f*, 191. *See also* Light reactions
Chemical signals, 1068. *See also* Animal hormones; Hormones; Plant hormones
Chemical structure, DNA, 319*f*
Chemical synapses, 1077, 1078*f*. *See also* Synapses
Chemical work, 150–151, 152*f*
Chemiosmosis, 169, 175, **176***f*–177*f*, 191*f*, 199*f*–200*f*, 201
Chemistry
atoms in, 30*f*–36*f*
biological molecules in. *See* Biological molecules

calculating standard radioactive isotope decay curves in, 33
chemical bonding between atoms in, 36*f*–41*f*
chemical bonding with carbon in, 58, 59*f*, 60
connection to biology. *See* Biology
matter as elements and compounds in, 29*f*–30*f*. *See also* Compounds; Molecules
organic, as study of carbon compounds, 57*f*, 58. *See also* Organic compounds
of water. *See* Water
Chemoautotrophs, 581*t*
Chemoheterotrophs, 581*t*
Chemoreceptors, **1110**, 1111*f*, 1123*f*–1125*f*
Chemosynthetic organisms, 1240
Chemotaxis, 576
Chemotherapy, 249, 393*f*
Chemotrophs, 581*t*
Chesapeake Bay estuary food web, 1225*f*, 1237
Chestnut blight, 669, 867, 1226, 1234
Chewing, 920
Chiasmata, **260***f*, 262*f*–263*f*, 264
Chickadees, 517*f*
Chicken pox, 962
Chicks
embryo image, 1043*f*
gastrulation in, 1052*f*
limb formation in, 1062, 1063*f*, 1064
organogenesis in, 1055*f*
Chicxulub crater, 541*f*
Chief cells, 907*f*
Chikungunya virus, 409*f*, 412
Childbirth, human, 1036, 1037*f*. *See also* Births, human
Chimaeras, 719*f*, 726, 727*f*
Chimpanzees (*Pan troglodytes*)
comparison of human genome with genome of, 87, 89, 454*f*–455*f*, 460*f*, 461
heterochrony and differential growth rates in skulls of, 544*f*
humans vs., 748
J. Goodall's research on, 17*f*
as primates, 746*f*–747*f*
problem solving of, 1147
skulls of humans and, 558
social learning in, 1147*f*
tool use by, 750
China, 1208
Chips, human gene microarray, 447, 448*f*
Chiroptera, 745*f*
Chi-square (χ^2) test in Scientific Skills Exercise, 304
Chisholm, Penny, 552
Chitin, **72***f*, **656**, 661, 707, **1133**
Chitons, 699*f*, 1086*f*
Chlamydias, 584*f*, 1039
Chlamydomonas, 101*f*, 610, 611*f*. *See also* Green algae
Chlamydomonas nivalis, 211
Chlorarachniophytes, 596*f*, 609
Chloride cells, 992, 993*f*
Chloride ions, 1069*f*, 1070*t*, 1071*f*
Chloride transport channels, 286
Chlorinated hydrocarbons, 1275, 1276*f*
Chlorine, 29*t*, 1283–1284
Chlorofluorocarbons (CFCs), 1283*f*, 1284
Chlorophyll, 5*f*, **189***f*, 190
chemiosmosis, 199, 200*f*, 201
cyclic electron flow in, 198*f*, 199
light excitation of, 195*f*
linear electron flow in, 197*f*–198*f*
in photosystems, 195, 196*f*, 197
structure of, 194*f*
Chlorophyll *a*, **193**, 194*f*, 195–198
Chlorophyll *b*, **193**, 194*f*, 196
Chlorophyll *d*, 194
Chlorophyll *f*, 194–195
Chlorophytes, 610*f*
Chloroplasts, **109**, **189**
chemiosmosis in, 177
chemiosmosis in mitochondria vs. in, 199*f*–200*f*, 201
evolutionary origins of, 109, 110*f*
folding of, 695*f*
light reactions in. *See* Light reactions
as organelles, 5*f*, 6
photosynthesis by, 109–110, 111*f*, 187
in plant cells, 101*f*, 209*f*
as sites of photosynthesis, 189*f*, 190, 206, 207*f*
transgenic crops and DNA in, 840
Chlorosis, 810, 812
Choanocytes, **690***f*
Choanoflagellates, 614, 675*f*–676*f*
Cholecystokinin (CCK), 915*f*
Cholera, 218*f*, 224, 584*f*, 588
Cholesterol, **75***f*
in cellular membranes, 127*f*–128*f*
DNA methylation and, 372*f*
in egg yolks, 91
G protein-coupled receptors and, 217*f*
receptor-mediated endocytosis and, 139, 141
types of, in blood, 937–938
Chondracanthus harveyanus, 1222
Chondrichthyans, 719*f*, **726**, 727*f*
Chondrocytes, 878*f*
Chondroitin sulfate, 878*f*
Chordates, **719**
endoskeletons of, 1133, 1134*f*
evolution of, 722*f*
hagfishes and lampreys, 723*f*, 724
invertebrate, 689*f*, 715, 719*f*–722*f*
lancelets, 720, 721*f*–722*f*
phylogeny and derived characters of, 719*f*–720*f*
phylogeny of, 683*f*
tunicates, 721*f*, 722
vertebrates as, 689*f*, 715, 719*f*, 722, 723*f*–725*f*
Chorion, 735*f*, 1053*f*
Chorionic villus sampling (CVS), **289***f*, 1039
Choroid, 1118*f*
Christmas tree worm, 703*f*
Chromatin, **102**, **235**, **331**
animal cell, 100*f*
in cell division, 235*f*–236*f*, 237
in eukaryotic cell nucleus, 102, 103*f*
in eukaryotic chromosomes, 330*f*–332*f*
plant cell, 101*f*
regulation of structure of eukaryotic, 371*f*–372*f*, 373
remodeling of, by siRNAs, 380–381
Chromatin loops, 377, 378*f*
ChromEMT, 330*f*
Chromoplasts, 111
Chromosomal basis of inheritance
as basis for Mendelian inheritance, 294*f*, 295
chromosomal alterations and genetic disorders in, 306, 307*f*–309*f*
evolution of gene concept from, 361
exceptions to Mendelian inheritance in, 310*f*, 311
genomic imprinting in, 310*f*, 311
inheritance of organelle genes in, 311*f*
linked genes and linkage in, 301*f*–306*f*
sex-linked genes in, 298*f*–300*f*
T. H. Morgan's experimental discovery of, 295*f*–296*f*
Chromosomal breakage points, 454–455
Chromosome conformation capture (3C) techniques, 377
Chromosomes, **102**, **235**. *See also* DNA; Genes
alleles on, 272, 273*f*. *See also* Alleles
alterations of, 306, 307*f*–309*f*, 454*f*–455*f*
bacterial, 242, 243*f*
in cancer cells, 249–250
in cell division, 234*f*–235*f*, 244*f*
in chromosomal basis of Mendelian inheritance, 294*f*, 295. *See also* Chromosomal basis of inheritance
correlating behavior of alleles with pairs of, 295, 296*f*–297*f*
crossing over and recombinant, 265, 266*f*
distribution of, during eukaryotic cell division, 235*f*–236*f*, 237
DNA, genes, and, 7*f*–8*f*
DNA and chromatin packing in, 330*f*–332*f*
in eukaryotic cell nucleus, 102, 103*f*
gene expression and interaction of, in interphase nucleus, 377, 378*f*
genetic variation due to mutations in, 488–489
in genome evolution, 454*f*–455*f*
homologous, 256*f*–257*f*
human, 102, 235, 236*f*, 237, 256*f*–257*f*, 258
independent assortment of, 265*f*
as information, 268, 313
inheritance of genes and, 255
in interphase, 252
karyotypes of, 256*f*
locating genes along, 295, 296*f*–297*f*
mapping distance between genes on, 305*f*–306*f*
in meiosis, 254, 259*f*–263*f*, 264
molecular tags and karyotypes of human, 332*f*
movement of, on kinetochore microtubules, 240, 241*f*
in prokaryotic and eukaryotic cells, 97*f*, 98, 577*f*
prokaryotic conjugation and gene transfer between, 579, 580*f*, 581
Chromosome theory of inheritance, **295**
Chronic inflammation, 956–957
Chronic myelogenous leukemia (CML), 309*f*, 435
Chronic traumatic encephalopathy (CTE), 1104
Chroococcidiopsis thermalis, 194*f*, 195
Chrysanthemums, 860
Chthamalus stellatus, 1216*f*
Chum salmon (*Oncorhynchus keta*), 89
Chylomicrons, **910***f*
Chyme, **907**, 915*f*
Chytrids, 660*f*, **661***f*, 669, 670*f*, 733
Cichlid fish, 515*f*, 519*f*, 520
Cigarette smoke, cardiovascular and lung disease and, 394, 951
Cilia, **114**
architecture of eukaryotic, and unity, 13*f*
bronchial, 943
cell fate and, 1064*f*
ciliate, 607*f*
flagella vs., 115*f*
as microtubules, 114, 115*f*–116*f*
Ciliates, **606**, 607*f*, 617
Cilium-based signaling, 114
Cinnabar (*cn*) gene, 305*f*–306*f*
Circadian rhythms, **798**, **858**, **882**. *See also* Biological clocks
in animal behavior, 1141
in animal homeostasis, 882, 883*f*
brain regulation of, 1094–1095
hibernation and, 893*f*
melatonin and, 1015
in plant responses to light, 857, 858*f*–860*f*
in stomatal opening and closing, 798
Circannual rhythms, 1141
Circulatory systems
cardiovascular systems. *See* Cardiovascular systems
gas exchange and, 921*f*–924*f*, 925, 947*f*. *See also* Gas exchange
gas exchange systems and. *See* Gas exchange
gastrovascular cavities as, 922*f*, 923
internal exchange surfaces and, 875*f*
invertebrate, 699*f*, 702, 704*f*, 707
open and closed, 923*f*
organization of vertebrate, 924*f*, 925. *See also* Cardiovascular systems
thermoregulatory adaptations of animal, 885, 886*f*
cis face, Golgi apparatus, 106*f*, 107
cis isomers, 61*f*
Cisternae, 104, 106*f*, 107
Cisternal maturation model, 106
Cisternal space, 104
cis-trans isomers, **61***f*
Citric acid cycle, **168**, 169*f*, 172*f*–173*f*, 177*f*
Citrulline, 338*f*
Clades, **559**, 560*f*, 561, 622–623
Cladistics, **559**, 560*f*, 572. *See also* Systematics; Taxonomy
Clams, 688*f*, 699, 701*f*
Clark's nutcracker (*Nucifraga columbiana*), 1146
Classes, taxonomy, **554**, 555*f*
Classical conditioning, 1146
Clausen, Jens, 1189
Claw-waving behavior of male fiddler crab, 1141*f*
Cleaner wrasse, 1214*f*
Cleanup, environmental, 418*f*, 437
Cleavage, **241**, **674**, **1046**
in animal embryonic development, 674*f*, 1044, 1046, 1047*f*–1048*f*, 1049
in cell cycle, 241, 242*f*–243*f*
in human embryonic development, 1035*f*
in protostome and deuterostome development, 681, 682*f*
Cleavage furrows, 239*f*, **241**, 242*f*, 1048*f*
Click beetle (*Pyrophorus nyctophanus*), 143*f*
Climate, **1167**. *See also* Climate change
continental drift and changes in, 539
effect of large bodies of water on, 47*f*
global patterns of, 1166*f*, 1167
greenhouse gases and, 1278*f*–1283*f*
latitudinal gradients and, affecting community diversity, 1232*f*

Climate (continued)
microclimate and, 1169–1170
nonvascular plants in Ordovician period changes of, 629
Permian mass extinction and changes in, 540
regional and local effects on, 1167*f*–1169*f*
seedless vascular plants and ancient, 633
species distributions and, 1164, 1170*f*
terrestrial biomes and, 1171*f*
using dendrochronology to study, 773*f*
vegetation effects on, 1169*f*
Climate change, **11**, **1170***f*, **1278**
biodiversity hot spot preservation and, 1272
biological effects of, 1279, 1280*f*–1281*f*, 1282
coral reefs and, 693
crop productivity and, 863
ecological footprints, fossil fuels, and, 1210*f*, 1211
as ecosystem interaction, 11
effects of, on photosynthetic marine protists, 615*f*
extinction rates and, 541*f*, 542
food quality and, 812
fossil fuel burning and, 11
greenhouse gases and, 1278*f*–1283*f*
habitat loss from, 1263
hybrid zones and, 517*f*
lizards and, 11*f*
melting of Arctic sea ice and, 48*f*
models of, 1282, 1283*f*
nonvascular plants in Ordovician period, 629
ocean acidification and, 53*f*, 54–55
overharvesting of peat moss and, 628
in Permian mass extinction, 540
plant adaptations to, 204–205
positive feedbacks of, 1189
primary production response to, 1244*f*, 1245
ringed seals and, 44*f*
seedless vascular plants and, 633–634
snowshoe hares and, 501*f*
solutions for, 1282–1283
tropical rain forest deforestation and, 651*f*, 652
tropical rain forest photosynthesis and, 211
using dendrochronology to study, 773*f*
viral transmission and, 412
Climax communities, 1228
Climographs, **1171***f*
Clitoris, **1026**, 1027*f*
Cloaca, **727**, **1024**
Clock, cell cycle, 245, 246*f*
Clock genes, 858
Clonal selection, **962***f*, 963, 976
Clone (term). *See* Organismal cloning
Cloned genes. *See also* DNA cloning; Gene cloning
of crystallin, 441
expressing eukaryotic, 422–423
in gene therapy, 434*f*
uses for, 418*f*
Clones, **255**, 1066. *See also* Organismal cloning
asexual reproduction of, 255*f*
of extinct species, 1266
fragmentation and, 833*f*
from plant cuttings, 835–836, 849
test-tube or *in vitro*, 836*f*
Cloning vectors, **418**. *See also* Recombinant DNA
Closed circulatory systems, 702, 704*f*, **923***f*. *See also* Cardiovascular systems
Clostridium botulinum, 584*f*, 588
Clostridium difficile, 912
Clotting, blood, 10, 300, 418*f*, 436, 703*f*, 704, 936*f*, 937
Cloudina, 677*f*
Club fungi, 665*f*–667*f*
Club mosses, 631, 632*f*, 633
Clumped dispersion, 1192*f*
Clutch size, 1200, 1201*f*–1202*f*
Cnemaspis psychedelica, 1260*f*
Cnidarians, 687*f*, 691*f*–693*f*, 1086*f*
Cnidocytes, **691***f*–692*f*
Coal, 633–634. *See also* Fossil fuels
Coal gas, 852
Coastal Indonesia restoration project, 1254*f*
Coat coloration case studies, 20*f*–21*f*, 23
Cocaine, 1103*f*
Coccidioidomycosis, 670
Coccosteus cuspidatus, 533*f*
Cochlea, **1113***f*–1115*f*
Cocklebur, 859
Cocktails, drug, 409, 489
Coconut, 828, 832*f*
Cod (*Gadus morhua*), 728, 979*f*
Coding strand, **340***f*
Codominance, **279**
Codon recognition, 352, 353*f*
Codons, **340**
evolution of, 364
in genetic code, 340*f*–342*f*
in translation, 347*f*–350*f*, 352, 353*f*
Coefficient of relatedness (r), **1158***f*–1159*f*
Coefficients, correlation, 678, 751
Coelacanths, 719*f*, 729*f*
Coelom, **680**, 681*f*, 698, 704*f*, 717
Coelomates, 681
Coenocytic fungi, **656***f*
coenzyme Q (CoQ), 175, 186
Coenzymes, **158**
Coevolution, **825***f*
Cofactors, **158**
Coffee, 651
Cognition, 1096, 1098, 1099*f*, **1146**, 1147*f*
Cognitive maps, **1146**
Cohesins, 236, 240, 262*f*
Cohesion, **45**, 46*f*, 795–796
Cohesion-tension hypothesis, **794***f*–795*f*, 796
Cohorts, **1193**
Coho salmon (*Oncorhynchus kisutch*), 89, 1200
Coitus, human, 1034
Coitus interruptus, 1038*f*
Cold
plant response to stress of, 865
thermoreceptors and, 1111*f*
Cold viruses, 401, 404–405
Coleoptera (beetles), 712*f*
Coleoptiles, **829***f*–830*f*, 847*f*, 848
Coleorhiza, **829***f*
Colistin, 588
Collagen, 76*f*, 81*f*, **118**, 119*f*, 674
Collagenous fibers, 878*f*
Collar cells, 675*f*
Collared flycatchers (*Ficedula albicollis*), 519
Collecting duct, **987***f*–988*f*, 989
Collenchyma cells, **764***f*, 770
Colon, **911***f*
Colon cancer, 327
colony collapse disorder, 661
Coloration
case studies on mouse, 20*f*–21*f*, 23
of chromosomes, 332*f*
as prey defensive adaptation, 1218*f*, 1219
skin, 1016, 1018
Color blindness, 299*f*, 1122*f*
Colorectal cancer, 391*f*, 394
Color vision, 1117–1118, 1121, 1122*f*
Colossal squid, 702
Columbine flowers, 825*f*
Columnar epithelium, 877*f*
Combinatorial control elements, 375–376, 377*f*
Comb jellies, 687*f*
Comet collision, mass extinction by, 541*f*
Commensalism, **587**, 662, **1221***f*
Commercial value
of fungi, 670, 671*f*
of mosses, 627*f*
Common arrowhead flower, 835*f*
Common juniper, 643*f*
Communicating junctions, 120*f*
Communication, animal, 880*f*, **1141***f*–1143*f*
Communication, cellular. *See* Cell signaling
Communities, **4f**, **1165**f
biogeographic factors affecting, 1231, 1232*f*–1234*f*
climate change effects on, 1281*f*
disturbances of, 1214, 1228, 1229*f*–1231*f*
diversity in, 1261*f*–1262*f*
interspecific interactions in, 1214*f*–1221*f*, 1237
as level of biological organization, 4*f*
pathogen alteration of structure of, 1234, 1235*f*
scientific, 19*f*, 24
species diversity and stability of, 1222*f*–1223*f*. *See also* Species diversity
structure of, 1214*f*, 1215, 1234, 1235*f*
study of, by community ecology, 1165*f*. *See also* Community ecology
trophic structure of, 1223, 1224*f*–1227*f*. *See also* Trophic structure
Community diversity, 1261*f*–1262*f*
Community ecology, **1165***f*. *See also* Ecology
biogeographic factors in, 1231, 1232*f*–1234*f*
community boundaries in. *See* Communities
disturbances in, 1214, 1228, 1229*f*–1231*f*
influences on community structure and, 1214*f*, 1215
interspecific interactions in, 1214*f*–1221*f*, 1237
pathogens in, 1234, 1235*f*
species diversity and trophic structure in, 1222*f*–1227*f*. *See also* Species diversity; Trophic structure
Community-level herbivore defenses, plant, 869*f*
Community structure, 1214*f*, **1215**
pathogen alteration of, 1234, 1235*f*
Compact body cavity, 681*f*
Companion cells, **765***f*
Compartmentalized processing, **898**
Competition, **1215**, 1256*f*–1257*f*
density-dependent population regulation by, 1204*f*
interspecific, 1215, 1216*f*–1217*f*, 1237
sexual, 499*f*–500*f*, 1153*f*
in species distributions of plants, 1186
Competitive exclusion, **1215**
Competitive inhibitors, **158**, 159*f*
Complementary base pairing, DNA and RNA, 86*f*
Complementary DNA (cDNA), **424**, 425*f*–426*f*
Complement systems, **957**, 966*f*
Complete digestive tracts, 905*f*
Complete dominance, **279**
Complete flowers, **824**
Complete growth medium, 336*f*–338*f*
Complete metamorphosis, **711***f*, 712*f*
Complex eyes, 547, 548*f*
Compound eyes, 712*f*, 894*f*, **1117***f*, 1118
Compound leaves, 761*f*
Compounds, **29**. *See also* Molecules
biological. *See* Biological molecules
emergent properties of, 29*f*
ionic, 38*f*
organic. *See* Organic compounds
properties of, 28
pure elements vs., 37
Compromises, evolutionary, 501*f*
Computational tools, 9, 444, 445*f*–448*f*, 776. *See also* Bioinformatics
Concentration gradients, **133***f*, 136, 137*f*–138*f*, 139
Concentrations, chemical reactions and, 41
Conception, human, **1034**, **1035***f*
Condensation reaction, 67
Condensins, 331*f*
Condoms, 1038*f*
Conduction, animal heat exchange and, **885***f*
Conduction, of action potential, 1075*f*, 1076
Cones (photoreceptor), **1119***f*–1121*f*, 1122–1123, 1138
Cones, gymnosperm, 640, 643*f*
Cone snails (*Conus geographus*), 1067*f*–1068
Confocal microscopy, 95*f*, 96
Conformer animals, **881***f*
Congenital disorders, 256*f*
Conidia, **664***f*
Conifers, 623, **640***f*, 641, 643*f*
Conjugation, **579**, 580*f*, 581, **606**, 607*f*
Connective tissue, animal, 76*f*, **878***f*
Connell, Joseph, 1216*f*
Conodonts, **724***f*, 725
Consanguineous mating, human, 285–286
Conservation Areas, Costa Rican, 1273*f*
Conservation biology, **1261**. *See also* Ecology
biodiversity and, 1260*f*–1266*f*
conservation of mollusc species, 702*f*
genomics and proteomics in, 88*f*
global change and, 1265, 1266*f*, *1274*, 1275*f*–1283*f*, 1284
landscape and regional conservation in, 1270, 1271*f*–1274*f*
population conservation in, 1266, 1267*f*–1270*f*
species-area curves of species richness in, 1232*f*
sustainable development in, 1284, *1285f*, 1286
Conservation of energy, 145*f*, 146, 1239
Conservation of mass, 1239–1240
Conservative model, DNA replication, 321*f*–322*f*
Conserved Domain Database (CDD), 445*f*
Constant (C) region, light and heavy chain, 958*f*–961*f*
Constipation, 911
Consumers, **9**, 188, 673*f*

in carbon cycle, 1250*f*
primary, 1240*f*, 1246, 1247*f*, 1248
secondary, 1240*f*, 1246, 1247*f*, 1248
tertiary, 1240*f*, 1246, 1247*f*, 1248
Consumption, regulation of animal, 917*f*, 918
Continental drift, 482–483, 525, 538*f*–539*f*, 540
Contour tillage, 809*f*
Contraception, **1037**, 1038*f*, 1039, 1208
Contraceptives, as environmental toxins, 1276
Contractile proteins, 76*f*
Contractile vacuoles, **108**, 135*f*
Contraction, muscle, 1126, 1127*f*, 1128. *See also* Muscle
Contrast, 94
Control
animal, 880*f*
Control center, homeostatic, 882*f*
Control elements, **373***f*–377*f*
Control groups, 20, 21*f*
Controlled experiments, **20**–21
designing, in Scientific Skills Exercise, 1014
Conus geographus, 1067*f*–1068
Convection, animal heat exchange and, **885***f*
Convergent evolution, **481**
analogies and, 558*f*
of cacti and euphorbs, 1172*f*
of fast swimmers, 874*f*
of homologies, 481*f*
of marsupials, 744*f*
in phylogenies, 553*f*–554*f*
Convergent extension, **1056**, 1057*f*
Conversion, data, 264
Cooksonia sporangium, 622*f*
Cooling, evaporative, **47**, 48*f*, 886
Cooper, Vaughn, 578*f*
Cooperativity, **160**
in allosteric activation, 160*f*
prokaryotic metabolic, 582*f*
science and, 22–23, 24*f*
Coordinately controlled genes, 366, 375–376
Coordination
animal, 880*f*
Coordination, cell-signaling response, 227, 228*f*
Copepods, 710*f*
Coprophagy, 914
Copy-number variants (CNVs), 461–462
CoQ (coenzyme Q), 175, 186
Coral atolls, 1182*f*
Coral polyps, 1019*f*
Coral reefs, 53*f*, 54, 614, **1182***f*, 1234, 1264, 1277*f*, 1282
Corals, 692*f*–693*f*
Corepressors, **367***f*
Cork cambium, **766***f*, 774
Cork cells, 774, 783
Cormorant, flightless (*Phalacrocorax harrisi*), 506*f*, 507, 511
Corn (*Zea mays*), 205, 448*t*, 651. *See also* Maize
Cornea, 1118*f*
Corn smut, 669*f*
Corpus callosum, **1093***f*, 1098
Corpus luteum, **1029***f*, 1032*f*, 1033
Correlation coefficients in Scientific Skills Exercise, 678, 751
Correlations, positive and negative, in Scientific Skills Exercise, 834
Correns, Carl, 311*f*
Corridors, movement, 1271*f*, 1272
Cortex, **116**, **763**, 770*f*
Cortical microfilaments, 116
Cortical nephrons, **986***f*, 991
Cortical reactions, 1045*f*, 1046
Cortical rotation, 1060*f*
Cortisol, 1001*f*
Corynebacterium diphtheriae, 97*f*
Costa Rica, 1273*f*, 1284, 1285*f*
Cost-benefit behavior analysis, 1149
Cotransport, **138***f*, 139
Cotton, 49, 804
Cottongrass, 1256*f*
Cotyledons, **647**, 649*f*, 828*f*–830*f*
Counseling, genetic, 287–288
Countercurrent exchange, **886***f*, **941***f*
Countercurrent multiplier systems, **990**–991
Courtship rituals. *See also* Mating behavior
behavioral isolation and, 508*f*
external fertilization and, 1023
forms of animal communication in, 1141*f*–1142*f*
genetic basis of, 1155*f*
reproductive cycles and, 1021*f*
sexual selection and, 499*f*–500*f*, 1151, 1152*f*–1153*f*, 1154
Covalent bonds, **36**
of disaccharides, 69*f*
formation of, 36*f*
in organic compounds, 58, 59*f*, 60, 64
in protein tertiary structure, 81*f*
types of, 36*f*–37*f*
Cowbirds, 1271, 1287
Crabs, 709*f*
"Crank" drug, 62
Crassulacean acid metabolism (CAM) plants, 205, **206***f*, 798, 799*f*
Crawling, 1133*f*, 1135
Crayfish, 709, 940*f*, 1112
Creatine phosphate, 1128
Crenarchaeota clade, 586–587
Cretaceous mass extinction, 540, 541*f*
Creutzfeldt-Jakob disease, 412
Cricetus cricetus, 893*f*
Crick, Francis
central dogma of, 339
discovery of DNA molecular structure by, 4, 23–24, 314*f*, 317, 318*f*–320*f*
model of DNA replication by, 320, 321*f*
Crickets (*Anabrus simplex*), 449, 712*f*, 1112*f*
Cri du chat, 309
Crinoidea, 715*f*
CRISPR-Cas9 system, **360**, 361*f*, 380, 404*f*, **589**
in gene editing, 426, 427*f*, 434–435
in gene identification, 446
plant mutations and, 776
prokaryotes in development of, 589, 590*f*
Cristae, **110**
Critical habitat, 1269*f*–1270*f*
Critical load, **1275**
Crocodiles, 564*f*, 719*f*, 737*f*, 738, 925, 1091*f*
Crop (esophageal pouch), 905*f*, 913
Crop plants. *See also* Agriculture; Plants
artificial selection and breeding of, 835–837
biotechnology and genetic engineering of, 837, 838*f*, 839–840
climate change and, 863
effects of atmospheric carbon dioxide on, 205
as polyploids, 514–515
seed plants as, 651
transgenic and genetically modified, 438–439
Crop rotation, **817**
Cross-fostering studies, 1143, 1144*t*
Crossing over, **260***f*, **302**
chromosomal alterations during, 307, 308*f*
evolution and, 313
gene duplication due to unequal, 455*f*
genetic variation from, 265, 266*f*
in meiosis, 260*f*, 262*f*
recombination of linked genes in, 302, 303*f*
Cross-pollination, **646**
angiosperm, 646*f*, 647
G. Mendel's techniques of, 270*f*–271*f*
of plants, 837
Cross-talk, cell-signaling, 228*f*
Crotalus atrox, 1084
Crows, 1150
CRP (cAMP receptor protein), 369*f*
Crustaceans, 464*f*, 545*f*, 546, 689*f*, 708, 709*f*–710*f*
Crustose lichens, 668*f*, 672
Cryo-electron microscopy (cryo-EM), 95*f*, 96
Cryptic coloration, 1218*f*, **1219**
Cryptochromes, 856
Cryptomycetes, 660*f*–**661***f*
Cryptophyte, 597*f*
Crypts, 799*f*
Crystallin, 377*f*, 441
Crystallin proteins, 8*f*
Crystals, ice, 48*f*
C soil horizon, 806*f*
Ctenophora, 687*f*
Ctenophores, 683*f*, 684
C-terminus, 78*f*, 352
Cuatro ojos fish, 365*f*
Cuboidal epithelium, 877*f*
Cubozoans, 692*f*–693*f*
Cuckoo bee, 1218*f*, 1219
Cud, 914*f*
Culex pipiens, 496
Culture, **1148**, 1159*f*, 1160
Cupula, 1116*f*
Curl cat, 293
Curvularia, 672
Cuscuta, 819*f*
Cushing's syndrome, 1018
Cuticle, ecdysozoan, **705**, 707
Cuticle, exoskeleton, 1133
Cuticle, leaf, **763**
Cuticle, plant, **621**
Cuttings, plant, 428, 835–836, 849
Cutworms, 705
Cuvier, Georges, 469*f*, 470–471
Cyanobacteria
blooms of, 1227*f*
bryophyte symbiosis with, 626*f*, 627
chemical recycling by, 586*f*
evolution of glycolysis in, 182
fungi and, as lichens, 663, 668*f*–669*f*
metabolic cooperation in, 582*f*
mutualism with, 813*f*
origin of photosynthesis in, 533, 534*f*
photosynthesis by, 188*f*, 194*f*, 195, 199, 584*f*
protist endosymbiosis and photosynthetic, 596*f*–597*f*, 608*f*, 609
Cyanocitta cristata, 1146*f*
Cycads, 642*f*
Cyclic AMP (cyclic adenosine monophosphate, cAMP), **223***f*–224*f*, 233, **369***f*, 1002, 1003*f*, 1080
Cyclic electron flow, **198***f*, 199
Cyclic GMP (cGMP), 224, 844*f*, 845
Cyclin, **245**, 246*f*
Cyclin-dependent kinases (Cdks), **245**, 246*f*
Cycliophora, 688*f*
Cyclosporine, 670
Cyclostomes, **723**
Cynodonts, 531*f*, 532
Cysteine, 63*f*, 77*f*
Cystic fibrosis, 83, 280, **286**, 433
Cystic kidney disease, 1064
Cytochromes, **175**, 199, 230, 566
Cytogenetic maps, 306
Cytokines, 955–956, 1001
Cytokinesis, **236**
in meiosis, 260*f*–261*f*
mitosis and, 234, 239*f*, 241, 242*f*–243*f*
nuclear envelope during, 252
Cytokinins, 846*t*, **850***f*
Cytology, 96
Cytoplasm, **98**
cell cycle control signals in, 244, 245*f*
cell-signaling responses in, 226, 227*f*
cytokinesis and division of, 236, 239*f*, 241, 242*f*–243*f*
of prokaryotic and eukaryotic cells, 98–99
Cytoplasmic determinants, **382***f*, 383
Cytoplasmic genes, 311
Cytoplasmic responses, cell-signaling, 226, 227*f*
Cytoplasmic streaming, **117***f*, 608
Cytosine, 84, 85*f*, 86, 317*f*, 318, 341*f*
Cytoskeletons, **112**
actin microfilaments of, 113*t*, 115, 116*f*–117*f*
animal cell, 100*f*
ATP in mechanical work of, 152*f*
intermediate filaments of, 113*t*, 117
membrane proteins and attachment to, 130*f*
microtubules of, 113*t*, 114*f*–116*f*
in morphogenesis, 1056*f*–1057*f*
plant cell, 101*f*
scale of, 123*f*
structure and function of, 113*t*
support and motility roles of, 112*f*–113*f*
Cytosol, **97**
Cytosolic calcium ions, 844*f*, 845
Cytotoxic chemotherapy, 393*f*
Cytotoxic T cells, 962, **966***f*, 967

D

DAG (diacylglycerol), **225***f*
Dalton (atomic mass unit), **31**, 50
Dalton, John, 31
Danaus plexippus, 839, 1146*f*
Dance language, honeybee, 1142*f*
Dandelions, 824*f*, 832*f*, 1192*f*, 1202*f*
Dangl, Jeffery, 814*f*
Danio rerio (zebrafish) model organism, 22

Daphnia pulex, 448*t*, 1021, 1199*f*, 1200
Darkness
  flowering in long-night plants and, 859*f*, 860
  plant etiolation response to, 843*f*
Dark responses, rod cell, 1121*f*
D'Arrigo, Rosanne, 773*f*
Darwin, Charles. *See also* Evolution
  on barnacles, 710
  Beagle voyage and field research of, 471, 472*f*–473*f*
  on coevolution of flower-pollinator mutualism, 825
  on earthworms, 704
  evidence supporting theory of, 476, 477*f*–482*f*, 483
  on grandeur of evolutionary process, 484
  historical context of life and ideas of, 469*f*–471*f*
  on island species, 483
  on lung evolution from swim bladders, 728
  on mystery of flowering plants, 477, 647, 825*f*
  on mystery of speciation, 506*f*, 507
  on natural selection, 266, 267*f*, 487
  On the Origin of Species by Means of Natural Selection by, 469, 473, 483–484, 487
  speciation theory of, 473, 474*f*–476*f*
  on species diversity of tropics, 1232
  study by, of phototropism in grass coleoptiles, 847*f*
  theory of descent with modification by, 14*f*–16*f*, 469–470, 473*f*–476*f*, 483–484
  timeline of work of, 469*f*
Darwin, Francis, 847*f*
Dasyatis americana, 727*f*
Data, **17**, 19*f*, 21–22. *See also* Scientific Skills Exercises
Databases
  in estimating reproductive rates, 1194, 1195*f*
  genome-sequence, 444, 445*f*
Dating, radiometric, **32**–33, 529, 530*f*
dATP, 324
Daughter cells, 234, 235*f*–236*f*, 237, 266*f*
Day-neutral plants, **859***f*
db gene, 918
DDT pesticide, 158, 485, 518, 1276*f*
Dead-leaf moth (*Oxytenis modestia*), 476*f*
Dead Sea, 585
Dead zone, 1242, 1275*f*
Deamination, amino acid, 182
Deaths
  demographics of, 1193*t*, 1194*f*–1195*f*
  in density-dependent population growth, 1203*f*–1205*f*
  in exponential population growth, 1196, 1197*f*
  in human population dynamics, 1208–1209
  in population dynamics, 1192, 1256*f*
Death signals, apoptosis, 230, 231*f*. *See also* Apoptosis
Decapods, 709*f*, 710
Decay curves, radioactive isotope, 33
December solstice, 1167*f*
Deciduous forest, nutrient cycling in, 1252*f*
Decomposers, 188, **586**, **1240***f*
  in energy flow and chemical recycling, 9*f*, 1240*f*, 1241
  fungi as, 654–655, 658*f*, 661*f*, 663, 665, 667
  lichens as, 669
  prokaryotic, 586
Decomposition, 1240*f*, 1241, 1248*f*–1251*f*, 1259
Deconvolution microscopy, 95*f*, 96
Deductive reasoning, **18**, 617
Deep-sea hydrothermal vents, 527*f*, 1182*f*
Deer, 871, 1149, 1271
Deer mice, 498*f*, 892
DEET insect repellant, 1123
De-etiolation (greening), **843***f*–844*f*, 845
Defensive adaptations, 28*f*, 43, 1217, 1218*f*–1219*f*, 1220, 1237
Defensive proteins, 76*f*
Deficiencies, plant, 810, 811*f*, 818
Deforestation
  climate effects of, 1169*f*
  experimental, and nutrient cycling, 1252*f*
  as human community disturbance, 1231
  loss of species from, 1260*f*, 1263
  rising atmospheric carbon dioxide levels from, 1278
  of tropical rain forests, 651*f*, 652, 1263
Degradation, protein, 379
Dehydration
  animal, 980
  plant, 203, 204*f*–206*f*, 536
Dehydration reactions, **67***f*
Dehydrogenases, 167*f*, 168
DeJac, Lynn, 24*f*
Delayed reproduction, 1208
Deletions (mutations), 358*f*, **359**
Deletions, chromosome, **307**, 308*f*, 309
Dementia, 1103, 1104*f*
Demographics, population, 1193*t*, 1194*f*–1195*f*
Demographic transition, **1208**
Demography, **1193**. *See also* Demographics, population
Denaturation, **82***f*, 83
Dendrites, 879*f*, **1068***f*, 1078, 1110*f*
Dendritic cells, **955**
Dendrobates pumilio, 524
Dendrochronology, 773*f*
Dendroctonus ponderosae, 1244*f*, 1245, 1280*f*
Dengue fever, 412
Denitrifying bacteria, 1251*f*
Density, population, **1191***f*–1192*f*, 1193, 1202, 1203*f*, 1256*f*
Density-dependent inhibition, **247**, 248*f*
Density-dependent population change, 1202, **1203***f*–1206*f*, 1207, 1213
Density-independent population change, **1203**
Dentition, 530, 531*f*, 532, 911*f*, 912
Deoxyribonucleic acid. *See* DNA
Deoxyribose, **85***f*, 317*f*, 324
Dependent assortment hypothesis, 275, 276*f*
Dependent variables, **21**, 513
Dephosphorylation, protein, 223
Depolarization, **1072***f*–1074*f*
  in fertilization, 1044*f*, 1045
Depolymerization, protein, 240
Depression, 1081, 1102–1103
Derelle, Romain, 612*f*
Derived characters, shared, 560, 561*f*
Derived traits, plant, 620*f*–621*f*
Dermal tissue system, plant, 758, **762**, 763*f*
DES (diethylstilbestrol), 1015
Descending limb, loop of Henle, 988*f*, 989
Descent with modification theory, 14*f*–16*f*, 469–470, 473*f*–476*f*, 483–484. *See also* Evolution
Desert animals, 980–981
Desert iguana (*Dipsosaurus dorsalis*), 888
Desert mice, 981
Deserts, 798, 799*f*, 1168, 1169*f*, **1173***f*
Desert spring, 1239*f*
Desiccation, 979
Desmognathus ochrophaeus, 513
Desmosomes, 120*f*
Desynchronization, 858–859
Determinate cleavage, **681**, 682*f*
Determinate growth, **766***f*–767*f*
Determination, **383**, 384*f*, **1057**
Detoxification, 104–105, 112, 809
Detritus, **1177**, **1240***f*, 1241
Deuteromycetes, **659**
Deuterostome development, **681**, 682*f*
Deuterostomes, **683***f*, 689*f*, 713, 714*f*–715*f*, 719*f*. *See also* Chordates; Echinoderms
Development, **775**
  of brain, 722*f*, 1092*f*, 1099–1100
  as cell division function, 235*f*
  embryonic. *See* Embryonic development
  in human life cycle, 257*f*, 258. *See also* Human embryonic development
  macroevolution of, 545*f*–546*f*, 547
  plant and animal, 894*f*. *See also* Animal development; Plant development
  postzygotic barriers and, 509*f*, 510
  as property of life, 3*f*
  sustainable. *See* Sustainable development
Developmental biology, 1057
Developmental genes. *See* Homeotic genes; *Hox* genes
Developmental plasticity, 775*f*
Developmental potential, cell fate and, 1060, 1061*f*
Diabetes
  aquaporin mutations as causes of diabetes insipidus, 995*f*
  autoimmunity and, 971
  disruption of glucose homeostasis in, 916–917
  genetic engineering of insulin to treat, 436
  genetic markers for, 427
  mitochondrial mutations in, 311
  neonatal, insulin mutations and, 359
  stem cells for, 431
Diabetes insipidus, 995*f*
Diabetes mellitus, **916**–917
Diacodexis, 482*f*
Diacylglycerol (DAG), **225***f*
Diagnosis
  antibodies as tools in, 969*f*
  biotechnology in, 433, 434*f*, 435
Diamond-back rattlesnake (*Crotalus atrox*), 1084
Diaphragm in breathing, **945***f*
Diaphragm, birth control, 1038*f*
Diapsids, **736**
Diarrhea, 139, 224, 588, 598*f*, 911
Diastole, **927***f*
Diastolic pressure, **930**, 931*f*
Diatomaceous earth, 602
Diatoms, 244*f*, 599*f*, **602***f*, 617, 1170
Diazepam, 1081
Dicer-2, 954*f*
Dicots, **649**
Dictyostelium discoideum, 613*f*
Dideoxy DNA sequencing, 416
Dideoxyribonucleotide (dideoxy) chain termination DNA sequencing, 443
Didinium, 617
Diencephalon, 1093*f*
Diets. *See also* Food
  adaptations of vertebrate digestive systems for, 911*f*–914*f*
  assessing nutritional needs in, 902*f*
  catabolism and human, 182*f*, 183
  deficiencies in, 901*f*, 902
  essential nutrients for, 899*f*, 900*t*–901*t*, 901*f*
  genetic variation in prey selection and, 1155, 1156*f*
  nonheritable variation and, 488*f*
  phenylketonuria and, 492
  typical and opportunistic, 901
Differential centrifugation, 96*f*, 97
Differential gene expression, **370**. *See also* Gene regulation
  cytoplasmic determinants and induction in, 382*f*, 383
  in eukaryotic gene regulation, 370*f*, 371
  in gene regulation, 365*f*
  in pattern formation of body plans, 384, 385*f*–387*f*
  in processes of embryonic development, 381*f*, 382. *See also* Embryonic development
  sequential regulation of, during cellular differentiation, 383, 384*f*
Differential-interference microscopy, 95*f*
Differential reproductive success, 266, 267*f*
Differential speciation success, 548–549
Differentiation, **1057**
Differentiation, cell, **381**
  cytokinins in, 850
  as embryonic development process, 381*f*, 382. *See also* Embryonic development
  plant development and, 763, 775–776, 778*f*
  sequential gene regulation in, 383, 384*f*
  stem cells and, 430*f*, 431. *See also* Stem cells
Diffusion, **132**, **922**
  body surface area and, 695*f*
  effects on water balance of osmosis as, 133*f*–135*f*
  extracellular, 768
  free energy change and, 148*f*
  interpreting scatter plots on glucose uptake as, 136
  as passive transport, 132, 133*f*
  in plant cells, 209*f*
  proteins and facilitated, 135*f*, 136
  of water across plant plasma membranes, 788, 789*f*–791*f*
  of water and minerals into root cells, 792
Digestion, **904**
  in animal food processing, 904*f*–905*f*
  compartmentalized processing in, 898
  digestive compartments in, 902, 903*f*–905*f*
  digestive systems and, 875*f*
  extracellular, 904*f*–905*f*
  feeding mechanisms and, 902, 903*f*
  fungal, 655, 668
  hydrolysis in, 67
  intracellular, 904
  lysosomes in intracellular, 107*f*, 108
  regulation of animal, 915*f*
  sea star, 713, 714*f*

in small intestine, 908*f*, 909
in stomach, 907*f*–908*f*
vertebrate adaptations for, 911*f*–914*f*
Digestive enzymes, 76*f*
Digestive secretions, 898, 907*f*–908*f*, 909–910, 915*f*
Digestive systems
adaptations of, 911*f*–914*f*
alimentary canals, 905*f*, 912*f*
bacteria in, 911–912, 913*f*–914*f*
feedback regulation of, 915*f*
internal exchange surfaces and, 875*f*
of invertebrates, 717
large intestine in, 910, 911*f*
oral cavity, pharynx, and esophagus in, 905, 906*f*–908*f*
small intestine in, 908*f*–910*f*
stomach in, 907*f*–908*f*
Digger wasps, 1145*f*
Dihybrid crosses, **275**, *276f*
Dihybrids, **274**–275, *276f*
Dihydroxyacetone, 68*f*
Dijkstra, Cor, 1201*f*
Dikaryotic mycelia, **658**
Dimers, tubulin, 114
Dimorphism, sexual, **499***f*, 752, 1149–1150, 1151*f*
Dinitrophenol (DNP), 186
Dinoflagellates, 244*f*, 594*f*, **604**, 605*f*
Dinosaurs, **736**
blood pressure of, 931
disappearance of, 679
as early reptiles, 736
flying, 1135
in fossil record, 529*f*, 564*f*, 565
mass extinction of, 541*f*, 542
in Mesozoic era, 533
Diomedea exulans, 977*f*
Dionaea muscipula, 802, 819*f*, 862
Diphtheria, 403
Diploblastic animals, **680**
Diploid cells, **257**
genetic variation preserved in recessive alleles of, 500
haploid cells vs., 257
mitosis vs. meiosis in, 262, 263*f*, 264
in sexual life cycles, 258*f*, 259
Diplomonads, **600***f*
Dipnoi (lungfishes), 719*f*, 729
Dipodomys merriami, 741*f*, 998
Dipsosaurus dorsalis, 888
Diptera, 712*f*
Direct contact, cell signaling by, 215*f*
Direct inhibition hypothesis, 850
Directionality, DNA replication, 324, 325*f*–326*f*
Directional selection, **497**, 498*f*
Disaccharides, 68, **69***f*, 70
Diseases, animal
density-dependent population regulation by, 1204*f*
movement corridors and spread of, 1271*f*, 1272
viral, 400*f*, 407*f*, 409*f*–412*f*
Diseases, plant
community structure and pathogens in, 1234
density-dependent population regulation by, 1204*f*
disease-resistant genes and, 866, 867*f*
viral, 399*f*–400*f*, 412*f*
Diseases and disorders, human
adenoviruses and, 400*f*
alkaptonuria, 336
allergies, 970*f*, 971
Alzheimer's disease, 413, 1103, 1104*f*
amebic dysentery, 613
amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS), 1129
antibiotic resistance and, 478*f*
asthma, 62, 217
atherosclerosis, 74, 75, 139, 141, 937*f*, 938–939
autism spectrum disorder, 1100
autoimmune, 971*f*
bacterial, 403, 574, 575*f*–576*f*, 584*f*, 587, 588*f*
biotechnology in diagnosis and treatment of, 433, 434*f*–436*f*
cachexia, 1016
cancer. *See* Cancer
cardiovascular diseases, 74, 311, 937*f*, 938–939, 951
chikungunya virus, 409*f*
cholera, 224, 584*f*, 588
color blindness, 299*f*, 1122*f*
community ecology, pathogens, and, 1234, 1235*f*
cri du chat and chronic myelogenous leukemia, 309*f*
CRISPR-Cas9 system for, 360, 361*f*
cystic fibrosis, 286, 293
cystic kidney disease, 1064
density-dependent population regulation by, 1204*f*
detecting fetal, during pregnancy, 1039–1040
diabetes. *See* Diabetes
diabetes insipidus, 995*f*
diarrhea, 139
dominantly inherited, 287*f*
Down syndrome, 307, 308*f*, 309
drug addiction, 1103*f*
Duchenne muscular dystrophy, 299
due to chromosomal alterations, 306, 307*f*–309*f*
Ebola virus, 409*f*
emerging viral diseases and, 409*f*–412*f*
endocrine disruptors and, 1015
endometriosis, 1033
epilepsy, 1098
erectile dysfunction, 1081–1082
familial cardiomyopathy, 357
faulty apoptosis in nervous system and, 231
faulty cell-surface receptors and, 218*f*, 220
fetal screening for, 288, 289*f*
flatworm parasites and, 696*f*–697*f*
flesh-eating disease, 478*f*
fungal, 670
gastric ulcers and acid reflux, 908
genetic. *See* Genetic disorders
genomics and proteomics in, 88*f*
gonorrhea, 576, 584*f*
gout, 983
growth-related, 1009, 1010*f*
heart murmurs, 928
hemophilia, 300
HIV/AIDS. *See* AIDS; HIV
Hodgkin's disease, 971
Huntington's disease, 287
hypercholesterolemia, 139
hypertension, 939
immune system disruptions and, 970*f*–974*f*, 973*t*
immunization against, 968*f*, 976
immunodeficiency, 971, 972*f*, 973
influenza, 400*f*, 410
insects as carriers of, 713
iodine deficiency and goiter, 29
Kartagener's syndrome, 1064
karyotypes and, 256*f*
Klinefelter syndrome, 309
lactose intolerance, 70
Leber's congenital amaurosis, 1122
lymphatic system and, 933
major depressive disorder and bipolar disorder, 1102–1103
malaria. *See* Malaria
mitochondrial, 311
mosaicism, 300*f*
multifactorial, 287
mutations and, 357*f*–358*f*, 359
myasthenia gravis, 1129
myotonia and epilepsy, 1076
nematode parasites and trichinosis, 705*f*, 706
of nervous system, 1102*f*–1104*f*
neurodegenerative, 413
neurotransmitters and, 1080–1082
from ozone depletion, 1284
parasitic. *See* Parasites
Parkinson's disease, 413, 1081, 1104
phenylketonuria, 492–493
from plastic waste, 1277
pleiotropy and inherited, 280
pneumonia, 315*f*, 579
polydactyly, 280
protein misfolding and, 83
protists and, 598*f*–599*f*
recessively inherited, 285*f*–286*f*, 287
respiratory distress syndrome, 943, 944*f*
retinitis pigmentosa, 495
schizophrenia, 1102*f*
sexually transmitted diseases. *See* Sexually transmitted diseases
sickle-cell disease. *See* Sickle-cell disease
sleeping sickness, 600, 601*f*
spina bifida, 1055
Tay-Sachs disease and lysosomal storage, 108, 280, 285, 288, 289*f*
testing genetic markers for, 427*f*
thyroid, 1009
Turner syndrome, 309
Wiskott-Aldrich syndrome, 229
xeroderma pigmentosum, 328
X-linked disorders, 299*f*, 300
Zika virus, 409*f*
Disease-suppressive soil, 590
Disorder, entropy and, 146
Disparity, vertebrate, 719
Dispersal, **1183**
fruit and seed, 832*f*
movement corridors and, 1271*f*, 1272
seed, 645*f*
species, 1183, 1184*f*
Dispersion, population, **1191***f*–1192*f*, 1193
Dispersive model, DNA replication, 321*f*–322*f*
Disruptive selection, **498***f*
Dissociation, water, 51
Distal control elements, 374
Distal tubule, **987***f*–988*f*, 989
Distance vision, 1122*f*
Distribution patterns, analyzing, 283
Distributions, species. *See* Species distributions
Disturbances, **1172**, 1214, **1228**, 1229*f*–1231*f*
Disulfide bridges, **81***f*
Divergence
allopatric speciation and, 506, 511*f*–512*f*, 513
of angiosperms, 647*f*, 648
of closely related species, 460–461, 462*f*
of fungi, 659*f*, 660
in phylogenetic trees, 555, 556*f*, 557
of unikonts from other eukaryotes, 612*f*
Diversity. *See also* Biodiversity
B cell and T cell, 960, 961*f*
biological. *See* Biodiversity
cellular structures and, 125
evolution and, 11, 468*f*, 469, 473
in science, 24
within a species, 507*f*
Diving bell spider (*Argyroneta aquatica*), 951
Diving mammals, respiratory adaptations of, 949*f*
Division, cell. *See* Cell division
Dixon, Henry, 794
Dizygotic twins, 1036
Dizziness, 1116
DNA (deoxyribonucleic acid), **6**, **84**. *See also* Chromosomes; Genes; Genetics; Nucleic acids
amplification of, using polymerase chain reaction, 420, 421*f*, 422
analyzing DNA deletion experiments, 376
in bacterial binary fission, 242, 243*f*
of B and T cells, 976
bending of, 374, 375*f*, 451
in cancer cells, 249–250
cell-free fetal, 288
changes of, in meiosis of yeast cells, 264
Chargaff's rules on structure of, 317*f*, 318
complementary DNA. *See* Complementary DNA
components of, 84, 85*f*
CRISPR-Cas9 system and, 360, 361*f*
discovery of structure of, 4, 18–19, 23–24, 314*f*, 317, 318*f*–320*f*
diseases of mitochondrial, 311*f*
distribution of, during eukaryotic cell division, 235*f*–236*f*, 237
in ecological forensics, 1265*f*
elevation and UV damage to, affecting species distributions, 1186*f*
eukaryotic, 6*f*, 97*f*, 98, 102, 103*f*
evidence for, as genetic material, 315*f*–317*f*, 318
evolutionary significance of mutations of, 328
evolution of genomes from changes in, 454*f*–457*f*, 458–459
in expression and transmission of genetic information, 6, 7*f*–8*f*
gene density and noncoding, 449–450
genetic code for, 340*f*–342*f*
genetic variation due to mutations in, 488–489
genomics, bioinformatics, and proteomics in study of, 9, 86, 87*f*
homeoboxes in, 463*f*–464*f*

DNA (deoxyribonucleic acid) (continued)
human gene microarray chips containing, 447, 448*f*
in hybrids, 524
inheritance of, in chromosomes and genes, 255
as measure of evolution, 87, 89, 397
methylation of, 371, 372*f*, 373, 391, 430
molecular homologies and, 479–480, 558, 559*f*
ozone depletion and damage to, 1284
p53 gene and repair of, 390–391
packing of proteins and, into chromosomes, 330*f*–332*f*
phylogenies based on, 554*f*
in plant cells, 208*f*
programming of cells by viral, 315*f*–316*f*, 317
prokaryotic, 6*f*, 97*f*, 98, 577*f*, 579*f*–580*f*, 581
proofreading and repairing of, 327, 328*f*
recombinant. *See* Recombinant DNA
repetitive noncoding, 450*f*–451*f*, 452
replication of. *See* DNA replication
roles of, in gene expression, 84*f*
sequencing of. *See* DNA sequencing
simple sequence and short-tandem repeat, 452
species identity in mitochondrial, 557*f*
structure of, 86*f*
structure of, and inheritance, 334, 364
technology of. *See* DNA technology
testing of, in forensic science, 436, 437*f*
in transcription, 337, 339*f*
viral, 400*f*–407*f*, 406*t*
DNA amplification, 420, 421*f*, 422
DNA "barcode," 1222
DNA-binding domain, 374*f*
DNA-binding proteins, 91
DNA chips, 426
DNA cloning, **418**
amplification of DNA using polymerase chain reaction in, 420, 421*f*, 422
copying DNA with gene cloning and, 418*f*, 419
expressing cloned eukaryotic genes in, 422–423
in gene therapy, 434*f*
using restriction enzymes to make recombinant DNA plasmids for, 419*f*–420*f*
DNA Data Bank of Japan, 444
DNA deletion experiments in Scientific Skills Exercise, 376
DNA ligases, **325***f*–326*f*, 327*t*, 328*f*, 419*f*, 420
DNA methylation, **371**, 372*f*, 373, 391, 430
DNA microarray assays, 289, **426***f*. *See also* Microarray chips, human genome
DNA pol I and pol III, 325, 326*f*, 327*t*
DNA polymerases, **324***f*
DNA profiles, 1223*f*
DNA replication, **320**
base pairing to template strands in semiconservative model of, 320, 321*f*–322*f*
errors in, and genome evolution, 455*f*–457*f*
evolutionary significance of mutations during, 328
genetic information and, 314
inheritance and, 7*f*–8*f*
in molecular basis of inheritance, 314–315. *See also* Molecular basis of inheritance
proofreading and repairing of DNA during, 327, 328*f*
steps of, 322*f*–327*f*
of telomeres, 328, 329*f*
DNA replication complex, 326*f*–327*f*, 334
DNA sequences
analyzing phylogenetic trees based on, to understand viral evolution, 411
animal phylogeny and, 682, 683*f*, 684
constructing phylogenetic trees using, 562, 563*f*, 564
evaluating molecular homologies in, 558*f*–559*f*
exon and intron, 345*f*–347*f*
genes as, 361–362
interpreting sequence logos for, 351
on medical records, 448
noncoding, 449–450
promoter and terminator, 342, 343*f*
types of, in human genome, 450*f*
DNA sequencing, 87, **416**
of complementary DNA, 426*f*
in genetic testing for cancer predisposition, 394
genome sequencing and, 443*f*, 444
genomics, bioinformatics, proteomics, and, 86, 87*f*
human genome sequencing by, 415*f*, 416
standard vs. next-generation techniques for, 416*f*–417*f*
systems biology, medicine, and, 447, 448*f*
three-domain taxonomy system and, 12*f*, 13
DNA strands, 7*f*–8*f*, 317, 318*f*–320*f*, 340*f*, 419*f*, 420. *See also* DNA replication
DNA technology, **416**
amplifying DNA with polymerase chain reaction in, 420, 421*f*, 422
in analyzing gene expression and function, 423, 424*f*–428*f*
bioinformatics and, 444, 445*f*–448*f*
in biotechnology applications, 416, 433, 434*f*–437*f*, 438–439. *See also* Biotechnology
in breast cancer treatment, 250
creating recombinant DNA plasmids using restriction enzymes and gel electrophoresis in, 419*f*–420*f*
DNA cloning and gene cloning in, 418*f*, 419
DNA sequencing in, 415*f*–417*f*
in ecological forensics, 1265*f*
in eukaryotic gene regulation, 371
evolution and, 441
in expressing cloned eukaryotic genes, 422–423
genetic code and gene transplantation in, 341, 342*f*
organismal cloning in, 428, 429*f*–432*f*
science, society, and, 23, 24*f*
DNA testing, forensic, 436, 437*f*
DNA viruses, 400*f*–407*f*, 406*t*
DNP (dinitrophenol), 186
Dobzhansky, Theodosius, 11
Dodder (*Cuscuta*), 819*f*
Dog rose, 650*f*
Dolly (cloned lamb), 429*f*
Dolphins, 481*f*–482*f*, 886*f*, 1094*f*, 1191*f*, 1192, 1262*f*
Domains, protein, **347***f*, 444, 445*f*, 446, 676*f*
Domains, taxonomy, 12*f*, 13, 460*f*, **554**, 555*f*, 568, 569*f*, 585*t*. *See also* Archaea, domain; Bacteria, domain; Eukarya, domain
Domestication, plant, 651
Dominance, degrees of, 279*f*, 280
Dominant alleles, **272**, 273*f*–276*f*, 279*f*, 280, 287*f*, 293. *See also* Alleles
Dominantly inherited disorders, human, 287*f*
Dominant traits, 271*f*, 272*t*
Donkeys, 335*f*, 337
L-Dopa, 65
Dopamine, 56, 1081*t*, 1102, 1103*f*, 1104
Doppler, Christian, 270
Dormancy, endospore, 575*f*
Dormancy, seed, 639, **828**–829, 833–834, 852
Dormouse, 893*f*
Dorsal lip, **1051***f*, 1062*f*
Dorsal sides, 680*f*
Dorsal-ventral axis, 1060*f*
Double bonds, **36**, 37*f*, 60*f*
Double circulation, 924*f*–926*f*, **925**
Double fertilization, 646*f*, **647**, **826**, 827*f*
Double helix, DNA, 7*f*, **86***f*, 314*f*, **318***f*–320*f*, 330*f*
Double-stranded DNA (dsDNA) viruses, 406*t*, 408
Double-stranded RNA (dsRNA) viruses, 406*t*
Doudna, Jennifer, 42*f*, 361, 426
Douglas fir, 643*f*
Doushantuophyton, 535*f*
Dowling, Herndon, 888*f*
Down syndrome, 256*f*, 289, 307, **308***f*, 309, 432
Dragonflies, 887*f*
Draw It Questions, 15*f*, 16, 26, 39*f*, 41*f*, 42–43, 45*f*, 54–55, 61*f*, 62, 64–65, 69*f*, 74*f*, 78*f*, 86, 91, 102, 103*f*, 116*f*, 125, 131*f*, 141–142, 154*f*, 159, 163, 186, 202, 210, 224*f*, 233, 236*f*, 240*f*, 252, 259*f*, 263*f*, 268, 276, 290, 292, 303*f*, 313, 323*f*, 326*f*–327*f*, 334, 342, 345*f*, 355, 362, 397, 414, 419*f*, 423, 441, 466, 485, 491*f*, 524, 530*f*, 558*f*, 560*f*–561*f*, 572, 598*f*, 617, 635, 644*f*, 653, 709*f*, 719*f*, 730, 756, 769*f*, 780*f*, 782, 821, 841, 871, 904*f*, 920, 951, 963, 976, 1018, 1042, 1066, 1073*f*–1075*f*, 1084, 1106, 1138, 1161, 1195, 1203*f*, 1237, 1253, 1259, 1287
Drip irrigation, 808
Dromaius novaehollandiae, 739, 740*f*
Drosophila melanogaster (fruit fly). *See also* Fruit flies
alternative RNA splicing in, 378*f*
analyzing single-gene expression in, 423, 424*f*–425*f*
changes in developmental genes of, 545*f*, 546
circadian rhythm molecular mechanisms in, 883
courtship behaviors of, 1141*f*
diploid and haploid numbers of, 257
female bias in sperm usage of, 1024*f*
foraging genes of, 1148, 1149*f*
gene density of fungi vs., 665*t*
genetic basis of behavior in, 1155
genetic variation of, 487, 488*f*
genome size and number of genes of, 448*t*, 449
homeotic genes in, 463*f*–464*f*
linkage maps of, 305*f*–306*f*
linked genes and, 301*f*–303*f*
as model organism, 22, 295*f*, 1044
natural selection and adaptive evolution of, 494
one gene–one enzyme hypothesis on, 336
pattern formation of body plan of, 384, 385*f*–387*f*
phylogenetic trees of, 562*f*
reproductive anatomy of, 1024*f*
Drosophila species (fruit flies), 512*f*, 522–523, 567
Drought, 1228, 1244*f*
abscisic acid in plant tolerance to, 852
American Dust Bowl and, 807*f*
climate change and, 11
plant responses to, 863–864
Drugs. *See also* Medicine; Pharmaceutical products
addiction to, 1103*f*
antibiotic. *See* Antibiotic drugs
antiviral, 409
biotechnology in production of, 435, 436*f*
cocktails of, in AIDS treatment, 489
enantiomers in, 62*f*
as environmental toxins, 1276, 1277*f*
fungi and, 670–671
molecular shape and, 40*f*, 78
plant-derived, 651*t*, 652
resistance to, 478*f*, 592
species and genetic diversity and, 1262, 1263*f*
from sponges, 691
tolerance of, 104–105
Dryas, 1230*f*–1231*f*
Dry fruits, 645*f*
Dubautia species, 543*f*
Duchenne muscular dystrophy, **299**, 433
Duckweed (*Spirodela oligorrhiza*), 101*f*
Ducts, male reproductive, 1025*f*
Dulse, 609*f*
Dune fescue grass, 1203
Dung beetle, 1259
Dunstan, William, 1243*f*
Duodenum, **909**
Duplications, chromosome, **307**, 308*f*, 454*f*–456*f*
Duplications, gene, 489, 565*f*, 566
Dusky salamanders (*Desmognathus ochrophaeus*), 513
Dust Bowl, American, 807*f*
Dust mites, 708*f*
Dutch Hunger Winter, 372*f*
Dwarfism, 287*f*, 436, 1010
Dynamics, population, 1191*f*, 1192, 1205*f*–1206*f*, 1207, 1256*f*. *See also* Population growth
Dyneins, **115**, 116*f*
Dysentery, 613

E

Eagles, 1262*f*
Ear bones, mammalian, 530, 531*f*, 532, 741, 742*f*
Eardrum, 1112, 1113*f*
Ears. *See also* Hearing
bones of mammalian, 530, 531*f*, 532, 741, 742*f*
human, 1113*f*
insect, 1112*f*
Earth. *See also* Biosphere; Global ecology
development of photosynthesis and atmospheric oxygen on, 533, 534*f*
importance of seed plants to ecosystems of, 636*f*
mass extinctions of life on, 540*f*–542*f*
origins of life on, 57*f*, 58, 526*f*–528*f*
plate tectonics of, 538*f*–539*f*, 540
Earthworms, 688*f*, 704*f*, 705, 807, 905*f*, 923*f*, 985*f*
East Australian Current, 1168*f*
Eastern tent caterpillars (*Malacosoma americanum*), 897
Ebola virus, 409*f*
Ecdysis, 683–684, **705**, 707, 894*f*
Ecdysozoans, 683*f*, **684**
arthropods, 706*f*–712*f*, 713. *See also* Arthropods
nematodes, 705*f*, 706
phylogeny of, 688*f*–689*f*

Ecdysteroid, 1006*f*, 1007
Echidnas, 742, 743*f*
Echinoderms, 689*f*, **713**, 714*f*–715*f*, 719*f*, 1044*f*–1047*f*, 1086*f*, 1133
Echinoidea, 715*f*
ECM. *See* Extracellular matrix
Ecological footprint, **1209**, 1210*f*, 1211
Ecological forensics, 1265*f*
Ecological niches, **1215**, 1216*f*
Ecological pyramids, 1246, 1247*f*, 1248
Ecological species concept, **510**
Ecological succession, **1229**, 1230*f*–1231*f*
Ecology, **1165**. *See also* Community ecology; Conservation biology; Ecosystem ecology; Global ecology; Landscape ecology; Organismal ecology; Population ecology
  evolution and, 1187*f*
  factors of, in evolutionary rates, 538
  of fungi, 667*f*–670*f*
  genomics and proteomics in, 88*f*
  as interactions between organisms and environment, 1165
  of mosses, 627*f*, 628
  population growth and, 1213
  prokaryotes in, 586*f*–591*f*
  scope and fields of, 1165*f*
  of seedless vascular plants, 633–634
  urban, 1273, 1274*f*
Ecosystem diversity, 1261*f*–1262*f*
Ecosystem ecology, **1165***f*. *See also* Ecology; Ecosystems
Ecosystem engineers, **1226***f*
Ecosystems, **4f, 1165**f, **1239**, 1256*f*–1257*f*
  biogeochemical cycles in, 1248*f*–1252*f*
  climate change effects on, 1279, 1281*f*
  decomposition in, 1240*f*, 1241, 1248*f*, 1249
  diversity of, 1261*f*–1262*f*
  edges between, 1270, 1271*f*, 1287
  effects of mass extinctions on, 542*f*
  energy budgets of, 1241, 1242*f*
  energy flow and chemical cycling in, 9*f*, 164–165, 1238*f*–1240*f*, 1241, 1256*f*–1257*f*
  evolution of, 1259
  fungi in, 667*f*–670*f*
  importance of mosses to, 627*f*, 628
  importance of seedless vascular plants to, 633–634
  importance of seed plants to, 636*f*
  interactions in, 10*f*–11*f*
  as level of biological organization, 4*f*
  metagenomics and genome sequencing of species in, 444
  primary production in, 1241, 1242*f*–1244*f*, 1243*t*, 1245
  prokaryotes in, 586*f*, 587
  protists in, 614*f*–615*f*
  restoration of degraded, 1253*f*–1255*f*
  secondary production in, 1246*f*–1247*f*, 1248
Ecosystem services, **1263**
Ecotones, **1172**
Ectoderm, **680**, **1049**, 1050*f*–1051*f*
Ectomycorrhizae, **817**, 818*f*
Ectomycorrhizal fungi, **656**
Ectoparasites, **1220**
Ectopic cells and tissue, **1033**
Ectopic pregnancies, 1039
Ectoprocts, 688*f*, **698***f*, 713
Ectothermic organisms, **736**, **884***f*, 885*f*–887*f*, 888, 890–892
Edema, 933
Edges, ecosystem, 1270, 1271*f*, 1287
Ediacaran biota, 535*f*, 536, **676***f*–677*f*
Edidin, Michael, 128*f*
Effective population size, **1268**
Effector cells, **961**, 962*f*
Effectors, **866**
Effector-triggered immunity, 866
Efferent arteriole, 987*f*
Efferent neurons, 1088*f*
Efficiency, cell-signaling, 228*f*, 229
Egg-polarity genes, 386
Eggs, **1020**
  amniotic, 718, 734, 735*f*
  amphibian, 732, 733*f*
  of birds and dinosaurs, 564*f*, 565
  Burmese python thermogenesis for incubating, 887, 888*f*
  in embryonic development, 381*f*, 382
  in fertilization, 1022*f*–1024*f*, 1044*f*, 1045–1046
  human, 236–237, 1027, 1035*f*
  human oogenesis and, 1029*f*
  monotremes, 742
  nitrogenous wastes and, 983
  ovules and production of, in seed plants, 638*f*
Egg yolk, 91
Egrets, 1183, 1184*f*
Ejaculation, **1025**, 1034
Ejaculatory duct, 1025*f*
Elastic fibers, 878*f*
Elastin, 76*f*
Electrically charged side chains, 76, 77*f*
Electrical signals
  neuron, 880*f*, 1067–1068. *See also* Neurons
  phloem and symplastic, 802
Electrical synapses, 1077. *See also* Synapses
Electrocardiogram (ECG or EKG), **928***f*
Electrochemical gradients, 137, **138***f*
Electroencephalogram (EEG), 1094*f*
Electrogenic pump, **138***f*
Electrolytes, blood plasma, 934*f*
Electromagnetic receptors, **1110**, 1111*f*
Electromagnetic spectrum, **192***f*
Electron distribution diagrams, 34*f*–35*f*, 37*f*
Electronegativity, **37**, 45
Electron microscope (EM), **94***f*–95*f*
Electrons, **30**
  chemical properties and, 34*f*, 35
  cyclic flow of, in light reactions of photosynthesis, 198*f*, 199
  distribution of, 34*f*–35*f*
  in electron transport chains, 167*f*–168*f*
  energy levels of, 32*f*, 33–34
  linear flow of, in light reactions of photosynthesis, 197*f*–198*f*
  orbitals of, 35*f*, 36, 39*f*, 40
  in organic compounds, 58, 59*f*, 60
  in redox reactions, 165, 166*f*
  as subatomic particles, 30*f*, 31
Electron shells, 32*f*, **34**, 35*f*, 36
Electron transfer, 37, 38*f*
Electron transport chains, **168**
  in anaerobic respiration and fermentation, 179–180
  in cellular respiration, 167*f*–168*f*
  in chemiosmosis, 175, 176*f*, 177
  in oxidative phosphorylation, 174*f*, 175
Electrophysiologists, 1072*f*
Electroporation, **422**
Elements, **29**, 809
  atomic number and atomic mass, 31
  electron distribution in, 34*f*–35*f*
  electron orbitals in, 35*f*, 36
  energy levels of, 32*f*, 33–34
  isotopes of, 31
  of life, 29*t*
  organisms ratio of, 43
  subatomic particles in, 30*f*, 31
  tolerance to toxic, 30*f*
Elephantiasis, 933
Elephants, 10*f*, 88*f*, 474*f*, 1197*f*, 1265*f*
Elephant seals (*Mirounga angustirostris*), 999*f*, 1267
Elephant shark (*Callorhinchus milii*), 442*f*
Elevation
  climate and, 1169*f*
  genetics and, 1189
  ultraviolet (UV) light damage at, 1186*f*
Elicitors, 866
Elimination, **904**, 905*f*, 911
Elk, 1151*f*
Elkhorn coral, 1234
Elkinsia, 641*f*
Elodea, 55
Elongation, antiparallel DNA strand, 324, 325*f*–326*f*, 327*t*
Elongation factors, 352, 353*f*
Elongation stage
  transcription, 343*f*–344*f*
  translation, 352, 353*f*
Embryo development, plant, 828*f*–829*f*
Embryonic development. *See also* Differential gene expression
  analyzing single-gene expression in, 423, 424*f*–425*f*
  animal, 674*f*, 675. *See also* Animal development
  cell division, cell differentiation, and morphogenesis in, 381*f*, 382
  cell fate specification in, 1057, 1058*f*–1064*f*
  cleavage in, 1044, 1046, 1047*f*–1048*f*, 1049
  cytoplasmic determinants and induction in, 382*f*, 383
  fertilization in, 1044*f*–1046*f*
  gene conservation in, 466
  genomic imprinting and, 310*f*, 311
  human. *See* Human embryonic development
  morphogenesis in, 1049
  pattern formation of body plans in, 384, 385*f*–387*f*
  processes of, 1043*f*
  sequential gene regulation in, 383, 384*f*
Embryonic lethals, **386**
Embryonic stem (ES) cells, 431*f*
Embryophytes, 619*f*–**620***f*, 621
Embryos. *See also* Embryonic development
  anatomical homologies of vertebrate, 479*f*, 480
  plant, 620*f*
  maternal immune tolerance of, 1037
  monocot vs. eudicot, 649*f*
  survival of, 1023*f*
Embryo sacs, **646***f*, **826**, 827*f*
Emergent properties, **5**
  of apoptosis, 233
  chemical waste and, 43
  of compounds, 29*f*
  of flowers, 841
  of gastrula, 1066
  hierarchical organization of animal body plans and, 876
  integration of Mendelian inheritance with, 282–283
  levels of biological organization and, 4*f*–6
  life as, 125
  of protein function, 78
  of sickle-cell disease, 505
  of water. *See* Water
  weak chemical bonds and, 38
Emerging diseases, 409*f*–412*f*, 1234
Emigration, **1192**, 1196, 1197*f*, 1206*f*, 1207, 1256*f*
Emotions, 1095*f*, 1096, 1106
Emperor penguins (*Aptenodytes forsteri*), 873*f*
Emu (*Dromaius novaehollandiae*), 739, 740*f*
Enantiomers, **61***f*–62*f*, 65
Encephalitis, 401, 409
ENCODE (Encyclopedia of DNA Elements), 446, 450
Endangered species, 1199*f*, **1261**, 1262*f*, 1272*f*, 1288
Endergonic reactions, 148, **149***f*
Endocarp, 832*f*
Endocrine disruptors, 1015, 1276
Endocrine glands, **1003**. *See also specific glands*
  of human endocrine system, 1004*f*
  in neuroendocrine signaling, 1007*f*–1008*f*
  regulatory functions of, 1011*f*–1015*f*, 1016
Endocrine signaling, 1000*f*. *See also* Endocrine systems
  cascade pathways in, 1008, 1009*f*, 1010, 1014
  in cell signaling, 215, 216*f*
  cellular response pathways for, 1002*f*–1003*f*
  feedback regulation of, 1005–1006
  simple pathway of, 1004, 1005*f*
Endocrine systems, **880**, **1000**. *See also* Animal hormones
  coordination of nervous systems and. *See* Neuroendocrine signaling
  disruption of, 1015, 1276
  evolution of hormone function in, 1015*f*, 1016
  feedback regulation of, 1005–1006
  glands and hormones of human, 1003, 1004*f*
  hormone cascade pathways of, 1008, 1009*f*, 1010, 1014
  hormones and cell signaling in, 880*f*
  nervous system coordination with, 1000*f*, 1001, 1006*f*–1008*f*
  in regulation of blood pressure, 931
  in regulation of digestive systems, 915*f*
  regulatory functions of endocrine glands in, 1011*f*–1015*f*, 1016
  signaling molecules, target receptors, and response pathways in, 1000*f*–1004*f*, 1018
  simple endocrine pathway of, 1004, 1005*f*
  simple neuroendocrine pathway of, 1005*f*
Endocytosis, 126, **139**, 140*f*, 141, 208*f*–209*f*

Endoderm, **680**, **1049**, 1050*f*–1051*f*
Endodermis, **768**, **792**, 793*f*
Endomembrane system, **104**
  bound ribosomes and, 354*f*
  endoplasmic reticulum of, 104, 105*f*
  Golgi apparatus, 105, 106*f*, 107
  lysosomes, 107*f*, 108
  signal mechanism for targeting polypeptides to, 354*f*
  vacuoles, 108*f*
Endometriosis, **1033**
Endometrium, **1026**, 1027*f*
Endomycorrhizae, **656**, 660, 663, **817**, 818*f*
Endoparasites, **1220**
Endophytes, **667***f*, 668, **814**
Endoplasmic reticulum (ER), **104**, 109*f*
  animal cell, 100*f*
  as biosynthetic factory, 104, 105*f*
  cellular membrane synthesis and, 131*f*
  ribosomes and, 103*f*, 104
  in RNA virus replicative cycle, 405*f*
  targeting polypeptides to, 354*f*, 355
Endorphins, 40*f*, 78, **1081***t*
Endoskeletons, 1132*f*–1134*f*, **1133**
Endosperm, **647**, 826, **826**, 827*f*–829*f*
Endospores, **575***f*
Endosymbiont theory, **109**, 110*f*, 189, 534, 535*f*
Endosymbiosis, 109, 110*f*, **534**, 535*f*, **594**–595, 596*f*–597*f*, 608*f*, 609, 617
Endothelin, 931
Endothelium, blood vessel, **929***f*
Endothermic organisms, **736**, **884***f*, 885*f*–889*f*, 890–892
Endotoxins, **588**
Energetic hypothesis on food chain length, **1225***f*
Energy, **32**, **144**
  allocation and use of, 889, 890*f*
  animal. *See* Bioenergetics
  in arctic tundra ecosystem, 1256*f*–1257*f*
  ATP energy coupling and, 150, 151*f*–153*f*
  biofuel technology to reduce dependence on fossil fuels for, 838
  chemical, 144, 889, 890*f*
  chemiosmosis as energy-coupling mechanism, 175, 176*f*, 177
  conservation of, 1239
  in ecosystems, 1238*f*–1240*f*, 1241
  electrons and levels of, 32*f*, 33–34
  in energy flow and chemical cycling, 164*f*, 165
  enzymatic catalysis and. *See* Enzymatic catalysis
  forms of, 144, 145*f*
  free-energy change and. *See* Free-energy change
  global human use of, 1210*f*, 1211
  heat as, 46
  hydrothermal vents, prokaryotes, and, 592
  kinetic, 46, 144, 145*f*, 163
  laws of transformation of, 145*f*–146*f*, 147
  light. *See* Light energy
  locomotion and, 1135–1136
  metabolism and. *See* Metabolism
  in photosynthesis, 41*f*
  potential, 32, 144, 145*f*, 163
  primary production of, 1241, 1242*f*–1244*f*, 1243*t*, 1245
  processing of, as theme of biology, 2, 3*f*
  regulation of storage of, in animal nutrition, 915, 916*f*, 917
  secondary production of, 1246*f*–1247*f*, 1248
  storage of, in fats, 74
  thermal, 46, 132, 144
  transfer and transformation of, as theme of biology, 9*f*, 143
  transformation of, 109, 110*f*–111*f*, 209*f*
  trophic levels and, 1240*f*, 1241, 1246, 1247*f*, 1248
Energy and matter
  bioenergetics, 163
  decomposition and, 1259
  eukaryotic cells and, 93*f*
  hibernation, 897
  photosynthesis and, 211
  reproductive success and, 1042
  as theme of biology, 2, 3
  transfer and transformation of, 9*f*
Energy budgets
  animal, 892
  ecosystem, 1241, 1242*f*
Energy conservation, animal, 892, 893*f*
Energy coupling, **150**, 151*f*–153*f*
Energy flow
  in ecosystems, 1238*f*–1240*f*, 1241, 1256*f*–1257*f*
  between trophic levels, 1246*f*–1247*f*, 1248
Energy flow and chemical cycling, 9*f*, 164*f*, 165. *See also* Biogeochemical cycles; Primary production; Secondary production
Energy pyramids, 1246, 1247*f*, 1248
Engelmann, Theodor W., 193, 194*f*
English ivy, 784*f*
Enhancers, **374***f*–375*f*, 397
Entamoebas, 613
Enteric division, peripheral nervous system, 915, **1088***f*–1089*f*
Enthalpy, 147
Entomopathogenic fungus, 672
Entomophthora muscae, 662*f*
Entropy, 143, **146**–147, 1239
Entry stage, phage lytic cycle, 402*f*
Enveloped viruses, 401, 405*f*
Environment
  adaptation to, 2*f*
  adaptive evolution as fitness to, through natural selection, 494, 498, 499*f*. *See also* Adaptive evolution
  animal and plant responses to, 894*f*
  behavior and stimuli from, 1140*f*–1141*f*
  biotechnology in cleanup of, 418*f*, 437
  bottleneck effect from changes in, 495*f*, 496
  cancer and factors of, 394–395
  C. Darwin on natural selection and adaptations to, 14*f*–16*f*. *See also* Adaptations; Evolution; Natural selection
  cell cycle control system and factors of, 247, 248*f*
  cellular membranes and factors of, 128*f*, 129
  Earth's early, and origin of life, 526*f*–528*f*
  ecology as interactions between organisms and. *See* Ecology
  enzymatic catalysis and factors of, 157, 158*f*, 159
  evolution and, 485
  exchanges with, in animals, 874, 875*f*, 876
  as factor in red maple leaf structure, 762
  gene regulation in response to, 377
  heat exchange with, in animals, 873*f*, 885*f*–889*f*
  hormones and, 1018
  human impacts on. *See* Human environmental impacts
  hybrid zones and, 517*f*
  impact of, on phenotypes, 282*f*
  induction in differential gene expression as response to, 382*f*, 383
  influence of evolution and, on nitrogenous wastes, 983
  interaction with, as theme of biology, 10*f*–11*f*
  metagenomics and genome sequencing of groups of species in, 444
  nervous system disorders and, 1102*f*
  organism interactions with, 1165, 1178, 1183*f*–1186*f*
  as organisms and their surroundings, 469
  plant responses to abiotic stresses from, 797–798, 862–863, 864*f*, 865
  population ecology as study of populations in, 1190*f*, 1191. *See also* Population ecology
  population growth in unlimited, 1196, 1197*f*
  prokaryotic adaptations to extreme conditions in, 573*f*, 574
  protein structure and factors of, 82*f*, 83
  reproductive cycles and cues from, 1021
  response to, as property of life, 3*f*
  strength of ionic bonds and factors in, 38
  vertebrate kidney adaptations to diverse, 991*f*–993*f*
Environmental issues. *See also* Climate change; Ecology; Pollution
  decline in amphibian populations, 733
  density-dependent population regulation by toxic waste, 1204*f*
  prokaryotes, biotechnology, and, 589, 590*f*–591*f*
  threats to biodiversity, 1260*f*, 1261, 1263, 1264*f*–1266*f*
  threats to seed plant diversity, 651*f*, 652
Environmental toxins, 1275, 1276*f*–1277*f*
Enzymatic catalysis. *See also* Enzymes
  activation energy barrier and, 153, 154*f*
  allosteric regulation of, 160*f*–161*f*
  of cellular respiration, 183*f*, 184
  cofactors and, 158
  effects of temperature and pH on, 157, 158*f*
  in enzyme active sites, 156*f*
  enzyme inhibitors and, 158, 159*f*
  evolution of enzymes and, 159*f*
  graphing, for blood glucose levels, 157
  lowering of activation energy by enzymes in, 154, 155*f*
  in plant cells, 208*f*
  regulation of, 366*f*–369*f*, 370
  by ribozymes, 346
  substrate specificity of enzymes in, 155*f*, 156
Enzymatic hydrolysis, 904, 908*f*
  neurotransmission and, 1079, 1080*f*
  in vacuoles, 108
Enzymatic proteins, 76*f*
Enzymes, **67**, **153**. *See also* Enzymatic catalysis
  active sites of, 155*f*–156*f*
  activity measurement of, 163
  as catalysts, 153
  in cell-signaling nuclear responses, 226, 227*f*
  in chemical digestion, 907*f*–908*f*, 909
  evolution of, 159*f*
  facilitation of synthesis and breakdown of polymers by, 67*f*
  fungal, 654–655
  in gastric juice, 907*f*–908*f*
  gene relationship with, in protein synthesis, 336*f*–338*f*
  inducible and repressible, 367*f*–368*f*, 369
  locations of, in cells, 161*f*
  lowering plasma LDL levels by inactivating liver, 938
  lysosomes and, 107*f*, 108
  as proteins, 75, 76*f*, 130*f*
  restriction. *See* Restriction enzymes
  ribozymes as, 346
  in saliva, 906
  smooth ER and rough ER, 104–105
  substrate specificity of, 155*f*, 156
  from *Thermus aquaticus*, 441
Enzyme-substrate complexes, **155***f*, 156
Eosinophils, 934*f*–935*f*, **955**
Ependymal cells, 1090*f*
Ephedra, 642*f*
Ephrussi, Boris, 336
Epiblast, 1052*f*–1053*f*
Epicotyl, **829***f*–830*f*
Epidemics, **409***f*, 410, 867
Epidemiology, 902
Epidermis, 5*f*, **763***f*
Epididymis, **1025***f*
Epigenetic inheritance, **372***f*, 373
Epigenetic modifications, cancer gene, 388, 389*f*
Epigenetics, 430
Epiglottis, 906*f*
Epilepsy, 1076, 1098
Epinephrine (adrenaline), **1002**, 1003*f*
  adrenal glands and, 1004*f*, 1012*f*–1013*f*
  in fight-or-flight responses, 212*f*, 928
  multiple effects of, 1004*f*, 1013*f*
  second messenger of, 223*f*–224*f*
  signal transduction pathway of, 216, 226, 227*f*, 233
  as water-soluble hormone, 1001*f*
Epiphytes, 632*f*, 818, **819***f*, 820
Epistasis, **281***f*
Epithalamus, 1093*f*
Epithelial milk-secreting cell, 392*f*
Epithelial tissue, **877***f*
  as barrier defense, 954
  cell junctions in, 120*f*
  in small intestine, 909*f*
  transport, 981, 982*f*, 988*f*, 989
Epitopes, **958**, 959*f*, 969, 976
Epstein-Barr virus, 394
Equilibrium
  chemical. *See* Chemical equilibrium
  mechanoreceptors for sensing, 1112*f*–1116*f*
  population, 1203*f*
Equilibrium potential (Eion), **1071***f*
Equine encephalitis virus, 401
Equisetum, 632*f*, 633
Equus, 548, 549*f*
ER. *See* Endoplasmic reticulum
Erectile dysfunction, 1026, 1081–1082
Ergots, 669*f*

ER lumen, 104
Erosion, soil, 809*f*
Errantians, 703*f*
Errors, DNA replication, 327, 328*f*
Erythrocytes (red blood cells), 82*f*, 500–501, 502*f*–503*f*, 878*f*, 934*f*–**935***f*
Erythropoietin (EPO), **936**
Erythropsidinium, 594*f*
Escherichia coli (*E. coli*) bacteria, 595
  binary fission in, 242, 243*f*
  DNA cloning and gene cloning of, 418*f*, 419, 589
  DNA packing in chromosomes of, 330–331
  DNA replication and repair in, 322*f*–327*f*
  genetic recombination and conjugation in, 579, 580*f*, 581
  genome size and number of genes of, 448*t*, 449
  as model organism, 22
  pathogenic strains of, 588
  rapid adaptive evolution of, 578*f*, 579
  regulation of gene expression in, 366*f*–369*f*, 370
  viral infection of, 401, 402*f*–403*f*
  viral phages in DNA research on, 316*f*, 317
E site (exit site), **350***f*, 352*f*–353*f*
Esophagus, **906***f*, 908*f*
Essential amino acids, **899***f*
Essential elements, **29***t*, 64, 809, **810***f*, 811*t*
Essential fatty acids, **899***f*
Essential nutrients, animal, **899***f*, 900*t*–901*t*, 901*f*
Estivation, 893
Estradiol, 62*f*, 1003*f*, **1014**, 1015*f*, **1030**, 1032*f*, 1037*f*
Estrogen receptor alpha (ERα), 392*f*–393*f*
Estrogens, 62*f*, 376, 397, 1003*f*–1004*f*, **1014**, 1015*f*, 1030, 1032*f*, 1038, 1276
Estrous cycles, **1033**–1034
Estuaries, **1180***f*, 1186
Ethane, 59*f*
Ethanol, 63*f*, 180*f*, 590, 1204*f*
Ethene (ethylene), 59*f*
Ethical issues
  on biotechnology, 438–439, 839–840
  on diagnosing fetal genetic diseases, 1039–1040
  on DNA technology, 24
  on gene therapy, 435
  on seed plant extinctions, 652
  on silencing gene expression in humans, 427
Ethylene, 216, 846*t*, **852**, 853*f*–854*f*, 864*f*
Etiolation, **843***f*
Euchromatin, 330*f*, **332**
Eudicots, **649***f*–650*f*, 761, 769*f*–770*f*, 828*f*–830*f*
Eugenics, 435
Euglenids, **601***f*
Euglenozoans, **600***f*–601*f*
Euhadra species, 522
Eukarya, domain, **12***f*, 568, 569*f*, 585*t*, 594
Eukaryotes. *See also* Animals; Fungi; Plants
  cells of. *See* Eukaryotic cells
  chemiosmosis in, 175, 176*f*, 177
  cilia in, 13*f*
  electron transport chains in, 168–169
  endosymbiosis in evolution of, 594–595, 596*f*–597*f*
  Eukarya, domain, 12*f*, 568, 569*f*, 585*t*, 594
  genome sizes and number of genes for, 448*t*, 449
  origins of multicellular, 533*f*, 535*f*–536*f*
  origins of single-celled, 533*f*–535*f*
  photosynthesis of unicellular, 188*f*
  phylogenetic tree of, 612*f*
  protists as single-celled, 594. *See also* Protists
  taxonomy of, 568, 569*f*
  unikonts as first to diverge, 612*f*
Eukaryotic cells, **6**, **97**. *See also* Cells
  animal and plant, 100*f*–101*f*. *See also* Animal cells; Plant cells
  cellular integration of, 121*f*
  chromatin packing in chromosomes of, 330*f*–332*f*
  combinatorial transcription control for types of, 374–375, 377*f*
  cytoskeletons of, 112*f*–117*f*
  distribution of chromosomes in cell division of, 235*f*–236*f*, 237
  DNA replication in, 322, 323*f*
  in embryonic development, 381*f*, 382
  endomembrane system of, 104, 105*f*–109*f*
  evolution of cell division of, 243, 244*f*
  expressing cloned eukaryotic genes in, 422–423
  extracellular components and connections between, 118*f*–120*f*
  genetic instructions in nucleus of, 102, 103*f*
  internal membranes and organelles of, 93*f*, 98*f*, 99, 100*f*–101*f*
  mitochondria, chloroplasts, and peroxisomes of, 109, 110*f*–112*f*
  organization of typical genes in, 373*f*
  origins of, 534, 535*f*
  plasma membranes of, 98*f*, 99
  prokaryotic cells vs., 6*f*, 97*f*–98*f*, 99. *See also* Prokaryotic cells
  regulation of gene expression in. *See* Eukaryotic gene regulation
  replication of DNA telomeres of, 328, 329*f*
  ribosomes as protein factories of, 102, 103*f*, 104
  RNA processing in, 345*f*–347*f*
  transcription and translation in, 339*f*, 342, 343*f*–344*f*, 356*f*. *See also* Translation volume and surface area of, 98*f*, 99
Eukaryotic gene regulation. *See also* Gene regulation
  analyzing DNA deletion experiments on, 376
  differential gene expression in, 365*f*, 370*f*, 371. *See also* Differential gene expression
  post-transcriptional regulation in, 377, 378*f*, 379
  regulation of chromatin structure in, 371*f*–372*f*, 373
  regulation of transcription initiation in, 373*f*–378*f*, 379
Eukaryotic genomes
  evolution of, from DNA changes, 454*f*–457*f*, 458–459
  genes and multigene families in, 452, 453*f*
  horizontal gene transfer in, 569, 570*f*
  noncoding repetitive DNA sequences in, 450*f*–451*f*, 452
  sizes and number of genes for, 448*t*, 449
Eumetazoans, **683***f*, 686, 691
Euphorbs, 1172*f*
European flycatchers, 519
European hamster (*Cricetus cricetus*), 893*f*
European honeybees, 1142*f*
European kestrels, 1201*f*
European larch, 643*f*
European Molecular Biology Laboratory, 444
European robin, 14*f*
European starling, 1264
Euryarchaeota clade, 586
Euryhaline animals, 978
Eurypterids, **708**
Eustachian tube, **1113***f*
Eutherians (placental mammals), 481*f*, 543*f*, **744***f*–747*f*. *See also* Primates
Eutrophication, 1227*f*, **1242**, 1275*f*
Eutrophic lakes, **1179***f*
Evaporation, 46*f*, 47, **885***f*, 886
  in water cycle, 1250*f*, 1259
Evaporative cooling, **47**, 48*f*
Evapotranspiration, **1232***f*
  in water cycle, 1250*f*
Even-toed ungulates, 481*f*–482*f*
Evergreen trees, 643*f*
Evidence
  fossils as, for evolution, 13*f*
  scientific data as, 17*f*, 19*f*
  theories and, 21–22
Evo-devo. *See* Evolutionary developmental biology
Evolution, **11**, **469**. *See also* Adaptations; Natural selection
  abiotic synthesis of organic molecules as origin of life on Earth, 57*f*, 58
  of action potentials, 1084
  altered DNA nucleotides as mutations in, 328
  of alternative carbon fixation mechanisms in plants, 203
  of amniotes, 735*f*
  of anatomical and molecular features, 485
  of angiosperms, 647*f*–649*f*
  of animals, 675*f*–677*f*, 678–679
  of animal size and shape, 874*f*
  of antifreeze proteins, 865
  of arthropods, 706*f*, 707
  of ATP synthase, 186
  of axon width and myelination, 1076*f*–1077*f*
  of behaviors by associative learning, 1146
  bilaterian phylogenetic tree, 717
  of biochemical pathways, 163
  of biological diversity. *See* Biodiversity
  of biological order, 147
  of bryophytes, 635
  of cell cycle, 252
  of cell signaling, 213*f*, 214, 233
  cellular structures in, 125
  of cellular water regulation, 142
  of chewing while breathing, 920
  of chordates, 722*f*
  cladistic analysis and, 572
  classification of diversity of life and, 12*f*–13*f*
  of codons, 364
  coevolution of flowers and pollinators in, 825*f*
  of cognition in vertebrates, 1098, 1099*f*
  comparing genome sequences to study, 459, 460*f*–464*f*
  convergent. *See* Convergent evolution
  crossing over and, 313
  cross-species gene expression in, 423
  Darwinian theory of, as descent with modification by natural selection, 14*f*–16*f*, 469–470, 473*f*–476*f*, 483–484
  of differences in cellular membrane lipid composition, 129
  divergence of human globin genes during, 458
  DNA and proteins as measures of, 87, 89, 397
  DNA-based technologies and, 441
  of double circulation, 925
  of drug resistance, 435, 592
  early vertebrate, 724*f*–725*f*
  ecological change and, 1187*f*
  of ecological niches, 1215, 1216*f*
  ecosystem, 1259
  elemental makeup of organisms and, 43
  endosymbiosis in eukaryotic, 594–595, 596*f*–597*f*, 608*f*, 609
  environment and, 485
  of enzymes, 159*f*
  evidence supporting Darwinian theory of, 476, 477*f*–482*f*, 483
  evolutionary developmental biology "evo-devo" in study of, 387
  exaptation, 783
  of extraembryonic membranes in amniote development, 1053*f*, 1054
  extremophiles and, 55
  field research by C. Darwin on, 471, 472*f*–473*f*
  of fishes, 730
  of flowers, 825*f*
  of foraging behaviors, **1148**, 1149*f*
  of fungi, 659*f*, 660
  of fungus-alga symbiosis, 672
  of gas exchange, 947*f*–949*f*
  of gecko appearance, 26
  gene conservation in, 466
  of genes and genomes, 454*f*–457*f*, 458–459, 565*f*, 566
  genes shared between organisms, 26
  of genetic code, 341, 342*f*
  genetic variation and, of behavior, 1155*f*–1157*f*
  of genetic variation in populations, 266, 267*f*
  genomics and proteomics in study of, 88*f*
  of glycolysis, 182
  of gnathostomes and jaws, 725*f*, 726
  of gymnosperms, 641*f*
  of hermaphroditism, 1042
  of high-density populations, 1213
  historical context of Darwinian theory of, 469*f*–471*f*
  hominin and human, 748*f*–754*f*
  of hormone function, 1015*f*, 1016
  of human genome, 524, 566
  imperfections of organisms and, 505
  influence of environment and, on nitrogenous wastes, 983
  of insect size, 951
  of intelligence, 1106
  of intracellular receptors, 1018
  of introns, 346, 347*f*
  of kidneys, 991, 998
  of plants, 617, 618, 619*f*, 621, 622*t*
  late-acting dominant lethal alleles, 293
  of life history traits, 1200, 1201*f*–1202*f*
  of life on planets with water, 50*f*
  light-sensitive germination, 871
  of lignin, 783
  of locomotion, 1138

Evolution (continued)
making and testing predictions of Darwinian, 483
of mammals, 741, 742*f*
mass extinctions and, 653, 1287
of mitochondria and chloroplasts, 109, 110*f*
of mitosis, 243, 244*f*
molecular clocks and rates of, 566, 567*f*–568*f*
mutation rate and, 334
of mycorrhizae in plants, 817
natural selection and genetic variation from recombination of alleles in, 305
of nitrogen recycling in bacteria, 821
of pathogen detection by plants, 866
of pathogens that evade immune systems, 957, 971–972, 973*f*, 973*t*, 974, 976
pattern and process aspects of, 470, 483
photorespiration and, 211
phylogenetic bracketing and, 572
phylogenies as history of, 554*f*–556*f*. *See also* Phylogenies
of plant secondary growth, 774
of plant self-compatibility, 841
of prokaryotic flagella, 576*f*, 577
as property of life, 3*f*
protein divergence and, 91
radiometric dating and, 32–33
rapid prokaryotic, 573, 578*f*, 579
of reproductive method switch, 268
of reptiles, 736
of resource acquisition adaptations in vascular plants, 784*f*–786*f*, 787
reversals of, 756
of RNA interference, 380
of seeds in seed plant, 639
of segmentation, 1066
of sex reversal, 1020
sexual reproduction as enigma of, 1021, 1022*f*
of short-term and long-term memory, 1100, 1101*f*
sickle-cell disease and, 286*f*, 287
silicon-based life and, 65
small population size and extinction vortex in, 1266, 1267*f*
of smooth muscles, 1132
speciation as conceptual bridge between macroevolution and microevolution, 507, 523. *See also* Macroevolution; Microevolution; Speciation
species distributions and, 1183, 1189
of tetrapods, 730
as theme of biology, 2, 3, 11, 12*f*–16*f*
theoretical aspects of Darwinian, 483–484
of tolerance to toxic elements, 30*f*
of transport cells in kelp, 804
tree of life and, 15*f*–16*f*
unity and diversity in, 13*f*, 26
using protein data to test hypotheses on horizontal gene transfer in, 570
of vascular plants, 628*f*–631*f*
of vertebrate brain structure, 1091*f*
of viruses, 406, 408, 411, 414
of visual perception, 1117*f*–1119*f*
Evolutionary developmental biology (evo-devo), 387, **463**, 467, 544
Evolutionary lineage, **555**, **556***f*
Evolutionary trees, 474*f*, **480***f*. *See also* Phylogenetic trees
Exaptations, 548, 577, 783
Excavates, **597**, 598*f*, 600
Exchange surfaces, animal, 874, 875*f*, 876
Excitatory postsynaptic potential (EPSP), **1078**–1079
Excitement phase, sexual, 1034
Excretion, **978**, **982**, 984*f*. *See also* Excretory systems; Osmoregulation
Excretory systems, 983
hormonal regulation of, 994*f*–996*f*
internal exchange surfaces and, 875*f*
kidneys in mammalian and human, 985, 986*f*–993*f*
Malpighian tubules in, 985*f*
metanephridia in, 985*f*
nitrogenous wastes and, 977–978, 982*f*–983*f*
osmoregulation and, 977*f*–982*f*
processes of, 984*f*
processing of blood filtrate by nephrons in, 987, 988*f*, 989
protonephridia in, 984*f*, 985
Executive functions, brain, 1098
Exercise, immune systems and, 971
Exercises, Scientific Skills. *See* Scientific Skills Exercises
Exergonic reactions, **148**, 149*f*, 154*f*, 165
Exhalation, 944, 945*f*
Exit tunnel, ribosome, 350*f*
Exocrine glands, 1004
Exocytosis, 126, **139***f*, 208*f*–209*f*
Exome, 434
Exons, 345*f*–347*f*, **346**, 449, 456, 457*f*, 488*f*
Exon shuffling, 347*f*, 457*f*
Exoskeletons, **693**, **1133**
animal, 683
anthozoan, 693
arthropod, 707*f*
chitin as structural polysaccharide in, 72*f*
ectoproct, 698*f*
in locomotion, 1132*f*, 1133
Exotic species, 1264*f*
Exotoxins, **588**
Expansins, **848**, 849*f*
Experimental groups, 20, 21*f*
Experiments, **17–21**. *See also* Case studies; Inquiry Figures; Research Method Figures; Scientific Skills Exercises
Exploitation, **1217**, 1218*f*–1219*f*, 1220
Exploration, 17*f*
Explosive seed dispersal, 645*f*
Exponential population growth, **1196**, 1197*f*, 1207*f*, 1208
Expressed sequence tags (ESTs), 445–446
Expression vectors, **422**
Extavour, Cassandra, 467
Extension, muscle, 1132*f*
Extensively drug-resistant tuberculosis (XDR-TB), 589
External factors, cell cycle control system, 246, 247*f*–248*f*
External fertilization, 1022*f*, 1023, 1151
Extinctions
of amphibians, 733
climate change and, 11
current rate of, 1261, 1262*f*
of dinosaurs, 736
ecological factors affecting rates of, 538
in fossil record, 481, 529*f*
global and local, 1262
global temperature and, 541*f*, 542
human impacts on, 1261, 1262*f*
introduced species and, 1264*f*, 1287
island equilibrium model and, 1232, 1233*f*
mass, 540*f*–542*f*, 1287
of molluscs, 702*f*
resurrection of species after, 1266
of seed plant species, 651*f*, 652
small population risks for, 1266, 1267*f*–1268*f*, 1269
speciation and, 520–523
Extinction vortex, **1266**, 1267*f*
Extracellular diffusion, 768
Extracellular digestion, 904*f*–905*f*
Extracellular matrix (ECM), **118**, 119*f*, 130*f*, 1056
Extraembryonic membranes, 734, 735*f*, **1052**, 1053*f*, 1054
Extranuclear genes, 311
Extreme halophiles, **585**–586
Extreme thermophiles, **585***f*, 586
Extremophiles, 55, **585***f*, 586
Eyes. *See also* Visual systems
euglenid eyespot as, 601*f*
evolution of, 547*f*–548*f*
evolution of light detecting organs and, 1117*f*–1119*f*
insect compound, 712*f*, 894*f*
vertebrate, 1118*f*–1122*f*, 1123
Eyespots, 601*f*, 1117*f*

F

F_1 (first filial) generations, **271***f*, 524
F_2 (second filial) generations, **271***f*
Faceted eyes, arthropod, 1117*f*, 1118
Facilitated diffusion, **135***f*, 136, 209*f*
Facultative anaerobes, **181**, **582**
FAD (flavin adenine dinucleotide), 172*f*–173*f*, 178
$FADH_2$, 172*f*–173*f*, 175, 178
Fagus grandifolia, 1170*f*
Fairy ring, mushroom, 666, 667*f*
Falling phase, action potential, 1074*f*, 1075
Familial cardiomyopathy, 357
Families, taxonomy, **554**, 555*f*
Family planning, 1208
Family resemblance, genetics and, 254*f*
Family studies, 1102*f*
Family trees, 284*f*, 285
Far-red light, plant response to, 857*f*
Fas molecule, 233
Fast block to polyspermy, 1045
Fast-twitch fibers, **1131**
Fate maps, **1058***f*–1059*f*
Fathead minnows (*Pimephales promelas*), 1276
Fatigue, muscle, 1131
Fats, **72**
absorption of, in small intestine, 910*f*
animal heat exchange and, 885, 887*f*
blood cholesterol and, 938
digestion and absorption of, 908*f*–910*f*
in egg yolks, 91
as fuel for catabolism, 182*f*, 183
in glyoxysomes, 112
hydrocarbons in, 60, 61*f*
as lipids, 72, 73*f*, 74
oxidation of, during cellular respiration, 166–167
trans fats, 61
Fat-soluble vitamins, 900*t*
Fatty acids, **72**
beta oxidation of, for catabolism, 182*f*, 183
essential, 899*f*
fats and, 72, 73*f*, 74
Fd, 198*f*, 199
Feathers, 738*f*, 739
Feather stars, 715*f*
Fecal microbial transplantation, 912
Feces, 697, 832*f*, **911**, 1246*f*
Feedback, scientific, 19*f*
Feedback inhibition, **161***f*, 183*f*, 184, 366*f*
Feedback mechanisms, 397
Feedback regulation, **10**. *See also* Regulation
of animal digestion, energy storage, and appetite, 914, 915*f*–917*f*, 918
of animal homeostasis, 881*f*–883*f*
Cambrian explosion and, 685
in density-dependent population growth, 1203
of endocrine systems, 1005–1006
of molecular interactions, 10*f*
Feeding mechanisms, 655, 902, 903*f*
Feet, bird adaptation to perching, 740*f*
Feline panleukopenia virus, 409
Female condoms, 1038
Female gametophytes, angiosperm, 826, 827*f*
Females
autoimmune diseases in human, 971
fruit fly bias in sperm usage by, 1024*f*
hormonal regulation of reproductive systems of human, 1032*f*, 1033–1034
hormones of, 999*f*, 1004*f*, 1007*f*, 1008, 1014, 1015*f*
inactivation of X-linked genes in mammalian, 300*f*
mate choice by, 499*f*–500*f*, 1151, 1152*f*–1153*f*, 1154
maternal immune tolerance of embryo and fetus during pregnancy, 1037
oogenesis in human, 1027, 1029*f*
parental care by, 1151
parthenogenesis by, 697–698
reproductive anatomy of human, 1026, 1027*f*
reproductive rates and, 1194, 1195*f*, 1204*f*, 1208, 1213
sex chromosomes of, 298*f*, 299
Fermentation, **165**
anaerobic and aerobic respiration vs., 179–180
cellular respiration vs., 165, 181*f*, 182
types of, 180*f*, 181
Fern galls, 678
Ferns, 630*f*–632*f*, 633, 635, 637*f*
Ferredoxin (Fd), 198*f*, 199
Fertilization, reproductive, **258**, **826**, **1022**, **1044**. *See also* Reproductive isolation
angiosperm double, 646*f*, 647, 826, 827*f*. *See also* Pollination
in animal embryonic development, 1044*f*–1046*f*
external *versus* internal, 1022*f*, 1023
gamete production and delivery in, 1023*f*, 1024
genetic variation from random, 266, 305
in human life cycle, 254, 257*f*, 258, 1035*f*

mechanisms preventing angiosperm self-fertilization, 834, 835*f*
meiosis and, 237
G. Mendel's techniques of plant, 270*f*–271*f*
offspring survival following, 1023*f*
parental care and internal vs. external, 1151
parthenogenic self-fertilization, 1020, 1021*f*
prezygotic barriers and, 508*f*–509*f*, 510
in varieties of sexual life cycles, 258*f*, 259
in vitro, 1039*f*
Fertilization, soil, **807**–808, 983, 1244, 1275*f*
Fertilization envelope, 1045*f*, 1046*f*
Fertilizers, in nitrogen cycle, 1251*f*
Fescue grass, 1203
Fetal alcohol syndrome, 1036
Fetal testing, 288, 289*f*
Fetus, **1036**
detecting disorders of, during pregnancy, 1039–1040
gestation and birth of, 1035*f*–1037*f*
maternal immune tolerance of, 1037
Zika virus and, 409
Fever, 888, 889*f*, 956–957
F factor, **580***f*, 581
Fiber cells, 764*f*
Fibers, muscle, 1130, 1131*t*
Fibrillanosema crangonycis, 661*f*
Fibrin, 936*f*
Fibrinogen, 936*f*
Fibroblast growth factor (FGF), 1062
Fibroblasts, 113*t*, 247, **878***f*
Fibronectin, **119***f*
Fibrous connective tissue, 878*f*
Fibrous proteins, 78
Fibrous root systems, 760
Ficedula species, 519
Fiddler crabs, 1141*f*
Fierer, Noah, 1223*f*
Fight-or-flight responses, 212*f*, 928, 1003, 1012*f*–1013*f*, 1089
Filamentous fungi, 659
Filaments, 879*f*
Filaments, flagellum, 576*f*, 577
Filaments, flower, **644***f*
Filter feeders, **690***f*, **903***f*
Filtrates, **984***f*, 987, 988*f*, 989
Filtration, **984***f*
Fimbriae, 97*f*, **575**, 576*f*
Finches, 15, 16*f*, 21, 473*f*, 486*f*–487*f*, 498, 519, 1217*f*
Fingerprints, DNA, 436
Finland, 1227*f*
Fire, 1172, 1228, 1229*f*, 1244*f*
Firefly gene, 341, 342*f*
Fireweed, 636*f*
First law of thermodynamics, 143, **145***f*, 146, 1239
Fishapod discovery, 730*f*, 731
Fishes
adaptations of kidneys of, 992, 993*f*
allopatric speciation in, 511*f*, 512
in biomanipulation, 1227*f*
changes in gene regulation of, 546*f*, 547
differential gene expression in, 365*f*
discovery of "fishapod" *Tiktaalik*, 730*f*, 731
endangered or threatened, 1262
flashlight, 397, 587*f*
frequency-dependent selection in, 500, 501*f*
gills for gas exchange in, 941*f*
hearing and equilibrium in, 1116*f*
hybrid zones of, 515*f*, 519*f*, 520
lux genes in, 397
osmoregulation in, 979*f*
parental care in, 1151*f*
parthenogenesis in, 1020
plastic waste and, 1277
protists as pathogens of, 614
ray-finned, and lobe-finned, 728*f*–729*f*, 730
sex determination of, 298*f*
sex reversal in, 1020
single circulation in, 924*f*
thermoregulation in, 881*f*
Fish fraud, 89
Fission, **1020**
Fitness, relative, **497**
FitzRoy, Robert, 472
Fixed action patterns, **1140***f*
Fixed alleles, 490, 496
Flaccid cells, **135**, **790**, 791*f*, 797*f*
Flagella, **114**
in animal cell, 100*f*
bacterial, movement of, 993*f*
cilia vs., 115*f*
dinoflagellate, 605*f*
euglenozoan, 600*f*
flagellated sperm, 619
as microtubules, 114, 115*f*–116*f*
in prokaryotic cell, 97*f*, 576*f*, 577
in protistan cell, 101*f*
stramenopile, 602*f*
Flagellated sperm, 619
Flagellin, 866
Flame bulbs, 694, 984
Flamingo (*Phoenicopterus ruber*), 14*f*, 740*f*
Flashlight fish, 397, 587*f*
Flattening, body surface area and, 695*f*
Flatworms
characteristics of, 687*f*, 694, 695*f*–697*f*
gastrovascular cavities of, 922*f*, 923
hydrostatic skeletons of, 1133*f*
nervous systems of, 1086*f*
protonephridia of, 984*f*, 985
Flavin adenine dinucleotide (FAD), 172*f*–173*f*, 178
Flavin mononucleotide (FMN), 175
Flavoproteins, 175
Flemming, Walther, 237
Flesh-eating disease, 478*f*
Fleshy fruits, 645*f*
Flexion, muscle, 1132*f*
Flies, 712*f*, 825*f*
Flight, 710, 711*f*–712*f*, 736, 738*f*, 739, 1135–1136
Flightless birds, 506*f*, 507, 511, 739, 740*f*
Floating bladderwort (*Utricularia gibba*), 448*t*, 449
Floating fern, 813*f*
Floating of ice, 48*f*
Flooding, 1228
plant responses to, 804, 864*f*
Floral meristems, 830
Florida, restoration projects in, 1254*f*
Florida Keys mangrove islands, 1233*f*
Florida Keys National Marine Sanctuary, 1273*f*
Florida red-bellied turtles *(Pseudemys nelsoni)*, 884*f*
Florigen, **860***f*
Flowering, 830
FLOWERING LOCUS T (*FT*) gene, 860*f*
Flowers, **644**, **823**
adaptations of, that prevent self-fertilization, 834, 835*f*
coevolution of pollinators and, 825*f*
as emergent property, 841
genetic control of formation and flowering of, 779*f*–780*f*
hormonal control of flowering of, 860*f*
monocot vs. eudicot, and pollination of, 649*f*
photoperiodism and flowering of, 859*f*–860*f*
pollination of, 822*f*–825*f*
preventing transgene escape with genetically engineered, 839–840
structure and function of, 644*f*, 645, 823*f*–824*f*
trends in evolution of, 825*f*, 826
Flu. *See* Influenza viruses
Fluctuation, population, 1205*f*
Fluid feeders, **903***f*
Fluid mosaic model, **127***f*
Flukes, 687*f*, 696*f*
Fluorescence, 195*f*, 250
Fluorescence microscopy, 95*f*, 96
Fluoxetine, 1103
Flycatchers, European, 519
Fly death fungus, 662*f*
Flying fox bats (*Pteropus mariannus*), 1262*f*
Flying squirrels, 481*f*, 517
FMN (flavin mononucleotide), 175
Focusing, visual, 1122*f*, 1123
Folding, body surface area and, 695*f*
Folding, protein, 83
Folic acid, 372*f*
Foliose lichens, 668*f*, 672
Follicles, **1026**, 1027*f*
Follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH), 1004*f*, 1008*f*, **1030**, 1031*f*–1032*f*, 1033
Follicular phase, 1032*f*, 1033
Food. *See also* Animal nutrition; Trophic structure
animal processing of, 902, 903*f*–905*f*
in bioenergetics and metabolic rates, 889, 890*f*
brown algae as human, 603
calories of, 46
climate change and quality of, 812
digestion of. *See* Digestion; Digestive systems
as fuel for catabolism, 182*f*, 183
as fuel for cellular respiration, 164*f*, 165
fungi as human, 670
genetically modified organisms (GMOs) as, 438–439, 837, 838*f*, 839–840
as limiting factor for human population size, 1211
plants as, for animals, 617, 619
population cycles and shortages of, 1205*f*, 1206
ray-finned fishes as human, 728
red algae as human, 609*f*, 610
seed plants as human, 651
Food chains, **1224***f*–1225*f*, 1257*f*
biological magnification in, 1275, 1276*f*
energy loss along, 1246, 1247*f*, 1248
Food poisoning, 403, 588, 1080
Food vacuoles, 107*f*, **108**, 607*f*, 904
Food webs, 614, 615*f*, **1224***f*–1225*f*, 1237
Foolish seedling disease, 851
Foot, mollusc, **699***f*
Foot, sporophyte, **625**
forager gene, 1148, 1149*f*
Foraging behaviors, **1148**, 1149*f*, 1150, 1161
Foraminiferans (forams), 599*f*, **608***f*
Forebrain, **1091***f*–1092*f*
Forelimbs, mammalian, 479*f*
Forensic ecology, 1265*f*
Forensic science, 24*f*, 436, 437*f*
Foreskin, penile, 1026
Forest fires, 1228, 1229*f*, 1244*f*
Forests. *See also* Deforestation
climate change effects on, 1245, 1282
climate effects of, 1169*f*
decomposition in, 1248
northern coniferous, 1175*f*
temperate broadleaf, 1176*f*
tropical, 1173*f*
Formic acid, 28*f*
Fossil fuels
biofuel technology to reduce dependence on, 838
in carbon cycle, 1250*f*
ecological footprints and, 1210*f*, 1211
global climate change and, 204–205, 1278, 1280*f*–1281*f*, 1282, 1283*f*
humans and burning of, 11
hydrocarbons as, 60
nutrient cycling and, 1249*f*
ocean acidification and, 53*f*, 54
photosynthesis as source of, 188
seedless vascular plants and, 633–634
Fossil record. *See also* Fossils
angiosperms in, 647*f*, 648
animals in, 675*f*–677*f*, 678–679
arthropods in, 706*f*, 707, 710
colonization of land in, 536, 537*f*
ecological factors affecting evolutionary rates in, 538
evidence in, for dinosaurs as ancestors of birds, 564*f*, 565
evidence in, for evolutionary change, 13*f*
evolutionary trends in, 548, 549*f*
forams in, 608*f*
fungi in, 659*f*, 660
geologic record and, 532*f*–533*f*
gymnosperms in, 641*f*
as history of life, 525, 529*f*
molecular clocks and, 567
origin of mammals in, 530, 531*f*, 532
origin of multicellular organisms in, 533*f*, 535*f*–536*f*
origin of single-celled organisms in, 532*f*–535*f*
plant origin and diversification in, 621, 622*f*
seedless vascular plants in, 628*f*
whales in, 525*f*, 526
Fossils, **470**. *See also* Fossil record
amniote, 735*f*
biogeography and, 482–483
bird, 739*f*
dating of, 529, 530*f*
early *Homo*, 750–751, 752*f*
of early vertebrates, 724*f*–725*f*
as evidence for Darwinian evolution, 481*f*–482*f*
evolutionary theories and, 470*f*
of gnathostomes, 726*f*
hominin, 748*f*–749*f*, 750

Fossils (continued)
Homo sapiens, 753*f*, 754
horseshoe crabs as living, 708*f*
radiometric dating of, 32–33
reptile and dinosaur, 736
speciation patterns of, 520*f*, 521
tetrapod, 730*f*–731*f*
whisk ferns as living, 633
Foundation species, 1214, **1226**
Founder effect, **494**–495
Fovea, **1122***f*, 1123
Fox, 1238*f*, 1244, 1256*f*
FOXP2 gene, 461, 462*f*
F plasmids, 580*f*, **581**
Fragmentation, habitat, 1263, 1264*f*, 1270, 1271*f*
Fragmentation, reproductive, **833**, 1020
Frameshift mutations, 358*f*, **359**
Franklin, Rosalind, 317, 318*f*, 320
Fraternal twins, 1036
Free energy, **147**
Free-energy change, 149*f*–150*f*, 152*f*
Free energy of activation (activation energy), 153, 154*f*
Free ribosomes, 103*f*, 104, 354*f*
Freezing, 865
Fregata magnificens, 1139*f*
Frequency-dependent selection, 500, 501*f*
Freshwater animals, 979*f*, 992
Freshwater biomes, 1177*f*–1178*f*
habitat loss in, 1264
Freshwater lakes, primary production in, 1242–1243
Freshwater marshes, 1186
Friction, locomotion and, 1135
Fringe wetlands, 1179*f*
Fringing reefs, 1182*f*
Fritillaries, 1206*f*, 1207
Frogs
as amphibians, 719*f*, 732*f*–733*f*
axis formation in, 1060*f*
breathing in, 925
cell developmental potential in, 1060, 1061*f*
cell fate and pattern formation by inductive signals in, 1062*f*
cleavage in, 1048*f*, 1049
coloration of, 1218*f*
discovery of new species of, 1164*f*, 1185
embryonic development of, 381*f*
external fertilization of, 1022*f*
fungal parasites of, 669, 670*f*
gastrulation in, 1051*f*, 1052
mate choice among tree, 500*f*
metamorphosis of, 1015*f*
neurulation in, 1054*f*, 1055
nuclear transplantation in, 428, 429*f*
polyploidy in, 514
reproductive isolation in, 524
Fronds, 632*f*
Frontal lobe, 1085, 1097*f*, 1098
Frontal lobotomy, 1098
Frost-tolerant plants, 865
Fructose, 68*f*–69*f*, 153, 155
Fructose 6-phosphate, 186
fru gene, 1155
Fruit flies
courtship behavior of, 1155
hybrid sterility of, 522–523
model organism. *See Drosophila melanogaster*
molecular clock of, 567
reproductive isolation of allopatric populations of, 512*f*
Fruiting bodies, 213*f*, 612*f*–613*f*, 663*f*–664*f*, 665*t*
Fruitlets, 830, 831*f*
Fruits, **645**, **830**
angiosperm seeds as, 644, 645*f*
auxin in growth of, 849
dispersal of, 832*f*
in ecosystem interaction, 10*f*, 11
ethylene in ripening of, 854
gibberellins in growth of, 851*f*
structure and function of, 830*f*–831*f*
Fruticose lichens, 668*f*, 672
Frye, Larry, 128*f*
Fuels
bacteria in production of ethanol, 590
fossil. *See* Fossil fuels
genetic engineering of, using fungi, 671*f*
peat and coal, 627*f*, 633–634
seed plants as, 651
Fumonisin, 839
Function, structure and, 6
Functional groups, **62***f*–63*f*
Functional magnetic resonance imaging (fMRI), 1096*f*
Fundamental niches, 1215, 1216*f*
Fungi
amphibian population declines due to, 733
ascomycetes, 663*f*–664*f*, 665*t*, 671*f*
basidiomycetes, 665*f*–667*f*
body structure of, 655*f*–656*f*
cells of, 100*f*
chitin in, 72
chytrids, 661*f*
cryptomycetes, 661*f*
as decomposers, 188, 1240*f*
in domain Eukarya, 12*f*
expressing cloned eukaryotic genes in, 422–423
fungal plant toxin, 839
immune system recognition of, 952*f*
kingdom and domain mutualisms with, 813*f*
land colonization by, 536, 537*f*
maximizing surface area by, 695*f*
microsporidians, 661*f*
mucoromycetes, 663*f*
mycorrhizal, 621, 656*f*, 657, 787, 817, 818*f*
nutrient limitations and, 1244
nutritional and ecological roles of, 12*f*, 13, 655, 667*f*–670*f*
as opisthokonts, 613
origin and evolution of, 659*f*, 660
phylogeny and diversity of, 660*f*–667*f*
practical uses of, for humans, 670, 671*f*
relationship of, to unikont protists, 611–612
sexual and asexual life cycles of, 258*f*, 259, 657, 658*f*–659*f*
symbiotic associations of, 672
terrestrial adaptations of, 660
zoopagomycetes, 662*f*, 663
Fungi kingdom, **12***f*, 568
Furcifer pardalis, 735*f*
Fusarium, 839
Fusion, hybrid zone, 519*f*, 520
Fynbos, 1174*f*

G

G_0 phase, **246**, 247*f*
G_1 checkpoint, 245*f*–247*f*
G_1 phase, **237***f*
G_2 checkpoint, 245*f*–247*f*
G_2 phase, **237***f*–238*f*
G3P, **201**, 202*f*, 206, 207*f*
Gadus morhua, 728, 979*f*
Gage, Phineas, 1098*f*
Gaia hypothesis, 1259
Galactose, 68*f*, 368*f*
Galápagos Islands, 15, 16*f*, 21, 472*f*–473*f*, 506*f*, 519
Galdieria sulphuraria, 569*f*
Gallbladders, **909**
Gälweiler, Leo, 848*f*
Gambusia hubbsi, 511*f*, 512
Gametangia, **625**, 626*f*
Gametes, **236**, **255**
formation of, 269
human gametogenesis and, 1027, 1028*f*–1029*f*
production and delivery of, in animal reproduction, 1023*f*, 1024
production of, by meiosis, 237
in sexual life cycles, 255, 257
Game theory, **1154***f*, 1159
Gametic isolation, 509*f*
Gametogenesis, human, **1027**, 1028*f*–1029*f*
Gametophytes, **620***f*, 823
in alternation of generations, 258*f*
angiosperm, 826, 827*f*
brown algae, 603*f*, 604
of plants, 620*f*–621*f*, 624*f*–626*f*
sporophyte relationships with, in plants, 637*f*, 638
Gamma-aminobutyric acid (GABA), 1081*t*, 1084
Ganglia, **1069**, **1086***f*
Ganglia, planarian, 696*f*. *See also* Cerebral ganglia
Ganglion cells, 1118*f*, 1120, 1121*f*
Gap junctions, 120*f*, 215*f*
Garden peas, G. Mendel's experiments with, 269*f*–276*f*
Garigue, 1174*f*
Garlic, 836*f*
Garlic mustard (*Alliaria petiolata*), 818
Garrod, Archibald, 336
Garter snakes, 1155, 1156*f*
Gas chromatography, 852
Gases
greenhouse, 11, 48, 53*f*, 1170
as neurotransmitters, 1081*t*, 1082
Gas exchange, **939**
adaptations for, 947*f*–949*f*
amphibian, 732
arthropod, 707–708, 710*f*
breathing in, 925, 944, 945*f*–946*f*
chordate, 720
circulatory systems and, 921*f*–924*f*, 925, 947*f*. *See also* Circulatory systems
coordination of cardiovascular systems and. *See* Cardiovascular systems
fish, 728
gills for, in aquatic animals, 921*f*, 940*f*–941*f*
of insects, 951
ion movements and gradients and, 993*f*
in lungs, 924*f*, 925, 942, 943*f*–946*f*
mammalian respiratory systems, 942, 943*f*–946*f*. *See also* Respiratory systems
partial pressure gradients in, 939
plant and animal, 895*f*
respiratory media in, 939*t*, 940
respiratory surfaces in, 940
shark, 726
tracheal systems for, in insects, 941, 942*f*
Gasterosteus aculeatus, 481, 546*f*, 547, 1140*f*
Gastric glands, 907*f*
Gastric juices, **907***f*, 908, 915*f*
Gastric ulcers, 912, 913*f*
Gastrin, 915*f*
Gastrodermis, 691*f*
Gastropods, 542, 699, 700*f*–701*f*, 702
Gastrotrichs, 688*f*
Gastrovascular cavities, **691***f*, **922***f*, 923
Gastrovascular cavity, 696*f*, **904***f*
Gastrula, **674***f*, 1044, **1049**, 1050*f*–1053*f*, 1066
Gastrulation, **674***f*, 680, 1044, **1049**, 1050*f*–1053*f*
Gated channels, **135**
Gated ion channels, **1072***f*–1077*f*
Gause, G. F., 1215
Geckos, 26, 39, 1260*f*
Geese, 886*f*, 1256*f*–1257*f*
Gel electrophoresis, **420***f*
GenBank, 444, 445*f*
Gender, 298
Genealogy, molecular, 87, 89
Gene amplification, cancer gene, 388, 389*f*
Gene annotation, **445**–446
Gene cloning, **418***f*, 419, 421, 422*f*
Gene drive, **427**
Gene editing, **360**, 361*f*
Gene expression, **8**, **84**, **336**. *See also* Genes; Genetics
auxin and, 848
basic principles of transcription and translation in, 337, 339*f*
of brain development genes in lancelets and vertebrates, 722*f*
changes in, in macroevolution, 545*f*–546*f*, 547
of cloned eukaryotic genes, 422–423
control of plant cell differentiation and, 778*f*
differential. *See* Differential gene expression
DNA, RNA, and genes in, 8*f*
DNA technology in analysis of, 423, 424*f*–428*f*
DNA technology in silencing, 427
evidence for, in study of metabolic defects, 336*f*–338*f*
evolutionary significance of cross-species, 423
experiment on, for red maple leaf structure, 762
flowering and, 860*f*
as flow of genetic information, 335–336
gene concept and, 361–362
genetic code in, 340*f*–342*f*
interacting groups of, 425*f*–426*f*
interpreting sequence logos to identify ribosome binding sites in, 351
mutations in, 357*f*–358*f*, 359
nematode parasite control of host, 706
nucleic acids in, 84*f*
polypeptide synthesis via RNA-directed translation in, 347*f*–356*f*

regulation of. *See* Gene regulation
RNA modification after transcription by eukaryotic cells in, 345*f*–347*f*
RNA synthesis via DNA-directed transcription in, 342, 343*f*–344*f*
stages of, that can be regulated, 370*f*
study of, by systems biology, 446, 447*f*–448*f*
summary of eukaryotic transcription and translation in, 356*f*
as transcription, 371. *See also* Transcription
Gene families, 565*f*, 566
Gene flow, **496**
biological species concept and, 506–507, 508*f*–509*f*, 510*f*
as cause of microevolution, 496, 497*f*
Hardy-Weinberg equilibrium and, 492*t*
in macroevolution, 551
between Neanderthals and humans, 752*f*–753*f*
speciation and, 522
Gene pools, **490***f*
General transcription factors, 373–374
Generative cells, 646*f*, 826
Gene regulation
analyzing DNA deletion experiments on, 376
in bacterial transcription, 366*f*–369*f*, 370
cancer due to faulty cell cycle control in, 388, 389*f*–393*f*, 394–395. *See also* Cancer
changes in, in macroevolution, 546*f*, 547
differential gene expression and, 365*f*. *See also* Differential gene expression
in eukaryotic cells. *See* Eukaryotic gene regulation
faulty, in cloned animals, 430
noncoding RNAs in, 379, 380*f*, 381
of plant cell differentiation, 778*f*
in plant signal transduction pathways, 845
steroid hormones and, 1003*f*
in treehopper, 466
Genes, **7**, **84**, **255**. *See also* Chromosomes*;* DNA*;* Genetics*;* Genomes
activator binding to, 397
alleles as alternative versions of, 272. *See also* Alleles
animal developmental. *See Hox* genes
apoptosis, 230*f*
appetite regulation, 918
associated with cancer, 388, 389*f*
B cell and T cell diversity and rearrangement of, 960, 961*f*
calibrating molecular clocks of, 566, 567*f*
for color vision, 1122*f*
conservation of, 466
coordinately controlled, 366, 375–376
density of, in genomes, 449
divergence of human globin, during evolution, 458
DNA technology in determining functions of, 426, 427*f*, 428
duplication of, due to unequal crossing over, 455*f*
editing of, 426, 427*f*, 434–435
effects of developmental, 544*f*–545*f*
enzyme relationship with, in protein synthesis, 336*f*–338*f*
evolution of, 455–457*f*, 461, 462*f*, 565*f*, 566
extending Mendelian inheritance for, 278, 279*f*–282*f*. *See also* Mendelian inheritance
flower formation, 779*f*–780*f*
foraging, 1148, 1149*f*
gene expression and, 7*f*–8*f*, 361–362. *See also* Gene expression
genetic diversity and, 1263
genetic variation due to alterations of number or position of, 489
genomic imprinting and, 310*f*, 311
genomics, bioinformatics, and proteomics in study of, 9, 86, 87*f*
as hereditary units, 255
homeotic and *Hox*, 385*f*, 463*f*–464*f*, 545*f*, 546
homologous, 479–480
horizontal gene transfer of, 568, 569*f*–570*f*
Hox genes, 1064
identifying linked or unlinked, 304
identifying protein-coding, 445*f*, 446
inheritance of organelle, 311*f*
jumping. *See* Transposable elements
linked, 301*f*–303*f*. *See also* Linked genes
locating, along chromosomes, 295, 296*f*–297*f*
in macroevolution of development, 545*f*–546*f*, 547
mapping distance between, on chromosomes, 305*f*–306*f*
maternal effect, egg-polarity, and *bicoid*, 386*f*–387*f*
G. Mendel's hereditary factors as, 269–270
meristem identity and organ identity, 779*f*–780*f*
molecular homologies and, 558, 559*f*
multigene families and, in eukaryotic genomes, 452, 453*f*
notation system for, 295
nucleic acids and, 84. *See also* DNA*;* Nucleic acids*;* RNA
number of, in genomes, 448*t*, 449
olfactory, 1124
organization of typical eukaryotic, 373*f*
pseudogenes, 450
rearrangement of parts of, 456, 457*f*
regulation of. *See* Gene regulation
regulatory, 367*f*
sex-linked, 298*f*–300*f*
speciation and, 522*f*, 523
split, 345*f*–347*f*
study of, by systems biology, 446, 447*f*–448*f*
transcription factors for, 221
transcription of, during cell-signal response stage, 226*f*
transgenes, 436*f*
transplanting, into different species, 341, 342*f*
variability of, in genetic variation, 488
Gene therapy, 426, **434***f*, 1122*f*
Genetically modified organisms (GMOs), **438**
for fossil fuel dependency reduction, 838
gene cloning and, 419
for hunger and malnutrition reduction, 837, 838*f*
issues about, 438–439, 839–840
Genetically modified (GM) organisms. *See also* Transgenic animals*;* Transgenic plants
fungi as, 671
issues about, 839–841
plant biotechnology and genetic engineering of, 837, 838*f*
Genetic code
biotechnology and, 441
codons and triplet code of nucleotides as, 340*f*, 341
cracking of, 341*f*
of DNA, 7*f*–8*f*
evolution of, 341, 342*f*
as molecular homology, 479–480
in mutations, 357*f*–358*f*, 359
neutral variation and redundancy of, 488–489
as sequence of nitrogenous bases, 85
universality of, 16
Genetic counseling, 287–288, 293
Genetic disorders
alkaptonuria, 336
biotechnology in diagnosis and treatment of, 433, 434*f*, 435
from chromosomal alterations, 306, 307*f*–309*f*
counseling for, 287–288, 293
diagnosing fetal, 1039–1040
dominantly inherited, 287*f*
ethics of testing for, 24
multifactorial, 287
mutations and, 357*f*–358*f*, 359
recessively inherited, 285*f*–286*f*, 287
sickle-cell disease. *See* Sickle-cell disease
testing for, 288, 289*f*, 290
Genetic diversity. *See also* Genetic variation
in biodiversity, 1261*f*
as factor in extinction vortex, 1266, 1267*f*
in human welfare, 1262, 1263*f*
prokaryotic, 578*f*–580*f*, 581, 583*f*
in small populations, 1266, 1267*f*–1268*f*, 1269
Genetic drift, 492, **494***f*–495*f*, 496, 551
Genetic engineering, **416**
of antifreeze proteins, 865
CRISPR-Cas9 system, 360, 361*f*
DNA technology tools for, 416, 418*f*–422*f*, 423
of ethylene signal transduction pathways, 854
fungi in, 671
of genetically modified organisms, 438–439. *See also* Genetically modified organisms
opposition to, 839–841
of "pharm" animals, 436*f*
plant biotechnologists, 837
of plants. *See* Transgenic plants
plant tissue culture and, 836
prokaryotes in, 589, 590*f*–591*f*
Genetic Information Nondiscrimination Act, 288
Genetic maps, **305***f*–306*f*
Genetic markers , 427f, 434, 436, 437f, 441
Genetic mutants in Scientific Skills Exercises, 918, 1095
Genetic profiles, 434, **436**, 1194, 1195*f*
Genetic prospecting, 583
Genetic recombination, **302**
identifying linked genes for, 304
of linked genes in crossing over, 302, 303*f*
natural selection and genetic variation from, 305
in prokaryotes, 579*f*–580*f*, 581
transposable elements and, 459
of unlinked genes in independent assortment of chromosomes, 302*f*
Genetics, **255**. *See also* Genetic variation*;* Inheritance*;* Mendelian inheritance
of blood cholesterol levels, 938
designing experiments using genetic mutants, 1095
in ecological forensics, 1265*f*
in estimating reproductive rates, 1194, 1195*f*
flow of genetic information in plant cells, 208*f*
of foraging behaviors, 1148, 1149*f*
genetic basis of animal behavior, 1155*f*
genomics and proteomics in, 86, 87*f*
inheritance of chromosomes and genes in, 255
interpreting data from experiments with genetic mutants, 918
of nervous system disorders, 1102*f*
Punnett square as tool in, 273*f*, 274
of sickle-cell disease, 502*f*
solving complex problems of, with rules of probability, 277–278
of speciation, 522*f*, 523
as study of heredity and hereditary variation, 255
vocabulary of, 274*f*
Genetic sequences in Scientific Skills Exercise, 595
Genetic testing
biotechnology in, 433–434
for breast cancer predisposition, 394
fetal, 288, 289*f*, 1039–1040
identifying carriers, 288
newborn, 289–290
personal genome analysis, 433
Genetic variation, **255**, **487**
chromosome activity and, 268
from crossing over and recombinant chromosomes, 265, 266*f*
evolutionary significance of, within populations, 266, 267*f*
extinction vortex and loss of, 1266, 1267*f*
in genetic diversity, 1261*f*. *See also* Genetic diversity
genetics as study of, 255. *See also* Genetics
from independent assortment of chromosomes, 265*f*
microevolution of populations and sources of, 487*f*–488*f*, 489
in migratory patterns, 1156, 1157*f*
molecular clocks and rates of, 566, 567*f*
natural selection and, from recombinant chromosomes, 305
phylogenetic tree branch lengths and, 561, 562*f*
preservation of, 500
in prey selection, 1155, 1156*f*
from random fertilization, 266
in sexual reproduction, 255
in small populations, 1266, 1267*f*–1268*f*, 1269
Gene trees, 557*f*
Genomes, **8**, **235**. *See also* Genes
analyzing phylogenetic trees based on, to understand viral evolution, 411
animal phylogeny and, 682, 683*f*, 684
bioinformatics in analysis of, 444, 445*f*–448*f*
in cell division, 235
comparing, 459, 460*f*–464*f*, 676*f*
complete, 665, 722, 776
differential gene expression for identical, 370*f*, 371. *See also* Differential gene expression
evolutionary history in, 565*f*, 566
evolution of, from DNA duplication, rearrangement, and mutation, 454*f*–457*f*, 458–459

Genomes (continued)
gene density of, 665*t*
genetic testing of fetal, 1039–1040
genome-wide association studies of, 427*f*, 433
genomics, proteomics, and bioinformatics in study of, 9, 86, 87*f*, 443
horizontal gene transfer between, 568, 569*f*–570*f*
Human Genome Project and development of DNA-sequencing techniques for, 443*f*, 444
interpreting data from, and generating hypotheses, 657
nervous systems and, 1106
noncoding DNA and multigene families in eukaryotic, 450*f*–453*f*
p53 gene as guardian angel of, 390–391
personal analysis of, 433
prokaryotic, 577*f*
reference, 443
species with complete sequences of, 448*t*
variations in size, number of genes, gene density, and noncoding DNA of, 448*t*, 449
viral, 400, 401*f*–407*f*, 406*t*
widespread conservation of developmental genes in animal, 463*f*–464*f*
Genome sequencing, 443*f*, 444, 447, 448*f*, 657
genomics, bioinformatics, proteomics, and, 9
Genome-wide association studies, **427**, 433
Genomic data in Scientific Skills Exercise, 657
Genomic imprinting, **310***f*, 311, 372
Genomics, **9**, 86, **87**, **443**–444, 583
cell signaling, cancer, and, 391, 392*f*–393*f*, 394
contributions of, 88*f*
cracking the genetic code, 341*f*
DNA sequence analysis, 8*f*, 9
genetic material in, 7*f*–8*f*
polyadenylation signal sequence, 345*f*
simple sequence DNA, 452
taxonomy and, 12*f*, 13
transcription termination, 344
transposable elements, 450*f*–451*f*, 452
Genotypes, **274**
DNA transformation and, 315
gene expression as link between phenotypes and, 335–336
genetic variation and, 487, 488*f*
heterozygote advantage and, 500
phenotypes vs., 274*f*, 282*f*, 283
proteins and, 335
relative fitness of, 497
Gentoo penguin, 14*f*
Genus (genera), 12, **554**, 555*f*
Geochemical cycles, 1249*f*–1252*f*
Geoemyda spengleri, 736*f*
Geographical barriers, allopatric speciation and, 511*f*–512*f*, 513
Geographic species distributions. *See* Species distributions
Geologic record, 530*f*, 532*f*–533*f*
Geospiza fortis, 486*f*–487*f*, 1217*f*
Geospiza fuliginosa, 1217*f*
Germ cells
fate maps and, 1058*f*–1059*f*
human, 258, 1029*f*
telomerase and telomeres in, 329
Germination
gibberellins in, 851*f*
light-sensitive, 871
phytochromes in, 856, 857*f*
seedling development after, 829, 830*f*
strigolactones in, 855
Germ layers, 680, **1049**, 1050*f*–1051*f*
Gestation, **1034**, 1035*f*–1037*f*
Ghost crabs, 709*f*
Ghrelin, 917*f*
Giant panda (*Ailuropoda melanoleuca*), 448*t*
Giant sequoia tree, 774*f*
Giant squid, 702
Giardia intestinalis, 598*f*, 600
Gibberellins, 846*t*, 850, **851***f*
Gibbons, 89, 746*f*–747*f*
Gibbs, J. Willard, 147
Gibbs free energy, 147. *See also* Free-energy change
Gigantism, 1009, 1010*f*
Gills, 921*f*, 940*f*–941*f*
annelid, 703
arthropod, 707
of axolotls, 921*f*
crustacean, 709
of fishes, 728*f*
mollusc, 699*f*
osmoregulation by, 979*f*
Gill slits, 720*f*
Ginkgos, 642*f*
Giraffes, 931
GLABRA-2 gene, 778*f*
Glaciation
ecological succession after, 1230*f*–1231*f*
seedless vascular plants and, 633
Glacier Bay, Alaska, 1230*f*–1231*f*
Glands, endocrine system. *See* Endocrine glands
Glans, 1025*f*, **1026**
Glanville fritillaries (*Melitaea cinxia*), 1206*f*, 1207
Glass lizard, 553*f*–554*f*
Glass sponge, 146*f*
Glaucomys volans, 517
Glaucus atlanticus, 686*f*
Glia (glial cells), **879***f*, **1069***f*, 1076*f*–1077*f*, **1090***f*
Glioblastoma, 250, 447
Global biogeochemical cycles, 1249
Global carrying capacity, human population, 1209, 1210*f*, 1211
Global change. *See also* Climate change
atmospheric ozone depletion in, 1283*f*, 1284
environmental toxins in, 1275, 1276*f*–1277*f*
greenhouse gases and climate change in, 1278*f*–1283*f*
human impacts on, 1265, 1266*f*, *1274*, 1275*f*–1283*f*, 1284
nutrient enrichment in, 1274, 1275*f*
as threat to biodiversity, 1265, 1266*f*
Global climate change. *See* Climate change
Global climate patterns, 1166*f*, 1167
Global cooling, 633
Global ecology, **1165***f*. *See also* Ecology
aquatic biomes in, 1177*f*–1182*f*
of biosphere. *See* Biosphere
effects of mass extinctions on, 542*f*
evolution and, 1187*f*
global climate in, 1166*f*, 1167
global human population size issues in, 1209, 1210*f*, 1211
human environmental impacts in. *See* Human environmental impacts
importance of mycorrhizae to, 818
ocean acidification in, 53*f*, 54
species distributions in, 1164, 1170*f*, 1178, 1183*f*–1186*f*
terrestrial biomes in, 1171*f*–1176*f*, 1189
Global energy budget, 1241
Global extinctions, 1262
Global human population, 1207*f*–1209*f*
Global net primary production, 1241, 1242*f*
Global temperatures, extinction rates and, 541*f*, 542
Global warming. *See* Climate change
as ecosystem interaction, 11
fossil fuel burning and, 11
Globigerina, 599*f*
Globin genes, human, 453*f*, 455, 456*f*, 458
Globular proteins, 78
Glomeromycetes, 663
Glomerulus, **987***f*
Glottis, 906*f*
Glucagon, **916***f*, 917, 1004*f*
Glucocorticoids, 1004*f*, 1012*f*, **1013**, 1018
Glucose
blood regulation of, 10*f*
enzymatic catalysis and, 153, 155, 157
as fuel for cellular respiration, 165–167
glucocorticoids and metabolism of, 1012*f*, 1013
homeostasis of, 915, 916*f*, 917
insulin regulation of, 1004*f*
as monosaccharide, 68*f*–69*f*
oxidation of, to pyruvate by glycolysis, 170*f*–171*f*
in photosynthesis, 41*f*, 190*f*, 206, 207*f*
in positive gene regulation, 369*f*, 370
in signal transduction pathways, 216
transport of, 132, 136
in treating diarrhea, 139
Glucose 6-phosphatase, 157
Glutamate, 233, 1081*t*, 1101*f*, 1120, 1121*f*
Glutamic acid, 77*f*, 152*f*, 341*f*
Glutamine, 77*f*, 152*f*
Glyceraldehyde, 68*f*
Glyceraldehyde 3-phosphate (G3P), **201**, 202*f*, 206, 207*f*
Glycerol phosphate, 63*f*
Glycine, 63*f*, 77*f*, 1081*t*
Glycocalyx, 97*f*
Glycogen, **71**
in cell signaling, 216*f*, 226, 227*f*
in glucose metabolism, 915, 916*f*
in muscle contraction, 1128
as storage polysaccharide, 70*f*, 71
Glycogen phosphorylase, 216–217
Glycolipids, **131**
Glycolysis, **168**
ATP yield in, 177*f*
evolutionary significance of, 182
fermentation and, 180*f*
oxidation of glucose to pyruvate by, 170*f*–171*f*
as stage of cellular respiration, 168, 169*f*
Glycolytic fibers, 1130–1131
Glycoproteins, **105**, **131**
in animal morphogenesis, 1056
in cellular membranes, 127*f*, 130*f*, 131
in extracellular matrix, 118, 119*f*
genetic engineering of, using fungi, 671
rough ER and, 105
viruses and, 400*f*, 405*f*, 407*f*
Glycosidic linkages, **69**
Glyoxysomes, 112
Glyphosate, 838
Gnathostomes, **725**
derived characters of, 725*f*, 726
fossil, 726*f*
ray-finned fishes and lobe-fins as osteichthyans, 728*f*–729*f*, 730
sharks and rays as chondrichthyans, 726, 727*f*
tetrapods as, 730
Gnetophytes, 642*f*, 647
Gnetum, 642*f*
Goats, 436*f*
Goatsbeard plants (*Tragopogon miscellus*), 514, 515*f*
Goiter, 29, 1009
Golden Rice, 838
Goldenrod (*Solidago canadensis*), 812
Golden spiny mouse, 1216*f*
Golgi apparatus, 100*f*, **105**, 106*f*, 107, 109*f*, 131*f*, 208*f*, 405*f*
Gonadotropin-releasing hormone (GnRH), 1014, 1030, 1031*f*–1032*f*, 1033
Gonadotropins, 1008, 1014, 1015*f*, 1030, 1031*f*–1032*f*, 1033
Gonads, 237, 258, 1004*f*, 1014, 1015*f*, **1023**
Gonorrhea, 576, 584*f*, 1039
Gonsalves, Dennis, 757
Gonyosoma oxycephala, 1053*f*
Goodall, Jane, 17*f*
Gorillas, 87, 89, 746*f*–747*f*
Gormley, Andrew, 1191*f*
Gout, 983
GPCRs (G protein-coupled receptors), 217*f*–219*f*, **218**, 220, 224*f*, 1124
GPP. *See* Gross primary production
G protein-coupled receptors (GPCRs), 217*f*–219*f*, **218**, 220, 224*f*, 1124
G proteins, **218***f*, 224*f*
Graded potentials, **1072**, 1073*f*, 1078
Gradients, solute, 989, 990*f*, 991
Gradual model of speciation, 520*f*, 521
Grafting, plant, 835–836
Gram (unit), 50
Gram, Hans Christian, 574
Gram-negative bacteria, **574**, 575*f*, 584*f*
Gram-positive bacteria, **574**, 575*f*, 584*f*
Gram stain technique, **574**, 575*f*
Grant, Peter and Rosemary, 21, 487
Granum, **110**, 111*f*, 189*f*
Grapefruit, 645*f*
Grapes, 851*f*
Grapes of Wrath, The (book), 807*f*
Graphs in Scientific Skills Exercises
bar, 23, 179, 376, 483, 590, 629, 700, 762, 864, 1186, 1217
comparing two variables on a common x-axis of, 972
estimating quantitative data from, 538
histograms, 250, 283, 938
interpreting changes in slope in, 1049
line, 33, 157, 264, 411, 972, 1049, 1095, 1136, 1186, 1279
with log scales, 1136

pie charts, 892
scatter plots, 54, 136, 205, 513, 751, 1217
sequence logos, 351
Grass, phototropism in coleoptiles of, 847*f*, 848
Grasshoppers, 464*f*, 710*f*, 712*f*, 905*f*, 923*f*, 942*f*, 1132*f*
Grasslands, 783, 1175*f*
Grassy stunt virus, 1263
Graves' disease, 1010
Gravitational motion, free energy and, 148*f*
Gravitropism, **861***f*
Gravity
axis formation and, 1060
blood pressure and, 931*f*–932*f*, 951
locomotion and, 1135
mechanoreceptors for sensing, 1112, 1115*f*
plant responses to, 861*f*
Gray matter, **1087***f*
Gray tree frogs (*Hyla versicolor*), 500*f*, 514
Great auk, 1264–1265
Great Barrier Reef, 1282
Greater bilby, 743*f*
Greater prairie chickens (*Tympanuchus cupido*), 495*f*, 496, 1267*f*
Great Salt Lake, 142, 585
Great tits (*Parus major*), 740*f*
Green algae, 101*f*, 596*f*, 599*f*, **610***f*–611*f*, 614, 617, 618, 619*f*, 621, 663, 668*f*–669*f*
Green fluorescent protein (GFP), 342*f*
Greenhouse effect, **1278***f*
Greenhouse gases, 11, 48, 53*f*, 1170, 1278*f*–1283*f*
Greening, plant, 843*f*–844*f*, 845
Green manure, 817
Green parrot snake, 1218*f*
Griffith, Frederick, 315*f*
Grizzly bears (*Ursus arctos*), 510*f*, 1268*f*, 1269, 1272–1273
Grolar bears, 510*f*
Gross primary production (GPP), **1241**, 1242*f*
Ground meristem, 766
Ground squirrels, 893, 1156, 1158, 1159*f*, 1193*t*, 1194*f*, 1195, 1213
Ground tissue system, plant, 758, **763***f*
Groups, control and experimental, 20, 21*f*
Growth. *See also* Plant growth
as cell division function, 235*f*, 776, 777*f*
heterochrony and differential rates of, 544*f*–545*f*
hormonal regulation of, 1004*f*, 1009, 1010*f*
plant and animal, 894*f*
as property of life, 3*f*
vegetative, 830
Growth, population. *See* Population growth
Growth factors, **247**
in cell cycle control system, 247, 248*f*
cell fate and, 1062–1064
in cell-signaling nuclear responses, 226*f*
induction and, 383
as local regulators in cell signaling, 215*f*, 216
Growth hormone (GH), 1004*f*, 1008*f*, **1009**–1010
Growth rings, tree, 773*f*
Grus species, 1144
GTP (guanosine triphosphate), 172*f*–173*f*, 218*f*, 352*f*–353*f*
GTPase, 229
Guanine, 84, 85*f*, 86, 317*f*, 318, 341*f*
Guano, 983*f*
Guanosine triphosphate (GTP), 172*f*–173*f*, 218*f*, 352*f*–353*f*
Guard cells, **763**, 770, 771*f*, 797*f*, 798
Guichon Creek, 1274*f*
Gulf of Carpentaria, 605*f*
Gulf of Mexico dead zone, 1275*f*
Gulf Stream, 1168*f*
Gulls, 898*f*, 1151*f*
Guppies (*Poecilia reticulata*), 483, 1152, 1153*f*, 1187*f*
Gurdon, John, 428, 429*f*, 432
Gustation, **1123***f*–1124*f*
Gutenberg, Johannes, 24
Guttation, **793***f*
Gymnosperms, **623***f*
evolution of, 641*f*
evolution of seeds in, 639
gametophyte-sporophyte relationships in, 637*f*, 638
life cycle of pine and, 640*f*, 641
ovules and production of seeds in, 638*f*
phylogeny of, 622*t*, 635, 641, 642*f*–643*f*
Gymnothorax dovii, 729*f*, 1214*f*
Gynandromorph, 313
Gyres, ocean, 1168*f*

H

H1N1 virus, 410–411, 1234
H5N1 virus, 410, 1234, 1235*f*
Habitat
carrying capacity of, 1197, 1198*f*–1199*f*, 1198*t*, 1200
critical, 1269*f*–1270*f*
destruction of, in tropical rain forests, 651*f*, 652
fragmented, 1263, 1264*f*, 1270, 1271*f*
island, *1232*, 1233*f*
loss of, as threat to biodiversity, 1263, 1264*f*
nitrogenous wastes and, 982*f*–983*f*
of red-cockaded woodpecker, 1269*f*–1270*f*
sympatric speciation and differentiation of, 515–516
Habitat isolation, 508*f*
Hadean eon, 530*f*, 532*f*–533*f*
Haemophilus influenzae, 448*t*
Hagfishes, 719*f*, **723***f*
Haikouella, 724*f*
Hair, mammalian, 741, 920
Hair cells, 1112, 1113*f*–**1114***f*
Hair color, polygenic inheritance, 281
Hairy-cap moss, 626*f*
Hakea purpurea, 783
Haldane, J. B. S., 526, 1158
Half-life, **32**, **529**, 530*f*
Hall, Jeffrey, 883
Hallucigenia, 706*f*
Halobacterium, 585
Hamilton, William, 1157–1158
Hamilton's rule, **1158***f*–1159*f*
Hammerhead shark, 890*f*
Hamsters, 893*f*, 1095
Hansen's disease, 65
Haplo-diploid sex determination system, 298*f*
Haploid cells, **257**, 258*f*, 259
Haplotypes, 466
Haptophyte, 597*f*
Hardy-Weinberg equation, 490–493
Hardy-Weinberg equilibrium, 489, **490***f*–491*f*, 492*t*, 493
Hares, 1205*f*
Haustoria, 656*f*
Hawaiian Islands, 513, 543*f*, 544
Hawaiian silversword plants, 543*f*, 558, 1183
Hawkmoth, 825*f*, 869*f*, 1218*f*, 1219
Hazel, 824*f*
Hazel dormouse (*Muscardinus avellanarius*), 893*f*
Hazelnut, 645*f*
Head end, 680*f*
Head, insect, 710*f*
Head structure morphogen, 386*f*–387*f*
Hearing, 1112*f*–1116*f*
Heart attacks, 418*f*, 436, **937***f*, 938–939
Heartbeat rhythm, 928*f*
Heartburn, 908
Heart disease, 217, 418*f*, 428, 433, 436. *See also* Cardiovascular diseases
Heart murmurs, **928**
Heart rate, **927**, 928*f*
Hearts, **923**
atrial natriuretic peptide hormone released by, 996*f*
cardiac cycle of, 927*f*–928*f*, 930, 951
in circulatory systems, 923*f*–924*f*
effects of adrenal hormones on, 1012
insect, 710*f*
location of, for human embryo, 1043*f*
mammalian, in cardiovascular systems, 926*f*–928*f*
mollusc, 699*f*
regulation of rhythmic beating of, 928*f*
Heartwood, 774*f*
Heat, **46**, 143–**144**
as by-product of cellular respiration, 178
carbon dioxide and, 11
diffusion and, 132
metabolic rate and loss of, 890*f*
plant response to stress of, 865
temperature vs., 46
thermophiles and, 585*f*, 586
thermoreceptors and, 1111*f*
Heat exchange adaptations, animal, 885*f*–889*f*
Heat of vaporization, **47**
Heat-shock proteins, **865**
Heavy chains, **958***f*–961*f*
Heavy metals, bioremediation of, 1253, 1255*f*
Hector's dolphins, 1191*f*, 1192
Hedgehog growth factor, 1063–1064
Height, polygenic inheritance, 281
Heimlich maneuver, 906
HeLa cancer cells, 248–249, 252
Helianthus species, 521*f*
Helical viruses, 400*f*
Helicases, **323***f*, 326*f*, 327*t*
Helicobacter pylori, 584*f*, 912, 913*f*
Helium, 30*f*, 35
Helper T cells, **963**, 964*f*
Hemagglutinin gene, 410–411
Heme group, 175
Hemichordata, 689*f*
Hemings, Sally, 437
Hemiptera, 712*f*
Hemispheres, brain, 1093*f*, 1098, 1106
Hemizygous organisms, 299
Hemochromatosis, 920
Hemocoel, **681***f*, 697, 707, 717
Hemocyanin, 947
Hemocytes, 953
Hemoglobin, **935**
α-globin and β-globin gene families and, 453*f*, 455, 456*f*
in circulation and gas exchange, 947*f*–948*f*
cooperativity as allosteric regulation in, 160–161
dissociation curves of, 948*f*, 951
in erythrocytes, 935
as measure of evolution, 87, 89
polypeptides in, 337
as protein, 76*f*
protein quaternary structure and, 81*f*
sickle-cell disease and, 82*f*, 286*f*, 287, 500–501, 502*f*–503*f*, 505
Hemolymph, 681, 707, **923***f*, 981, 985*f*
Hemophilia, **300**, 433, 936
Hemorrhagic fever, 409
Henslow, John, 472
Hepatic portal veins, **910**
Hepatitis B virus, 409, 974
Hepatophyta (liverworts), 620*f*, **623**, 626*f*
HER2 breast cancer, 220, 250, 392*f*–393*f*
Herbicide resistance, 438
Herbicides
auxin in, 849
transgenic, 837–838
Herbivores, **901**
alimentary canals of, 912*f*
animals as, 673*f*
as biotic factors limiting species distributions, 1184*f*
dentition and diet in, 911*f*, 912
energetic hypothesis and biomass of, 1225*f*
evolutionary links between plants and, 648, 649*f*
insects as, 713
mutualistic digestive adaptations of, 913, 914*f*
plant defenses against, 867, 868*f*–869*f*
Herbivory, 551, **867**, 868*f*–869*f*, **1219***f*, 1220, 1256*f*
Herceptin, 220, 250, 393*f*
Hereditary factors, genes as, 269–270, 294*f*. *See also* Genes
Hereditary nonpolyposis colon cancer (HNPCC), 394
Hereditary variation, **255**. *See also* Genetic variation
Heredity, **255**, 269–270. *See also* Inheritance; Mendelian inheritance
Hermaphrodites, **691**, 705
Hermaphroditism, **1020**, 1042
Heroin, 40, 78, 1103*f*
Herpes simplex viruses, 973*t*
Herpesviruses, 405, 409, 973*t*
Herring gull, 898*f*
Hershey, Alfred, 316*f*, 317
Heterochromatin, 330*f*, **332**, 371, 381
Heterochrony, **544***f*–545*f*
Heterocysts (heterocytes), **582***f*
Heterokaryon mycelia, **658**
Heteromorphic generations, **604**
Heterosporous species, **631**, 638
Heterotrophs, **188**, 581*t*, 594, 655, 673–674, 889, 894*f*, 1240*f*
Heterozygote, **274**
Heterozygote advantage, **500**, 501*f*–503*f*

Heterozygote protection, 488
Heterozygous organisms, **274**
Hexapoda, 710. *See also* Insects
Hexoses, 68*f*
Hfr cells, 580*f*, 581
Hibernation, 178, **893***f*, 897
Hierarchical classification, 554, 555*f*
High-density lipoproteins (HDLs), **937**–938
Highly conserved genes, 460
High-throughput DNA technology, 9, 415*f*–417*f*, 443*f*, 444, 447
Hindbrain, 1085, **1091***f*–1092*f*
Hinge joints, 1134*f*
Hippocampus, 1095*f*, 1100, 1101*f*
Hippopotamus, 88*f*
Hirudin, 704
Hirudinea, 703
Histamine, 955*f*, **956**, 971
Histidine, 77*f*
Histograms in Scientific Skills Exercises, 250, 283, 938
Histone acetylation, **371***f*
Histone modifications, 371*f*, 372, 391
Histones, **330***f*
HIV (human immunodeficiency virus), **406**, **973**. *See also* AIDS
  AIDS and, 398*f*
  antiviral drugs and, 409
  applying molecular clock to origin of, 567, 568*f*
  attacks on immune system by, 973*f*, 974
  biotechnology in diagnosis of, 433
  CCR gene and, 435
  cell-surface proteins and blocking entry of, into cells, 130*f*
  as emerging virus, 409–410
  G protein-coupled receptors and, 217*f*
  host range of, 401
  rapid reproduction of, 489
  replicative cycle of, 407*f*
  as retrovirus, 406*t*
HIV-1 M strain, 567, 568*f*
Hoary marmot (*Marmota caligata*), 164*f*
Hodgkin's disease, 971, 1263*f*
Hoekstra, Hopi, 20, 21*f*, 22, 26
Holdfasts, **602**, 603*f*
Holoblastic cleavage, 1048
Holothuroidea, 715*f*
Homarus americanus, 979
Homeoboxes, **463***f*–464*f*, 675
Homeodomains, 463
Homeostasis, **881**. *See also* Thermoregulation
  of blood calcium levels, 1011*f*
  as feedback regulation of animal internal environment, 881*f*–883*f*
  of glucose, 915, 916*f*, 917, 1004*f*, 1012*f*, 1013
  hormonal regulation of kidneys for, 994*f*–996*f*
  of human breathing, 946*f*
  of macaques, 897
  of marine iguana, 998
  osmoregulation for, 977*f*, 978
  peripheral nervous system in, 1088–1089
  thyroid, 1008, 1009*f*, 1010
Homeotherms, 884
Homeotic genes, **385***f*, 463*f*–464*f*, **545***f*–546*f*, 547. *See also Hox* genes
Hominins, **748**
  Australopiths, 749, 750*f*
  bipedalism in, 750*f*
  derived characters of, 748
  earliest, 748*f*–749*f*
  early *Homo* genus, 750–751, 752*f*
  Homo sapiens, 753*f*–754*f*
  Neanderthals, 752*f*–753*f*
  tool use in, 750
Homo erectus, 752–753
Homo ergaster, 752*f*
Homo floresiensis, 754
Homogenization, 96*f*
Homo genus, 746*f*, 750–751, 752*f*–754*f*
Homo habilis, 750–752
Homologies, **479***f*–481*f*, **558***f*–559*f*
Homologous chromosomes (homologs), **256**
  alleles in, 259
  in chromosomal basis of Mendelian inheritance, 294*f*, 295
  human, 256*f*–257*f*
  in meiosis, 260*f*
  in mitosis vs. in meiosis, 262, 263*f*, 264
Homologous genes, 565*f*, 566
Homologous structures, **479***f*–481*f*
Homo naledi, 753*f*, 754
Homo sapiens, 554, 665*t*. *See also* Humans
Homosporous species, **631**, 638
Homozygote, **274**
Homozygous organisms, **274**
Honeybees, 661, 824*f*, 887, 1142*f*, 1143, 1146, 1147*f*, 1156
Honeypot ant, 485
Hook, flagellum, 576*f*, 577
Hooke, Robert, 94
Hookworms, 705
Hopping, 1138
Horizontal cells, 1118*f*, 1120
Horizontal gene transfer, 568, **569***f*–570*f*, 579*f*–580*f*, 581, 583, 588, 689*f*
Horizontal transmission, viral, 412
Hormonal proteins, 76*f*
Hormone cascade pathways, 1008, 1009*f*, 1010, 1014
Hormones, **215**, **846**, **1000**. *See also* Animal hormones; Plant hormones
  animal vs. plant, 215–216, 894*f*. *See also* Animal hormones
  coordinate control of genes by, 375–376
  environment and, 1018
  in fight-or-flight responses, 212
  as intracellular chemical signals, 220, 221*f*
  kidney regulation by, 994*f*–996*f*
  in long-distance cell signaling, 215*f*, 216
  specificity of, 227, 228*f*
Hornworts, **623**, 626*f*. *See also* Bryophytes
Horowitz, Norman, 336*f*–338*f*
Horses, 548, 549*f*
Horseshoe crabs, 707, 708*f*
Horsetails, 630*f*–632*f*, 633, 635
Horvitz, Robert, 1058–1059
Hosken, David, 1024*f*
Host cells, endosymbiont, 534, 535*f*
Host ranges, viral, **401**
Hosts, parasite, **1220**, 1234
Hosts, symbiont, **587**
Hot spots, biodiversity, 1272*f*
Hot springs, 585*f*, 586
Hox genes. *See also* Homeotic genes
  as animal development genes, 463*f*–464*f*, 675
  arthropod body plan and, 706*f*, 707
  cell fate and, 1064
  jaws and, 725*f*, 726
  lancelet, tunicate, and vertebrate, 722*f*
  in macroevolution of development, 545*f*–546*f*, 547
  origin of, 677
  in plants, 778*f*
  in treehoppers, 466
HTLV-1 virus, 394
Hubbard Brook Experimental Forest, 1252*f*, 1266*f*
Human body
  bacteria in, 587, 588*f*
  brain in nervous system of, 1085*f*, 1091*f*–1096*f*. *See also* Brains; Nervous systems
  circadian rhythms in thermoregulation of, 882, 883*f*
  digestive systems. *See* Digestive systems
  ears of, 1113*f*
  endocrine glands and hormones of, 1004*f*, 1007*f*–1008*f*. *See also* Animal hormones; Endocrine systems; Nervous systems
  evolution of human eye, 547, 548*f*
  excretory systems of, 985, 986*f*–987*f*
  eyes of, 1118*f*–1119*f*
  glucose homeostasis in, 915, 916*f*
  heterochrony and differential growth rates in skulls of, 544*f*
  hypothalamus in thermoregulation of, 888, 889*f*
  locomotion by interaction of muscles and skeletons of, 1132*f*
  lymphatic system of, 956*f*
  mechanoreceptors in skin of, 1110*f*
  metabolic rates of, 891
  osmoregulation of, 980
  overnourishment, obesity, and, 917*f*, 918
  regulation of growth of, 1009, 1010*f*
  skeleton of, 1134*f*
  two-solute model of kidney function, 989, 990*f*, 991
Human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG), 969, 1035
Human embryonic development. *See also* Animal development
  brains in, 1092*f*
  cilia and cell fate in, 1064*f*
  conception, pregnancy, and birth in, 1034, 1035*f*–1037*f*
  embryo image, 1043*f*
  gastrulation in, 1052, 1053*f*
  maternal immune tolerance in, 1037
  neuron competition in, 1099–1100
Human environmental impacts
  on biodiversity, 1260*f*, 1261
  biodiversity crisis, 1260*f*–1262*f*. *See also* Biodiversity
  biome disturbances, 1172
  climate change, 1278*f*–1283*f*
  community disturbances, 1228, 1231*f*
  global change, 1265, 1266*f*, 1274, 1275*f*–1283*f*, 1284
  habitat loss and fragmentation, 1263, 1264*f*
  introduced species, 1264*f*
  melting of Arctic sea ice, 48*f*
  ocean acidification, 53*f*, 54
  overharvesting, 1264, 1265*f*
  spread of pathogens, 1234, 1235*f*
  threats to biodiversity from, 1263, 1264*f*–1266*f*
Human genetics
  dominantly inherited disorders in, 287*f*
  genetic testing and counseling in, 287–288, 289*f*, 290, 293
  molecular tags and karyotypes of chromosomes in, 332*f*
  multifactorial disorders in, 287
  pedigree analysis in, 284*f*, 285
  recessively inherited disorders in, 285*f*–286*f*, 287
  skin pigmentation and, 281, 282*f*
Human genome
  α-globin and β-globin gene families in, 453*f*, 455, 456f
  comparing genomes of other species with, 454*f*–455*f*, 459, 460*f*–461*f*, 462
  complete sequence for, 443*f*
  evolution of, 524, 566
  function of *FOXP2* gene in, 461, 462*f*
  gene density of fungal vs., 665*t*
  microarray chips containing, 448*f*
  sequencing of, 443*f*, 444, 447, 448*f*
  size, number of genes, gene density, and noncoding DNA of, 448*t*, 449
  types of DNA sequences in, 450*f*
Human Genome Project, 87, 347, **443**–444, 449
Human growth hormone (HGH), 418*f*, 419, 436, 1009–1010
Human immunodeficiency virus (HIV). *See* HIV
Human nutrition. *See also* Animal nutrition
  assessing nutritional needs for, 902*f*
  bacteria in, 587
  dietary deficiencies in, 902*f*
  essential nutrients for, 899*f*, 900*t*–901*t*
  transgenic crops and, 438–439
Human papillomavirus (HPV), 974*f*
Human population
  density-dependent population regulation of, by diseases, 1204*f*
  global carrying capacity for, 1209, 1210*f*, 1211
  growth of, 1207*f*–1210*f*, 1211, 1213
  survivorship curves for, 1194*f*
Human reproduction. *See also* Animal reproduction
  conception, embryonic development, and birth in, 1034, 1035*f*–1037*f*
  contraception and abortion in, 1037, 1038*f*, 1039
  endocrine disruptors and, 1015
  female reproductive organs of, 1026, 1027*f*
  gametogenesis in, 1027, 1028*f*–1029*f*
  hormonal regulation of, 1030, 1031*f*–1032*f*, 1033–1034
  male reproductive organs of, 1025*f*, 1026
  maternal immune tolerance of embryo and fetus in, 1037
  reproductive technologies and, 1039*f*, 1040
  sexual response in, 1034
Humans (*Homo sapiens*). *See also* Human body; Human embryonic development; Human environmental impacts; Human genetics; Human genome; Human nutrition; Human population; Human reproduction
  analyzing polypeptide sequence data for monkeys and, 87, 89
  as anthropoid apes, 746–747

apoptosis of white blood cells of, 229*f*
biodiversity and welfare of, 1262, 1263*f*
biological species concept and, 507*f*
blood pH of, 52*f*, 53
blood pressure of, 931*f*
brown algae as food for, 603
catabolism and diets of, 182*f*, 183
chromosomes of, 102, 235, 236*f*, 237, 256*f*–257*f*, 258
cilia in windpipes of, 13*f*
circulatory systems of. *See* Cardiovascular systems
cloning of, 430
derived characters of, 748
determining gene function by analyzing genomes of, 427*f*, 433–434
digestive system of. *See* Digestive systems
DNA microarray assays on tissue of, 426*f*
DNA sequencing of genome of, 415*f*, 416
ecosystem interaction with, 11
essential elements and trace elements for, 29*t*
ethical issues on silencing gene expression in, 427
evolution of culture in, 1159*f*, 1160
fossils of, 753*f*, 754
gene flow with Neanderthals and, 752*f*–753*f*
genomics and proteomics in study of, 86, 87*f*
glycoproteins and blood types of, 131
as *Homo sapiens*, 748*f*, 749
importance of insects to, 713
importance of seed plants to welfare of, 651*f*, 652
inactivated olfactory receptor genes of, 489
lymphatic systems of, 933*f*
origin of, 533*f*, 537
overlap of Neanderthals and modern, 33
plastic waste and, 1277
practical uses of fungi for, 670, 671*f*
primate phylogenetic tree and, 746*f*
prokaryotic impacts on, 587, 588*f*–591*f*
red algae as food for, 609*f*, 610
reducing hunger and malnutrition in, with transgenic crops, 837, 838*f*
regulation of breathing in, 946*f*
regulation of molecular interactions in, 10*f*, 11
relationship of Neanderthals and, 752*f*–753*f*
sex chromosomes of, 298*f*, 299
skulls of chimpanzees and, 558
small intestine surface area for, 695*f*
sustainable development in Costa Rica and living conditions of, 1284, *1285f*
transgenic crops and health of, 839
urban, 1274
water gain and loss in, 998
Humboldt Current, 1168*f*
Hummingbird hawkmoth, 712*f*
Hummingbirds, 6, 522, 740*f*, 825*f*, 869*f*
Humoral immune response, 957*f*, **963**, 964*f*–967*f*
Humpback whales, 903*f*
Humus, **806**–807
Hundred Heartbeat Club, 1262*f*
Hunger, transgenic crops and reducing human, 837, 838*f*
Huntington's disease, **287**, 431–433
Hurricane Katrina, 1172
Hutton, James, 469*f*, 471
Hybrid breakdown, 509*f*
Hybridization, **271**, 518, 837, 839–841
Hybrid orbitals, 39*f*, 40
Hybrids, **508**
bears, 510*f*
DNA in, 524
reproductive barriers and sterility of, 509*f*
speciation rates and, 521*f*, 522
sterility of, 522–523
Hybrid zones, **516**, 517*f*–519*f*, 520
Hydrangea, 282*f*
Hydras, 255*f*, 687*f*, 691*f*–693*f*, 904*f*, 1086*f*
Hydration shells, **49**
Hydrocarbons, **60**, 61*f*, 671*f*
Hydrocarbon tail, chlorophyll, 194*f*
Hydrochloric acid, 51, 907*f*, 908
Hydrogen
covalent bonding and, 36*f*–37*f*
dinitrophenol and, 186
electronegativity of, 45
electrons of, 35
as essential element, 29*t*, 64
in organic compounds, 59*f*
oxidation of organic molecules containing, 166–167
in plant composition, 809
in saturated and unsaturated fats, 73*f*, 74
Hydrogen bonds, **39**
in DNA structure, 86*f*
floating of ice and, 48*f*
in water molecules, 44, 45*f*–46*f*
as weak chemical bonds, 38, 39*f*
Hydrogen ions, **51**, 52*f*, 53
Hydrogenosomes, 600*f*
Hydrogen peroxide, 112
Hydrogen sulfide gas, 540
Hydrolagus colliei, 727*f*
Hydrolysis, **67**
of ATP, 151*f*, 152
disassembling of polymers to monomers by, 67*f*
enzymatic, 904, 908*f*
by lysosomes, 107*f*, 108
Hydrolytic enzymes, fungal, 655
Hydronium ions, **51**, 52*f*, 53
Hydrophilic substances, **49**–50, 127*f*
amino acids as, 76, 77*f*
Hydrophobic interaction, **81***f*
Hydrophobic substances, **49**–50, 127*f*
amino acids as, 76, 77*f*
Hydroponic culture, **810***f*
Hydrostatic skeletons, **1133***f*
Hydrothermal vents, **526***f*, 585, 587, 592, 914*f*, **1182***f*
Hydroxide ions, **51**, 52*f*, 53
Hydroxyl group, 63*f*
Hydrozoans, 692*f*–693*f*
Hyla versicolor, 500*f*, 514
Hylonomus, 735*f*
Hymen, 1026
Hymenoptera, 712*f*
Hypercholesterolemia, 139
Hypermastigote, 614*f*
Hyperosmotic solutions, 977–978, 991
Hyperpolarization, **1072***f*–1073*f*
Hypersensitive response, plant, **866**, 867*f*
Hypertension, **939**
Hypertonic solutions, **134***f*
Hyphae, fungal, 654, 655*f*–**656***f*, 818
Hypoblast, 1052*f*–1053*f*
Hypocotyl, **829***f*–830*f*
Hypoosmotic solutions, 977–978
Hypothalamus, **888**, 1004*f*, **1007**, **1093***f*
in homeostasis, 1088–1089
in human brain, 1093*f*
in kidney regulation, 994*f*–995*f*
in neuroendocrine signaling, 1007*f*–1008*f*
in regulation of mammalian reproduction, 1030, 1031*f*–1032*f*
in stress responses, 1012*f*
suprachiasmatic nucleus (SCN) in, 893*f*, 1015, 1094–1095
in thermoregulation, 888, 889*f*
Hypotheses, **17**. *See also* Inquiry Figures; Scientific Skills Exercises
forming and testing of, in science, 17, 18*f*–19*f*
phylogenetic trees as, 564*f*, 565
theories and, 21–22, 483–484
Hypothyroidism, 1010
Hypotonic solutions, **134***f*
Hyracoidea, 745*f*
Hyracotherium, 548, 549*f*

I

Ibex, 1266
Ibuprofen, 62*f*, 1001, 1013–1014, 1112
Ice
floating of, on liquid water, 48*f*
fossils in, 529*f*
on Mars, 50*f*
as solid water, 44
Icosahedral viruses, 400*f*, 401, 408, 412
Identical DNA sequences, 453*f*
Identical twins, 1036, 1061, 1162
Idioblasts, 868*f*
IgE antibodies, 970*f*
Iguanas, 888, 998
Ileum, 909
Imaging, brain, 1085*f*, 1096*f*
Imaging techniques, fetal testing, 289
Imatinib, 435
Imbibition, **829**
Immigration, **1192**, 1196, 1197*f*, 1206*f*, 1207, 1256*f*
island equilibrium model and, 1232, 1233*f*
Immune defenses, plant, 866
Immune response
overview of, 957*f*
pathogen trigger of, 952*f*
primary and secondary, 962, 963*f*
trypanosome evasion of, 600–601
Immune systems, **953**
adaptations of pathogens to evade, 957, 971–972, 973*f*, 973*t*, 974, 976
adaptive immunity defense against infection in, 963, 964*f*–969*f*, 970
apoptosis in, 233
diseases of, 229
disruptions of, 970*f*–974*f*, 973*t*
HIV/AIDS and, 398*f*, 406. *See also* AIDS; HIV
immune rejection by, 969–970
immunization and, 968*f*, 976
innate immunity in, 952*f*–957*f*
leukocytes in, 934*f*–935*f*
lymphatic systems and, 933*f*
maternal immune tolerance of embryo and fetus during pregnancy, 1037
membrane carbohydrate cell-cell recognition in, 130*f*–131*f*
pathogen recognition in, 952*f*, 953, 957*f*–963*f*
in plants, 866
prostaglandins in, 1001
stem cells and, 431
trematode camouflage and, 696
Immunity
active and passive, 968
maternal immune tolerance of embryo and fetus during pregnancy, 1037
Immunization, **968***f*, 976
Immunodeficiency diseases, 971, 972*f*, 973
Immunoglobulin (Ig), **958***f*–961*f*, 966
Immunological memory, 960, 962, 963*f*
Impala, 212*f*, 216–217
Imprinting, **1144**, 1145*f*, 1152*f*–1153*f*
Inactivation, cell-signaling, 229
Inborn errors of metabolism, 336
Inborn immunodeficiency, 971
Inclusive fitness, **1157**, 1158*f*–1159*f*
Incomplete dominance, **279***f*
Incomplete flowers, **824**
Incomplete metamorphosis, **711**, 712*f*
Independent assortment, law of, 274–**275**, *276f*, 296, 297*f*, 302
Independent assortment of chromosomes, 265*f*
Independent variables, **21**, 513
Indeterminate cleavage, **681**, 682*f*
Indeterminate growth, **766***f*–767*f*
Indian corn, 451*f*
Indian Ocean Subtropical Gyre, 1168*f*
Indian pipe, 819*f*
Indian rice, 1263
Indoleacetic acid (IAA), 848. *See also* Auxin
Indolebutyric acid (IBA), 849
Indonesia, 1254*f*
Induced fit, 155*f*, **156**
Induced pluripotent stem (iPS) cells, 431, 432*f*
Inducers, **368***f*, 369
Inducible enzymes, 368*f*, 369
Inducible operons, 368*f*, 369
Induction, 382*f*, **383**, **1054**
Inductive reasoning, **17**
Inductive signals, cell fate determination and pattern formation by, 1061, 1062*f*–1063*f*, 1064
Industrialization, human population growth and, 1207*f*
Industrial toxins, 1275, 1276*f*
Inert elements, 35
Infant mortality, 1208–1209, 1284, 1285*f*
Infection
adaptive immunity defense against, 963, 964*f*–969*f*, 970
bacterial, 218*f*
cytotoxic T cell response to, 966*f*, 967
fungal, 670
inflammation in, 956–957
Infection thread, bacterial, 816*f*, 817
Inferences, 1030
Infertility, 1039*f*
Inflammation, 937*f*, 938–939, 1013–1014, 1111–1112
systemic and chronic, 956–957
Inflammatory response, **955***f*–956*f*
Inflorescences, **824**

Influenza viruses
antibody proteins and, 79*f*
antigenic variation of, 973
in density-dependent population regulation, 1204*f*
as emerging viruses, 410
immune system recognition and response to, 952
oseltamivir for, 414
structure of, 400*f*
as zoonotic, 1234, 1235*f*
Information
alleles and, 293
B and T cells and DNA, 976
biotechnology and, 441
chromosomes and, 268, 313
DNA structure and inheritance, 334, 364
in eukaryotic cells, 93*f*
F_1 hybrids, 524
genetic material as, 6, 7*f*–8*f*
genome and nervous system, 1106
genomics, 8–9
heritable, 1162
in mitosis, 252
phylogeny reconstruction with, 572
as theme of biology, 2, 3
Information flow, intercellular, 1000*f*–1001*f*
Information processing
cerebral cortex in, 1096, 1097*f*
ion movements and gradients and, 993*f*
neuron, 1067–1068, 1069*f*
problem solving and, 1146, 1147*f*
Infrared receptors, 1111*f*
Ingestion, **902**, 903*f*
Ingroups, **561***f*
Inhalation, 944, 945*f*
Inheritance. *See also* Mendelian inheritance; Sexual life cycles
of cancer predisposition, 394
chromosomal basis of. *See* Chromosomal basis of inheritance
of chromosomes and genes, 255
Darwinian theory on, 475*f*, 476
C. Darwin on, 14*f*–16*f*
DNA structure and, 334, 364
epigenetic, 372*f*, 373
expression and transmission of genetic information in, 7*f*–8*f*
genetics as study of, 255. *See also* Genetics
genetic variation and, 487
genomic imprinting and, 310*f*, 311
Lamarck's theory on, 471
learning and, 1162
molecular basis of. *See* Molecular basis of inheritance
of organelle genes, 311*f*
of X-linked genes, 299*f*, 300
Inheritance of acquired characteristics principle, 471
Inherited variation, **255**
Inhibin, 1031*f*
Inhibiting hormones, 1004*f*, 1008
Inhibition, 158–161*f*
Inhibitors, 160*f*
Inhibitory postsynaptic potential (IPSP), **1078**
Initials, cell, 766
Initiation factors, 352*f*
Initiation stage
regulation of transcription, 373*f*–378*f*, 379
regulation of translation, 378–379
transcription, 343*f*
translation, 352*f*
Inland mouse (*Peromyscus polionotus*), 20*f*–21*f*
Innate behavior, **1143**
Innate immunity, **953**
antimicrobial peptides and proteins in, 953–954, 955*f*, 956–957
barrier defenses of, 953–954
cellular innate defenses of, 954, 955*f*
inflammatory response of, 955*f*–956*f*
invertebrate, 953*f*–954*f*
molecular recognition by, 953
overview of, 957*f*
pathogen evasion of, 957
pathogen recognition in, 952*f*
systemic and chronic inflammation in, 956–957
vertebrate, 954*f*–956*f*, 957
Inner cell mass, **1052**, 1053*f*
Inner ear, **1113***f*
Innocence Project, 24*f*, 437*f*
Inorganic components, topsoil, 806, 807*f*
Inositol triphosphate (IP_3), **225***f*
Inquiry, scientific, **16**. *See also* Inquiry Figures; Research Method Figures; Scientific inquiry
Inquiry Figures . *See* list, xxii–xxiii
Insecticide resistance, 496, 518
Insects
alimentary canals in, 905*f*
anatomy and features of, 710*f*–711*f*
antiviral defense of, 954*f*
axis formation in, 1060
body plans of, 545*f*, 546
camouflage of, 468*f*, 476*f*
cleavage in, 1048
CO_2 absorption and, 1245
compound eyes of, 1117*f*, 1118
CRISPR-Cas9 and gene editing of, 427
defense mechanisms of, 28*f*
evolution by natural selection in, due to food source changes, 477*f*, 478
exoskeletons of, 1133
eyes of, 894*f*
flower pollination by, 649*f*, 822*f*–825*f*
in fossil record, 529*f*
gamete production and delivery in, 1024*f*
gas exchange of, 951
herbivory evolution in, 551
Hox genes in, 463*f*–464*f*
importance of, for humans, 713
innate immunity in, 953*f*–954*f*
insecticide resistance in, 496
malaria and, 606*f*
Malpighian tubules of, 985*f*
mechanoreceptors and hearing in, 1112*f*
nervous systems of, 1086*f*
neuroendocrine coordination in, 1006*f*, 1007
nonheritable variation in, 488*f*
open circulatory systems of, 923*f*
organogenesis in, 1055*f*
parasitic, 1220
phylogeny and diversity of, 689*f*, 708, 709*f*, 712*f*, 713
plant defenses against, 867, 868*f*–869*f*
pollination by, 522, 641*f*
sex chromosomes of, 298*f*
sex determination of, 298*f*
taste and smell in, 1123
thermoregulation in, 887*f*
tracheal systems for gas exchange in, 941, 942*f*
wildfires and, 1244*f*
zoopagomycete infection of, 662*f*
Insertions (mutations), 358*f*, **359**
In situ hybridization, **423**, 424*f*
Instability, free-energy change and, 147, 148*f*
Insulation, animal thermoregulation and, 885
Insulin, **916**, 1004*f*
in diabetes mellitus, 916–917
exocytosis and, 139
in glucose homeostasis, 916*f*
in glucose metabolism, 10*f*, 216
neonatal diabetes and, 359
as polypeptide, 1001*f*
production of, by biotechnology, 436
as protein, 76*f*
in regulation of appetite and consumption, 917*f*
rough ER and, 105
stem cells and, 431
Insulin-dependent diabetes, 917
Insulin-like growth factor gene (*Igf2*), 310*f*, 311
Insulin-like growth factors (IGFs), 1009
Integral proteins, **129**
Integration
cellular, 121*f*
sensory, 1068*f*, 1108*f*, 1109
Integrins, **119***f*, 129
Integument, **638***f*, 826
Integumentary systems, **885**
Intelligence, 1106
Interactions
Cambrian explosion and feedback regulation, 685
climate change and positive feedbacks, 1189
diatoms and, 617
in eukaryotic cells, 93*f*
feedback mechanisms, 397
between hormones and environment, 1018
interspecific. *See* Interspecific interactions
across kingdoms and domains, 813*f*
mycorrhizal, 657
within organisms, 10*f*
between organisms and physical environment, 10*f*–11*f*
oxygen transport, 951
of pancreatic cell, 142
physical environment and evolution, 485
phytochromes and shoot growth, 871
of plants with other kingdoms, 648, 649*f*
prokaryotic ecological, 586*f*, 587
species, 1214*f*–1221*f*, 1237
as theme of biology, 2, 3, 9
Intercalated disks, 879*f*, 1131
Intercellular communication. *See* Cell signaling
Intercellular information flow, 1000*f*–1001*f*
Intercellular joining function, membrane protein, 130*f*
Interdisciplinary research teams, 9
Interferons, **957**
Intermediate disturbance hypothesis, **1228**, 1229*f*
Intermediate filaments, 100*f*–101*f*, 102, 113*t*, **117**
Intermediate sexual (intersex) characteristics, 299
Intermembrane space, 110
Internal environments, animal, 874, 875*f*, 876, 881*f*–883*f*
Internal factors, cell cycle control system, 246, 247*f*–248*f*
Internal fertilization, 1022–1023, 1151. *See also* Fertilization, reproductive
International Union for Conservation of Nature and Natural Resources (IUCN), 1261
Internet resources, genome-sequence, 444, 445*f*, 446
Interneurons, 1068, 1069*f*, 1088*f*
Internodes, **761**
Interphase, 234, **237***f*–238*f*, 252
Interphase nucleus transcription factories, 377, 378*f*
Interpret the Data, 21*f*, 23, 29*t*, 33, 47*f*, 50, 54, 58, 89, 99, 136, 157, 158*f*, 179, 186, 194*f*, 205, 264, 501*f*, 505, 540*f*, 562*f*, 567*f*, 592, 635, 717, 773*f*, 804, 951, 963*f*, 998, 1018, 1021*f*, 1083, 1102*f*, 1115*f*, 1138, 1149*f*, 1171*f*, 1189, 1205*f*, 1213, 1217, 1243*t*, 1246*f*. *See also* Scientific Skills Exercises
Intersex characteristics, 299
Intersexual selection, **499***f*–500*f*, 1152
Interspecific competition, 1215, 1216*f*–1217*f*, 1237
Interspecific interactions, 1214*f*, **1215**
character displacement and, 1216, 1217*f*, 1237
competition, 1215, 1216*f*–1217*f*, 1237
exploitation, 1217, 1218*f*–1219*f*, 1220
genomics and proteomics in, 88*f*
positive interactions, 1220*f*–1221*f*
Interspecific mating, 507*f*. *See also* Mating
Interstitial fluid, **875***f*, 923, 932, 933*f*, 956*f*, 981, 988–989, 990*f*, 991
Intertidal zones, **1181***f*
Intestinal bacteria, 912, 913*f*
Intestines, 587, 695*f*
Intracellular digestion, 904
Intracellular receptors, cell-signaling, 220, 221*f*, 1018
Intracellular recording, 1072*f*
Intrasexual selection, **499***f*, 1152
Intrauterine devices (IUDs), 1038*f*
Intrinsic (physiological) factors, density-dependent population regulation by, 1204*f*
Intrinsic rate of increase, **1197**
Introduced species, 818, 1223, **1264***f*, 1287
Introns, 345*f*–347*f*, **346**, 449, 488*f*
Invagination, 1050*f*
Inversions, chromosome, **307**, 308*f*
Invertebrates, **683**, **687**
action potential conduction speed in, 1076
chordates, 719*f*–722*f*
cnidarians, 687*f*, 691*f*–693*f*
deuterostomes, echinoderms, and chordates, 689*f*, 713, 714*f*–715*f*
digestive systems of, 717
ecdysozoans and arthropods, 688*f*–689*f*, 705*f*–712*f*, 713. *See also* Arthropods; Ecdysozoans
gamete production and delivery in, 1024*f*
hydrostatic skeletons of, 1133*f*
innate immunity in, 953*f*–954*f*

lophotrochozoans, 687*f*–688*f*, 694, 695*f*–704*f*, 705. *See also* Lophotrochozoans
mechanoreceptors in, to sense gravity, 1112
nervous systems of, 1086*f*, 1087
neuroendocrine signaling in, 1006*f*, 1007
organogenesis in, 1055*f*
osmoregulation in, 979, 980*f*
parental care in, 1023*f*
phylogeny and diversity of, 687*f*–689*f*
sponges, 687*f*, 690*f*, 691
In vitro culturing, angiosperm, 836
In vitro fertilization (IVF), 436, 1039*f*
In vitro mutagenesis, **426**
Iodine, 29
Iodine deficiencies, 1009
Ion channel proteins, 1076
Ion channel receptors, 220*f*
Ion channels, **135**, **1070**
action potentials and gated, 1072*f*–1077*f*
in mechanoreceptors, 1110
neuron resting potential and, 1070*f*–1071*f*
Ionic bonds, **37**, 38*f*
Ionic compounds (salts), **38***f*. *See also* Salts
Ion movements and gradients, in life processes, 993*f*
Ionotropic receptors, 1077, 1078*f*, 1079–1080
Ion pumps, 137, 138*f*, 1070*f*–1071*f*
Ions, **37**, 38*f*, 934*f*, 993*f*, 1070*t*
IP_3 (inositol triphosphate), **225***f*
Iridium, 541
Iris, **1118***f*
Iron
as limiting nutrient in aquatic biomes, 1243*t*
plant deficiency in, 810*f*
Iron overload, 920
Iron oxide, 534
Irrigation, 142, 808, 821
Island equilibrium model, 1232, 1233*f*
Island species, 483
Isolated systems, 145, 149*f*
Isoleucine, 77*f*
Isoleucine synthesis, 161*f*
Isomers, **61***f*–62*f*
Isomorphic generations, **604**
Isoosmotic solutions, 977–978
Isopods, 709
Isotonic solutions, **134***f*
Isotopes, **31**, 32*f*, 33, 190
Italy, age-structure pyramid for, 1209*f*
Iteroparity, **1201***f*
Ivanowsky, Dmitri, 399
Ivory, 1265*f*

J

J. *See* Joule
Jackson, Rob, 1223*f*
Jacob, François, 366, 547
Jacoby, Gordon C., 773*f*
Japan, 1208
Japanese canopy plant (*Paris japonica*), 448*t*, 449
Japanese snails, 522
Jasmine, 855
Jasmonates, 846*t*, **855**
Jawfish, 1151*f*
Jawless vertebrates, 723*f*–725*f*
Jaws
mammalian, 530, 531*f*–533*f*
snake, 498, 499*f*
vertebrate, 718, 723, 725*f*, 726
Jefferson, Thomas, 437
Jejunum, 909
Jellies (jellyfish), 687*f*, 691*f*–692*f*, 922*f*
Jellyfish gene, 342*f*
Jenner, Edward, 968
Jirtle, Randy, 372
Joints, human, 1134*f*
Joly, John, 794
Jost, Alfred, 1030
Joule (J), **46**, 890
J-shaped exponential growth curve, 1197*f*
Jumping genes. *See* Transposable elements
June solstice, 1167*f*
Juniper, 643*f*
Junk DNA. *See* Noncoding DNA
Juvenile hormone (JH), 1006*f*, 1007
Juxtaglomerular apparatus (JGA), **995**, 996*f*
Juxtamedullary nephrons, **986***f*, 991

K

Kangaroo rat (*Dipodomys merriami*), 741*f*, 998
Kangaroos, 743, 744*f*, 1135*f*, 1153*f*, 1178
Kaposi's sarcoma herpesvirus, 974
Kartagener's syndrome, 1064
Karyogamy, **658***f*, 662*f*
Karyotypes, **256***f*, 289*f*, 308*f*, 332*f*
Katydids, 712*f*
Kaufman, D. W., 22–23
kcal. *See* Kilocalorie
Kelp perch (*Brachyistius frenatus*), 1203*f*
Kelps, 603, 804, 1189
Keratin, 76*f*, 337, 735, 920
Kestrels, 1201*f*
Ketone compounds, 63*f*
Ketoses, 68*f*
Keystone species, **1226**, 1270
Kidneys, **985**
adaptations of vertebrate, to diverse environments, 741, 991*f*–993*f*
evolution of, 991, 998
homeostatic regulation of, 994*f*–996*f*
hormonal regulation of, 1007*f*, 1008
human cystic kidney disease, 1064
osmoregulation by, in aquatic animals, 979*f*
processing of blood filtrate in nephrons of, 987, 988*f*, 989
solute gradients and water conservation by, 989, 990*f*, 991
structure of, in mammalian excretory systems, 985, 986*f*–987*f*
Killifish, 483
Kilocalorie (kcal), **46**, 890
Kimberella, 535*f*, 536, 694
Kinases, 219*f*, 220. *See also* Protein kinases; Receptor tyrosine kinases
Kinetic energy, **46**, **144**, 145*f*, 163
Kinetochore microtubules, 238*f*, 240*f*–241*f*, 244*f*, 252
Kinetochores, 238*f*, **240***f*–241*f*
Kinetoplastids, **600**, 601*f*
Kinetoplasts, 600
King, Mary-Claire, 394
King, Thomas, 428
Kingdoms, taxonomy, 12*f*, **554**, 555*f*, 568
King penguins (*Aptenodytes patagonicus*), 740*f*, 884*f*, 1192*f*
Kin selection, 1157, **1158***f*–1159*f*
Kissimmee River Restoration Project, 1254*f*
Klinefelter syndrome, 309, 1040
Knee-jerk reflex, 1088*f*
KNOTTED-1 gene, 778*f*
Koalas, 743, 912*f*
Kombu, 603
Komodo dragon (*Varanus komodoensis*), 1042
Korarchaeota clade, 586
Krebs, Hans, 172
Krebs cycle. *See* Citric acid cycle
Krill, 710*f*
K-selection, **1202**
Kudzu, 1264*f*
Kuru, 412–413

L

Labeling, GM products, 438–439
Labia majora, **1026**, 1027*f*
Labia minora, **1026**, 1027*f*
Labor, childbirth and, 1036, 1037*f*
Labrador Current, 1168*f*
Lacks, Henrietta, 248–249
lac operon, 368*f*, 369
Lactase, 70
Lactate, 180*f*, 181
Lactation, 1036
Lacteals, 909*f*–**910***f*
Lactic acid fermentation, **180***f*, 181
Lactose, 69–70, 368*f*, 369
Laetoli footprints, 750*f*
Lagging strand, DNA, **324**, 325*f*
Lagomorpha, 745*f*
Lake Erie water snake (*Nerodia sipedon*), 496, 497*f*
Lakes, 1177*f*–1179*f*, 1275, 1276*f*
primary production in, 1242–1243
Lake Vesijärvi, 1227*f*
Lake Victoria, 515*f*, 519*f*, 520
Lamarck, Jean-Baptiste de, 469*f*, 471
Laminaria, 603*f*, 604
Lampreys, 719*f*, **723***f*, 724, 1091*f*
Lamp shells, 688*f*, 698*f*, 699
Lancelets, 689*f*, 715, 719*f*, **720**, 721*f*–722*f*
Land
colonization of, 536, 537*f*
global human use of, 1209
locomotion on, 1135*f*
subsidence of, 808*f*
Land plants. *See* Plants
Landscape ecology, **1165***f*. *See also* Ecology
biodiversity hot spots in, 1272*f*
landscape fragmentation and edges in, 1270, 1271*f*
movement corridors in, 1271*f*, 1272
philosophy of nature reserves in, 1272–1273
urban ecology and, 1273, 1274*f*
zoned reserves in, 1273*f*
Landscapes, **1165***f*
Land snails, 700*f*, 702*f*
Language
brain function and, 1098*f*
FOXP2 gene and, 461, 462*f*
lap alleles, 505
Larch, 643*f*
Large intestine, **910**, 911*f*–912*f*
Largemouth bass, 881*f*
Large-scale disturbances, 1229*f*
Large tree finch, 519
Larva, **674***f*, 711*f*
Larval dispersal, 538
Larynx, 906*f*, **942**, 943*f*
La Sagrada Familia towers, 146*f*
Late-acting dominant lethal alleles, 293
Latency, viral, 973*t*
Lateral geniculate nuclei, 1121*f*
Lateral inhibition, 1120
Lateralization, **1098**
Lateral line system, 725–**726**, 728*f*, **1116***f*
Lateral meristems, **766***f*
Lateral roots, **759***f*, 769*f*
Latitude
animal size and, 897
sunlight intensity and, 1166*f*
Latitudinal gradients, community diversity and, 1232*f*
Law of conservation of mass, **1239**
Law of independent assortment, 274–**275**, 276*f*, 296, 297*f*, 302
Law of segregation, 271*f*–275*f*, **272**–273, 296, 297*f*
Laws of probability, 276, 277*f*, 278
Laws of thermodynamics, 143, 145*f*, 146
Laysan albatross (*Phoebastria immutabilis*), 1277*f*
L-dopa, 1104
Leaching, 806
Leading strand, DNA, **324**, 325*f*
Leaf area index, 786*f*, 787
Leaf-cutter ants, 668*f*, 813*f*
Leaf primordia, 769*f*, **770**, 771*f*
Leafy liverworts, 626*f*
Learned behaviors, 1147
Learning, **1144**
associative, 1146*f*
cognition, problem solving, and, 1146, 1147*f*
development of learned behaviors, 1147
inheritance and, 1162
neuronal plasticity and, 1100, 1101*f*
sleep and, 1094
social, 1147*f*–1148*f*
Leaves (leaf), **630**, 758, **761**
abscisic acid in abscission of, 852
anatomy of, in C_4 plants, 204*f*
auxin in pattern formation of, 849
ecosystem interaction of, 10*f*, 11
effects of transpiration on wilting and temperature of, 798
ethylene in abscission of, 854*f*
evolution of, in vascular plants, 630, 631*f*
green color of, 193*f*
Hox genes in formation of, 777, 778*f*
leaf area index and arrangements of, 786*f*, 787
monocot vs. eudicot, 649*f*
photosynthesis in, 189*f*, 190
structure of, 761*f*–762*f*
tissue organization of, 770, 771*f*
Leber's congenital amaurosis (LCA), 1122
Leber's hereditary optic neuropathy, 311
Leeches, 703*f*, 704, 1086*f*

Leeuwenhoek, Anton van, 1209
Left atrium, 926*f*–927*f*
Left ventricle, 926*f*–927*f*
Leghemoblobin, 816
Legless lizards, 553*f*–554*f*
Legumes, 815*f*–816*f*, 817
Lemurs, 746*f*
Length, carbon skeleton, 60*f*
Lens, **1118***f*, 1138
Lenski, Richard, 578*f*
Lenticels, **774**
Leopards, 554, 555*f*
Lepidopterans, 712*f*
Lepidosaurs, **736**, 737*f*, 738
Leprosy, 584*f*
Leptin, 917*f*, 918
Leptogenys distinguenda, 1001*f*
Lepus americanus, 501*f*, 1205*f*
Lettuce seed germination, 857*f*
Leucine, 77*f*
Leukemia, 309*f*, 394, 434, 1263*f*
Leukocytes (white blood cells), 229*f*, 878*f*, 934*f*–**935***f*
Lewis, Edward B., 385–386
Lewis dot structures, 36, 37*f*, 43, 65
Leydig cells, 1031*f*
Lichens, 663, **668***f*–669*f*, 672, 813*f*, 1256*f*–1257*f*
  bioremediation using, 1253, 1255*f*
Life. *See also* Animals*;* Organisms*;* Plants
  abiotic synthesis of organic molecules as origin of, 57*f*, 58
  biological molecules of, 66. *See also* Biological molecules
  biology as scientific study of, 3. *See also* Biology*;* Science
  carbon in organic compounds of, 64
  cell division as fundamental to, 235
  cells as fundamental units of, 5*f*, 6*f*, 93*f*. *See also* Cells*;* Eukaryotic cells*;* Prokaryotic cells
  cellular respiration and energy for, 164*f*, 165. *See also* Cellular respiration
  classification of diversity of, 12*f*–13*f*
  colonization of land by, 536, 537*f*
  conditions on early Earth and origin of, 525*f*–528*f*
  diversity of. *See* Biodiversity
  domains of, 12*f*–13*f*
  effects of speciation and extinction on, 537*f*–543*f*, 544
  as emergent property, 125
  essential elements and trace elements for, 29*t*
  evolution of, as theme of biology, 11. *See also* Evolution
  extension of, 233
  fossil record as history of, 529*f*. *See also* Fossil record
  geologic record and, 532*f*–533*f*
  history of, as limitation of natural selection, 504
  importance of water for. *See* Water
  levels of biological organization of, 4*f*–5*f*
  order as property of, 146*f*, 147
  origin of multicellular, 533*f*, 535*f*–536*f*
  origin of single-celled, 532*f*–535*f*
  photosynthesis as process that feeds, 188*f*. *See also* Photosynthesis
  phylogenies as evolutionary history of, 554*f*–556*f*. *See also* Phylogenies
  possible evolution of, on planets with water, 50*f*
  properties of, 3*f*
  silicon-based, 65
  tree of, 15*f*–16*f*. *See also* Tree of life
  unifying biological themes in, 3*f*–11*f*
  unity in diversity of, 13*f*, 26, 469, 473
  viruses and characteristics of, 398*f*, 399, 408
  web of, 570*f*
Life cycles, **256**. *See also* Sexual life cycles
  of angiosperms, 646*f*, 647, 653, 826, 827*f*, 828
  of apicomplexan *Plasmodium*, 606*f*
  of blood fluke *Schistosoma mansoni*, 696*f*
  of brown alga *Laminaria*, 603*f*, 604
  of cellular slime mold *Dictyostelium*, 613*f*
  of ciliate *Paramecium caudatum*, 607*f*
  developmental events in, 1044
  of *Drosophila melanogaster* (fruit fly), 385*f*
  of fern as seedless vascular plant, 630*f*
  of fungi, 658*f*–659*f*, 662*f*, 664*f*, 666*f*
  of green algal chlorophyte *Chlamydomonas*, 611*f*
  of humans, 257*f*, 258
  of hydrozoan *Obelia*, 693*f*
  of moss, 624*f*
  of pine tree and gymnosperms, 640*f*, 641
  reproduction and, 256
Life expectancy at birth, 1208–1209, 1284, 1285*f*
Life histories, population, **1200**, 1201*f*–1202*f*
Life tables, population, **1193***t*
Ligaments, **878***f*
Ligand binding, 217
Ligand-gated ion channels, **220***f*, **1077**, 1078*f*, 1079–1080
Ligands, **217**, 223
Light chains, **958***f*–961*f*
Light-detecting organs, 1117*f*
Light detector, euglenid, 601*f*
Light energy
  absorption of, determining primary production with, 1242*f*
  bioluminescence as, 143
  in energy flow and chemical cycling, 9*f*, 164*f*, 165, 1240f
  excitation of chlorophyll by, 195*f*
  global energy budget and, 1241
  in photosynthesis, 187*f*, 206, 207*f*. *See also* Light reactions
  primary production in aquatic ecosystems and limitations of, 1242
  properties of, 192*f*
  sunlight as, 143, 145, 150
Light energy, plant responses to
  biological clocks and circadian rhythms in, 857, 858*f*, 859
  blue-light photoreceptors in, 855, 856*f*
  de-etiolation signal transduction pathway for, 843*f*–844*f*, 845
  germination and, 871
  photomorphogenesis and action spectrum of, 855
  photoperiodism and seasonal responses in, 859*f*–860*f*
  phototropism and, 847*f*–848*f*
  phytochromes as photoreceptors in, 856, 857*f*
  plant shoot architecture and, 785, 786*f*, 787
  stomatal opening and closing as, 797–798
Light-harvesting complexes, **196***f*
Light microscope (LM), **94**
Light microscopy (LM), 94*f*–95*f*
Light reactions, **191**. *See also* Photosynthesis
  chemiosmosis of, in chloroplasts vs. in mitochondria, 199*f*–200*f*, 201
  cyclic electron flow in, 198*f*, 199
  determination of absorption spectrum for, 193*f*
  excitation of chlorophyll by light energy in, 195*f*
  linear electron flow in, 197*f*–198*f*
  most effective wavelengths for, 194*f*
  nature of sunlight and, 192*f*
  photosynthetic pigments as light receptors in, 192, 193*f*–194*f*, 195
  photosystems of, 195, 196*f*–198*f*, 199
  as stage of photosynthesis, 191*f*, 192, 206, 207*f*
Light responses, rod cell, 1121*f*
Lignin, **629**–630, 665, **764***f*, 783
Likens, Gene, 1252*f*
Lily, 650*f*
Limbic system, 1095*f*, 1096
Limbs
  genes for formation of, 545*f*, 546
  as homologous structures, 479*f*, 480
  tetrapod, 718, 730, 731*f*
  vertebrate formation of, 1062, 1063*f*, 1064
Limiting nutrients, **1242**, 1243*f*–1244*f*, 1243*t*
Limnetic zone, **1179***f*
Limp cells, 790, 791*f*, 797*f*
Limpets, 547*f*–548*f*
LINE-1 retrotransposons, 452
Lineage-based mechanisms, 777–778
Linear electron flow, **197***f*–198*f*
Line graphs in Scientific Skills Exercises, 33, 157, 264, 411, 972, 1049, 1095, 1136, 1186, 1279
Linkage groups, 306*f*
Linkage maps, 305*f*–306*f*
Linked genes, **301**
  genetic recombination and, 302, 303*f*
  identifying, 304
  inheritance of, 301*f*–302*f*
  mapping of, 305*f*–306*f*
  natural selection and genetic variation from recombination of, 305
Linker DNA, 330*f*
Linnaean classification, 554, 555*f*
Linnaeus, Carolus, 470, 554
Lionfish, 729*f*
Lions, 912*f*
Lipid bilayers. *See* Phospholipid bilayers
Lipid rafts, 128
Lipids, 66, **72**
  in cellular membranes, 102, 110, 127*f*, 128
  evolution of differences in cellular membrane composition of, 129
  fats as, 72, 73*f*, 74
  phospholipids as, 74*f*, 75
  in plasma membranes, 98*f*, 99
  smooth ER synthesis of, 104–105
  steroids as, 75*f*
  Tay-Sachs disease and, 280
Lipid-soluble hormones, 1001*f*–1003*f*
Lipopolysaccharides, 574, 976
Literacy rate, Costa Rican, 1285
Litter decomposition, 1248*f*
Litter size, 1200, 1201*f*–1202*f*
Littoral zone, **1179***f*
Liver, **909**
  in digestion, 909–910
  in energy storage, 915, 916*f*
  lowering plasma LDL levels by inactivating enzyme of, 938
Liverworts, 620*f*, **623**, 626*f*. *See also* Bryophytes
Living fossils, 633, 708*f*
Lizards, 553*f*–554*f*, 735, 737*f*, 738, 925, 1021*f*, 1154*f*, 1216*f*, 1260*f*
  climate change and, 11*f*
Loams, **806**
Lobe-fins, 718, **728**, 729*f*, 730
Lobes, brain, 1096, 1097*f*, 1098
Lobotomy, 1098
Lobsters, 707*f*, 708–709, 979
Local biogeochemical cycles, 1249
Local cell signaling, 215*f*, 216
Local extinctions, 1262
Local inflammatory response, 955*f*–956*f*
Local regulators, **1000***f*, 1001
Lock-and-key specificity, viral, 401
Locomotion, 993*f*, 1133*f*, **1135***f*, 1136, 1138
Locomotor play, 1159
Locus, gene, **255**, 272
Locusts, 1213
Lodgepole pines, 1229*f*
Logarithms, natural, 639
Loggerhead turtles, 1194, 1195*f*
Logistic equation in Scientific Skills Exercise, 1200
Logistic population growth, 1197, 1198*f*–1199*f*, **1198***t*, 1200
Logos, DNA sequence, 351
Log scales in Scientific Skills Exercise, 1136
Lokiarchaeotes, 586
Long-day plants, **859***f*
Long-distance cell signaling, 215*f*, 216
Long Island Sound, 505
Long-night plants, 859*f*, 860
Long noncoding RNAs (lncRNAs), 380–**381**
Long-term memory, **1100**, 1101*f*
Long-term potentiation (LTP), **1101***f*
Looped domains, DNA, 331*f*, 332
Loop of Henle, **987***f*–990*f*, 998
Loose connective tissue, 878*f*
Lophophores, 683*f*, **684**, 694, 698*f*, 699
Lophotrochozoans, **683***f*, 684
  annelids, 703*f*–704*f*, 705
  characteristics of, 694
  ectoprocts and brachiopods, 698*f*, 699
  flatworms, 694, 695*f*–697*f*
  molluscs, 699*f*–702*f*
  phylogeny of, 687*f*–688*f*
  rotifers, 697*f*, 698
Loricifera, 688*f*
Lorises, 746*f*
"Lost City" vent field, 527*f*
Lovelock, James, 1259
Low-density lipoproteins (LDLs), 139, 141, **937**–938
Loxodonta africana, 474*f*, 1197*f*, 1265*f*
LSD, 1081
Luminal A and luminal B breast cancer, 393*f*
Luna moths (*Actias luna*), 43
Lung cancer, 447
Lung cells, newt, 7*f*, 238*f*–239*f*
Lung disease, 951
Lungfishes, 480*f*, 719*f*, 729

Lungs, 728, **942**
  gas exchange in, 924*f*, 925, 942, 943*f*–946*f*
  ventilation of, 944, 945*f*–946*f*
Lupines, 1255
Lupus, 971
Luteal phase, 1032*f*, 1033
Luteinizing hormone (LH), 1004*f*, 1008*f*, **1030**, 1031*f*–1032*f*, 1033
lux genes, 397
Lycophytes, **622**, 622*t*, 631, 632*f*, 633, 635
Lyell, Charles, 469*f*, 471–473
Lyme disease, 584*f*, 588*f*, 1234, 1235*f*
Lymph, **933***f*, 956*f*
Lymphatic systems, 910, **933***f*, 956*f*
Lymph nodes, **933***f*, 956*f*
Lymphocytes, 934*f*–935*f*, **958***f*. *See also* B cells; T cells
Lymphoid stem cells, 935*f*
Lymph vessels, 933*f*, 956*f*
Lynx, 1205*f*
Lyon, Mary, 300*f*
Lysine, 77*f*
Lysogenic cycle, **402**, 403*f*
Lysosomal storage diseases, 108
Lysosomes, 100*f*, **107***f*–109*f*
Lysozymes, 49*f*, 79*f*, 456, 457*f*, **953***f*, 954
Lytic cycle, **402***f*, 414

M

Macaques (*Macaca fuscata*), 897
MacArthur, Robert, 1232, 1233*f*
MacLeod, Colin, 315
Macroevolution, **507**, **526**. *See also* Evolution
  adaptive radiations in, 542, 543*f*, 544
  colonization of land in, 536, 537*f*
  of development, 544*f*–546*f*, 547
  early Earth conditions for origin of life in, 526*f*–528*f*
  fossil evidence for, 525*f*, 526, 528, 529*f*–531*f*, 530
  gene flow, genetic drift, and natural selection in, 551
  geologic record of key events in, 532*f*–533*f*
  mass extinctions in, 540*f*–542*f*
  novelties and trends in, 547*f*–549*f*
  origin of multicellular organisms in, 533*f*, 535*f*–536*f*
  origin of single-celled organisms in, 532*f*–535
  plate tectonics and, 538*f*–539*f*, 540
  speciation and extinction rates of organisms in, 537*f*–543*f*, 544
Macromolecules, 66*f*–**67***f*, 526*f*–527*f*, 802
  in lysosomes, 107*f*, 108
  plasmodesmata and, 846
Macronuclei, ciliate, 606, 607*f*
Macronutrients, plant, **810**, 811*t*
Macrophages, 107*f*, 121*f*, **878***f*, **955***f*, 956
Macular degeneration, age-related, 432
Madagascar orchids, 825*f*
Mad cow disease, 83, 412
Madreporite, sea star, 714*f*
MADS-box genes, 545, 778*f*
Maggot flies, 508*f*, 515–516, 903*f*
Magnesium, 29*t*, 810
Magnetic field, Earth's, 1111*f*, 1141
Magnification, 94
Magnificent frigatebird (*Fregata magnificens*), 1139*f*
Magnolia tree, 650*f*
Magnoliids, **649**, 650*f*
Maiden veil fungus, 665*f*
Maize (corn), 451*f*, 651
  alleles in, 293
  artificial selection of, 836*f*
  health of transgenic Bt, 839
  phylogeny of, 557
  precocious germination in, 852*f*
  proteins in, 899
  seeds, 829*f*–830*f*
Major depressive disorder, **1102**
Major histocompatibility complex (MHC) molecule, **959***f*–960*f*, 963, 964*f*, 969–970
Make Connections Figures. *See* list, xxii
Malacidins, 589*f*
Malacosoma americanum, 897
Malaria, 286*f*, 287, 501, 503*f*, 599*f*, 606*f*, 614, 713
Malaysia, 1232*f*
Malaysian orchid mantis (*Hymenopus coronatus*), 468*f*, 469
Male gametophytes, angiosperm, 827*f*
Males
  competition between, for mates, 1153*f*, 1154
  female mate choice and, 1151, 1152*f*–1153*f*, 1154
  hormonal regulation of reproductive systems of, 1031*f*
  hormones of, 999*f*, 1014, 1015*f*
  parental care by, 1151*f*
  reproductive anatomy of human, 1025*f*, 1026
  sex chromosomes of, 298*f*, 299
  sexual competition between, 499*f*–500*f*
  spermatogenesis in human, 1027, 1028*f*, 1031*f*, 1042
Malignant tumors, **249***f*
Malnutrition, 837, 838*f*, 901–902
Malpighian tubules, 710*f*, **985***f*
Malthus, Thomas, 469*f*, 475
Maltose, 69*f*
Mammals, **741**
  adaptations of kidneys of, 991*f*, 992
  adaptive radiation of, 542, 543*f*
  amniotic eggs of, 734, 735*f*
  axis formation in, 1060
  bats as, 15*f*
  brains in nervous systems of, 1091*f*. *See also* Nervous systems
  breathing in, 925, 945*f*–946*f*
  cardiovascular systems of. *See* Cardiovascular systems
  cellular respiration in hibernating, 178
  circadian clocks in hibernating, 893*f*
  circulation in, 924*f*, 925. *See also* Cardiovascular systems
  comparing genomes of, 454*f*–455*f*, 459, 460*f*–462*f*
  control of circadian rhythms in, 1094
  convergent evolution of, 481*f*, 744*f*
  derived characters of, 741*f*
  digestive systems of. *See* Digestive systems
  early evolution of, 741, 742*f*
  endangered or threatened, 1261, 1262*f*, 1288
  eutherians and primates as placental, 744, 745*f*–747*f*
  evolution of, 679
  evolution of melanocyte-stimulating hormone in, 1016
  extraembryonic membranes of, 1053*f*, 1054
  fertilization in, 1046*f*
  gas exchange adaptations of, 947*f*–949*f*
  genomic imprinting in, 310*f*, 311
  glia in brains of, 1069*f*
  hearts of, 926*f*–928*f*
  hominins and humans as, 748*f*–754*f*
  homologous structures in, 479*f*
  hormonal regulation of reproduction in, 1030, 1031*f*–1032*f*, 1033–1034. *See also* Animal reproduction; Human reproduction
  inactivation of X-linked genes in female, 300*f*
  ion concentrations inside and outside of neurons of, 1070*t*
  kidneys in excretory systems of, 985, 986*f*–987*f*. *See also* Excretory systems; Kidneys
  marsupials, 743*f*–744*f*
  mechanoreceptors for hearing and equilibrium in, 1112*f*–1116*f*
  modeling neurons of, 1071*f*
  molecular clock for, 567*f*
  monotremes, 742, 743*f*
  nitrogenous wastes of, 982*f*
  opiate receptors in brains of, 1082
  organ systems of, 876*t*
  origination of cetaceans as terrestrial, 481*f*–482*f*
  origin of, 530, 531*f*–533*f*
  osmoregulation in, 980–981
  phylogeny of, 719*f*, 745*f*
  reproductive cloning of, 430*f*–431*f*
  respiratory systems of, 942, 943*f*–946*f*
  sex chromosomes of, 298*f*, 299
  taste in, 1123*f*–1124*f*
  thermoregulation in, 881*f*
Mammary glands, 392*f*, 741, 1005*f*–1008*f*, 1016, **1026**–1027
Mammoths, 421
Manatee, 572, 1219*f*
Mandibles, 709, 710*f*
Mangold, Hilda, 1062*f*
Mantises, 468*f*
Mantle, **699***f*
Mantle cavity, **699***f*
Maple tree leaves, 762
Mapping
  of brain activity, 1096*f*
  linkage, 305*f*–306*f*
Map units, **305***f*
Maquis, 1174*f*
Maraviroc, 217, 409
Marchantia, 620*f*, 626*f*
March equinox, 1167*f*
Marine animals
  adaptations of kidneys of, 992, 993*f*
  mass extinctions and, 541–542
  osmoregulation in, 978, 979*f*
Marine benthic zones, **1182***f*
Marine biomes, 1177*f*, 1178, 1224*f*
  primary production in, 1242, 1243*f*, 1243*t*
Marine birds, 982*f*
Marine reserves, 1273*f*
Marine snails, 538
Marine worm, 940*f*
Mark-recapture method, **1191***f*
Marmota caligata, 164*f*
Mars, 50*f*
Marshall, Barry, 912
Marshes, 1186
Marsh gas, 585
Marsupials, 481*f*, 540, 543*f*, **743***f*–745*f*
Marsupium, 743*f*
Mass, 31
  conservation of, 1239–1240
  trophic levels and, 1240*f*, 1241
Mass extinctions, **540***f*–542*f*, 1287
  current sixth, 702*f*
  of dinosaurs, 736
  evolution and, 653
  life on earth and, 525
  speciation and, 522
  tropical deforestation and potential, 651*f*, 652
Mass number, **31**
Mast cells, 955*f*, 956, 970*f*
Master regulatory genes, 545*f*–546*f*, 547. *See also* Homeotic genes; *Hox* genes
Masting, 869*f*
Mate choice, 499*f*–500*f*, 515*f*, 519, 1151, 1152*f*–1153*f*, 1154
Mate choice copying, **1152**, 1153*f*
Mate recognition, 508*f*
Maternal age, Down syndrome and, 308–309
Maternal alleles, 372
Maternal chromosomes, 265
Maternal effect genes, **386**
Maternal inheritance, 311
Maternal mRNAs, 387*f*
Mating. *See also* Reproduction
  animal reproduction and, 1020*f*
  cell signaling in yeast, 213*f*, 214
  clumped dispersion and, 1192
  earthworm, 705
  external fertilization and, 1023
  genetic disorders from human, 285–286
  Hardy-Weinberg equilibrium and random, 492*t*
  human, 1034
  human sexual arousal and, 1081–1082
  hybrid zones and, 516, 517*f*
  insect, 711
  interspecific, and hybrids, 507*f*
  of pea plants, 270*f*, 271
  reproductive barriers to, 507, 508*f*–509*f*, 510
  reproductive cycles and, 1021*f*
  sexual selection and, 499*f*–500*f*
Mating behavior. *See also* Courtship rituals
  applying game theory to, 1154*f*
  mating systems,1149–1150, 1151*f*
  sexual selection and mate choice in, 1151, 1152*f*–1153*f*, 1154
Mating systems, 1150, 1151*f*
Matorral, 1174*f*
Matter, 2, 3, 9, **29**–30. *See also* Energy and matter
Matteuccia, 632*f*
Maturation-promoting factor (MPF), **245**, 246*f*
Mauna Loa monitoring station, 1278*f*, 1279
Maungatautari restoration project, 1254*f*
Maximum likelihood, **563**
Maximum parsimony, **562**, 563*f*, 564
Mayer, Adolf, 399
Maze experiments, 1146, 1147*f*
McCarty, Maclyn, 315
McClintock, Barbara, 451*f*, 459

M checkpoint, 245*f*–247*f*
Meadowlarks, 507*f*
Meadow voles, 1155*f*
Measles, 401, 409
Measles virus, 968*f*
Mechanical defense, prey, 1218*f*
Mechanical isolation, 508*f*
Mechanical signaling, 119
Mechanical stimuli, plant responses to, 861, 862*f*
Mechanical stress, plant responses to, 853*f*
Mechanical work, 150, 152*f*
Mechanoreceptors, **1110***f*, 1112*f*–1116*f*
Mediator proteins, 374, 375*f*
Medical records, 448
Medicine. *See also* Drugs*;* Pharmaceutical products
  antibodies as tools in, 969*f*
  application of systems biology to, 447, 448*f*
  biotechnology in, 433, 434*f*–436*f*
  blocking HIV entry into cells in, 130*f*
  fungi in, 670
  genomics and proteomics in, 88*f*
  medical leeches in, 703*f*, 704
  plant-derived medicines in, 651*t*, 652
  radioactive tracers in, 31, 32*f*
  stem cells in, 431–432
  treatments of nervous system disorders in, 1102
Mediterranean climate, 1168
Medulla oblongata, 946*f*, **1093***f*
Medusa, **691***f*, 692
Medusozoans, 692*f*–693*f*
Megapascal (MPa), **789**
Megaphylls, **631***f*, 635
Megasporangia, 638*f*
Megaspores, **631**, 638*f*, **826**, 827*f*
Megasporocytes, 826
Meiosis, **258**
  in animal cells, 260*f*–261*f*
  crossing over and synapsis during, 260*f*, 262*f*
  DNA changes of yeast cells in, 264
  errors in, 306, 307*f*–309*f*
  gamete formation by, in sexual life cycles, 258
  genetic variation from gene alteration during, 489
  genome evolution and errors in, 455*f*–457*f*
  human gametogenesis and, 1027
  in human life cycle, 254, 257*f*, 258
  mitosis vs., 262, 263*f*, 264
  production of gametes by, 237
  stages of, 259*f*–262*f*
  in varieties of sexual life cycles, 258*f*, 259
Meiosis I, **259***f*–260*f*, 262*f*–263*f*, 264
Meiosis II, **259***f*, 261*f*, 263*f*, 264
Melanerpes formicivorus, 1162
Melanin, 337
Melanocyte-stimulating hormone (MSH), 1004*f*, 1008*f*, **1016**, 1018
Melatonin, 883*f*, 1004*f*, **1015**
Melitaea cinxia, 1206*f*, 1207
Membrane attack complex, 966*f*
Membrane potentials, 137, 138*f*, **1069**, 1070*f*–1071*f*. *See also* Action potentials, neuron*;* Resting potentials, neuron
Membrane proteins, 105, 127*f*–130*f*, 152*f*
Membranes, amniotic egg extraembryonic, 734, 735*f*
Membranes, cellular. *See* Cellular membranes
Memory
  emotion and, 1096
  formation of, 1085
  neuronal plasticity and, 1100, 1101*f*
  sleep and, 1094
Memory cells, **962**
Mendel, Gregor
  experimental, quantitative approach of, 270*f*, 271
  genes as hereditary factors of, 294*f*
  law of independent assortment of, 274–275, 276*f*
  law of segregation of, 271*f*–275*f*
  particulate model of inheritance of, 487
Mendelian inheritance
  chromosomal basis of, 294*f*, 295
  environmental impacts on phenotypes and, 282*f*
  evolution of gene concept from, 361
  exceptions to, 310*f*–311*f*
  extending, for multiple genes, 281*f*–282*f*
  extending, for single gene, 278, 279*f*–280*f*
  genetic variation and, 487
  human patterns of inheritance and, 284*f*–289*f*, 290
  integrating, with emergent properties, 282–283
  law of independent assortment of, 274–275, 276*f*
  law of segregation of, 271*f*–275*f*
  laws of probability governing, 276, 277*f*, 278
  limitations of, 278
  making histograms and analyzing distribution patterns for, 283
  G. Mendel's experimental quantitative approach, 270*f*, 271
Menopause, **1033**
Menstrual cycle, **1032***f*, 1033–1034
Menstrual flow phase, 1032*f*, 1033
Menstruation, **1032***f*
Meristems, **766***f*–767*f*, 830, 849
Meroblastic cleavage, 1048
Merozoites, 606*f*
Meselson, Matthew, 322*f*
Mesenchyme cells, 1055
Mesoderm, **680**, 1050*f*–**1051***f*
Mesoglea, 691*f*
Mesohyl, **690***f*
Mesonychoteuthis hamiltoni, 702
Mesophyll, **189***f*, 203, 204*f*, 206*f*, **771***f*
Mesozoic era, 530*f*, 533*f*, 539*f*, 679
Messenger RNA (mRNA), **339**. *See also* RNA
  alteration of ends of, 345*f*
  in analyzing gene expression, 423, 424*f*–428*f*
  bicoid, 387*f*
  in breast cancer, 392*f*
  cell fractionation and, 125
  effects of miRNAs and siRNAs on, 380*f*
  in gene expression, 8*f*, 84*f*
  genetic code and, 340*f*, 341
  maternal, 387*f*
  mutations affecting, 357*f*–358*f*, 359
  in plant cells, 208*f*
  polyribosomes and, 355*f*
  regulation of degradation of, 379
  synthesis of, in cell signaling, 226*f*
  synthesis of, in eukaryotic cell nucleus, 102
  synthesis of, in transcription, 342, 343*f*–344*f*
  in transcription and translation, 337, 339*f*
  in translation, 347*f*–350*f*, 352*f*
  viral, 401*f*, 402, 405*f*, 406*t*
Metabolic defects, 336*f*–338*f*
Metabolic pathways, **144**. *See also* Metabolism
  evolution of, 163
  metabolic defects in, 336*f*–338*f*
  regulation of bacterial, 366*f*
Metabolic rates, **890***f*–893*f*
Metabolism, **144**. *See also* Bioenergetics
  ATP energy coupling of exergonic and endergonic reactions in, 150, 151*f*–153*f*
  bioenergetics and metabolic rates of animal, 890*f*–893*f*
  catabolism and, 182*f*, 183
  effects of adrenal hormones on, 1012*f*, 1013–1014
  enzymatic catalysis of reactions in. *See* Enzymatic catalysis
  evolution of hormones regulating, 1016
  forms of energy for, 144, 145*f*
  free-energy change, equilibrium, and, 147, 148*f*–150*f*
  graphing reactions of, 157
  laws of thermodynamics and, 145*f*–146*f*, 147
  metabolic pathways of, 144
  nitrogenous wastes and, 983
  osmoregulation and, 980
  prokaryotic, 581*t*, 582*f*, 587
  protocell, 527, 528*f*
  radioactive tracers in research on, 31–32
  regulation of cellular respiration and, 183*f*, 184
  role of enzymes as catalysts in, 75, 76*f*
  thermogenesis in animal, 887*f*–888*f*
  thyroid regulation of, 1009, 1015*f*
Metabotropic receptors, 1080
Metagenomics, **444**, 583
Metamorphosis, **674**
  amphibian, 732*f*
  frog, 1015*f*
  insect, 711*f*, 1006*f*, 1007
  lancelet, 720
  tunicate, 721
Metanephridium, 699*f*, 704*f*, **985***f*
Metaphase (mitosis), **237**, 239*f*, 243*f*, 252, 263*f*, 331*f*
Metaphase chromosomes, 331*f*–332*f*
Metaphase I, 260*f*, 263*f*
Metaphase II, 261*f*
Metaphase plate, 239*f*–**240***f*, 262
Metapopulations, **1206***f*, 1207
Metastasis, **249***f*, 447–448
Metazoans (Metazoa), 682, 683*f*, 684
Meteorites, 527
Methamphetamine, 62
Methane
  carbon and bonds in, 59*f*
  combustion of, as redox reaction, 166*f*
  covalent bonding in, 37*f*
  molecular shape of, 39*f*, 40
Methanogens, **585**–586
Methanosarcina barkeri, 448*t*
Methicillin, 478*f*
Methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA), 214, 478*f*, 574, 589*f*, 590
Methionine, 77*f*, 341*f*
Methods, research. *See* Research Method Figures
Methylated compounds, 63*f*
Methylation, DNA, **371**, 372*f*, 373, 391, 430
Methyl group, 63*f*
Methyl jasmonate, 855
Methylsalicylic acid, 867*f*
Mexico, 1208
MHC (major histocompatibility complex) molecule, **959***f*–960*f*, 963, 964*f*, 969–970
Mice. *See* Mouse
Microarray analysis, 392*f*
Microarray chips, human genome, 448*f*
Microbial diversity, 1223*f*
Microbiomes, **912**, 913*f*
Microcephaly, 409
Microclimate, **1169**–1170
Microevolution, **487**, **507**. *See also* Evolution
  adaptive evolution by natural selection in, 497, 498*f*–503*f*, 504
  alteration of allele frequencies by natural selection, genetic drift, and gene flow in, 493, 494*f*–497*f*
  genetic variation and, 487*f*–488*f*, 489
  populations as smallest units of, 486*f*–487*f*
  of sickle-cell disease, 503*f*
  speciation as conceptual bridge between macroevolution and, 507, 523. *See also* Macroevolution
  using Hardy-Weinberg equation to test, 489, 490*f*–491*f*, 492*t*, 493
Microfibrils
  cellulose, 777*f*
  in plant cell walls, 118
  in structural polysaccharides, 70*f*
Microfilaments, **115**
  animal cell, 100*f*
  in animal cytokinesis, 241, 242*f*
  cytoskeleton structure and function and, 113*t*
  in morphogenesis, 1056*f*
  plant cell, 101*f*
  structure and function of, 115, 116*f*–117*f*
Microglia, 1090*f*
Micronuclei, ciliate, 606, 607*f*
Micronutrients, plant, **810**, 811*t*
Microphylls, **631***f*
Microplastics, 1163, **1277**
Micropyles, **647**, 826
MicroRNAs (miRNAs), **380***f*, 391, 678
Microscopy, 94*f*–95*f*, 96
Microsporangia, 638*f*, 826
Microspores, **631**, 638*f*, **826**, 827*f*
Microsporidians, 660*f*–**661***f*
Microsporocytes, 826
Microtubule-organizing center, 240
Microtubules, **114**
  in animal cell, 100*f*
  in cell division, 238*f*–241*f*, 244*f*
  centrosomes, centrioles, and, 114*f*
  cilia, flagella, and, 114, 115*f*–116*f*
  cytoskeleton structure and function and, 113*t*
  in plant cell, 101*f*
  structure and function of, 114*f*–116*f*
Microvilli, 98–99, 100*f*, 116*f*, 695*f*, **909***f*, 910
Midbrain, 1085, **1091***f*–1092*f*
Middle ear, **1113***f*
Middle lamella, **118**
Midrib, 761
Mifepristone (RU486), 1039
Migration, **1140**

electromagnetic receptors and, 1111*f*
as fixed action pattern, 1140, 1141*f*
genetic variation in patterns of, 1156, 1157*f*
movement corridors and, 1271*f*, 1272
Milk, mammalian, 741–742, 743*f*, 1005*f*–1008*f*, 1016
Milk duct, 392*f*
Milkweed, 645*f*, 653
Miller, Stanley, 57*f*, 58, 526*f*
Millipedes, 708, 709*f*
Mimic octopus, 1219*f*
Mimicry
endorphin, 1081
molecular, 40*f*, 78
in prey and predator adaptations, 1218*f*–1219*f*, 1237
as prey defensive adaptation, 868*f*
Mimivirus, 408
Mimosa pudica, 802, 862*f*
Mimulus species, 522*f*
Mineralized dental elements, 724*f*, 725
Mineralized organic matter, 529*f*
Mineralocorticoids, 1004*f*, 1012*f*, **1014**
Minerals, 899*f*, **900**, 901*t*
deficiencies of, in plants, 810, 811*t*, 812
mineralocorticoids and metabolism of, 1014
mycorrhizae and plant deficiencies of, 818
root architecture and acquisition of, 787
roots interaction with, 10*f*, 11
transpiration of, from roots to shoots via xylem, 792, 793*f*–795*f*, 796
vascular plant transport of, 787, 788*f*–791*f*
Mines, restoration of, 1253*f*
Miniaturization, gametophyte, 637*f*, 638
Minimal medium, 336*f*–338*f*
Minimum viable population (MVP), **1268**
Minnows, 1143*f*, 1276
Mirounga angustirostris, 999*f*, 1267
Miscarriages, 306, 1039
Misfolding, protein, 83
Mismatch repairs, **327**
Missense mutations, **357**, 358*f*
Mississippi River, 1275*f*
Mistletoe, 819*f*
Mitchell, Peter, 177
Mites, 707, 708*f*
Mitochondria, **109**
animal cell, 100*f*
animal hibernation and, 178
in apoptosis, 230*f*, 231
ATP synthase and, 186
chemical energy conversion by, 109–110, 111*f*
chemiosmosis in, 175, 176*f*, 177, 199*f*–200*f*, 201
dinitrophenol and, 186
electron transport chains in, 168–169
endosymbiotic origin of, 534, 535*f*
enzymes in, 161*f*
evolutionary origins of, 109, 110*f*
fungal cell, 100*f*
inheritance of genes of, 311
origin of, in endosymbiosis, 595, 596*f*–597*f*
plant cell, 101*f*, 209*f*
protist, 594
pyruvate in, 171*f*
using cell fractionation to study, 97
Mitochondria DNA (mtDNA)
evolutionary rate of, 565
species identity in, 557*f*
Mitochondrial matrix, **110**
Mitochondrial myopathy, 311
Mitosis, **236**. *See also* Cell cycle*;* Cell division
in animal cells, 238*f*–239*f*
in chromatin packing, 332*f*
in daughter cells, 234
evolution of, 243, 244*f*
in human life cycle, 257*f*, 258
information in, 252
meiosis vs., 262, 263*f*, 264
nuclear envelope during, 252
origin of term for, 237
in plant cells, 241, 242*f*–243*f*
in spermatogenesis, 1042
in varieties of sexual life cycles, 258*f*, 259
Mitosomes, 600*f*
Mitotic (M) phase, **237***f*
Mitotic spindles, **240***f*–241*f*
Mixotrophs, **594**
Mobile genetic elements, evolution of viruses and, 408
Mobile River basin, 1264
Model organisms, **22**, **1044**. *See also Drosophila melanogaster; Escherichia coli* bacteria
Arabidopsis thaliana, 22, 774, 776*f*, 783
bread mold. *See Neurospora crassa*
Caenorhabditis elegans, 22, 705
in developmental biology, 1044
for DNA research, 316*f*, 317
mouse (*Mus musculus*), 22. *See also* Mouse
Neurospora crassa, 664*f*, 665*t*
scientific cooperation and, 22–23
for T. Morgan's experiments, 295*f*
Models
atomic, 30*f*
community disturbance, 1228, *1229f*
of covalent bonds, 36, 37*f*
electron orbital, 35*f*
exponential population growth, 1196, 1197*f*, 1207*f*, 1208
island equilibrium, 1232, 1233*f*
logistic population growth, 1197, 1198*f*–1199*f*, 1198*t*, 1200
molecular-shape, 39*f*
optimal foraging, 1149*f*
process of science, 19*f*
testing hypotheses with quantitative in Scientific Skills Exercise, 1150
Modified leaves, 762*f*
Modified roots, 760*f*
Modified stems, 761*f*
Mojica, Francisco, 253
Molarity, **50**
Molar mass, 50
Molar ratios in Scientific Skills Exercise, 58
Mold model organism. *See Neurospora crassa*
Molds, **658***f*–659*f*, 662*f*, 663
Molecular basis of inheritance
chromatin packing of DNA and proteins in eukaryotic chromosomes, 330*f*–332*f*
discovery of double helix structure of DNA in, 314*f*, 317, 318*f*–320*f*
DNA replication and repair in. *See* DNA replication
evidence for DNA as genetic material in, 315*f*–317*f*, 318
evolution of gene concept from, 361
Molecular biology
Arabidopsis thaliana as model organism for, 774, 776*f*
determination of microbial diversity using, 1223*f*
importance of viruses to, 400
measures of evolution in, 87, 89
mutants in, 845
of plant development, 775*f*–780*f*
Molecular clocks, **566**, 567*f*–568*f*, 659*f*, 660
Molecular formulas, 36, 37*f*, 59*f*
Molecular genetics, in ecological forensics, 1265*f*
Molecular genetic variation, 487, 488*f*
Molecular homologies, 479–480, 558, 559*f*
Molecular identification tags, 107
Molecular-level herbivore defenses, plant, 868*f*
Molecular mass, **50**
Molecular recognition, immune system, 953, 957*f*
Molecular systematics, 563*f*, 583, 682, 683*f*, 684. *See also* Cladistics*;* Systematics*;* Taxonomy
Molecular tags, 332*f*
Molecules, **5***f*, **36**. *See also* Compounds
biological. *See* Biological molecules
chemical bonds and formation of. *See* Chemical bonds
as level of biological organization, 5*f*
organic. *See* Organic compounds
origin of self-replicating, 526*f*–528*f*
regulation of interactions of, 10*f*
shape and function of, 39*f*–40*f*, 59*f*
structure of DNA and RNA, 7*f*–8*f*
Moles, 1107*f*–1108*f*
Moles (animal), 558*f*, 559
Moles (mol), **50**, 58
Molluscs, 688*f*
bivalves, 699, 701*f*–702*f*
body plan of, 699*f*
cephalopods, 699, 701*f*, 702
chitons, 699*f*
in Ediacaran period, 535*f*, 536
eye complexity in, 547*f*–548*f*
gastropods, 542, 699, 700*f*–701*f*, 702
nervous systems of, 1086*f*
protecting freshwater and terrestrial, from extinction, 702*f*
Moloch horridus, 737*f*
Molothrus ater, 1271, 1287
Molting (ecdysis), 683–684, **705**, 707, 894*f*
Monarch butterflies (*Danaus plexippus*), 839, 1146*f*
Monera kingdom, 568
Monilophytes, **622**, 622*t*
Monkey flowers, 522*f*, 834
Monkeys, 56*f*, 87, 89, 746*f*–747*f*, 1122*f*. *See also* Chimpanzees
Monocilia, 1064
Monoclonal antibodies, **969**
Monocots, **649***f*–650*f*, 761, 769*f*–770*f*, 829*f*–830*f*
Monocytes, 934*f*–935*f*
Monod, Jacques, 366
Monogamous mating, 1024, **1149**–1150, 1151*f*
Monoglycerides, 910*f*
Monohybrid crosses, **274**
Monohybrids, **274**
Monomers, **67***f*
Monophyletic groups, **560***f*
Monosaccharides, **68***f*–69*f*
Monosodium glutamate, 1123
Monosomic cells, **307**
Monosomy X, 309
Monotremes, 543*f*, **742**, 743*f*, 745*f*
Monozygotic twins, 1036, 1061
Monterey County, California, 614*f*
Montmorillonite clay, 527, 528*f*
Montreal Protocol, 1284
Moon jelly, 922*f*
Moose, 1205*f*
Moray eel (*Gymnothorax dovii*), 729*f*, 1214*f*
Morels, **663***f*, 670
Morgan, Thomas Hunt, 295*f*–296*f*, 301*f*–303*f*, 315
Mormon tea, 642*f*
Morning-after birth control pills, 1038*f*
Morning sickness, 65, 1036
Morphine, 40*f*, 78
Morphogenesis, 381–**382**, **1049**. *See also* Embryonic development*;* Pattern formation
apoptosis in, 1056–1057
cytoskeletons in, 1056*f*–1057*f*
developmental adaptations of amniotes in, 1053*f*, 1054
gastrulation in, 1044, 1049, 1050*f*–1053*f*
organogenesis in, 1044, 1049, 1054*f*–1055*f*
plant development and, 776–777, 778*f*
Morphogen gradients, 386
Morphogens, **386***f*–387*f*
Morphological homologies, 558
Morphological isolation, 508*f*
Morphological species concept, **510**
Morphology
animal phylogeny and, 682, 683*f*, 684
fungal, 655*f*–656*f*
macroevolution of, 544*f*–546*f*, 547
species concepts and, 507
Mortality rates. *See* Deaths
Morton, Michael, 24*f*
Mosaicism, 300*f*
Mosquitoes, 409, 412*f*, 485, 496, 503*f*, 518, 606*f*, 712*f*, 713
Mosquitofish (*Gambusia hubbsi*), 511*f*, 512
Mosquito larva, 342*f*
Mosses, 621*f*, **623**, 624*f*–627*f*, 628, 635, 637*f*. *See also* Bryophytes
Mossy leaf-tailed gecko, 26
Moths, 43, 476*f*, 551, 712*f*, 717, 824*f*, 1001, 1006*f*, 1007, 1110, 1111*f*
Motile cilia, 1064
Motility, prokaryotic, 576*f*, 577
Motor, flagellum, 576*f*, 577
Motor areas, cerebral cortex, 1096
Motor cortex, 1097*f*, 1098
Motor neurons, 1068, 1069*f*, **1088***f*, 1128, 1129*f*–1130*f*
Motor output stage, 1068*f*
Motor proteins, 76*f*, **113***f*, 115, 116*f*, 123*f*, 152*f*, 241*f*, 252
Motor systems, **1088**
cardiac and smooth muscle in, 1131–1132
muscle function in, 1125, 1126*f*–1131*f*, 1132
sensory systems and, 1107*f*–1108*f*. *See also* Sensory systems
skeletal muscle contraction in, 1127*f*–1131*f*
skeletal systems and locomotion in, 1132*f*–1135*f*, 1136

Motor unit, **1130***f*
Mountain lions, 1149
Mountain pine beetles (*Dendroctonus ponderosae*), 1244*f*, 1245, 1280*f*
Mountains, 1168, 1169*f*
Mount Kilimanjaro, 1189
Mount St. Helens, 636*f*, 637
Mouse (mice), 22
  agouti gene and, 372*f*
  appetite regulation in, 918
  brains of, 1086*f*
  comparing human genome with genome of, 454, 455*f*, 460*f*–462*f*
  complete genome sequence for, 454, 455*f*
  density-dependent population regulation of, 1204*f*
  energy budgets of, 892
  FOXP2 gene evolution in, 461, 462*f*
  genomic imprinting of insulin-like growth factor gene of, 310*f*, 311
  homeotic genes in, 463*f*
  as model organisms. *See Mus musculus*
  modes of natural selection in, 498*f*
  osmotic homeostasis in desert, 981
  paw development of, 231*f*
  transfer of genetic trait between bacterial strains in, 315*f*
Mouse (*Peromyscus polionotus*), camouflage case studies with, 2*f*, 20*f*–21*f*, 23
Mouse model organism, 22
Mouth formation, 1050*f*
Movement, prokaryotic, 576*f*, 577
Movement corridors, **1271***f*, 1272
MPF (maturation-promoting factor), **245**, 246*f*
mPGES-1 gene, 376
MRSA, 214, 478*f*
Mucoromycetes, 660*f*, **663***f*
Mucous cells, 907*f*
Mucus, **906**, 907*f*, 954
Mucus escalator, 943
Mule deer, 871, 1149
Mules, 509*f*
Muller, Hermann, 360
Müllerian mimicry, 1218*f*, **1219**
Multicellular asexual reproduction, 255*f*
Multicellular organisms, 5*f*, 93, 533*f*, 535*f*–536*f*, 675*f*–676*f*
Multienzyme complexes, 161
Multifactorial characters, **282***f*
Multifactorial disorders, human, 287
Multigene families, 452, **453***f*
Multiple fruits, **831***f*
Multiple myeloma, 65
Multiple sclerosis, 971
Multiplication rule, **277***f*, 278
Multiprotein complexes, 174*f*, 175
Mumps, 409
Murchison meteorite, 527
Muscardinus avellanarius, 893*f*
Muscle
  cardiac and smooth, 1131–1132
  contraction of, 1126, 1127*f*, 1128
  regulation of contraction of, 1128, 1129*f*–1130*f*
  skeletal. *See* Skeletal muscle
Muscle cells, 117*f*, 383, 384*f*, 673, 915
Muscle fibers, 879*f*, 1130, 1131*t*
Muscle tissue, **879***f*
Muscular dystrophy, 299, 433
Mushrooms, 654*f*, 655, 665*f*–667*f*, 670. *See also* Fungi
Mus musculus (mouse), 22. *See also* Mouse
Mussels, 505, 701*f*, 702*f*, 1264
Mustard plant model organism. *See Arabidopsis thaliana*
Mutagens, **360**
Mutant phenotypes, 295*f*–296*f*
Mutants
  designing experiments using genetic, 1095
  interpreting data from experiments with genetic, 918
  in molecular biology, 845
  nutritional, in gene-enzyme relationship experiment, 336*f*–338*f*
Mutations, **357***f*
  in alterations of chromosome structure, 454*f*–455*f*
  in aquaporins causing diabetes insipidus, 995*f*
  in cancer development, 391*f*, 394
  cancer genes and, 388, 389*f*
  cellular slime mold, 613
  CRISPR-Cas9 and gene editing for, 426, 434–435
  of developmental genes, 545*f*–546*f*
  in duplication and divergence of gene-sized regions, 455*f*–457*f*
  in duplication of entire chromosome sets, 454
  effects of, during cell division, 389*f*–390*f*
  as embryonic lethals, 386
  as errors in proofreading, 327
  evolution and rate of, 334
  evolution of enzymes by, 159*f*
  in exon duplication and exon shuffling, 456, 457*f*
  in flowering, 779*f*–780*f*
  gene editing to correct, 360, 361*f*
  genetic variation from, 305*f*–306*f*
  genome evolution and, 454*f*–457*f*, 458–459
  Hardy-Weinberg equilibrium and, 492*t*
  of ion channel protein genes, 1076
  in mitochondrial DNA, 311
  molecular clock speed and, 566, 567*f*
  mutagens as cause of, 360
  natural selection and, 328
  nucleotide-pair substitutions, insertions, and deletions, 357, 358*f*, 359
  phenotypes and, 295*f*–296*f*, 306*f*
  plants and creation of, in molecular biology, 776
  point mutations, 357*f*–358*f*, 359
  in prokaryotes, 573, 578–579
  as source of alleles, 265
  as sources of genetic variation, 488–489
  transposable elements and, 459
  of viruses, 409, 414
Mutualism, **587**, **1220**, 1256*f*–1257*f*
  bacterial, 587*f*
  in flower pollination, 825*f*
  fungal, 655, 661*f*, 667*f*–669*f*. *See also* Mycorrhizae
  as interspecific interaction, 1220*f*, 1221
  across kingdoms and domains, 813*f*
  mycorrhizae as plant-fungi, 787, 817, 818*f*
  nutrient limitations and, 1244
  plant-bacteria, 813*f*–816*f*, 817
  in vertebrate digestive systems, 912, 913*f*–914*f*
Myasthenia gravis, 1129
Mycelium (mycelia), 655*f*–659*f*, **656**, 662*f*
Mycetozoans, 612*f*–613*f*
Mycobacterium tuberculosis, 589, 957
Mycorrhizae, **656**, **787**, **817**
  basidiomycetes in, 665
  biological augmentation using, 1255
  in colonization of land by plants, 536, 537*f*
  evolution of, 660
  genomic analysis of interactions of, 657
  as mutualism, 1220–1221
  nutrient limitations and, 1244
  plant nutrition and, 817, 818*f*
  plant roots and, 760
  as root-fungi mutualism, 787
  specialized hyphae in, 656*f*, 657
  strigolactones and, 855
  terrestrial plants and, 621
Mycorrhizal associations, 760
Mycosis, **670**
Myelination, 1076*f*–1077*f*
Myelin sheath, **1076***f*–1077*f*
Myeloid stem cells, 935*f*
Myllokunmingia fengjiaoa, 718*f*, 724
Myoblasts, 383, 384*f*
Myocardial infarctions, 937*f*, 938–939
MyoD activator, 374*f*
myoD gene, 383, 384*f*
Myofibrils, **1126***f*
Myoglobin, **949**, **1130**, 1131*t*
Myopathy, 311
Myosin, 76*f*, **117**, 241, 384*f*, 879*f*
Myosin filaments, 1125, 1126*f*–1127*f*
Myotonia, 1034, 1076
Myriapods, **707**–708, 709*f*
Myrmecocystus, 485
Mytilus edulis, 505
Myxini (hagfishes), 719*f*, 723*f*
Myxobacteria, 213*f*
Myxococcus xanthus, 213*f*

N

NAD$^+$ (nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide), **167***f*–168*f*, 172*f*–173*f*, 178, 180*f*, 181
NADH, 172*f*–173*f*, 178, 180*f*, 181
NADP$^+$ (nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide phosphate), **191***f*, 192, 206, 207*f*
NADPH, **191***f*, 192, 197*f*–198*f*, 206, 207*f*
Naked mole rats, 1157*f*, 1158
Naloxone, 1082
Nanopores, 416
Nasal glands, marine bird, 982*f*
Nash, John, 1154
National Cancer Institute, 447
National Center for Biotechnology Information (NCBI), 444, 445*f*
National Institutes of Health (NIH), 444, 447
National Library of Medicine (NLM), 444
National Medal of Science, 944
Native Americans, 565
Natural family planning, 1037, 1038*f*
Natural killer (NK) cells, **955**
Natural logarithms in Scientific Skills Exercise, 639
Natural plastics, 590, 591*f*
Natural range expansions, 1183, 1184*f*
Natural selection, **14**, **473**. *See also* Adaptations; Evolution
  adaptations and, 472, 473*f*
  adaptive evolution and, 494
  Darwinian theory of descent with modification by, 14*f*–16*f*, 469–470, 473*f*–476*f*, 483–484
  of developmental genes, 545
  directional, disruptive, and stabilizing selection in, 497, 498*f*
  of ecological niches, 1215, 1216*f*
  evolution of drug resistance by, 478*f*
  evolution of enzymes by, 159*f*
  in evolution of life history traits, 1200, 1201*f*–1202*f*
  genetic variation for, from genetic recombination, 305
  Hardy-Weinberg equilibrium and, 492*t*
  insect evolution by, due to food source changes, 477*f*, 478
  key role of, in adaptive evolution, 498, 499*f*
  limitations of, in creating perfect organisms, 501*f*, 504
  in macroevolution, 551
  mutations and, 328
  predator role in, 26
  relative fitness and, 497
  of ribozymes, 528
  sexual reproduction, genetic variation, and, 266, 267*f*
  species selection as, 548–549
Natural vs. supernatural explanations, 18
Nature reserves
  philosophy of, 1272–1273
  zoned reserves and, 1273*f*
Nature vs. nurture, 282*f*, 762
Nautilus, chambered, 701*f*, 702
ncRNAs, 379, 380*f*, 381
Neanderthals (*Homo neanderthalensis*), 33, 88*f*, 461, 752*f*–753*f*
Near vision, 1122*f*
Nectar guides, 824*f*
Nectaries, 813*f*
Nectarine, 645*f*
Negative and positive correlations, 834
Negative feedback, **882**, **1005**
  in density-dependent population growth, 1203
  in endocrine system feedback regulation, 1005–1006
  in feedback regulation, 10*f*
  in homeostasis, 882
Negative gene regulation, bacterial, 369
Negative gravitropism, 861
Negative pressure breathing, **945***f*, 946
Neisseria gonorrhoeae, 576, 584*f*
Nematocysts, **691**, 692*f*
Nematode model organism. *See Caenorhabditis elegans*
Nematodes, 689*f*, 705*f*, 706, 1058*f*–1059*f*, 1133*f*
Nemertea, 688*f*
Nemoria arizonaria, 488*f*
Neodenticula seminae (diatom), 1170
Neon, 35*f*
Neonatal diabetes, 359
Neoproterozoic era, 530*f*, 676*f*–677*f*
Neornithes, 739
NEP. *See* Net ecosystem production
Nephrons, **986***f*

Bowman's capsule in, 987*f*
evolution adaptations of, 991*f*–992*f*
processing of blood filtrate to urine by, 987, 988*f*, 989
solute gradients and water conservation in, 989, 990*f*, 991
structure of mammalian kidneys and, 986*f*–987*f*
Nereimyra punctata, 703*f*
Neritic zones, **1182***f*
Nernst equation, 1071*f*
Nerodia sipedon, 496, 497*f*
Nerve cells, 673
Nerve cord, 710*f*, 720*f*, 722*f*
Nerve gas, 1081
Nerve nets, 692, 1086*f*
Nerves, **1086**
Nervous systems, **880**, **1000**. *See also* Central nervous system; Peripheral nervous system
cerebral cortex control of voluntary movement and cognitive functions in, 1096, 1097*f*–1099*f*
disorders of, 1102*f*–1104*f*
endocrine system coordination with, 1000*f*, 1001, 1006*f*–1008*f*
faulty apoptosis in diseases of human, 231
genome and, 1106
Huntington's disease and, 287
long-distance cell signaling in, 215*f*, 216
memory, learning, and changes of synaptic connections in, 1099, 1100*f*–1101*f*
neurons and cell signaling in, 880*f*. *See also* Neurons
organization of, 1086*f*, 1087
regulation of blood pressure by, 931
regulation of digestion by, 915
regulation of heart rhythm by, 928
regulation of human breathing by, 946*f*
regulation of skeletal muscle contraction by, 1128, 1129*f*, 1130
research methods for studying brains and, 1085*f*
synaptic and neuroendocrine signaling of, 1000*f*, 1001. *See also* Neuroendocrine signaling
vertebrate, 1087*f*–1090*f*
vertebrate brain in, 1091*f*–1096*f*
Nervous tissue, **879***f*
Nests
of birds and dinosaurs, 564*f*, 565
red-cockaded woodpecker, 1269*f*–1270*f*
Net ecosystem production (NEP), **1242**
climate change effects on, 1244*f*, 1245
Net primary production (NPP), **1241**, 1242*f*, 1259
climate change effects on, 1244*f*, 1245
in terrestrial ecosystems, 1243*f*–1244*f*, 1245
Neural crest, **722**, 723*f*, 1054*f*, **1055**
Neural pathways, 1121*f*
Neural plate, 1054*f*
Neural tube birth defects, human, 902*f*
Neural tubes, 1054*f*, **1055**
Neuraminidase, 410, 414
Neurodegenerative diseases, 413
Neuroendocrine signaling. *See also* Endocrine systems; Nervous systems
coordination of endocrine and nervous systems in, 1000*f*, 1001, 1006*f*–1008*f*
endocrine glands and hormones for, 1004*f*
feedback regulation in of, 1005–1006
invertebrate, 1006*f*, 1007
simple pathway of, 1005*f*
vertebrate, 1007*f*–1008*f*
Neurofibrillary tangles, 1104*f*
Neurohormones, 1000*f*, **1001**, *1005f*–1007*f*
Neuromuscular junctions, 1080
Neuronal plasticity, **1100***f*
Neurons, **879***f*, **1068**
action potentials of, as signals conducted by axons, 1072*f*–1077*f*
in cell signaling by animal nervous systems, 880*f*
chemical and electrical signals of, 1067*f*, 1068
communication between cells and, at synapses, 1077, 1078*f*–1080*f*, 1081*t*, 1082
exocytosis and, 139
in human eye, 1118*f*
ion pumps, ion channels, and resting potential of, 1070*f*–1071*f*
in nervous systems, 1085*f*, 1086, 1088*f*, 1089. *See also* Nervous systems
in neuroendocrine signaling, 1000*f*, 1001
olfactory, 1124, 1125*f*
organization of, 1084
plasticity of, in memory and learning, 1099, 1100*f*–1101*f*
in sensory reception, 1108*f*–1109*f*
structure and function of, in information transfer, 1068*f*–1069*f*
Neuropathy, 311
Neuropeptides, **1081***t*
Neurospora crassa (bread mold), 336*f*–338*f*, 664*f*, 665*t*
Neurotransmitters, **1001**, **1068**
as chemical messengers of neurons, 1068
exocytosis and, 139
mechanisms of terminating, 1080*f*
synaptic signaling by, 1077, 1078*f*, 1080
types of, 1080–1082, 1081*t*
Neurulation, 1054*f*, 1055
Neutralization, 965*f*
Neutral mutations, 567
Neutral variation, **489**
Neutrons, **30***f*, 31
Neutrophils, 934*f*–935*f*, **955***f*
Newborn screening, 289–290
New Caledonian crows, 1099
New Guinea, 742
Newton, Isaac, 22
Newts, 7*f*, 238*f*–239*f*
New World monkeys, 746*f*–747*f*
New York City, Catskill Mountain purchase by, 1263
New Zealand, restoration projects in, 1254*f*
Next-generation DNA sequencing, 415*f*–417*f*, 443*f*
Nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide (NAD^+), **167***f*–168*f*, 172*f*–173*f*, 178, 180*f*, 181
Nicotinamide adenine dinucleotide phosphate ($NADP^+$), **191***f*, 192, 206, 207*f*
Nicotine, 1080, 1103*f*, 1220
Night length, flowering and, 859*f*, 860
Nirenberg, Marshall, 341
Nitrates, 1275*f*
deforestation effects on, 1252*f*
in nitrogen cycle, 1251*f*
Nitric oxide (NO), 220, 224, 931, **1001**, 1026, 1081*t*, 1082
Nitrification, 815*f*
Nitrifying bacteria, 815*f*, 1251*f*
Nitrite, in nitrogen cycle, 1251*f*
Nitrogen
algal blooms and, 1242, 1243*f*
bacteria in plant acquisition of, 814*f*–816*f*, 817
bryophyte reduction of leaching of, from soil, 627*f*
as essential element, 29*t*, 64
as limiting nutrient, 1242, 1243*f*, 1243*t*, 1244
nutrient enrichment and pollution by, 1275*f*
in organic compounds, 59*f*
prokaryotic chemical recycling of, 586
soil, in ecological succession, 1230, 1231*f*
soil fertilization and, 805, 808
Nitrogen cycle, **815***f*, 821, 1251*f*, 1257*f*
Nitrogen fixation, **582**, 586, **815***f*
bacterial, 814*f*–816*f*, 817, 821, 1244
biological augmentation using, 1255
bryophyte, 626*f*, 627
forest floor moss and, 635
lichens and, 668–669
in nitrogen cycle, 1251*f*
prokaryotic, 582, 592
Nitrogenous bases, 84, 85*f*, 317*f*, 318. *See also* Nucleotides
Nitrogenous wastes, 977–978, 982*f*–983*f*
Nitrogen oxide emissions, 1266
NMDA receptors, 1101*f*
NO (nitric oxide), 220, 224, 931, **1001**, 1026, 1081*t*, 1082
Nobel Prize winners
B. Marshall and R. Warren, 912
B. McClintock, 451
C. Nüsslein-Volhard, E. Wieschaus, and E. Lewis, 386
for discovery of ncRNAs, 380
for discovery of Toll receptor in insects, 954
E. Sutherland, 216
F. Jacob, 547
F. Sanger, 416
G. Beadle and E. Tatum, 337
H. zur Hausen, 974
J. Gurdon and S. Yamanaka, 430, 432
J. Hall, M. Rosbash, and M. Young, 883
J. Watson, F. Crick, and M. Wilkins, 320
N. Tinbergen, 1140
P. Mitchell, 177
R. Axel and L. Buck, 1124
S. Brenner, R. Horvitz, and J. Sulston, 1058–1059
S. Prusiner, 413
Nociceptors, **1111**–1112
Nodes, lymph, 933*f*
Nodes, plant stem, **761**
Nodes of Ranvier, **1076***f*–1077*f*
Nodules, **816***f*, 817
Nomarski microscopy, 95*f*
Nonbreeding adults, territoriality and, 1204*f*
Noncoding DNA, 449, 450*f*–451*f*, 452
Noncoding RNAs (ncRNAs), 379, 380*f*, 381
Noncompetitive inhibitors, **158**, 159*f*
Nondisjunction, **307***f*, 309
Nonequilibrium model, community, **1228**
Nonheritable variation, 488*f*
Nonidentical DNA sequences, 453*f*
Non-insulin-dependent diabetes, 917
Nonkinetochore microtubules, 238*f*, 240*f*, 241, 252
Non-native species, 1264*f*
Nonpolar covalent bonds, **37**
Nonpolar side chains, 76, 77*f*
Nonrenewable resources, human population size and, 1210*f*, 1211
Nonsense mutations, **358***f*, 359
Nonshivering thermogenesis, 887*f*
Nonsister chromatids, 257*f*, 262, 264, 266*f*
Nonspontaneous processes, 146
Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs), 1013–1014
Nonsteroid hormones, 376
Nontemplate DNA strand, 340*f*
Nonvascular plants. *See* Bryophytes
Norepinephrine (noradrenaline), 1004*f*, **1012***f*–1013*f*, 1081*t*
Nori, 609*f*, 610
Normal range, homeostatic, 882
North America, 743–744
North Atlantic Subtropical Gyre, 1168*f*
Northern coniferous forests, **1175***f*
Northern red maple tree leaves, 762
Northern white rhinoceros (*Ceratotherium simum cottoni*), 1266
North Pacific Subtropical Gyre, 1168*f*
Nosema ceranae, 661
Notation system, gene, 295
No-till agriculture, **809**
Notochords, **720***f*, **1054***f*, 1055
Novelties, evolutionary, 547, 548*f*
NPP. *See* Net primary production
N-terminus, 78*f*, 352, 371*f*
Nucifraga columbiana, 1146
Nuclear envelopes, 100*f*–101*f*, **102**, 103*f*, 109*f*, 252, 332, 339*f*, 355
Nucleariids, 614, **659**
Nuclear lamina, **102**, 103*f*, 117, 332
Nuclear magnetic resonance (NMR) spectroscopy, 83
Nuclear matrix, 102, 326, 332
Nuclear responses, cell-signaling, 226*f*
Nuclear transplantation, animal cloning and, 428, 429*f*–430*f*
Nucleases, **327**
Nucleic acid hybridization, **416**
Nucleic acid probes, **423**, 433
Nucleic acids, **84**. *See also* DNA; RNA
components of, 84, 85*f*
digestion of, 908*f*
genes, nucleotides, and, 84*f*. *See also* Genes
as genetic material, 315. *See also* DNA
as macromolecules, 66
as nucleotide polymers, 85
roles of, in gene expression, 84*f*. *See also* Gene expression
separating, with gel electrophoresis, 420*f*
structures of molecules of, 86*f*
viral, 400, 401*f*–407*f*, 406*t*
Nucleoids, **97***f*, **577**
Nucleolus, 100*f*–101*f*, **102**, 103*f*
Nucleomorphs, 597*f*
Nucleosides, 84, 85*f*
Nucleoside triphosphates, 324
Nucleosomes, **330***f*

Nucleotide excision repairs, **327**, 328*f*
Nucleotide-pair insertions and deletions, 358*f*
Nucleotide-pair substitutions, **357**, 358*f*
Nucleotides, **84**. *See also* Nucleic acids
  coding and noncoding, 345*f*–347*f*
  as components of nucleic acids, 84, 85*f*
  in DNA-sequencing techniques, 415*f*–417*f*
  DNA vs. RNA, 337
  evolutionary significance of altered DNA, 328
  in genetic code, 7*f*–8*f*, 340*f*–341*f*
  genomics and proteomics in study of, 86, 87*f*
  mutations as base-pair substitutions, insertions, and deletions of, 357, 358*f*, 359
  ratios of, 317*f*, 318
  in telomeres, 328, 329*f*
  variability of, in genetic variation, 488*f*
Nucleus, atomic, **30***f*, 31
Nucleus, cell, **102**
  animal cell, 100*f*
  cell division of, 236, 243, 244*f*. *See also* Cell cycle; Cell division
  cell-signaling responses in, 226*f*
  ciliate types of, 606, 607*f*
  DNA in eukaryotic cell, 97, 102, 103*f*
  fungal cell, 100*f*
  hormone receptors in, 1002*f*–1003*f*
  plant cell, 101*f*
  regulation of gene expression and architecture of, 377, 378*f*
  reproductive cloning by transplantation of eukaryotic, 428, 429*f*–430*f*
Nucleus accumbens, 1096*f*, 1103*f*
Nudibranchs, 700*f*, 1020*f*
Number, offspring, 1200, 1201*f*–1202*f*
Nursing, 1005*f*–1008*f*, 1036
Nurture vs. nature, 282*f*, 762
Nüsslein-Volhard, Christiane, 386, 387*f*
Nutrient cycling. *See also* Energy flow and chemical cycling
  biogeochemical cycles, 1249*f*–1252*f*
  decomposition and nutrient cycling rates in, 1248*f*, 1249
  in Hubbard Brook Experimental Forest, 1252*f*
Nutrient enrichment, global, 1274, 1275*f*
Nutrients
  cycling of. *See* Energy flow and chemical cycling
  enrichment experiments with, 1242, 1243*f*, 1243*t*
  essential, 899*f*, 900*t*–901*t*, 901*f*
  limiting, 1242, 1243*f*–1244*f*, 1243*t*
  plant and animal absorption of, 895*f*
  prokaryotic recycling of, 586*f*
  small intestine and, 125
  uptake of, 898
Nutrition, **899**. *See also* Animal nutrition; Plant nutrition
  essential elements and trace elements for, 29*t*
  Eukarya kingdoms and, 12*f*, 13
  fungal, 655–656
  prokaryotic, 581*t*, 582*f*
  protist, 594
Nymphs, 711

O

Oak Ridge National Laboratory, bioremediation of, 1255*f*
Oak trees, 614*f*, 650*f*, 1201*f*
Obelia, 692*f*–693*f*
Obesity, 372*f*, 917*f*, 918, 1018
ob gene, 918
Object play, 1159
Obligate aerobes, **582**
Obligate anaerobes, **181**, **582**
Observations
  of evolutionary change, 477*f*–478*f*
  scientific, 17*f*, 19*f*
  in Scientific Skills Exercise, 812
Occam's razor, 562
Occipital lobe, 1085, 1097*f*
Ocean acidification, 53*f*, 54–55
Ocean currents, climate and, 1168*f*–1169*f*
Oceanic pelagic zone, **1181***f*
Oceans
  acidification of, 53*f*, 54
  climate and currents of, 1168*f*–1169*f*
  marine benthic zones of, 1182*f*
  as marine biome, 1177*f*, 1178
  moderation of climate by, 47*f*
  pelagic zones of, 1181*f*
  plastic waste in, 1277*f*
  primary production in, 1242, *1243f*, 1243*t*
  tides of, 1181*f*
  trawling of, as community disturbance, 1231*f*
Ocelli, 1117*f*
Ocelloid, 594*f*
Ochotona princeps, 1280*f*
Ocotillo, 799*f*
Octopus, 688*f*, 699, 701*f*, 702, 1219*f*
Odocoileus virginianus, 1271
Odorant receptors (ORs), 1124, 1125*f*
Odorants, **1123**–1124, 1125*f*
Offspring
  life history traits in survival of, 1200, 1201*f*–1202*f*
  survival of, 1023*f*
Oil. *See also* Fossil fuels
  conodonts and, 725
Oil spills, 591*f*. *See also* Fossil fuels
Okazaki fragments, **324**, 325*f*
Old World monkeys, 746*f*–747*f*
Olden, Kenneth, 27
Oleander, 799*f*
Olfaction, **1123**–1124, 1125*f*
Olfactory bulb, 1091*f*, 1095*f*, 1124, 1125*f*
Olfactory receptor genes, human, 489, 566
Oligochaetes, 703
Oligodendrocytes, **1076***f*–1077*f*, 1090*f*
Oligotrophic lakes, **1179***f*
Omasum, 914*f*
Ommatidia, **1117***f*
Omnivores, **901**, 911*f*, 912
Oncogenes, **388**, 389*f*, 391*f*
Oncorhynchus keta, 89
Oncorhynchus kisutch, 89, 1200
Oncorhynchus nerka, 978*f*
One gene–one enzyme hypothesis, 336–337, 338*f*, 665
One gene–one polypeptide hypothesis, 337
One gene–one protein hypothesis, 337
One-shot reproduction, 1200
Onion, 252
On the Origin of Species by Means of Natural Selection (Darwin, C.), 14*f*, 469, 473, 483–484, 487
Onychophorans, 689*f*
Oocytes, **1026**, 1027*f*, 1029*f*
Oogenesis, **1027**, 1029*f*
Oogonia, **1029***f*
Oomycetes, 604*f*
Oparin, A. I., 526
Oparin-Haldane hypothesis, 526
Open circulatory systems, 699*f*, **707**, **923***f*
Open systems, 145, 150*f*
Operant conditioning, 1146
Operators, **366**, 367*f*
Operculum, **728***f*
Operon model, 366
Operons, **367**
  basic concept of, 366, 367*f*
  inducible, 368*f*, 369
  positive gene regulation and, 369*f*, 370
  repressible, 367*f*, 368–369
Ophisaurus apodus, 553*f*–554*f*
Ophiuroidea, 714*f*, 715
Ophrys speculum, 822*f*
Opiates, 40*f*, 78, 1082
Opioids, 1103*f*
Opisthokonts, **613**–614, **659**
Opium poppy, 868*f*
Opossums, 743
Opposable thumb, **744**
Opposite phyllotaxy, 786
Opsin, **1119***f*, 1122
Opsonization, 965*f*
Optic chiasm, 1121*f*
Optic disk, 1118*f*
Optic nerves, 1121*f*
Optic neuropathy, 311
Optimal conditions, enzymatic catalysis, 157, 158*f*
Optimal foraging model, **1149***f*
Oral cavity, **905**, 906*f*, 908*f*
Orangutans, 746*f*–747*f*, 750
Orbitals, electron, **35***f*, 36, 39*f*, 40
Orchid mantis, 468*f*, 469
Orchids, 650*f*, 822*f*, 825*f*
Order, as property of life, 3*f*, 146*f*, 147
Orders, taxonomy, **554**, 555*f*
Ordovician period global climate change, 629
Organelles, **5***f*, **94**
  as enzyme locations, 161*f*
  of eukaryotic cells, 97*f*–101*f*
  inheritance of genes in, 311*f*
  as level of biological organization, 5*f*
  lysosomal digestion of, 107*f*, 108
  plastids in plant cells, 111
  of prokaryotic cells, 97*f*, 98
  using electron microscopy to study, 94
Organic acid, 63*f*
Organic chemistry, **57***f*, 58
Organic compounds. *See also* Biological molecules
  abiotic synthesis of, 57*f*, 58, 526*f*–527*f*
  ATP as, 64
  bonding of carbon atoms in, 58, 59*f*, 60
  carbon in, as backbone of life, 56, 64
  chemical functional groups and, 62*f*–63*f*
  diversity of, 60*f*–62*f*
  organic chemistry as study of, 57*f*, 58
  in plant cells, 209*f*
  working with moles and molar ratios of, 58
Organic fertilizers, 808, 983
Organic phosphate, 63*f*
Organismal cloning
  of animals, 428, 429*f*–430*f*
  of animal stem cells, 428, 430*f*–432*f*
  of plants, 428
Organismal ecology, **1165***f*. *See also* Ecology; Organisms
Organismal-level herbivore defenses, plant, 869*f*
Organisms, **4***f*. *See also* Animals; Fungi; Life; Plants
  acidic and basic conditions affecting, 51, 52*f*–53*f*, 54
  adaptations of, to environments, 468*f*. *See also* Adaptations
  Cambrian explosion in numbers of, 536*f*
  carbon in organic compounds of, 56, 64
  cells as fundamental units of, 6*f*, 93*f*. *See also* Cells
  climate change effects on, 1280*f*
  cloning of. *See* Organismal cloning
  differential gene expression in multicellular. *See* Differential gene expression
  DNA in development of, 7*f*–8*f*
  ecology as interactions between environment and. *See* Ecology
  ecosystem interactions of, 10*f*–11*f*
  effects of continental drift on, 539–540
  effects of sickle-cell disease on, 503*f*
  effects of speciation and extinctions on diversity of, 537*f*
  elemental ratio in, 43
  environment interactions with, 1165, 1178, 1183*f*–1186*f*
  genes shared between, 26
  genomics, bioinformatics, and proteomics in study of genomes of, 9
  geographic distributions of, 539–540
  imperfection of, and evolution, 505
  inherited DNA and development of, 7*f*–8*f*
  interactions of, as theme in biology, 10*f*–11*f*
  as level of biological organization, 4*f*
  model. *See* Model organisms
  multicellular, 5*f*
  as open systems, 145
  origin of mammalian, 530, 531*f*, 532
  origin of multicellular, 533*f*, 535*f*–536*f*
  origin of single-celled, 532*f*–535*f*
  possible effects of transgenic crops on nontarget, 839
  regulation of molecular interactions within, 10*f*
  single-celled, 5*f*
  in topsoil, 807
  transgenic. *See* Transgenic animals; Transgenic plants
Organization
  amino acid structures and, 91
  apoptosis in, 233
  of cell, 6*f*
  chemical waste and, 43
  digestive tracts of invertebrates, 717
  DNA structure and inheritance, 334
  emergent properties of, 4–6
  enantiomer effectiveness and, 65
  flowers as emergent property, 841
  functionality of forms, 551
  of fungi relationships, 672

gastrula emergent properties, 1066
of hair and keratin, 920
of lens of eye, 1138
levels of biological, 4*f*–5*f*
life as emergent property, 125
lignin evolution, 783
in loop of Henle, 998
of neurons, 1084
oxidative phosphorylation and, 186
photosynthesis and shoot architecture, 804
in plant life cycle, 653
sickle-cell disease and, 505
structure and function in, 6
as theme of biology, 2, 3
viral structure and function, 414
of walking and breathing, 756
water as versatile solvent and, 55
Organizer of Spemann and Mangold, 1062*f*
Organ-level herbivore defenses, plant, 868*f*
Organ of Corti, **1113***f*
Organogenesis, **1036***f*, 1044, **1049**, 1054*f*–1055*f*
Organs, **5***f*, **759**, **876***t*
digestive. *See* Digestive systems
embryonic germ layers and, 1051*f*
endocrine system, 1003, 1004*f*. *See also* Endocrine glands
excretory, 985, 986*f*–987*f*
eyes and light-detecting, 1117*f*–1119*f*
floral, 823*f*–824*f*
human reproductive, 1025*f*–1027*f*
immune system rejection of transplanted, 969–970
as level of biological organization, 5*f*
organogenesis of, 1044, 1049, 1054*f*–1055*f*
plant roots, stems, and leaves as, 759*f*–762*f*
reverse positioning of human, in situs inversus, 1064*f*
smooth muscle in vertebrate, 1131–1132
Organ systems, **876**
internal exchange surfaces of, 875*f*
mammalian, 876*t*
Orgasm, 1034
Orientation
honeybees, 1142*f*
leaf, 787
migratory, 1156, 1157*f*
plant cell expansion, 777*f*
Origin-of-life studies, 57*f*, 58
Origin of Species, The (Darwin, C.), 14*f*, 469, 473, 483–484, 487
Origins of replication, **242**, 243*f*, **322**, 323*f*
Ornithine, 338*f*
Orthologous genes, **565***f*, 566
Orthoptera, 712*f*
Oryza sativa, 438, 509*f*, 651, 817, 838, 850–851, 1263
Osculum, **690***f*
Oseltamivir (Tamiflu), 414
Osmoconformers, **978**
Osmolarity, **978**, 989, 990*f*, 991, 998
Osmoreceptors, 1110
Osmoregulation, **134**, **978**
challenges and mechanisms of, 978*f*–980*f*, 981
energetics of, 980
excretion and. *See* Excretory systems
homeostasis by, 977*f*, 978
ion movement and gradients and, 993*f*
osmosis and, 134*f*–135*f*
osmosis and osmolarity in, 978
salinity and, 1185*f*
transport epithelia in, 981, 982*f*
Osmoregulators, **978***f*
Osmosis, **134**, **788**, 977
diffusion of water by, across plant plasma membranes, 788, 789*f*–791*f*
effects of, on water balance, 133*f*–135*f*
osmolarity and, 978
Osmotic pressure, blood, 933*f*
Osteichthyans, **728***f*–729*f*, 730. *See also* Fishes
Osteoblasts, 878*f*, 1134
Osteoclasts, 1134
Osteons, 878*f*
Ostriches, 992*f*
Otoliths, 1115*f*
Otters, 1189
Ouabain, 1084
Outer ear, **1113***f*
Outgroups, **561***f*, 572
Ovalbumin, 76*f*
Oval window, **1113***f*
Ovarian cancer, 447
Ovarian cycle, **1032***f*, 1033
Ovaries, angiosperm, **644***f*–646*f*, 647, **823***f*–824*f*, 830*f*–831*f*. *See also* Fruits
Ovaries, human, 257*f*, 258, 1004*f*, 1014, 1015*f*, **1026**, 1027*f*
Overgrazing, 1231
Overharvesting, 702*f*, 727–728, 1264, 1265*f*
Overnourishment, 917–918
Overproduction, offspring, 475*f*, 476
Oviducts, **1026**, 1027*f*
Oviparous organisms, **727**
Oviraptor dinosaurs, 564*f*, 565
Ovoviviparous organisms, **727**
Ovulate cones, 640*f*, 641
Ovulation, **1021**, 1035*f*
Ovules, 636, **638***f*, **823***f*
Owl-mouse predation study, 23
Owls, 920, 1218
Oxidation, 112, 165, **166***f*
Oxidative fibers, 1130–1131
Oxidative phosphorylation, 168, **169***f*, 174*f*–177*f*, 186
Oxidizing agents, **166***f*
Oxygen
atmospheric, in animal evolution, 677
catabolic pathways and, 165
in circulation and gas exchange, 947*f*–949*f*
covalent bonding and, 36, 37*f*
development of photosynthesis and atmospheric, 532*f*–534*f*
diffusion of, across capillary walls, 932
in double circulation, 924*f*, 925
in ecosystem interaction, 10*f*, 11
electronegativity of, 37, 45
as essential element, 29*t*, 64
in gas exchange, 921, 939*t*, 940
in human breathing, 946
plants production of, 619
in mammalian circulation, 926*f*
metabolic rate and, 890*f*
in net ecosystem production, 1242
in organic compounds, 59*f*
in oxidation, 166*f*
Permian mass extinction and low levels of, 540
in photosynthesis, 41*f*
in plant cells, 209*f*
in plant composition, 809
as product of photosynthesis, 188, 206, 207*f*
role of, in prokaryotic metabolism, 582
species distributions and availability of, 1185
thyroid hormone and consumption of, 179
transport of, 951
Oxytocin, 1004*f*–**1005***f*, 1007*f*, 1037*f*
Oystercatcher, 1161
Oyster drills, 542
Oysters, 699, 701*f*, 1020
Ozone depletion, 1283*f*, 1284

P

p21 gene, 390
p53 gene, **389**, 390*f*–391*f*
P680 chlorophyll *a*, 196, 197*f*
P700 chlorophyll *a*, 196, 197*f*, 198
Pacemaker, heart, 928*f*
Pacific Island land snails, 702*f*
Pacific salmon (*Oncorhynchus* species), 89
Pac-man mechanism, 241*f*
Paedomorphosis, 544, **545***f*, 732
Paedophryne swiftorum, 1164*f*
Paine, Robert, 1226*f*
Pain receptors, **1111**–1112
Pair bonding, 1144, 1155*f*
Pakicetus, 482*f*
Paleoanthropology, **748**
Paleogene period, 538
Paleontology, 13*f*, 88*f*, **470***f*, 471
Paleozoic era, 530*f*, 533*f*, 539*f*, 677*f*, 678
Palisade mesophyll, 771*f*
Pallium, avian, 1099*f*
Palumbi, S. R., 557*f*
Pampas, 1175*f*
PAMP-triggered immunity, 866
Pan-Cancer Atlas, 448
Pancreas, **909**, 1004*f*
cellular interactions of, 142
in digestion, 909
exocytosis and, 139
in glucose homeostasis, 916*f*
rough ER and, 105
Pancrustaceans, **708**, 709*f*–712*f*, 713
Pandemics, **410**
Pandoravirus, 408
Pangaea, **482**–483, **539***f*, 551
Pan genus, 746*f*. *See also* Chimpanzees
Panthera pardus, 554, 555*f*
Panthera tigris altaica, 1288
Panther chameleons (*Furcifer pardalis*), 735*f*
Paper, 651
Papaya, 757
Paper wasps, 712*f*
Papillae, 1124*f*
Papillomaviruses, 394
Pappochelys, 737
Papua New Guinea, 1164*f*
Parabasalids, **600***f*
Parabronchi, 944, 945*f*
Parachutes, seed and fruit, 832*f*
Paracrine signaling, 215*f*, **1000***f*, 1001
Parahippus, 548, 549*f*
Parakeets, 1136
Paralogous genes, 565*f*, **566**
Paramecium, 13*f*, 93*f*, 134, 135*f*, 607*f*, 617, 1199*f*, 1215
Paraphyletic groups, **560***f*
Parapodia, 703
Parasites, 584*f*, **587**, **1220**
acanthocephalans, 698
animals as, 673*f*
antigenic variation and, 972
apicomplexans, 605, 606*f*
arachnids, 708*f*
cercozoans, 609
entamoebas, 613
flatworms, 696*f*–697*f*
fungi as, 655, 660, 663, 665, 669*f*–670*f*
insects as, 713
lampreys as, 723*f*, 724
nematodes, 705*f*, 706
plants as, 818, 819*f*, 820
protist, 598*f*, 600*f*, 614
in zoonotic diseases, 1234
Parasitism, **587**, **1220**
Parasitoid wasps, 869*f*
Parasympathetic division, peripheral nervous system, 928, 1088*f*–**1089***f*
Parathion, 158
Parathyroid glands, 1004*f*, **1011***f*
Parathyroid hormone (PTH), 1004*f*, **1011***f*
Parenchyma cells, **764***f*, 769*f*, 770
Parental alleles, genomic imprinting and, 310*f*, 311
Parental care, 1023*f*, 1150, 1151*f*, 1200, 1201*f*–1202*f*
Parental types, **302**
Parietal cells, 907*f*
Parietal lobe, 1085, 1097*f*
Paris Agreement, 1283
Paris japonica, 448*t*, 449, 843
Parkinson's disease, 65, 83, 231, 361, 413, 431–432, 671, 1081, **1104**
Parsimony, 562, 563*f*, 564
Parthenogenesis, **697**–698, **1020**, 1021*f*
Partial pressure, **939**
Particulate model of inheritance, 487
Parus major, 740*f*
Passeriformes, 740*f*
Passive immunity, **968**
Passive transport, 126, **133**
active transport vs., 137*f*
diffusion as, 132, 133*f*
facilitated diffusion as, 135*f*, 136
interpreting scatter plots on glucose uptake as facilitated, 136
in plant cells, 209*f*
of water across plant plasma membranes, 788, 789*f*–791*f*
water balance and osmosis as, 133*f*–135*f*
Patella vulgata, 547*f*–548*f*
Paternal alleles, 372
Paternal chromosomes, 265
Paternity
certainty of, 1150, 1151*f*
tests for, 437
Pathogen-associated molecular patterns (PAMPs), **866**

Pathogenicity trait, bacterial, 315*f*
Pathogens, **587**, **953**, **1234**
adaptations of, in immune system evasion, 957, 971–972, 973*f*, 973*t*, 974, 976
alteration of community structure by, 1234, 1235*f*
bacterial, 315*f*, 583*f*–584*f*, 585, 587, 588*f*
B cells and antibodies as responses to extracellular, 964, 965*f*–966*f*
cytotoxic T cell response to cells infected by, 966*f*, 967
fungi as, 655, 663, 669*f*–670*f*
immune system recognition and response to, 952*f*, 953, 957*f*–958*f*
innate immunity evasion by, 957
plant defenses against, 866, 867*f*
prokaryotic, 587, 588*f*
viruses as, 398*f*–400*f*, 401, 408, 409*f*–413*f*
Pathways
nervous system, 880
Pathways, sensory, 1108*f*–1109*f*
Pattern
evolutionary, 470, 483
taxonomy based on, 470
Pattern formation, **384**, 385*f*–387*f*, **777**, 778*f*, 849, **1062**, 1063*f*–1064*f*. *See also* Morphogenesis
Paulinella chromatophora, 608*f*, 609
Pauling, Linus, 317–318
Pavlov, Ivan, 1146
Pax-6 gene, 423
Pc, 198*f*, 199
PCSK9 enzyme, 938
PDGF (platelet-derived growth factor), 247, 248*f*
Pea aphids (*Acyrthosiphon pisum*), 570
Peacocks, 499*f*
Pea fruit, 831*f*
Pea plants, G. Mendel's experiments with, 269*f*–276*f*
Pearl mussels, 702*f*
Peat, **627***f*, 628, 633–634, 1249, 1259
Pectin, 118
Pediastrum, 610*f*
Pedigrees, **284***f*, 285
Pedipalps, 708
Pelagic zone, **1177***f*
Pellicle, 601*f*
Peltigera, 813*f*
Penguins, 14*f*, 739, 740*f*, 873*f*, 874*f*, 884*f*, 892, 1192*f*
Penicillin, 159, 478, 574–575, 670
Penicillium, 658*f*
Penis, 1025*f*, **1026**, 1034, 1081–1082
Pentoses, 68*f*
PEP carboxylase, **203**, 204*f*
Pepsin, 158*f*, **907***f*
Pepsinogen, **907***f*
Peptide bonds, 75, **78***f*, 353*f*
Peptides
antimicrobial, 953–954, 955*f*, 956–957
Peptidoglycan, **574**, 575*f*
Per capita birth rate, 1196–1198
Per capita death rate, 1196–1198
Per capita rate of increase, 1196–1198
Perception, **1109**, 1121*f*
Perch, 979*f*, 1203*f*
Perennials, 766
Pericarp, 830–831
Pericycle, **768**, 769*f*
Periderm, **763**, 774
Perilymph, 1115*f*
Periodic table of elements, 34*f*
Peripheral nervous system (PNS), **1069**, 1081, **1086**
central nervous system and, 1086, 1087*f*–1090*f*
structure and function of vertebrate, 1088*f*–1089*f*
Peripheral proteins, **129**
Peripheral vision, 1122*f*, 1123
Perissodactyla, 745*f*
Perissodus microlepis, 500, 501*f*
Peristalsis, **906**, **1133***f*, 1135
Peristome, **625**
Peritubular capillaries, **987***f*
Periwinkles, 1263*f*
Permafrost, 1176*f*
Permease, 368*f*
Permian mass extinction, 540*f*, 541
Peromyscus polionotus, 2*f*, 20*f*–21*f*, 23
Peroxisomes, 100*f*–101*f*, **112***f*
Personal genome analysis, 433
Personalized medicine, 88*f*, **433**–434
Pertussis, 218*f*
Pesticides, 1275, 1276*f*
DDT, 158
transgenic, 837–838
Pest resistance, plant, 418*f*, 438
Petals, **644***f*, **823***f*
Petioles, **761**
Petromyzon marinus, 724
Petromyzontida (lampreys), 719*f*, 723*f*, 724
PET scanners, 31, 32*f*
Pévet, Paul, 893*f*
Pfu polymerase, 421
P (parental) generations, **271***f*
P granules, 1059*f*
pH, **52**
acid precipitation and, 1265, 1266*f*
adjusting soil, 808–809
buffers and, 52–53
enzymatic catalysis and, 157, 158*f*
and hemoglobin dissociation, 948*f*
of human cerebrospinal fluid, 946
pH scale and, 51, 52*f*
protein denaturation and, 82*f*, 83
species distributions and soil, 1186
sucrose uptake by plant cells and, 142
PHA (polyhydroxyalkanoate), 590, 591*f*
Phage λ, 403, 404*f*
Phages, **315**, **401**
capsids of, 400*f*, 401
Cas9 protein and, 360, 361*f*
defense against, 404*f*
in DNA research, 315*f*–316*f*, 317
in fighting infection, 872
prophages and temperate, 402, 403*f*
replicative cycles of, 402*f*–404*f*
in transduction, 579*f*
virulent, 402*f*
Phagocytic cells, 955*f*, 956
Phagocytosis, **107**, **140***f*, **953***f*
cellular integration of, 121*f*
as endocytosis, 139, 140*f*
immune systems and, 953*f*, 955*f*, 956, 965*f*
lysosomes and, 107*f*
Phalacrocorax harrisi, 506*f*, 507, 511
Phanerozoic eon, 530*f*, 533*f*, 539*f*
Pharmaceutical products
biotechnology in production of, 435, 436*f*. *See also* Drugs; Medicine
as environmental toxins, 1276, 1277*f*
fungal, 670
species and genetic diversity and, 1262, 1263*f*
Pharmacogenetics, 434
Pharyngeal clefts, **720***f*
Pharyngeal slits, **720***f*–721*f*
Pharyngolepis, 725*f*
Pharynx, 696*f*, **906***f*, 908*f*
Phase changes, plant development, 778, **780***f*
Phase-contrast microscopy, 95*f*
Phenobarbital, 104
Phenolics, 868*f*
Phenotypes, **274**
DNA transformation and, 315
dominant alleles and, 279–280
gene concept and, 362
gene expression as link between genotypes and, 335–336
genetic mapping and, 305*f*
genetic variation and, 487*f*–488*f*
genotypes vs., 274*f*, 282*f*, 283
impact of environment on, 282*f*
making histograms and analyzing distribution patterns of, 283
mutant, 295*f*–296*f*, 328
proteins and, 335
relative fitness and, 497
Phenylalanine, 77*f*, 289–290, 341, 492–493
Phenylketonuria (PKU), 289–290, 492–493
Phenylthiocarbamide (PTC) pedigree analysis case, 284*f*, 285
Pheromones, **658**, 670, **1001***f*, 1023, **1142**, 1143*f*
Philadelphia chromosome, 309*f*
Philippine eagle, 1262*f*
Phloem, **629**, **763**, **785**
primary growth and, 769*f*
resource acquisition and, 785*f*
sugar-conducting cells of, 765*f*
sugar transport from sources to sinks via, 799, 800*f*–801*f*
symplastic communication through, 802
vascular plant, 629–630
in vascular tissue systems, 763
Phloem sap, **799**, 800*f*–801*f*
Phoca hispida, 44*f*
Phoebastria immutabilis, 1277*f*
Phoenicopterus ruber, 14*f*, 740*f*
Phosphatases, 223
Phosphate group, 63*f*, 84, 85*f*
Phosphates, in phosphorus cycle, 1251*f*
Phosphodiesterase, 229, 233
Phosphofructokinase, 183*f*, 184, 186
Phospholipid bilayers, 74*f*, 75, 98*f*, 99, 102, 110, 127*f*, 132
Phospholipids, **74**
in cellular membranes, 102, 110, 127*f*, 132
Golgi apparatus and, 106
movement of, in cellular membranes, 128*f*, 129
in plasma membranes, 98*f*, 99
structure of, 74*f*, 75
Phosphorus
as essential element, 29*t*, 64
as limiting nutrient, 1242, 1243*f*, 1243*t*, 1244
plant deficiency in, 818
soil fertilization and, 805, 808
Phosphorus cycle, 1251*f*
Phosphorylated intermediates, **151**, 152*f*
Phosphorylation
in cell-signal responses, 226*f*
in cell-signal transduction, 222*f*, 223
in light reactions of photosynthesis, 191*f*
Phosphorylation cascade, **222***f*, 226*f*
Photic zone, **1177***f*
Photoautotrophs, 188*f*, 581*t*, 594
Photoheterotrophs, 581*t*
Photomorphogenesis, **855**
Photons, **192***f*, 195*f*
Photoperiodism, **859***f*–860*f*
Photophosphorylation, **191**
Photoprotection, 195, 199
Photopsins, 1122
Photoreceptors, **1117***f*–1119*f*
Photorespiration, **203**, 211
Photosynthates, 759
Photosynthesis, **188**
alternative mechanisms of carbon fixation in, 203, 204*f*–206*f*
in aquatic ecosystems, 1242
Calvin cycle of, 201, 202*f*
in carbon cycle, 1250*f*
cellular respiration vs., 190. *See also* Cellular respiration
cercozoan, 608*f*, 609
chemical reactions in, 41*f*
chloroplasts in, 5*f*, 109–110, 111*f*
climate change and, 211
conversion of light energy to chemical energy of food by, 189*f*–191*f*
cyanobacteria and, 584*f*
determining rate of, with satellites, 1242*f*
development of, and atmospheric oxygen, 533, 534*f*
in energy flow and chemical cycling, 9*f*, 164–165, 211, 1240f
evolution of adaptations for resource acquisition and, 784*f*–786*f*, 787
as gas exchange, 895*f*
importance of, 188*f*, 206, 207*f*
lichens in, 188*f*–669*f*
light reactions of. *See* Light reactions
maximizing surface area for, 695*f*
as plant nutritional mode, 894*f*
principles of, 163
prokaryotic, 577*f*
protist, 594, 599*f*–600*f*, 614, 615*f*
red and green algae, 609*f*–610*f*
scale of, 122*f*
shoot architecture and, 804
stramenopile, 602
sunlight availability and, 1185, 1186*f*
two stages of, 191*f*, 192
in vascular plants, 631
water loss compromise with, 787
in working plant cells, 209*f*
zonation of aquatic biomes and, 1177*f*–1178*f*
Photosystem I (PS I), **196**, 197*f*–198*f*
Photosystem II (PS II), **196**, 197*f*–198*f*

Photosystems, 195, **196***f*–198*f*, 199
Phototrophs, 581*t*
Phototropin, 856*f*
Phototropism, **847***f*–848*f*
pH scale, 51, 52*f*
Phycoerythrin, 609
Phyla, taxonomy and, **554**, 555*f*
  angiosperm, 648*f*
  bryophyte, 626*f*
  gymnosperm, 642*f*–643*f*
  plant, 622*t*
Phyllotaxy, 786*f*, 849
Phylogenetic bracketing, 564*f*, 572
Phylogenetic trees, **555**. *See also* Evolutionary trees; Phylogenies
  analyzing sequence-based, to understand viral evolution, 411
  of animals, 683*f*
  application of, 557*f*
  of bilaterians, 717
  of chordates, 719*f*
  cladistics in construction of, 559, 560*f*–561*f*
  of eukaryotes, 612*f*
  as hypotheses, 564*f*, 565
  linking classification and phylogeny with, 555*f*–556*f*
  of mammals, 745*f*
  maximum parsimony and maximum likelihood in, 562, 563*f*, 564
  of primates, 746*f*
  of prokaryotes, 583*f*
  proportional branch lengths in, 561, 562*f*
  of protists, 598*f*
  of tetrapods, 731*f*
  tree of life and, 15*f*–16*f*
  visualizing, 556*f*
Phylogenies, **554**
  of amniotes, 734*f*
  of angiosperms, 648*f*–650*f*, 653
  of animals, 682, 683*f*, 684
  of chordates, 719*f*
  constructing phylogenetic trees for, 559, 560*f*–564*f*, 565. *See also* Phylogenetic trees
  documentation of, in genomes, 565*f*, 566
  of eukaryotes, 612*f*
  of fungi, 660*f*–667*f*
  gymnosperm, 641, 642*f*–643*f*
  as hypotheses, 564*f*, 565
  inferring, from morphological and molecular data, 558*f*–559*f*
  investigating tree of life with, 553*f*–554*f*, 568, 569*f*–570*f*
  of maize, 557
  of mammals, 745*f*
  molecular clocks and evolutionary time in, 566, 567*f*–568*f*
  nitrogenous wastes and, 982*f*–983*f*
  of plants, 623*f*
  practical applications of, 557*f*
  of primates, 746*f*
  of prokaryotes, 583*f*
  of protists, 597, 598*f*–599*f*
  systematics and, 554
  taxonomy and evolutionary relationships in, 554, 555*f*–556*f*, 568, 569*f*
  of tetrapods, 731*f*
Physical reconstruction, ecosystem, 1253*f*–1254*f*
Physiological thermostats, 888, 889*f*
Physiology, 873*f*–**874**
Phytoalexins, 866
Phytochemicals, 195
Phytochromes, **856**
  in circadian rhythms, 858–859
  in plant signal transduction pathways, 844*f*
  in seed germination, 856, 857*f*
  in shade avoidance in plants, 857, 871
Phytophthora species, 604, 614*f*, 1234
Phytoplankton, 584*f*. *See also* Plankton
  in biomass pyramids, 1247*f*, 1248
  in carbon cycle, 1250*f*
  dinoflagellate, 605*f*
  green algae, 610
  nitrogen pollution and blooms of, 1275*f*
  primary production by, 1242, 1243*f*, 1243*t*
  seasonality and, 1167
Phytoremediation, **809**
Picoides borealis, 1269*f*–1270*f*
Pie charts in Scientific Skills Exercise, 892
Pied flycatchers (*Ficedula hypoleuca*), 519
Pigmentation
  DNA methylation and, 372*f*
  gene expression and, 335*f*, 336
  plant, 311*f*
  of Siamese cats, 364
  skin, 281, 282*f*
Pigments
  as photosynthetic light receptors, 192, 193*f*–194*f*, 195
  in photosystems, 196*f*–200*f*, 201
  respiratory, 947*f*–948*f*, 949
  visual, 1122
Pikas, 1280*f*
Pili, **576**, 580*f*, 581
Pill bugs, 709
Pilobolus, 663*f*
Pimephales promelas, 1276
Pineal gland, 1004*f*, 1007*f*, **1015**, 1093*f*
Pineapple, 206*f*, 831*f*
Pine trees, 640*f*, 643*f*, 1229*f*, 1244*f*, 1245, 1280*f*
Pin flower, 835*f*
Pinocytosis, **140***f*
Pinworms, 705
Piping plover (*Charadrius melodus*)., 1190*f*
Pisaster ochraceus, 1226*f*
Pistils, **644***f*, **823***f*
Pitch, 1114
Pitcher plants, 819*f*
Pitch pine canker, 669
Pith, **763**, 770*f*, 783
Pithovirus sibericum, 408
Pituitary dwarfism, 1010
Pituitary gland, **1007**, 1030, 1031*f*–1032*f*, 1093*f*
  in human endocrine system, 1004*f*
  in kidney regulation, 994*f*–995*f*
  in neuroendocrine signaling, 1007*f*–1008*f*
Pit vipers, 737*f*, 1111*f*
Pivot joints, 1134*f*
Piwi-interacting RNAs (piRNAs), 380–381
PKU (phenylketonuria), 289–290, 492–493
Placenta, **742**, **1035***f*
Placental mammals. *See* Eutherians (placental mammals)
Placental transfer cells, 620*f*
Placoderm fossil, 533*f*
Placoderms, **726***f*
Placozoans, 687*f*
Plains, 1175*f*
Planarians, 687*f*, **694**, 695*f*–696*f*. *See also* Flatworms
Planes, plant cell division, 776–777
Planets, possible evolution of life on other, 50*f*
Plankton, 608, 710*f*. *See also* Phytoplankton
Plantae kingdom, **12***f*, 568, 599*f*, 609, 619*f*, 621
Plant cells. *See also* Eukaryotic cells
  cell fate in pattern formation, 777, 778*f*
  cell signaling in, 215*f*
  cellular activities of, 208*f*–209*f*
  cell walls of, 118*f*
  chloroplasts in, 109, 110*f*–111*f*
  common types of, 763, 764*f*–765*f*
  cytoplasmic streaming in, 117*f*
  division and expansion of, in growth, 776, 777*f*
  as eukaryotic cells, 101*f*
  gene expression and control of differentiation of, 778*f*
  mitosis and cytokinesis in, 241, 242*f*–243*f*
  photosynthesis in. *See* Photosynthesis
  plant cloning from single, 428. *See also* Transgenic plants
  plasmodesmata as cell junctions in, 119*f*, 120
  sucrose uptake by, 142
Plant development
  adaptations of, 894*f*
  auxin in, 849
  cell division and cell expansion in growth and, 776, 777*f*
  gene expression and control of cell differentiation in, 778*f*
  genetic control of flowering in, 779*f*–780*f*
  growth, morphogenesis, and cell differentiation in, 775*f*, 776
  model organisms in the study of, 774, 776*f*
  morphogenesis and pattern formation in, 777, 778*f*
  phase changes in, 779, 780*f*
Plant growth
  adaptations of, 894*f*
  cell division and cell expansion in, 776, 777*f*
  meristem generation of cells for, 766*f*–767*f*
  plant development and, 775–776
  primary, 768*f*–771*f*
  regulators of. *See* Plant hormones
  secondary, 772*f*–775*f*
Plant hormones (plant growth regulators), **846***t*. *See also* Hormones
  abscisic acid, 846*t*, 852*f*, 863
  animal hormones vs., 216, 894*f*
  auxin, 846*t*, 847*f*–849*f*, 850, 854*f*, 861
  brassinosteroids, 845, 846*t*, 854–855
  cytokinins, 846*t*, 850*f*
  in de-etiolation (greening) responses, 845
  ethylene, 846*t*, 852, 853*f*–854*f*, 864*f*
  florigen, 860*f*
  gibberellins, 846*t*, 850, 851*f*
  jasmonates, 846*t*, 855
  in long-distance cell signaling, 216
  overview of, 846*t*
  as plant growth regulators, 846–847
  strigolactones, 846*t*, 850, 855
Plant nutrition
  essential elements for, 809, 810*f*, 811*t*
  mutualisms for, 812, 813*f*–819*f*, 820
  nutritional modes in, 894*f*
  photosynthesis and modes of, 188*f*
  soil as complex ecosystem for, 805*f*–809*f*
  unusual adaptations for, 806, 818, 819*f*, 820
  vascular plant acquisition of water and minerals, 787
  vascular plant transport of water and minerals, 787, 788*f*–791*f*
Plant responses
  to attacks by pathogens and herbivores, 866, 867*f*–869*f*
  to environmental stresses, 862–863, 864*f*, 865
  to gravity, 861*f*
  to light, 855, 856*f*–860*f*
  to mechanical stimuli, 861, 862*f*
  plant hormones and, 845, 846*t*, 847*f*–854*f*, 855
  signal-transduction pathways linking signal reception to, 843*f*–844*f*, 845
Plants. *See also* Angiosperms; Plant development; Plant growth; Plant hormones; Plant nutrition; Plant responses; Plant structure; Seed plants
  adaptations of, that reduce terrestrial nutrient limitations, 1244
  adaptations of, to toxic elements, 30*f*
  adaptive radiations of, 543*f*, 544
  alternation of generations in life cycles of, 258*f*, 620*f*
  in Archaeplastida supergroup, 599*f*, 609
  bioremediation using, 1253, 1255*f*
  cells of, 6*f*, 208*f*–209*f*. *See also* Plant cells
  cellulose as structural polysaccharide for, 70*f*–71*f*, 72
  chemical communication by, 845–846
  climate change and, 11, 1279, 1280*f*–1281*f*, 1282
  cloning of, 428
  community stability and diversity of, 1223*f*
  crop. *See* Crop plants
  defensive adaptations of, 1219–1220
  derived traits of, 620f–621*f*
  diseases of. *See* Diseases, plant
  in domain Eukarya, 12*f*
  in ecosystem interaction, 10*f*, 11
  elements in composition of, 809
  endangered or threatened, 1261
  essential elements and trace elements for, 29
  evolutionary mystery of flowering, for C. Darwin, 477
  evolution from green algae, 617, 618, 619*f*, 621
  fossil of, 529*f*
  fungal mutualisms with, 665, 667*f*, 668, 813*f*. *See also* Mycorrhizae
  fungal pathogens of, 663, 669*f*
  gametophyte-sporophyte relationships in, 637*f*, 638
  genetic engineering of transgenic, 418*f*, 438
  genomics and proteomics in study of, 88*f*
  global climate change and species distributions of, 1170, 1170*f*
  habitat loss and, 1263–1264
  immune response in, 866, 867*f*

Plants (continued)
importance of insects to, 713
inheritance of organelle genes in, 311*f*
introduced, 818
kingdom and domain mutualisms with, 813*f*
land colonization by, 536, 537*f*
life challenges and solutions for, 894*f*–895*f*
nematode parasites of, 705
nonvascular, 623, 624*f*–627*f*, 628
nutrition of, 12*f*, 13
origin, diversification, and phylogeny of, 621, 622*f*–623*f*, 622*t*
pathogens of, 1234
as photoautotrophs, 188*f*
photosynthesis of. *See* Photosynthesis
polyploidy in, 307
protists as pathogens of, 614*f*
reproduction of. *See* Angiosperm reproduction
resource acquisition for vascular, 784*f*–786*f*, 787
salinity and species distributions of, 1186
starch as storage polysaccharide for, 70*f*, 71
sympatric speciation in, 514*f*–515*f*
terrestrial adaptations of, 619*f*, 621
vascular. *See* Transport in vascular plants; Vascular plants
water balance of cells of, 134*f*, 135
water transport in, 46*f*
Plant structure
cells in, 763, 764*f*–765*f*
diversity in, 759
hierarchy of organs, tissues, and cells in, 758*f*–765*f*
meristem generation of cells for growth of, 766*f*–767*f*
plant development and, 775*f*–780*f*
primary growth of roots and shoots of, 768*f*–771*f*
secondary growth of stems and roots in woody plants, 772*f*–775*f*
Plaque, arterial, 937*f*, 939
Plasma, **934***f*, 935
Plasma cells, 961, 962*f*, 970*f*
Plasma membranes, **98**, 109*f*. *See also* Cellular membranes
animal cell, 100*f*
chemiosmosis in prokaryotic, 175, 176*f*, 177
electron transport chains in prokaryotic, 168
of eukaryotic cells, 98*f*, 99
hormone receptors in, 1003*f*
ion gradients and transport of ions across, 993*f*
microfilaments in, 116*f*
movement across plant cell, 209*f*
nuclear envelopes as, 102
plant cell, 101*f*
of prokaryotic cell, 97*f*
receptor proteins in, 217*f*–220*f*
short-distance and long-distance transport across, 787, 788*f*–791*f*
Plasmids, **418**, **577**
in antibiotic resistance of bacteria, 581
in bacterial conjugation, 580*f*, 581
evolution of viruses and, 408
prokaryotic, 577*f*
as recombinant DNA, 418*f*, 419–420
Plasmodesmata, **119**
as cell junctions in plants, 119*f*, 120
macromolecules and, 846
in plant cells, 101*f*
in plant local cell signaling, 215*f*
in symplastic communication, 802*f*
Plasmodial slime molds, 612*f*
Plasmodium (protist), 599*f*, 606*f*, 614, 713, 953
Plasmogamy, **658***f*
Plasmolysis, **135**, **790**
Plasticity, neuronal, **1100***f*
Plastics, natural, 590, 591*f*
Plastic waste, 1163, 1277*f*
Plastids, **111**
endosymbiotic origin of, 534, 535*f*
eukaryotic endosymbiosis and evolution of, 596*f*–597*f*
Plastocyanin (Pc), 198*f*, 199
Plastoquinone (Pq), 198*f*
Plateau phase, sexual, 1034
Platelet-derived growth factor (PDGF), 247, 248*f*
Platelets, 10, 878*f*, 934*f*–**935***f*
Plate tectonics, **538***f*–539*f*, 540
Platyhelminthes (flatworms). *See* Flatworms
Platypus, 742, 1110–1111
Play, 1159
Pleasure, brain activity and, 1103*f*
Pleiotropy, 280
Pleurozium schreberi, 635
Plumule, 829
Pluripotent cells, **431**
Pneumatophores, 760*f*
Pneumocystis jirovecii, 973–974
Pneumonia, 315*f*, 579
Poaching, elephant, 1265*f*
Podium, sea star, 714*f*
Poecile species, 517*f*
Poecilia reticulata (guppies), 483, 1152, 1153*f*, 1187*f*
Poikilotherms, 884
Point mutations, **357***f*–358*f*, 359, 388, 389*f*, 488–489
Poison dart frog, 1218*f*
Pokeweed, 830*f*
Polar bears (*Ursus maritimus*), 11, 510*f*
Polar covalent bonds, **37***f*, **45**
Polarity, 877*f*
Polar molecules, 44–**45**
Polar side chains, 76, 77*f*
Polar transport, auxin, 848*f*, 849
Polio, 408–409, 968*f*, 976
Pollen cones, 640*f*, 641
Pollen grains, 636, **638***f*, 646*f*, 647, 649*f*, **826**, 827*f*, 841
Pollen tubes, 825*f*, **826**, 827*f*
Pollination, **638**, **825**
angiosperm cross-pollination, 646*f*, 647
asexual reproduction vs., 833
coevolution of flowers and pollinators in, 825*f*
cross-pollination in breeding plants, 837
flowers and angiosperm, 644*f*
flower shape and insect, 649*f*
genetic engineering of flowers to force self-pollination, 839–840
by insects, 641*f*
insects in, 713
mechanisms for preventing self-, 834, 835*f*
mechanisms of, 824*f*–825*f*
G. Mendel's techniques of, 270*f*–271*f*
seed plant, 638*f*
Pollinators
coevolution of flowers and, 825*f*
reproductive isolation and choice of, 522*f*
Pollution
biomanipulation and, 1227*f*
coral reefs and, 693
ecosystem services and, 1263
molluscs and water, 702–703
nutrient, 1274, 1275*f*
ocean acidification and, 53*f*, 54
plastic, 1163, 12771*f*
prokaryotes and bioremediation of, 591*f*
toxins, 1275, 1276*f*–1277*f*
Polyadenylation signal sequence, 345*f*
Polyandry, 1149, 1151*f*
Poly-A tail, **345***f*
Polychaetes, 703
Polychaos dubium, 449
Polychlorinated biphenyls (PCBs), 1275, 1276*f*
Polydactyly, 280, 292
Polygamous mating, **1149**–1150, 1151*f*
Polygenic inheritance, **281**, 282*f*, 287
Polygyny, 1149–1150, 1151*f*
Polymerase chain reaction (PCR), **420**
amplification of DNA using, 420, 421*f*, 422
bacteria for, 589
diagnosing diseases with, 433–434
in estimating reproductive rates, 1194, 1195*f*
extreme thermophile archaea in, 585, 1263
in forensic science, 436, 437*f*
in genomic analysis of fetuses, 1040
in prokaryotic analysis, 583
in RT-PCR analysis, 424, 425*f*
in sequencing human digestive system microbiome, 912, 913*f*
in vitro amplification of DNA using, 422*f*
Polymerases, 401
Polymerization, protein, 240
Polymers, **67***f*
Polymorphisms, 427, 433
Polynucleotides, **84**, 85*f*
Polypeptide backbone, 78*f*
Polypeptides, **75**, 1001*f*
amino acid monomers of, 75, 76*f*–77*f*
as amino acid polymers, 78*f*
analyzing sequence data of, in Scientific Skills Exercise, 89
mutations affecting, 357*f*–358*f*, 359
one gene–one polypeptide hypothesis on, 337
proteins as composed of, 78*f*
synthesis of, in translation, 337, 339*f*
synthesizing multiple, with polyribosomes in translation, 355*f*
targeting, to specific locations, 354*f*, 355
translation stages in synthesis of, 350*f*–353*f*
Polyphemus moth (*Antheraea polyphemus*), 1001
Polyphyletic groups, **560***f*
Polyplacophora (chitons), 699*f*
Polyploidy, **307**, **514***f*–515*f*
Polyps, 391*f*, **691***f*, 1019*f*
Polyribosomes (polysomes), **355***f*
Polysaccharides, **70***f*–72*f*, 106
Polyspermy, **1045**
Polytomies, 569*f*
Polytrichum, 626*f*–627*f*
Pongo species, 746*f*
Pons, 946, **1093***f*
Poplar trees, 774, 838
Population conservation
conflicted demands in, 1270
critical habitat in, 1269*f*–1270*f*
extinction risks in small populations, 1266, 1267*f*–1268*f*, 1269
Population cycles, 1205*f*, 1206
Population dynamics, 1191*f*, 1192, **1205***f*–1206*f*, 1207, 1256*f*. *See also* Population growth
Population ecology, **1165***f*. *See also* Ecology
demography of population vital statistics in, 1193*t*, 1194*f*–1195*f*
determining population size using mark-recapture method in, 1191*f*
human population in, 1207*f*–1210*f*, 1211, 1213
population density and dispersion in, 1191*f*–1192*f*, 1193, 1202, 1203*f*
population dynamics in, 1191*f*, 1192, 1205*f*–1206*f*, 1207
population growth models in, 1196, 1197*f*–1199*f*, 1198*t*, 1200. *See also* Population growth
population growth regulation in, 1202, 1203*f*–1206*f*, 1207
as study of populations in environments, 1190*f*, 1191. *See also* Populations
Population growth. *See also* Populations
density-dependent regulation of, 1202, 1203*f*–1206*f*, 1207, 1213
ecological impact of, 1213
exponential model of, 1196, 1197*f*, 1207*f*, 1208
of human population, 1207*f*–1210*f*, 1211, 1213
logistic model of, 1197, 1198*f*–1199*f*, 1198*t*, 1200
population dynamics and, 1191*f*, 1192, 1205*f*–1206*f*, 1207
using logistic equation to model, 1200
Population-level herbivore defenses, plant, 869*f*
Populations, **4***f*, **490**, **1165***f*, **1191**
climate change effects on, 1281*f*
C. Darwin on natural selection and, 14*f*–16*f*
demographics of, 1193*t*, 1194*f*–1195*f*
density and dispersion of, 1191*f*–1192*f*, 1193, 1202, 1203*f*, 1256*f*
determining size of, using mark-recapture method, 1191*f*
diffusion of, of molecules, 132
dynamics of, 1191*f*, 1192, 1205*f*–1206*f*, 1207, 1256*f*
effective size for, 1268
evolution of genetic variation in, 266, 267*f*
extinction risks in small, 1266, 1267*f*–1268*f*, 1269
gene pools of, 490*f*
genetic diversity of, 1261*f*
growth of. *See* Population growth
Hardy-Weinberg equilibrium and size of, 492*t*
human, 1207*f*–1210*f*, 1211, 1213
as level of biological organization, 4*f*
life histories of, 1200, 1201*f*–1202*f*
minimum viable size for, 1268
natural selection and evolution of, 475*f*, 476
population ecology as study of, 1190*f*, 1191. *See also* Population ecology
using Hardy-Weinberg principle to test microevolution in, 490, 491*f*, 492–493

Populus tremuloides, 791*f*, 833*f*
Porcupine, 1218*f*
Pore complexes, 102, 103*f*
Pores, nuclear, 102, 103*f*, 123*f*
Pores, plasmodesmatal, 802*f*
Porifera (sponges). *See* Sponges
Porphyra, 609*f*, 610
Porphyrin ring, 194*f*
Porpoises, 481*f*–482*f*
Portal vessels, 1008*f*
Positional information, **384**, **1062**, 1063*f*–1064*f*
Position-based mechanisms, plant, 778
Positive and negative correlations, 834
Positive feedback, **882**, **1006**
  in climate change, 1189
  in endocrine system feedback regulation, 1006
  in feedback regulation, 10
  in homeostasis, 882
Positive gene regulation, bacterial, 369*f*, 370
Positive gravitropism, 861*f*
Positive interactions, **1220***f*–1221*f*
Positive pressure breathing, **944**
Positron-emission tomography (PET), 31, 32*f*, 1096
Possum, 743*f*
Posterior pituitary gland, 1004*f*, **1007***f*, 1008
Postganglionic neurons, 1089
Postsynaptic cells, 1068*f*
Postsynaptic neurons, 1068*f*, 1079*f*, 1101*f*
Postsynaptic potentials, 1077–1078, 1079*f*
Post-translational protein modifications, 354
Postzygotic barriers, 509*f*, **510**
Potassium, 29*t*, 805, 808
Potassium ion channel protein, 135
Potassium ions, 797*f*, 798, 1070*t*, 1071*f*
Potato blight, 867
Potatoes, 651, 843*f*–844*f*
Potential, cell developmental, 1060, 1061*f*
Potential energy, **32**, **144**, 145*f*, 163
Potential range, 1184
Pq, 198*f*
Prairie chickens, 495*f*, 496
Prairies, 1175*f*, 1264
Prairie voles, 1155*f*
Precapillary sphincters, 932*f*
Precipitation
  climate change and, 11
  climographs of, 1171*f*
  evaporation and, 47
  global patterns of, 1166*f*
  mountains, rain shadow, and, 1169*f*
  primary production in terrestrial biomes and, 1243*f*, 1244, 1244*f*
  in water cycle, 1250*f*
Precocious germination, 852*f*
Predation, **1217**, 1256*f*
  allopatric speciation and, 511*f*, 512
  camouflage and, 468*f*
  camouflage case studies and, 20*f*–21*f*, 23
  density-dependent population regulation by, 1204*f*
  genetic variation in, 1155, 1156*f*
  as interspecific interaction, 1217, 1218*f*–1219*f*
  population cycles and, 1205*f*, 1206
  as risk, 1149
  top-down model of trophic control and, 1227*f*
Predators
  adaptations of, 1217–1218, 1219*f*, 1237
  animals as, 673*f*
  as biotic factors limiting species distributions, 1184*f*
  cephalopods as, 701*f*, 702
  evolution of animal, 677*f*
  insects as, 713
  mass extinctions and, 542
  natural selection and role of, 26
  plant recruitment of, as herbivore defense, 869*f*
Predictions, scientific, 17, 18*f*, 19*f*, 493
Predisposition, cancer and inherited, 394
Preganglionic neurons, 1089
Pregnancy, human, **1034**
  conception and trimesters of, 1035*f*–1037*f*
  detecting disorders during, 1039–1040
  detecting human, 969
  DNA methylation and, 372*f*
  ectopic, 1039
  endocrine disruptors and, 1015
  prevention of, 1037, 1038*f*, 1039
Pre-mRNA, 339*f*, 345*f*–346*f*, 373*f*
Prepuce, 1025*f*, 1026
Pressure
  hearing and, 1114
  receptors for, 1110*f*
  root, 793*f*, 794
  water potential and, 788–790
Pressure-flow hypothesis, 800, 801*f*
Pressure potential, **789**
Presynaptic cells, 1068*f*
Presynaptic neurons, 1068*f*, 1079, 1080*f*, 1101*f*
Prey
  adaptations of native predators to introduced, 1217
  defensive adaptations of, 1218*f*–1219*f*, 1237
  genetic variation in selection of, 1155, 1156*f*
Prezygotic barriers, 508*f*–509*f*, **510**
Priapula, 688*f*
Primary cell walls, **118**
Primary cilium, 114
Primary consumers, **1240***f*
  trophic efficiency of, 1246, 1247*f*, 1248
Primary electron acceptors, **196***f*
Primary growth, plant, **766**, 783
  meristem generation of cells for, 766*f*–767*f*
  of roots, 768*f*–769*f*
  of woody stems, 772*f*, 775*f*
Primary immune response, **962**, **963***f*
Primary meristems, **766**
Primary motor cortex, 1097*f*
Primary oocytes, **1029***f*
Primary producers, **1240***f*, 1257*f*
Primary production, **1241**
  in aquatic ecosystems, 1242, 1243*f*, 1243*t*
  in arctic tundra ecosystem, 1238*f*, 1244, 1256*f*–1257*f*
  climate change effects on, 1244*f*, 1245
  determining, with satellites, 1242*f*
  ecosystem energy budgets in, 1241, 1242*f*
  global, 1241, 1242*f*
  gross and net, 1241, 1242*f*
  in terrestrial ecosystems, 1243*f*–1244*f*, 1245
Primary roots, 759
Primary somatosensory cortex, 1097*f*
Primary structure, protein, **80***f*
Primary succession, **1229**, 1230*f*–1231*f*
Primary transcripts, **339**
Primary visual cortex, 1121*f*
Primases, 323*f*, **324**, 326*f*, 327*t*
Primates. *See also* Humans
  cloning of, 430
  derived characters of, 744, 746
  HIV in, 567
  living, 746*f*–747*f*
  in mammalian phylogeny, 745*f*
  phylogenetic tree of, 746*f*
Primers, 323*f*, **324**
Primitive streak, 1052*f*
Primordial germ cells, 1029*f*
Principle of conservation of energy, 145*f*, 146
Printing press, 24
Prions, **412**, 413*f*
Probability
  laws of, 276, 277*f*, 278
  principle of maximum likelihood and, 563
Problem solving, **1146**, 1147*f*
Problem-Solving Exercises. *See* list, xxi
Proboscidea, 745*f*
Proboscis, 688*f*, 712*f*, 825*f*
Procambium, 766
Process, evolutionary, 470, 483
Prochlorococcus, 552
Producers, **9**, 188*f*, **614**, 615*f*
Production efficiency, **1246***f*
Products, **41**, 651
Progesterone, 1004*f*, **1014**, 1015*f*, **1030**, 1032*f*
Progesterone receptor (PR), 392*f*–393*f*
Progestins, 1014, 1015*f*, 1038
Proglottids, 697*f*
Programmed cell death. *See* Apoptosis
Projections, body surface area and, 695*f*
Prokaryotes
  adaptive abilities of, 573*f*, 574
  archaea as, 585*f*, 586
  bacteria as, 583, 584*f*, 585
  beneficial and harmful impacts of, on humans, 587, 588*f*–591*f*
  bioremediation using, 1255*f*
  cell signaling in, 213*f*, 214
  cells of. *See* Prokaryotic cells
  chemiosmosis in, 175, 176*f*, 177
  as decomposers, 188
  ecological roles of, in biosphere, 586*f*–587*f*
  electron transport chains in, 168
  as endosymbionts, 534, 535*f*
  evolution of glycolysis in, 182
  genetic diversity in, 578*f*–580*f*, 581
  genome sizes and number of genes for, 448*t*, 449
  horizontal gene transfer in genomes of, 569, 570*f*
  hydrothermal vents, energy, and, 592
  land colonization by, 536
  nutritional and metabolic adaptations of, 581*t*, 582*f*
  origin of, 532*f*–534*f*
  photosynthesis in, 188*f*
  phylogeny of, 583*f*
  structural and functional adaptations of, 574*f*–577*f*, 578
  taxonomy of, 568, 569*f*
Prokaryotic cells, **6**, **97**. *See also* Cells
  cell-surface structures of, 574, 575*f*–576*f*
  DNA replication in, 322*f*–327*f*
  eukaryotic cells vs., 6*f*, 97*f*–98*f*, 99. *See also* Eukaryotic cells
  evolution of cell division of, 243, 244*f*
  programming of, by viral DNA, 315*f*–316*f*, 317
  regulation of transcription in, 366*f*–369*f*, 370
  structure of, 97*f*
  transcription and translation in, 337, 339*f*, 342, 343*f*–344*f*, 355*f*
Prolactin, 1004*f*, **1008***f*, 1016
Prolactin-releasing hormone, 1008
Proliferative phase, 1032*f*, 1033
Proline, 77*f*, 341–342
Prometaphase, **237**, 238*f*, 243*f*, 252, 331*f*
Promiscuous mating, 1149
Promoters, **342**, 343*f*
Proof, hypotheses and, 18
Proofreading, DNA, 327, 328*f*
Propanal, 63*f*
Properties, chemical, 34*f*, 35
Properties, emergent. *See* Emergent properties
Prophages, **403**
Prophase (mitosis), **237**, 238*f*, 243*f*, 252, 263*f*, 331*f*
Prophase I, 260*f*, 262*f*–263*f*, 266*f*
Prophase II, 261*f*
Propithecus verreauxi, 746*f*
Prop roots, 760*f*
Prostaglandins, **1001**, 1037*f*, 1111–1112
Prostate cancer, 397
Prostate cells, 397
Prostate glands, 1025*f*, **1026**
Prosthetic groups, 175
Proteases, **907**
Proteasomes, 379
Protected areas, 1272*f*–1273*f*
Protective secretions, 898
Protein Data Bank, 444
Protein interaction networks, 446, 447*f*
Protein kinase A, 223, 224*f*
Protein kinases, **222***f*–224*f*, 228*f*, 229
Protein phosphatases, **223**
Proteins, **75**. *See also* Amino acids
  amino acids of, 67, 75, 76*f*–78*f*. *See also* Amino acids
  antibiotics and prokaryotic synthesis of, 577
  antifreeze, 888
  in bacterial binary fission, 242, 243*f*
  biotechnology in production of, 435, 436*f*
  blood plasma, 934*f*, 935
  cadherin in choanoflagellates and animals, 676*f*
  in cell-signaling nuclear responses, 226*f*
  cell-signaling receptor, 217*f*–220*f*
  in cellular membranes, 127*f*–130*f*
  cellulose-synthesizing, 619*f*
  as composed of polypeptides, 78*f*. *See also* Polypeptides
  Conserved Domain Database (CDD) of structures of, 445*f*
  denaturation and renaturation of, 82*f*, 83
  digestion and absorption of, 908*f*–909*f*
  DNA-binding, 91
  in DNA replication, 326*f*, 327*t*
  DNA vs., as genetic material, 315, 316*f*, 317
  domains of, 347*f*

Proteins (continued)
in egg yolks, 91
in electron transport chains, 174*f*, 175
enzymes as, 75, 76*f*, 153, 159*f*
essential amino acids in, 899
evolution and divergence of, 91
evolution of genes for, with novel functions, 456, 457*f*
expressing cloned genes for, 423
facilitated diffusion and, 135*f*, 136
florigen as, 860*f*
folding and post-translational modifications of, 354
folding of, in cells, 83
four levels of structure of, 79, 80*f*–81*f*
as fuel for catabolism, 182*f*
functions of types of, 66*f*, 76*f*
gene expression and, 7*f*–8*f*
genotypes and, 335
human dietary deficiencies in, 901
identifying genes coding for, 445*f*, 446
innate immune response and, 957
as macromolecules, 66
as measures of evolution, 87, 89
mediator, 374, 375*f*
motor. *See* Motor proteins
nonenzyme, 337
nucleic acids in gene expression and synthesis of, 84*f*
packing of DNA and, into chromosomes, 330*f*–332*f*
phenotypes and, 335
phosphorylation of, in cell-signal transduction, 222*f*, 223
in photosystems, 196*f*–200*f*, 201
plant antifreeze, 865
plant heat-shock, 865
post-translational modification of, in plant responses, 845
prions as infectious, 412, 413*f*
producing, with gene cloning, 418*f*, 419
in prokaryotic flagella, 576*f*, 577
protein interactions with, 221
proteomics in study of, 9, 86, 87*f*, 446
regulation of eukaryotic processing and degradation of, 378–379
regulatory, 378–379, 383, 384*f*
in replication of DNA telomeres, 328
repressor, 367*f*
scaffolding, 228*f*, 229
separating, with gel electrophoresis, 420*f*
structures of, 78, 79*f*
synthesis of. *See* Protein synthesis
synthesis of, in plant cells, 208*f*
systems biology in studying networks of, 446, 447*f*
transcription factors, 343*f*, 344
translation elongation factors, 352, 353*f*
translation initiation factors, 352*f*
translation release factors, 352, 353*f*
transport. *See* Transport proteins
in transport and mechanical work, 152*f*
using data on, to test hypotheses on horizontal gene transfer, 570
viral movement, 802*f*
viruses and, 400*f*, 402*f*–403*f*
visualizing, 79*f*
water-soluble, 49*f*
Protein sequences, 444, 445*f*, 446
in Scientific Skills Exercise, 570
Protein synthesis. *See also* Gene expression
evidence for, in study of metabolic defects, 336*f*–338*f*
gene concept and, 361–362
genetic code in, 340*f*–342*f*
mutations during, 357*f*–358*f*, 359
by ribosomes, 102, 103*f*, 104
summary of, 356*f*
via transcription, RNA processing, and translation, 337, 339*f*. *See also* RNA processing; Transcription; Translation
Proteobacteria, 584*f*
Proteoglycans, **118**, 119*f*
Proteomes, **9**, **446**
Proteomics, **9**, 86, **87***f*–88*f*, **446**
Proterozoic eon, 530*f*, 533*f*
Prothoracicotropic hormone (PTTH), 1006*f*, 1007
Prothrombin, 936*f*
Protista, kingdom, 568, 594
Protists, **12***f*, **594**
contractile vacuoles of, 108
in domain Eukarya, 12*f*, 13
ecological roles of symbiotic and photosynthetic, 614*f*–615*f*
endosymbiosis in evolution of, 594–595, 596*f*–597*f*, 608*f*, 609
excavates, 597, 598*f*, 600
origin of, 593
origin of fungi in, 659*f*, 660
photosynthesis in, 188*f*
phylogeny of, 597, 598*f*–599*f*
plants, 599*f*, 609. *See also* Plants
red and green algae, 599*f*, 609*f*–611*f*
SAR clade, 599*f*, 601*f*–608*f*, 609
sexual life cycles of, 258*f*, 259
as single-celled eukaryotes, 594
structural and functional diversity of, 594*f*
unikonts, 599*f*, 611, 612*f*–613*f*, 614
Protocell, **526**, 527, 528*f*
Protoderm, 766
Protonema, 624*f*, **625**
Protonephridia, **694**, **984***f*, 985
Proton gradients, 176*f*, 177
Proton-motive force, 176*f*, **177**
Proton pumps, **138***f*, 788, 789*f*, 848
Protons, 28, **30***f*, 31
Proto-oncogenes, **388**, 389*f*, 391*f*
Protoplasts, **789**
Protostome development, **681**, 682*f*, 685
Proviruses, **406**, 407*f*
Proximal control elements, 374
Proximal tubule, **987***f*–988*f*
Proximate causation, 1140
Prozac, 1081, 1103
Prusiner, Stanley, 413
Pseudemys nelsoni, 884*f*
Pseudocoelomates, 681
Pseudogenes, **450**, 480
Pseudomonas aeruginosa, 582*f*
Pseudemys hermannsburgensis, 981
Pseudopodia, **117**, 140*f*, 599*f*, **607**, 608*f*, 690
Pseudostratified columnar epithelium, 877*f*
Psilotum, 632*f*, 633
P site (peptidyl-tRNA binding site), **350***f*, 352*f*–353*f*
Psychedelic rock gecko (*Cnemaspis psychedelica*), 1260*f*
Psychoactive drugs, 1081
PTC pedigree analysis case, 284*f*, 285
Pteraspis, 725*f*
Pterois volitans, 729*f*
Pteropus mariannus, 1262*f*
Pterosaurs, **736**, 1135
Puberty, human, 1030
PubMed, 26
Puffballs, 665*f*
Puffer fish, 813*f*
Pulmocutaneous circuit, 924*f*, 925
Pulmonary circuit, 924*f*–926*f*
Pulp, fruit, 831
Pulse, **930**
Punctuated equilibria, **520***f*, 521
Puncture vine, 832*f*
Pundamilia species, 515*f*, 519*f*, 520
Punnett squares, **273***f*, 274, 281*f*–282*f*, 292–293
Pupa, 711*f*
Pupil, **1118***f*
Pure elements, 37
Purines, **84**, 85*f*, 320*f*
Purple sulfur bacteria, 188*f*
Pus, 956
Puszta, 1175*f*
Pygmy date palm, 650*f*
Pyramids
age-structure, 1209*f*
ecological, 1246, 1247*f*, 1248
Pyrenean ibex (*Capra pyrenaica pyrenaica*), 1266
Pyrimidines, **84**, 85*f*, 320*f*
Pyrococcus furiosus, 421, 585, 589
Pyrophorus nyctophanus, 143*f*
Pyruvate
ATP yield in oxidation of, 177*f*
in fermentation, 181*f*, 182
oxidation of, as stage of cellular respiration, 168, 169*f*
oxidation of, to acetyl CoA, 171*f*–172*f*
oxidation of glucose to, by glycolysis, 170*f*–171*f*
Python molurus bivittatus, 887, 888*f*
Pythons, 887, 888*f*, 892
PYY hormone, 917*f*

Q

Q (ubiquinone), 175
Qinling golden snub-nosed monkeys, 56*f*
Qualitative data, 17*f*
Quantitative approach, G. Mendel's, 270*f*, 271
Quantitative characters, **281**, 282*f*
Quantitative data, 17*f*. *See also* Scientific Skills Exercises
Quantitative RT-PCR (qRT-PCR), 424–425
Quaternary structure, protein, **81***f*
Quillworts, 631, 632*f*, 633
Quorum sensing, 213–214

R

RAAS (renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system), **995**, 996*f*
Rabbits, 914
Radial canal, sea star, 714*f*
Radial cleavage, **681**, 682*f*
Radial glia, 1090
Radial symmetry, 644*f*, 649, 679, 680*f*
Radiation, **885***f*
alterations of chromosome structure by, 307
animal heat exchange and, 885*f*
cancer and, 388, 394
as cancer treatment, 249
DNA damage from, 328
mutagenic, 360
Radicle, **829***f*–830*f*
Radioactive isotope decay curve in Scientific Skills Exercise, 33
Radioactive isotopes, **31**–33, 316*f*, 317, 529, 530*f*
Radioactive tracers, 31, 32*f*
Radiolarians, **608***f*
Radiometric dating, **32**–33, **529**, 530*f*
Radula, **699***f*
Raft spider, 45*f*
Rain, acidic, 55
Rain shadow, 1169*f*
Random dispersion, 1192*f*, 1193
Random fertilization, 266, 305
Random mating, 492*t*
Random mutations. *See* Mutations
Randomness, entropy and, 146
Range expansions, species, 1183, 1184*f*
Ranges, actual and potential, 1184
Rangifer tarandus, 490*f*, 1021, 1256*f*–1257*f*, 1281*f*
Raphides, 868*f*
Rapid eye movements (REMs), 1094
ras gene, **389**, 390*f*–391*f*
Raspberry fruit, 831*f*
Ras protein, 389, 390*f*
Rates, speciation, 520*f*–521*f*, 522
Ratfish, 719*f*, 726, 727*f*
Ratites, **739**, 740*f*
Rattlesnakes, 1084, 1111*f*
Ravens, 1147
Ray-finned fishes, 719*f*, **728***f*–729*f*, 1091*f*
Rays, 719*f*, 726, 727*f*
Reabsorption, **984***f*
Reactants, **41**
Reaction-center complexes, **196***f*
Reading frame, **341**, 358*f*
Realized niches, 1215, 1216*f*
Reasoning
deductive, 18
inductive, 17
Receptacle, flower, **823***f*
Reception, sensory, 1108*f*, 1109
Reception stage, cell-signaling, **216**
cell-surface transmembrane receptors in, 217*f*–220*f*
intracellular receptors in, 220, 221*f*
ligands, ligand binding, and receptor proteins in, 217
overview of, 216*f*
in plant signal transduction pathways, 844*f*
plasma membrane proteins as receptors in, 217*f*–220*f*
Receptive fields, 1120–1121
Receptor-mediated endocytosis, **140***f*

Receptor potential, **1109**
Receptor proteins, 76*f*
Receptors
antigen, 958*f*–961*f*
dendrites as, 1068
glutamate, 1101*f*
hormone, 1000*f*–1004*f*, 1018
opiate, 1082
sensory, 1108*f*–1111*f*, 1112
somatosensory, 1097*f*, 1098
Toll-like, 955*f*, 976
Receptor tyrosine kinases (RTKs), **219***f*, 220, 222, 250
Recessive alleles, **272**, 273*f*–276*f*, 280, 285*f*–286*f*, 287, 293, 500. *See also* Alleles
Recessively inherited human disorders, 285*f*–286*f*, 287
Recessive traits, 271*f*, 272*t*, 285*f*, 299*f*, 300
Reciprocal altruism, 1158–**1159**
Reciprocal eco-evolutionary effects, 1187*f*
Recombinant bacteria, 418*f*
Recombinant chromosomes, **266***f*
Recombinant DNA, **418**
in DNA cloning and gene cloning, 418*f*, 419
ethical issues on, 438–439
hirudin from leeches and, 704
using restriction enzymes to make, 419*f*–420*f*
Recombinants (recombinant types), **302**
Recombinase, 960, 961*f*
Recombination. *See also* Recombinant DNA
linkage maps based on frequency of, 305*f*–306*f*
of linked genes, 302, 303*f*
natural selection and genetic variation from, 305
of unlinked genes, 302*f*
Recombination frequencies, 305*f*–306*f*, 313
Reconstruction, ecosystem, 1253*f*–1254*f*
Recovery, seed plants and, 636*f*
Recruitment, motor neuron, 1130
Recruitment of predatory animals, plant, 869*f*
Rectum, **911**
Red alga (*Chondracanthus harveyanus*), 1222
Red algae, 596*f*, 599*f*, **609***f*, 610
Red-bellied black snakes, 1217
Red blood cells. *See* Erythrocytes
Red-cockaded woodpecker (*Picoides borealis*), 1269*f*–1270*f*
Red-green color blindness, 299*f*
Red light, plant responses to, 856, 857*f*, 860*f*
Red lionfish (*Pterois volitans*), 729*f*
Red mangrove, 852*f*
Red maple tree leaves, 762
Red-necked phalaropes, 1151*f*
Redox (oxidation-reduction) reactions, **165**, 166*f*–168*f*, 190–191
Red-tailed hawk, 14*f*
Red-tailed racer snake (*Gonyosoma oxycephala*), 1053*f*
Red tide, 605*f*
Reduced hybrid fertility, 509*f*
Reduced hybrid viability, 509*f*
Reducing agents, **166***f*
Reduction, 165, **166***f*, 201, 202*f*
Reductionism, 4
Redundancy, genetic code, 341, 357, 489
Redwood trees, 255*f*
Reefs, ectoproct, 698
Reference genome, **443**
Reflexes, 906*f*, **1087**, 1088*f*
Refractory period, **1075**
Regeneration, 705, 713–714, 1020
Regenerative medicine, 432
Regional adaptive radiations, 543*f*, 544
Regional conservation, 1270, 1271*f*–1274*f*
Regional human population patterns, 1208
Regression lines in Scientific Skills Exercises, 54, 205, 751
Regulation. *See also* Osmoregulation
of animal digestion, energy storage, and appetite, 914, 915*f*–917*f*, 918
by animal endocrine and nervous systems, 880*f*
of biological clocks, 1094–1095
of biological rhythms, 1015
of blood pressure, 930–931
of cell-signaling responses, 226–227, 228*f*, 229
of cellular respiration via feedback mechanisms, 183*f*, 184
of cleavage, 1049
by endocrine glands, 1011*f*–1015*f*, 1016
of enzymatic catalysis, 159, 160*f*–161*f*
extracellular matrix role in, 119
feedback, of endocrine systems, 1005–1006
feedback in, of molecular interactions, 10*f*
of gene expression. *See* Gene regulation
of growth, 1004*f*, 1009, 1010*f*
of heart rhythm, 928*f*
homeostatic feedback, 881*f*–883*f*
hormonal, of mammalian sexual reproduction, 1030, 1031*f*–1032*f*, 1033–1034
hormone cascade pathways in, 1008, 1009*f*, 1010, 1014
of human breathing, 946*f*
kidney, 994*f*–996*f*
of muscle contraction, 1128, 1129*f*, 1130
of neurons in sensory reception, 1108*f*
plant and animal, 894*f*
of population growth, 1202, 1203*f*–1206*f*, 1207
as property of life, 3*f*
thyroid, 1008, 1009*f*, 1010
Regulator animals, **881***f*
Regulatory genes, **367***f*
Regulatory proteins, 378–379, 383, 384*f*, 1128, 1129*f*, 1130
Regulatory T cells, 971
Reinforcement, hybrid zone, **518**, 519*f*
Rejection, immune system, 969–970
Relatedness, altruism and, 1158*f*–1159*f*
Relative abundance, species, **1222**. *See also* Species diversity
Relative fitness, **497**
Relay molecules, 216*f*, 217
Relay proteins, 228*f*, 229
Release factors, 352, 353*f*
Release stage, phage lytic cycle, 402*f*
Releasing hormones, 1004*f*, 1008
Renal cortex, **986***f*
Renal medulla, **986***f*
Renal pelvis, **986***f*
Renaturation, protein, 82*f*, 83
Renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system (RAAS), **995**, 996*f*
Repair, DNA, 327, 328*f*
Repetitive DNA, **450***f*
Replication fork, DNA, **323***f*
Replicative cycles, viral
of animal viruses, 404, 405*f*, 406*t*, 407*f*
general features of, 401*f*, 402
of phages, 402*f*–404*f*
Repolarization, 1075
Repressible enzymes, 368*f*, 369
Repressible operons, 367*f*, 368–369
Repressors, **367***f*, 374
Reproduction. *See also* Life cycles*;* Mating*;* Sexual life cycles
animal behavior evolution and, 1148, 1149*f*–1154*f*, 1161
bacterial rate of, 592
as cell division function, 235*f*
crustacean, 709
C. Darwin on natural selection and, 14*f*–16*f*
delayed human, in population growth, 1208
density-dependent population regulation by rates of, 1204*f*
effective population size and, 1268*f*, 1269
evolution and differential success in, 266, 267*f*
fungal, 657, 658*f*–659*f*
genetic disorders from human, 285–286
heterochrony and differential reproductive development, 544–545*f*
insect, 711
iteroparity vs. semelparity in, 1200, 1201*f*
life history traits in, 1200, 1201*f*–1202*f*
overproduction of offspring and natural selection, 475*f*, 476
plant and animal, 895*f*. *See also* Angiosperm reproduction*;* Animal reproduction
prokaryotic binary fission, 577–578
as property of life, 3*f*
protist, 594
protocell, 527, 528*f*
rapid, as source of genetic variation in viruses, 489
rapid prokaryotic, and mutation, 573, 578*f*, 579
rates of, 1194, 1195*f*, 1204*f*, 1208, 1213
sexual, as source of genetic variation, 489
sexual vs. asexual, 255*f*
of triploid organisms, 268
Reproduction, plant. *See* Angiosperm reproduction
Reproductive barriers
in hybrid zones, 518, 519*f*, 520
reproductive isolation and types of, 506–507, 508*f*–509*f*, 510
Reproductive cloning, 430*f*–431*f*
Reproductive cycles, animal, 1021*f*
Reproductive cycles, human, 1032*f*, 1033–1034
Reproductive isolation, **508**
allopatric speciation and, 511*f*–512*f*, 513
hybrid zones and, 516, 517*f*–519*f*, 520
pollinator choice and, 522*f*
reproductive barriers in, 506–507, 508*f*–509*f*, 510
sexual selection and, 515*f*
Reproductive leaves, 762*f*
Reproductive organs, human
female, 1026, 1027*f*
gametogenesis and, 1027, 1028*f*–1029*f*
male, 1025*f*, 1026
Reproductive rates, 1194, 1195*f*, 1204*f*, 1208, 1213
Reproductive success, 1024, 1042
Reproductive technologies, 1039*f*, 1040
Reptiles, 719*f*, **735**
adaptations of kidneys of, 992
amniotic eggs of, 734, 735*f*
birds, 738*f*–740*f*
breathing in, 925
characteristics of, 735*f*, 736
crocodilians, 737*f*, 738
evolution of, 679
extraembryonic membranes of, 1053*f*
hearing and equilibrium in, 1116
lepidosaurs, 737*f*, 738
in Mesozoic era, 533
origin and evolutionary radiation of, 736
thermoregulation in, 887, 888*f*
turtles, 737*f*
Research Method Figures. *See* list, xxiii
absorption spectrum determination, , 193*f*
Reservoirs
carbon, 1250*f*
nitrogen, 1251*f*
nutrient, 1249*f*
phosphorus, 1251*f*
water, 1250*f*
Residual volume, **945–946**
Resolution, 94
Resolution phase, sexual, 1034
Resource acquisition, vascular plant, 784*f*–786*f*, 787. *See also* Transport in vascular plants*;* Vascular plants
Resource competition, density-dependent population regulation by, 1204*f*
Resource partitioning, **1215**, 1216*f*
Respiration, cellular. *See* Cellular respiration
Respiration, plant and animal, 895*f*
Respiratory diseases, human, 1204*f*
Respiratory distress syndrome (RDS), 943, 944*f*
Respiratory media, 939*t*, 940
Respiratory pigments, **947***f*–948*f*, 949
Respiratory surfaces, 940
Respiratory systems. *See also* Gas exchange
adaptations of, 947*f*–949*f*
breathing to ventilate lungs in, 944, 945*f*–946*f*
effects of adrenal hormones on, 1012
internal exchange surfaces and, 875*f*
lungs and components of, 942, 943*f*
respiratory distress syndrome of, 944*f*
Response
homeostatic, **882**
immune, 952*f*, 957*f*, 962, 963*f*
inflammatory, 955*f*–956*f*
Response pathways, endocrine system, 1000*f*–1004*f*
Response stage, cell-signaling, **217**
cell-signaling specificity and coordination of responses in, 227, 228*f*
increasing signaling efficiency in, 228*f*, 229
nuclear and cytoplasmic responses in, 226*f*–227*f*
overview of, 216*f*, 217
regulation of responses in, 226–227, 228*f*, 229
signal amplification in, 226–227
signal termination in, 229
Response to environment, 3*f*, 894*f*. *See also* Environment
Rest-and-digest responses, 1089
Resting potentials, neuron, **1069**
formation of, 1069, 1070*f*
modeling of, 1071*f*

Resting potential state, action potential, 1074*f*, 1075
Restoration ecology, 1253*f*
  biological augmentation in, 1255
  biomanipulation of trophic levels in, 1227*f*
  bioremediation in, 1253, 1255*f*
  worldwide projects of, 1254*f*
Restriction enzymes, **404**, **419**
  making recombinant DNA plasmids using, 419*f*–420*f*
  polymerase chain reaction and, in gene cloning, 421, 422*f*
Restriction fragments, **419**–420
Restriction sites, **419***f*
Resurrection
  of extinct species, 1266
Reticular fibers, 878*f*
Reticular formation, 1094*f*
Reticulum, 914*f*
Retina, **1118***f*, 1122, 1138
Retinal, **1119***f*–1120*f*
Retinitis pigmentosa, 495
Retrotransposons, **451***f*
Retroviral vectors, gene therapy using, 434*f*
Retroviruses, **406***t*, 407*f*
Reverse transcriptase, **406**, 407*f*, 425*f*
Reverse transcriptase-polymerase chain reaction (RT-PCR), **424**, 424, 425*f*, 433
Reward system, brain, 1103*f*
Reward vs. risk, foraging behavior and, 1149
R groups, amino acid, 75, 76*f*–77*f*
Rhabditophora, 694, 695*f*–697*f*, 698
Rhagoletis mendax, 508*f*
Rhagoletis pomonella, 508*f*, 515–516
Rhesus monkeys, 89
Rheumatoid arthritis, 971*f*
Rhinoceros, 1199*f*, 1266
Rhizarians, 599*f*, **606**–607, 608*f*, 609
Rhizobacteria, **814***f*–816*f*, 817
Rhizobium bacteria, 592, 814*f*–816*f*, 817
Rhizoids, **625**
Rhizomes, 761*f*
Rhizopus stolonifer, 662*f*, 663
Rhizosphere, **814***f*
Rhodophytes, 609*f*, 610
Rhodopsin, **1119***f*–1121*f*
Ribbon model, 79*f*
Ribbon worms, 688*f*
Ribonucleic acid. *See* RNA
Ribose, **85**
  in ATP, 150, 151*f*
  as monosaccharide, 68*f*
  in nucleic acids, 85*f*
Ribosomal RNA (rRNA), **349**, 350*f*
  in eukaryotic cell nucleus, 102
  evolutionary rate of, 565
  gene family of, 453*f*
  interpreting comparisons of sequences of, 595
  in molecular systematics, 583
  self-splicing in production of, 346
Ribosomes, **102**, **339**
  animal cell, 100*f*
  identifying binding sites on, with sequence logos, 351
  plant cell, 101*f*
  in plant cells, 208*f*
  polyribosomes and, **355***f*
  prokaryotic, 577
  in prokaryotic and eukaryotic cells, 97*f*
  in protein synthesis, 102, 103*f*, 104
  protein synthesis in, 84
  in RNA virus replicative cycle, 405*f*
  rough ER and, 105
  structure of, 103*f*, 349, 350*f*
  in translation, 337, 339*f*, 349, 350*f*, 352*f*–353*f*
Ribozymes, 153, **346**, **528**
Ribulose, 68*f*
Rice (*Oryza sativa*), 438, 509*f*, 651, 817, 838, 850–851, 1263
Rieseberg, Loren, 521*f*
Right atrium, 926*f*–927*f*
Right ventricle, 926*f*–927*f*
Ringed seals (*Phoca hispida*), 44*f*
Ring structures
  of carbon skeletons, 60*f*
  of cellulose-synthesizing proteins, 619*f*
  of glucose, 69*f*
Ringworm, 670
Rising phase, action potential, 1074*f*, 1075
Risk factors, cardiovascular disease, 938
Risk vs. reward, foraging behavior and, 1149
Riverine wetlands, 1179*f*
River otters, 881*f*
Rivers, 1180*f*
RNA (ribonucleic acid), **84**. *See also* Messenger RNA; Nucleic acids; RNA processing; Transfer RNA
  in circadian clock genes during hibernation, 893*f*
  components of, 84, 85*f*
  development of self-replicating, 528
  in DNA replication, 323*f*, 324
  elongation of strands of, 344*f*
  in eukaryotic cells, 102
  gene density in genomes and, 449
  in gene expression, 8*f*
  in insect infection, 954*f*
  interpreting sequences of, 595
  noncoding, in gene regulation, 379, 380*f*, 381
  in plant cells, 208*f*
  post-transcriptional modification of, 345*f*–347*f*
  in regulation of cleavage, 1049
  ribosomal RNA gene family, 453*f*
  roles of, in gene expression, 84*f*
  sequencing of, 426*f*
  structure of, 86*f*
  synthesis of, in transcription, 337, 339*f*, 342, 343*f*–344*f*
  viral. *See* RNA viruses
RNA enzymes. *See* Ribozymes
RNA interference (RNAi), **380**, **427**
RNA polymerases, **342**, 343*f*–344*f*, 373*f*, 374
RNA processing, **345**
  alteration of mRNA ends in, 345*f*
  eukaryotic transcription and, 373*f*, 374
  evolutionary importance of introns in, 346, 347*f*
  in gene expression and protein synthesis, 337, 339*f*–340*f*
  regulation of eukaryotic, 378*f*
  ribozymes in, 346
  split genes and RNA splicing in, 345*f*–347*f*
  summary of eukaryotic, 356*f*
RNA sequencing (RNA-seq), **425***f*, 426, 448
RNA splicing, **345***f*–347*f*, 378*f*
RNA transcript, 343*f*–344*f*
RNA viruses
  classes of, 406*t*
  emerging viral disease and, 409–410
  HIV as, 406, 407*f*. *See also* HIV
  replicative cycles of, 401*f*, 402, 404, 405*f*
  retroviruses as, 406*t*, 407*f*
  structure of, 400*f*, 401
Robin, European, 14*f*
Rochman, Chelsea, 1163
Rock python, 903*f*
Rocks
  dating of, 529, 530*f*
  nonvascular plants and weathering of, in Ordovician period climate change, 629
  species distributions and, 1186
  weathering of, in phosphorus cycle, 1251*f*
Rod, ATP synthase, 175*f*
Rodents, 745*f*, 914
Rods (photoreceptor), **1119***f*–1121*f*, 1122–1123, 1138
Rod-shaped prokaryotes, 97*f*, 574*f*
Rolling circle replication, 580*f*
Root caps, **768***f*
Rooted phylogenetic trees, 556*f*, **557**
Root hairs, 758, 759*f*–**760***f*, 778*f*, 792
Root pressure, **793***f*, 794
Roots, **630**, 758–**759**
  apical meristems of plant, 621*f*
  architecture of, and acquisition of water and minerals, 787
  bacterial mutualism with, 592
  compositions of bacterial communities of, 814*f*
  drought responses of, 863–864
  evolution of, in vascular plants, 63
  fungal mycorrhizae and, 787
  gravitropism in, 861*f*
  monocot vs. eudicot, 649*f*
  mycorrhizae and plant, 656*f*, 657
  nitrogen-fixing bacteria and legume, 815*f*–816*f*, 817
  primary growth of, 768*f*–769*f*
  rhizoids vs., 624
  secondary growth of, 772*f*–774*f*
  seedling, 830*f*
  soil texture and, 806
  structure of, 759*f*–760*f*
  transport of water and minerals from, to shoots via xylem, 792, 793*f*–795*f*, 796
Root systems, **759***f*–760*f*
Rosbash, Michael, 883
Rosy periwinkle (*Catharanthus roseus*), 1263*f*
Rotifers, 687*f*, 697*f*, 698
Rotor, ATP synthase, 175*f*
Rough ER, 100*f*–101*f*, 104, 105*f*, 109*f*
Round dance, honeybee, 1142*f*
Round window, **1114**, 1115*f*
Roundworms, 689*f*, 705*f*, 706, 1058*f*–1059*f*, 1133*f*
Rous, Peyton, 394
Rozella allomycis, 661*f*
R plasmids, **581**
r-selection, **1202**
RTKs (receptor tyrosine kinases), **219***f*, 220, 222, 250
RU486 (mifepristone), 1039
Rubella, 409
RuBP carboxylase, **201**, 202*f*
Ruffed grouse (*Bonasa umbellus*), 1271
Rule of multiplication, 491
Rumen, 914*f*
Ruminants, 914*f*
Running, 1135–1136
Runoff
  experimental, and nutrient cycling, 1252*f*
  in nitrogen cycle, 1251*f*
  in water cycle, 1250*f*
Rupicapra rupicapra, 901*f*
Rusts, 665
Rusty-patched bumblebee (*Bombus affinis*), 1170*f*
Ryther, John, 1243*f*

S

Saccharomyces cerevisiae (yeast)
  budding of, 659*f*
  cell signaling in, 213*f*, 214
  DNA changes in cells of, in meiosis, 264
  genome size and number of genes of, 448*t*, 449
  human uses of, 670–671
  protein interaction network of, 447*f*
  toxic wastes of, in winemaking, 1204*f*
Saccule, 1115*f*
Sac fungi, 663*f*–664*f*, 665*t*
Safety issues
  on biotechnology, 438–439
  on plant biotechnology and genetic engineering, 839–840
Saguaro cactus (*Carnegiea gigantea*), 1178, 1183*f*
Sahara Desert, 525*f*, 526
Sahelanthropus tchadensis, 748*f*, 749
Salamanders, 509*f*, 513, 544, 545*f*, 719*f*, 731, 732*f*, 921*f*, 1066, 1086*f*
Salicin, 651
Salicylic acid, **867**
Salinity
  extreme halophiles and, 573*f*, 585
  lap alleles and, 505
  osmosis, water balance, and, 134
  plant responses to, 142, 865
  soil salinization and, 808
  species distributions and, 1185*f*, 1186
Saliva, 906
Salivary glands, **905**, 906*f*
Salmon, 89, 438, 978*f*, 979, 1200
Salmonella species, 588
Salmo salar, 89
Saltatory conduction, **1076***f*–1077*f*
Salt marshes, 1186, 1221*f*, 1247
Salt marsh hay (*Spartina patens*), 1186
Salts (ionic compounds), **38***f*
  in blood plasma, 934*f*
  diffusion of, across capillary walls, 932, 933*f*
  ion gradients and transport of, 993*f*
  osmoregulation of, 977*f*–982*f*
Salt stress, plant responses to, 865
Salt water, 977*f*, 979*f*, 982*f*
Salty tastes, 233, 1123*f*–1124*f*
Sampling techniques, population, 1191*f*
San Andreas fault, 539
Sand dollars, 235*f*, 689*f*, 715
Sandhill crane (*Grus canadensis*), 1144
Sandy inland mouse (*Pseudomys hermannsburgensis*), 981

Sanger, Frederick, 416
Sapwood, 774*f*
SAR clade, 599*f*, **601***f*–608*f*, 609
Sarcomeres, 879*f*, **1126***f*
Sarcoplasmic reticulum (SR), **1128***f*–1129*f*
Sarcopterygii (lobe-fins), 728, 729*f*, 730
Sargasso Sea, 1242, 1243*t*
Sarin, 158, 1080
Satellites, determining primary production with, 1242*f*
Satiety center, 917*f*
Saturated enzymes, 156
Saturated fats, 73*f*, 74, 128*f*
Saturated fatty acids, **73***f*, 74
Savannas, 750, **1174***f*
Savory tastes, 1123*f*–1124*f*
Sawfish, 1020
Scaffolding proteins, **228***f*, 229
Scala naturae (scale of nature), Aristotle's, 470
Scale bar in Scientific Skills Exercise, 99
Scale-eating fish (*Perissodus microlepis*), 500, 501*f*
Scales
  fish, 728
  reptile, 735
Scallops, 701*f*
Scanning electron microscope (SEM), **94**, 95*f*, 96
Scanning electron microscopy (SEM), 95*f*
Scarlet fever, 403
Scatter plots in Scientific Skills Exercises, 54, 136, 205, 513, 751, 1217
Sceloporus species, climate change and, 11*f*
Schindleria brevipinguis, 719
Schistosoma mansoni, 696*f*
Schistosomiasis, 696*f*
Schizophrenia, 372*f*, **1102***f*
Schmidt-Nielsen, Knut, 1136
Schwann cells, **1076***f*–1077*f*, 1090*f*
Science, **16**
  biology as study of life by, 3. *See also* Biology
  cooperative approach and model organisms in, 22–23, 24*f*. *See also* Model organisms
  diverse viewpoints in, 24
  inquiry process of, 17, 18*f*–21*f*, 22. *See also* Case studies*;* Inquiry Figures
  medical. *See* Medicine
  methods. *See* Research Method Figures
  skills. *See* Scientific Skills Exercises
  society, technology, and, 23, 24*f*
Scientific inquiry, 16–20. *See also* Case studies*;* Inquiry Figures*;* Research Method Figures*;* Scientific Skills Exercises
Scientific method, 17, 18*f*–21*f*, 22. *See also* Case studies*;* Inquiry Figures*;* Research Method Figures*;* Scientific Skills Exercises
Scientific notation in Scientific Skills Exercise, 1082
Scientific Skills Exercises. *See list*, xxi
Scion, **835**–836
Sclera, 1118*f*
Sclereids, 764*f*
Sclerenchyma cells, **764***f*, 770
Sclerenchyma tissue, 868*f*
Scolex, 697*f*
Scorpions, 707, 708*f*
Scrapie, 412
Scr gene, 545
Scrotum, **1025***f*
Scrub jays, 1099, 1162
Scutellum, 829*f*
Scyphozoans, 687*f*, 691*f*–692*f*
Sea anemones, 692*f*–693*f*
Seabirds, 1238*f*, 1244
Sea cucumbers, 715*f*
Sea daisies, 713, 714*f*
Sea horse, 729*f*
Sea lampreys, 723*f*, 724
Sea lettuce, 610*f*
Sea lilies, 715
Seals, 44*f*, 874*f*, 949*f*
Sea otters, 1189
Sea slugs, 700*f*, 1020*f*
Seasonality, 1167*f*
Seasonal turnover, lake, 1178*f*
Sea spiders, 707–708
Sea squirts, 721*f*
Sea stars, 689*f*, 713, 714*f*, 898*f*, 940*f*, 1086*f*, 1192*f*, 1226*f*
Sea urchin (*Centrostephanus rodgersii*), 1281*f*
Sea urchins, 509*f*, 689*f*, 713, 715*f*, 1044*f*–1047*f*, 1184*f*–1185*f*, 1189
Sea wasps, 692*f*
Seawater, 977*f*, 979*f*, 982*f*
Seaweed, 599*f*, 602, 603*f*, 604, 609*f*, 610, 1184*f*
Secondary cell walls, **118**
Secondary consumers, **1240***f*
  trophic efficiency of, 1246, 1247*f*, 1248
Secondary endosymbiosis, **596***f*–597*f*
Secondary growth, plant, **766**, 783
  cork cambium and periderm production in, 774
  evolution of, 774
  meristem generation of cells for, 766*f*–767*f*
  vascular cambium and secondary vascular tissue for, 772*f*–775*f*
Secondary immune response, **962**, **963***f*
Secondary oocytes, **1029***f*
Secondary production, **1246**
  in arctic tundra ecosystem, 1256*f*–1257*f*
  production efficiency in, 1246*f*
  in salt marsh ecosystem, 1247
  trophic efficiency and ecological pyramids in, 1246, 1247*f*, 1248
Secondary structure, protein, **80***f*
Secondary succession, 1230–**1231**
Secondary vascular tissue, 772*f*–774*f*
Second law of thermodynamics, 143, 145*f*, **146**, 1239
Second messengers, **223**, **844**
  calcium ions, inositol trisphosphate, and diacylglycerol as, 224, 225*f*
  cyclic AMP as, 223*f*–224*f*
  in hormone pathways, 1002, 1003*f*
  in plant signal transduction, 844*f*, 845
Secretin, 915*f*, 1005*f*
Secretion, excretory system, **984***f*
Secretions
  animal hormone, 1001*f*–1004*f*
  cell signaling and. *See* Animal hormones*;* Neurohormones
  digestive, 898, 907*f*–908*f*, 909–910, 915*f*
  protective, 898
Secretory phase, 1032*f*, 1033
Secretory proteins, 105
Secretory systems, prokaryotic, 577
Secretory tubules, marine bird, 982*f*
Sedentarians, 703*f*–704*f*, 705
Sedimentary strata, 470*f*, 529*f*
Seed coat, **828***f*–829*f*
Seedless vascular plants, **622**
  gametophyte-sporophyte relationships in, 637*f*, 638
  importance of, 633*f*, 634
  life cycles of, 630*f*
  origin and traits of, 628*f*–631*f*
  phylogeny of, 622*t*, 631, 632*f*, 633
Seedling development, 829, 830*f*
Seed plants. *See also* Angiosperms*;* Gymnosperms*;* Plants
  adaptations of, 653
  angiosperms, 637*f*, 638, 644*f*–650*f*. *See also* Angiosperms
  gymnosperms, 637*f*–643*f*
  importance of, to Earth's ecosystems, 636*f*
  importance of, to human welfare, 651*f*, 652
  phylogeny of, 623*f*
  seeds and pollen grains as terrestrial adaptations of, 637*f*–638*f*, 639
  threats to biodiversity of, 651*f*, 652
Seeds, **622**–623, 636–**637**, **828**
  abscisic acid in dormancy of, 852
  development of, 826, 827*f*–829*f*
  dispersal of, 832*f*
  dormancy of, 639
  evolutionary advantage of, 639
  fruits and angiosperm, 645*f*
  gibberellins in germination of, 851*f*
  glyoxysomes in, 112
  phytochromes in germination of, 856, 857*f*
  plant seedlings development from, 828*f*–830*f*
  strigolactones in germination of, 855
Segmentation, 1066
Segmented worms, 688*f*
Segregation, law of, 271*f*–275*f*, 296, 297*f*
Seizures, 1076
Selective breeding, 474, 475*f*, 841
Selective permeability, **131**, 132*f*, 1071*f*
Self-assembly, protocell, 527, 528*f*
Self-assembly stage, phage lytic cycle, 402*f*
Self-fertilization, 834, 835*f*, 840–841, 1042
Self-incompatibility, **834**, 835*f*, 840–841
Selfing, 834, 835*f*, 840–841
Self-pollination, 271*f*
Self-pruning, 786
Self-replicating molecules, 526, 527*f*–528*f*
Self-splicing, 346
Self-thinning, 801
Self-tolerance, 961
Semelparity, **1200**, 1201*f*
Semen, **1026**, 1034
Semicircular canals, **1113***f*, 1115*f*, 1116
Semiconservative model, DNA replication, **321***f*–322*f*
Semilunar valves, **927***f*
Seminal vesicles, 1025*f*, **1026**
Seminiferous tubules, **1025***f*
Senescence, **853**–854
Senile dementia, 83
Sensitive period, **1144**, 1145*f*
Sensitive plants (*Mimosa pudica*), 802, 862*f*
Sensors, homeostatic, **882***f*
Sensory adaptation, **1109**–1110
Sensory areas, cerebral cortex, 1096, 1097*f*–1098*f*
Sensory input, 1068*f*, 1096, 1097*f*–1098*f*
Sensory neurons, 1068, 1069*f*, **1088***f*
Sensory pathways, 1108*f*–1109*f*
Sensory reception, **1108***f*, 1109
Sensory receptors, **1108***f*–1111*f*, 1112
Sensory systems
  animal and plant, 894*f*
  arthropod, 707*f*
  mechanoreceptors for hearing and equilibrium in, 1112*f*–1116*f*
  motor systems and, 1107*f*–1108*f*. *See also* Motor systems
  muscle function and, 1125, 1126*f*–1131*f*, 1132
  sensory receptors in, 1108*f*–1111*f*, 1112
  shark, 727
  skeletal systems, locomotion, and, 1132*f*–1135*f*, 1136
  snake, 738
  taste and smell receptors in, 1123*f*–1125*f*
  visual receptors in, 1117*f*–1122*f*, 1123
Sensory transduction, **1109**, 1120*f*
Sepals, **644***f*, **823***f*
Separase, 240
Separate electron orbitals model, 35*f*
Septa, **656***f*
September equinox, 1167*f*
Septic shock, 957, 976
Sequence-based phylogenetic tree in Scientific Skills Exercise, 411
Sequence logo in Scientific Skills Exercise, 351
Sequencing by synthesis, 415*f*–417*f*. *See also* DNA sequencing
Sequoiadendron giganteum, 774*f*
Sequoia trees, 643*f*, 774*f*
Serial endosymbiosis, **534**, 535*f*
Serine, 77*f*, 222
Serotonin, 1081*t*
Serpentine plant communities, 30*f*
Sertoli cells, 1031*f*
Serum, 934
Seta, **625**
Set point, homeostatic, **882***f*
Severe combined immunodeficiency (SCID), 434*f*, 971
Sewage treatment, 586, 591
Sex
  chromosomal basis of, 298*f*, 299
  genomic imprinting and, 310*f*, 311
Sex attractant, 43
Sex chromosomes, **257**
  aneuploidy of, 309
  human, 256*f*–257*f*, 258
  patterns of inheritance of, 298*f*–300*f*
Sex determination, 1030
Sex hormones
  endocrine disruptors and, 1015
  as environmental toxins, 1276
  functional groups and, 62*f*
  in regulation of mammalian reproduction, 1030, 1031*f*–1032*f*, 1033–1034
  in sex determination, 1030
  smooth ER synthesis of, 104–105
  as steroids, 75*f*, 1014, 1015*f*

Sex-linked genes, 298*f*–300*f*, **299**
Sex pili, 576, 580*f*, 581
Sex reversal, 1020
Sexual dimorphism, **499***f*, 752, 1149–1150, 1151*f*
Sexual intercourse, human, 1034, 1081–1082
Sexual life cycles. *See also* Life cycles
  alternation of fertilization and meiosis in, 256*f*–258*f*, 259
  angiosperm, 826, 827*f*, 828
  asexual reproduction vs., 255*f*
  chromosomal basis of Mendelian inheritance in, 294*f*, 295. *See also* Chromosomal basis of inheritance
  evolution from genetic variation produced in, 265*f*–267*f*
  genetics of heredity and genetic variation in, 254–255
  graphing DNA changes in meiosis of, 264
  human chromosome sets in, 256*f*–257*f*, 258
  inheritance of chromosomes and genes in, 255
  karyotypes of chromosomes in, 256*f*
  mitosis vs. meiosis in, 262, 263*f*, 264
  protist, 594
  stages of meiosis in, 259*f*–262*f*
  varieties of, 258*f*, 259
Sexually transmitted diseases (STDs), 600*f*, 1038–1039. *See also* AIDS; HIV
Sexually transmitted infections (STIs), 1038–1039
Sexual reproduction, **255**. *See also* Sexual life cycles
  in angiosperms. *See* Angiosperm reproduction
  in animals, 674*f*, 675. *See also* Animal reproduction
  asexual reproduction vs., 255*f*, 833–834
  in bryophytes, 623, 624*f*–627*f*
  flowers and angiosperm, 644*f*
  in fungi, 658*f*
  inheritance in, 255
  microevolution from sexual selection in, 499*f*–500*f*
  as source of genetic variation, 489
  switch to, 268
Sexual reproduction, animal, **1020**. *See also* Animal reproduction; Human reproduction
  asexual reproduction vs., 1021, 1022*f*
  as evolutionary enigma, 1021, 1022*f*
  fertilization mechanisms in, 1022*f*–1024*f*
  reproductive cycles in, 1021*f*
  variations in patterns of, 1020*f*
Sexual response, human, 1034
Sexual selection, **499***f*–500*f*, 515*f*, 1151, 1152*f*–1153*f*, 1154
S-genes, 835
Shade avoidance, plant, 857
Shaffer, Mark, 1268
Shannon diversity index (*H*), **1222**, 1223*f*
Shapes
  cell, 116–117
  enzyme, 155*f*, 156, 160*f*–161*f*
  insect pollinators and flower, 649*f*
  molecular, 39*f*–40*f*
  morphogenesis and cell, 1056*f*–1057*f*
  of organic compounds, 59*f*
  prokaryotic, 574*f*
Shared ancestral characters, **560**, 561*f*
Shared derived characters, **560**, 561*f*
Shark Bay, 532*f*
Sharks, 442*f*, 719*f*, 726, 727*f*, 890*f*, 979, 1091*f*
Shelf fungi, 665*f*
Shell drilling adaptation, 542
Shells, electron, 32*f*, **34**, 35*f*, 36
Shewanella oneidensis, 1255*f*
Shivering thermogenesis, 887, 888*f*
Shoots, 848*f*
  apical meristems of plant, 621*f*
  light capture and architecture of, 785, 786*f*, 787
  photosynthesis and architecture of, 804
  phytochromes and, 871
  primary growth of, 769*f*–771*f*
  transport of water and minerals from roots to, via xylem, 792, 793*f*–795*f*, 796
Shoot systems, **759***f*
Short-day plants, **859***f*
Short tandem repeats (STRs), **436**, 437*f*, **452**, 462
Short-term memory, **1100**–1101
Shrews, 1234, 1235*f*
Shrimp, 464*f*, 512*f*, 513, 708–709
Siamese cats, 364
Siberian tiger (*Panthera tigris altaica*), 1288
Sickle-cell disease, **82***f*, **286**, **935**
  abnormal hemoglobin in, 935
  CRISPR-Cas9 system for, 360, 361*f*
  emergent properties of, 505
  evolution of, 503*f*
  genetic diagnosis of, 433
  heterozygote advantage in, 501
  inheritance of, 293
  pleiotropy and, 280
  point mutations and, 357*f*, 488, 502*f*
  protein primary structure changes and, 82*f*
  as recessively inherited, 286*f*, 287
  scientific cooperation and, 22–23
Sickle-cell trait, 286
Side-blotched lizards, 1154*f*
Side chains, amino acid, 75, 76*f*–77*f*
Sidedness, cellular membrane, 131*f*
Sieve plates, **765***f*, 799–800
Sieve-tube elements, **765***f*
Sieve tubes, 799, 800*f*–801*f*
Signaling molecules, 215*f*, 216. *See also* Animal hormones; Neurohormones; Neurotransmitters
Signaling molecules, endocrine system, 1000*f*–1004*f*. *See also* Animal hormones
Signal peptides, **354***f*
Signal-recognition particles (SRPs), **354***f*
Signals, animal, **1141***f*–1143*f*
Signal transduction, **1002**
  in hormone pathways, 1002, 1003*f*
  membrane proteins and, 130*f*
Signal transduction pathways, **216**
  cancer and interference with normal, 389*f*–390*f*, 391
  in cell signaling, 212, 216*f*, 221–222, 233
  coordinate control of, 376
  differential gene expression and induction in, 382*f*, 383
  evolution of, 213
  linking signal reception to plant responses, 843*f*–844*f*, 845
  neurotransmitters and, 1080
  second messengers in, 223*f*–225*f*
  in sensory amplification, 1109–1110
  in visual sensory transduction, 1120*f*
  in yeast cell mating, 214
Sign language, 1106
Sign stimulus, **1140***f*
Silencing, gene expression, 427
Silencing, transcription, 374
Silent mutations, **357**, 358*f*
Silent Spring (Carson), 1276
Silicon-based life, 65
Silk, 80*f*, 708, 951
Silk moth, 1006*f*, 1007
Silkworm moths, 1110, 1111*f*
Silverfish, 712*f*
Silversword plants, 543*f*, 558, 1183
Simple columnar epithelium, 877*f*
Simple endocrine pathway, 1004, 1005*f*
Simple fruits, **831***f*
Simple leaves, 761*f*
Simple neuroendocrine pathway, 1005*f*
Simple sequence DNA, **452**
Simple squamous epithelium, 877*f*
Single bonds, **36**, 37*f*
Single-celled organisms, 5*f*, 93, 532*f*–535*f*, 594. *See also* Protists
Single circulation, **924***f*, 925
Single-lens eyes, **1118***f*–1119
Single nucleotide polymorphisms (SNPs), **427***f*, 428, 433–434, 441, 461–462, 466
Single-strand binding proteins, **323***f*, 327*t*
Single-stranded DNA (ssDNA) viruses, 406*t*
Single-stranded RNA (ssRNA) viruses, 405*f*, 406*t*
Sinoatrial (SA) node, **928***f*
Sirenia, 745*f*
Sister chromatid cohesion, 236, 259
Sister chromatids, **236***f*, 237, 257*f*, 260*f*–263*f*, 264, 266*f*
Sister species, 512*f*
Sister taxa, **555**, **556***f*
Situs inversus, 1064*f*
Sixth mass extinction, 541*f*, 542
Size
  brain, 756, 1091*f*
  carrying capacity and population, 1197, 1198*f*–1199*f*, 1198*t*, 1200
  changes in population, 1196
  determining population, using mark-recapture method, 1191*f*
  ecosystem, 1239f
  evolution of axon, 1076*f*–1077*f*
  extinction risks in small population, 1266, 1267*f*–1268*f*, 1269
  of genomes, 448*t*, 449
  of global human population, 1207*f*–1210*f*, 1211, 1213
  Hardy-Weinberg equilibrium and population, 492*t*
  of *Homo floresiensis*, 754
  of hormones, 216
  of insects, 951
  latitude and animal, 897
  life history traits and, 1200, 1201*f*–1202*f*
  locomotion costs and, 1136
  metabolic rate and animal body, 891*f*
  of plasmodesmatal pores, 802
  prokaryotic cell, 573–574
  of prokaryotic vs. eukaryotic cells, 6*f*, 98
  protist, 593*f*
  of skeletons, 1134
Skeletal muscle, **879***f*, **1126**. *See also* Muscle
  in human breathing, 945*f*
  locomotion from contraction of, in skeletal systems, 1132*f*–1135*f*, 1136
  muscle fibers of, 1130, 1131*t*
  regulation of contraction of, 1128*f*–1130*f*
  sliding-filament model of contraction of, 1126, 1127*f*, 1128
  structure of, 1125, 1126*f*
Skeletal systems
  bones and joints of human, 1134*f*
  cartilage, 723–726
  energy costs of locomotion by, 1136
  locomotion from interaction of muscles and skeletons in, 1132*f*, 1135*f*, 1136
  origins of, 725
  types of, 1132, 1133*f*–1134*f*
Skeletons, carbon, 60*f*–61*f*
Skills, scientific. *See* Scientific Skills Exercises
Skin
  cancer of, 328, 1284
  coloration, 1016, 1018
  gas exchange and, 924*f*, 925
  heat exchange and, in animals, 885
  mechanoreceptors in human, 1110*f*
  pigmentation of human, 281, 282*f*
Skinner, B. F., 1146
Skulls, human vs. chimpanzee, 544*f*, 558
Skunks, 508*f*, 1218*f*
Sleep, ACTH secretion during, 1014
Sleep, brain functions and, 1094*f*
Sleeping sickness, 65, 600, 601*f*, 713, 972
Sleep movements, plant, 857, 858*f*
Sliding-filament model, **1126**, 1127*f*, 1128
Slime, hagfish, 723*f*
Slime bacteria, 213*f*
Slime layer, 575
Slime molds, 612*f*–613*f*
Slope in Scientific Skills Exercises, 157, 1049
Slow block to polyspermy, 1045
Slow-twitch fibers, **1131**
Slugs, 699–700, 1155, 1156*f*
Small interfering RNAs (siRNAs), **380***f*
Small intestine, 695*f*, **908**
  absorption in, 909*f*–910*f*
  adaptations of, 912*f*
  cells of, 125
  digestion in, 908*f*, 909
Small populations, conservation of, 1266, 1267*f*–1268*f*, 1269
Smallpox, 408–409, 968
Smithells, Richard, 902*f*
Smooth ER, 100*f*–101*f*, 104, 105*f*, 109*f*
Smooth muscle, **879***f*, **1131**–1132
Smuts, 665
Snails, 508*f*, 522, 538, 688*f*, 699, 700*f*, 702*f*, 1067*f*–1068
Snakes, 498, 499*f*, 719*f*, 735, 737*f*, 738, 925, 968, 1053*f*, 1111*f*, 1217, 1218*f*, 1264
  gene flow in Lake Erie water snake, 496, 497*f*
  prey selection of, 1155, 1156*f*

Snapdragons, 279*f*
Snapping shrimp, 512*f*, 513
Snook, Rhonda, 1024*f*
Snow geese, 1256*f*–1257*f*
Snow pea, 650*f*
Snowshoe hares (*Lepus americanus*), 501*f*, 1205*f*
Soapberry bugs, 477*f*, 478, 1187
Social behavior, 1159*f*, 1160
Social learning, **1147***f*–1148*f*, 1153
Social play, 1159
Society
  plant biotechnology and, 840
  population age structure and, 1208
Society, science and, 19*f*, 23, 24*f*
Sociobiology, 1159–1160
Sociobiology: The New Synthesis (book), 1159
Sockeye salmon (*Oncorhynchus nerka*), 978*f*
Sodium, 29*t*
Sodium chloride
  elimination of excess, by marine birds, 982*f*
  human diets and, 901
  kidney processing of, 988*f*–990*f*, 991
  osmoregulation of, 992, 993*f*
  plant responses to excessive, 865
  as table salt, 29*f*, 38*f*, 49*f*
  in treating diarrhea, 139
Sodium ions, 1070*t*, 1071*f*
Sodium-potassium pump, **137**, **1069**–1070
  as active transport, 136, 137*f*
  neuron resting potential and, 1070*f*–1071*f*
  ouabain and, 1084
Software, bioinformatics, 444, 445*f*–448*f*
Soil
  acid precipitation and, 821
  antibiotics from bacteria in, 590
  bacteria in, 584*f*, 586*f*, 814*f*–816*f*, 817
  bryophyte reduction of nitrogen leaching from, 627*f*
  determining diversity of bacteria in, 1223*f*
  fossils in, 529*f*
  fungi in, 656*f*
  limiting nutrients in, 1244
  plant resource acquisition from, 787
  plant response to excessive salt in, 142, 865
  species distributions and, 1186
  sustainable agriculture and conservation of, 807*f*–809*f*
  texture and composition of, 806*f*–807*f*
Soil conservation, 807*f*–809*f*
Soil horizons, **806***f*
Soil worm model organism. *See Caenorhabditis elegans*
Solar cycle, 1282
Solar energy
  absorption of, determining primary production with, 1242*f*
  in energy flow and chemical cycling, 9*f*, 1240f
  global energy budget and, 1241
  in photosynthesis, 41*f*, 187*f*
  primary production in aquatic ecosystems and limitations of, 1242
Solidago canadensis, 812
Solute potential, **789**, 804
Solute potential equation, 804
Solutes, **49**
  animal osmoregulation of, 981, 982*f*
  diffusion of, 132, 133*f*
  diffusion of, across capillary walls, 932, 933*f*
  effects of, on water potential, 789–790
  ion gradients and transport of, 993*f*
  kidney gradients of, 989, 990*f*, 991
  osmoregulation of, 977*f*–982*f*
  short-distance transport of, across plant plasma membranes, 788, 789*f*
  solvents and, 49*f*, 50
  transport of, from roots to shoots via xylem, 792, 793*f*–795*f*, 796
  transport of, from sources to sinks via phloem, 799, 800*f*–801*f*
Solutions, **49***f*, 50
Solvents, **49***f*, 50
Somatic cells, **236**, **255**
Somatosensory cortex, 1097*f*, 1098
Somites, 720, 1054*f*, **1055**
Songs, bird learning of, 1147
Sonic hedgehog growth factor, 1063–1064
Soredia, **668**, 669*f*
Sorghum, 813*f*
Sori, **631**
Soufriere Hills volcano, 551
Sound receptors, 1110, 1112*f*–1116*f*
Sour tastes, 1123*f*–1124*f*
South Africa, restoration projects in, 1254*f*
South America, 743–744
South American vampire bats, 991*f*, 992
South Atlantic Subtropical Gyre, 1168*f*
Southern flying squirrel (*Glaucomys volans*), 517
Southern stingray (*Dasyatis americana*), 727*f*
South Pacific Subtropical Gyre, 1168*f*
Soybeans, 211, 493, 815*f*–816*f*, 817, 1015
Space-filling models, 36, 37*f*, 39*f*, 59*f*, 74*f*, 79*f*, 319*f*
Spain, 573*f*
Spanish flu pandemic, 410
Spartina patens, 1186
Spatial learning, 1144, **1145***f*
Spatial summation, 1079*f*
Spawning, 1022–1023
Speciation, **507**
  allopatric, 511*f*–512*f*, 513
  allopatric vs. sympatric, 511*f*, 516
  as conceptual bridge between microevolution and macroevolution, 507, 523
  Darwinian theory of, 473, 474*f*–476*f*
  genetics of, 522*f*, 523
  of humans, 524
  hybrid zones and reproductive isolation in, 516, 517*f*–519*f*, 520
  as origin of species in Darwinian evolution, 506*f*, 507
  orthologous genes and, 566
  reproductive isolation and biological species concept in, 507*f*–510*f*
  species selection and differential, 548–549
  sympatric, 513, 514*f*–515*f*, 516
  time course of, 520*f*–521*f*, 522
Speciation clock, 522
Species, **507**
  biological concept of, 507*f*–510*f*
  classification of, 12*f*–13*f*, 470, 554, 555*f*
  communities of. *See* Communities
  comparing developmental processes of, 463*f*–464*f*
  comparing genomes of, 459, 460*f*–462*f*
  complete genome sequences for, 448*t*
  cross-species gene expression in evolution of, 423
  C. Darwin's theory of origin and evolution of, 14*f*–16*f*, 473, 474*f*–476*f*. *See also* Evolution; Speciation
  discovery of new, 1164*f*, 1185, 1260*f*
  distributions of. *See* Species distributions
  diversity of. *See* Species diversity
  edge, 1271
  endangered or threatened, 1261, 1262*f*, 1272*f*, 1288
  extinction of mollusc, 702*f*
  foundation, 1214, 1226
  fusion of, 519*f*, 520
  genome size, number of genes, gene density, and noncoding DNA for, 448*t*, 449
  geographic distribution of, 482*f*, 483
  homologous genes in, 565*f*, 566
  interactions between. *See* Interspecific interactions
  interactions of, 1214*f*–1221*f*, 1237
  introduced, 1223, 1264*f*, 1287
  keystone, 1226*f*, 1270
  large-impact, 1225, 1226*f*
  loss of amphibian, 733
  metagenomics and genome sequencing of groups of, 444
  morphological and ecological concepts of, 507, 508*f*–509*f*, 510
  number of named, 1261
  phylogenies as history of, for species, 554*f*–556*f*. *See also* Phylogenies
  populations of. *See* Populations
  resurrection of extinct, 1266
  in tree of life, 15*f*–16*f*
  tropical deforestation and extinctions of, 651*f*, 652
  using phylogenetic gene trees to identify, of whale meat, 557*f*
Species-area curve, **1232***f*
Species distributions
  abiotic factors in, 1178, 1183*f*–1186*f*
  in aquatic biomes, 1178
  biotic factors in, 1178, 1183*f*–1184*f*
  climate and, 1164, 1170*f*
  determinants of, 1164*f*
  dispersal in, 1183, 1184*f*
  evolution and, 1183, 1189
  natural range expansion, 1183, 1184*f*
Species diversity, **1222***f*
  benefits of, to humans, 1262, 1263*f*
  biodiversity crisis and, 1260*f*–1262*f*
  biogeographical factors affecting, 1231, 1232*f*–1233*f*
  bottom-up and top-down controls in, 1226, 1227*f*
  climate change effects on, 1279
  community stability and, 1223*f*
  disturbances influencing, 1228, 1229*f*–1231*f*
  human impacts on, 1231*f*
  large-impact species in, 1225, 1226*f*
  as level of biodiversity, 1261*f*–1262*f*
  protection of, 1260
  resurrection of, 1266
  species richness and relative abundance in, 1222*f*
  sustainable development and, 1284, *1285f*, 1286
  threats to, 1260*f*, 1261, 1263, 1264*f*–1266*f*
  trophic structure and, 1223, 1224*f*–1227*f*. *See also* Trophic structure
Species richness, **1222**
  biogeographic factors affecting, 1231, 1232*f*–1233*f*
  species-area curves of, 1232*f*
  in species diversity, 1222*f*. *See also* Species diversity
Species selection, 548–549
Species transplants, 1184
Specific heat, **46**, 47*f*
Specificity
  cell-signaling, 227, 228*f*
  enzyme substrate, 155*f*, 156
  polymerase chain reaction, 421, 422*f*
  viral, 401
Specific transcription factors, 374*f*–375*f*, 845
Spectrophotometer, **193***f*
Speech
  brain function and, 1098*f*
  FOXP2 gene and, 461, 462*f*
Spemann, Hans, 1060, 1061*f*–1062*f*
Sperm, **1020**
  biased usage of, in female fruit flies, 1024*f*
  chromosomes in human, 236–237
  conception and, 1035*f*
  in fertilization, 1022*f*–1024*f*, 1044*f*, 1045
  flagellated, in plants, 619
  human spermatogenesis and, 1027, 1028*f*, 1031*f*, 1042
  mammalian sex determination and, 298*f*
  seed plant. *See* Pollen grains
Spermathecae, 711, **1024***f*
Spermatids, 1028*f*
Spermatocytes, 1028*f*
Spermatogenesis, **1027**, 1028*f*, 1031*f*, 1042
Spermatogonia, **1028***f*
Spermicidal foam or jelly, 1038*f*
Spermophilus parryii, 893
Sphagnum moss, **627***f*, 628
S phase, **237***f*
Sphenodon punctatus, 737*f*
Spherical prokaryotes, 574*f*
Sphincters, 906*f*, **907**
  precapillary, 932*f*
Sphygmomanometer, 931*f*
Spiders, 45*f*, 707, 708*f*, 951
Spikemosses, 631, 632*f*, 633
Spilogale species, 508*f*
Spina bifida, 1055
Spinal cord, 1086*f*–1089*f*
Spines, 762*f*
Spines, sea star, 714*f*
Spinnerets, 708
Spiny-headed worms, 687*f*
Spiny mouse, 1216*f*
Spiral cleavage, **681**, 682*f*
Spiral phyllotaxy, 786*f*
Spiral prokaryotes, 574*f*
Spiral valve, shark, 727
Spirobranchus giganteus, 703*f*
Spirochetes, 584*f*
Spirodela oligorrhiza, 101*f*

Spliceosomes, **346***f*
Split-brain effect, 1098
Sponges
  phylogeny of, 682, 683*f*, 684, 687*f*, 690*f*, 691
Spongin, 690
Spongocoel, **690***f*
Spongy mesophyll, 771*f*
Spontaneous abortions, 306, 1039
Spontaneous change, 148*f*
Spontaneous mutations, 360, 388
Spontaneous processes, **146**
Sporangia, **621***f*, 625, 631, 640*f*, 641, 662*f*
Spores, **620***f*, **657**
  in alternation of generations, 258*f*
  brown algae, 603*f*, 604
  cell signaling and bacterial, 213*f*
  fossilized plant, 622*f*
  fungal, 654, 655*f*, 657, 658*f*–659*f*, 662*f*–663*f*
  meiosis and production of, 270*n*
  of plants, 620*f*–621*f*
  seeds vs., 639
  variations of, in vascular plants, 631
Sporophylls, **631**
Sporophytes, **620***f*, 823
  in alternation of generations, 258*f*
  brown algae, 603*f*, 604
  of bryophytes, 625, 626*f*
  gametophyte relationships with, in plants, 637*f*, 638
  in pine tree life cycle, 640*f*, 641
  of plants, 620*f*–621*f*
  of seedless vascular plants, 628*f*–630*f*
Sporopollenin, **619**, 621*f*, 638
Sporozoites, 605, 606*f*
Spotted ratfish (*Hydrolagus colliei*), 727*f*
Spotted skunks (*Spilogale* species), 508*f*
Spruce, 1230*f*–1231*f*
Squamates, 737*f*, 738
Squamous epithelium, 877*f*
Squids, 688*f*, 699, 701*f*, 702, 1086*f*
Squirrel monkeys, 1122*f*
Squirrels, 832*f*
  Arctic ground, 893
  Belding's ground, 1156, 1158, 1159*f*, 1193*t*, 1194*f*, 1195, 1213
  flying, 481*f*, 517
Srb, Adrian, 337, 338*f*
SRY gene, 298–299
S-shaped logistic growth curve, 1198*f*–1199*f*
Stability, community, 1223*f*, 1228
Stability, equilibrium as, 147, 148*f*
Stability, hybrid zone, 519*f*, 520
Stability, population, 1205*f*, 1208
Stabilizing selection, **498***f*
Stable isotopes, 31
Staghorn coral, 1234
Staghorn fern, 819*f*
Stahl, Franklin, 322*f*
Stalk-eyed flies, 1152*f*
Stamens, 270*f*, 271, **644***f*, **823***f*
Staminate flowers, 834
Standard metabolic rate (SMR), **891**–892
Stanley, Wendell, 399
Staphylococcus aureus, 214*f*, 478*f*, 584*f*
Star anise, 650*f*, 653
Starches, **70**
  as fuel for catabolism, 182*f*
  as product of photosynthesis, 206, 207*f*
  as storage polysaccharides, 70*f*, 71
Starfish. *See* Sea stars
Starling, European, 1264
Star-nosed moles, 1107*f*–1108*f*
Start codons, 341*f*, 350
Start point, transcription, **343***f*
Statins, 938
Stationary cilia, 1064
Statistics, 17
Statocysts, **1112***f*
Statoliths, **861***f*, **1112***f*
Stator, ATP synthase, 175*f*
Steinbeck, John, 807*f*
Stele, **763**, 769*f*
Stem cells, **428**, **935**
  animal embryonic and adult, 430, 431*f*
  animal induced pluripotent, 431, 432*f*
  generation of differentiated cells from, 431*f*
  glia as, 1090*f*
  plant, 766
  potential of, 428
  in replacement of blood components, 935*f*, 936
  in spermatogenesis, 1042
Stems, 758, **761**
  ethylene in triple response of, to mechanical stress, 853*f*
  gibberellins in elongation of, 851*f*
  monocot vs. eudicot, 649*f*
  primary and secondary growth of, 766*f*–767*f*
  primary growth of, 769*f*–771*f*, 775*f*
  secondary growth of, 772*f*–775*f*
  structure of, 761*f*
Stenohaline animals, 978
Stents, 937*f*
Steppes, 1175*f*
Sterility
  hybrid, 509*f*, 522–523
  transgenic plant, 839–840
Sterilization, human, 1038*f*, 1039
Steroid hormones, 75
  coordinate control of genes by, 375–376
  functional groups and, 62*f*
  as intracellular chemical signals, 220, 221*f*
  as lipids, 75*f*
  smooth ER synthesis of, 104–105
Steroids, **75**
  adrenal gland and, 1012*f*, 1013
  brassinosteroids as, 854–855
  as environmental toxins, 1276
  in human endocrine system, 1004*f*
  as lipid-soluble hormones, 1001*f*
  receptors for, 1003*f*
  sex hormones as, 1014, 1015*f*
Steward, F. C., 428
Stickleback fish (*Gasterosteus aculeatus*), 481, 546*f*, 547, 1140*f*
Sticky end, DNA, **420**
Stigma, **644***f*
Stigma, angiosperm, **823***f*
Stimulus, **882**
  environmental, 1140*f*–1141*f*
  homeostatic, 882
  sensory, 1108*f*–1109*f*
  in stimulus-response chains, 1141*f*, 1142
Stingrays, 726, 727*f*
Stink bugs, 712*f*
Stipes, **602**, 603*f*
Stock, **835**–836
Stolons, 761*f*
Stomach, **907**
  adaptations of, 912*f*
  bacteria in, 912, 913*f*
  digestion in, 907*f*–908*f*
  dynamics of, 908
Stomach ulcers, 584*f*
Stomata, **189**, **621**, **771***f*, 777*f*
  of CAM plants, 205, 206*f*
  of horsetail, 635
  ion gradients and, 993*f*
  in photosynthesis, 189*f*
  photosynthesis–water loss compromise, 787
  plant, 622
  regulation of transpiration by opening and closing of, 796, 797*f*–799*f*
  sporophyte, 625
  transpiration and, 203
Stop codons, 341*f*, 352, 353*f*
Storage leaves, 762*f*
Storage polysaccharides, 70*f*, 71
Storage proteins, 76*f*
Storage roots, 760*f*
Storms, 1172, 1228
  climate change and, 11
Stramenopiles, 599*f*, 602*f*–604*f*
Strangling aerial roots, 760*f*
Strasburger, Eduard, 794
Strata, **470***f*, 529*f*
Strathdee, Steffanie, 872
Stratified squamous epithelium, 877*f*
Strawberry poison dart frogs, 524
Streams, 1180*f*, 1274
Streptococcus, 575*f*, 584*f*, 691
Streptococcus pneumoniae, 315*f*, 579, 957
Streptococcus pyogenes, 404*f*
Stress
  adrenal gland response to, 1012*f*–1013*f*, 1014
  ethylene in plant responses to, 853*f*
  immune systems and, 971
  response to, 1003
Stretch receptors, 1110
Striated muscle, 879*f*, 1126. *See also* Skeletal muscle
Striga, 855
Strigolactones, 846*t*, 850, **855**
Strobili, **631**
Strokes, **937***f*, 938–939
Stroke volume, **927**
Stroma, **110**, 111*f*, **189***f*, 191*f*, 192, 200*f*, 201
Stromatolites, 532*f*, **533**
Structural formulas, 36, 37*f*, 59*f*, 74*f*
Structural isomers, **61***f*
Structural polysaccharides, 70*f*–72*f*
Structural proteins, 76*f*
Structure, function and, 6
Strychnine, 1220
Studies. *See* Inquiry Figures
Sturnella magna, 507*f*
Sturnella neglecta, 507*f*
Sturtevant, Alfred H., 305*f*–306*f*
Styles, flower, **644***f*, **823***f*
Subatomic particles, 30*f*, 31
Suberin, 774
Subsidence, land, 808*f*
Substance P, 1081*t*
Substrate feeders, **903***f*
Substrate-level phosphorylation, 168, **169***f*
Substrates, **155***f*, 156, 160*f*–161*f*
Succulent Karoo restoration project, 1254*f*
Succulent plants, 205, 206*f*
Suckling, 1036
Sucrase, 153, 155
Sucrose
  as disaccharide, 69*f*
  enzymatic catalysis and, 153, 155
  molecular mass of, 50
  plant cell uptake of, 142
  as product of photosynthesis, 206, 207*f*
  transport of, in vascular plants, 799, 800*f*–801*f*
Sudden oak death (SOD), 614*f*, 867, 1234
Sugarcane, 206*f*
Sugar gliders, 481*f*
Sugar-phosphate backbone, DNA, 85*f*–86*f*, 317*f*–320*f*, 325*f*–326*f*
Sugars. *See also* Carbohydrates
  blood regulation, 10*f*
  as components of nucleic acids, 84, 85*f*
  conduction of, in plant cells, 765*f*
  monosaccharides and disaccharides, 68*f*–69*f*, 70
  polysaccharides, 70*f*–72*f*
  as products of photosynthesis, 191*f*, 192, 201, 202*f*, 206, 207*f*
  translocation of, from sources to sinks via phloem, 799, 800*f*–801*f*
Sugar sinks, **800**
Sugar sources, **800**
Suicide genes, 390
Sulfhydryl group, 63*f*
Sulfur, 29*t*, 64
Sulfur dioxide emissions, 1266
Sulston, John, 1058–1059
Sumner, Francis Bertody, 20
Sundews, 819*f*
Sunflowers, 521*f*, 894*f*
Sunlight
  absorption of, determining primary production with, 1242*f*
  aquatic biomes and, 1177*f*–1178*f*
  cancer and, 394
  DNA damage from, 328
  in energy flow and chemical cycling, 9*f*, 164–165, 1240f
  as energy for life, 143, 145, 150
  global energy budget and, 1241
  latitudinal variation in intensity of, 1166*f*
  in photosynthesis, 187*f*, 206, 207*f*
  primary production in aquatic ecosystems and limitations of, 1242
  properties of, 192*f*
  seasonal variations in, 1167*f*
  species distributions and availability of, 1185, 1186*f*
Supercontinent, 538, 539*f*
Supergroups, protist, 597*f*–599*f*
Superimposed electron orbitals model, 35*f*
Supernatural vs. natural explanations, 18
Super-resolution microscopy, 95*f*, 96
Superweeds, 438

Suprachiasmatic nucleus (SCN), 893*f*, 1015, **1094**–1095
Surface area
calculating cell volume and, 99
maximizing, by animals, 695*f*
Surface area-volume relationships, 98*f*
Surface tension, **45***f*, 46
Surfactants, **943**, 944*f*
Surroundings, systems and, 145
Survival
adaptations, natural selection, and, 475*f*, 476
animal behavior evolution and, 1148, 1149*f*–1154*f*
gecko appearance and, 26
life histories and, 1200, 1201*f*–1202*f*
Survivorship curves, **1193**, 1194*f*
Suspension feeding, 721*f*, 727, 903*f*
Suspensor cells, 828*f*
Sustainability, 1284
Sustainable agriculture, **808**
in Costa Rica zoned reserves, 1273
soil conservation in, 807*f*–809*f*
Sustainable development, **1284**, *1285f*, 1286
Sutherland, Earl W., 216*f*, 217, 223
Sutton, Walter S., 295
Swallowing reflex, 906*f*
Sweden, 1208
Sweet potatoes, 651, 837
Sweet tastes, 1123*f*–1124*f*
Swim bladders, **728***f*
Swimming, 1135
Swine flu, 410, 1234
Switchgrass, 838
Symbionts, **587**
Symbiosis, **587**, 1256*f*. *See also* Commensalism; Mutualism; Parasitism
fungal, 662–663, 667*f*–669*f*
protist, 614*f*
sym genes, 660
Symmetry
animal body, 679, 680*f*
body, 1059, 1060*f*, 1064*f*
flower, 644*f*, 649*f*
Sympathetic division, peripheral nervous system, 928, 1088*f*–**1089***f*
Sympatric populations, character displacement in, 1216, 1217*f*
Sympatric speciation, **513**, 514*f*–515*f*, 516
Symplast, **787**, 788*f*, 800*f*
Symplastic communication, 801, 802*f*
Symplastic domains, 802
Symplastic route, 788*f*, 793*f*
Synapses, 1067–**1068**
electrical and chemical, 1077, 1078*f*
generation of postsynaptic potentials and, 1077–1078
in memory and learning, 1099, 1100*f*–1101*f*
modulated signaling at, 1080
neurotransmitters and, 1077, 1078*f*, 1080*f*, 1081*t*, 1082
in regulation of muscle contraction, 1128, 1129*f*, 1130
scaffolding proteins and, 228*f*, 229
summation of postsynaptic potentials and, 1078, 1079*f*
Synapsids, 531*f*, **741**, 742*f*
Synapsis, **262***f*
Synaptic cleft, 1077
Synaptic signaling, 215*f*, 216, 1000*f*, 1001
Synaptic terminals, 1068*f*
Synaptic vesicles, 1077
Synaptonemal complex, **262***f*
Syndermata, 687*f*
Syndromes, 308
Synthesis stage, phage lytic cycle, 402*f*
Synthetases, 349*f*
Syphilis, 584*f*
Systematics, **554**, 682, 683*f*, 684. *See also* Cladistics; Molecular systematics; Taxonomy
Systemic acquired resistance, **866**, 867*f*
Systemic circuit, 924*f*–926*f*
Systemic inflammation, 956–957
Systemic lupus erythematosus, 971
Systemic mycoses, 670
Systems
thermodynamics and isolated vs. open, 145, 149*f*–150*f*
Systems approach, 425
Systems biology, **5**–6, **446**, 447*f*–448*f*
Systole, **927***f*
Systolic pressure, **930**, 931*f*
Szent-Györgyi, Albert, 900
Szostak, Jack, 528

T

T2 phage, 316*f*, 317
Table salt. *See* Sodium chloride
Tables in Scientific Skills Exercises, 58, 89, 157, 179, 205, 264, 304, 318, 458, 493, 513, 570, 590, 595, 629, 639, 657, 678, 751, 762, 790, 834, 918, 938, 972, 981, 1014, 1030, 1049, 1082, 1186, 1217, 1247, 1279
TACK supergroup, 586
Tactile communication, 1141*f*
Tadpoles, 381*f*, 732*f*
Taiga, 1175*f*
Tail, muscular post-anal, 720*f*
Tail end, 680*f*
Tails, histone, 330*f*, 371*f*
Takahe bird, 1254*f*
TAL protein, 334
Tamiflu, 414
Tamoxifen, 250, 393*f*
Tannins, 1220
Tapeworms, 687*f*, 696, 697*f*, 1220
Tapping, in fruit fly courtship, 1141*f*
Taproots, **759***f*–760*f*
Taproot systems, 759*f*, 760
Taq polymerase, 421, 1263
Tardigrades, 689*f*, 980*f*
Target cells, hormone, 1000*f*–1004*f*
Tarsiers, 746*f*
Tar spot fungus, 669*f*
Tastants, **1123***f*–1124*f*
Taste, 233, 1123*f*–1124*f*
Taste buds, **1124***f*
TATA boxes, 343*f*, **344**, 373
Tatum, Edward, 336*f*–338*f*
Tau protein, 1104
Taxis, **576**
Taxol, 249
Taxon, **554**, 555*f*–556*f*, 560
Taxonomy. *See also* Cladistics; Phylogenies; Systematics
early schemes of, 470
grouping of species in, 12*f*–13*f*
mammalian, 745*f*
phylogenies and, 554, 555*f*–556*f*
possible plant kingdoms, 619*f*, 621
ten phyla of extant plants, 622*t*
three-domain system of, 12*f*, 13, 568, 569*f*
tree of life of, 15*f*–16*f*
Tay-Sachs disease, **280**
allele dominance and, 280
fetal testing for, 288, 289*f*
as lysosomal storage disease, 108
recessive alleles in, 285
T cells, **958***f*
antigen recognition by, 959*f*–960*f*
clonal selection of, 962*f*, 963
cytotoxic, 962, 966*f*, 967
development of, 960, 961*f*–963*f*
diversity of, 960, 961*f*
DNA of, 976
helper, 963, 964*f*
immunological memory, 963*f*
proliferation of, 961–962
regulatory, 971
Tea, 651, 783
Teal, John, 1247
Technology, **23**, 24*f*
DNA. *See* Biotechnology; DNA technology
global carrying capacity and, 1211
prokaryotes in research and, 589, 590*f*–591*f*
Tectonic plates, 538*f*–539*f*, 540
Teeth
conodont mineralized dental elements, 724*f*, 725
diet and adaptations of, 911*f*, 912
mammalian, 530, 531*f*, 532, 741
origins of, 725
Teixobactin, 478, 590
Telomerase, 329
Telomeres, **328**, 329*f*, 452
Telomeric DNA, 452
Telophase (mitosis), **237**, 239*f*, 243*f*, 252, 263*f*
Telophase I, 260*f*, 263*f*
Telophase II, 261*f*
Temperate broadleaf forests, **1176***f*
Temperate forests, decomposition in, 1248
Temperate grasslands, **1175***f*
Temperate phages, **403***f*
Temperature, **46**
aquatic biomes and, 1177, 1178*f*
climographs of, 1171*f*
coefficients in Scientific Skills Exercise, 790
correlation of atmospheric carbon dioxide with global, 1278*f*, 1279, 1282, 1283*f*
decomposition rates and, 1248*f*
effects of transpiration on leaf, 798
enzymatic catalysis and, 157, 158*f*
global, and extinction rates, 541*f*, 542
heat vs., 46
membrane proteins and, 128*f*
moderation of, by water, 46, 47*f*–48*f*
plant response to stress of, 865
primary production in terrestrial biomes and, 1243*f*, 1244, 1244*f*, 1245
protein denaturation and, 82*f*, 83
regulation of body. *See* Thermoregulation
species distributions and, 1164, 1185*f*
Templates, viral DNA and RNA, 405*f*, 406*t*
Template strands, DNA, 320, 321*f*–327*f*, **340***f*
Tempo, speciation, 520*f*–521*f*, 522
Temporal fenestra, 531*f*, 741
Temporal isolation, 508*f*
Temporal lobe, 1085, 1097*f*
Temporal summation, 1079*f*
Tendons, **878***f*, 1138
Tendrils, 762*f*
Tentacles, invertebrate, 691*f*, 701*f*, 702
Terminal cells, 828*f*
Termination, neurotransmission, 1080*f*
Termination codons, 341*f*
Termination stage
transcription, 343*f*, 344
translation, 352, 353*f*
Terminators, **342**, 343*f*
Termites, 143*f*, 614*f*, 655
Terpenoids, 868*f*
Terrestrial adaptations
mycorrhizae as plant, 817
seed plant, 637*f*–638*f*, 639
Terrestrial biomes
animal osmoregulation in, 980–981
biodiversity hot spots in, 1272*f*
chaparral, 1174*f*
climate and, 1171*f*
climate change effects on, 1244*f*, 1245
decomposition in, 1248*f*
deserts, 1173*f*
disturbance in, 1172
food chains in, 1224*f*
general features of, 1172*f*
global distribution of, 1171*f*, 1189
habitat loss in, 1263–1264
locomotion in, 1135*f*
northern coniferous forests, 1175*f*
nutrient cycling in, 1250*f*–1251*f*
plant adaptations to, 203
primary production in, 1243*f*–1244*f*, 1245
savannas, 1174*f*
temperate broadleaf forests, 1176*f*
temperate grasslands, 1175*f*
tropical forests, 1173*f*
tundra, 1176*f*, 1256*f*–1257*f*
Territoriality, **1192***f*, 1204*f*
Tertiary consumers, **1240***f*
trophic efficiency of, 1246, 1247*f*, 1248
Tertiary structure, protein, **81***f*
Testcrosses, **274**, 275*f*, 301*f*–302*f*
Testes, 257*f*, 258, 1004*f*, 1014, 1015*f*, **1025***f*, 1031*f*
Testicles, 1025*f*
Testing, genetic. *See* Genetic testing
Testing, hypothesis, 17, 18*f*–19*f*
Testosterone, 62*f*, 397, 999*f*, **1014**, 1015*f*, **1030**, 1031*f*
Tests, foraminiferan, **608**
Test-tube cloning, 836*f*
Tetanus, **1130**
Tetrahymena, 346
Tetraploids, 514
Tetraploidy, 307

Tetrapods, **730**
amniotes, 734*f*–735*f*
amphibians, 731, 732*f*–733*f*
derived characters of, 730
evolution of, 678
homologous characteristics of, 480*f*
land colonization by, 537
as lobe-fins, 730
origin and phylogeny of, 730*f*–731*f*
origin of, 530, 531*f*–533*f*
Tetrodotoxin, 813*f*
Texture, soil, 806*f*
Thalamus, **1093***f*, 1095*f*, 1097
Thalassoma bifasciatum, 1020
Thalidomide, 65
Thalloid liverworts, 626*f*
Thaumarchaeota clade, 586
Themes of biology, 3*f*–16*f*
Theobroma cacao, 667*f*, 668
Theories, **21**–22, 483–484
Therapeutic cloning, 431
Therapsids, 531*f*
Thermal energy, **46**, 132, **144**
Thermocline, **1177**, 1178*f*
Thermodynamics, laws of, 143, 145*f*, 146, 1239
Thermogenesis, 887*f*–888*f*
Thermophiles, 441, 585*f*, 586
Thermoreceptors, **1111***f*
Thermoregulation, **884**
acclimatization in, 883*f*, 888
aquatic animal feedback regulation in, 881*f*
circadian rhythms in human, 882, 883*f*
in endothermic and ectothermic animals, 884*f*
heat loss and gain balance in, 885*f*–888*f*
minimum metabolic rate and, 890–891
nonliving example of, 881–882*f*
penguin form and function for, 873*f*
physiological thermostats and fever in, 888, 889*f*
variation in animal body temperatures and, 884–885
Thermostatic thermoregulation, 888, 889*f*
Thermus aquaticus, 421, 441, 1263
Theropods, **736**
Thick filaments, **1125**, 1126*f*–1127*f*, 1131–1132
Thigmomorphogenesis, **861**, 862*f*
Thigmotropism, **862***f*
Thin filaments, **1125**, 1126*f*–1127*f*, 1131–1132
Thiol compounds, 63*f*
Thiomargarita namibiensis, 574, 584*f*
Third-generation sequencing, 416
Thirst, 1110
Thlaspi caerulescens, 809
Thompson seedless grapes, 851*f*
Thoracic cavity, 942, 945
Thorax, insect, 710*f*
Threatened species, **1261**, 1262*f*, 1272*f*
Three-parent babies, 311
Threonine, 77*f*, 222
Threshold, **1073**
Thrombin, 936*f*
Thrombus, **937**, 939
Thrum flower, 835*f*
Thucydides, 962
Thumbs, opposable, 744
Thunnus albacares, 729*f*
Thylakoid membranes, 189*f*, 190, 196*f*–200*f*, 201
Thylakoids, **110**, **189**
ATP production and, 211
in chloroplasts, 110, 111*f*
light reactions in, 191*f*, 192
as sites of photosynthesis in chloroplasts, 189*f*, 190
Thylakoid space, 189*f*
Thymine, 84, 85*f*, 86, 317*f*, 318, 337, 340*f*
Thymine dimers, 328
Thymus, **958**
Thyroid gland, 1004*f*, 1008, **1009***f*, 1010
Thyroid hormone (T_3 and T_4), 1004*f*, **1008**, 1009*f*, 1010, 1015*f*
Thyroid hormones, 179, 220
Thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH), 1004*f*, 1008*f*–1009*f*, 1010
Thyrotropin-releasing hormone (TRH), 1009*f*
Thyroxine (T_4), 1001*f*, 1003, 1008, 1009*f*, 1010, 1015*f*
Tiburon Mariposa lily (*Calochortus tiburonensis*), 30*f*
Ticks, 588*f*, 707–708, 1220, 1234, 1235*f*
Tidal volume, **945**
Tides, 1181*f*
Tiger moths, 717
Tigers, 293, 1288
Tiger swallowtail, 313
Tight junctions, 120*f*
Tiktaalik fossil, 533*f*, 730*f*, 731
Time
phylogenetic tree branch lengths and, 561, 562*f*
required for human cell division, 237
Tinbergen, Niko, 1140, 1145*f*
Tissue culture, plant, 836*f*
Tissue-level herbivore defenses, plant, 868*f*
Tissue plasminogen activator (TPA), 436, 457*f*
Tissues, **5***f*, **674**, **759**, **876**
animal, 673–674, 876, 877*f*–879*f*
animal body plan and, 673–674, 680–681
culturing plant, 836*f*
of human endocrine system, 1003, 1004*f*
immune system rejection of transplanted, 969–970
as level of biological organization, 5*f*
plant, 759, 762, 763*f*
proteins specific to, in cell differentiation, 383
renewal of, as cell division function, 235*f*
substitutes for, 897
water and salt concentrations in, 977*f*, 978
Tissue-specific proteins, 383
Tissue systems, plant, **762**
in leaves, 770, 771*f*
in primary growth of roots, 768*f*–769*f*
in primary growth of shoots, 769*f*–771*f*
types of, 762, 763*f*
Tit-for-tat strategy, 1159
Tmesipteris, 632*f*, 633
Toadfish, 1131*f*
Toads, 516, 517*f*, 520, 732, 1217
Tobacco mosaic virus (TMV), 399*f*–400*f*, 412
Tobacco plant, 342*f*
Toll-like receptors (TLRs), **955***f*, 976
Toll receptors
in insects, 954
Tollund Man, 627*f*
Tomatoes, 645*f*, 849
Tongue, 906*f*, 1124*f*
Tonicity, **134***f*–135*f*
Tools, hominin use of, 750
Tooth cavities, 213
Top-down control, 1226, **1227***f*
Topoisomerases, **323***f*, 327*t*
Topologically associated domains (TADs), 377, 378*f*
Topsoil, **806**, 807*f*
Torpor, **892**
Tortoiseshell cats, 300*f*
Totipotent amoebocytes, 691
Totipotent cells, **428**, **1061**
Totipotent plants, **835**–836
Touch, plant response to, 861, 862*f*
Touch receptors, 1110*f*
Tourism, zoned reserves and, 1273, 1273*f*
Toxic waste
bioremediation of, 1253, 1255*f*
biotechnology in cleanup of, 418*f*, 437
density-dependent population regulation by, 1204*f*
Toxins
botulism, 1080
as defensive adaptations, 1217–1220
detoxification and, 104–105, 112
dinoflagellate, 605*f*
environmental, 1275, 1276*f*–1277*f*
enzymatic catalysis and, 158–159
evolution of tolerance to, 30*f*
fungal, 669*f*
soil, 809, 812
T phages, 400*f*–402*f*, 403
Trace elements, **29***t*
Trace fossils, 529*f*
Tracers, radioactive, 31, 32*f*, 190
Trachea, 906*f*, **942**, 943*f*
Tracheal systems, insect, 707, 710*f*, **941**, 942*f*
Tracheids, **629**–630, **765***f*
Trade-offs, 501
Trade-offs, life history, 1201*f*–1202*f*
Tragopogon species, 514, 515*f*
Traits, **270**. *See also* Alleles
characters and, 270–271
C. Darwin on natural selection and, 14*f*–16*f*
dominant vs. recessive, 271*f*, 272*t*, 285*f*
inheritance of, in Darwinian evolution, 475*f*, 476
inheritance of X-linked genes and recessive, 299*f*, 300
life history, 1200, 1201*f*–1202*f*
noninheritance of acquired, 471*f*
plant derived, 620*f*–621*f*
seedless vascular plant, 628*f*–631*f*
Transacetylase, 368*f*
Transcription, **337**
effects of ncRNAs on, 380–381
eukaryotic gene regulation after, 377, 378*f*, 379
in gene expression and protein synthesis, 7*f*–8*f*, 335–336, 337, 339*f*
gene expression as, 371
molecular components and stages of, 342, 343*f*
regulation of, in plant responses, 845
regulation of bacterial, 366*f*–369*f*, 370
regulation of eukaryotic initiation of, 373*f*–378*f*, 379
RNA processing after, 345*f*–347*f*
scale of, 123*f*
summary of eukaryotic, 356*f*
synthesis of RNA transcript during, 343*f*–344*f*
template strands in, 340*f*
Transcription factories, 377, 378*f*
Transcription factors, 343*f*, **344**
in cell signaling, 221*f*, 226*f*
in eukaryotic gene regulation, 374*f*–377*f*
Transcription initiation complex, 343*f*, **344**, 373*f*–375*f*
Transcription units, **342**, 343*f*
Transduction, genetic, **579***f*
Transduction, sensory, 1109, 1114, 1115*f*, 1120*f*
Transduction stage, cell-signaling, **216**
multistep pathways and signal amplification in, 221
overview of, 216*f*, 217
in plant signal transduction pathways, 844*f*, 845
protein phosphorylation and dephosphorylation in, 222*f*, 223
signal transduction pathways and, 221–222
small molecules and ions as second messengers in, 223*f*–225*f*
in yeast-cell mating, 214
trans face, Golgi apparatus, 106*f*, 107
trans fats, 61, **74**, 938
Transfer RNA (tRNA), **348**. *See also* RNA (ribonucleic acid)
structure of, 86*f*, 348*f*
in translation, 347*f*–350*f*, 352, 353*f*
Transformation, cancer and cellular, **249***f*
Transformation, energy, 143*f*–146*f*, 147, 209*f*. *See also* Metabolism
Transformation, genetic, **315***f*, **579**, 776
Transfusions, blood, 969–970
Transgender individuals, 299
Transgene escape issue, 839–840
Transgenes, **436***f*, 776, **837**, 841
Transgenic animals, **436**
Transgenic plants, **837**. *See also* Genetically modified organisms
biotechnology and genetic engineering of, 837, 838*f*
issues about agricultural crops as, 438–439, 838–840
trans isomers, 61*f*
Transitional ER, 105*f*
Transition state, 154
Translation, **339**
basic concept of, 347*f*
building polypeptides in, 350*f*–353*f*
completing and targeting functional proteins in, 354*f*, 355
in eukaryotic cells, 356*f*
in gene expression and protein synthesis, 335–337, 339*f*
identifying ribosome binding sites with sequence logos in, 351
molecular components of, 347*f*–350*f*
post-translational protein modification in plant responses, 845
regulation of eukaryotic initiation of, 378–379
ribosomes in, 349, 350*f*
scale of, 123*f*
synthesizing multiple polypeptides with polyribosomes in, 355*f*

transfer RNA in, 347*f*–350*f*
Translation initiation complex, 352*f*
Translation initiation factors, 378–379
Translocation, **799**
cancer gene, 388, 389*f*
chromosome structure and, 307, 308*f*, 309*f*
plant transport, 799, 800*f*–801*f*
in translation, 352, 353*f*, 354–355
Transmembrane proteins, **129***f*–130*f*, 217*f*–220*f*
Transmembrane route, 788*f*, 793*f*
Transmission, sensory, 1109*f*
Transmission electron microscope (TEM), **96**
Transmission electron microscopy (TEM), 95*f*
Transmission rate, disease, 1204*f*
Transpiration, **792**
effects of, on plant wilting and leaf temperature, 798
plant adaptations for reducing evaporative water loss by, 798, 799*f*
regulation of, by opening and closing stomata, 796, 797*f*–799*f*
in water and mineral transport from roots to shoots via xylem, 792, 793*f*–795*f*, 796
in water cycle, 1250*f*
Transpirational pull, 794*f*–795*f*
Transplants
immune system rejection of, 969–970
species, 1184
Transport, plant and animal, 895*f*. *See also* Circulatory systems*;* Transport in vascular plants
Transport epithelia, **981**, 982*f*, 988*f*, 989
Transport function, membrane protein, 130*f*
Transport in vascular plants, 629–630. *See also* Vascular plants
regulation of transpiration rate by stomata in, 796, 797*f*–799*f*
resource acquisition adaptations and, 784*f*–786*f*, 787
short-distance and long-distance mechanisms of, 787, 788*f*–791*f*
sugar transport from sources to sinks via phloem in, 799, 800*f*–801*f*
symplastic communication in, 801, 802*f*
of water and minerals from roots to shoots via xylem, 792, 793*f*–795*f*, 796
xylem and phloem in, 765*f*
Transport proteins, 76*f*, 126, **132**
in active transport, 136, 137*f*
aquaporins, 790–791
cellular membrane selective permeability and, 132*f*
as cotransporters, 138*f*, 139
facilitated diffusion and, 135*f*, 136
ion pumps and, 138
plant solute transport and, 788, 789*f*
water diffusion and, 790–791
Transport vesicles, **105**, 106*f*, 107, 109*f*, 139, 140*f*
Transport work, 150, 152*f*
Transposable elements, 450*f*–**451***f*, 452, 459
Transposase, 451*f*
Transposition process, 450*f*–451*f*, 452, 459
Transposons, 380–381, 408, **451***f*
Transthyretin protein, 80*f*–81*f*
Transverse (T) tubules, **1128***f*–1129*f*
Trawling
community disturbances by, 1231*f*
Tree frogs, 500*f*
Treehopper, 466
Tree of life
Darwinian evolution and, 15*f*–16*f*, 474*f*. *See also* Evolutionary trees
phylogenies in investigation of, 553*f*–554*f*, 568, 569*f*–570*f*
three-domain taxonomy of, 568, 569*f*
Tree rings, 773*f*
Trees
climate change effects on CO_2 absorption by, 1245
ecosystem interaction with, 10*f*, 11
petrified, 529*f*
photosynthesis in, 187*f*
Tree trunks, 774*f*
Trematodes, 696*f*
Trends, evolutionary, 548, 549*f*
Treponema pallidum, 584*f*
Triacylglycerols, 72, 73*f*, 74
Trial-and-error learning, 1146*f*
Tricarboxylic acid cycle. *See* Citric acid cycle
Trichechus manatus, 572, 1219*f*
Trichinosis, 705*f*, 706
Trichomes, **763***f*, 799*f*, 868*f*
Trichomonas vaginalis, 600*f*
Triglycerides, 72, 73*f*, 74, 910*f*
Triiodothyronine (T_3), 1008, 1009*f*, 1010
Trilobites, 706*f*
Trimesters, human pregnancy, 1035*f*–1037*f*
Trimethylamine oxide (TMAO), 979
Trioses, 68*f*
Triple response, plant, **853***f*
Triplet code, **340***f*. *See also* Genetic code
Triploblastic animals, **680**, 681*f*
Triploidy, 268, 307
Trisomic cells, **307**
Trisomy 21, 308*f*, 309. *See also* Down syndrome
Trisomy X, 309
Tristan da Cunha, 495
Triticum aestivum, 1204*f*
Triticum species, 514–515, *524*
Trochophore larva, 683*f*, **684**, 685, 694
Trophic efficiency, **1246**, 1247*f*, 1248
Trophic levels, **1224**, 1257*f*
in ecosystem energy flow and chemical cycling, 1240*f*, 1241
energy transfer between, 1246, 1247*f*, 1248
Trophic structure, **1223**
bottom-up and top-down controls on, and biomanipulation of, 1226, 1227*f*
energetic hypothesis on restriction of food chain length, 1225*f*
food webs of food chains in, 1224*f*–1225*f*, 1237
species with large impacts on, 1225, 1226*f*
Trophoblasts, **1035**, **1052**, 1053*f*
Tropical cone snails, 1067*f*–1068
Tropical dry forests, **1173***f*, 1263
Tropical rain forests, **1173***f*
climate change and photosynthesis of, 211
decomposition in, 1248
deforestation of, as threat to biodiversity, 651*f*, 652, 1263
fragmentation of, 1271*f*
primary production in, 1244
Tropic hormones, 1008*f*
Tropic of Cancer, 1166*f*
Tropic of Capricorn, 1166*f*
Tropics, 1166*f*, 1232
Tropidolaemus wagleri, 737*f*
Tropisms, **847**
Tropomyosin, **1128***f*–1129*f*
Troponin complex, **1128***f*
Troponin T, 378*f*
Trout, 728*f*, 1265
trp operator, 367*f*
trp operon, 367*f*, 368–369
TRP (transient receptor potential) proteins, 1111, 1124
trp repressor, 367*f*
True-breeding organisms, **271**
True bugs, 712*f*
Truffles, **663***f*, 670
Trypanosoma, 600, 601*f*, 713, 972
Trypsin, 158*f*
Tryptophan, 77*f*, 366*f*–367*f*, 1081
Tsetse flies, 713, 903*f*
Tuataras (*Sphenodon punctatus*), 735, 737*f*
Tubal ligation, 1038*f*, **1039**
Tubal pregnancies, 1039
Tube cells, 646*f*, 826
Tube feet, **713**, 714*f*
Tuberculosis, 584*f*, 589, 592, 957, 1204*f*
Tubers, 761*f*
Tubeworms, 914*f*
Tubulin, 114, 240–241
Tubulinids, 612
Tumbleweeds, 832*f*
Tumors, 435
Tumors, cancer, 249*f*, 250
Tumor-suppressor genes, **388**, 391*f*, 394
Tumor viruses, 394–395
Tuna, 729*f*, 874*f*, 1265*f*
Tundra, **1176***f*, 1238*f*, 1244, 1256*f*–1257*f*
Tunicates, 715, 719*f*, **721***f*, 722, 1058*f*
Turgid cells, 134*f*, **135**, **790**, 791*f*, 797*f*
Turgor movements, plant, 862*f*
Turgor pressure, 134*f*, 135, **789**
Turner syndrome, 309
Turnover, **1178***f*
Turtles, 719*f*, 735, 736*f*, 737, 884*f*, 925, 1066, 1194, 1195*f*
Tutu, Desmond, 462
Twins, 1036, 1061, 1162
Twin studies, 1144
Tympanic membrane, 1112*f*–**1113***f*
Tympanuchus cupido, 495*f*, 496, 1267*f*
Type 1 diabetes, 917
Type 2 diabetes, 372*f*, 917
Typha angustifolia, 1186
Typhoid fever, 588
Tyrannosaurus rex, 736, 874, 983
Tyrosinase, 337
Tyrosine, 77*f*, 222, 1009, 1081

U

Ubiquinone (Q), 175
Ubiquitin, 379
Ubx gene, 545*f*, 546, 706*f*
Ulcers, 584*f*, 912, 913*f*
Ultimate causation, 1140
Ultrasonic sound, 717
Ultrasound fetal testing, 289
Ultrasound imaging, 1039
Ultraviolet (UV) radiation
cancer and, 394
Chlamydomonas nivalis and, 211
DNA damage from, 328
elevation and, affecting species distributions, 1186*f*
flowers and, 824*f*
in insect vision, 1117–1118
mutations from, 360
ozone depletion and, 1283*f*, 1284
Ulva, 610*f*
Umami tastes, 233, 1123*f*–1124*f*
Undernourishment, 902
Undershoot phase, action potential, 1074*f*, 1075
Unger, Franz, 270
Ungulates, 481*f*–482*f*
Unicellular organisms, 532*f*–535*f*
Uniform dispersion, 1192*f*
Unikonts, 599*f*, **611**, 612*f*–613*f*, 614
Unisexual flowers, 824
United States, age-structure pyramid for, 1209*f*
Unity
in biodiversity, 13*f*–14*f*, 26
cellular structures and, 125
evolution and, 469, 473
within species, 510
Unlinked genes
identifying, 304
mapping, 305*f*–306*f*
recombination of, 302*f*
Unpaired electrons, 36
Unsaturated fats, 73*f*, 74, 128*f*
Unsaturated fatty acids, **73***f*, 74
Unselfish behavior, 1156*f*–1157*f*
Untranslated regions (UTRs), 345*f*, 378
Upright posture, hominin, 748
Upwellings, 1243
Uracil, 84, 85*f*, 86, 337, 340*f*–341*f*
Uranium
bioremediation of, 1255*f*
half-life of, 32
Uranium-238, 529, 530*f*
Urban ecology, 1273, **1274***f*
Urea, 60, 979, 982*f*, **983**, 989, 990*f*, 991
Ureter, **986***f*
Urethra, **986***f*, **1025***f*
Urey, Harold, 57, 526
Uric acid, 982*f*–**983***f*
Urinary bladder, **986***f*
Urine
concentration of, 989, 990*f*, 991
hyperosmotic, 991
nephron processing of blood filtrate to, 987, 988*f*, 989
Urochordata (tunicates), 719*f*, 721*f*, 722
Urodela, 731, 732*f*
Ursus arctos, 510*f*, 1268*f*, 1269, 1272–1273
Ursus maritimus, 11, 510*f*
USA300 bacteria, 478*f*, 589*f*
Use and disuse principle, Lamarck's, 471
Uterine cycle, **1032***f*, 1033
Uterus, 100*f*, **1026**, 1027*f*

Utricle, 1115*f*
Utricularia gibba, 448*t*, 449
Uyuni Salt Flat, 1185*f*

V

Vaccination, 968*f*, 976
Vaccines, **408**–409
  for amphibians, 733
Vacuolar sap, 777
Vacuoles, 100*f*–101*f*, **108***f*
Vagina, **1026**, 1027*f*, 1034
Vaginal pouch, 1038
Valence, **36**, **59***f*
Valence electrons, **35**–36
Valence shells, **35**
Valine, 77*f*
Valium, 1081
Vampire bats, 991*f*, 992
van der Waals interactions, **39**, 81*f*
van Leeuwenhoek, Antoni, 94
van Niel, C. B., 190
Varanus komodoensis, 1042
Variable (V) region, light and heavy chain, 958*f*–961*f*
Variables, **20**–21
  comparing two, 972
  identifying dependent and independent, 513
Variation, **255**
Variation, genetic. *See* Genetic variation
Variegation, 311*f*
Vasa recta, **987***f*
Vascular bundles, 763, 770*f*
Vascular cambium, **766***f*, 772*f*–774*f*, 849
Vascular cylinder, **763**
Vascular plants, **622**. *See also* Seedless vascular plants; Seed plants
  origin and traits of, 628*f*–631*f*
  phylogeny of, 622*t*
  resource acquisition for, 784*f*–786*f*, 787
  seedless. *See* Seedless vascular plants
  transport in. *See* Transport in vascular plants
Vascular rays, 773*f*
Vascular tissue, **622**, 785*f*
Vascular tissue system, plant, 758, **763***f*, 765*f*
Vascular transport, 536, 629–630
Vas deferens, **1025***f*
Vasectomy, 1038*f*, **1039**
Vasocongestion, 1034
Vasoconstriction, 885, **931**
Vasodilation, 885, **931**, 1001, 1026
Vasopressin. *See* Antidiuretic hormone
Vectors, zoonotic disease, **1234**, 1235*f*
Vegetable oil, 49–50, 74
Vegetal pole, **1048***f*
Vegetarian diets, 899
Vegetation, climate effects of, 1169*f*
Vegetative growth, 830
Vegetative propagation, **835**–836, 849
Vegetative reproduction, **833**–834
Veins, blood, **924***f*–926*f*, 929*f*–932*f*
Veins, leaf, 189*f*, **761**, 771*f*, 849
Veldts, 1175*f*
Velocity
  blood flow, 930*f*
Velvetleaf plants, 205
Velvet worms, 689*f*
Venae cavae, 926*f*, 930*f*
Venom, snail, 1067*f*
Venomous snakes, 738
Venter, Craig, 443*f*
Ventilation, **941**. *See also* Breathing
  of lungs, 944, 945*f*–946*f*
Ventral nerve cords
  earthworm, 704*f*
  planarian, 696*f*
Ventral side, 680*f*
Ventral tegmental area (VTA), 1103*f*
Ventricles, brain, 1087*f*
Ventricles, heart, **924***f*–927*f*
Venules, **924**, 929*f*–930*f*, 932*f*
Venus flower basket glass sponge, 146*f*
Venus flytrap (*Dionaea muscipula*), 802, 819*f*, 862
Vernalization, **860**
Verreaux's sifaka (*Propithecus verreauxi*), 746*f*
Vertebrae, 718
Vertebrates, **683**, **719**
  action potential conduction speed in, 1076
  adaptations of digestive systems of, 911*f*–914*f*. *See also* Digestive systems
  amniotes and development of terrestrially adapted eggs in, 734*f*–740*f*. *See also* Amniotes
  anatomical homologies in embryos of, 479*f*, 480
  brains of, 1091*f*–1096*f*, 1099*f*. *See also* Nervous systems
  cardiovascular systems of. *See* Cardiovascular systems
  as chordates, 689*f*, 715, 719*f*, 722, 723*f*–725*f*. *See also* Chordates
  circulatory systems of, 924*f*, 925. *See also* Cardiovascular systems
  derived characters of, 722, 723*f*
  energy budgets for terrestrial, 892
  evolution of, 678
  evolution of backbones and diversity vs. disparity in, 718*f*, 719
  fossils and early evolution of, 724*f*–725*f*
  gamete production and delivery in, 1024
  gas exchange systems of. *See* Gas exchange
  gnathostomes and development of jaws in, 725*f*–729*f*, 730
  hominins and humans, 748*f*–754*f*
  innate immunity in, 954*f*–956*f*, 957
  kidneys in excretory systems of, 985, 986*f*–987*f*, 991*f*–993*f*. *See also* Excretory systems; Kidneys
  limb formation in, 1062, 1063*f*, 1064
  mammals, 741*f*–747*f*
  mechanoreceptors for hearing and equilibrium in, 1112*f*–1116*f*. *See also* Sensory systems
  nervous system of, 1086*f*–1090*f*. *See also* Nervous systems
  neuroendocrine signaling in, 1007*f*–1008*f*
  organogenesis in, 1055*f*
  origins of bone and teeth in, 725
  phylogeny of, 683*f*
  small intestine surface area in, 695*f*
  tetrapods and development of limbs in, 730*f*–733*f*
  visual systems of, 1118*f*–1122*f*, 1123
Vertical layering, terrestrial biome, 1172
Vertical transmission, viral, 412
Vervet monkeys, 1148*f*
Vesicles, **104**
  abiotically produced, as protocells, 527, 528*f*
  in endomembrane system, 104
  in exocytosis and endocytosis, 139, 140*f*
  in plant cytokinesis, 241, 242*f*
  self-replicating RNA in, 528
  transport, 105, 106*f*, 107, 109*f*
Vessel elements, 648, **765***f*
Vessels, **765***f*
Vessels, blood. *See* Blood vessels
Vessels, lymph, 933*f*
Vestibular glands, 1027*f*
Vestigial structures, **479**
Viagra, 224, 1001, 1026, 1082
Vibrio cholerae, 224, 584*f*, 588
Viewpoints, science and diverse, 24
Villi, 695*f*, **909***f*, 910
Vinegar, 49–50
Viral envelopes, **400***f*, 401, 405*f*
Viral integration, 395
Viral movement proteins, 802*f*
Virtual plants, computer-generated, 776
Virulent phages, **402***f*
Viruses, **315**, **399**
  analyzing sequence-based phylogenetic trees to understand evolution of, 411
  antibodies as medical tool for detection of, 969*f*
  antigenic variation in, 972–973
  cancer-causing, 974*f*
  in cancer development, 394–395
  cellular RNAi pathway and, 380
  classes of animal, 406*t*
  climate change and, 412
  discovery of, 399*f*
  emerging, 409*f*–412*f*
  evolution of, 406, 408, 411
  features of replicative cycles of, 401*f*, 402
  host range of, 401
  immune system recognition of, 952*f*
  importance of, 400
  infection of bacterial cells by, 315*f*–316*f*, 317
  influenza. *See* Influenza viruses
  insect defense against, 954*f*
  latency of, 973*t*
  mutations of, 409, 414
  as pathogens, 398*f*–400*f*, 401, 408, 409*f*–413*f*
  rapid reproduction of, as source of genetic variation, 489
  replication of, 398
  replicative cycles of animal, 404, 405*f*, 406*t*, 407*f*
  replicative cycles of phages as, 402*f*–404*f*
  structure and function of, 414
  structure of, 399, 400*f*, 401
  viral movement proteins of plant, 802
Visceral mass, **699***f*
Visible light, **192***f*
Visual communication, 1142*f*
Visual cortex, 1121*f*
Visualizing Figures
  biogeochemical cycles, 1249*f*
  DNA, 319*f*
  gastrulation, 1050*f*
  molecular machinery in cell, 122*f*–123*f*
  phylogenetic relationships, 556*f*
  primary and secondary growth, 767*f*
  proteins, 79*f*
  scale of geologic time, 532*f*–533*f*
Visual pigments, 1119*f*, 1122
Visual Skills Questions, 6*f*, 10*f*, 34*f*, 36, 45, 53*f*, 58, 62, 64–65, 79*f*, 95*f*, 98*f*, 114*f*, 127*f*, 130*f*–133*f*, 137*f*, 139, 140*f*, 150, 167*f*, 171, 174*f*, 177*f*, 184, 186, 198*f*, 216*f*, 227*f*–228*f*, 246*f*, 252, 257*f*–258*f*, 259, 280*f*–281*f*, 306, 320, 329, 340*f*–341*f*, 348*f*, 355*f*, 367*f*, 374*f*, 377*f*, 401, 408, 423, 428, 443*f*, 451*f*, 453*f*, 457*f*, 474*f*, 480*f*, 482*f*, 494*f*, 504, 536*f*, 539*f*, 558, 564*f*, 572, 576*f*, 579*f*, 583*f*, 596*f*, 603*f*, 611*f*, 613*f*, 624*f*, 638*f*, 648*f*, 679, 683*f*, 722, 734*f*, 741, 746*f*, 770*f*, 772*f*, 774*f*, 786*f*, 791*f*, 793*f*, 807*f*, 815*f*–816*f*, 827*f*, 829*f*–830*f*, 853*f*, 860*f*, 906*f*, 910*f*, 926*f*, 946*f*, 954*f*–955*f*, 962*f*, 967*f*, 996*f*, 1003*f*, 1015*f*, 1024*f*, 1035*f*, 1037*f*, 1072*f*, 1079*f*, 1096*f*–1097*f*, 1119*f*, 1126*f*, 1142*f*, 1147*f*, 1188, 1195*f*, 1224*f*, 1240*f*, 1242*f*, 1252*f*, 1271*f*. *See also* Draw It Questions
Visual systems, 1117*f*–1123
Vital capacity, **945**
Vitamin A, deficiencies of, 838*f*
Vitamin D, 1003, 1011*f*
Vitamins, 158, **900**
  deficiencies of, 902*f*
  effects of supplementation of, on neural tube defects in, 902*f*
  as lipid-soluble hormones, 1003
  parathyroid hormone and, 1011*f*
  requirements for, 899*f*, 900*t*
Vitelline layer, 1045
Vitellogenin, 1003*f*
Vitreous humor, 1118*f*
Viviparous organisms, **727**
Vocal cords, 942, 943*f*
Vocal folds, 942, 943*f*
Vocalization, *FOXP2* gene and, 461, 462*f*
Vogt, Walther, 1058
Volcanic springs, 585*f*
Volcanism, 636*f*, 637
Volcanoes, 57–58, 526*f*, 527, 540, 551, 1282
Voles, 1155*f*
Voltage-gated ion channels, 220*f*, **1072***f*–1077*f*
Volume, 99, 1114
Volume-surface area relationships, 98*f*
Voluntary contraception, population growth and, 1208
Volutidae family, 538
Volvox, 599*f*, 610*f*
von Frisch, Karl, 1142
von Humboldt, Alexander, 1232
Vulva, **1026**, 1027*f*

W

Waggle dance, honeybee, 1142*f*
Wagler's pit viper (*Tropidolaemus wagleri*), 737*f*
Waists, chromatid, 236
Walking, 756, 1135
Wallace, Alfred Russel, 469*f*, 473, 1232

Walled spores, 621*f*
Wandering albatross *(Diomedea exulans*), 977*f*
Warming, global. *See* Climate change
Warren, Robin, 912
WAS (Wiskott-Aldrich syndrome), 229
Washington, Earl, 437*f*
Wasps, 672, 712*f*, 822*f*, 869*f*, 1145*f*
Waste, toxic. *See* Toxic waste
Wastes, nitrogenous. *See* Nitrogenous wastes
Water
  acidic and basic conditions of, and living organisms, 51, 52*f*, 53
  acidification as threat to quality of, 53*f*, 54
  albatross drinking of salty, 977*f*
  biomanipulation and quality of, 1227*f*
  in blood plasma, 934*f*
  cellular regulation of, 142
  cohesion of molecules of, 45*f*–46*f*
  conduction of, in plant cells, 765*f*
  covalent bonding of, 37*f*, 45*f*
  evolution of life on planets with, 50*f*
  floating of ice on liquid, 44, 48*f*
  forms of, 44
  fruit and seed dispersal by, 832*f*
  gain and loss of, 998
  hydrogen bonds and, 39*f*
  imbibition of, by seeds, 829
  ions in, 38
  irrigation with, 808
  latitudinal gradients and evapotranspiration of, 1232*f*
  as limiting factor on human population size, 1211
  maximizing body surface area and uptake of, 695*f*
  moderation of temperature by, 46, 47*f*–48*f*
  molecular shape of, 39*f*, 40
  molluscs and pollution of, 702–703
  photosynthesis and compromise with loss of, 787
  plant adaptations for reducing evaporative loss of, 798, 799*f*
  in plant composition, 809
  plant response to submergence in, 864*f*
  plant transport of, 46*f*
  properties of, 45*f*–50*f*
  regulation of transpiration and plant loss of, 796, 797*f*–799*f*
  root architecture and acquisition of, 787
  roots interaction with, 10*f*, 11
  seed dispersal by, 645*f*
  as solvent of life, 49*f*, 50, 55
  species distributions and availability of, 1185
  splitting of, in photosynthesis, 190*f*
  transport of, across plant plasma membranes, 788, 789*f*–791*f*
  transport of, from roots to shoots via xylem, 792, 793*f*–795*f*, 796
  uptake of, 898
Water balance
  effects of osmosis on, 133*f*–135*f*
  hormonal regulation of, 994*f*–996*f*
  osmoregulation of, 977*f*–982*f*
Water bears, 689*f*
Water bodies, climate and, 1168*f*–1169*f*
Water bugs, 1023*f*
Water conservation
  kidney adaptations for, 991*f*–992*f*
  kidney role in, 989, 990*f*, 991
Water cycle, 1250*f*, 1259
Water cycling, in ecosystems, 1248*f*–1252*f*
Water fleas (*Daphnia pulex*), 448*t*, 1021, 1199*f*, 1200
Waterland, Robert, 372
Water lily, 650*f*, 653
"Watermelon snow," 211
Water potential, **788**, 789*f*–791*f*
Water scorpions, 708
Water snakes, 496, 497*f*
Water-soluble hormones, 1001*f*–1003*f*
Water-soluble vitamins, 900*t*
Water vascular system, **713**, 714*f*
Watson, James
  discovery of DNA molecular structure by, 4, 23–24, 314*f*, 317, 318*f*–320*f*
  model of DNA replication by, 320, 321*f*
Wavelengths, electromagnetic, **192***f*–194*f*, 195
Wawona Sequoia, 774*f*
WD40 domains, 445*f*, 446
Weak acids, 51
Weather
  climate change and, 11
  population fluctuations and, 1205*f*. *See also* Climate
Weathering, rock, 629
Web of life, 570*f*
Weddell seals, 949*f*
Weeds, transgene escape and, 839
Weevils, 712*f*
Welwitschia, 642*f*
Wernicke, Karl, 1098
Wernicke's area, 1098*f*
Westemeier, Ronald, 1267*f*
Western garter snakes, 1155, 1156*f*
Western gulls, 1151*f*
West Indian manatee (*Trichechus manatus*), 572, 1219*f*
West Nile virus, 401, 409
Wetlands, **1179***f*, 1262
  restoration of, 1254*f*
Whales, 88*f*, 481*f*–482*f*, 525*f*, 526, 557*f*, 710, 719, 903*f*, 1111*f*, 1265
Wheat (*Triticum aestivum*), 514–515, 524, 595, 651, 1204*f*
Whisk ferns, 631, 632*f*, 633
White, John, 24*f*
White-band disease, 1234
White blood cells. *See* Leukocytes
White-crowned sparrows, 1147
White-footed mice, 1144*t*
White matter, **1087***f*
White rhinoceros, 1199*f*, 1266
White-tailed deer (*Odocoileus virginianus*), 1271
Whole-genome shotgun approach, DNA sequencing, **443***f*, 444, 447, 448*f*, 452
Whooping cough, 218*f*
Whooping crane (*Grus americana*), 1144
Whorled phyllotaxy, 786
Widow's peak pedigree analysis case, 284*f*, 285
Wieschaus, Eric, 386
Wildfires, 1172, 1228, 1229*f*, *1244f*
Wild mustard, artificial selection and, 475*f*
Wild tobacco plants, 869*f*
Wild types, **295***f*
Wilkins, Maurice, 317–318, 320
Wilson, E. O., 1159, 1232, 1233*f*, 1262*f*, 1263
Wilting, **790**, 798, 804, 852, 863
Wind
  climate change and, 11
  dispersal of mosses by, 627
  flower pollination by, 824*f*
  fruit and seed dispersal by, 832*f*
  global patterns of, 1166*f*
  seed dispersal by, 645*f*
Windpipes, 13*f*
Winged fruits and seeds, 832*f*
Wings
  bat, as evolutionary adaptation, 15*f*
  bird, 738*f*, 739
  evolution of, 679
  flight muscles and, 1136
  insect, 710, 711*f*–712*f*
  muscle contraction and insect, 1132
  pterosaur, 736
  seed, 645*f*
Wireframe models, 79*f*
Wiskott-Aldrich syndrome (WAS), 229
Witchweed, 855
WNT4 gene, 299
Wobble, **349**
Wollemi pine, 643*f*
Wolves, 529*f*, 1205*f*, 1257*f*, 1270
Wood, 118, 651, 783
Wood ants, 28*f*
Wood lice, 709
Woolly mammoths, 421
Work, cellular, 150, 151*f*–153*f*
World Trade Center attack, 437
Worldwide adaptive radiations, 542, 543*f*
Worms, 905*f*, 1133*f*

X

Xanthomonas, 334
X chromosomes, 256*f*–257*f*, 298*f*–300*f*, 381, 1030, 1040
Xenarthra, 745*f*
Xeroderma pigmentosum (XP), 328
Xerophytes, **798**, 799*f*
X-linked genes, **299***f*–300*f*
X-O sex determination system, 298*f*
X-ray crystallography, **83***f*, 96, 217, 317, 318*f*
X-rays
  cancer and, 388
  mutations from, 360
Xylem, **629**, **763**, **785**
  primary growth and, 769*f*
  resource acquisition and, 785*f*
  transport of water and minerals from roots to shoots via, 792, 793*f*–795*f*, 796
  vascular plant, 629–630
  in vascular tissue systems, 763
  water-conducting cells of, 765*f*
Xylem sap, **792**, 793*f*–795*f*, 796
X-Y sex determination system, 298*f*, 313

Y

Yamanaka, Shinya, 432*f*
Yangtze River dolphin, 1262*f*
Yarrow (*Achillea lanulosa*), 1189
Y chromosomes, 256*f*–257*f*, 298*f*, 299, 313, 1030
Yeast cells, 100*f*
Yeast infections, 670
Yeasts, **655**
  alcohol fermentation by, 180*f*
  asexual reproduction in, 659*f*
  cell division in, 244*f*
  cell signaling in, 213*f*, 214
  expressing cloned eukaryotic genes in, 422–423
  fungi as, 655, 670
  human uses of, 670–671
  model organism. *See Saccharomyces cerevisiae*
Yellowfin tuna (*Thunnus albacares*), 729*f*
Yellow jackets, 1218*f*, 1219
Yellow-legged frogs, 669, 670*f*
Yellowstone National Park, 441, 1270
  extreme thermophiles in, 585*f*, 586
  forest fire disturbance of, 1228, 1229*f*
  grizzly bear population in, 1268*f*, 1269, 1272–1273
  Taq polymerase from bacterium in, 1263
Y-linked genes, 299
Yolk, 91, **1048***f*
Yolk sac, 735*f*, 1053*f*, 1054
Young, Michael, 883
Yucca, 824*f*

Z

Zambia, age-structure pyramid for, 1209*f*
Zambia, elephant poaching in, 1265*f*
Zea mays (corn). *See* Corn; Maize
Zeatin, 850
Zebra finches, 1152*f*
Zebrafish model organism, 22
Zebra mussels, 1264
Zero population growth, 1208, 1211
Zika virus, 409*f*
Zona pellucida, **1046***f*
Zonation, aquatic, 1177*f*–1178*f*
Zoned reserves, **1273***f*
Zone of cell division, 768*f*
Zone of differentiation, 768*f*
Zone of elongation, 768*f*
Zone of polarizing activity (ZPA), **1062**, *1063f*
Zoonotic pathogens, **1234**, 1235*f*
Zoopagomycetes, 660*f*, **662***f*, 663
Zooplankton, in biomass pyramids, 1247*f*, 1248
Zoospores, 603*f*, **661***f*
zur Hausen, Harald, 974
Z-W sex determination system, 298*f*
Zygentoma (silverfish), 712*f*
Zygnema, 619*f*
Zygomycetes, 660
Zygosporangium, 662*f*, **663**
Zygotes, 257*f*, **258**, **1020**, 1034, 1035*f*

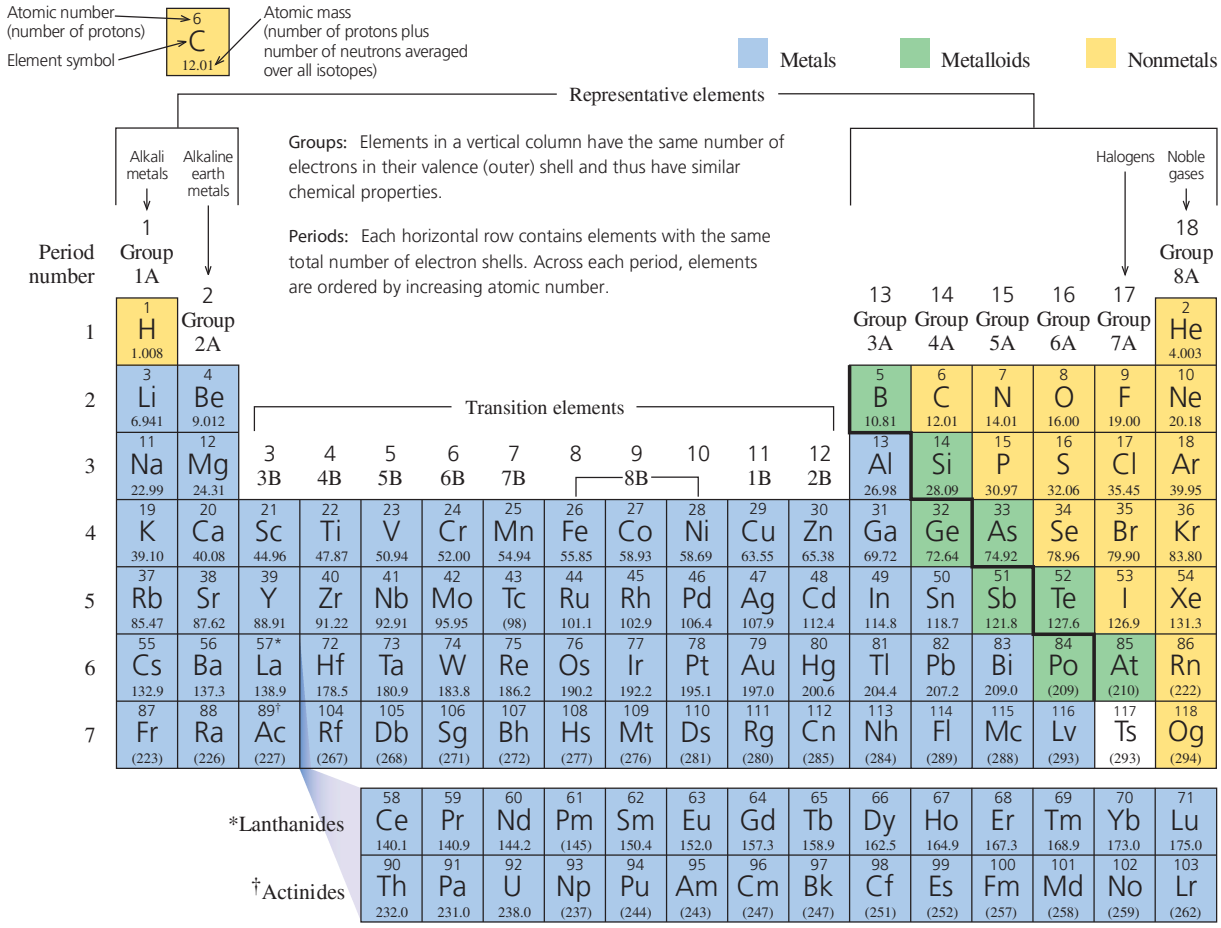
This page intentionally left blank

The Metric System

Metric Prefixes:				
	10^{15} = peta (P)	10^{6} = mega (M)	10^{-2} = centi (c)	10^{-9} = nano (n)
	10^{12} = tera (T)	10^{3} = kilo (k)	10^{-3} = milli (m)	10^{-12} = pico (p)
	10^{9} = giga (G)	10^{-1} = deci (d)	10^{-6} = micro (μ)	10^{-15} = femto (f)

Measurement	Unit and Abbreviation	Metric Equivalent	Metric-to-English Conversion Factor	English-to-Metric Conversion Factor
Length	1 kilometer (km)	= 1,000 (10^3) meters	1 km = 0.62 mile	1 mile = 1.61 km
	1 meter (m)	= 100 (10^2) centimeters = 1,000 millimeters	1 m = 1.09 yards 1 m = 3.28 feet 1 m = 39.37 inches	1 yard = 0.914 m 1 foot = 0.305 m
	1 centimeter (cm)	= 0.01 (10^{-2}) meter	1 cm = 0.394 inch	1 foot = 30.5 cm 1 inch = 2.54 cm
	1 millimeter (mm)	= 0.001 (10^{-3}) meter	1 mm = 0.039 inch	
	1 micrometer (μm) (formerly micron, μ)	= 10^{-6} meter (10^{-3} mm)		
	1 nanometer (nm) (formerly millimicron, mμ)	= 10^{-9} meter (10^{-3} μm)		
	1 angstrom (Å)	= 10^{-10} meter (10^{-4} μm)		
Area	1 hectare (ha)	= 10,000 square meters	1 ha = 2.47 acres	1 acre = 0.405 ha
	1 square meter (m^2)	= 10,000 square centimeters	1 m^2 = 1.196 square yards 1 m^2 = 10.764 square feet	1 square yard = 0.8361 m^2 1 square foot = 0.0929 m^2
	1 square centimeter (cm^2)	= 100 square millimeters	1 cm^2 = 0.155 square inch	1 square inch = 6.4516 cm^2
Mass	1 metric ton (t)	= 1,000 kilograms	1 t = 1.103 tons	1 ton = 0.907 t
	1 kilogram (kg)	= 1,000 grams	1 kg = 2.205 pounds	1 pound = 0.4536 kg
	1 gram (g)	= 1,000 milligrams	1 g = 0.0353 ounce 1 g = 15.432 grains	1 ounce = 28.35 g
	1 milligram (mg)	= 10^{-3} gram	1 mg = approx. 0.015 grain	
	1 microgram (μg or mcg)	= 10^{-6} gram		
Volume (solids)	1 cubic meter (m^3)	= 1,000,000 cubic centimeters	1 m^3 = 1.308 cubic yards 1 m^3 = 35.315 cubic feet	1 cubic yard = 0.7646 m^3 1 cubic foot = 0.0283 m^3
	1 cubic centimeter (cm^3 or cc)	= 10^{-6} cubic meter	1 cm^3 = 0.061 cubic inch	1 cubic inch = 16.387 cm^3
	1 cubic millimeter (mm^3)	= 10^{-9} cubic meter = 10^{-3} cubic centimeter		
Volume (liquids and gases)	1 kiloliter (kL or kl)	= 1,000 liters	1 kL = 264.17 gallons	
	1 liter (L or l)	= 1,000 milliliters	1 L = 0.264 gallon 1 L = 1.057 quarts	1 gallon = 3.785 L 1 quart = 0.946 L
	1 milliliter (mL or ml)	= 10^{-3} liter = 1 cubic centimeter (cc)	1 mL = 0.034 fluid ounce 1 mL = approx. ¼ teaspoon 1 mL = approx. 15–16 drops (gtt.)	1 quart = 946 mL 1 pint = 473 mL 1 fluid ounce = 29.57 mL 1 teaspoon = approx. 5 mL
	1 microliter (μL or μl)	= 10^{-6} liter (10^{-3} milliliter)		
Pressure	1 megapascal (MPa)	= 1,000 kilopascals	1 MPa = 10 bars	1 bar = 0.1 MPa
	1 kilopascal (kPa)	= 1,000 pascals	1 kPa = 0.01 bar	1 bar = 100 kPa
	1 pascal (Pa)	= 1 newton/m^2 (N/m^2)	1 Pa = 1.0×10^{-5} bar	1 bar = 1.0×10^5 Pa
Time	1 second (s or sec)	= 1/60 minute		
	1 millisecond (ms or msec)	= 10^{-3} second		
Temperature	Degrees Celsius (°C) (0 K [Kelvin] = −273.15°C)		°F = 9/5°C + 32	°C = 5/9 (°F − 32)

The Periodic Table of the Elements



Name (Symbol)	Atomic Number	Name (Symbol)	Atomic Number	Name (Symbol)	Atomic Number	Name (Symbol)	Atomic Number	Name (Symbol)	Atomic Number
Actinium (Ac)	89	Copper (Cu)	29	Iron (Fe)	26	Osmium (Os)	76	Silicon (Si)	14
Aluminum (Al)	13	Curium (Cm)	96	Krypton (Kr)	36	Oxygen (O)	8	Silver (Ag)	47
Americium (Am)	95	Darmstadtium (Ds)	110	Lanthanum (La)	57	Palladium (Pd)	46	Sodium (Na)	11
Antimony (Sb)	51	Dubnium (Db)	105	Lawrencium (Lr)	103	Phosphorus (P)	15	Strontium (Sr)	38
Argon (Ar)	18	Dysprosium (Dy)	66	Lead (Pb)	82	Platinum (Pt)	78	Sulfur (S)	16
Arsenic (As)	33	Einsteinium (Es)	99	Lithium (Li)	3	Plutonium (Pu)	94	Tantalum (Ta)	73
Astatine (At)	85	Erbium (Er)	68	Livermorium (Lv)	116	Polonium (Po)	84	Technetium (Tc)	43
Barium (Ba)	56	Europium (Eu)	63	Lutetium (Lu)	71	Potassium (K)	19	Tellurium (Te)	52
Berkelium (Bk)	97	Fermium (Fm)	100	Magnesium (Mg)	12	Praseodymium (Pr)	59	Tennessine (Ts)	117
Beryllium (Be)	4	Flerovium (Fl)	114	Manganese (Mn)	25	Promethium (Pm)	61	Terbium (Tb)	65
Bismuth (Bi)	83	Fluorine (F)	9	Meitnerium (Mt)	109	Protactinium (Pa)	91	Thallium (Tl)	81
Bohrium (Bh)	107	Francium (Fr)	87	Mendelevium (Md)	101	Radium (Ra)	88	Thorium (Th)	90
Boron (B)	5	Gadolinium (Gd)	64	Mercury (Hg)	80	Radon (Rn)	86	Thulium (Tm)	69
Bromine (Br)	35	Gallium (Ga)	31	Molybdenum (Mo)	42	Rhenium (Re)	75	Tin (Sn)	50
Cadmium (Cd)	48	Germanium (Ge)	32	Moscovium (Mc)	115	Rhodium (Rh)	45	Titanium (Ti)	22
Calcium (Ca)	20	Gold (Au)	79	Neodymium (Nd)	60	Roentgenium (Rg)	111	Tungsten (W)	74
Californium (Cf)	98	Hafnium (Hf)	72	Neon (Ne)	10	Rubidium (Rb)	37	Uranium (U)	92
Carbon (C)	6	Hassium (Hs)	108	Neptunium (Np)	93	Ruthenium (Ru)	44	Vanadium (V)	23
Cerium (Ce)	58	Helium (He)	2	Nickel (Ni)	28	Rutherfordium (Rf)	104	Xenon (Xe)	54
Cesium (Cs)	55	Holmium (Ho)	67	Nihonium (Nh)	113	Samarium (Sm)	62	Ytterbium (Yb)	70
Chlorine (Cl)	17	Hydrogen (H)	1	Niobium (Nb)	41	Scandium (Sc)	21	Yttrium (Y)	39
Chromium (Cr)	24	Indium (In)	49	Nitrogen (N)	7	Seaborgium (Sg)	106	Zinc (Zn)	30
Cobalt (Co)	27	Iodine (I)	53	Nobelium (No)	102	Selenium (Se)	34	Zirconium (Zr)	40
Copernicium (Cn)	112	Iridium (Ir)	77	Oganesson (Og)	118				

CAMA BIOLOGY

گروه المپیاد زیست شناسی کاما

کانال تلگرام:

@CamaBiology